

Translation of the Kimberling's Glossary into barycentrics
"Le Glossaire de Pierre"
(v104-dvi5)

pidx

June 1, 2025

ToC is on page 25

quick links to index - [A](#) - [C](#) - [D](#) - [J](#) - [N](#) - [Q](#) - [U](#) -

—

quick links to biblio - [A](#) - [B](#) - [C](#) - [D](#) - [Di](#) - [Ei](#) - [Gi](#) - [Gr](#) - [K](#) - [Le](#) - [Ma](#) - [Ng](#) - [Ri](#) - [So](#) - [Vi](#) -

—

Acknowledgement. This document began its life as a private copy of the Glossary accompanying the Encyclopedia of Clark [Kimberling \(1998-2024\)](#). This Glossary –as its name suggests– is organized alphabetically. As a never satisfied newcomer, I would have preferred a progression from the easiest to the hardest topics and I reordered this document in my own way. It is unclear whether this new ordering will be useful to anyone else ! In any case a detailed index is provided, where (quite often) the main entry is bolded.

Second point, the Kimberling's Glossary is written using trilinear coordinates. From an advanced point of view, these coordinates are neither better nor worse than the barycentric coordinates. Nevertheless, having some practice of the barycentrics, and none of the trilinears, I undertook to translate everything, from one system to another. In any case, this was a formative exercise, and this also puts the focus on the covariance/contra-variance properties that were subsequently systematized.

Drawings are the third point. Everybody knows –or should know– that geometry is not possible at all without drawings. Having no intention to pay royalties for the use of rulers and compasses, I turned to an open source software (kseg) in order to produce my own drawings. Thereafter, I have used Geogebra, together with pstricks. What a struggle, but no progress without practice !

Subsequently, other elements have been incorporated from other sources, including materials about cubics, from the [Gibert](#) web site, and about Cremona transforms from the [Déserti](#) archive. Finally, original elements were also added. As it will appear at first sight, "pidx" is addicted to a tradition that requires a precisely specified universal space for each object to live in.

A second massive addiction of the author is computer algebra. Having at your fingertips a tool that gives the right answer to each and every expansion or factorization, and never lost the small paper sheet where the computation of the week was summarized is really great. Moreover, being constrained to explain everything to a computer helps to specify all the required details. For example, the "equivalence up to a proportionality factor" doesn't apply in the same way to a matrix whether this matrix describes a collineation, a triangle, a trigone or a set of incidence relations.

In this document, "beautiful geometrical proofs" are avoided as much as possible, since they are the most error prone. A safe proof of "*the triangle of contacts of the inscribed circle and the triangle of the mid-arcs on the circumcircle admit the insimilicenter of the two circles as perspector*" is :

`ency(persp(matcev(vX(7)),matucev(vX(1))))` \mapsto 56

where the crucial point is **ency**, i.e. a safe implementation of the Kimberling's search key method to explore the database.

To summarize, the present document is rather a "derived work", where the elements presented are not intended to be original, apart perhaps from the way to assemble the ingredients and cook them together.

List of macros and symbols

blueqq		ds	$\displaystyle \#$	cltlem	$Y_c \text{ mor}$
sage		lem	$Y \text{ mor}$		
tra	tX	altlem	$Y_a \text{ mor}$		
apol	<i>isotomic</i>	acev	$M_AM_BM_C$	bmul	$\begin{smallmatrix} * \\ b \end{smallmatrix}$
isopt	<i>isoptic</i>	aff	\mathcal{E}	bn	b'
bfp	<i>Computed Proof</i>	air	\mathcal{A}	bord	$\partial \mathbb{H}$
sumS	\mathfrak{S}	alou	\mathfrak{A}	bovec	$\begin{pmatrix} B \\ E \end{pmatrix}$
Adjoint	Adjoint	am	a	bpm	Br_2
Ettt	\mathcal{E}_3	anticomplem	anticomplem	bpp	Br_1
Ga	$G_a \text{ mor}$	antigon	antigon	cartomor	$\boxed{\text{c}\Phi\text{m}}$
Gb	$G_b \text{ mor}$	an	a'	cbar	$\overline{\mathbb{C}}$
Gc	$G_c \text{ mor}$	arc	\overbrace{ABC}	cc	\mathbb{C}
Kv	$\mathbb{Q}(\omega_{12})(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$ mor	myarc	\overbrace{AB}	ccir	Γ
NK	NK_n	area	area	cenmiq	O_q
OT	$\mathfrak{O}(A)$	atbt	$a_{\#}b_{\#}c_{\#}$	ceva	$A_{\#}B_{\#}C_{\#}$
PKF	$PK_n^{\#}$	avg	$\text{moy}_{\langle A \rangle}(B)$ mor	cevadiv	cevadiv
Sa	S_a	axnwt	δ	cevamul	cevadiv
Sb	S_b	axstn	h	cevg	$\mathfrak{A}_{\#}\mathfrak{B}_{\#}\mathfrak{C}_{\#}$
Sc	S_c	bartocar	$\boxed{\text{b}\Phi\text{c}}$	charpoly	Charpoly
Searby	Searby	bartomor	$\boxed{\text{b}\Phi\text{m}}$	chdo	$\Gamma_{A B}$
Sq	$\begin{smallmatrix} S \\ Q \end{smallmatrix}$	bdiv	$\frac{\div}{b}$	chup	$\Gamma_{A B}$
Su	S_u	bicir	$\mathbb{P}(\mathcal{Q})$	cir	\mathcal{C}_n
Sv	S_v	bigon	$\mathcal{O}(\overrightarrow{\mathbf{n}})$	cirmiq	Γ_q
Sww	S_w	birap	birap	cirsim	Γ_{σ}
Sw	S_{ω}	blou	\mathfrak{B}	cirstd	Γ_{std}
Tau	$\widehat{\tau}$	bmq	b	cla	$\mathcal{C}(\#) \text{ mor}$
ZtoS	$\boxed{\text{Z2S}}$			clasim	clasim
				cm	c
				cn	c'

cocev	$A'_{\#} B'_{\#} C'_{\#}$	mydeg	deg	gc	g_c mor
cocu	co- $\#$ -curve mor			gene	$\langle \# \rangle$ mor
coeff	coeff	dela	δ_a mor	gfak	\mathcal{PG}_9^{\bullet}
colbar	$\mathcal{V}_{\#}$	delb	δ_b mor	glemp	\mathcal{PG}_{36}^+
colbarf	$\widehat{\mathcal{V}_{\#}}$	delc	δ_c mor	glem	\mathcal{PG}_{72}
colcar	\mathcal{V}_n	delt	δ_{12}	gmor	\mathcal{PG}_{18}
colcir	\mathcal{V}_z	dexa	222	gnor	$\mathcal{N}_{\#1}$
colcarf	$\widehat{\mathcal{V}_n}$	dexb	111	gram	Gram $_{\#}$
colcirf	$\widehat{\mathcal{V}_z}_{\#}$	dexc	120	grasrouge	$\mathcal{G}_{\#}$
colgen	$\mathcal{V}_{\#}$	dexo	000	gras	Δ_A^s
colgenf	$\widehat{\mathcal{V}_{\#}}$	dir	dir	grh	$\mathcal{G}_{\#}$
colped	$\mathcal{V}_{\#1}$	dist	$\text{dist}(A, B)$	gu	Gu
colsph	$\mathcal{V}_{\#1}$	ditto	%	hexac	\mathcal{H}_A^B
complem	complem	dm	d	hexam	$\boxed{\mathcal{H}_A^B}$
con	\mathcal{C}	dn	d'	hexkonk	K
conifoc	\mathfrak{C}_n	dpo	$\text{DP}_1(M)$	hh	\mathfrak{h}
conii	\mathcal{C}_n	dpt	$\text{DP}_2(\#)$	hhath	$\widehat{H}_{\#}$
conim	$\boxed{\mathcal{C}_n}$	dual	dual	hhh	\mathbb{H}
conis	$\boxed{\mathcal{C}_n^*}$	equic	$X_Y^{\#}$	homot	homot
conj	$\text{conj}(X)$	equi	\mathcal{E}	hypA	hypA
cpik	$c\mathcal{K}$	eqx	\overline{n}	hyp	\mathcal{H}
crem	Cremona	etc	, etc	hzcir	\mathcal{C}_{∞}
crossdiff	crossdiff	etd	: etc mor	iii	\mathcal{I}
crossdiv	crossdiv	exc	$\text{Exc}(A)$	iix	\mathcal{I}
crossmul	crossmul	extri	$I_a I_b I_c$ mor	ii	i
crosssum	crosssum	fakrot	Fr mor	im	0
crza	$\text{cross_ratio}_z(x)$	fak	F mor	inconi	\mathcal{C}_{in}
ctomi	$\boxed{Y^{-1}}$	forc	A^H	ind	$\text{Ind}(F)$
ctom	\boxed{Y}	formul	\mathcal{F}	invin	invincir
ddq	mor	fqf	\mathfrak{F}	ip	1
dd	d	gallp	\mathcal{PG}_{108}^+	isoc	A_B^*
degentang	\mathcal{D}_0	gall	\mathcal{PG}_{216}	isogg	$A_{jk_g}^* \text{Mor}$
degr	\circ	ga	g_a mor	isog	isogon
		gb	g_b mor	isot	isotom
		gcut	\mathcal{G}_{54}	jac	\mathfrak{N}
				jacc	$\mathfrak{N}_{,d}^u$
				ka	k_a
				kb	k_b

kc	k_c	luboq	Lv_n	mqqcf	\widehat{Q}_c
keycon	\mathfrak{C}	lubo	Lu	mqqc	Q_c
kkkk	κ	luretq	Lv_n^{-1}	mqqfg	\widehat{Q}^g
kkkv	\mathbf{k}	lurett	Lu_n^{-1}	mqqfx	\widehat{Q}^x
kkkt	ϑ	luret	Lu^{-1}	mqqgf	\widehat{Q}
kk	\mathbb{K}	madd	Δ_{12}	mqqg	Q
klein	Klein	maee	Δ_{34}^*	mqqib	Q_b^{-1}
kpa	k'_a	mapx	\mapsto_A	mqqip	Q_p^{-1}
kro	$\mathbf{1}$	matid	Id	mqqis	Q_s^{-1}
kshi	$\boxed{\mathcal{K}_n}$	metqc	\mathcal{M}_{4c}	mqqic	Q_c^{-1}
ktop	$\mathfrak{Kto}\mathfrak{P}$	metq	\mathcal{M}_4	mqqiz	Q_z^{-1}
kub	\mathcal{K}	mhath	$\widehat{H}_\#$	mqqp	Q_p
leib	\mathfrak{F}	mincinq	$\langle A \widehat{Q} B \rangle$	mqqqs	Q_s
lek	κ^2	mink	$\langle A Q_b B \rangle$	mqqz	Q_z
lfit	LFIT	minkz	$\langle A Q_z B \rangle$	mqqzf	\widehat{Q}_z
licar	$\chi_\#$ mor	miqcir	miq_A	mualt	$\hat{\mu}$ mor
lin	\mathcal{L}_n	miq	M_q	muhat	μ mor
linfb	\mathcal{L}_b	mk	M_A	mutil	$\tilde{\mu}$ mor
linfc	\mathcal{L}_c	mmmb	\mathcal{M}_b	mwwb	W_b
linfg	\mathcal{L}_∞	mmmc	\mathcal{M}_c	mwwc	W_c
linfqc	\mathcal{L}_{4c}	mmmng	\mathcal{M}	mwwg	W
linfq	\mathcal{L}_4	mmmz	\mathcal{M}_z	mwwzero	W_0
linfz	\mathcal{L}_z	mnnb	\mathcal{N}_b	mwwz	W_z
lipA	lipA	mnnk	\mathcal{N}_k	newmink	\boxed{Mink}
locm	\mathfrak{L}_M	mnnp	\mathcal{N}_p	nn	\mathbb{N}
locps	\mathfrak{L}_P^*	mnns	\mathcal{N}_s	nonk	$n\mathcal{K}$
locp	\mathfrak{L}_P	mqqbf	\widehat{Q}_b	nor	$\text{nor}(A)$
locq	\mathfrak{L}_Q	mqqb	Q_b	ortcir	\mathfrak{D}
locr	\mathfrak{L}_R				
locu	\mathfrak{L}_U				
lubar	\simeq_{bar}^{L6}				
lubba	$z_A = \alpha^n$, etc				
	Mor				
luboo	Lu_n				

orthh	\boxed{OrtH}	plinf	\mathcal{P}_∞	pythu	$\boxed{\text{Pyth}_\#}$
ortob	$\boxed{OrtO_b}$	plinfp	\mathcal{P}_p	pythz	$\boxed{\text{Pyth}_z}$
ortoc	$\boxed{OrtO_c}$	plinfpf	$\widehat{\mathcal{P}}_p$	qcen	\tilde{A}
ortoz	$\boxed{OrtO_z}$	plinf	\mathcal{P}_s	qer	$Q_n \text{ mor}$
orto	\boxed{OrtO}	plinfsf	$\widehat{\mathcal{P}}_s$	qq	\mathbb{Q}
ortp	orthopoint (A)	plinfz	\mathcal{P}_z	quart	\boxed{Q}
outconi	\mathcal{C}_{out}	plinfzf	$\widehat{\mathcal{P}}_z$	ra	r_a
para	\mathfrak{P}_n	plonG	$\mathfrak{G}(A)$	rb	r_b
paraa	\mathcal{P}_n	plong	$\mathfrak{G}(A, B)$	rc	r_c
parhyp	\mathfrak{Q}	pluck	$\left(A \underset{6}{\wedge} B\right)$	recip	recip
pccd	$\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^2)$	pluplu	---***---	refl	$\text{sym}3$
pccf	$\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^5)$	pobo	\boxed{Pon}	rer	$R_n \text{ mor}$
pccq	$\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^4)$	polar	polar	rii	r_0
pcct	$\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$	poret	\boxed{Pon}^{-1}	ri	r
penli	\mathcal{P}	pow	\mathfrak{p}_n	rotof	RootOf(P)
per	$P_\# \text{ mor}$	prb	\mathcal{Q}	rotq	rotq
pers	$P_\#^* \text{ mor}$	prfC	\mathbb{C} -	ro	R
pfi	$\phi \text{ Mor}$	prfK	\mathbb{K} -	rr	\mathbb{R}
pglcd	$\text{PGL}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^2)$	prfP	\mathbb{P} -	salt	$\hat{S} \text{ mor}$
pglct	$\text{PGL}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$	prodscl	$\langle A \mid B \rangle$	sgn	sgn
phit	ϵ	prrc	$\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^5)$	shat	$S \text{ mor}$
pilcon	\mathfrak{C}	prrd	$\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^2)$	signe	signum P
pilpt	Ω	prrq	$\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^4)$	simdoteq	\simeq
pivk	$p\mathcal{K}$	prrt	$\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^3)$	simeqx	$\overset{\sim}{\simeq}_n$
cubi	$\mathcal{K} \text{ mor}$	psik	ψ_P	slov	\mathcal{S}
cubox	$p\mathcal{K}_{\Omega x}$	ptok	$\mathfrak{P} \text{ to } \mathfrak{K}$	smh	+
cuboy	$p\mathcal{K}_{\Omega y}$	ptv	;	smkm	$\boxed{\mathfrak{H}}$
pkm	$p\mathcal{K}_\#^{\mathcal{M}} \text{ mor}$	ptw	; mor	smko	$\mathfrak{H}(A)$
pkub	$p\mathcal{K}_\# \text{ mor}$	pythb	$\boxed{\text{Pyth}_b}$	smk	\mathfrak{H}
pla	$\mathfrak{P}_\#$	pythc	$\boxed{\text{Pyth}_c}$	smm	—
plinfb	\mathcal{P}_b	pythc	$\boxed{\text{Pyth}_c}$	smp	+
plinfbf	$\widehat{\mathcal{P}}_b$	pythg	$\boxed{\text{Pyth}}$	sop	$\mathbf{s} \text{ mor}$
plinf	\mathcal{P}_c	pythq	$\boxed{\text{Pyth}_{4c}}$	south	
plinf	$\widehat{\mathcal{P}}_c$	pythq	$\boxed{\text{Pyth}_4}$	sphq	\mathbb{S}_4
plinf	$\widehat{\mathcal{P}}_\infty$			sqrtn	$\sqrt[n]{uuu}$
				sss	σ

ppp	π	tria	T_n	vers	Ver_s
stil	\tilde{S} mor	trig	\mathfrak{T}_n of lines	verz	Ver_z
sumk	$\sum \mathbf{k}$	trilo	\mathfrak{W}_n	vt	\mathbf{T}
svt	Σ	trim	$\boxed{\mathcal{T}_n}$	vzz	$\overline{\mathcal{Z}}$
symq	\mathfrak{S}_4 mor	tripo	tripole	vz	\mathbf{Z}
synt	\mathfrak{S}_3 mor	trip	tripolar	wedt	\bigwedge_3
tagesma	72.43	tris	\mathcal{T}_n^*	where	where
tagesgr	$\mathcal{G}[72.43]$	tsk	$A_C^{\mathbf{B}}$ mor	widp	$\widehat{A_t}$
tcurv	\mathcal{W}	umbx	Ω_x	xep	\mathcal{A}
tcut	K	umby	Ω_y	xxx	\mathfrak{X}
tgroup	\mathfrak{Q}	umb	Ω	yt	t
third	@	vRd	\mathfrak{d}	yx	y
tkub	\mathcal{K}	vRf	\mathfrak{f}	yyy	\mathscr{Y}
tlubo	\boxed{Lu}	vRk	$vR\mathcal{K}$	yy	η
tluret	$\boxed{Lu^{-1}}$	vbartomor	$\boxed{\mathfrak{b}\Psi\mathfrak{m}}$	zang	$\left(\overbrace{A, B}\right)$
tmpoc	\mathcal{C}_A^B	veci	$\overrightarrow{vec}(A, B)$	zdiv	\div_z
tmpoHm	$\boxed{\mathcal{C}^H}$	vecn	$\overrightarrow{\mathfrak{n}}$	zet	ω_{12} mor
tmpom	$\boxed{\mathcal{C}_A^B}$	vecp	$\overrightarrow{\mathcal{V}}$	zint	\int
tmt	ρ	verB	Ver_b	zong	$\angle(AB, AC)$
tpluck	$\left(A^t \wedge_6 B\right)$	verc	Ver_c	zzz	\mathfrak{Z}
trace	trace($\#$)	verk	$\mathfrak{V}(A)$	zz	\mathbb{Z}
tri	\mathcal{T}_n	verp	Ver_p		

Macros: sorted by rationales

0.1 ruses latex

ii	i
where	where
ptv,ptw	; KK ;
etc	, etc
tra	tX
ds	$\displaystylestyle \frac{a}{b}$
ditto	%
degr	°
mydeg	deg
rotof	RootOf(P)
sqrtn	$\sqrt[n]{uuu}$
smm,smp	- ; +
smh	+
eqx,sim...	$\stackrel{=}{\sim}, \stackrel{\sim}{\sim}, \stackrel{\sim}{\sim}_n$
mapx	\mapsto_A
signe	signum
sgn	sgn (\backslash in \mathfrak{S}_4)
bovec	$\begin{pmatrix} B \\ E \end{pmatrix}$
bfp	<i>Computed Proof</i>
ddq	4_neg_sp
conj	conj (Z)
vz,vt,vzz	$\mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{T}, \overline{\mathbf{Z}}$

0.2 sets

sphq	S_4
cc,...	$\mathbb{C}, \mathbb{K}, \mathbb{N}, \mathbb{Q}, \mathbb{R}, \mathbb{Z}$
cbar	$\overline{\mathbb{C}}$
pccd,t,q,f	$\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^2), \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3),$ $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^4), \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^5)$
prrd,t,q,c	$\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^2), \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^3),$ $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^4), \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^5)$ should be f(ive)
pglcd,t	$\mathrm{PGL}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^2), \mathrm{PGL}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$

0.3 flechi-flecha

vecn	\vec{n}
vecp	\vec{p}
aff	\mathcal{E}
veci	$\overrightarrow{vec}(A, B)$
nor	nor (A)
leib	\mathfrak{F}

0.4 métrique

Sa,Sb,Sc,Sw	$S_a, S_b, S_c, S_{\omega}$
ra,rb,rc,rii,ri,ro	r_a, r_b, r_c, r, r_0, R
dist	dist (A, B)
dd	d diff

0.5 operations

Adjoint	Adjoint
antigon	antigon
bdiv,bmul,zdiv	$\div, *, \div_b, \div_z$
birap	birap

cevadiv,mul	cevadiv,cevadiv
charpoly	Charpoly
clasim	clasim
coeff	coeff
complem,anti	complem,anticomplem
crossdiv,mul	crossdiv,crossmul
crossdiff	crossdiff,crosssum
crra	cross_ratio _z (x)
dpo,dpt	$\mathrm{DP}_1(M), \mathrm{DP}_2(M)$
dir	dir
isog,isot	isogon, isotom
recip,isot	recip, isotom
mincingq	$\left\langle A \widehat{Q} B \right\rangle$
mink	$\left\langle A \frac{Q}{b} B \right\rangle$
minkz	$\left\langle A \frac{Q}{z} B \right\rangle$
ortp	orthopoint (A)
prodscale	$\langle A B \rangle$
psik	ψ_P (15.7.1)
wedt	\bigwedge_3

0.6 conversion

lubba	$z_A = \alpha^n$, etc
bartocar...	$\boxed{\mathrm{b}\Phi\mathrm{c}}, \boxed{\mathrm{b}\Phi\mathrm{m}},$ $\boxed{\mathrm{c}\Phi\mathrm{m}}$
vbartomor	$\boxed{\mathrm{b}\Psi\mathrm{m}}$
tlubo,tluret	$\boxed{Lu}, \boxed{Lu^{-1}}$

lubo,luret	\boxed{Lu} , $\boxed{Lu^{-1}}$
luboo,lurett	$\boxed{Lu_n}$, $\boxed{Lu_n^{-1}}$
luboq,luretq	$\boxed{Lv_n}$, $\boxed{Lv_n^{-1}}$
pobo,poret	\boxed{Pon} , $\boxed{Pon^{-1}}$
ZtoS	$\boxed{Z2S}$ zzz2sph

0.7 matrices

lin	\mathcal{L}_n
trig	\mathfrak{T}_n of lines
matid	Id
kro	1
linfg,b,c,z	$\mathcal{L}_\infty, \mathcal{L}_b, \mathcal{L}_c, \mathcal{L}_z$
am,etc	a, a', CAVEAT , b', c, c', d, d'
bmq	b
orthh	\boxed{OrtH}
orto,b,c,z	\boxed{OrtO} , $\boxed{OrtO_b}$, $\boxed{OrtO_c}$, $\boxed{OrtO_z}$
mmmg,b,c,z	$\boxed{\mathcal{M}}$, $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b}$, $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_c}$, $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_z}$
metqc,metq	$\boxed{\mathcal{M}_{4c}}$, $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_4}$
mnnb,k,p,s	$\boxed{\mathcal{N}_b}$, $\boxed{\mathcal{N}_k}$, $\boxed{\mathcal{N}_p}$, $\boxed{\mathcal{N}_s}$
pythg,b,c,4c,4,z	\boxed{Pyth} , $\boxed{Pyth_b}$, $\boxed{Pyth_c}$, $\boxed{Pyth_{4c}}$, $\boxed{Pyth_4}$, $\boxed{Pyth_z}$.
pythu	$\boxed{Pyth_X}$
kshi	$\boxed{\mathcal{K}_n}$
mwwg,b,c,z	\boxed{W} , $\boxed{W_b}$, $\boxed{W_c}$, $\boxed{W_z}$
mwwzero	$\boxed{W_0}$
trace	trace (M)

0.8 triangles

tri,tris,tria,trim	$\mathcal{T}_n, \mathcal{T}_n^*, T_n, \boxed{\mathcal{T}_n}$
area	area
air	\mathcal{A}
trip,tripo	tripolar, tripole
ceva	$A_M B_M C_M$
cocev	$A'_M B'_M C'_M$
acev	$M_A M_B M_C$
cevg	$\mathfrak{A}_\# \mathfrak{B}_\# \mathfrak{C}_\#$
isoc,euic	$A_z^*, X_F^\#$
isog,isogg	isogon, A_g^*
svt	$\Sigma, S/\sqrt{3}$
bpp,bpm	Br_1, Br_2 broc
extri	$I_a I_b I_c$ mor

0.9 angles

angular	$\mathfrak{X}, \mathscr{Y}, \mathfrak{Z}$
myarc,arc	$\widehat{ABC}, \widehat{ABC}$
lek	κ^2
zong	$\angle (AB, AC)$
zang	$\left(\widehat{A, B} \right)$

0.10 lfit

lfit	LFIT
atbt	$a_\# b_\# c_\#$
slov,equi	\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E}
pilpt,con	$\Omega, \mathfrak{C}, \boxed{\mathfrak{C}^*}$ =conipiltan
gras	Δ_A^s
tmpoc,m,Hm	$\mathcal{C}_t^s, \boxed{\mathcal{C}_t^s}, \boxed{\mathcal{C}^H}$
miq,miqcir	M_q, miq_A
plonG,plong	$\mathfrak{G}(A), \mathfrak{G}(A, B)$
parhyp	\mathfrak{Q}
cirsim	Γ_σ
hexac,hexam	$\mathcal{H}_A^B, \boxed{\mathcal{H}}$
hexkonk	K (26.14)

grh	$\mathcal{G}_\#$ hexa_graph
forc	A^H
degentang	\mathcal{D}_0 (11.3)
im,ip	0, 1 indices...

0.11 quadlat

axnwt,axstn	δ, h
cenmiq	O_q
cirmiq	Γ_q
smk,o,m	$\mathfrak{H}, \mathfrak{H}(A), \boxed{\mathfrak{H}}$
vRd,vRf,vRk	$\mathfrak{d}, \mathfrak{f}, vRK$
yx,yt,yt	$y, \eta, \mathfrak{t} (\mathcal{L}_0)$
widp	\widehat{A}_t Tucker
grasrouge	$\mathcal{G}_\#$ orthopedal
trilo	\mathfrak{W}_n
ortcir	\mathfrak{D}
Tau	$\hat{\tau}$ Musslman
rotq	rotq bicentric
iix	\mathcal{I} bicentric

0.12 cremona

crem	Cremona
ind,exc	Ind (ψ), Exc (ψ)
homot	homot
tmt	ρ 17.4.1
hhath,mhath	$\widehat{H}_n, \boxed{\widehat{H}_n}$

0.13 circles

umbx,umby	$\Omega_x \Omega_y$
umb	Ω
hzcir	\mathcal{C}_∞
cir,cirstd	$\mathcal{C}_n, \Gamma_{\text{std}}$
ccir	Γ
pow	\mathfrak{p}_A
apol,isopt	<i>isotomic, isoptic</i>
polar	polar
newmink	\boxed{Mink}
verB,c,p,s,z	$\backslash \text{verg}, Ver_b, Ver_c,$ Ver_z, Ver_p, Ver_s
colgen,bar,car,cir,ped,sph,	$\mathcal{V}_n, \mathcal{V}_b, \mathcal{V}_c, \mathcal{V}_z, \mathcal{V}_p, \mathcal{V}_s$
mqqg,b,c,p,s,z	$\boxed{\mathcal{Q}}, \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_b}, \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_c},$ $\boxed{\mathcal{Q}_p}, \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_s}, \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_z}$
mqqib,c,p,s,z	$\boxed{\mathcal{Q}_b^{-1}}, \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_c^{-1}},$ $\boxed{\mathcal{Q}_p^{-1}}, \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_s^{-1}}, \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_z^{-1}}$
plinfg,b,c,p,s,z	$\mathcal{P}_\infty, \mathcal{P}_b, \mathcal{P}_c,$ $\mathcal{P}_p, \mathcal{P}_s, \mathcal{P}_z$
prb	\mathcal{Q}
south	
gram	Gram _#
xep	\mathcal{A} apex
invin	invincir
penli	\mathcal{P} pencil

0.14 Lie sphere

colgenf,...	$\widehat{\mathcal{V}}_n, \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_b, \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_c, \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_z,$ $\backslash \text{colpedf}, \backslash \text{colsphf}$
mqqgf,bf,cf	$\boxed{\widehat{\mathcal{Q}}}, \boxed{\widehat{\mathcal{Q}}_b}, \boxed{\widehat{\mathcal{Q}}_c}, \boxed{\widehat{\mathcal{Q}}_z}$
mqqfg,mqqfx	$\boxed{\widehat{\mathcal{Q}}^g}, \boxed{\widehat{\mathcal{Q}}^x}$
plinfgf,b,c,p,s,z	$\widehat{\mathcal{P}}_\infty, \widehat{\mathcal{P}}_b, \widehat{\mathcal{P}}_c,$ $\widehat{\mathcal{P}}_p, \widehat{\mathcal{P}}_s, \widehat{\mathcal{P}}_z$
Searby	Searby

0.15 coniques

coni	\mathcal{C}
conii	\mathcal{C}_n
conim	$\boxed{\mathcal{C}_n}$
conis	$\boxed{\mathcal{C}_n^*}$
inconi,out	$\mathcal{C}_{\text{in}}, \mathcal{C}_{\text{out}}$
para	\mathfrak{P}_n
hyp	\mathcal{H}
verk	$\mathfrak{V}(A)$ Veronese
sss,ppp	σ, π sigpi
gu	Gu
hypA,lipA	hypA, lipA

0.16 cubiques

kub	\mathcal{K}
pivk,nonk	$p\mathcal{K}, n\mathcal{K}$
cpik	$c\mathcal{K}$
pkm	$p\mathcal{K}_n^{\mathcal{M}}$ mor
pkub	$p\mathcal{K}_n$ mor
cubox,cuboy	$p\mathcal{K}_{\Omega x}, p\mathcal{K}_{\Omega y}$
PKF	$PK_n^\#$
third	@
NK	NK_n
OT	$\mathfrak{O}(A)$ Orion

0.17 bicircular quartics

quart	$\boxed{\mathcal{Q}}$
bicir	$\mathbb{P}(\mathcal{Q})$ dim=9
conifoc	\mathfrak{C}_n
tcurv	\mathcal{W}
tkub	\mathcal{K}
tcut	K
tgroup	\mathfrak{Q}
Sq,Su,Sv,Sww	$\mathcal{S}, S_u, S_v, S_w$

0.18 hyperbolic

alou,blou	$\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B}$
prfC,K,P	$\mathbb{C}-, K-, P-:::\mathfrak{G}$
ptok	$\mathfrak{P} \text{ to } \mathfrak{K}$
hhh,bord	$\mathbb{H}, \partial \mathbb{H}$
ktop	$\mathfrak{K} \text{ to } \mathfrak{P}$
fqf	as in $ds^2 = dx^m \mathfrak{G}_{mn} dx^n$

0.19 geo4D

klein	Klein
madd,maee	$\boxed{\Delta_{12}}, \boxed{\Delta_{34}^*}$
dual	dual
pluck,tpluck	$\left(A \wedge_6 B\right), \left(A^t \wedge_6 B\right)$
pla	$\mathfrak{P}_\#$
Ettt	$\mathcal{E}_3(\mathbb{R}^3)$
linfqc,linfq	$\mathcal{L}_{4c}, \mathcal{L}_4$

0.20 tensor

jac,jacc	$\mathfrak{N}, \mathfrak{N}_{,d}^u$
iix,iii	$\mathcal{I}, \mathcal{II}$
bigon	$\mathcal{O}(\vec{n})$
chdo	$\Gamma_B^A, \Gamma_{A B}$
formul	\mathcal{F} (once)
phit	$\sigma, \tau, \epsilon, \omega, \kappa$ (tab:20.1)

0.21 Morley

symq,symt $\mathfrak{S}_4, \mathfrak{S}_3$
 tagesma,sgr $72\cdot 43, \mathcal{G} [72\cdot 43]$
 zet ω_{12}
 pfi ϕ Mor
 Kv $\mathbb{Q}(\omega_{12})(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$
 licar $\chi\#$
 lubar $\widetilde{\bar{}}^{L6}$
 tsk D_k^\times trisectors
 avg $\text{moy}_{\langle A \rangle}(B)$
 cla $\mathcal{C}(\#)$
 cocu co-#-curve
 locm,locps,locp,locq,locr,locu
 $\mathfrak{L}_M, \mathfrak{L}_P^*, \mathfrak{L}_P,$
 $, \mathfrak{L}_Q, \mathfrak{L}_R, \mathfrak{L}_U$
 curves

ka,kb,kc k_a, k_b, k_c
 per,pers,qer,rer P_n, P_n^*, Q_n, R_n
 kkkk,kkkt,kkkv $\kappa, \vartheta, \mathbf{k}$
 mk $M_{\mathbf{k}}$ triangle
 sumk $\sum \mathbf{k}$
 sop \mathbf{s} strange
 muhat,alt,til $\mu, \widehat{\mu}, \widetilde{\mu}$
 sumS \mathfrak{S}
 dela,delb,delc $\delta_a, \delta_b, \delta_c$
 Ga,Gb,Gc G_a, G_b, G_c
 ga,gb,gc g_a, g_b, g_c
 dexa,dexb,dexc,dexo
 222, 111, 120, 000
 gall,gallp,glem,gcut
 $\mathcal{PG}_{216}, \mathcal{PG}_{108}^+, \mathcal{PG}_{72}, \mathcal{G}_{54}$

glemp,gmor,gfak,gnor
 $\mathcal{PG}_{36}^+, \mathcal{PG}_{18}, \mathcal{PG}_9^\bullet, \mathcal{N}_n$
 gene $\langle \# \rangle$ mor
 fak,fakrot F, Fr
 shat,salt,stil $S, \widehat{S}, \widetilde{S}$ mor
 leMM,altlem,cltlem
 Y, Y_a, Y_c mor
 altlem Y_a mor
 cltlem Y_c mor

0.22 reste

sage

 arc $\widehat{\#}$ Mor
 etd : etc mor
 refl $\text{sym}3$

List of Figures

1.1	Point P and line $A''B''C''$ are the tripolars of each other.	45
3.1	Obtain Q from A, P, C and auxiliary D	54
3.2	Cevian, anticevian and cocevian triangles	57
3.3	Ceva's Theorem	58
3.4	Triangles ABC and UVW that admit P as perspector.	61
3.5	X is cevadiv (P, U) while P is cevamul (U, X)	62
3.6	crossmul, crossdiv	63
3.7	P is crossmul of U and X	64
3.8	cevamul, cevadiv	65
3.9	Lamoen's construction of $P = \text{cevamul}(U, X)$	66
7.1	Level curves of the Brocard angle of the pedal triangle of point M	107
9.1	Cyclopedal congugates are isogonal conjugates	123
9.2	The orthopoint transform	125
10.1	Saragossa points of point P	132
11.1	Folium of Descartes	136
11.2	Dual curve of the folium	138
11.3	Starting from perspector P	143
11.4	Conjugacy between a line and a circumconic	146
11.5	How to generate an inscribed conic from its perspector.	147
11.6	Stereographic projection	149
11.7	Inconics : some P, F_1, F_2	157
11.8	Focus of an inconic	158
11.9	The Steiner in ellipse	162
11.10	The K-ellipse	163
11.11	Confocal conics and orthoptic circles.	172
11.12	The tangential pencil	174
11.13	Two constructions of the focal cubic	175
11.14	Two transformations of the focal cubic.	177
11.15	Constructions of paired focuses	177
11.16	The Miguel pencil and its focal cubic	180
12.1	Sin triple angle circle	192
12.2	The exclusion curve	196
12.3	Cake server (Pelle a Tarte)	197
12.4	Arbelos configuration	197
13.1	No point-shadow fall outside of the IC(X76) inconic	212
13.2	Three circles, six inversions	215
13.3	Euler pencil and incircle	217
13.4	Lemoine and Brocard pencils	218
13.5	Using ellipses to construct the eight centers	220
13.6	Apollonius circles of the not so Soddy configuration.	224
13.7	Alt-Spieker configuration	226

14.1 Poulbot's points	241
15.1 Construction of barymul	247
16.1 Drawing a divided square	253
17.1 Construct the middle of a subtangent	255
17.2 Antigonal conjugacy	266
18.1 The Euler pencil	275
18.2 Lemoine and Brocard revisited	279
18.3 Points A, B in the complex plane, and both of their projections.	286
18.4 Stereographic projection and apexes	290
20.1 The Poincaré to Klein transform	303
20.2 The Poincaré to Upper-half transform	307
21.1 Pascal's theorem : A'', B'', C'' are aligned	324
21.2 Using Cayley-Bacharach to prove the cubic associativity	325
21.3 $pK(2,4)$	329
21.4 The Darboux and Lucas cubics	335
21.5 The Orion points	337
21.6 The Simson cubic (as depicted in Gibert-CTP)	343
21.7 The Simson diagram	344
22.1 Does the focal conic intersect the orthogonal circle?	349
22.2 Tripolar curve	356
22.3 Tripolar curve, after the meltdown of two focuses	357
22.4 Tripolar cubic	358
22.5 Tripolar cubic	359
22.6 Angels	360
22.7 Cartesian ovals by inversion	361
23.1 Special Triangles	369
23.2 The star triangle	369
24.1 The complementary and anticomplementary conjugates	373
24.2 Collings configuration	375
24.3 Collings locus is a ten points rectangular hyperbola	376
25.1 Antipedal triangle	383
25.2 Orthology and perspective.	385
26.1 The Neuberg construction	389
26.2 Variable triangle abc is inscribed into fixed triangle ABC	390
26.3 Hexagonal construction of the inscribed triangle	393
26.4 Brocard LFIT	398
26.5 Miquel circles	403
26.6 The "three" similarities configuration	404
26.7 The RC hodograph	405
26.8 Circle of similarity	407
26.9 Constructing the critical triangle	411
26.10 Two parabola	415
27.1 Point \mathcal{E} is the orthopole of line $A'B'C'$	438
27.2 Revisiting the Sister Mary Cordia Karl's correspondence	441
27.3 Construct the 3 Simson lines through a given point	442
27.4 Starting from the four M_j	446
27.5 van Rees cubic defined by two isogonal pairsSection 11.27	449

29.1	How many are the Morley triangles?	458
29.2	The Lubin choices of orientation	461
29.3	Morley equilateral triangles	463
29.4	Family of X(357) : the 27 $P_{\mathbf{k}}$ belong to a same quintic	465
29.5	Family of X(1507) : the 27 $Q_{\mathbf{k}}$ belong to a same quintic	467
29.6	A 10th degree that doesn't go through the 72 R perspectors	467
29.7	The Quintic of the Morley's centers	468
29.8	Barycentric equations of \mathfrak{L}_M and \mathfrak{L}_Q	469
29.9	The Morley isocubic KM201 ($j = 03$), viewed as an ordinary isocubic	471
29.10	Three cubics from the same m -orbit	472
29.11	A random point on \mathfrak{L}_U , its pivotal isocubic and the associated triangle	473
29.12	A quasi-equilateral triangle	474
30.1	Locus of the Morley center M_{000} when A remains fixed (here, $z_A = 1$)	478
30.2	The Lubin choices of orientation	479
30.3	Morley equilateral triangles	481
30.4	The twin lighthouses theorem	482
30.5	The normal subgroups of \mathcal{PG}_{216}	484
30.6	The vertex A_{00} and its 9-sized orbit	489
30.7	Perspectors of first and second kind	490
30.8	The nine A-Martiny circles and their centers	492

List of Tables

1.1	Some well-known lines	44
2.1	Major centers	49
3.1	Some well-known triangles	56
3.2	Three cases of cevian nets	63
7.1	All these matrices	100
11.1	Some Inconics and Circumconics	150
11.2	Perspector and focuses of some in-conics	159
12.1	Some usual square roots (kitW)	185
12.2	Some usual notations (circle kit 2)	185
12.3	Some circles	186
12.4	Blocks related to Kiepert adjunctions	198
12.5	Similicenters on Kiepert RH	200
14.1	Action of the Klein group	240
17.1	Reduction of a Cremona transform	259
20.1	Indices and the associated variables	308
21.1	Some well-known cubics	327
21.2	Some cubic shadows on EAC2	339
29.1	Intersection of the \mathbf{k} cubic with the $\kappa = 000$ cubic	471
30.1	Character table of \mathcal{PG}_{216}	486
30.2	Character table of \mathcal{PG}_{72}	486
30.3	Character table of \mathcal{PG}_{18}	487

.

List of Algorithms

5.1	The reduce procedure.	80
5.2	The reducol procedure	80
5.3	The redurow procedure	80
5.4	The wedge procedure	81
5.5	About the mkalgo procedure	81
6.1	The normalize procedure	84
6.2	The [encydb] reliesk procedure	85
6.3	The [mrelire_sk] buildsk procedure	87
6.4	The [mrelire_sk] write_sk_plex procedure	88
6.5	The [mrelire_sk] buildencsort procedure	89
6.6	The [encydb] ency procedure	89
6.7	The [encydb] dichot procedure	90
6.8	The zencyy procedure (first part)	90
6.9	The zencyy procedure (continued)	91
6.10	The [encydb] localize procedure	91
11.1	The locusconi procedure	142
14.1	Calling funsym0	232
14.2	The funsym0 procedure	233
20.1	The procedure setvars enforces our naming conventions	308
20.2	The atens procedure (A means Action)	308
20.3	The dtens procedure (D means Derivation)	309
20.4	The ctens procedure (C means Catenate)	309
20.5	The rtens procedure (R means Reduce)	309
20.6	The xtens procedure (X means Xcross)	310
20.7	The addtens2 procedure	310
20.8	The chdotens procedure	315
22.1	The geotcurv procedure	351
22.2	The buildmeth procedure	352

List of Constuctions

3.2.15	Construct the fourth harmonic of three aligned points	54
3.4.7	Construct cev,cocev,anticev	55
3.11.7	Construct cevamul(U,X)	65
3.12.1	Construct sqrtdiv(F,U)	66
9.1.9	Construct the ABC-pedal triangle of a given shape	122
11.3.13	Construct the polar line of a point	140
11.7.2	Construct a circumconic from its perspector	144
11.8.5	Construct an inscribed conic from its perspector	146
11.8.8	Generate an inscribed conic using an arbitrary line	147
11.25.6	Construct the orthoptic of an inconic	172
12.24.3	Construct the mixtilinear circle	201
13.11.1	Construct the eight circles	220
15.4.4	Construct the barymul of two points	246
17.1.3	Construct the middle of a subtangent	255
17.4.5	Construct the isoconjugate knowing a pair of conjugates	260
17.4.7	Construct the fixed points of an isoconjugacy	261
17.4.8	Construct the fourth harmonic	261
26.1.6	Construct the Neuberg centers E,S	388
26.2.3	Compute the temporal parameter in a LFIT	388
26.3.3	Construct the hexagonal graphs of a LFIT	392
26.7.1	Construction of the inscribed triangles	403
26.10.12	Construct the critical triangle of a given LFIT	410
26.12.8	Construct the embedded pedal triangle	414
26.12.10	Construct the three embedded cevian triangles	414

Table of Contents

Acknowledgement	2
List of macros and symbols	5
Sorted List of Macros and Symbols	11
0.1 ruses latex	11
0.2 sets	11
0.3 flechi-flecha	11
0.4 métrique	11
0.5 operations	11
0.6 conversion	11
0.7 matrices	12
0.8 triangles	12
0.9 angles	12
0.10 lfit	12
0.11 quadlat	12
0.12 cremona	12
0.13 circles	13
0.14 Lie sphere	13
0.15 coniques	13
0.16 cubiques	13
0.17 bicircular quartics	13
0.18 hyperbolic	13
0.19 geo4D	13
0.20 tensor	13
0.21 Morley	14
0.22 reste	14
List of Macros and Symbols	3
List of Figures	15
List of Tables	19
List of Algorithms	21
List of Constructions	23
Table of Contents	25
1 Introduction	37
1.1 Special remark for French natives	38
1.2 Basic objects : points and lines	38
1.3 Figures using geogebra	40
1.3.1 Alternatives	40
1.3.2 Various versions of geogebra	40
1.3.3 Using Geogebra	40
1.3.3.1 Construction protocol	40

1.3.3.2	3D geometry	41
1.3.3.3	Macros	41
1.4	Type-keeping and type-crossing functions	41
1.5	Duality between point and lines	43
1.6	Isoconjugacy has moved	45
2	Central objects	47
2.1	Triangle centers	47
2.1.1	Favored concepts	47
2.1.2	Deprecated concepts	48
2.2	Central triangle	49
2.3	Symbolic substitution	50
3	Cevian stuff	51
3.1	Centroid stuff	51
3.2	Cross-ratio and fourth harmonic	52
3.3	About combos	54
3.4	Cevian, anticevian, cocevian triangles	55
3.4.1	Well-known triangles	56
3.4.2	Isotomic and reciprocal conjugacies	56
3.5	Transversal lines, Menelaus and Miquel theorems	57
3.6	Tripolar centroid	59
3.7	Cross-triangle	59
3.8	Perspectivity	59
3.9	Cevian nests	62
3.10	The cross case (aka case I, cev of cev)	63
3.11	The ceva case (aka case II, cev and acev)	64
3.12	The square case (aka case III, acev of acev)	66
3.13	Danneels perspectors	66
4	The French Touch	69
4.1	The "not so flying plane"	69
4.2	Algorithmic in the rantanplan	70
4.3	Thales antiquadratic form	72
4.4	Pythagoras quadratic form	73
4.5	Tangent of an angle between two lines	74
4.6	Down with flechi-flecha!	74
5	Teaching Geometry to a computer	77
5.1	Maple	77
5.2	The random observer	77
5.3	Working out an example	77
5.4	An involved observer	78
5.5	From an involved observer to another one	79
5.6	Reducing up to a factor	80
5.7	packages	81
5.8	Procedure mkalgo	81
6	Maple procedures about searchkeys	83
6.1	Formal values	83
6.2	Standardized barycentrics	83
6.3	Numerical values	84
6.3.1	About the search keys	84
6.3.2	The reliesk procedure	85
6.3.3	Collecting datas from ETC	85
6.3.4	buildsk	86
6.3.5	Dealing with complex points	87
6.3.6	Buildencsort	88
6.3.7	Procedures ency and dichot	89

6.3.8	Morley coordinates	90
6.3.9	using the 'sk' values	91
7	Euclidian structure using barycentrics	93
7.1	More about the cartesian projective plane	93
7.2	Embedded euclidian vector space	93
7.3	Lengths and areas in the Cartesian plane	94
7.4	Lengths and areas in the barycentric plane	95
7.5	About circumcircle and infinity line	96
7.6	Orthogonality	97
7.7	Angles between straight lines	98
7.8	Tangent of two lines : a proof from scratch	99
7.9	Rotations in the barycentric plane	101
7.10	Distance from a point to a line	101
7.11	More about the Pyth matrix	102
7.12	Brocard points and the sequel	103
7.12.1	Some results	103
7.12.2	Results related to the Kiepert RH	105
7.12.3	Spoiler : study of the Neuberg pencil	105
7.12.4	Spoiler : Brocard angle of a pedal triangle	106
7.13	Orthogonal projector onto a line	106
7.14	The hortocenter romance	108
8	Brief extension to 3D spaces	111
8.1	Basic results	111
8.2	Euclidian cartesian metric	114
8.3	Rotations in the 3D Euclidean space	115
8.4	Euclidian metric in the tetrahedron space	115
8.5	HH : hyperbolic hyperboloids	117
8.6	HH : some examples	119
9	Orthogonal stuff	121
9.1	Pedal and Steiner triangles	121
9.1.1	More about the pedal triangle	121
9.1.2	The Steiner circle	122
9.2	Isogonal conjugacy and Steiner triangle	122
9.3	Cyclopedal conjugate	123
9.4	Steiner line	124
9.5	Parallelogy	125
9.6	Orthology	125
9.7	Orthopole	125
9.8	Spoiler : Moebius-Steiner-Cremona transform	125
9.9	Orthocorrespondents	127
9.10	Isoscelizer	127
10	Circumcevian stuff	129
10.1	Circum-cevians, circum-anticevians	129
10.2	Steinbart transform	129
10.3	Circum-eigentransform	130
10.4	Dual triangles, DC and CD Points	131
10.5	Saragossa points	131
10.6	Vertex associates	132
11	About conics	135
11.1	Tangent to a curve	135
11.2	Folium of Descartes	136
11.3	General facts about conics	138
11.4	Tangential conics	141
11.5	Locusconi	142

11.6	Founding configuration	142
11.7	Circumconics	144
11.8	Inconics	146
11.9	Poncelet porism	148
11.10	Conic cross-ratios	149
11.11	Some in- and circum- conics	150
11.12	Cevian conics	151
11.13	Direction of axes	152
11.14	Focuses of a conic	153
11.14.1	Soddy Conic	154
11.15	Heptagonal triangle	154
11.16	PPPP, the four points pencil	155
11.17	FF, the focal tangential pencil	156
11.18	Focuses of an inconic	156
11.19	Focuses of the Steiner inconic	160
11.19.1	Using Morley affixes	160
11.19.2	Using barycentrics	160
11.19.3	Using one of the focuses	162
11.20	The Brocard ellipse, aka the K-ellipse	162
11.21	Parabola	164
11.21.1	Inscribed parabola	164
11.21.2	Circumscribed parabola	165
11.22	Hyperbola	166
11.22.1	Circum-hyperbolas	166
11.22.2	Circum-rectangular-hyperbolas	167
11.22.3	Inscribed hyperbolas	167
11.22.4	Inscribed-rectangular-hyperbolas	168
11.23	Metric elements	168
11.24	Diagonal conics	170
11.24.1	Pencils of diagonal conics	171
11.25	Orthoptic cycle	171
11.26	PTPT, the bitangent pencil	173
11.26.1	The focal cubic	173
11.26.2	More constructions of the focal cubic	175
11.27	LLLL, the Miquel pencil	178
11.28	Tg and Gt mappings	181
11.29	Polar coordinates	181
12	More about circles	183
12.1	General results	183
12.2	Inversion in a circle	185
12.3	Antipodal Pairs on Circles	185
12.4	Circumcircle	186
12.5	Incircle	187
12.6	Nine-points circle	188
12.7	Polar circle	189
12.8	Longchamps circle	189
12.9	Bevan circle	189
12.10	Spieker circle	189
12.11	Alt-Spieker circle	190
12.12	Apollonian circles	190
12.13	Apollonius circle	190
12.14	First Lemoine circle	191
12.15	Second Lemoine circle	192
12.16	Sine-triple-angle circle	192
12.17	Brocard 3-6 circle	193
12.18	Second Brocard circle	193
12.19	Orthocentroidal 2-4 circle	194

12.20	Fuhrmann 4-8 circle	195
12.21	Taylor circle	196
12.22	Kiepert RH and isosceles adjunctions	196
12.23	Cyclocevian conjugate	199
12.24	Mixtilinear circles	199
13	Pencils of Cycles in the Triangle Plane	203
13.1	Introductory remarks	203
13.1.1	How many points at infinity should be used?	203
13.1.2	Umbilics	204
13.1.3	Notations	205
13.2	Cycles and representatives	205
13.3	Fundamental quadric and orthogonality	208
13.4	Pencils of cycles	210
13.5	Classification of pencils	211
13.6	Quadrimatrix of a pencil	212
13.7	Apexes	213
13.8	Inversion	213
13.8.1	One cycle	213
13.8.2	Two cycles	214
13.8.3	Three circles	214
13.8.4	Steiner porism	216
13.9	Euler pencil and incircle	216
13.10	The Brocard-Lemoine pencils	218
13.11	The Apollonius configuration	220
13.11.1	Construction using conics	220
13.11.2	Tangent cycles in the representative space	221
13.11.3	An example : the Soddy circles	221
13.11.4	An other example : the not so Soddy circles	223
13.11.5	The three excircles	225
13.11.6	The special case	226
14	Morley and complex numbers	227
14.1	Inclusive coordinates	227
14.2	Morley method to deal with complex conjugacy	229
14.3	Morley version of the usual operators	230
14.4	Lubin representation of first degree	232
14.5	Some examples of first degree	234
14.6	Lubin representation of second degree	236
14.7	Poncelet representation	238
14.8	Poulbot's points (using the Lubin-4 parametrization)	239
14.9	More about the foci of a conic	242
15	Collineations	243
15.1	Definition	243
15.2	Involutory collineations	244
15.3	Usual affine transforms as collineations	244
15.4	Barycentric multiplication as a collineation	246
15.5	Complement and anticomplement as collineations	247
15.6	Collineations and cevamul, cevadiv, crossmul, crossdiv	247
15.7	Cevian conjugacies	248
15.8	Miscellany	250
15.8.1	Poles-of-lines and polar-of-points triangles	250
15.8.2	Unary cofactor triangle, eigencenter	251
16	Perspective Drawing	253
16.1	Working out an example	253
16.2	Bibliography	254

17 Cremona group and isoconjugacies	255
17.1 Homographic Cremona transforms of the projective plane	255
17.2 Defining the general Cremona transforms	258
17.3 Working out some examples	259
17.4 Isoconjugacy and sqrtdiv operator	260
17.4.1 Some other constructions	261
17.4.2 Morley point of view	262
17.4.3 The isogonal Morley formula	263
17.4.4 Isoconjkin	263
17.5 Angular coordinates	264
17.5.1 The general case	264
17.5.2 More about the Steiner triangle	264
17.5.3 Antigonial conjugacy	265
17.6 Isogonality and perspectivity	267
18 Pencils of cycles in the complex plane	269
18.1 The Z formalism (Pencils in PCC3)	270
18.1.1 Z-Veronese map	270
18.1.2 Homographic actions over the cycles' space	273
18.2 Revisiting the Euler pencil	274
18.3 Isodynamic points	276
18.3.1 Equianharmonic points	276
18.3.2 Revisiting the Brocard-Lemoine pencil	276
18.3.3 Homographic stabilizer	278
18.4 The Pedoe formalism	280
18.4.1 The Pedoe map	280
18.4.2 Pedoe version of the homographic actions	281
18.5 The Spherical formalism	282
18.5.1 The Spherical map	283
18.5.2 Spherical version of the homographic actions	285
18.6 Stereographic projection	286
18.7 Quaternions	287
18.8 Stereographic formalism	288
18.9 Comparison with Cartesian and Artinian metrics	291
19 The Lie Sphere	293
19.1 Elementary properties	293
19.2 Example 1 : the incircle	295
19.3 Exemple 2 : the three excenters	295
19.4 Mixtilinear circles	296
19.5 Arbelos	297
20 Hyperbolic geometry	299
20.1 The Poincaré plane	299
20.2 The Klein plane	301
20.3 From a model to the other	302
20.4 More about hyperbolic distance	304
20.5 Hyperbolic triangle	306
20.5.1 Sideline	306
20.5.2 Line-bisectors	306
20.5.3 Medians	306
20.5.4 Altitudes	306
20.5.5 Trigonometry	307
20.6 The Upper-half plane	307
20.7 Teaching tensors to a computer	307
20.8 The sphere : dealing with an example	310
20.8.1 External and internal coordinates	310
20.8.2 Jacobians	311
20.8.2.1 Internal versus another internal	311

20.8.2.2	internal versus external	312
20.8.3	More about the projectors	313
20.8.4	The metric tensor	313
20.9	Christoffel symbols	314
20.9.1	Covariance	314
20.9.2	Taking the steepest line as an example	314
20.9.3	Computing the Christoffels	315
20.9.4	Defining the Christoffels	316
20.9.5	Moving	318
20.10	Curvature	318
20.11	Back to Poincaré and Klein	321
21	About cubics	323
21.1	Characterisation of a cubic	323
21.1.1	More about the folium	323
21.1.2	Pascal's theorem	324
21.2	Group structure of a cubic	324
21.3	Isocubics	326
21.4	Pivotal isocubics $pK(P,U)$	326
21.4.1	Another description	330
21.4.2	Group structure (pivotal cubics)	330
21.4.3	$ABCIJKL$ cubics : the Lubin(2) point of view	331
21.4.4	Using a more handy basis	332
21.4.5	Darboux and Lucas cubics	334
21.4.5.1	Presentation of K004 and K007	334
21.4.5.2	The Orion bundle	336
21.4.6	Equal areas (second) cevian cubic aka K155	338
21.4.7	The cubic K060	339
21.4.8	Eigentransform	340
21.5	Non pivotal isocubics $nK(P,U,k)$ and $nK0(P,U)$	341
21.5.1	vanRees cubic	342
21.5.2	Conicopivotal isocubics $cK(\#F,U)$	342
21.5.3	Simson cubic, aka K010	343
21.5.4	Brocard second cubic aka K018	345
22	Tripolar curves	347
22.1	The bicircular space	347
22.2	Define and draw	350
22.3	The generic case	350
22.4	Cross-ratios	354
22.5	Introducing the cut parameter	355
22.6	Barycentrics wrt the diagonal triangle	355
22.7	When E is on the curve	357
22.8	The tripolar circular cubics	357
22.8.1	When the fourth focus is moving	360
23	Special Triangles	363
23.1	Changing coordinates, functions and equations	363
23.2	Residual triangles	364
23.3	Incentral triangle	364
23.4	Excentral triangle	364
23.5	Medial triangle	365
23.6	Antimedial triangle	365
23.7	Orthic triangle	365
23.8	Tangential triangle	366
23.9	Brocard triangle (first)	366
23.10	Brocard triangle (second)	366
23.11	Brocard triangle (third)	366
23.12	Intouch triangle (contact triangle)	367

23.13	Extouch triangle	367
23.14	Hexyl triangle	367
23.15	Fuhrmann triangle	367
23.16	Star triangle	368
24	Formal operations	371
24.1	Unary operators	371
24.2	cevamul, cevadiv, crossmul, crossdiv	371
24.3	Formal operators and conics	372
24.4	crossdiff, crosssum, polarmul, polardiv	372
24.5	Complementary and anticomplementary conjugates	373
24.6	Hirstpoint aka Hirst inverse	374
24.7	Line conjugate	374
24.8	Collings transform	374
25	Sondat theorems	377
25.1	Perspective and directly similar	377
25.2	Perspective and inversely similar	379
25.3	Parallelogy	381
25.4	Orthology	381
25.5	Simply orthologic and perspective triangles	384
25.6	Bilogic triangles	384
26	Linear Families of Inscribed Triangles	387
26.1	General linear families of triangles	387
26.2	Slowness- and equi-center of a LFIT	388
26.2.1	Slowness center	388
26.2.2	Equicenter	390
26.2.3	Pilar point	391
26.2.4	Parametrization of a LFIT	391
26.2.5	Asymetric parametrization	392
26.2.6	Gravity centers	392
26.3	Hexagonal graphs	392
26.3.1	Constructions	392
26.3.2	Hexagonal conics	393
26.3.3	Some collineations	394
26.3.4	Graphs, the general case	395
26.4	Temporal graphs	395
26.4.1	Pilar point, pilar conic	395
26.4.2	Temporal graphs	396
26.4.3	Temporal conics	396
26.4.4	Tucker associate LFIT	397
26.5	HH and temporal point of view	399
26.5.1	Temporal embedding	399
26.5.2	Menelaüs HH (parallelogy)	400
26.6	Miquel circles	401
26.7	Constructions of the inscribed triangles	403
26.8	The three similarities theorem	403
26.9	Similarities and Cremona transforms	406
26.10	Describing a LFIT from its degenerate triangles	408
26.10.1	General results	408
26.10.2	Miscellany	410
26.10.3	Critical triangle	410
26.10.4	Orthologic families	411
26.11	Envelopes of the sidelines (parabolas)	412
26.12	Special shapes of the inscribed triangles	413
26.12.1	LFIT of equilateral triangles	413
26.12.2	LFIT of similar triangles	413
26.12.3	LFIT of pedal triangles	414

26.12.4 Cevian triangles in a LFIT	414
26.13 Families with constant area	414
26.13.1 Three non concurrent lines (rewritten)	414
26.13.2 Three concurrent lines	416
26.14 Concurrent hexagonal graphs	416
26.14.1 Assuming that \mathcal{S} is known	416
26.14.2 Assuming that K is known	417
26.14.3 Assuming that K is the center of gravity	417
26.15 When the graphs are given	417
26.15.1 Catalan graphs	417
26.15.2 Hexagonal graphs	418
26.15.3 The marvelous formula	419
26.16 Observers (about perspectivities)	420
26.16.1 Metric observer	421
26.16.1.1 Forcing the orthocenter	421
26.16.1.2 Forcing the isogonal center	421
26.16.2 Cevenol graphs	422
26.16.3 Poulbot observers	422
26.16.4 Singular observers	423
26.16.5 Proof of the theorem	423
26.16.6 Reciprocal	424
26.17 Orthojoin	425
27 Quadrilaterals	427
27.1 Immortal glory of our ancestors	427
27.2 Lines only	428
27.3 Newton stuff	429
27.4 Steiner stuff	430
27.5 Lubin cookbook for quadrilaterals	432
27.5.1 Separate treatment of the transversal	432
27.5.2 From the past : another way of doing	434
27.5.3 Symmetric treatment of the four lines	434
27.6 Simson lines (using barycentrics)	436
27.7 The Steiner deltoid (using Lubin-1)	436
27.8 Orthopole and pedal LFIT	438
27.8.1 Trigone and transversal	438
27.8.2 Using the flat pedal triangles	439
27.9 Sister Marie Cordia Karl	440
27.10 The four pedal LFIT of a quadrilateral	442
27.10.1 Lubin coordinates	443
27.10.2 The so-called paralogic triangles	444
27.11 Van Rees cubic	444
27.11.1 Ordered quadrangle (complex coordinates)	445
27.11.2 Cartesian centered equation	446
27.11.3 Barycentric version	448
27.12 Exercises	449
27.13 Diagonal triangle	450
27.14 Inscribed (ordered) quadrangle	450
27.15 Bicentric quadrilaterals	451
27.16 Rigby points	453
28 Morley : LyX macros, to be moved atop	455

29	Curves connecting the Morley centers	457
29.1	Introduction	457
29.1.1	The Morley theorem	457
29.1.2	Aim of this chapter	457
29.1.3	Organization of this chapter	458
29.2	Some methods	459
29.2.1	The complex projective triangle plane	459
29.2.2	Unavoidable constants and base field	459
29.2.3	Morley method to avoid conjugacy	460
29.2.4	The Lubin parameterization	460
29.2.5	Lubin parameterization using sixth degree formulas	460
29.2.6	Symmetric expressions	461
29.3	The basic objects	461
29.3.1	The trisectors	461
29.3.2	The 27 Morley vertices	462
29.3.3	The Lubin proof of the Morley theorem	462
29.3.4	The barycentric formula	464
29.4	Curves connecting the Taylor-Marr perspectors	464
29.4.1	The primary perspectors	465
29.4.2	The adjunct primary perspectors	465
29.4.3	The secondary perspectors and their adjuncts	466
29.4.4	The adjunct secondary perspectors	466
29.5	Two new orbital curves	467
29.5.1	How to discover a curve that contains a set of points	467
29.5.2	The quintic of the Morley centers	468
29.5.3	A lemma about the Bevan centers	469
29.5.4	The quintic of the secondary perspectors	469
29.6	Two properties concerning the Morley cubics	470
29.6.1	Description of a pivotal cubic	470
29.6.2	Intersections between Morley cubics	471
29.6.3	Inscribed pivotal equilateral triangles	472
29.7	Some concluding remarks	474
29.7.1	Degeneracies in the equilateral triangle	474
29.7.2	Summarizing our results	474
30	Groups acting over the Morley configuration	477
30.1	Introduction	477
30.1.1	Aim of this chapter	477
30.1.2	Morley centers as an intricate family	477
30.1.3	Organization of this chapter	478
30.2	Morley configuration for computers	479
30.2.1	The Lubin parameterization	479
30.2.2	Symmetric expressions	479
30.2.3	Isogonal duality	480
30.3	Numerical explorations	480
30.3.1	Taylor-Marr naming conventions	480
30.3.2	Two examples	481
30.3.3	Hunting the equilateral triangles	481
30.3.4	The lighthouse triangles	482
30.3.5	Hunting the perspective triangles	482
30.4	Groups acting over the Morley configuration	483
30.4.1	Motivation : the Lubin proof	483
30.4.2	The general abstract group \mathcal{PG}_{216}	483
30.4.3	Three scalar class-invariants	485
30.4.4	Character table of \mathcal{PG}_{216}	485
30.4.5	Subgroups \mathcal{PG}_{72} , \mathcal{PG}_{18} , \mathcal{PG}_9^\bullet	486
30.4.6	Action of the generators on the indices	487
30.4.7	The Cones proof about the strange triangles	488

30.5	Orbits	488
30.5.1	Orbit of a vertex	488
30.5.2	Orbits of the Morley and the Taylor-Marr centers	489
30.5.3	Orbits of the primary perspectors	490
30.5.4	Orbits of the secondary perspectors	491
30.6	Some applications	491
30.6.1	Martiny circles	491
30.6.2	Equilateral perspectors	492
30.7	Summary of this chapter	493
31	Using Kimberling's database into Maple	495
31.1	Sparse version (2019 and after)	495
31.1.1	How-to update	495
31.1.2	Duplicates	495
31.1.3	la table barita	496
31.1.4	Description	496
31.1.5	Rationales	496
31.1.6	Usage : the new ency procedure	497
31.2	Older versions (2017 and before)	497
31.3	Synchronizing formal barycentrics and the search keys	497
31.4	Requirements (all versions)	497
31.5	Building the database	497
	Bibliography	499
	Index	515
	Index	515

Chapter 1

Introduction

Many changes have occurred in the way we are doing geometry, from the old ancient times of Euclid and Apollonius. Most of them are related to yet another way of performing "automated" computing of properties, rather than relying on intuition to find "beautiful geometric proofs". Many individuals have contributed to this long process, and attributing a specific discovery to a specific individual is not an easy task (Coolidge, 1940).

The most eminent milestones along this long road are the individuals who have summarized the discoveries of their time into an efficient way of writing down the questions to solve (Fourrey, 1907). Each time, the new way of writing was appearing as doing the job by itself and providing the required answers through something like a least action trajectory. Heroes are no more required, replaced by computing power.

Writing numbers and calculations in a tractable manner is associated with Al-Khwarizmi and his *Algebra* (825). Using coordinates (x, y) to describe points and compute their geometrical properties (as well as the exponent notation for polynomials) is associated with Descartes and his *Géométrie* (1637). Using homogeneous coordinates $x : y : z$ to implement the principle of continuity when dealing with objects that escape to infinity is associated with Möbius and his *barizentrische Calcul* (1827).

More recently, the very idea of stamping a hash-code onto each noteworthy point involved in Triangle Geometry and then practice some kind of computer aided inventory management (Kimberling, 1998-2024) has changed the practice of geometers. This idea has emerged from a more general trend, where

barycentrics are understood to *define* points, lines, circles, triangle centers, etc., and zero determinants are understood to *define* collinearity and concurrence. Doing that way, triangle geometry, formally speaking, is much more general than the study of a single Euclidean triangle. In the formal treatment, sometimes called *transfigured triangle geometry*, the symbols a, b, c are regarded as algebraic unknowns, so that points, defined as functions of a, b, c , are not the usual points of a two-dimensional plane. When (a, b, c) are real numbers restricted by the "triangle inequalities" for sidelengths, the resulting geometry is traditional triangle geometry (Kimberling, 1998).

When possible, computed proofs are given that use formal computing tools. This kind of proof is deprecated by several authors. Nevertheless, these proofs are the easiest since all the messy job is done by a computer and are also the safest. A construction that sounds like a "beautiful geometrical proof" is too often invalid due to some hidden exception. During a computerized proof, exceptions are appearing as multiplicative factors, according to the polynomial model :

$$\text{conclusion} \times \text{exceptions} = \text{hypothesis}$$

To quote the Knuth's foreword to Petkovsek et al. (1996) :

Science is what we understand well enough to explain it to a computer. Art is everything else we do. During the past several years important parts of mathematics has been transformed from an Art to a Science.

1.1 Special remark for French natives

Lorsque vous écrivez pour un public américain, mieux vaut commencer par montrer que le sujet est suffisamment intéressant pour mériter du temps et de la peine. Lorsque vous écrivez pour un public français, mieux vaut commencer par montrer que l'auteur dispose d'une hauteur de vue suffisante. Si vous percevez les choses de cette façon, le Chapitre 4 est le bon endroit par où commencer.¹

1.2 Basic objects : points and lines

Fact 1.2.1. *You can safely build temples and pyramids by drawing reduced maps, and then rescale your measurements to the real world.*

Remark 1.2.2. Beside this founding property the reader is supposed to have heard about some basic facts concerning numbers. There are sheep. We can eat some of them and count the others. And so, we get \mathbb{N} . Over the centuries, $\mathbb{Q}, \mathbb{Z}, \mathbb{R}$ have been obtained from geometric considerations. One can follow this process in [Stillwell \(2010\)](#), while it's result has been summarized in [Artin \(1957\)](#).

Definition 1.2.3. In this book, \mathbb{R} and \mathbb{C} are **defined** as axiomatic objects.

Definition 1.2.4. The abbreviation "etc." will stand for "et cyclically". When an "A-object" has been defined as $F(A, B, C)$, then the B-object is $F(B, C, A)$, obtained by the cyclic permutation $ABC \mapsto BCA$, and the C-object is, likewise, $F(C, A, B)$. Example: If A' is the point where lines AP and BC meet, and B' and C' are defined cyclically, then B' is where lines BP and CA meet, and C' is where lines CP and AB meet.

Definition 1.2.5. Equality. We will use the **simeq** sign (i.e. \simeq) to denote an equality up to a non vanishing multiplier, and restrict the use of the **equal** sign (i.e. $=$) to a strong equality. In other words

$$x = y \text{ means } x - y = 0 \text{ while } x \simeq y \text{ means } (\exists k \neq 0) (kx - y = 0)$$

Moreover we will use the special signs **doteq** (i.e. \doteq) and **simdoteq** (i.e. $\dot{\simeq}$) to denote "definitional equalities", in order to emphasize the fact that these equalities aren't equations: they are introducing new objects.

Definition 1.2.6. A **point** is an element of $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^3)$. To tell the same thing more simply, a point is represented by a **column** of three numbers (the barycentrics of the point), not all of them being zero, and such a column is dealt "in a projective manner", i.e. up to a proportionality factor. An efficient way to write such a projective column is the colon notation :

$$P \doteq p : q : r \quad \text{meaning that} \quad P \simeq \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} kp \\ kq \\ kr \end{pmatrix} \quad \forall k \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$$

Definition 1.2.7. A **line** is an element of the dual of the point space. To tell the same thing more simply, a line is represented by a **row** of three numbers (the barycentrics of the line), not all of them being zero, and such a row is dealt "in a projective manner", i.e. up to a proportionality factor. A line will be described as :

$$\Delta \doteq \left(\begin{array}{ccc} \rho & \sigma & \tau \end{array} \right) \simeq \left(\begin{array}{ccc} \lambda\rho & \lambda\sigma & \lambda\tau \end{array} \right) \quad \forall \lambda \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$$

Notation 1.2.8. In all these definitions, property $p^2 + q^2 + r^2 \neq 0$ and $\rho^2 + \sigma^2 + \tau^2 \neq 0$ are ever intended. Colon notation will *ever* be restricted to inline equations describing columns, and *never* be used for rows. Anyway, such a notation would be hopeless when dealing with matrices.

¹When writing for an American audience, you better start by demonstrating that the topic is interesting enough to warrant the required time and effort. When writing for a French audience, you better start by demonstrating that the author has a sufficient perspective and expertise. In the second case, the "French Touch" chapter is a good starting point.

Definition 1.2.9. Incidence relations. We will say that a line $\Delta \simeq (p, q, r)$ contains a point $U \simeq u : v : w$, or that Δ goes through U , or that U belongs to Δ when their dot product vanishes, i.e. :

$$U \in \Delta \iff pu + qv + rw = 0$$

Remark 1.2.10. It is clear that the incidence relation is projective, i.e. holds for any choice of the proportionality factors.

Definition 1.2.11. The **collinearity** of three points $P \simeq p : q : r$, $U \simeq u : v : w$, $X \simeq x : y : z$ is defined by the following determinant equation :

$$\begin{vmatrix} x & p & u \\ y & q & v \\ z & r & w \end{vmatrix} = 0 \quad (1.1)$$

When $P \neq U$, the set of all the X that satisfies (1.1) is what is usually called the line PU .

Definition 1.2.12. A **triangle** is an ordered set of three non collinear points. Its natural representation is an invertible square "matrix of columns", where each column is defined up to a proportionality factor (right action of a diagonal matrix). On the contrary, a "may be degenerate triangle" is a matrix such that (i) columns are not proportional to each other and (ii) rank is at least two. When at least two points are equal, the triangle is "totally degenerate".

Remark 1.2.13. Without explicit permission, a triangle is not allowed to be degenerate, while totally degenerate triangles are (quite ever) to be avoided.

Definition 1.2.14. The **concurrence** of three lines $\Delta_1 \simeq (d, e, f)$, $\Delta_2 \simeq (p, q, r)$ and $\Delta_3 \simeq (u, v, w)$ is defined by the following determinant equation :

$$\begin{vmatrix} d & e & f \\ r & s & t \\ u & v & w \end{vmatrix} = 0 \quad (1.2)$$

When $\Delta_1 \neq \Delta_2$, the set of all the Δ_3 that satisfies (1.2) is usually called the pencil generated by the two lines.

Definition 1.2.15. A **trigone** is a set of ordered three non concurrent lines. Its natural representation is an invertible square "matrix of rows", where each row is defined up to a proportionality factor (left action of a diagonal matrix).

Proposition 1.2.16. *The reciprocal matrix of a triangle is a trigone and conversely. Adjoint matrices can be used instead of inverses due to proportionality. Relation $\mathcal{T}^{-1} \cdot \mathcal{T} = \text{Id}$ is nothing but the incidence relations : $A' \notin B'C'$, $A' \in A'B'$, $A' \in A'C'$ and cyclically.*

Remark 1.2.17. It should be noticed that a tetra-angle defines an hexa-gone, while an tetra-gone (quadrilateral) defines an hexa-angle : $n = n(n-1)/2$ holds only when $n = 3$.

Definition 1.2.18. The **line at infinity** \mathcal{L}_b is the locus of points $x : y : z$ such that $x + y + z = 0$, so that any point out of \mathcal{L}_b can be described by a triple such that $x + y + z = 1$. Using only this representation would discard \mathcal{L}_b and is nothing but the usual affine geometry.

Definition 1.2.19. Barycentric basis. Special points $A = 1 : 0 : 0$, $B = 0 : 1 : 0$, $C = 0 : 0 : 1$ are usually identified with the vertices of a triangle in the euclidian² plane, so that all (barycentric) points can be mapped onto the euclidian plane (completed with the appropriate line at infinity). The side lengths of this triangle are denoted $BC = a$, $CA = b$ and $AB = c$. Since a triangle is not a two-angle, none of the a , b , c are allowed to vanish.

²This kind of plane is to be named as euclidian rather than as Euclidean, since the very idea to compute figures instead of drawing computations is as far as possible from the thoughts and practices of the historical figure who wrote the celebrated *Elements*.

1.3 Figures using geogebra

1.3.1 Alternatives

The very idea to pay something for using Pythagoras theorem seems terrific, and therefore using a free software like *geogebra* appears as a requirement. The following remarks may nevertheless have some historical value.

ps, pstricks PostScript was a proprietary language. But it became a de facto standard for talking to printers of any brand, and was finally released to the open source status.

maple proprietary. Moreover not sufficiently versatile.

kseg *kseg* (KSEG, 1999-2006) was our initial best choice, providing *.ps images. But the maintenance stopped near 2006. Figures were fine in the Linux version, but - constructions were badly saved, requiring the use of the win\$ version (through wine) for writing the s.

1.3.2 Various versions of geogebra

1. https://wiki.geogebra.org/en/Keyboard_Shortcuts
2. /opt/geogebra-old/geogebra/geogebra
--v GeoGebra 5.0.309.0 20 December 2016 Java 1.8.0_121-64bit
3. /usr/share/geogebra-classic/GeoGebra
--v error!!!
Version: 6.0.666.0-offline (21 September 2021)
4. /usr/share/geogebra/geogebra
--v GeoGebra 5.0.755.0 17 January 2023 Java 1.8.0_121-64bit
213686 Dec 2016 geogebra_cas.jar
054109 Jan 2023 geogebra_cas.jar si court !!! surprise !!!

1.3.3 Using Geogebra

From 2014, more and more figures of the present Glossary were drawn using Geogebra.

1. Nowadays, exporting a graphical output is easy. In the old ancient times, the best output was obtained as a *.pdf file, resulting into a page, requiring a manual **pdfcrop** to the bounding box.

2. Obtaining the second intersection of two objects requires the following incantation :

```
Element[Remove[{Intersect[BBB,CCC]}, {A}], 1]
```

3. A command like

```
X186 = TriangleCenter[A, B, C, 186]
```

can be used when $n < 3053$ (Geogebra 5.0.309.0-3D, tested 2016-12-12). Moreover

```
indexof(P, sequence(Trianglecenter(A,B,C,j),j,1,10))
```

allows to identify P among the points $X(j)$ known to geogebra (the other points generate $(?,?)$ and everything stands at the right place).

1.3.3.1 Construction protocol

Export the construction protocol in *.html, with nocolor, nopicture, only three columns (name&type,definition,value). And then **extract.sh** will display something to insert into a LyX equation.

1.3.3.2 3D geometry

Triangle	ABC	$\text{Polygon}(A, B, C)$
Segment	AB	$\text{Segment}[A, B, ABC]$
Circle	f	$\text{Circle}(A, 4.5, ABC)$
Point	D	$(x(H), y(H), 5)$
Pyramid	$ABCD$	$\text{Pyramid}(ABC, D)$
Segment	BD	$\text{Segment}[B, D, ABCD]$
Triangle	ABD	$\text{Polygon}(A, B, D, ABCD)$
Line	j	$\text{PerpendicularLine}[P, AB, ABC]$
Line	k	$\text{PerpendicularLine}[P, ABC]$
Plane	o	$\text{PerpendicularPlane}[P, BD]$

- circle f is drawn in the ABC plane
- line j is parallel to plane ABC , through point P and perpendicular to line AB
- line k is perpendicular to plane ABC
- segment AB is an element of ABC , not an "independent" object.

1.3.3.3 Macros

1. Dealing with macros is not so easy. As a rule: ever suppress any non-required sub-macro when archiving a macro from its source file. Sometimes, you have to unzip the *.ggb file and modify it with a text editor.
2. When transmitting a complex point P to a macro, a safe method is to create, inside the macro, a copy of this point using `Tocomplex`

1.4 Type-keeping and type-crossing functions

Remark 1.4.1. The type-keeping/type-crossing properties are better understood when they are described in terms of collineations. Chapter 15 will be devoted to this topic. The aim of the current Section is only to provide some useful tools as soon as possible.

Definition 1.4.2. Trilinears and barycentrics. Triangle people splits into a barycentric tribe and a trilinear tribe. The trilinear tribe thinks that trilinears, i.e. $p : q : r^3$ are better looking than barycentrics and redefine everything according to their preferences. The barycentric tribe thinks that barycentrics, i.e. $p : q : r^4$ are better looking than trilinears and redefine everything according to their preferences.

Remark 1.4.3. Trilinears can be measured directly on the figure, since they are the directed distances to the sidelines. When compasses were actual compasses and not a button to click over, using trilinears was a must. Nowadays, the existence –and the persistence– of both systems can be used for an interesting renewal of the Capulet against Montague story, as in [Conway \(1997\)](#). But this could also be used to gain a better insight over many point-transforms used in the Triangle Geometry.

Definition 1.4.4. Vectors are covariant, while forms are contravariant. Therefore, coordinates that measure a vector are forms and are contravariant. At the same time, coordinates that measure a form are covariant. In other words, $p : q : r$ is contravariant, while $[p, q, r]$ is covariant.

³someone from the barycentric tribe would write them $p/a : q/b : r/c$, since she would use $p : q : r$ for the barycentrics

⁴someone from the trilinear tribe would write them $ap : bq : cr$, since she would use $p : q : r$ for the trilinears

Definition 1.4.5. We will say that a function $P \mapsto f(P) : p : q : r \mapsto u : v : w$ is type-keeping or type-crossing or type scrambling according to :

$$\begin{cases} \text{type keeping} & \text{when } f(\alpha p : \beta q : \gamma r) = \alpha u : \beta v : \gamma w \\ \text{type crossing} & \text{when } f(\alpha p : \beta q : \gamma r) = \frac{u}{\alpha} : \frac{v}{\beta} : \frac{w}{\gamma} \\ \text{type scrambling} & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

For a function of several variables, global type-keeping means :

$$f(\alpha p : \beta q : \gamma r, \alpha u : \beta v : \gamma w) = \alpha x : \beta y : \gamma z \quad \text{when} \quad f(p : q : r, u : v : w) = x : y : z$$

Remark 1.4.6. An object that is intended to describe a point has to be contravariant. An object that is intended to describe a line has to be covariant, while relationships like collinearity (1.1) and concurrence(1.2) have to be invariant. Therefore a function whose input and output are points has to be type-keeping. In the same way, a function whose input and output are lines has to be type-keeping. On the contrary, a function whose entries are points and output are lines has to be type-crossing. In the same way, a function whose entries are lines and output are points has to be type-crossing. These facts are the reasons why both tribes, using barycentrics or trilinears, are proceeding to the same geometry.

Definition 1.4.7. Barycentric multiplication is the multiplication component by component of the barycentrics of two points. This operation is denoted :

$$P *_b X \simeq p x : q y : r z \quad (1.3)$$

Component-wise multiplication of trilinears would be another possibility. This is the way of doing of the trilinear tribe.

Definition 1.4.8. Barycentric division is the division component by component of the barycentrics of two points. This operation is denoted :

$$P \div_b X \simeq \frac{p}{x} : \frac{q}{y} : \frac{r}{z} \quad (1.4)$$

Component-wise division of trilinears would be another possibility. This is the way of doing of the trilinear tribe.

Remark 1.4.9. These transforms are introduced here to provide an easy description of some other transforms. The study of their geometrical meaning is postponed to Chapter 17. For our present needs, we only need to remark that both :

$$X \mapsto X *_b P \div_b U \quad \text{and} \quad X \mapsto P *_b U \div_b X$$

are globally type-keeping transforms, that can be used to obtain points from points, or lines from lines.

Definition 1.4.10. Sqrtdiv. Let $F \simeq f : g : h$ be a fixed point, and U a moving point, restricted to avoid the sidelines of ABC . The mapping defined by :

$$sqrtdiv_F(U) \doteq U_F^\# \simeq \frac{f^2}{u} : \frac{g^2}{v} : \frac{h^2}{w} \quad (1.5)$$

is globally type-keeping and describes a pointwise transform, whose fixed points are the four $\pm f : \pm g : \pm h$. This map $U \mapsto U_F^\#$ is exactly the same as $U \mapsto U_P^*$ defined by $U_P^* \simeq P \div_b U$ and $P \simeq F *_b F$.

The second form is often used, introducing a fictitious point $P \simeq f^2 : g^2 : h^2$. This will be studied at length at Section 17.4.

Remark 1.4.11. Using $\#$ instead of $*$ in this context is already the way of doing of the cubics' people (Ehrmann and Gibert, 2005) : fixed points of the transform (F and its relatives) have a clearer geometrical meaning than P . On the other hand, when P crosses the borders of ABC , the coordinates of point F become imaginary, and the configuration is less visual.

Remark 1.4.12. The converse operation of $sqrtdiv$ would be $sqrtdmul$ defined as $(U, X) \mapsto \sqrt{ux} : \sqrt{vy} : \sqrt{wz}$ but this map is multivalued. When U, X are triangle centers and ux, vy, wz are perfect squares, it makes sense to fix signs so that F is also a triangle center.

1.5 Duality between point and lines

Does equation $pu + qv + rw = 0$ means $P \in \Delta_U$ or $U \in \Delta_P$? Without any further indication, one cannot decide which is the point and which is the line. This is called duality. If you want to be specific, you have to say :

$$\begin{bmatrix} u & v & w \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{bmatrix} = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{bmatrix} p & q & r \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} u \\ v \\ w \end{bmatrix} = 0$$

and remember how points/lines are mapped into columns/rows. In any case, points aren't lines and columns aren't rows. An efficient formulation of incidence axioms must recognize this elementary fact.

Definition 1.5.1. The **wedge** operator is the universal factorization of the determinant. This means that wedge of two columns is a row, while wedge of two rows is a column. One has :

$$\begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix} \wedge \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \\ w \end{pmatrix} \simeq (qw - rv, ru - pw, pv - qu)$$

$$(p, q, r) \wedge (u, v, w) \simeq \begin{pmatrix} qw - rv \\ ru - pw \\ pv - qu \end{pmatrix}$$

Proposition 1.5.2. When $P \neq U$, the barycentrics of the line PU are provided by operation $P \wedge U$. As it should be, this operation is commutative and is type-crossing.

Proof. The wedge of two points cannot be $0 : 0 : 0$ when the points are different, therefore $\Delta = P \wedge U$ defines a line. By definition, we have :

$$\left(\begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix} \wedge \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \\ w \end{pmatrix} \right) \cdot \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} p & u & x \\ q & v & y \\ r & w & z \end{vmatrix}$$

and the conclusion comes from the fact that inclusion of a line into another implies equality. Type-crossing is obvious from stratospheric reasons... but can also be checked on the components (up to a global $\alpha\beta\gamma$ factor). When dealing with lines, the same argument shows that "line wedge line" is a point. \square

Proposition 1.5.3. When line Δ_{12} is given by points P_1 and P_2 (with $P_1 \neq P_2$) and line Δ_3 is given by its barycentrics then either both lines are equal or their intersection M is given by :

$$\Delta_{12} \cap \Delta_3 \simeq (\Delta_3 \cdot P_1) P_2 - (\Delta_3 \cdot P_2) P_1$$

Proof. Call M this object. It is clear that $M \in P_1 P_2$. And we can check that $\Delta_3 \cdot M = 0$. Another proof is that this \simeq is in fact a component-wise identity. \square

Proposition 1.5.4. Suppose that lines Δ_{12} and Δ_{34} are respectively defined by points P_1, P_2 and points P_3, P_4 . Then either both lines are equal or their intersection M is given by :

$$M \doteq (P_1 \wedge P_2) \wedge (P_3 \wedge P_4) \simeq P_2 \det [P_1 P_3 P_4] - P_1 \det [P_2 P_3 P_4]$$

Proof. Obvious from the previous proposition and the definition $\det [P_1 P_3 P_4] = (P_3 \wedge P_4) \cdot P_1$. Another proof is that this \simeq is in fact a component-wise identity. \square

Definition 1.5.5. The **wedge point** X_\wedge of a line is what is obtained by a simple transposition of the barycentrics. This way of doing is based on a misperception of the wedge operation since $PU \doteq (P \wedge U)$ is a line (row) and not a point (column). When written in trilinears, this object don't look good. Not without reason.

name	2020	line	tripo	${}^t\Delta$	L	∞	∞^\perp	$\perp\text{po}$	2014
Euler	4877	X_2-X_3	X_{648}	X_{525}	L_{647}	X_{30}	X_{523}	X_{125}	404
Nagel	1303	X_1-X_2	X_{190}	X_{514}	L_{649}	X_{519}	???	???	142
Infinity	993	$X_{30}-X_{511}$	X_2	X_2	L_6				269
Brocard	981	X_3-X_6	X_{110}	X_{850}	L_{523}	X_{511}	X_{512}	X_{115}	229
Bevan	740	X_1-X_3	X_{651}	???	L_{650}	X_{517}	X_{513}	X_{11}	128
?	421	X_1-X_6	X_{100}	X_{693}	L_{513}	X_{518}	X_{3309}	???	92
Soddy	300	X_1-X_7	X_{658}	X_{3239}	X_{657}	X_{516}	X_{514}	X_{1565}	?
van Aubel	205	X_4-X_6	X_{107}	X_{3265}	L_{520}	X_{1503}	X_{525}	X_{1562}	40
	192	X_1-X_4	X_{653}	X_{6332}	L_{652}	X_{515}	X_{522}	???	64
Fermat	137	X_2-X_6	X_{99}	X_{523}	L_{512}	X_{524}	X_{1499}	???	97
Lemoine	132	$X_{187}-X_{237}$	X_6	X_{76}	L_2	X_{512}	X_{511}	X_{1513}	37
antiorthic	125	$X_{44}-X_{513}$	X_1	X_{75}	L_1	X_{513}	X_{517}	X_{1512}	92
orthic	118	$X_{230}-X_{231}$	X_4	X_{69}	L_3	X_{523}	X_{30}	X_{1514}	29
Longchamps	102	$X_{325}-X_{523}$	X_{76}	X_6	L_{32}	X_{523}	X_{30}	X_{1531}	30
	72	X_3-X_8	X_{13136}	???	L_{3310}	X_{952}	X_{900}	X_{3259}	14
Gergonne	69	$X_{241}-X_{514}$	X_7	X_8	L_{55}	X_{514}	X_{516}	X_{1541}	21
model		X_1-X_1	X_1	X_1	X_1	X_1	X_1	X_1	

Table 1.1: Some well-known lines

Definition 1.5.6. The **Weisstein point** X_W of a line is what is obtained when applying the same misperception to trilinears. Applied to line PU , this leads to the **crossdifference** of P and U . When written in barycentrics :

$$X_W \doteq \text{crossdiff}(P, U) \simeq a^2(qw - rv) : b^2(ru - pw) : c^2(pv - qu)$$

this object don't look good. Not without reason.

A better founded concept must lead to a type-crossing transform.

Definition 1.5.7. The **tripole** of a line and the **tripolar** of a point is what is obtained by "transpose and reciprocate". Clearly, the one-to-one correspondence between pole and polar is lost when a coordinate vanishes (line through a vertex, or point on a sideline).

Remark 1.5.8. A less stratospheric definition of the tripolar is given in Definition 3.4.3.

Remark 1.5.9. When applying "transpose and reciprocate", both tribes are thinking they are acting "their way", and are talking about "trilinear pole" and "barycentric pole". But the result is the same since reciprocation of barycentrics (aka isotomic conjugacy, Section 3.4) acts over X_Λ while reciprocation of trilinears (aka isogonal conjugacy, Section 9.2) acts over X_W . To summarize (using later introduced concepts) :

$$X_\Lambda = {}^t\Delta ; X_W = {}^t\Delta *_b X_6 ; \text{tripole} = \text{isotom}(X_\Lambda) = \text{isogon}(X_K) \quad (1.6)$$

Remark 1.5.10. When tripole is at infinity, the line is tangent to the Steiner in-ellipse (cf Example 11.11.1).

Example 1.5.11. Table 1.1 describes some well-known lines. For example, the Euler line goes through X_2 (centroid) and X_3 (circumcenter) . Its equation is $\sum x(b^2 - c^2)(b^2 + c^2 - a^2) = 0$. Formally, center $(b^2 - c^2)(b^2 + c^2 - a^2)$ is $X_{525} = {}^t\Delta$, while center $a^2(b^2 - c^2)(b^2 + c^2 - a^2)$ is $X_{647} = X_W$. This center has been used sometimes to describe lines, leading to $Euler = L_{647}$. The next column (∞) gives the infinity point while the remaining two columns give the later defined orthopoint (∞^\perp) and orthopole ($\perp\text{pole}$).

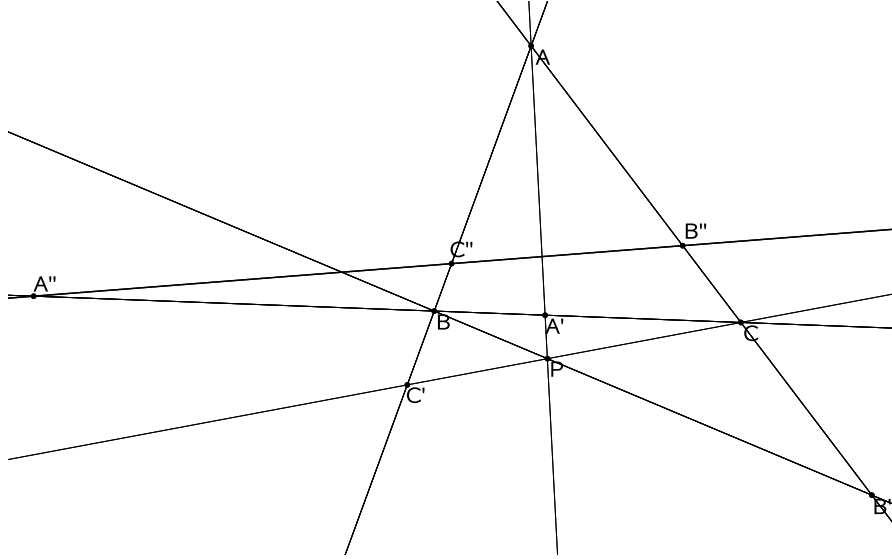


Figure 1.1: Point P and line A''B''C'' are the tripolars of each other.

Proposition 1.5.12. *Tripole and tripolar, being correctly typed, are constructible (Figure 1.1). Start from P. Draw AP and obtain $A' = AP \cap BC$. Construct $A'' \in BC$ so that division $BCA'A''$ is harmonic (Section 3.2). Act cyclically and obtain B'' and C'' . Then $A''B''C''$ are collinear, and the line they define is nothing but the tripolar of P. (and are named tripolar in Table 1.1).*

Remark 1.5.13. One of the most important consequence of all these duality formulas is the rock-solid equality giving the intersection of two lines each of them defined by two points :

$$(PQ \cap RS) = (P \wedge Q) \wedge (R \wedge S)$$

Proposition 1.5.14. *A symmetric parametrization in ρ, σ, τ of the points $U \simeq u : v : w$ that lie on line $\Delta \simeq [p, q, r]$ is :*

$$U \simeq q\tau - r\sigma : r\rho - p\tau : p\sigma - q\rho \quad (1.7)$$

A symmetric parametrization in ρ, σ, τ of the points $U \simeq u : v : w$ that lie on line $\Delta \doteq \text{tripolar}(P)$ where $P \simeq p : q : r$ is :

$$U \simeq p(\tau - \sigma) : q(\rho - \tau) : r(\sigma - \rho) \quad (1.8)$$

Proof. The first formula is $U \simeq \Delta \wedge [\rho, \sigma, \tau]$, defining a point on a line as the (projective) intersection of this line with another one. The second one is obvious. \square

Proposition 1.5.15. *(Spoiler) Line tripolar(P) is the locus of the tripoles U of the tangents to the inconic IC(P). Moreover, the contact point of tripolar(U) with the conic is $Q \simeq U \underset{b}{*} U \underset{b}{*} P$.*

Proof. This is the right place for the assertion, but not for its proof... Postponed to Proposition 11.8.11. \square

Remark 1.5.16. Caveat : A triangle is not a conic. When U lies on the polar of P wrt a conic, then P lies on the polar of U wrt the same conic. When U lies on tripolar(P) (the polar of P wrt triangle ABC) we have :

$$\frac{u}{p} + \frac{v}{q} + \frac{w}{r} = 0$$

and this isn't a commutative relation.

1.6 Isoconjugacy has moved

See Chapter 17, chiefly Section 17.4.

Chapter 2

Central objects

Centrality is a key notion. Emphasis on this concept was put by the founding paper of [Kimberling \(1998\)](#). The corresponding definitions have been tailored so that a central point is something like $I = X(1)$ or $G = X(2)$ or $O = X(3)$ etc., while a central triangle is something like ABC itself or JKL (the triangle of the excenters).

2.1 Triangle centers

When a concept emerges, various attempts are tested. Twenty years later, the most efficient ones take place in the "favored" list, while the others have to be deprecated. No criticism is implied here.

2.1.1 Favored concepts

Three points defines six triangles when taking the order into account. But there exists only one orthocenter. A central point is something that behaves like that. Moreover, geometrical theorems are not supposed to change when the king's foot shortens (not to speak of what happens when the king itself is shortened) : barycentric functions have to be homogeneous. This leads to the following definition.

Definition 2.1.1. A **triangle center** (or a **central line**) is a point (or a line) of the form

$$\begin{pmatrix} f(a, b, c) \\ f(b, c, a) \\ f(c, a, b) \end{pmatrix}$$

where f is a nonzero function satisfying two conditions:

1. f is homogeneous in a, b, c ; i.e., there is a real number h such that $f(\lambda a, \lambda b, \lambda c) = \lambda^h f(a, b, c)$ for all (a, b, c) in the domain of f ;
2. f is symmetric in b and c ; i.e., $f(a, c, b) = f(a, b, c)$.

Definition 2.1.2. Bicentric points. When condition (2) is relaxed, we have to consider the two different points

$$\begin{pmatrix} f(a, b, c) \\ f(b, c, a) \\ f(c, a, b) \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} f(a, c, b) \\ f(b, a, c) \\ f(c, b, a) \end{pmatrix}$$

They are called bicentric, together comprising a *bicentric pair*. Example: the Brocard points, $\text{Br}_1 = a^2b^2 : b^2c^2 : c^2a^2$ and $\text{Br}_2 = c^2a^2 : a^2b^2 : b^2c^2$ (cf Proposition 7.12.1).

Definition 2.1.3. A strong center is a triangle center whose defining function belongs to $\mathbb{C}[a^2, b^2, c^2]$. Coordinates of such a point only depend on the coordinates of the vertices.

Definition 2.1.4. A **rational center** is a triangle center whose defining function belongs to $\mathbb{C}[a^2, b^2, c^2, S]$, where S is the area of triangle ABC . When the coordinates of the vertices are rational, the coordinates of the center are made of rational quantities and fixed numbers.

Remark 2.1.5. Rational points that are not of the strong kind are in fact occurring by pairs, depending on the sign chosen for S (i.e. depending from the orientation of the triangle wrt the orientation of the plane). Example:

$$\begin{aligned} X(15) &\simeq a^2 (S_a + 2/3 S\sqrt{3}) : b^2 (S_b + 2/3 S\sqrt{3}) : c^2 (S_c + 2/3 S\sqrt{3}) \\ X(16) &\simeq a^2 (S_a - 2/3 S\sqrt{3}) : b^2 (S_b - 2/3 S\sqrt{3}) : c^2 (S_c - 2/3 S\sqrt{3}) \end{aligned}$$

Definition 2.1.6. A **weak center** is a triangle center whose defining function belongs to $\mathbb{C}[a, b, c, S]$ without being a rational center.

Theorem 2.1.7. Lemoine transforms. When using barycentrics, the identity together with the three transforms $a \mapsto -a$, $b \mapsto -b$ and $c \mapsto -c$ form a Klein group. Nowadays, they are called the Lemoine transforms, while Lemoine himself called them the "transformations continues" (see [Lemoine, 1891](#)). Spoiler: when using Lubin-2, these transforms are obtained by $\alpha \mapsto -\alpha$ or $\beta \mapsto -\beta$ or $\gamma \mapsto -\gamma$.

Proof. The fact that $L_a \circ L_b = L_c$ comes from the homogeneity required for the formulas of interest. Remember: a theorem is a proposition with the biggest consequences, not necessarily something difficult to prove. \square

Remark 2.1.8. Rational points (strong or not) are invariant by the Lemoine transforms, while the weak centers are replicated, leading to what is called a set of four **extraversions**. Obviously, the incenter and its three excenters were the pattern used to shape this concept.

Theorem 2.1.9. Klein transforms. When using barycentrics $x : y : z$, the identity together with the three transforms $x \mapsto -x$, $y \mapsto -y$ and $z \mapsto -z$ form a Klein group. They are called the Klein transforms (see [Lemoine, 1891](#)) and a group of four points $\pm f : \pm g : \pm h$ is called a **Klein quadrangle**. Spoiler. Any three points of such a set are the vertices of the anticevian triangle of the remaining one, while triangle ABC is the diagonal triangle of the quadrangle (see [Proposition 3.4.15](#)).

Proof. Here, the fact that $L_a \circ L_b = L_c$ comes from the very definition of a projective space. \square

Remark 2.1.10. When function $f(a, b, c)$ is a times an even polynomial, then both transforms give the same result. A list of such points is given at the introduction of points X(7001) - X(7373).

2.1.2 Deprecated concepts

Definition 2.1.11. A **transcendental center** is a triangle center X that cannot be defined as $X = f(a, b, c) : f(b, c, a) : f(c, a, b)$ using an algebraic function f . Examples: X(359) and X(360).

Definition 2.1.12. A **major center** is a triangle center X for which there exists a function f of the angles such that $X = f(A) : f(B) : f(C)$. Examples: $X(1)$, $X(2)$, $X(3)$, $X(4)$, $X(6)$. Major centers solve certain problems in functional equations ([Kimberling, 1993, 1997](#)).

Consider two examples, $X(9)$ and $X(37)$, of which first trilinears are $b + c - a$ and $b + c$, respectively. It is not clear from these trilinears that $X(9)$ is a major center, whereas $X(37)$ is not. Indeed, $X(9)$ also has first trilinear $\cot(A/2)$, so that $X(9)$ is a major center, but there remains this problem: how to establish that $X(37)$ and others are not major. According to [Kimberling \(1997\)](#), there were exactly such centers among the first 3236 centers of the ETC, as listed [Table 2.1](#).

Definition 2.1.13. Angular Lemoine transform.

$$A \mapsto -A ; B \mapsto \pi - A ; C \mapsto \pi - C ; S \mapsto -S ; R \mapsto R ; r_0 \leftrightarrow r_a$$

1	2	3	4	6	7	8	9	13	14	15
16	17	18	19	24	25	31	32	33	34	35
36	41	47	48	49	50	55	56	57	61	62
63	68	69	75	76	77	78	79	80	85	91
92	93	94	158	173	174	179	184	186	188	200
202	203	212	215	219	220	222	236	255	258	259
264	265	266	269	273	278	279	281	289	298	299
300	301	302	303	304	305	312	317	318	319	320
323	326	328	331	340	341	345	346	348	357	358
359	360	365	366	371	372	378	393	394	400	470
471	472	473	479	480	483	485	486	491	492	506
507	508	509	554	555	556	557	558	559	560	561
562	563	571	577	601	602	603	604	605	606	607
608	728	738	847	999	1000	1028	1049	1077	1081	1082
1085	1088	1092	1093	1094	1095	1096	1102	1106	1115	1118
1119	1123	1124	1127	1128	1129	1130	1131	1132	1133	1134
1135	1136	1137	1139	1140	1143	1147	1151	1152	1250	1251
1253	1259	1260	1264	1265	1267	1270	1271	1274	1321	1322
1327	1328	1335	1336	1395	1397	1398	1399	1407	1411	1435
1442	1443	1488	1489	1496	1497	1501	1502	1583	1584	1585
1586	1593	1597	1598	1599	1600	1659	1748	1802	1804	1807
1820	1847	1857	1870	1917	1928	1969	1973	1974	1989	1993
1994	2003	2006	2052	2066	2067	2089	2151	2152	2153	2154
2160	2161	2165	2166	2174	2175	2207	2212	2289	2306	2307
2323	2351	2361	2362	2477	2671	2672	2673	2674	2962	2963
2964	2965	3043	3076	3077	3082	3083	3084	3092	3093	3179
3200	3201	3205	3206	3218	3219					

Table 2.1: Major centers

2.2 Central triangle

Definitions of this Section are tailored so that triangle ABC itself as well as later defined (Section 3.4) cevian and anticevian triangles are central objects. The corresponding matrices are, columnwise, as follows :

$$\mathcal{C}_P \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 0 & p & p \\ q & 0 & q \\ r & r & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \mathcal{A}_P \simeq \begin{pmatrix} -p & p & p \\ q & -q & q \\ r & r & -r \end{pmatrix}$$

Definition 2.2.1. Suppose that f, g are two homogeneous functions having the same degree of homogeneity. One of them (but not both) can be the zero function. Then the (f, g) central triangle is defined as :

$$[A', B', C'] \simeq \begin{pmatrix} f(a, b, c) & g(a, c, b) & g(a, b, c) \\ g(b, c, a) & f(b, c, a) & g(b, a, c) \\ g(c, b, a) & g(c, a, b) & f(c, a, b) \end{pmatrix} \quad (2.1)$$

Example 2.2.2. Triangle ABC is $(1, 0)$ while \mathcal{C}_P is $(0, f)$ and \mathcal{A}_P is $(-f, f)$ when point P is defined by center function f .

Proof. We have $P = f(a, b, c) : f(b, c, a) : f(c, a, b)$, together with $f(a, b, c) = f(a, b, c)$. \square

Example 2.2.3. As a summary, we have:

$$\boxed{\mathcal{T}(bc, c^2)} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{bc}{b^2 + bc + c^2} & \frac{c^2}{a^2 + ca + c^2} & \frac{b^2}{a^2 + ab + b^2} \\ \frac{bc}{b^2 + bc + c^2} & \frac{ca}{a^2 + ca + c^2} & \frac{b^2}{a^2 + ab + b^2} \\ \frac{bc}{b^2 + bc + c^2} & \frac{ca}{a^2 + ca + c^2} & \frac{b^2}{a^2 + ab + b^2} \end{pmatrix}$$

Notation 2.2.4. Among the functions often used, we have:

S *area* (ABC). Not twice the area, as used in ETC.

S_a, S_b, S_c the Conway symbols. $S_a = (b^2 + c^2 - a^2) / 2$

$\cot \omega$ where ω is the Brocard angle, $\cot \omega = (a^2 + b^2 + c^2) / 2S$

s $(a + b + c) / 2$, so that $2s$ is the perimeter.

Proposition 2.2.5. *Symmetric (metric) functions.* An (a, b, c, S) expression that is symmetric in (a, b, c) can be expressed as a function of s, R, r_0 where s is the semiperimeter, while R, r_0 are the **oriented** radiiuses of the circum- and in-scripted circles (as given in $r_0 = S/s$; $R = abc/4S$, so that $Rr_0 > 0$).

Proof. Use the symmetric functions $S = r_0 s$; $a + b + c = 2s$; $ab + bc + ca = D$; $abc = P$ and then substitute

$$P = 4s r_0 R ; D = 4R r_0 + r_0^2 + s^2$$

Caveat: quantities R, r_0 are often perceived as positive but, here, they have to carry the orientation of the triangle. \square

2.3 Symbolic substitution

Definition 2.3.1. Symbolic substitution. Suppose $p(a, b, c), q(a, b, c), r(a, b, c)$ are functions of a, b, c , all of the same degree of homogeneity. As the transfigured plane consists of all functions of the form $X = x(a, b, c) : y(a, b, c) : z(a, b, c)$, the substitution indicated by

$$a \mapsto p(a, b, c), b \mapsto q(a, b, c), c \mapsto r(a, b, c)$$

maps the transfigured plane into itself.

Remark 2.3.2. Such a substitution may have no clear geometric meaning, as suggested by the name, *symbolic* substitution. On the other hand, symbolic substitutions are of geometric interest because they map lines to lines, conics to conics, cubics to cubics, and they preserve incidence.

Example 2.3.3. The symbolic substitution $(a, b, c) \mapsto (1/a, 1/b, 1/c)$ maps every triangle center to a triangle center, every pair of bicentric points to a pair of bicentric points, every circumconic to a circumconic, etc. However, when $(a, b, c) = (3, 4, 5)$, for example, then a, b, c are sidelengths of an euclidian triangle, but $1/a, 1/b, 1/c$ are not.

Symbolic substitutions were introduced in [Kimberling \(2007\)](#).

Chapter 3

Cevian stuff

3.1 Centroid stuff

Definition 3.1.1. The **reflection** of point $U = u : v : w$ in point $P = p : q : r$ (not at infinity) is the point X such that :

$$X \simeq \begin{pmatrix} (p - q - r)u + 2p(v + w) \\ (q - p - r)v + 2q(u + w) \\ (r - p - q)w + 2r(u + v) \end{pmatrix} \quad (3.1)$$

Proof. We want to obtain $X = 2P - U$ when P, U, X are finite and in normalized form. When P is finite and $U \in \mathcal{L}_b$ then $X = U$ (OK). Taking $P \in \mathcal{L}_b$ would result into $X = P$ for any value of U , not an acceptable result. \square

Stratospheric proof. X is obtained under the action described by :

$$2 \left(\begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix} \cdot \mathcal{L}_b \right) - \left(\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix} \right) \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \square$$

Definition 3.1.2. **Complement** and **anticomplement** are inverse transforms defined so that the complement of a vertex of triangle ABC is the middle of the opposite side. In other words (using barycentrics),

$$\begin{aligned} \text{complement}(U) &\doteq (3G - U)/2 \simeq q + r : p + r : p + q \\ \text{anticomplement}(Q) &\doteq (3G - 2Q) \simeq -p + q + r : p - q + r : p + q - r \end{aligned}$$

According to Court, p. 297, the term *complementary point* dates from 1885, and the term *anticomplementary point* dates from 1886.

Definition 3.1.3. The **medial triangle** \mathcal{C}_2 is the complement of triangle ABC . The A-vertex of \mathcal{C}_2 is the middle of segment BC , and cyclically. In other words :

$$\mathcal{C}_2 \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Definition 3.1.4. The **antimedial triangle** \mathcal{A}_2 is the anticomplement of triangle ABC (and is also called the anticomplementary triangle). Each sideline of \mathcal{A}_2 contains a vertex of ABC and corresponding sidelines of both triangles are parallel. In other words :

$$\mathcal{A}_2 \simeq \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

These triangles are the model used to define the next coming cevian and anticevian triangles (they are the triangles related to the centroid X_2).

3.2 Cross-ratio and fourth harmonic

Remark 3.2.1. This section about $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^2)$ is set here, i.e far away from the chapter about $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$, in order to emphasize the fact that $2 \neq 3$: both sets are different and they will be used for very different things. The later, i.e. $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$ will be used to enlarge the description of points or lines already provided by $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^3)$, while the former, i.e. $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^2)$, will be used to parametrize various families of objects.

Definition 3.2.2. The Riemann sphere is the set $\overline{\mathbb{C}} = \mathbb{C} \cup \{\infty\}$. It can be identified with the set $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^2)$ of the $\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T}$, i.e. the set of the couples (\mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{T}) when treated projectively, i.e. "up to a factor".

Definition 3.2.3. The cross-ratio of four (different) parameters $z_j \in \mathbb{C}$ is defined as

$$\text{cross_ratio}_{\mathbb{C}}(z_1, z_2, z_3, z_4) \doteq \frac{(z_4 - z_2)(z_3 - z_1)}{(z_4 - z_1)(z_3 - z_2)}$$

This definition can be extended to the Riemann sphere by the formula :

$$\text{cross_ratio}(z_1 : t_1; z_2 : t_2; z_3 : t_3; z_4 : t_4) \doteq \text{cross_ratio}_{\mathbb{C}}\left(\frac{z_1}{t_1}, \frac{z_2}{t_2}, \frac{z_3}{t_3}, \frac{z_4}{t_4}\right)$$

with the usual rules to resolve indeterminacies.

Remark 3.2.4. Exactly this same quantity is introduced as $\frac{z_1 - z_3}{z_1 - z_4} \div \frac{z_2 - z_3}{z_2 - z_4}$, i.e. as (z_4, z_3, z_2, z_1) by (Pedoe, 1970, p 212) and (Schwerdtfeger, 1962, p. 35). The intent of these authors was to emphasize the definition as a ratio of ratios. Our intent here is to emphasize the choice made among the six possibilities described just below.

Proposition 3.2.5. An homography ψ is defined as a mapping of $\overline{\mathbb{C}}$ which preserves the birapport. As a result, ψ can be written as

$$z \mapsto \psi(z) \doteq \frac{az + b}{cz + d} \quad \text{where } a, b, c, d \in \mathbb{C} \text{ and } ad - bc \neq 0$$

Such transform can also be seen as an element of $\text{PGL}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^2)$.

Proof. Write $\frac{(z - z_2)(z_3 - z_1)}{(z - z_1)(z_3 - z_2)} = \frac{(\widehat{z} - \widehat{z}_2)(\widehat{z}_3 - \widehat{z}_1)}{(\widehat{z} - \widehat{z}_1)(\widehat{z}_3 - \widehat{z}_2)}$ and solve in \widehat{z} . □

Remark 3.2.6. Some French writers are using 'homography' as a synonym to collineations acting on $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$. This is as stupid as possible. At High Schools, students have acquired (or should have acquired) some behavioral skills about these ψ functions acting on the complex plane \mathbb{C} . When introducing new concepts, new names should be used, in order to preserve what is already acquired.

Proposition 3.2.7. An involution is an homography ψ such that $\psi \circ \psi = \text{Id}$ while $\psi \neq \text{Id}$. Three characterizations are:

1. $a + d = 0$
2. it exists z_1, z_2 such that $\psi(z_1) = z_2, \psi(z_2) = z_1, z_1 \neq z_2$.
3. it exists three different points such that $\det_3[z_j \psi(z_j), z_j + \psi(z_j), 1] = 0$

Proof. (1) one has $z - \psi^2(z) = (a + d) \frac{cz^2 + (d - a)z - b}{c(a + d)z + bc + d^2}$

(2) one has $cz_1 z_2 - az_1 + dz_2 = b$; $cz_1 z_2 - az_2 + dz_1 = b$. Substracting, one gets

$$(z_1 - z_2)(a + d) = 0$$

(3) requites the existence of a, b, c such that $cz_j \psi(z_j) + (z_j + \psi(z_j)) dz_2 - b = 0$. □

Proposition 3.2.8. *Group of the cross-ratio. The cross ratio remains unchanged under the action of the bi-transpositions like $[a, b, c, z] \mapsto [b, a, z, c]$. Therefore the action of \mathfrak{S}_4 generates only 6 values for the cross-ratio. We have :*

a	b	c	z	a	a
b	c	a	b	z	b
c	a	b	c	c	z
z	z	z	a	b	c
k	$\frac{k-1}{k}$	$\frac{1}{1-k}$	$1-k$	$\frac{k}{k-1}$	$\frac{1}{k}$

Special cases are

- $\{\exp(+i\pi/3), \exp(-i\pi/3)\}$ (equilateral triangle and one of its centers)
- $\{1, 0, \infty\}$ (two points are equal)
- $\{-1, 2, 1/2\}$ (harmonicity) .

Proof. Direct examination. □

Definition 3.2.9. Consider the linear projective family defined from two fixed rows (or columns) X, Y (where $X \neq Y$ is assumed)

$$\Delta = \{zX + tY \mid (z, t) \neq (0, 0)\}$$

The cross-ratio of four elements of Δ is defined as the cross-ratio of their parameters, i.e.

$$\text{cross_ratio}(z_j X + t_j Y) = \text{cross_ratio}_{\mathbb{C}}(z_j/t_j)$$

Theorem 3.2.10. *The cross-ratio of four elements of a linear projective family (assuming at least three different elements) is intrinsic, i.e. doesn't depend of the columns (or rows) chosen to describe the family. When four different collinear objects P, Q, R, S are given, then non zero multipliers p, q, r, s and a constant λ can be found that satisfy the hard equalities :*

$$\begin{aligned} rR &= pP + qQ \\ sS &= \lambda pP + qQ \end{aligned}$$

Moreover quantity λ depends only on the four objects and their order. This quantity is the former defined cross-ratio of the 4-uple.

Proof. To prove the existence, we write $P = z_1 X + t_1 Y$, etc and solve the resulting set of 4 equations. The value obtained for λ is the former defined cross-ratio "using X, Y ". The uniqueness of λ comes from the uniqueness, up to a proportionality factor, of $r : p : q$ and $s : \lambda p : q$ since P, Q is yet another generating family. □

Corollary 3.2.11. *When the family is parametrized as $P_j = k_j X + (1 - k_j) Y$, then $\lambda = \text{cross_ratio}_{\mathbb{C}}(k_j)$.*

Proof. By definition, $\lambda = \text{cross_ratio}(k_j / (1 - k_j))$. But $\text{cross_ratio}_{\mathbb{C}}()$ is invariant under $z \mapsto z / (1 - z)$. □

Corollary 3.2.12. *Let the P_j be given by their barycentrics $p_j : q_j : r_j$. Assuming that two of the p_j are not 0, then $\lambda = \text{cross_ratio}(p_j / (p_j + q_j + r_j))$.*

Proof. This holds only if the points are on the same line, but not the infinity line ! □

Definition 3.2.13. Four points A, B, J, K on an ordinary straight line form an **harmonic division** when :

$$\frac{\overline{AJ}}{\overline{BJ}} \div \frac{\overline{AK}}{\overline{BK}} = -1$$

Since cross-ratio is a projective invariant, this relationship is carried along collineations.

Proposition 3.2.14. *Let be given three members P, Q, R of a linear projective family with, at least $P \neq Q$. Then it exists exactly one member S of the family such that $\text{cross_ratio}(P, Q, R, S) = -1$. This object is called the **fourth harmonic** of the first three.*

Proof. Cross-ratio is an homographic function of parameter k_S , and therefore bijective between λ and k_S . \square

Construction 3.2.15. Let A, P, B be three aligned distinct points, and E be a point external to this green line (see Figure 3.1). Division (A, B, P, Q) will be harmonic if the pencil (EA, EB, EP, EQ) is harmonic. To this end, we draw the blue line Δ i.e. the parallel to EA through B . Then M is $DP \cap \Delta$ and N the reflection of M into C . The division (∞_Δ, B, M, N) is obviously harmonic. And we obtain Q as $EN \cap AB$.

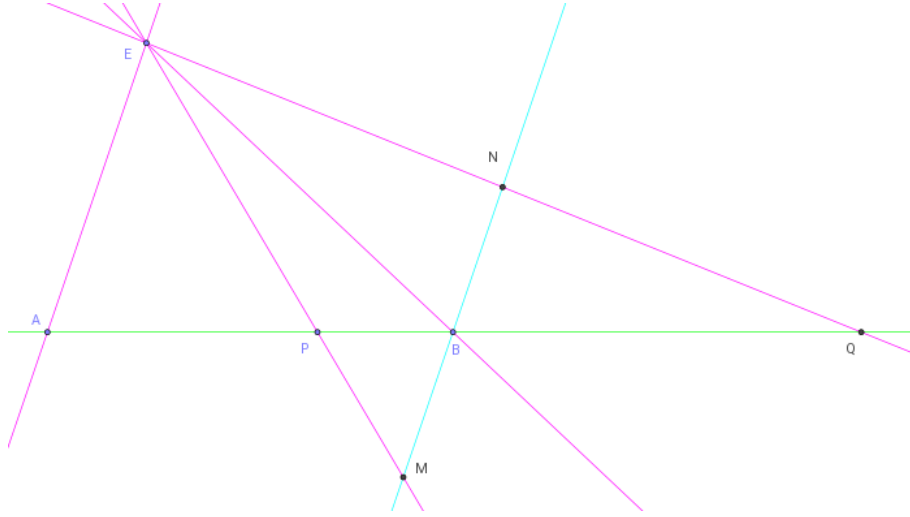


Figure 3.1: Obtain Q from A, P, C and auxiliary D

Remark 3.2.16. In the Cartesian plane, the fourth harmonic is also the reflection of the third point into the circle having the first two as diameter.

Remark 3.2.17. Conic cross-ratio is described in Section 11.10.

3.3 About combos

Definition 3.3.1. combos. When $P \simeq p : q : r$ and $U \simeq u : v : w$ are points at finite distance and $f = f(a, b, c)$, $g = g(a, b, c)$ are nonzero homogeneous functions having the same degree of homogeneity, then the (f, g) combo of P and U , denoted as $f \times P + g \times U$, is :

$$f \times P + g \times U \simeq \frac{P}{\mathcal{L}_b \cdot P} f(a, b, c) + \frac{U}{\mathcal{L}_b \cdot U} g(a, b, c)$$

Remark 3.3.2. Written that way, one has not to discuss if barycentrics or trilinears are used.

Proposition 3.3.3. With the same hypotheses, points $P, U, fP + gU, fP + hU$ are collinear and

$$\text{cross_ratio}(P, U, fP + gU, fP + hU) = h/g$$

As a special case, $fP \pm gU$ are harmonic conjugate wrt P, U .

Proposition 3.3.4. When f, g, h are homogeneous symmetric functions all of the same degree of homogeneity, and X, X', X'' are triangle centers, then $fX + gX' + hX''$ is a triangle center. Conversely, given three non collinear triangle centers, any fourth triangle center is a combo of the first three, using symmetric functions as coefficients.

Proof. This amounts to say that, in \mathbb{R}^3 , any invertible matrix defines a basis of the space. \square

Remark 3.3.5. Part of the time, normalization is useless. Knowing that $X(482) \simeq s \times nX(1) + (r + 4R) \times nX(7)$ can be required, but using $X(482) \simeq vX(1) + 4S vX(7)$ (where vX is what is given in the table) can be sufficient.

Proposition 3.3.6. *The columns of a matrix \boxed{T} describing the vertices of a central triangle have to be normalized in such a way that $\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \boxed{T} \simeq \mathcal{L}_b$. Such matrices form a group under multiplication. And then $\boxed{T} \cdot P$ is (another) triangle center when P is a triangle center.*

3.4 Cevian, anticevian, cocevian triangles

Definition 3.4.1. Cevian triangle. Let P be a point not on a sideline of ABC . The lines AP, BP, CP are the *cevians* of P . Let $A_p = AP \cap BC$. Define B_p and C_p cyclically. Triangle $A_p B_p C_p$ is called the *cevian triangle* of triangle ABC .

$$\text{cevian} \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & p & p \\ q & 0 & q \\ r & r & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (3.2)$$

Example 3.4.2. Examples of cevian triangles are given in Table 3.1.

Proposition 3.4.3. Cocevian triangle. Let $P = p : q : r$ be a point not on a sideline of ABC , let $A_p B_p C_p$ be its cevian triangle and define T_A as $BC \cap B_p C_p$, etc. Then points T_A, T_B, T_C are aligned on a line which is called the **tripolar line** of P , while the (degenerate) triangle T_A, T_B, T_C itself is called the *cocevian triangle* of P . One has:

$$\text{cocevian}(p : q : r) \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 0 & p & -p \\ -q & 0 & q \\ r & -r & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (3.3)$$

$$\text{tripolar}(p : q : r) \simeq \left[\frac{1}{p}, \frac{1}{q}, \frac{1}{r} \right] \simeq [qr, rp, pq] \quad (3.4)$$

Proof. Direct computation. □

Remark 3.4.4. (Spoiler) Point P is the *perspector* of triangles ABC and $A_p B_p C_p$, i.e. their (degenerate) vertex triangle (see Definition 3.8.1). While tripolar(P) is the *perspectrix* of ABC and $A_p B_p C_p$, i.e. their (degenerate) sideline trigone (see Definition 3.8.4).

Definition 3.4.5. Anticevian triangle. Let P be a point not on a sideline of ABC . The anticevian of P is the triangle $P_A P_B P_C$ such that ABC is the cevian triangle of P wrt $P_A P_B P_C$.

Example 3.4.6. Examples of anticevian triangles are given in Table 3.1.

Construction 3.4.7. Let P be a point not on the sidelines of ABC . Draw $A_p \doteq AP \cap BC$, etc (the cevian triangle of P) and then draw $T_A \doteq BC \cap B_p C_p$, etc (the cocevian triangle of P). Then we have $P_A = BT_B \cap CT_C$, etc (the anticevian triangle of P)

Proof. Compute all these points and obtain

$$P \simeq \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix}; \text{cev} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & p & p \\ q & 0 & q \\ r & r & 0 \end{pmatrix}; \text{cocev} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 0 & p & -p \\ -q & 0 & q \\ r & -r & 0 \end{pmatrix}; \text{anticev} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} -p & p & p \\ q & -q & q \\ r & r & -r \end{pmatrix} \quad (3.5)$$

Then one can verify the relations $A \in P_B P_C$, etc (ABC is inscribed in $P_A P_B P_C$), $P \in AP_A$, etc (P is the perspector of ABC and $P_A P_B P_C$), $T_A = BC \cap P_B P_C$, etc ($T_A T_B T_C$ is the perspectrix of ABC and $P_A P_B P_C$). □

Remark 3.4.8. (Spoiler) Point P is the *perspector* of triangles ABC and $P_A P_B P_C$, i.e. their (degenerate) vertex triangle (see Definition 3.8.1). While tripolar(P) is the *perspectrix* of ABC and $P_A P_B P_C$, i.e. their (degenerate) sideline trigone (see Definition 3.8.4).

Proposition 3.4.9. *We have three sets of aligned points whose divisions are harmonic, namely*

$$\begin{aligned}\text{cross_ratio}(A, A_P, P, P_A) &= -1 \\ \text{cross_ratio}(B, C, A_P, T_a) &= -1 \\ \text{cross_ratio}(P_B, P_C, A, T_a) &= -1\end{aligned}$$

Proof. We have formally: $(0 : q : r) \pm (p : 0 : 0) = (p : q : r), (-p : q : r)$ while $(0 : q : 0) \pm (0 : 0 : r) = (0 : q : r), (0 : q : -r)$ and $(p : -q : r) \pm (p : q : -r) = (2p : 0 : 0), (0 : -2q : +2r)$ \square

3.4.1 Well-known triangles

cevian				bary (p)	G	O	I
incentral	23.3	incenter	X(1)	a			
medial	23.5	centroid	X(2)	1	X(2)	X(5)	X(10)
orthic	23.7	H-center	X(4)	$\tan A$	X(51)	X(5)	X(4)
intouch	23.12	Gergonne	X(7)	$(b + c - a)^{-1}$			
extouch	23.13	Nagel	X(8)	$b + c - a$	X(210)	X(1158)	
anticevian				bary	G	O	I
excentral	23.4	incenter	X(1)	a	X(165)	X(40)	X(164)
antimedial	23.6	centroid	X(2)	1	X(2)	X(4)	X(8)
tangential	23.8	Lemoine	X(6)	a^2	X(154)	X(26)	X(3)
other							
Fuhrmann	23.15						
Brocard triangles	23.9						
Hexyl	23.14				X(3576)	X(1)	
star	23.16				X(3817)	X(946)	?

Table 3.1: Some well-known triangles

3.4.2 Isotomic and reciprocal conjugacies

Proposition 3.4.10. *Equation 3.6 gives the condition for an inscribed triangle to be the Cevian triangle of some point P .*

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & p_2 & p_3 \\ q_1 & 0 & q_3 \\ r_1 & r_2 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \text{ is Cevian } \iff p_2 q_3 r_1 - p_3 q_1 r_2 = 0 \quad (3.6)$$

$$\text{and then } p : q : r = r_1 p_2 : q_1 r_2 : r_1 r_2$$

An absolutely hopeless formula, but nevertheless more "obviously symmetric" is :

$$p : q : r = \sqrt[3]{p_2^2 p_3^2 q_1 r_1} : \sqrt[3]{q_3^2 q_1^2 p_2 r_2} : \sqrt[3]{r_1^2 r_2^2 p_3 q_3}$$

Proof. Line AP_1 is $(0, r_1, -q_1)$ and cyclically. These lines are concurrent when their determinant vanishes. Their common point is then given by any column of the adjoint matrix, or the cubic root of their product. \square

Proposition 3.4.11. Isotomic conjugacy. *Suppose $U = u : v : w$ is a point not on a sideline of ABC . Take the cevians $A_U \doteq AU \cap BC$, etc and then reflect $A_U B_U C_U$ about the midpoints of sides BC, CA, AB , respectively, to obtain points A', B', C' . Then lines AA', BB', CC' are concurrent. Their common intersection is called the isotomic conjugate of U . The corresponding barycentrics are :*

$$\text{isotom}(u : v : w) = \frac{1}{u} : \frac{1}{v} : \frac{1}{w} \quad (3.7)$$

Proof. Immediate computation. \square

Remark 3.4.12. The fixed points of this transform are the gravity center and its relatives, so that $\text{isot}(U) = U_G^\#$ while $U * \text{isot}(U) = X(2)$. It should be noticed that $X(2)$ plays together the role of points F and P of Definition 1.4.10.

Proposition 3.4.13. Reciprocal conjugacy. Suppose $\Delta = [\rho, \sigma, \tau]$ is a line not through a vertex of ABC . Let $A_\Delta = BC \cap \Delta$, etc the traces of Δ on the sidelines. Reflect them about the corresponding midpoint and obtain $T_A = B + C - A_\Delta$, etc. The points T_A, T_B, T_C are aligned, defining a line called the reciprocal of the given one since we have:

$$\text{recip}([\rho, \sigma, \tau]) \simeq \left[\frac{1}{\rho}, \frac{1}{\sigma}, \frac{1}{\tau} \right]$$

Proof. Immediate computation. \square

Remark 3.4.14. For a given $U \simeq u : v : w$, we have

$$(\text{tripolar} \circ \text{isotom})(U) = [u, v, w] = (\text{recip} \circ \text{tripolar})(U)$$

In other words: isotom and recip are type-keeping, while tripolar (and tripole) are type-crossing.

Proposition 3.4.15. Anticevian quadrangle. (1) Triangle ABC is inscribed in triangle $P_AP_BP_C$. (2) ABC is the cevian triangle of P wrt the anticevian triangle. (3) Anticevian triangle of point P_A wrt ABC is PP_CP_B (the two remaining points are permuted). See also Theorem 2.1.9.

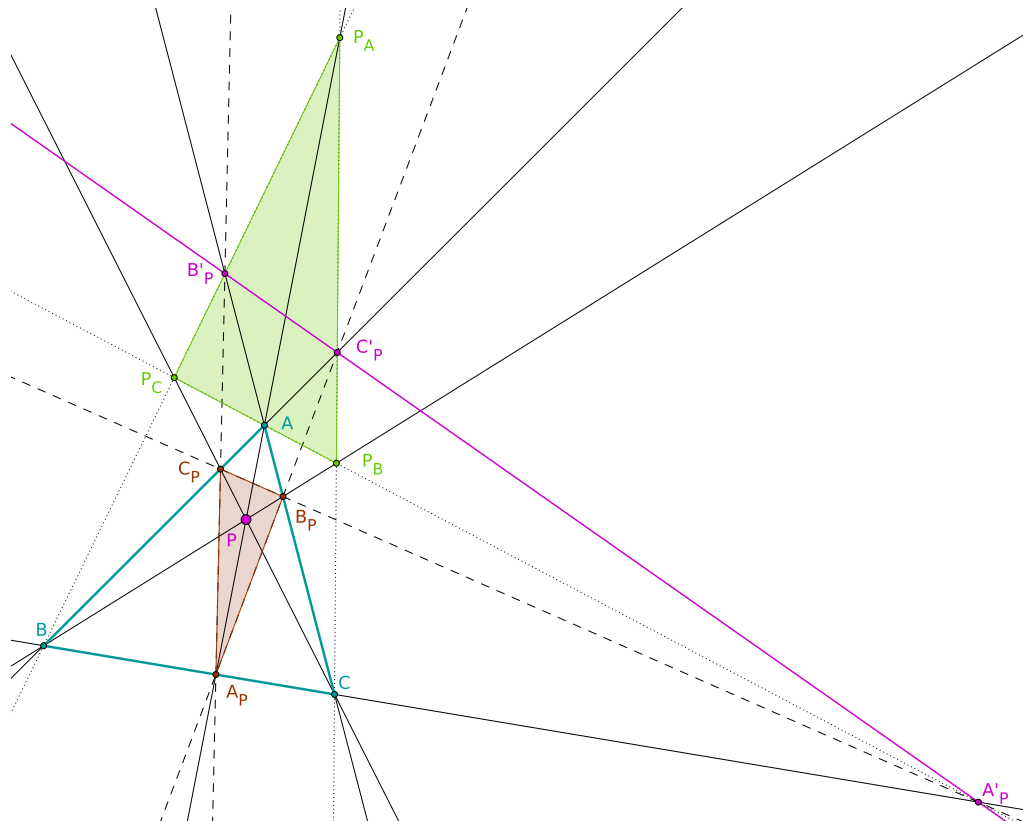


Figure 3.2: Cevian, anticevian and cocevian triangles

3.5 Transversal lines, Menelaus and Miquel theorems

Theorem 3.5.1 (Ceva). Let $A' \in BC$, $B' \in CA$ and $C' \in AB$ be three points on the sidelines of triangle ABC , but different from the vertices. Then lines AA' , BB' , CC' are concurrent if and only if :

$$\frac{\overline{AB'}}{\overline{CB'}} \frac{\overline{BC'}}{\overline{AC'}} \frac{\overline{CA'}}{\overline{BA'}} = -1$$

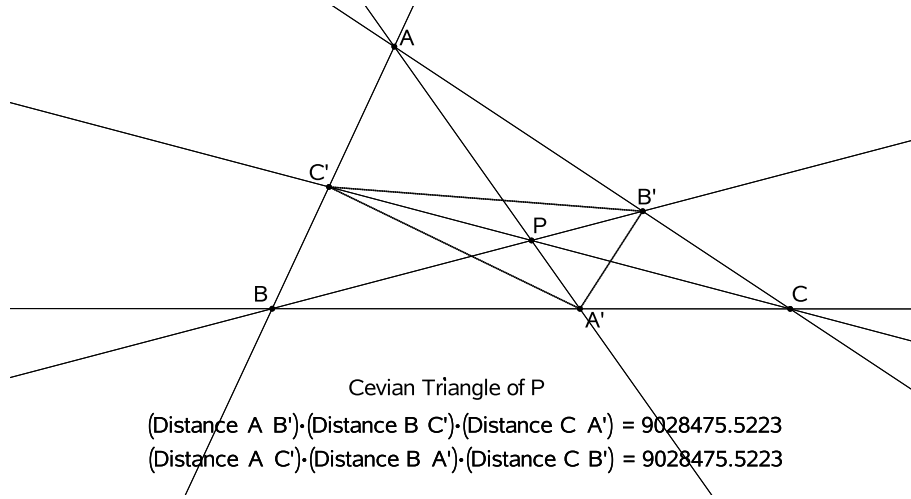


Figure 3.3: Ceva's Theorem

Proof. The usual proof uses Menelaus theorem. Another proof, using determinants, is given below. \square

Proposition 3.5.2 (Genuine Menelaus theorem). *Let $A' \in BC$, $B' \in CA$ and $C' \in AB$ be three points on the sidelines of triangle ABC , but different from the vertices. Then A' , B' , C' are collinear if and only if :*

$$\frac{\overline{AB'}}{\overline{CB'}} \cdot \frac{\overline{BC'}}{\overline{AC'}} \cdot \frac{\overline{CA'}}{\overline{BA'}} = +1$$

Proof. Let us parametrize the situation by $A' = k_a B + (1 - k_a)C$, etc. Alignment is described by :

$$\begin{vmatrix} 0 & 1 - k_b & k_c \\ k_a & 0 & 1 - k_c \\ 1 - k_a & k_b & 0 \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

while $A' - B = (1 - k_a)(C - B)$ and $A' - C = k_a(B - C)$. \square

Example 3.5.3. The cevian of P verify this formula.

Proposition 3.5.4 (Miquel theorem). *Let $A' \in BC$, $B' \in CA$ and $C' \in AB$ be three points on the sidelines of triangle ABC , but different from the vertices. Then circles $AB'C'$, $A'BC'$, $A'B'C'$ are passing through a same point M_q , the Miquel point of $A'B'C'$ wrt ABC .*

Proof. Equation of circle $AB'C'$ is :

$$a^2 y z + b^2 z x + c^2 x y - (x + y + z)(y k_c c^2 + z(1 - k_b) b^2)$$

Therefore their last common point is :

$$M_q \simeq \begin{pmatrix} a^2(k_a(k_a - 1)a^2 + (k_a - 1)(k_b - 1)b^2 + c^2 k_c k_a) \\ b^2(k_a k_b a^2 + k_b(k_b - 1)b^2 + (k_b - 1)(k_c - 1)c^2) \\ c^2((k_c - 1)(k_a - 1)a^2 + b^2 k_b k_c + k_c(k_c - 1)c^2) \end{pmatrix}$$

Since this expression is symmetric, the point M_q is also on the third circle. \square

Theorem 3.5.5 (Extended Menelaus theorem). *Let $A' \in BC$, $B' \in CA$ and $C' \in AB$ be three points on the sidelines of triangle ABC , but different from the vertices. All the following are necessary and sufficient conditions for A' , B' , C' to be collinear :*

- (i) the Menelaus condition : $((1 - k_a)(1 - k_b)(1 - k_c) + k_a k_b k_c) = 0$
- (ii) the midpoints $M_a = (A + A')/2$, $M_b = (B + B')/2$, $M_c = (C + C')/2$ are on the same line (the so-called Newton line of the quadrilateral)
- (iii) the **Miquel point** M_q of $A'B'C'$ is on the circumcircle of ABC .
- (iv) –spoiler– the **Clawson-Schmidt homography** application Ψ in $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$ by $A \mapsto A'$, $B \mapsto B'$, $C \mapsto C'$ is involutory .

Proof. (i) obvious ; (ii) determinant ; (iii) condition for $M \in \Gamma$ is the Menelaus condition times an ugly factor that can be written as :

$$(2a^2k_a + 2b^2k_b + 2c^2k_c - c^2 - b^2 - a^2)^2 + 16S^2$$

(iv) Condition for Ψ to be involutory is $\det_3 [1, z_A + z'_A, z_A z'_A] = 0$. This results into Is_4 times the Menelaus condition (see Section 14.4 for notations and more details). \square

3.6 Tripolar centroid

Proposition 3.6.1. *When P is neither a vertex nor $X(2)$, the centroid of the cocevian triangle is well defined (perhaps on \mathcal{L}_b), and called the tripolar centroid of P (Stothers, 2003b).*

$$TG(P) = p(q-r)(2p-q-r) : q(p-r)(p-2q+r) : r(q-p)(p+q-2r)$$

Remark 3.6.2. When $q = r$ then $TG(P) = 0 : 1 : -1$ (at infinity on BC). When all p, q, r are different, $TG(P)$ is a finite point.

Proposition 3.6.3. *When all p, q, r are different, then it exists exactly another point that shares the same $TG(P)$, namely :*

$$other(P) = \frac{q+r-2p}{rp+qp-2qr} : \frac{r+p-2q}{qp+qr-2rp} : \frac{p+q-2r}{qr+rp-2qp}$$

Proof. Direct computation. When eliminating k, u, v in $TG(P) = kTG(U)$, special cases are $p, q-r, u, v-w, qw-rv, 2p-q-r$ and cyclically. For all named points X , it happens that $other(X)$ is not named. \square

Example 3.6.4. Points $X(1635)$ to $X(1651)$ are defined that way. Examples include :

1	1635	98	1640	263	2491	525	1650
3	1636	99	1641	512	1645	648	1651
4	1637	100	1642	513	1646	957	3310
6	351	105	1643	514	1647	1002	665
7	1638	190	1644	523	1648	1022	244
8	1639	262	3569	524	1649	2394	125

3.7 Cross-triangle

Definition 3.7.1. Crosstriangle. The crosstriangle of two given triangles $\mathcal{T}_1 = A_1B_1C_1$ and $\mathcal{T}_2 = A_2B_2C_2$ is defined as the triangle $\mathcal{T}_4 = B_1C_2 \cap B_2C_1, C_1A_2 \cap C_2A_1, A_1B_2 \cap A_2B_1$. Its name comes from the fact we are crossing the vertices of the homologue sidelines.

3.8 Perspectivity

Definition 3.8.1. Vertex trigone, vertex triangle. Let $\mathcal{T}_1 = A_1B_1C_1$ and $\mathcal{T}_2 = A_2B_2C_2$ be two triangles (i.e. two ordered sets of three points). Their vertex trigone \mathcal{T}_3^* is the set of three lines $\mathfrak{A}_3 = A_1A_2, \mathfrak{B}_3 = B_1B_2, \mathfrak{C}_3 = C_1C_2$, while their vertex triangle is the set of points $A_3 = \mathfrak{B}_3 \cap \mathfrak{C}_3$, etc. The vertex triangle is the dual of the vertex trigone.

Remark 3.8.2. Exclude the case where all points are on the same line, the rank of the vertex trigone is either 3 or 2, while the rank of the vertex triangle is either 3 or 1 (adjoint matrix).

Definition 3.8.3. Perspector. Let $\mathcal{T}_1 = A_1B_1C_1$ and $\mathcal{T}_2 = A_2B_2C_2$ be two triangles. When the vertex trigone degenerates, i.e. when the lines $\mathfrak{A}_3, \mathfrak{B}_3, \mathfrak{C}_3$, concur at some point P , this point is called the *perspector* (replacing *center of perspective*) of the (ordered) triangles.

Definition 3.8.4. Sideline triangle, sideline trigone. Let $\mathfrak{T}_1 = \mathfrak{A}_1\mathfrak{B}_1\mathfrak{C}_1$ and $\mathfrak{T}_2 = \mathfrak{A}_2\mathfrak{B}_2\mathfrak{C}_2$ be two trigones (i.e. two ordered sets of three lines). Their sideline triangle \mathcal{T}_4 is the set of three points $A_4 = \mathfrak{A}_1 \cap \mathfrak{A}_2$, $B_4 = \mathfrak{B}_1 \cap \mathfrak{B}_2$, $C_4 = \mathfrak{C}_1 \cap \mathfrak{C}_2$, while their sideline trigone is the set of lines B_4C_4, C_4A_4, A_4B_4 (i.e. the dual of the sideline triangle).

Remark 3.8.5. Excluding the case where all lines are through the same point, the rank of the sideline triangle is either 3 or 2, while the rank of the sideline trigone is either 3 or 1 (adjoint matrix).

Definition 3.8.6. Perspectrix. Let \mathcal{T}_1 and \mathcal{T}_2 be two **triangles**. When the sideline triangle of \mathcal{T}_1^* and \mathcal{T}_2^* degenerates, i.e. when points A_4, B_4, C_4 are on the same line, this line is called the perspectrix (replacing *axis of perspective*) of the triangles.

Theorem 3.8.7. [Desargues]. When none of the triangles \mathcal{T}_1 and \mathcal{T}_2 are degenerate, the existence of a perspector is equivalent to the existence of a perspectrix.

Proof. In this context, trigone \mathfrak{T}_3 is called the Desargues trigone and triangle \mathcal{T}_4 is called the Desargues triangle. The result comes from

$$\det \mathcal{T}_4 = \det \mathcal{T}_1 \det \mathcal{T}_2 \det \mathfrak{T}_3$$

and such a lack of symmetry is better understood when considering the dual formulas:

$$\begin{aligned} \det {}^t\text{homol}(\mathcal{T}_1^*, \mathcal{T}_2^*) &= \det \mathcal{T}_1 \det \mathcal{T}_2 \det \text{homol}(\mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_2) \\ \det \text{homol}(\mathfrak{T}_1^*, \mathfrak{T}_2^*) &= \det \mathfrak{T}_1 \det \mathfrak{T}_2 \det {}^t\text{homol}(\mathfrak{T}_1, \mathfrak{T}_2) \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

Example 3.8.8. Let \mathcal{T}_1 be the reference triangle ABC and \mathcal{T}_2 the cevian triangle $A_P B_P C_P$ of a point P . Then

1. $\mathfrak{T}_3 = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -r & q \\ r & 0 & -p \\ -q & p & 0 \end{bmatrix}$ is the set of the three cevian lines AP , etc while $\mathfrak{T}_3^* = P \cdot {}^tP$: this triangle degenerates into three times the point P . Therefore P is the perspector of both triangles.

2. $\mathcal{T}_4 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & p & -p \\ -q & 0 & q \\ r & -r & 0 \end{pmatrix}$ is the cocevian triangle. Compared to $\mathcal{T}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & p & p \\ q & 0 & q \\ r & r & 0 \end{pmatrix}$, this \mathcal{T}_4 is the set of the associated cross-ratio points, while \mathcal{T}_4^* degenerates into three times the tripolar line $\text{tripolar}P \doteq [qr, rp, pq]$. Therefore this line is the perspectrix of both triangles.

Example 3.8.9. Let \mathcal{T}_1 be the triangle and \mathcal{T}_2 the anticevian triangle $P_A P_B P_C$ of a point P . Let us recall that $\text{cross_ratio}(A, A_P, P, P_A) = -1$. Then again perspector is P and perspectrix is $\text{tripolar}P$.

Exercise 3.8.10. Spoiler: for any P , the pedal triangle of P is in perspective with $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b}$, the triangle whose vertices are the directions of the altitudes AH, BH, CH . The perspector is P itself. Since vertices of $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b}$ are on \mathcal{L}_b , the flatness of the sideline triangle was granted and carries no additional information.

Proposition 3.8.11. Perspectivity kit. Such a kit is defined as $p : q : r : u : v : w$, i.e. six numbers up to a common proportionality factor, none of them being 0. This amounts to give points $P \simeq p : q : r$, $U \simeq u : v : w$ (none on an ABC -sideline) together with a synchronization factor $k = (p + q + r) / (u + v + w)$. Exchanging P and U changes k in $1/k$. We define triangle \mathcal{T}_0 as ABC and triangle \mathcal{T}_1 and \mathcal{T}_2 by :

$$\mathcal{T}_1 \simeq \begin{pmatrix} u & p & p \\ q & v & q \\ r & r & w \end{pmatrix}; \quad \mathcal{T}_2 \simeq \begin{pmatrix} p & u & u \\ v & q & v \\ w & w & r \end{pmatrix}$$

1. \mathcal{T}_0 and \mathcal{T}_1 are perspective wrt to P , \mathcal{T}_0 and \mathcal{T}_2 are perspective wrt U , while $\mathcal{T}_2, \mathcal{T}_3$ admit $P+U$ as perspector

2. Each triangle $\mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_2, \mathcal{T}_3$ is the cross-triangle of the other two.

3. All pair of triangles have the same Desargues triangle, defining the same perspectrix:

$$\Delta \simeq \left[\frac{1}{p-u}; \frac{1}{q-v}; \frac{1}{r-w} \right]$$

4. Reciprocally, any triangle in perspective with ABC can be parametrized that way.

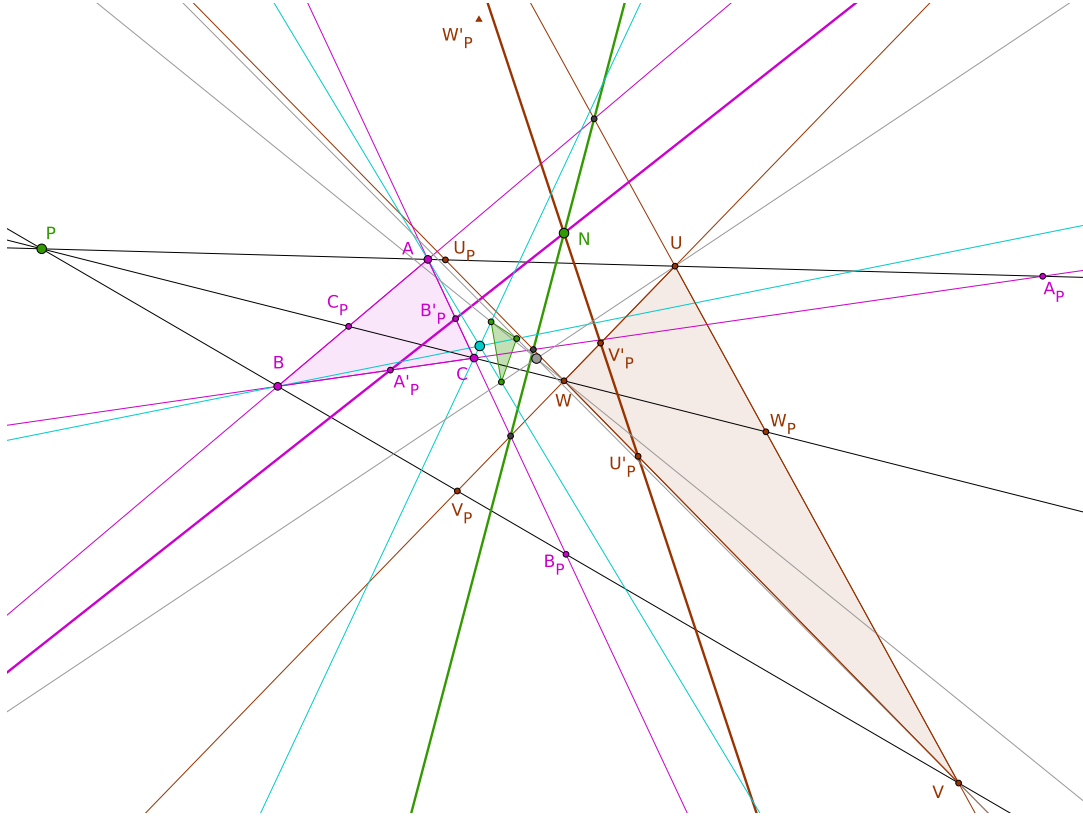


Figure 3.4: Triangles ABC and UVW that admit P as perspector.

Proposition 3.8.12. When triangle $\mathcal{T}_0 = ABC$ and triangle \mathcal{T} admit $P \simeq p : q : r$ and tripolar $\Delta \simeq [qr, rp, pq]$ as perspector and perspectrix, then it exists $k \in \mathbb{R} \cup \{\infty\}$ such that

$$\mathcal{T}_k \simeq \begin{pmatrix} kp & p & p \\ q & kq & q \\ r & r & kr \end{pmatrix} \quad (3.8)$$

Proof. Start from preceding proposition and write that Δ is tripolar P rather than another line. \square

Proposition 3.8.13. Suppose additionally that line PU doesn't go through any of the vertices A, B, C , define

$$Q \simeq \begin{pmatrix} (qw - rv)(p - u)p \\ (ru - pw)(q - v)q \\ (pv - qu)(r - w)r \end{pmatrix}; \quad V \simeq \begin{pmatrix} (qw - rv)(p - u)u \\ (ru - pw)(q - v)v \\ (pv - qu)(r - w)w \end{pmatrix}$$

and consider the triangles $\mathcal{T}_0, \mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_2$, the cevian triangles of P : $\mathcal{T}_{0P}, \mathcal{T}_{1P}, \mathcal{T}_{2P}$ and the cevian triangles of U : $\mathcal{T}_{0U}, \mathcal{T}_{1U}, \mathcal{T}_{2U}$.

Then: (1) P is the perspector of each pair: $(\mathcal{T}_0, \mathcal{T}_1)$, $(\mathcal{T}_{0P}, \mathcal{T}_{1P})$, $(\mathcal{T}_0, \mathcal{T}_{0P})$, $(\mathcal{T}_0, \mathcal{T}_{1P})$, $(\mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_{0P})$, $(\mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_{1P})$;

- (2) Perspector of $(\mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_2)$ is $p + u : q + v : r + w$.
 (3) $Q \neq V$ and line $\Delta = QV$ is the perspectrix of each pair : $(\mathcal{T}_0, \mathcal{T}_1)$, $(\mathcal{T}_{0P}, \mathcal{T}_{1P})$, $(\mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_2)$, $(\mathcal{T}_0, \mathcal{T}_2)$, $(\mathcal{T}_{0U}, \mathcal{T}_{2U})$;
 (4) Moreover, the perspectrices of $(\mathcal{T}_0, \mathcal{T}_{0P})$, $(\mathcal{T}_0, \mathcal{T}_{1P})$, $(\mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_{0P})$, $(\mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_{1P})$ are going through Q (and symmetrically for U).

Proof. The perspectrix of $(\mathcal{T}_0, \mathcal{T}_{0P})$ is $\Delta_P = \begin{bmatrix} qr & pr & pq \end{bmatrix}$, the tripolar of P and we have :

$$\begin{array}{lll} \mathcal{T}_0 & \mathcal{T}_{1P} & pqr \Delta_1 - \det \mathcal{T}_2 \Delta_P \\ \mathcal{T}_1 & \mathcal{T}_{0P} & 2 pqr \Delta_1 - \det \mathcal{T}_2 \Delta_P \\ \mathcal{T}_1 & \mathcal{T}_{1P} & 3 pqr \Delta_1 - \det \mathcal{T}_2 \Delta_P \end{array} \quad \square$$

Remark 3.8.14. Behavior wrt isogonal transform is examined in Proposition 17.6.2.

3.9 Cevian nests

Definition 3.9.1. Cevian nest. Suppose $\mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_2, \mathcal{T}_3$ are triangles and that \mathcal{T}_1 is inscribed in \mathcal{T}_2 and \mathcal{T}_2 is inscribed in \mathcal{T}_3 . If any two of the three triangles are perspective, it is well-known that each is perspective to the third : \mathcal{T}_1 is a cevian triangle of \mathcal{T}_2 for some point P , \mathcal{T}_3 is an anticevian triangle of \mathcal{T}_2 for some point U and $\mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_3$ are perspective wrt some point X . Such configuration is called a cevian nest.

Remark 3.9.2. Dyslexic readers – and the author among them – are advised to organize their memories around the P/U cevadivision, which gives the perspector between the cevian of P and the anticevian of U .

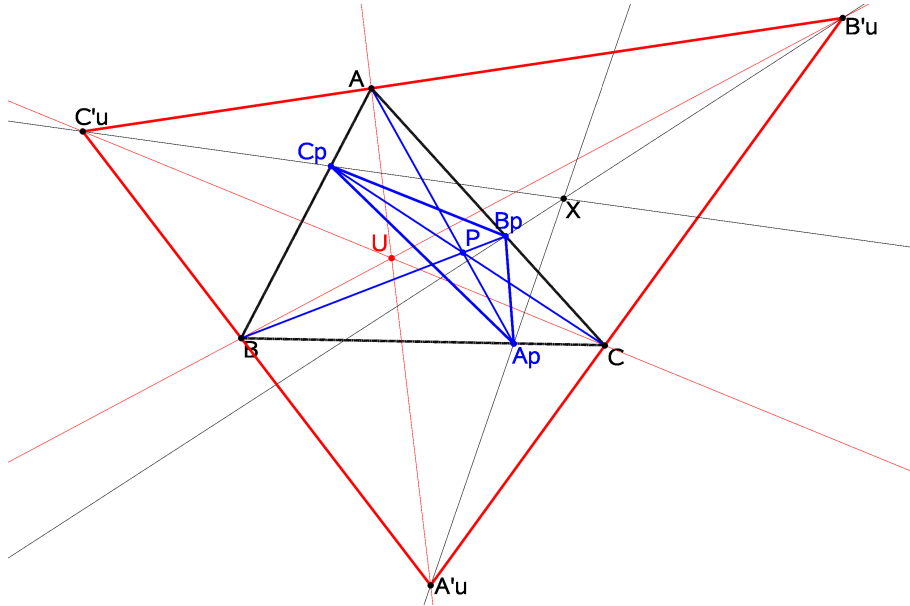


Figure 3.5: X is cevadiv (P, U) while P is cevamul (U, X)

Proposition 3.9.3. Map $P = P(U, X)$ giving the perspector of $\mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_2$ from the other two perspectors of a cevian nest is symmetric, while –for a given P – map $X \longleftrightarrow U$ is involutory.

Proof. Given the vertices S_i ($i = 1, 2, 3$) of triangle \mathcal{T}_3 and perspector U , the vertices S_i ($i = 4, 5, 6$) of triangle \mathcal{T}_2 are obtained by $S_4 = (S_1 \wedge U) \wedge (S_2 \wedge S_3)$ and cyclically. Process can be iterated, obtaining vertices S_i ($i = 7, 8, 9$) of \mathcal{T}_1 . Then X is obtained as $X = (S_1 \wedge S_7) \wedge (S_2 \wedge S_8)$. It can be checked that substituting U by X (and keeping everything else unchanged) leads back to U , proving the second part. The first part follows immediately. \square

When triangle ABC belongs to such a nest, three possibilities can occur. The corresponding operations are summarized in Table 3.2, where "mul" stands for multiplication (giving P) and "div" for the converse operation (giving the missing one from U, X). The Kimberling's name is also given.

small \mathcal{T}_1	medium \mathcal{T}_2	large \mathcal{T}_3	X, P	Kimberling
\mathcal{C}_P wrt \mathcal{T}_2	\mathcal{C}_U	ABC	$X = \text{crossdiv}(P, U)$ $P = \text{crossmul}(U, X)$	cross – conj cross – point
\mathcal{C}_P	ABC	\mathcal{A}_U	$X = \text{cevdiv}(P, U)$ $P = \text{cevdiv}(U, X)$	ceva – conj ceva – point
ABC	\mathcal{A}_P	\mathcal{A}_U wrt \mathcal{T}_2	$X = \text{sqrtdiv}(P, U)$ $P = \text{sqrtmul}(U, X)$	

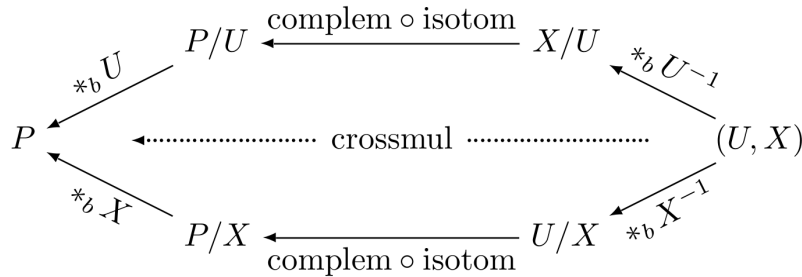
All these operations are (globally) type-keeping, since they transform points into constructible points.

Table 3.2: Three cases of cevian nets

3.10 The cross case (aka case I, cev of cev)

Definition 3.10.1. Crossmul(U, X). As in Table 3.2 (I), let \mathcal{T}_3 (the biggest triangle) be ABC , $\mathcal{T}_2 = A_U B_U C_U$ the (usual) cevian triangle of U and $\mathcal{T}_1 = A' B' C'$ the triangle inscribed in \mathcal{T}_2 obtained by $A' = AX \cap B_U C_U$ and cyclically. Then \mathcal{T}_1 and \mathcal{T}_2 have a perspector (P), and mapping $(U, X) \mapsto P$ is called cross-multiplication.

Definition 3.10.2. Crossdiv(P, U). As in Table 3.2 (I), let \mathcal{T}_3 (the biggest triangle) be ABC , $\mathcal{T}_2 = A_U B_U C_U$ the (usual) cevian triangle of U and $\mathcal{T}_1 = A' B' C'$ the cevian triangle of P wrt \mathcal{T}_2 , obtained by $A' = A_U P \cap B_U C_U$ and cyclically. Then \mathcal{T}_1 and \mathcal{T}_3 have a perspector (X), and mapping $(P, U) \mapsto X$ is called cross-division.



$$\text{crossmul}(u : v : w, x : y : z) = (vz + wy)ux : (uz + wx)vy : (uy + vx)wz \quad (3.9)$$

$$X \xleftarrow{*_b U} X/U \xleftarrow{\text{isotom o anticomplem}} P/U \xleftarrow{*_b U^{-1}} (P, U)$$

$$\xleftarrow{\text{crossdiv}}$$

$$\text{crossdiv}(p : q : r, u : v : w) = \frac{u}{quw + ruv - pvw} : \frac{v}{pvw + ruv - quw} : \frac{w}{pvw + quw - ruv} \quad (3.10)$$

Figure 3.6: crossmul, crossdiv

Proposition 3.10.3. Computing rules of crossmul and crossdiv are given (using barycentrics) in Figure 3.6. Map $(U, X) \mapsto P$ is commutative and behaves like ordinary multiplication (eponymous

property). Map $(P, U) \mapsto X$ behaves wrt crossmul like division behaves wrt ordinary multiplication (eponymous property).

Proof. Barycentrics $p : q : r$ are defining point P' with respect to triangle \mathcal{T}_3 . Call $P : Q : R$ its barycentrics with respect to triangle \mathcal{T}_2 , so that $(p : q : r) = \boxed{\mathcal{T}_2}(P : Q : R)$. Then :

$$\mathcal{T}_1 \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 0 & u & u \\ v & 0 & v \\ w & w & 0 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 0 & P & P \\ Q & 0 & Q \\ R & R & 0 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} P & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & Q & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & R \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \frac{u(Q+R)}{QR} & \frac{u}{P} & \frac{u}{P} \\ \frac{v}{Q} & \frac{v(P+R)}{PR} & \frac{v}{Q} \\ \frac{w}{R} & \frac{w}{R} & \frac{w(P+Q)}{PQ} \end{pmatrix}$$

where the diagonal matrix had been chosen to "synchronize" the columns of triangle \mathcal{T}_2 . Then Proposition 3.8.11 shows that \mathcal{T}_3 and \mathcal{T}_1 are perspective wrt point $u/P : v/Q : w/R$. \square

Remark 3.10.4. The cross-multiplication and cross-division were introduced in Kimberling (1998), using the names **crosspoint** and "**cross conjugacy**", together with the notation $X = C(P, U)$ and also $X = PcU$. In our opinion, a name that emphasizes the properties is more efficient.

The factorization given can be interpreted in terms of isoconjugacies (see Chapter 17). First compute what happens when $U = X(2)$ and obtain complem \circ isotom. Then transmute this map by the transform $\ast_b U$ that fixes A, B, C and sends $G = X(2)$ onto U .

Proposition 3.10.5. *The crossmul P of U, X is also the point of concurrence of (1) the line through points $AX \cap BU$ and $AU \cap BX$, (2) the line through points $BX \cap CU$ and $BU \cap CX$, (3) the line through points $CX \cap AU$ and $CU \cap AX$.*

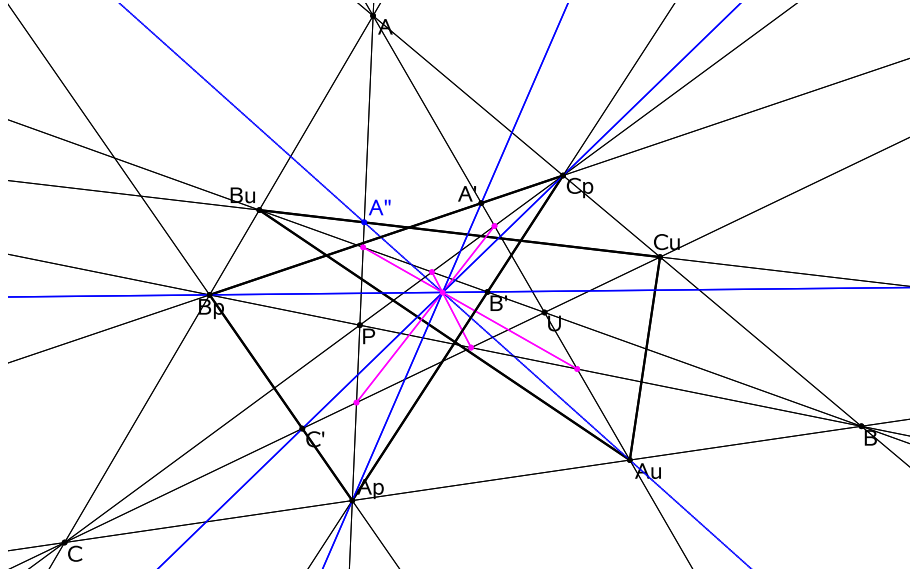


Figure 3.7: P is crossmul of U and X

3.11 The ceva case (aka case II, cev and acev)

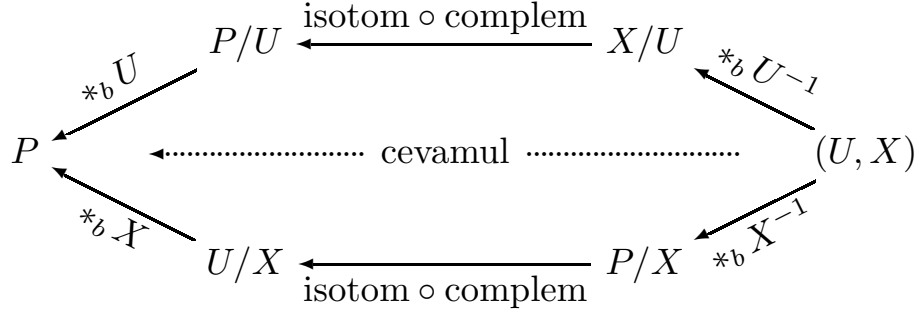
Definition 3.11.1. Cevamul(U,X). As in Table 3.2 (II), let \mathcal{T}_2 (the middle triangle) be ABC , $\mathcal{T}_3 = U_A U_B U_C$ the anticevian triangle of U and $\mathcal{T}_1 = A' B' C'$ be the triangle inscribed in $\mathcal{T}_2 = ABC$ obtained by $A' = U_A X \cap BC$ and cyclically. Then \mathcal{T}_1 and \mathcal{T}_2 have a perspector (i.e. \mathcal{T}_1 is the cevian triangle of some point P), and mapping $(U, X) \mapsto P$ is called ceva-multiplication.

Definition 3.11.2. Cevadiv(P,U). As in Table 3.2 (II), let \mathcal{T}_2 (the middle triangle) be ABC , $\mathcal{T}_3 = U_A U_B U_C$ the anticevian triangle of U and $\mathcal{T}_1 = A_P B_P C_P$ be the cevian triangle of P , obtained (as usual) by $A_P = AP \cap BC$ and cyclically. Then \mathcal{T}_1 and \mathcal{T}_3 have a perspector (X), and mapping $(P, U) \mapsto X$ is called ceva-division.

Proposition 3.11.3. *Computing rules of cevamul and cevadiv are given (using barycentrics) in Figure 3.8. Map $(U, X) \mapsto P$ is commutative i.e. :*

$$\begin{cases} X \text{ is the perspector of } \mathcal{C}_P \text{ and } \mathcal{A}_U \\ U \text{ is the perspector of } \mathcal{C}_P \text{ and } \mathcal{A}_X \end{cases}$$

and behaves like ordinary multiplication (eponymous property). Map $(P, U) \mapsto X$ behaves wrt crossmul like division behaves wrt ordinary multiplication (eponymous property).



$$\begin{aligned} \text{cevadiv}(u : v : w, x : y : z) = \\ (uz + wx)(uy + vx) : (vz + wy)(uy + vx) : (vz + wy)(uz + wx) \end{aligned} \quad (3.11)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{cevadiv}(p : q : r, u : v : w) = \\ u(-qru + rpv + pqw) : v(qru - rpv + pqw) : w(qru + rpv - pqw) \end{aligned} \quad (3.12)$$

Figure 3.8: cevamul, cevadiv

Proposition 3.11.4. *(Spoiler) Seen as an $V \mapsto X$ map, $U \mapsto \text{cevadiv}(U, V)$ is a Cremona transform, whose points of indeterminacy are the anticevian vertices of U and the exceptional locus is the union of the U -anticevian sidelines. Seen as an $U \mapsto X$ map, $U \mapsto \text{cevadiv}(P, U)$ is a Cremona transform, whose points of indeterminacy are the cevian vertices of P and the exceptional locus is the union of the P -cevian sidelines. Seen as an $P \mapsto X$ map, $P \mapsto \text{cevadiv}(P, U)$ is a Cremona transform, whose points of indeterminacy are the ABC vertices and the exceptional locus is the union of the ABC sidelines.*

Proof. Direct examination. □

Remark 3.11.5. The ceva-multiplication and ceva-division were introduced in Kimberling (1998), using the names **cevapoint** and "**ceva conjugacy**", together with the notation $X = P \odot U$. In our opinion, a name that emphasizes the properties is more efficient.

Proposition 3.11.6. *Suppose $U = u : v : w$ and $X = x : y : z$ are distinct points, neither lying on a sideline of ABC . Let $\mathcal{A}_x = X_A X_B X_C$ and $\mathcal{A}_u = U_A U_B U_C$ be the anticevian triangles of X and U (wrt ABC). Define A' as $U_A X \cap X_A U$ and B', C' cyclically (Figure 3.5). Then triangle $A'B'C'$ is inscribed in ABC and is, in fact, the cevian triangle of $P = \text{cevadiv}(U, V)$.*

Proof. Direct computation. □

Construction 3.11.7 (Floor Van Lamoen (2003/10/17)). *Point $\text{cevadiv}(U, X)$ can be constructed from the cevian triangles : let $\mathcal{A}_U B_U C_U$ be the cevian triangle of U , and $\mathcal{A}_X B_X C_X$ the cevian triangle of X . Define :*

$A_{ux} = A_u C_x \cap A_x B_u$	$A_{xu} = A_u B_x \cap A_x C_u$
$B_{ux} = B_u A_x \cap B_x C_u$	$B_{xu} = B_u C_x \cap B_x A_u$
$C_{ux} = C_u B_x \cap C_x A_u$	$C_{xu} = C_u A_x \cap C_x B_u$

Proposition 3.11.8. *Then, as seen in Figure 3.9, triangle ABC is perspective to both triangles A_{ux}, B_{ux}, C_{ux} and A_{xu}, B_{xu}, C_{xu} , and the perspector in both cases is the cevadiv (U, X) .*

Proof. Direct computation. □

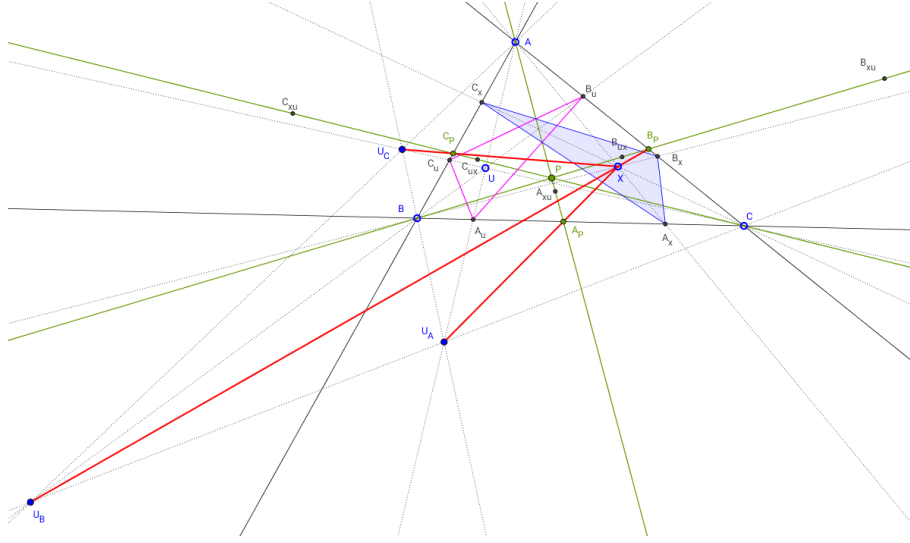


Figure 3.9: Lamoen's construction of $P=\text{cevamul}(U,X)$

3.12 The square case (aka case III, acev of acev)

Construction 3.12.1. *$\text{sqrtdiv}(F, U)$. As in Table 3.2 (III), let \mathcal{T}_1 (the smallest triangle) be ABC , $\mathcal{T}_2 = F_A F_B F_C$ the anticevian triangle of F and \mathcal{T}_3 be the anticevian triangle of U wrt \mathcal{T}_2 . Then \mathcal{T}_1 and \mathcal{T}_3 have a perspector X and mapping $(F, U) \mapsto X$ is called sqrtdiv . We have formula :*

$$\text{sqrtdiv}_F(U) \doteq U_F^\# \simeq \frac{f^2}{u} : \frac{g^2}{v} : \frac{h^2}{w}$$

Remark 3.12.2. This construction is not so easy as it seems to be. In fact, drawing an anticevian triangle requires a knowledge of the barycentrics (and this is no more a construction!), or some conics, or a forest of lines that are equivalent to the drawing of the conics themselves. One can also start from the cevian triangle and use some fourth harmonics, that are equivalent to inversions into some circles.

Definition 3.12.3. *$\text{sqrtnul}(U, X)$. The inverse mapping of sqrtdiv should be the mapping $\text{sqrtnul}(U, X) \mapsto P$ "defined" by :*

$$p : q : r = \pm\sqrt{ux} : \pm\sqrt{vy} : \pm\sqrt{wz}$$

... but (1) the solution is not unique and (2) in fact, the problem cannot even be stated clearly.

3.13 Danneels perspectors

Definition 3.13.1. First Danneels perspector. Let $\mathcal{T}_1 = A_U B_U C_U$ be the cevian triangle of a point $U = u : v : w$. Let L_A be the line through A parallel to $B_U C_U$, and define L_B and L_C cyclically. The lines L_A, L_B, L_C determine a triangle \mathcal{T}_2 perspective to \mathcal{T}_1 (and in fact homothetic, with factor 2). The corresponding perspector is $\text{DP}_1(U)$, the first Danneels perspector (#11037) of U . Using barycentrics :

$$\text{DP}_1(U) = u^2(v+w) : v^2(w+u) : w^2(u+v) \quad (3.13)$$

Proof. Compute (from left to right) the row $B_U \wedge C_U \wedge \mathcal{L}_b \wedge A$ and cyclically. Obtain a matrix describing a trigone and takes the adjoint to obtain \mathcal{T}_2 . Then compute the perspector. One can also remark that \mathcal{T}_2 is the anticevian triangle of :

$$X = u(v+w) : v(u+w) : w(u+v)$$

and obtain $\text{DP}_1(U)$ as $\text{cevdiv}(U/X)$ (homothetic property is obvious... and useless to compute the perspector). \square

Remark 3.13.2. This point is named $D(U)$ in ETC. No name of only one letter! Moreover this conflicts with the Maple's derivation operator.

Proposition 3.13.3. *Point $G = X(2)$ is invariant under DP_1 . Moreover, G , U and $\text{DP}_1(U)$ are ever collinear. For example, Euler line is globally invariant.*

Proof. Check that $\det(X_2, U, \text{DP}_1(X_2 + \lambda U)) = 0$. \square

Proposition 3.13.4. *When $\text{DP}_1(X) = G$ then either $X = G$ or X lies on the Steiner circumellipse.*

Proof. Write $\text{DP}_1(X) = kG$ and solve. Except from $X = G$, $xy + yz + zx = 0$ is obtained. \square

Proposition 3.13.5. *When $\text{DP}_1(U) \neq G$, i.e. when $U \neq G$ and U not on the circumSteiner, it exists two other points that verify $\text{DP}_1(X) = \text{DP}_1(U)$. Using barycentrics, we have :*

$$X \simeq \begin{pmatrix} v+w-2u-W\frac{1}{(u+w)(u+v)} \\ w+u-2v-W\frac{1}{(u+v)(v+w)} \\ u+v-2w-W\frac{1}{(u+w)(v+w)} \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{where}$$

$$W^2 = (u+v)(v+w)(w+u)(u^2(v+w) + v^2(w+u) + w^2(u+v) - 6uvw)$$

Proof. Direct computation, assuming $xy + yz + zx \neq 0$. The main difficulty is to re-obtain a symmetric expression after elimination of k, z and resolution on y . \square

Example 3.13.6. Here is a list of pairs (I, J) of named points such that $\text{DP}_1(X(I)) = X(J)$:

1	42	20	3079	189	1422	1370	455
3	418	25	3080	264	324		
4	25	30	3081	366	367		
5	3078	69	394	651	222		
6	3051	75	321	653	196		
7	57	100	55	1113	25		
8	200	110	184	1114	25		

2, on Steiner : 190, 290, 648, 664, 666, 668, 670, 671, 886, 889, 892,

903, 991, 1121, 1494, 2479, 2480, 2481, 2966, 3225, 3226, 3227, 3228

Definition 3.13.7. Second Danneels perspector. Suppose $\mathcal{T}_1 = A_U B_U C_U$ is the cevian triangle of a point U . Let L_{AB} be the line through B parallel to $A_U B_U$, and let L_{AC} be the line through C parallel to $A_U C_U$. Define $A' = L_{AB} \cap L_{AC}$ and B', C' cyclically. Finally obtain $A'' = BB' \cap CC'$ and B'', C'' cyclically. It happens that triangle $\mathcal{T}_2 = A'' B'' C''$ is perspective to $\mathcal{T}_1 = A_U B_U C_U$. The corresponding perspector is $\text{DP}_2(U)$, the second Danneels perspector of U (Danneels, 2006). Using barycentrics :

$$\text{DP}_2(U) = u(v-w)^2 : v(w-u)^2 : w(u-v)^2 \quad (3.14)$$

Proof. Compute (left to right) $L_{AB} = A_U \wedge B_U \wedge \mathcal{L}_b \wedge B$, L_{AC} accordingly, then $A' = L_{AB} \wedge L_{AC}$ and B', C' cyclically. Obtain $A'' = (B \wedge B') \wedge (C \wedge C')$ and B'', C'' cyclically. See that $\mathcal{T}_2 = A'' B'' C''$ is the anticevian triangle of point :

$$X \doteq u(v-w) : v(w-u) : w(u-v)$$

and obtain $\text{DP}_2(U)$ as $\text{cevdiv}(U, X)$. \square

Proposition 3.13.8. *The circumconic through A, B, C, U , isot (U) admits $DP_2(U)$ as center and*

$$u(v^2 - w^2) : v(w^2 - u^2) : w(u^2 - v^2)$$

as perspector. And therefore isotomic conjugates have the same second Danneels' perspector.

Proof. Immediate computation. □

Example 3.13.9. List of $(U, U^*, DP_2(U))$:

U	U^*	DP	U	U^*	DP	U	U^*	DP
1	75	244	37	274	3121	394	2052	3269
3	264	2972	42	310	3122	519	903	1647
4	69	125	57	312	2170	524	671	1648
6	76	3124	81	321	3125	536	3227	1646
7	8	11	94	323	2088	538	3228	1645
9	85	3119	98	325	868	2394	2407	1637
10	86	3120	99	523	1649	2395	2396	2491
20	253	122	100	693	3126	2397	2401	3310
30	1494	1650	200	1088	2310	2398	2400	676

and of points without named isotomic :

[43, 3123], [88, 2087], [694, 2086], [1022, 1635], [1026, 2254], [2421, 3569]

Chapter 4

The French Touch

This chapter is translated from an article originally published under the title "Géométrie projective pour agrégatifs" (Douillet, 2012). One cannot totally exclude that some provocative tone was used here or there.

Our friend keeps repeating that the current program of the recruitment competition for French Second Degree teachers (agrégation de Mathématiques) does not contain the elements necessary to understand the geometries of Moebius, Kimberling or Morley, that is to say the different versions of the plane projective geometry. I rather disagree with this point of view. Here are some elements to support my own opinion.

4.1 The "not so flying plane"¹

1. Definition. We call rantanplan the "quad ruled paper sheet" which is placed in front of a schoolchild. We make a (red) cross somewhere (at the intersection of two gridlines), and we write "Here you are". When this takes up too much space, we write " O ". And we say "this is the origin".
2. Definition. You obtain the point "tchik, tchik, tchik, kling, tchouk, tchouk, bang, A " by placing yourself in O , with the margin behind you (the gaze is then directed along the horizontal lines of the papersheet). And you move a square forward (tchik), and another square forward (the second tchik), and again another square forward (the third tchik). Then you do a quarter turn (kling) and now, the gaze is directed along the vertical lines of the papersheet. And you move one square forward (tchouk), then another square forward (the second tchouk), you put down the pencil and make a cross (bang). And you write the name of the point, A .
3. Axiom (Archimedes + Thales + Cantor). The preceding definitional schema gives access to all the points of the rantanplan.
4. Definition, Borel notation. When there are "a lot" of tchiks and tchouks, we count them and we note $A = 3 + 2i$. The " i " is used to denote the kling.
5. Foundational experiment. The candidate is at the blackboard and stands in front of the door. Then she makes a quarter turn, in the direction of the Jury. Then she makes another quarter turn, in the direction of the window. As a result, the candidate has made a half turn and all (horizontal) directions have been reversed. This is noted $i^2 = -1$.
6. Scholie. Suppose the previous scene is observed by two Vice-Presidents of the Jury, one placed on the floor above, the other placed on the floor below, and further assume that the President of the Jury has a sufficient authority to impose on his assessors the use of watches whose hands turn in the same "clockwise" direction. Then one of them will see $A = 3 + 2i$, and the other will see $A = 3 - 2i$.
7. Hands out. The above experiment can be reproduced without such a grandiose staging. It is enough that the pupil looks at his rantanplan not from above, but from below, by transparency. So "everything starts turning the other way".

¹Tentative translation of the French joke: "le rantanplan"

8. Definition. Normalized coordinates. In order obtain an intrinsic object, we define the Normalized Coordinates of the point A by:

$$\zeta_{norm}(A) = \begin{pmatrix} 3 + 2i \\ 1 \\ 3 - 2i \end{pmatrix}$$

We note above what is seen by the Vice president who is on the floor above and we note below what is seen by the Vice president who is on the floor below. And one can even imagine that the "1" between the two serves to unify the points of view of the two Vice-Presidents.

9. Scholie. When the two Vice-Presidents enter into a full open war (to become President of the next year Jury), the "unifying" point of view cannot be maintained, and it is advisable to replace this "1=unity" by a multiple, leading to the following definition.
10. Definition. Superior Coordinates. Coordinates proportional to the Normalized Coordinates are called Superior Coordinates². This will be noted using the sign \simeq (simeq) and we have, for example, the relation

$$\zeta_A \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 6 + 4i \\ 2 \\ 6 - 4i \end{pmatrix}$$

In the wide outer world, where jokes about the ENS are likely to fail miserably, ζ_A is called the Morley coordinates of A .

11. Notation. The Morley coordinates of the current point of the plane are written $\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}$ (big zed, big tea, big zeta). Each candidate to the aggregation knows (or at least should know) that an algebraic variable is nothing else than a mark-a-place in the writing of polynomials which are finite series of multi-indexed coefficients. What could be the complex conjugate of a mark-a-place?

4.2 Algorithmic in the rantanplan

1. Theorem. The fraction field \mathbb{K} of an integral ring \mathbb{A} is constructed by identifying among themselves all the couples of $\mathbb{A} \times \mathbb{A} \setminus (0,0)$ which share the same alignment with the origin $(0,0)$. Whatever it has been said, this projectification $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{A}}(\mathbb{A}^2) \setminus \{\infty\}$ is and remains on the Agrégation program, and when you have that, you have quite everything else.
2. Softer version. In order to not frighten the school children, we can also say that when two points of the rantanplan are aligned with the origin, the coordinates are proportional, and the cross difference is zero, i.e. $x_A y_B - x_B y_A = 0$.
3. Thales theorem. When three points are three in number and aligned, the abscissa variations and ordinate variations are proportional. This can be written as:

$$(x_C - x_A)(y_B - y_A) - (x_B - x_A)(y_C - y_A) = 0$$

4. Definition (slope). The equation of a line is the condition for a third point (x, y) to be aligned with two given points (two is two: the given points must be different). Once reorganized, the above expression can be written $y = px + m$, where p is the slope, i.e. the proportionality ratio between the Δy and the Δx .
5. Scholie. Beyond its limitations, the formula $y = px + m$ has the immense merit of characterizing the direction of a straight line by its slope, and even of characterizing straight lines as being the curves that keep going in a straight line, i.e. curves with a constant slope.
6. Algorithmic version of the Thales theorem. The stratospheric point of view consists in summarizing the Thales theorem by "we develop, we reorganize and we obtain $ax + by + c = 0$ ".

²Alluding to the École Normale Supérieure

The algorithmic point of view consists in being interested in computations, to the point of trying to facilitate them. We have

$$a = -y_B + y_A, \quad b = x_B - x_A, \quad c = x_A y_B - y_A x_B$$

In other words, the number c is the cross difference of the x and the y . The result is known: the other two are also cross differences when using the "ever one" quantity. In other words, the equation of the line passing through two points is computed using:

$$A \wedge B = \begin{pmatrix} x_A \\ y_A \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \wedge \begin{pmatrix} x_B \\ y_B \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = [y_A \times 1 - y_B \times 1, x_B \times 1 - x_A \times 1, x_A y_B - y_A x_B]$$

7. Duality. The cross-differences are put in a row because they characterize a straight line. It's not just a joke "line / row". We deliberately note the lines differently from the points ... quite simply because the lines are not points and the points are not lines³. If wanted, we could note the points in row, and the lines in column⁴. We could even exchange all the points with all the lines. We just have to find a way not to mix the two kinds of things.
8. From an advanced point of view, the equation of a line is written using a determinant and the wedge operator is the universal factorization of this multilinear operator:

$$\begin{vmatrix} x_A & x_B & x \\ y_A & y_B & y \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{vmatrix} = \left(\begin{pmatrix} x_A \\ y_A \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \wedge \begin{pmatrix} x_B \\ y_B \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \right) \cdot \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

But, despite the possibility of such a stratospheric description, the fact remains that the cross difference method is a practical and fast way to calculate lines and intersections. This method can be taught and used well before learning any theory on large determinants. It is the same for the algorithm of the ordinary decimal division: it can be taught and used well before learning any theory on the limited expansions of a quotient of uniformly converging series.

9. Let us insist heavily on this fundamental point. The formula for subtracting fractions: $\frac{a}{b} - \frac{c}{d} = \frac{ad - bc}{bd}$ is only saying that (a, b) and (c, d) are aligned with the origin. This is projective geometry. More precisely, projective geometry is nothing more than that: drawing the fractions that we want to subtract, then expand them to the same denominator. There is no reason to make a molehill out of such an elementary thing.
10. Example. We want to calculate $E = AB \cap CD$ with $A = 3 + 4i, B = 2 - 5i, C = -1 + i, D = 1 - i$. We have successively:

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} 3 \\ 4 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \wedge \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ -5 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{bmatrix} 9 & -1 & -23 \end{bmatrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \wedge \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ -1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \\ \begin{bmatrix} 9 & -1 & -23 \end{bmatrix} \wedge \begin{bmatrix} 3 & 2 & -1 \end{bmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 47 \\ -60 \\ 21 \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 47/21 \\ -20/7 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

³As the French joke says, les points ne sont point des droites, et les droites ne sont droite des points.

⁴Cross over the Chanel, they behave like that.

11. Example (continued). Using Morley's affixes leads to:

$$\begin{aligned} \begin{pmatrix} 3+4i \\ 1 \\ 3-4i \end{pmatrix} \wedge \begin{pmatrix} 2-5i \\ 1 \\ 2+5i \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{bmatrix} -1+9i & -46i & 1+9i \end{bmatrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} -1+2i \\ 1 \\ -1-2i \end{pmatrix} \wedge \begin{pmatrix} 1-i \\ 1 \\ 1+i \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{bmatrix} 2+3i & -2i & -2+3i \end{bmatrix} \\ \left(\begin{bmatrix} -1+9i & -46i & 1+9i \\ 2+3i & -2i & -2+3i \end{bmatrix} \wedge \right) &= \begin{pmatrix} +120+94i \\ 42i \\ -120+94i \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \frac{47}{21} - \frac{20}{7}i \\ 1 \\ \frac{47}{21} + \frac{20}{7}i \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Since complex conjugacy is an automorphism, the third component ends up being the conjugate of the first, since this was the case when starting. For now, the \overline{Z} component is merely a concession made to the fans of intrinsic constructions. Let's show how to use it for a good reason.

4.3 Thales antiquadratic form

1. Fundamental formula for affine spaces. To arrive at B, we start from some A, then we follow the path that goes from A up to B. We have:

$$B = A + (B - A)$$

2. Definition. The vector \overrightarrow{AB} is what we get by subtracting the normalized coordinates of A from the normalized coordinates of B.
3. Scholie. Subtracting the upper coordinates would not give a well-defined object, since the upper coordinates of A can be multiplied by a factor different from that of the upper coordinates of B.
4. Proposition. When we consider the vectors \overrightarrow{AB} for what they are, i.e. exactly defined objects (and not defined up to a factor), their set $\overrightarrow{\mathcal{V}}$ forms a vector space of dimension 2.
5. Definition. If we assume that the vector \overrightarrow{AB} is non-zero, but if we disregard its size, only its direction remains, and we get a new kind of points, i.e. the points with $\mathbf{T} = 0$. The set of the points which verify this equation is the line $[0; 1; 0]$. We write it \mathcal{L}_z .
6. Proposition. The point $k\overrightarrow{AB}$ belongs to line AB. In fact, this point is nothing else than $AB \wedge \mathcal{L}_z$. Proof: this result is obvious from the coordinates. The basic reason is that the subtraction of fractions also uses cross differences: don't we have $\mathbb{K} = \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{A}}(\mathbb{A}^2) \setminus \{\infty\}$?
7. Operator W. This is the operator which takes a straight line as input and gives its point at infinity as output. Using Morley's affixes, we have:⁵

$$\Delta \wedge \mathcal{L}_z \simeq \boxed{W_z} \cdot {}^t\Delta \quad \text{where } \boxed{W_z} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -i \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ +i & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

8. Theorem (Thales). Two lines are parallel when the point at infinity of one of them belongs to the other. This is expressed by:

$$\Delta_1 \parallel \Delta_2 \iff \Delta_1 \cdot \boxed{W_z} \cdot \Delta_2 = 0$$

⁵When only dealing with $\Delta \wedge \mathcal{L}_z$, we could have simplified by i . But there are other uses of $\boxed{W_z}$ where this factor will be required.

4.4 Pythagoras quadratic form

1. Theorem (pons caballorum). The squared norm of a vector is computed using $|z|^2 = z\bar{z}$. For vectors of type \overrightarrow{AB} , this translates into:

$$\left|\overrightarrow{AB}\right|^2 = {}^t\overrightarrow{AB} \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_z} \cdot \overrightarrow{AB} \quad \text{where } \boxed{\text{Pyth}_z} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

2. Proposition. Let P a point at finite distance. Then there are two linear transformations ψ such that

(a) $\psi(P) = 0 : 0 : 0$

(b) $\psi(\overrightarrow{V}) = \overrightarrow{V}$

(c) for all $V \in \overrightarrow{V}$, $\langle \psi(V) | V \rangle = 0$ while $\langle \psi(V) | \psi(V) \rangle = \langle V | V \rangle$.

Their characteristic polynomial is $\mu^3 + \mu$ and we have:

$$\boxed{\psi} = i \begin{pmatrix} +1 & -z/t & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & +\bar{z}/t & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

the other possibility being the opposite of the $\boxed{\psi}$ operator .

3. Definition. Operator $\boxed{\text{OrtO}_z}$. The action of one of the operators ψ_P on the vector $1 : 0 : 1$ is the vector $+i : 0 : -i$. Therefore it corresponds to a direct rotation of a quarter turn for the observer from above (i.e. \mathbf{Z}). The choice $P = O$ leads to the operator:

$$\boxed{\text{OrtO}_z} = i \begin{pmatrix} +1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

and we have $\boxed{\text{OrtO}_z} = -2 {}^t\boxed{W_z} \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_z}$.

4. Proposition. Considered as acting up to a factor, each of the operators ψ –and $\boxed{\text{OrtO}_z}$ among them– sends a point at infinity on the point at infinity representing the orthogonal direction (orthopoint).
5. Remark. When $U \in \mathcal{L}_z$, then $\Delta_U \doteq {}^tU \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_z}$ is the line of points V such as ${}^tU \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_z} \cdot V = 0$. The point at infinity of Δ_U is $U' = \boxed{W_z} \cdot {}^t\Delta_U = \boxed{W_z} \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_z} \cdot U$. It is therefore convenient to choose P in O , so that $\boxed{\psi}$ is proportional to $\boxed{W_z} \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_z}$.
6. Operator \mathcal{M} (orthodir). This is the operator which takes a straight line as input and gives the orthopoint of its point at infinity as output. Using Morley's affixes, we have:

$$\text{orthodir}(\Delta) = \boxed{\mathcal{M}_z} \cdot {}^t\Delta \quad \text{where } \boxed{\mathcal{M}_z} = \boxed{\text{OrtO}_z} \cdot \boxed{W_z} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

7. Theorem (Pythagoras). Two lines are perpendicular when the orthodir of one of them belongs to the other. This is expressed by:

$$\Delta_1 \perp \Delta_2 \iff \Delta_1 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_z} \cdot \Delta_2 = 0$$

4.5 Tangent of an angle between two lines

1. Theorem. The tangent of the oriented angle determined by the lines Δ_1 and Δ_2 is obtained by dividing the antisymmetric form of Thales by the symmetric form of Pythagoras. In other words, we have:

$$\tan(\Delta_1, \Delta_2) = \frac{\Delta_1 \cdot \boxed{W_z} \cdot {}^t\Delta_2}{\Delta_1 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_z} \cdot {}^t\Delta_2}$$

2. Remark. One of the interests of this formula is to provide a *projective* expression, i.e. an expression that resists to all these "definitions up to a factor". This is clear for the factors involving the Δ_j . But this is also true for the transformation matrices. Indeed $\boxed{W_z}$ and $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_z}$ are of the same type, namely "line to point", and are both transformed according to the same $X \mapsto \text{aller} \cdot X \cdot {}^t\text{aller}$ paradigm.

3. Elementary proof (the shorter, the better). We have:

$$([p+i; 2m; p-i], [q+i; 2n; q-i]) \mapsto \frac{q-p}{1+pq}$$

4. Everybody knows that tangents are making a group, which satisfies:

$$\tan(\Delta_1, \Delta_3) = \frac{\tan(\Delta_1, \Delta_2) + \tan(\Delta_2, \Delta_3)}{1 - \tan(\Delta_1, \Delta_2) \tan(\Delta_2, \Delta_3)}$$

with the usual homographic rules to manage the point $\infty \in \overline{\mathbb{C}}$. And this applies even when the lines are not visible, and the tangents are complex numbers.

5. Note that the visible points at infinity of $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$, in other words the directions, are written $z : 0 : \bar{z}$ and therefore can be normalized to $\omega^2 : 0 : 1$. An angle between lines is represented by its double, which is an angle between vectors, so that the later can be represented by a point on the trigonometric circle.
6. Interpretation. When the President of the Jury raises his head to contemplate the infinity, he forms his opinion by dividing the points of view of his two Vice-Presidents, according to the formula $\omega^2 = z/\bar{z}$. And then, each of the quarter turns multiplies ω^2 by -1 . So intrinsic, says the President !

4.6 Down with flechi-flecha !

Remark 4.6.1. The physical space doesn't know about some point which would be central and privileged, contrary to what happens in a vector space. A better model is provided by the so-called "affine spaces", where all points can be taken as a "random observer".

Definition 4.6.2. An **affine combination** of vectors is a linear combination whose sum of coefficients is equal to 1. An affine space is some non empty set \mathcal{E} closed under such affine combinations. Obviously, this requires the possibility to compute the said barycenters, and therefore \mathcal{E} needs to be a subset of some vector space \widehat{E} .

Notation 4.6.3. As usual, operations in \mathcal{E} are noted $+$, $-$, \cdot , \div ; but, sometimes, it becomes useful to use another set of notations for the operations used in some external vector space. When this occurs, we will use the \oplus , \ominus , \odot symbols.

Proposition 4.6.4. When \mathcal{E} is an affine subset of \widehat{E} , the set $\vec{\mathcal{V}} \doteq \{\overrightarrow{BC} \doteq C \ominus B \mid B, C \in \mathcal{E}\}$ is a vectorial subset of \widehat{E} , while \mathcal{E} can be written as $A \oplus \vec{\mathcal{V}}$ for any observer $A \in \mathcal{E}$.

Proof. Since $\mathcal{E} \neq \emptyset$, it exists some $A \in \mathcal{E}$. Therefore, $\vec{0} \in \vec{\mathcal{V}}$ is obtained as $A - A$. If $u_j \doteq C \ominus B \in \vec{\mathcal{V}}$, then $D_j \doteq A \oplus u_j = A \oplus C \ominus B$ is the barycenter of three points of \mathcal{E} so that $D_j \in \mathcal{E}$. Thus each $u_j \in \vec{\mathcal{V}}$ is an $D_j \ominus A$ for some D_j and the same fixed A . Then $ku = k(D \ominus A) = (kD \oplus (1-k)A) \ominus A = D_k - A \in \vec{\mathcal{V}}$. Moreover

$$ku_1 \oplus (1-k)u_2 = k(M_1 - A) \oplus (1-k)(M_2 - A) = (kM_1 \oplus (1-k)M_2) \ominus A \in \vec{\mathcal{V}} \quad \square$$

Definition 4.6.5. A French flechi-flecha is a pair $(\mathcal{E}, \vec{\mathcal{V}})$ where $\vec{\mathcal{V}}$ is a vector space acting freely over the non empty set \mathcal{E} . In other words, paradigms are reversed and Proposition 4.6.4 is taken as a definition, while Definition 4.6.2 becomes a property.

Definition 4.6.6. Since the French flechi-flecha despises the set \widehat{E} , barycenters have to be defined otherwise. Using the obvious fact that the set of all the $\mathcal{E} \hookrightarrow \vec{\mathcal{V}}$ functions is a \mathbb{K} vector space, the so-called **Leibniz functions** are members of

$$\mathfrak{F} \doteq \text{span} \{ \lambda_A \mid A \in \mathcal{E} \} \quad \text{where } \lambda_A : \mathcal{E} \hookrightarrow \vec{\mathcal{V}}, M \mapsto \overrightarrow{AM}$$

Proposition 4.6.7. Define the mass μ of some element of \mathfrak{F} by $\mu(\sum k_A \lambda_A) \doteq \sum k_A$ then

1. Function μ is well defined and is a linear map $\mathfrak{F} \mapsto \mathbb{K}$.
2. When $f \in \mathfrak{F}$ and $\mu(f) = 0$, then f is constant
3. When $f \in \mathfrak{F}$ and $\mu(f) \neq 0$, it exists an unique $G \in \mathcal{E}$ (the so-called barycenter) such that $f = \mu(f) \cdot \lambda_G$

Proof. (1-2). Suppose that your French flechi-flecha \mathcal{E} contains at least two different points P, Q . Then, for any decomposition of f ,

$$f(Q) - f(P) = \sum k_B \lambda_B(Q) - \sum k_B \lambda_B(P) = \sum k_B (\overrightarrow{BQ} - \overrightarrow{BP}) = \left(\sum k_B \right) \overrightarrow{PQ}$$

(3). Assume $\mu(f) \neq 0$ and define $G_P = P - f(P) \div \mu(f)$. Then $G_P = G_Q$ by the previous relation, together with $f(G) = f(P) - \overrightarrow{f}(f(P)) \div \mu(f) = \overrightarrow{0}$. \square

Theorem 4.6.8. Using the French flechi-flecha, i.e. reverting the paradigms to obtain Definition 4.6.5 is only stupid. Indeed, knowledge of the pair $(\mathcal{E}, \vec{\mathcal{V}})$ is sufficient to determine

1. a vector space \widetilde{E} isomorph to $\mathcal{E} \times \mathbb{K}$,
2. a linear form $\mu : \widetilde{E} \hookrightarrow \mathbb{K}$,
3. an affine injection $j : \mathcal{E} \hookrightarrow \widetilde{E}$ such that $j(\mathcal{E}) = \{x \in \widetilde{E} \mid \mu(x) = 1\}$
4. and then $\{x \in \widetilde{E} \mid \mu(x) = 0\}$ is an isomorphic copy of $\vec{\mathcal{V}}$ (Lelong-Ferrand, 1986, p.104).

You can even obtain a canonical vector space \widehat{E} where $\vec{\mathcal{V}}$ and \mathcal{E} are actually included as genuine substructures, not just up to an isomorphism (Nekovar, 2007, p. 10).

Nekovar. . Use self-explanatory notations, i.e. $u, v \in \vec{\mathcal{V}}, x, y \in \mathcal{E}, s, t \in \mathbb{K}^*$.

- Define \widehat{E} as $\vec{\mathcal{V}} \cup (\mathbb{K}^* \times \mathcal{E})$. Therefore $\widehat{x} \in \widehat{E}$ is either some u or some pair $q(s, x)$, where $s \neq 0$.
- Define μ as $\mu(u) = 0$ while $\mu(sx) = s \neq 0$ otherwise.
- Enforce $q(1, x) = x$ and define \odot , the scalar multiplication in \widehat{E} , by $0 \odot \widehat{x} = \overrightarrow{0}$, $s \odot u = su$ and $t \odot q(s, x) = q(ts, x)$.
- Define \oplus , the addition in \widehat{E} , by the necessary formulas

$$\begin{aligned} & - u \oplus v = u + v; x \oplus u = x + u; \\ & - q(s, x) \oplus u = q(s, x + s^{-1}u) \\ & - q(-s, x) \oplus q(+s, y) = s \cdot \overrightarrow{xy} \\ & - q(s, x) \oplus q(t, y) = q\left(s + t, x + \frac{t}{s+t} \overrightarrow{xy}\right) \end{aligned}$$

- And now, it "only" remains to verify that these operations define a vector space structure over the set \widehat{E} , while h is linear.

□

Lelong-Ferrand. The algebraic burden can be alleviated by using

$$\tilde{E} = \left\{ g_u = (M \mapsto u) \mid u \in \vec{\mathcal{V}} \right\} \cup \{ s \cdot \lambda_x \mid s \in \mathbb{K}^+, x \in \mathcal{E} \}$$

and μ as defined before. But this way of doing cannot be described as "canonical" since what is obtained is not \mathcal{E} itself, but only an isomorphic copy of this space. □

Remark 4.6.9. The French flechi-flecha was a must during the "new maths" period in France. But now, we have:

Theorem 4.6.10. *There is no such thing like an "intrinsic affine space". ([Polo, 2015, chap3, p.65](#))*

Chapter 5

Teaching Geometry to a computer

5.1 Maple

1. Catch `maple 2023`, `Linux` from the net.
2. Update: `/opt/maple2023/maple2023/update/update.ini` contient la valeur de `encyfile = "$ipse/docs/Cherche/Geometry/maple/ency48.m"`
3. nouvelle procedure `kiestu()` qui donne 18 ou 2023 selon le cas.
4. modifier `mkici` pour initialiser $\sin(\omega)$, $\cos(\omega)$ avant de calculer $\tan(\omega)$.
5. modifier `latexx` pour avoir `latex(*,writeto=*,*)` .

5.2 The random observer

When dealing with triangle geometry, we have to organize the coexistence of three kinds of objects. We have vectors, we have points and we have 3-tuples. A vector describes a translation of the "true plane". A vector has a direction but also a length and therefore is not defined "up to a proportionality factor". The set of all these vectors is a 2-dimensional vector space \vec{V} (more about it in what follows). A point is either an element of the "true plane", i.e. an ordinary point at finite distance, or a point at infinity describing the direction of some line. Such points have therefore to be described "up to a proportionality factor" by a column that belongs to a given copy of $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^3)$. In the same vein, lines are described "up to a proportionality factor" by a row that belongs to another copy $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^3)$.

And we need to talk with our computer in order to let it compute all the required results. These computations are done using 3-tuples and tools acting over 3-tuples so that computations must be described using \mathbb{R}^3 rather than using \vec{V} or $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^3)$. It remains to optimize the coexistence of these three points of view

Notation 5.2.1. In the plane we are dealing with, an affine description of a point at finite distance P is a 3-tuple (ξ, η, ζ) where $\zeta = 1$ is assumed. The semantic of these coordinates is the pre-existence of some random observer, that uses a Cartesian frame (ξ, η) to describe what is occurring before her eyes.

5.3 Working out an example

Let us take an example and begin with an informal approach (cf <http://www.les-mathematiques.net/phorum/read.php?8,585414,586289#msg-586289>). We have a point P , given by a column, and two triangles T_1, T_2 given by the columns of their vertices :

$$P = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 8 \\ 15 \\ 2 \end{pmatrix} ; T_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 7 & 3 & -2 \\ 9 & 9 & -3 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} ; T_2 = \begin{pmatrix} -9 & 19 & 6 \\ 1 & -15 & 11 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

As it should be, each column verifies $\zeta = 1$, which is the equation of the affine plane \mathcal{E} when seen as a subspace of \mathbb{R}^3 .

We define \boxed{W} as the matrix that transforms the matrix T of a triangle (P_j) into the matrix of the sideline vectors $\left(\overrightarrow{P_{j+1}P_{j+2}}\right)$ of this triangle (indices are taken modulo 3 so that $P_4 = P_1$ etc).

And now, we compute $\boxed{\mathcal{K}} = {}^t\boxed{W} \cdot {}^tT \cdot T \cdot \boxed{W}$ for both triangles. We have :

$$\boxed{W} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & -1 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\boxed{\mathcal{K}_1} = \begin{pmatrix} 169 & -189 & 20 \\ -189 & 225 & -36 \\ 20 & -36 & 16 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a^2 & -S_c & -S_b \\ -S_c & b^2 & -S_a \\ -S_b & -S_a & c^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\boxed{\mathcal{K}_2} = \begin{pmatrix} 845 & -65 & -780 \\ -65 & 325 & -260 \\ -780 & -260 & 1040 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha^2 & -S_\gamma & -S_\beta \\ -S_\gamma & \beta^2 & -S_\alpha \\ -S_\beta & -S_\alpha & \gamma^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Here we use a, b, c for the sidelengths of the first triangle and α, β, γ for the second one. The Conway's symbols $S_a = (b^2 + c^2 - a^2)/2$ etc. are defined accordingly. The letter used to name the matrix $\boxed{\mathcal{K}}$ has been chosen by reference to the Al-Kashi formula. Clearly, row $(1, 1, 1)$ belongs to the kernel of matrix $\boxed{\mathcal{K}}$. The characteristic polynomial of this matrix is $\chi(\mu) = \mu^3 - (a^2 + b^2 + c^2)\mu^2 + 12S^2\mu$. One eigenvalue is $\mu = 0$ and the other two are real (from symmetry of $\boxed{\mathcal{K}}$) and positive.

Remark 5.3.1. Matrix $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b}$ used to compute the orthodir of a line is nothing but $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} = \boxed{\mathcal{K}}/8S^2$.

A more "stratospheric", but nevertheless equivalent, definition for these Al-Kashi matrices would be :

$$\boxed{\mathcal{K}} \doteq {}^t\boxed{W} \cdot {}^tT \cdot \boxed{Pyth_3} \cdot T \cdot \boxed{W}$$

where $\boxed{Pyth_3}$ describes any \mathbb{R}^3 -quadratic form that embeds $(\xi, \eta) \mapsto \xi^2 + \eta^2$, the quadratic form of the ordinary affine euclidian plane. This embedding quadratic form depends on three arbitrary parameters since 6 coefficients are needed for dimension three, while only 3 are needed for dimension two.

5.4 An involved observer

Now, we will describe how things are looking when the observer is no more a random \star but rather an actor of the play. For example, we can take triangle T_1 as a new vector basis inside vector space \mathbb{R}^3 and calculate everything again using this new basis. From :

$$\begin{pmatrix} \xi \\ \eta \\ \zeta \end{pmatrix} = T_1 \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix}$$

it is clear that condition $\zeta = 0$ that shows that a 3-tuple belongs to $\overrightarrow{\mathcal{V}}$ becomes now $x + y + z = 0$. Defining $\mathcal{L}_b = (1, 1, 1)$ this can be rewritten as $\mathcal{L}_b \cdot {}^t(x, y, z) = 0$. Seen "up to a proportionality factor" this will gives $\mathcal{L}_b \cdot (x : y : z) = 0$, i.e. the condition for the point $x : y : z \in \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^3)$ to lie on the line at infinity. But this is not our purpose for the moment.

The \mathbb{R}^3 -metric is now described by matrix ${}^tT_1 \cdot \boxed{Pyth_3} \cdot T_1$. This matrix depends in turn on three arbitrary parameters. In fact, any other matrix that can be written as :

$${}^tT_1 \cdot \boxed{Pyth_3} \cdot T_1 + U \cdot \mathcal{L}_b + {}^t(U \cdot \mathcal{L}_b) \quad \text{where } \boxed{Pyth_3} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

using an arbitrary column U will be just as well to calculate the Pythagoras of \vec{V} -vector. A zero diagonal gives a more nice looking matrix, and is also more efficient for computing. Therefore we define the matrix $\boxed{\text{Pyth}_b}$ by this property and we obtain :

$$\boxed{\text{Pyth}_b} = -\frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 16 & 225 \\ 16 & 0 & 169 \\ 225 & 169 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = -\frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & c^2 & b^2 \\ c^2 & 0 & a^2 \\ b^2 & a^2 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Now, matrix $\boxed{\mathcal{K}_1}$ can be computed using :

$$\boxed{\mathcal{K}_1} = {}^t\boxed{W} \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_b} \cdot \boxed{W} = \begin{pmatrix} 169 & -189 & 20 \\ -189 & 225 & -36 \\ 20 & -36 & 16 \end{pmatrix}$$

while the coordinates of the other triangle and the extra point are transformed according to :

$$\mathcal{T}_2 = T_1^{-1} \cdot T_2 = \frac{1}{24} \begin{pmatrix} -52 & 156 & 13 \\ 60 & -180 & 15 \\ 16 & 48 & -4 \end{pmatrix} ; P_{[1]} = T_1^{-1} \cdot P = \frac{1}{32} \begin{pmatrix} 13 \\ 15 \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

And now, matrix $\boxed{\mathcal{K}_2}$ can be computed using :

$$\boxed{\mathcal{K}_2} = {}^t\boxed{W} \cdot {}^t\mathcal{T}_2 \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_b} \cdot \mathcal{T}_2 \cdot \boxed{W} = \begin{pmatrix} 845 & -65 & -780 \\ -65 & 325 & -260 \\ -780 & -260 & 1040 \end{pmatrix}$$

The quadratic form $\boxed{\text{Pyth}_2}$ can be obtained as above, or directly as:

$$\boxed{\text{Pyth}_2} = -\frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \gamma^2 & \beta^2 \\ \gamma^2 & 0 & \alpha^2 \\ \beta^2 & \alpha^2 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = -\frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1040 & 325 \\ 1040 & 0 & 845 \\ 325 & 845 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

5.5 From an involved observer to another one

All the preceding computations are standard ones. As long as points have no dependence relations all together, nothing else can be done. On the contrary, when points are constructed from each other, another point of view is more powerful. Taking ABC as reference triangle, and describing all points by their barycentric coordinates, we obtain $P = 13 : 15 : 4$, $A' = -13 : 15 : 4$, $B' = 13 : -15 : 4$, $C' = 13 : 15 : -4$. If this is only a random coincidence, nothing more can be said.

On the contrary, if these points are really defined wrt $\boxed{\mathcal{T}_1}$ as $P = a : b : c$, $A' = -a : b : c$, $B' = a : -b : c$, $C' = a : b : -c$, then things get more interesting. We have :

$$\begin{aligned} P_{[2]} &= T_2^{-1} \cdot P = b + c - a : c + a - b : a + b - c \\ \boxed{\mathcal{K}_2} &= \begin{pmatrix} \frac{4a^2bc}{(a-b+c)(b+a-c)} & \frac{-2abc}{b+a-c} & \frac{-2abc}{a-b+c} \\ \frac{-2abc}{b+a-c} & \frac{4ab^2c}{(b+c-a)(b+a-c)} & \frac{-2abc}{b+c-a} \\ \frac{-2abc}{a-b+c} & \frac{-2abc}{b+c-a} & \frac{4c^2ab}{(b+c-a)(a-b+c)} \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

so that : $\left\{ \alpha^2 = k \frac{4a^2bc}{(a-b+c)(b+a-c)}, \text{ etc} \right\}$

Since barycentrics are defined only "up to a proportionality factor", the former set of equations has only to be solved in k, b, c . This gives the ratios between the quantities a, b, c . One gets :

$$(a : b : c) \simeq (\alpha^2 (\beta^2 + \gamma^2 - \alpha^2) : \beta^2 (\gamma^2 + \alpha^2 - \beta^2) : \gamma^2 (\beta^2 + \alpha^2 - \gamma^2))$$

so that :

$$P_{[2]} = \frac{1}{\beta^2 + \gamma^2 - \alpha^2} : \frac{1}{\gamma^2 + \alpha^2 - \beta^2} : \frac{1}{\alpha^2 + \beta^2 - \gamma^2}$$

This results identifies the incentre of the reference triangle ABC as the orthocenter of the excentral triangle. In the same vein, the circumcenter of ABC can be identified as the nine-points center of $A'B'C'$. More details on this specific relation will be given in Subsection 23.7.

5.6 Reducing up to a factor

Maple 5.6.1. Reducing "up to a factor" is a key feature in computer-aided projective geometry.

```

1: REDUCE := proc (qui_ :: {Matrix, Vector, list}) ; local qui
2: qui0 := convert(qui_, set) \ {0}
3: if qui0 = {} then return qui_ end if
4: qui := FActor(convert(qui_, Vector)/qui0[1])
5: lili := convert(qui, list)
6: nunu, dede := map(simplify@numer, lili), map(simplify@denom, lili)
7: fac := (lcm@op)(dede)
8: if type(nunu, list(numeric)) then
9:   fac := fac / (igcd@op)(nunu)
10: else
11:   fac := fac / (gcdd@op)(nunu)
12: end if
13: qui := qui * fac
14: quii := quii * fac
15: if type(qui_, Vector) then
16:   return qui
17: else if type(qui_, list) then
18:   return convert(qui, list)
19: else
20:   return LTr(Matrix(ColDim(qui_), RowDim(qui_), convert(qui, list)))
21: end if

```

LISTING 5.1: The reduce procedure.

```

REDUCOL := proc (ma :: Matrix)
  Matrix([seq(reduce(Column(ma, j)), j = 1..ColDim(ma))]

```

LISTING 5.2: The reducol procedure

```

REDUROW := proc (ma :: Matrix)
  < seq(reduce(Row(ma, j)), j = 1..RowDim(ma)) >

```

LISTING 5.3: The redurow procedure

```

WEDGE := proc (pp, pu) ; local p, q, r, u, v, w, tmp
p, q, r, u, v, w := op(convert(pp, list)), op(convert(pu, list))
tmp := [q * w - r * v, -p * w + r * u, p * v - q * u]
if type(pp, Vector[row]) then
  return Vector(tmp)
else if type(pp, Vector) then
  return Vector[row](tmp)
end if
tmp

```

LISTING 5.4: The wedge procedure

5.7 packages

<i>logic.m</i>	443	<i>geogebra.m</i>	4172
<i>latex.m</i>	834	<i>geo4D.m</i>	5318
<i>geo2c.m</i>	cartesian 971	<i>tensor.m</i>	6067
<i>hyperbolic.m</i>	1257	<i>vector.m</i>	8632
<i>pldx.m</i>	bootstrap 1268	<i>lfit.m</i>	10656
<i>homogr.m</i>	1988	<i>cevian.m</i>	14749
<i>gone.m</i>	2172	<i>encydb.m</i>	15936
<i>birap.m</i>	3174	<i>faisceaux.m</i>	15981
<i>map2alg.m</i>	3905	<i>lubin.m</i>	16280
<i>circles.m</i>	4085		
<i>dessin.m</i>	3056	<i>tcurv.m</i>	8374
<i>quadlat2.m</i>	7166	<i>quadlat.m</i>	8897
<i>relire_sk.m</i>	7223325		

5.8 Procedure mkalgo

Some directives are:

1. The `map2alg:-mkalgo` procedure creates something at `ipse/docs/maple/latex/proc.tex`
2. Then you go into `ipse/docs/maple/latex` and run `proc-maker.bat`
3. Then you type `M-b d` in LyX. This creates the required Algo box in a separate document.
4. Some manual post processing
 - `Ditto1()` \mapsto %
 - `LColumn` \mapsto Column
 - take care of the @

```

1: CIRCLE3 := proc()
2: if ColDim(Args[1]) = 3 then
3:   return Procname(Column(Args[1], 1..3))
4: end if
                                     alt-A I creates a block: IF-STATE-ELSE-STATE-ENDIF
                                     alt-A shift-I creates a block: IFS-ELSES-ENDIFS
                                     other methods = IFSS(2) ; IFSSS (3) ; ELSE(1) ; ELSIF (2) ; ELSIF (3)
5: wedge3 (seq ((FActor@reduce@Ver)(jj), jj = Args))
6: 'if' (%[4] = 0, FActor(%), FActor (%/%[4]))

```

LISTING 5.5: About the mkalgo procedure

Chapter 6

Maple procedures about searchkeys

6.1 Formal values

Remark 6.1.1. In the old ancient times, pldx1 collected the formal barycentric coordinates of the $X(nnn)$ into the `~ipse/public_html/etc/bar_igtca.csv` file. This required a huge amount of work, in order to standardize (and check) the coordinates given inside the [Kimberling's](#) web pages.

But, from 2019, I have decided to limit my "formal database" to the already acquired $n \leq 6809$ first points and to the small number (59) of points having complex coordinates.¹

As of 2024-01-02, there are 61097 points subject to the curse of having coordinates in the Kimberling's database, and an uptodate version of the `bar_igtca.csv` file would be circa 24Mb !

On the other hand, the [Kimberling \(1998-2024\)](#) database can be used to obtain the "numerical barycentrics" of all the $6809 < n < 61098$ remaining points (except from the 59 complex ones), allowing numerical explorations using triangle 6, 9, 13.

6.2 Standardized barycentrics

Proposition 6.2.1. *Standardized barycentrics* used in the [Kimberling's](#) database are defined as follows :

$$(x, y, z) \mapsto \begin{cases} (x, y, z) \times \frac{1}{x+y+z} & \text{if } x + y + z \neq 0 \\ (x, y, z) \times \left(\frac{1}{x} + \frac{1}{y} + \frac{1}{z} \right) & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

They are defined for all points, except from the directions of the sidelines and the points $-1 \pm i\sqrt{3} : -1 \mp i\sqrt{3} : 2$.

Remark 6.2.2. This quantity is projectively defined... but depends on a preference towards the barycentrics, rather than towards the trilinears.

Remark 6.2.3. The two exceptional points of the former proposition **are not** the so called umbilics, defined at Subsection [13.1.2](#).

Algorithm 6.2.4. NORMALIZE. This procedure [ALG. 6.1](#) returns a normalized numerical vector (using triangle 6, 9, 13) from what is given on entry (a vector, a list or an expression).

Algorithm 6.2.5. NORMALIZE. This procedure is intended to use triangle 7, 11, 17 and is obtained using:

```
normalize:= subs('ency__'='enzy__', eval(normalize));
```

Remark 6.2.6. Memory from the past: the former procedure `kicety` was combining this `normalize` procedure with the `make_a_key` instructions (which are now a part of procedure `dichot`).

¹In fact, only four of the later, namely the {8072, 8073, 11065, 11066} have been actually added. You should work harder, dude !

```

1: NORMALIZE := proc (pu) ; local u, v, w, tmp, tmp1, tmp2
2: if type(pu, Vector) then tmp := subs(ency__, pu)
3: else if type(pu, list) then tmp := Vector(subs(ency__, pu))
4: else tmp := Vector(subs(ency__ [rot3](pu)))
5: end if
6: indets(tmp)
7: if % <> {} then Error("unresolved indets in normalize", %) end if
8: u, v, w := tmp[1], tmp[2], tmp[3]
9: if evalf(abs(u + v + w)/(abs(u) + abs(v) + abs(w))) < .1E - 8 then
10:   return xpurge(evalf(tmp * (1/u + 1/v + 1/w)))
11: else
12:   return xpurge(evalf(tmp/(u + v + w)))
13: end if
Ensure: Decides if  $M \in \mathcal{L}_b$  and returns a normalized, numerical vector, in  $\mathbb{C}^3$ .

```

LISTING 6.1: The normalize procedure

6.3 Numerical values

6.3.1 About the search keys

Definition 6.3.1. The **Kimberling's search key** has been defined as the directed distance between X and the BC sideline of the reference triangle $a = 6, b = 9, c = 13$ (for an ordinary point) and as $x' \times (1/x' + 1/y' + 1/z')$ for a point at infinity (caveat: here $x' : y' : z'$ are trilinears!). When using barycentrics, this quantity is given by:

$$\begin{aligned}
 x : y : z \notin \mathcal{L}_b, \text{ key} &= \frac{x}{x + y + z} \times \frac{2S}{a} \\
 x : y : z \in \mathcal{L}_b, \text{ key} &= \frac{x}{a} \times \left(\frac{a}{x} + \frac{b}{y} + \frac{c}{z} \right)
 \end{aligned} \tag{6.1}$$

The actual value of factor $bc \div 2R = 2S/a$ is $4\sqrt{35}/3$. Reference values of this search key are provided by the ETC (Kimberling, 1998-2024).

Definition 6.3.2. The **patched search key** has been introduced to deal with points like $X(5000)$ that would otherwise have a non real searchkey. When $x/(x + y + z) \notin \mathbb{R}$, then

$$\text{key} \doteq \arg \left(\frac{x}{x + y + z} \right) \in [-\pi, +\pi]$$

If one uses Maple, $\arg(z)$ is obtained by $\text{evalf}(\arctan(\Im z, \Re z))$. Using $\arctan(\Im z/\Re z)$ would be wrong when $\Re z < 0$. And **evalf** is required to avoid symbolic π .

Example 6.3.3. The key for the first umbilic, i.e. $S_b - 2iS : S_a + 2iS : -c^2$ (see Subsection 13.1.2 for more details about the umbilics) is obtained by:

$$\left(\frac{1}{S_b - 2iS} + \frac{1}{S_a + 2iS} - \frac{1}{c^2} \right) \begin{pmatrix} S_b - 2iS \\ S_a + 2iS \\ -c^2 \end{pmatrix} \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} 0.9541237489 \dots & -0.3042530621 \dots i \\ 1.089086127 \dots & +1.034633282 \dots i \\ -2.043209876 \dots & -0.7303802201 \dots i \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{key} = -0.30868862910087033702$$

Fact 6.3.4. When repeating the same process with triangles 9,13,6 and 13,6,9, we obtain $\text{key}_a, \text{key}_b, \text{key}_c$. Then either $\sum a \text{key}_a = 0$ (point at infinity) or $\sum a \text{key}_a = 2S = 8\sqrt{35}$ (ordinary point)... or anything else for a may be complex point.

Fact 6.3.5. About key conflicts:

1. At 2009-08-27, the minimal distance between two search keys was $4.8E - 7$.

2. At 2017-01-11, this minimal distance was $2.95 E - 8$. This can only become smaller as more points are added to the database. Therefore, one has to be careful when computing a search key, in order to face the possibility of huge canceling terms. Using Maple `Digits:=20` seems to be safe.
3. At 2017-12-27, point have appeared that share the same A -key.

<i>older</i>	667	3239	3616	3617	3635	3875	5592
<i>newer</i>	9780	8834	14078	15224	15519	7292	10896

Thus we can use $key_a + X \times 1E - 19$ to build the unique key required by a dichotomy, and then use $1E - 13$ as the blur limit for recognition of a key. And go back using a process that gives either X or $[X_1, X_2]$.

4. At 2020-3-30, there were 24 pairs of points that share the same $A - key$. Moreover, there were now 4 pairs of points that have the same 6-9-13 barycentrics:

<i>nn</i>	3635	4098	4691	22166
<i>alt</i>	15519	24150	21267	22266
<i>x</i>	2	110	14	54
<i>y</i>	5	209	11	51
<i>z</i>	9	285	7	47

Therefore, a safe identification requires a special treatment for these points.

6.3.2 The reliresk procedure

From 2019 on, our numerical database is pre-compiled in Maple format and is simply loaded as is (or even not loaded at all). On the contrary the later described `relire_sk` package builds "once for all" all the required files. Moreover, numerical barycentrics using [7, 11, 17], i.e. the `xyz` from the past, are no more maintained.

Algorithm 6.3.6. RELIRESK. We have $fac47 = 8\sqrt{35}$, while current values (2024-01-02) are $smax = 53090$; $siz_enc = 53024$. As an example, we have

$$enc_sort[20086] = [0.125000000000000000000000006623134309, (15519, 3635)]$$

```
1: RELIRESK := proc ( ) ; global fac47, smax, siz_enc, sk, fk, enc_sort
2: read("$ipse/docs/Cherche/Geometry/maple/relire_sk/pas_toujours/relire_sk.m")
3: print("numerical database imported")
Ensure: sk[j] = [x, y, z] ; fk[j] ∈ {0, 1, 2} ; enc_sort[J] = [key, qui]
```

LISTING 6.2: The [encydb] reliresk procedure

Remark 6.3.7. To be fixed. For an unknown reason, recoding `enc_sort:=Matrix(enc_sort)` is required in order to force the behaviour of `enc_sort[j]` . Rem: `enc_sort[j,n]` is ever working as expected.

6.3.3 Collecting datas from ETC

Let `Ketc=https://faculty.evansville.edu/ck6/encyclopedia/` and download the sources

1. Create and go into `ipse/docs/Cherche/Geometry/ETC_20xx/`
2. Download `Ketc/ETC.html` and `Ketc/ETCPartn.html` as `ETCPartNN.html` for $NN = 1..36$
3. Download `Ketc/Search$kki.html` for `kki` in `6_9_13 9_13_6 13_6_9` and then
4. `grep "<tr align=right>" $qui | sed -e "s<tr align=right><td>"; s</td><td>; s</td>.*" > $kki.csv`

5. All required Maple procedures are stored in the `mrelire_sk` package.
 - `totoplou:= copie de reliresk.` fournit les `fac47`, `smax`, `siz_enc`, `sk`, `fk`, `enc_sort` demandés par `write_sk_plex`.
 - `buildsk` (ALG. 6.3) reads `~ipse/docs/Cherche/Geometry/ETC_2023/` and creates global variables `fac47`, `smax`, `fk`, `sk`, `xk`. At this point, the values concerning the `fk=2` points are not accurate.
 - `write_sk_plex` (ALG. 6.4) updates the `j;sk1;sk2;sk3;xk` for some `fk=2` points (using either `fdat` or adhoc values) and stores these corrections into the `sk_plex` file.
 - `build_enc_sort` (ALG. 6.5) assumes that `sk` is accurate and build the dichotomy table.

6.3.4 buildsk

1. Create the `fk` table, where is 2 (complex points), 1 (points at infinity), 0 (the ordinary points).
2. Read the coordinates from `ETC_searchkeys` and set the table `sk` (the barycentrics)
3. Then `xk` is the searchkey. Maybe `xk` was intended to be `xyz` and `sk` as intended to be searchkey. But now, `xk` and `sk` are searchkey and `xyz`!

Algorithm 6.3.8. BUILDsk. Start from the searchkeys given by ETC. Use them to identify the type of the point and set `fk[j]`. Then compute their normalized values and set `sj[k]`. Set the searchkey `xk[j]` as `sk[j][1]+j*1E-19`.

This procedure doesn't deal with the `fk=2` points (see the next Algorithm)... and doesn't write anything on disk.

—clearpage—

<pre> 1: BUILDSK := proc (qqqq := 20) 2: global fac47, smax, sk, xk, fk 3: local source, fd, tmp1, tmp2, grand, j6, j9, j13, js, jj, j, stamp, laps, tmp, lili 4: source := ipse/docs/Cherche/Geometry/ETC_2023/ 5: Digits := 30 ; stamp := time() ; fac47 := evalf(8 * sqrt(35), 30) 6: grand := rand(1000..9999) * 1E - 24 7: sk := table() ; fk := table() ; xk := table() 8: try close(fd) catch : end try </pre>	2024-01-03
<pre> 9: fd := open(cat(source, "6_9_13.csv"), READ) 10: for j to qqqq do 11: tmp := readline(fd) ; 12: if % = 0 then Break() end if 13: tmp1, tmp2 := op(sscanf(tmp, "%d;%a")) ; sk[tmp1] := 6 * tmp2 14: end for 15: smax := -1 + j ; close(fd) </pre>	6,9,13
<pre> 16: fd := open(cat(source, "9_13_6.csv"), READ) 17: for j to smax do 18: tmp := readline(fd) ; 19: if % = 0 then Break() end if 20: tmp1, tmp2 := op(sscanf(tmp, "%d;%a")) ; sk[tmp1] := sk[tmp1], 9 * tmp2 21: end for </pre>	9,13,6
<pre> 22: close(fd) ; fd := open(cat(source, "13_6_9.csv"), READ)0. 23: for j to smax do 24: tmp := readline(fd) ; 25: if % = 0 then Break() end if 26: tmp1, tmp2 := op(sscanf(tmp, "%d;%a")) ; 27: sk[tmp1] := sk[tmp1], 13 * tmp2 28: end for 29: close(fd) </pre>	13,6,9
<pre> 30: for jj to smax do 31: j6, j9, j13 := sk[jj] ; js := j6 + j9 + j13 32: if abs(js) < .1e - 12 then 33: fk[jj] := 1 ; js := 1/j6 + 1/j9 + 1/j13 ; sk[jj] := [j6 * js, j9 * js, j13 * js] 34: else if abs(js - fac47) < .1e - 12 then 35: fk[jj] := 0 ; sk[jj] := [j6/js, j9/js, j13/js] 36: else 37: fk[jj] := 2 ; sk[jj] := [j6/6, j9/9, j13/13] 38: end if 39: xk[jj] := sk[jj][1] + grand() 40: end for 41: return smax </pre>	—
<p>Ensure: tables <i>sk</i>, <i>xk</i>, <i>fk</i> are set ; <i>fac47</i>, <i>smax</i></p>	

LISTING 6.3: The [mrelire_sk] buildsk procedure

6.3.5 Dealing with complex points

1. In order to create the **sk** fields for the **fk=2** points, the formal barycentrics are required.
2. For the $j < j_{\max} = 6809$, i.e. for the 5000, 5001, 5002, 5003, 5374 points, these barycentrics are stored in the `~ipse/public_html/etc/bar_igtca.csv`, according to the format:

```

"5374";
kill_hc, kill_gerdat := op(tmp2[2 .. -1])
ff[jj] = "0";

```

```

kill_gg, kill_tt, kill_ca, kill_ac = "0";"0";"0";"0";
fdat[jj]="a*Sa^(1/2)";
----
dg[jj], lubin[jj]= "0";"";
tmpx, tmpy, tmpz = " 0.37391529562193790146 -0.18645689353442073226*I";
" 0.42694157316411355038 -0.21289901853431604357*I";
" 0.19914313121394854816 +0.39935591206873677583*I";
tmqx, tmqy, tmqz = " 0.32312616847952443530 -0.20310165354415242898*I";
" 0.39367971900292743064 -0.24744824064399009144*I";
" 0.28319411251754813406 +0.45054989418814252043*I";
kill_hc= " -0.46257566039204182060";
kill_gerdat = "none"
In other words:
nnn; *,*,ff,*,*,*,*,fdat,*,*,[x,y,z],[zx,zy,zz],*,*

```

3. `fdat` are also stored for 8072,8073,11065,11066,14091
4. The file `bar_igtca.csv` has been collected from ETC, at some point in the past, and is not supposed to be modified at any time. Temporarily goal: 20032,20033,20034,

Algorithm 6.3.9. WRITE_SK_PLEX.

The required corrections computed from the formal barycentrics, stored in the `bar_igtca.csv` (for the small `jj`) or explicitly given just before the procedure. This procedure uses `normalize` and the key produced by `dichot`.

When writing these corrections, we have to be tricky, since Maple doesn't have a native procedure for printing/reading complex numbers. In fact, `fprintf` and `sscanf` should do the job...

```

1: WRITE_SK_PLEX := proc; local j, theplex, lefichier, fd, tmp, tmp2, tmp3, qq
2: theplex := seq('if'(fk[j] = 2, j, NULL), j = 1..6802)
3: fd := open("$ipse/public_html/etc/sk_plex.csv", WRITE)
4: for j in theplex do
5:   tmp := map(cut, normalize(parse(fdat[j])), 20)
6:   tmp1 := op(convert(tmp, list))
7:   tmp2 := (op@map)(op@[Re, Im], convert(tmp, list))
8:   dichot(tmp[1]) ; tmp3 := cut(key + j * 1E - 19, 20)
9:   try:
10:  fprintf(fd, "%d";"%24.20f";"%24.20f";"%24.20f";"%24.20f"\n", j, tmp1, tmp3)
11:  catch:
12:  fprintf(fd, cat(""%d"", ";"%24.20f%+24.20f*i"" $3, ";"%24.20f"\n" ), j, tmp2, tmp3)
13:  end try
14: end for
15: close(fd)

```

LISTING 6.4: The [mrelire_sk] write_sk_plex procedure

6.3.6 Buildencsort

And then, compute the sorted version `enc_sort` so that a key is linked to one or more values (duplicated lines are not deleted!).

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0.36733179178700142568 & 5409 \\ 0.3673469387755102707 & 667,9780 \\ 0.36734693877551118208 & 667,9780 \\ 0.3674078636432206616 & 7914 \end{bmatrix}$$

Algorithm 6.3.10. BUILDENCSORT. Start from **fk**, **sk**, **xk** as set by **buildsk** ALG. 6.3. Then use **sk_plex.csv**

Require: <i>sk_plex</i> requires the formal coordinates of the complex points 1: BUILDENCSORT := proc () 2: global <i>fac47</i> , <i>smax</i> , <i>siz_enc</i> , <i>enc_sort</i> , <i>sk</i> , <i>xk</i> , <i>fk</i> 3: local <i>fd</i> , <i>j</i> , <i>jj</i> , <i>jjj</i> , <i>jk</i> , <i>tmp</i> , <i>ttmp</i> , <i>enc_tmp</i> 4: <i>fd</i> := open ("ipse/public_html/etc/sk_plex.csv", READ) 5: for <i>j</i> to 20000 do 6: <i>ttmp</i> := readline (<i>fd</i>) 7: if % = 0 then Break () end if 8: <i>SubstituteRec</i> (<i>ttmp</i> , " ", ",", " \"\"; \"\"; \"\", \"\", \" \"\"; \"\") 9: <i>tmp</i> := sscanf (%, "%d%a%a%a%a%a"); <i>jj</i> := <i>tmp</i> [1]; <i>sk</i> [<i>jj</i>] := <i>tmp</i> [2..4]; <i>xk</i> [<i>jj</i>] := <i>tmp</i> [-1] 10: end for 11: close (<i>fd</i>) ; printf ("read %d corrections", <i>j</i> - 1) ; print () 12: <i>enc_tmp</i> := Array (sort ([seq](<i>xk</i> [<i>jj</i>], <i>jj</i>), <i>jj</i> = 1.. <i>smax</i>))) ; <i>jj</i> := 1 13: for <i>j</i> to <i>smax</i> while <i>jj</i> <= <i>smax</i> do 14: <i>jk</i> := NULL 15: for <i>jjj</i> from <i>jj</i> to <i>smax</i> do 16: if .1e - 9 < <i>enc_tmp</i> [<i>jjj</i> , 1] - <i>enc_tmp</i> [<i>jj</i> , 1] then Break () end if 17: <i>jk</i> := <i>jk</i> , <i>jjj</i> 18: end for 19: <i>enc_tmp</i> [<i>j</i> , 1] := <i>enc_tmp</i> [<i>jj</i> , 1] 20: <i>enc_tmp</i> [<i>j</i> , 2] := seq (<i>enc_tmp</i> [<i>jjj</i> , 2], <i>jjj</i> = <i>jk</i>) ; <i>jj</i> := 1 + op (-1, [<i>jk</i>]) 21: end for 22: <i>siz_enc</i> := <i>j</i> - 1 ; <i>enc_sort</i> := SubMatrix (<i>enc_tmp</i> , 1.. <i>siz_enc</i> , 1..2) 23: return <i>siz_enc</i> Ensure: create <i>enc_sort</i> ; its size is <i>siz_enc</i> < <i>smax</i> .	2024-01-03
--	------------

LISTING 6.5: The [mrelire_sk] buildencsort procedure

6.3.7 Procedures ency and dichot

1: ENCY := proc (<i>qui</i>) ; local <i>tm1</i> , <i>tm2</i> , <i>tmpd</i> , <i>norqui</i> , <i>rep</i> Require: receive a vector, or a list or an algebraic expression to be rotated 2: <i>Digits</i> := max (<i>Digits</i> , 20) ; <i>norqui</i> := normalize (<i>qui</i>) ; <i>tmpd</i> := dichot (<i>norqui</i> [1]) 3: if <i>tmpd</i> [1] = '?' then return '?' end if 4: [seq](<i>j</i> , max (map (abs , <i>norqui</i> - normalize (<i>sk</i> [<i>j</i>]))), <i>j</i> = <i>tmpd</i> [2]) 5: <i>rep</i> := [seq](if (<i>j</i> [2] < .1e - 11, <i>j</i> [1], NULL), <i>j</i> = %) 6: if <i>rep</i> = [] then return '?' end if 7: return op (<i>rep</i>) Ensure: fails with '?' or proves the existence and unicity of a specific match with the entry
--

LISTING 6.6: The [encydb] ency procedure

```

Require: receive  $qui \in \mathbb{C}$ , the normalized x-barycentric of some point
1: DICHOT := proc( $qui$ ) ; global  $key$  ; local  $u, o, m, ensu, enso, ensm, eps$ 
2: if  $Im(qui) = 0$  then  $key := qui$  else  $key := argument(qui)$  end if
3:  $\epsilon := .1e - \gamma$  ;  $u, o := 1, siz\_enc$ 
4:  $ensu, enso := enc\_sort[u][1], enc\_sort[o][1]$ 
5: if  $enso < key$  then
6:   if  $|enso - key| < \epsilon$  then return  $enc\_sort[o]$  else return  $'?', [enso, key, +\infty]$  end if
7: end if
8: if  $key < ensu$  then
9:   if  $|ensu - key| < \epsilon$  then return  $enc\_sort[u]$  else return  $'?', [-\infty, key, ensu]$  end if
10: end if
11: while  $1 < o - u$  do
12:    $m := floor(o/2 + u/2)$  ;  $ensm := enc\_sort[m][1]$ 
13:   if  $ensm < key$  then  $u := m$  ;  $ensu := ensm$  else  $o := m$  ;  $enso := ensm$  end if
14: end while
15: if  $|ensu - key| < \epsilon$  then return  $enc\_sort[u]$ 
16: else if  $|enso - key| < \epsilon$  then return  $enc\_sort[o]$ 
17: else return  $'?', [ensu, key, enso]$ 
18: end if
Ensure: fails with  $left < key < right$  or returns the key and either a point or a collision_list

```

LISTING 6.7: The [encydb] dichot procedure

6.3.8 Morley coordinates

Definition 6.3.11. The **Morley's search key** is the search key associated with a point defined by its Morley affix. Details and formula are provided in the corresponding chapter. See Proposition 14.4.11.

Algorithm 6.3.12. ZENCYYY. In the triangle plane, inclusive coordinates are coded using $z_A = \alpha^n$, etc where n is the chosen value of the Lubin-degree. Therefore, the value of n has to be guessed (or enforced). When an expression is rational, guessing is quite easy. When radicals are involved, the value of n has to be enforced (here $n = 1$). This done from line 3 to line 16.

In a second part, the result of **dichot** is checked against the stored values of **sk**. When this fails, the result is nevertheless given, but tagged as "guess=" (this occurs when **fk=2** and **sk** has not been updated).

```

1: ZENCYYY := proc( $Q$ ) ; global  $tmq, tmp, dd :: integer$  ; local  $ccqui, tmpd, rep, tmq$ 
2: if nottype( $Q, Vector$ ) then return ( $Procname@Vector@[id, 1, toconj]$ )( $Q$ ) end if
3:  $tmp := subs(trickle, Q)$ 
4: if  $'minus'(indets(tmp, Quote(sqrt)), \{sqrt(3)\}) <> \{\}$  then
5:    $dd := 1$ 
6: else
7:    $tmq := map(degr, tmp, [\alpha, \beta, \gamma])$ 
8:   if  $tmq[1] = -\infty$  and  $tmq[3] = -\infty$  then
9:     return 3
10:   else if  $tmq[2] = -\infty$  or  $tmq[2] = (tmq[1] + tmq[3]) / 2$  then
11:      $dd := (tmq[1] - tmq[3]) / 2$ 
12:   else
13:     return surprise
14:   end if
15:   if  $dd = 0$  then  $dd := 6$  end if
16: end if

```

LISTING 6.8: The zencyy procedure (first part)

```

17: evalf(retourK6 · subs(Catenate(redeg, 6/dd), iciK, tmp))
18: ccqui := normalize(Ditto1()) ; tmpd := dichot(ccqui[1])
19: if tmpd[1] = '?' then return '?' end if
20: [seq]([j, max(map(abs, ccqui - normalize(sk[j])))] , j = tmpd[2])
21: rep := [seq]('if' (j[2] < .1e - 11, j[1], NULL), j = Ditto1())
22: if rep = [] then return '?' end if
23: return op(rep)

```

LISTING 6.9: The zencyy procedure (continued)

6.3.9 using the 'sk' values

This procedure is the key reason to distinguish between the **xk** (keys) and the **sk** (coordinates).

```

1: LOCALIZE := proc(expr, px := vx) ; global myfun ; local lediv
2: myfun := unapply(evalf(subs(iciK, expr)), op(convert(px, list))) @ OP
3: lediv := evalf(sqrt(add(myfun(sk[j])2, j = 1..10) / 10))
4: seq('if' (abs(myfun(sk[j])) / lediv < 1/1000000000000, j, NULL), j = 1..smax)

```

LISTING 6.10: The [encydb] localize procedure

Chapter 7

Euclidian structure using barycentrics

Barycentric coordinates were intended to describe affine properties, i.e. properties that remains when points are moved freely. Therefore describing euclidian¹ properties when using barycentrics is often presented as contradictory. We will show that, on the contrary, all the required properties can be described simply. The key fact is that orthogonality only depends on the directions of lines so that all what is really needed is a bijection that sends each point at infinity onto the point that characterizes the orthogonal direction.

7.1 More about the cartesian projective plane

Definition 7.1.1. The cartesian projective plane $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^3)$ is what is obtained when using $x : y : 1$ to describe the usual Cartesian points (x, y) . As a result the line by two points A, B is obtained as $A \wedge B$, while the point on two lines δ, ϵ is obtained as $\delta \wedge \epsilon$.

Definition 7.1.2. When two lines are parallel in the cartesian plane, their intersection is some $x : y : 0$ point, which belongs to a new special line, namely $\mathcal{L}_c \simeq [0, 0, 1]$ (the cartesian line at infinity).

7.2 Embedded euclidian vector space

Definition 7.2.1. Given two ordinary (at finite distance) points $P \simeq x_1 : y_1 : t_1$ and $U \simeq x_2 : y_2 : t_2$ of $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^3)$, the **embedded vector** from P to U is defined as :

$$\overrightarrow{vec}(P, U) \doteq \frac{1}{t_2} \begin{pmatrix} x_2 \\ y_2 \\ t_2 \end{pmatrix} - \frac{1}{t_1} \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ y_1 \\ t_1 \end{pmatrix}$$

This quantity is projective since replacing P, U with $k_p P, k_u U$ doesn't change the result. This can be generalized as

$$\overrightarrow{vec}(P, U) \doteq \frac{U}{\mathcal{L}_{\infty} \cdot U} - \frac{P}{\mathcal{L}_{\infty} \cdot P} \quad (7.1)$$

When applying a collineation Ψ to the points, the collineation Ψ^{-1} is applied to the line \mathcal{L}_{∞} , the coefficients remain invariant and $\overrightarrow{vec}(P, U) \mapsto \Psi \cdot \overrightarrow{vec}(P, U)$.

Proposition 7.2.2. *Embedded vectors belong to the vector plane $\vec{\mathcal{V}} : \{X \mid \mathcal{L}_{\infty} \cdot X = 0\}$, seen as a subspace of the Cartesian (non projective) vector space \mathbb{R}^3 . These vectors obey to the usual Chasles rule :*

$$\overrightarrow{vec}(P_1, P_3) = \overrightarrow{vec}(P_1, P_2) + \overrightarrow{vec}(P_2, P_3)$$

¹Let us recall that computing figures, instead of figuring computations, is as far as possible of what the historical Euclide was doing in his Elements (see [Euclid, fl. 300BC](#)). Using the adjective *Euclidean* to describe the modern *euclidian* geometry would only be misleading.

and space $\vec{\mathcal{V}}$ is isomorphic to the usual vector space \mathbb{R}^2 where $\overrightarrow{P_1 P_2} = (x_2 - x_1, y_2 - y_1)$ when assuming $t_1 = t_2 = 1$.

Proof. Obvious from definition. Nevertheless, a key property for what follows. \square

Fact 7.2.3. When using (x, y, t) coordinates, the metric of the usual euclidian plane $\vec{\mathcal{V}}_c$ is described by matrix :

$$\boxed{\text{Pyth}_c} \doteq \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (7.2)$$

In fact, any other matrix defined as :

$$\boxed{\text{Pyth}_c} + U \cdot \mathcal{L}_c + {}^t(U \cdot \mathcal{L}_c) \quad (7.3)$$

can be used to define the metric of vector space $\vec{\mathcal{V}}_c$ since $t = 0$ is assumed.

7.3 Lengths and areas in the Cartesian plane

Notation 7.3.1. In this section, T_0 describes the reference triangle ABC in the cartesian affine plane (where $\mathcal{L}_c = [0, 0, 1]$), and T_x is the normalised description of a generic triangle (P_j) where indices are dealt modulo 3, i.e. $P_4 = P_1$, etc. In other words :

$$T_0 = \begin{vmatrix} \xi_a & \xi_b & \xi_c \\ \eta_a & \eta_b & \eta_c \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{vmatrix}, \quad T_x = \begin{vmatrix} \xi_\alpha & \xi_\beta & \xi_\gamma \\ \eta_\alpha & \eta_\beta & \eta_\gamma \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \quad (7.4)$$

We will use $|BC| = a$, $|P_2 P_3| = \alpha$, etc together with $S_a = (b^2 + c^2 - a^2)/2$, $S_\alpha = (\beta^2 + \gamma^2 - \alpha^2)/2$, etc. In other words,

$$(\xi_a - \xi_b)^2 + (\eta_a - \eta_b)^2 = c^2, \text{ etc} \quad (7.5)$$

Definition 7.3.2. Matrix \mathbf{W} . The matrix $\boxed{W_0}$ is defined by :

$$\boxed{W_0} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & -1 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (7.6)$$

Proposition 7.3.3. When a matrix T_x , as defined in (7.4), gives the vertices P_j of a triangle, then $T_x \cdot \boxed{W_0}$ gives the (cartesian) sideline vectors $\overrightarrow{P_{j+1} P_{j+2}}$ of this triangle (using modulo 3 indices).

Proof. This is obvious from $\overrightarrow{P_j P_{j+1}} = P_{j+1} - P_j$ that holds when P_j are 3-tuples in the $t = 1$ plane. \square

Lemma 7.3.4. Matrix \mathbf{K} . We have the following Al-Kashi formula :

$$\boxed{\mathcal{K}_x} = {}^t \boxed{W_0} \cdot {}^t T_x \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_c} \cdot T_x \cdot \boxed{W_0} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha^2 & -S_\gamma & -S_\beta \\ -S_\gamma & \beta^2 & -S_\alpha \\ -S_\beta & -S_\alpha & \gamma^2 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{where } \boxed{\text{Pyth}_c} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. Diagonal elements are $\langle \overrightarrow{BC} | \overrightarrow{BC} \rangle$, etc and the others are $\langle \overrightarrow{BC} | \overrightarrow{CA} \rangle = -\langle \overrightarrow{CB} | \overrightarrow{CA} \rangle$, etc. \square

Fact 7.3.5. The area S_x of triangle T_x is given by the well-known formula

$$S_x = \frac{1}{2} \begin{vmatrix} \xi_a & \xi_b & \xi_c \\ \eta_a & \eta_b & \eta_c \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{vmatrix} \quad (7.7)$$

Moreover, we have the Heron formula :

$$\begin{aligned} S_x^2 &= \frac{1}{16} (+\alpha + \beta + \gamma)(-\alpha + \beta + \gamma)(+\alpha - \beta + \gamma)(+\alpha + \beta - \gamma) \\ &= \frac{1}{4} (S_a S_b + S_b S_c + S_c S_a) \end{aligned} \quad (7.8)$$

Proof. The first formula gives the oriented area of a triangle, which cannot be obtained from the Heron formula. On the other hand, Heron formula can be obtained in many ways, from simple identification to the more sophisticated :

$$4S^2 = |AB|^2 |AC|^2 \sin^2 A = b^2 c^2 - \left\langle \overrightarrow{AB} \mid \overrightarrow{AC} \right\rangle^2 = b^2 c^2 - S_a^2$$

□

7.4 Lengths and areas in the barycentric plane

Definition 7.4.1. Barycentrics coordinates wrt the triangle $T_0 \doteq ABC$ formed by three points at finite distance are what is obtained by using

$$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ t \end{pmatrix} \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix} \doteq \boxed{T_0}^{-1} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ t \end{pmatrix} \quad (7.9)$$

Proposition 7.4.2. Let matrix $\boxed{\mathcal{T}}$ be giving the barycentric coordinates of the vertices $P_i = p_i : q_i : r_i$ of a triangle \mathcal{T} . Then area of \mathcal{T} is given by :

$$S \times \frac{\det \boxed{\mathcal{T}}}{\prod (p_i + q_i + r_i)} \quad (7.10)$$

where S is the area of the reference triangle.

Proof. This formula combines (7.7) with the usual properties of determinants. The denominator appearing at (7.10) enforces the required invariance wrt multiplicative factors acting on barycentrics, and also recognizes the fact that only triangles with finite vertices have an area. □

Remark 7.4.3. A key point is that formula (7.10) is of first degree in S : once the orientation of the reference triangle is chosen, all the orientations of the other triangles are fixed.

Theorem 7.4.4. Pythagoras theorem. When using barycentrics as defined at (7.9), we have

$$\mathcal{L}_b = [1, 1, 1] ; \boxed{\text{Pyth}_b} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -c^2 & -b^2 \\ -c^2 & 0 & -a^2 \\ -b^2 & -a^2 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (7.11)$$

As a result, the transformation $\overrightarrow{PQ} \in \mathbb{R}^2 \mapsto \overrightarrow{vec}(P, Q) \in \overrightarrow{\mathcal{V}}_b$ defines an isomorphism of euclidian spaces, while the squared distance between two (finite) points of the triangle plane is given by :

$$\begin{aligned} |PU|^2 &= {}^t \overrightarrow{vec}(P, U) \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_b} \cdot \overrightarrow{vec}(P, U) \\ \left| \overrightarrow{(\rho, \sigma, \tau)} \right|^2 &= -(a^2 \sigma \tau + b^2 \tau \rho + c^2 \rho \sigma) \end{aligned} \quad (7.12)$$

Proof. The usual change of basis formulae applied to the quadratic form $\boxed{\text{Pyth}_c}$ are leading to

$${}^t T_0 \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_c} \cdot T_0 + U \cdot \mathcal{L}_b + {}^t (U \cdot \mathcal{L}_b)$$

And then U is chosen to obtain a zero diagonal. One can also identify the coefficients in order to obtain □

Proof. □

7.5 About circumcircle and infinity line

Definition 7.5.1. The **power** of a point $X = x : y : z$ (at finite distance) with respect to the circle Ω centered at P with radius R defined by :

$$\text{power}(\Omega, X) \doteq |PX|^2 - R^2$$

Theorem 7.5.2. The **power formula** giving the Ω -power of any point $X = x : y : z$ from the power at the three vertices of the reference triangle is :

$$\begin{aligned} \text{power}(\Omega, X) &= \frac{ux + vy + wz}{x + y + z} - \frac{a^2yz + b^2xz + c^2xy}{(x + y + z)^2} \\ \text{where } u &= \text{power}(\Omega, A), \text{ etc} \end{aligned} \quad (7.13)$$

Proof. Use (7.1) to obtain \overrightarrow{PX} and then Theorem 7.4.4 to obtain $\text{power}(\Omega, X)$. Substitute $y = z = 0$ to obtain u , etc. Then a simple subtraction leads to the required result. \square

Definition 7.5.3. The standard equation of the circumcircle is defined as :

$$\Gamma_{\text{std}}(x, y, z) \doteq -\frac{a^2yz + b^2xz + c^2xy}{x + y + z} \quad (7.14)$$

Proposition 7.5.4. The equation of any circle can be written as :

$$\begin{aligned} \Omega(x, y, z) \doteq (ux + vy + wz) + \Gamma_{\text{std}}(x, y, z) &= 0 \\ \text{where } u &= \text{power}(\Omega, A), \text{ etc} \end{aligned} \quad (7.15)$$

where $x : y : z$ is the generic point and Γ_{std} is the standard equation of the circumcircle, as defined just above.

Proof. Obvious from (7.13) and $\text{power}(\Omega, A) = 0$, etc. \square

Remark 7.5.5. "Can be written" must be understood as "when required, multiply by $x + y + z$ and use polynomials". For more details, see Chapter 12.

Corollary 7.5.6 (Heron). Center and radius of the circumcircle are :

$$\begin{aligned} X_3 &= a^2(b^2 + c^2 - a^2) : b^2(c^2 + a^2 - b^2) : c^2(a^2 + b^2 - c^2) \\ R^2 &= \frac{a^2b^2c^2}{(a + b + c)(a + b - c)(b + c - a)(c + a - b)} \end{aligned}$$

Computed Proof. Direct elimination from $\{|XA|^2 = R^2, \text{ etc}\}$ and (7.1, 7.12). \square

Proposition 7.5.7. For $t \in \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^2)$, point

$$U \simeq 1 : t : -1 - t \quad (7.16)$$

belongs to \mathcal{L}_b . On the contrary, the point

$$V \doteq \frac{a^2}{1} : \frac{b^2}{t} : \frac{-c^2}{1+t} \quad (7.17)$$

belongs to the circumcircle, inducing a rational parametrization of this curve, and a bijection $\mathcal{L}_{\infty} \longleftrightarrow \Gamma$.

Proof. Quite obvious and nevertheless so useful. Spoiler: this is another encounter with the isogonal conjugacy $u : v : w \mapsto a^2/u : b^2/v : c^2/w$. \square

Remark 7.5.8. Information conveyed by a 3-tuple like (7.1) is multiple. A first part is the direction of line PU , described –up to a proportionality factor– by the point $\rho : \sigma : \tau \in \mathcal{L}_b$. Another part is the squared length $|PU|^2$ given by (7.12). In this formula, circumcircle appears as the conic that defines how lengths are computed in each direction.

7.6 Orthogonality

Proposition 7.6.1. *Let $V \in \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^3)$ be the point at infinity of a line given by its barycentrics Δ . Then we have*

$$V \doteq \Delta \wedge \mathcal{L}_b \simeq \boxed{W_b} \cdot ({}^t\Delta) \quad \text{where } \boxed{W_b} \doteq \frac{1}{2S} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & -1 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (7.18)$$

Proof. This assertion is nothing but the very definition of the \wedge operator, while the $1/2S$ coefficient is not involved in this property. \square

Proposition 7.6.2. *A point at infinity $V \in \mathcal{L}_b$ defines a direction of lines. The point $V^\perp \in \mathcal{L}_b$ that defines the orthogonal direction is called the orthopoint of V . And we have:*

$$V^\perp \simeq \boxed{\text{OrtO}_b} \cdot V \quad \text{where } \boxed{\text{OrtO}} \simeq {}^t\boxed{W_b} \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_b}$$

Proof. Here again, the coefficient is not involved in the property, which simply results from substituting $V \simeq 1 : t : -1 - t$ into

$${}^tV \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_b} \cdot {}^t\boxed{W_b} \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_b} \cdot V = 0$$

\square

Remark 7.6.3. As discussed in the next section, there are many "formal rules" like:

$$\begin{aligned} V^\perp &= \frac{+1}{4S} \mathcal{L}_b \wedge \left(V \underset{b}{\div} X_4 \right) \\ &\simeq {}^t(V \wedge X_4) \underset{b}{*} X_4 \\ \boxed{\text{OrtH}} &= \frac{1}{2S} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -S_b & +S_c \\ +S_a & 0 & -S_c \\ -S_a & +S_b & 0 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

They all provide the same result when $V \in \vec{\mathcal{V}}$.

Theorem 7.6.4. Orthopoint transform . *When exactly defined as*

$$\boxed{\text{OrtO}_b} \doteq {}^t\boxed{W_b} \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_b} = \frac{1}{4S} \begin{pmatrix} c^2 - b^2 & -a^2 & a^2 \\ b^2 & a^2 - c^2 & -b^2 \\ -c^2 & c^2 & b^2 - a^2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (7.19)$$

the matrix $\boxed{\text{OrtO}_b}$ describes the $+90^\circ$ rotation in the $\vec{\mathcal{V}}$ space, while its transpose matrix $\boxed{W_b} \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_b}$ describes the -90° rotation. Spoiler: Matrix $\boxed{\text{OrtO}_b}$ provides $\Omega_y \mapsto +i\Omega_y$, $\Omega_x \mapsto -i\Omega_x$. See the next coming Proposition 7.6.7.

Proof. We have $\text{Charpoly}(\boxed{\text{OrtO}_b}, \mu) = \mu^3 + \mu = \mu(\mu - i)(\mu + i)$. The factor at (7.19) was precisely chosen to enforce the conservation of length, as it could be easily checked. We have indeed

$${}^tV \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_b} \cdot V = {}^tV \cdot {}^t\boxed{\text{OrtO}_b} \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_b} \cdot \boxed{\text{OrtO}_b} \cdot V$$

when $V \in \vec{\mathcal{V}}$. It remains to prove the orientation. Go back to the ordinary Cartesian coordinates by (7.4), substitute the squared sidelengths using (7.5), and obtain :

$$\boxed{T_0} \cdot \boxed{\text{OrtO}_b} \cdot \boxed{T_0}^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 & * \\ 1 & 0 & * \\ 0 & 0 & * \end{pmatrix} = \boxed{\text{OrtO}_c}$$

\square

Proposition 7.6.5. *The orthodir U of any line Δ (except from the line at infinity) is defined as the orthopoint of $\Delta \wedge \mathcal{L}_b$. It can be computed as $U = [\mathcal{M}_b] \cdot {}^t\Delta$ where :*

$$[\mathcal{M}_b] \doteq [\text{OrtO}_b] \cdot [W_b] = {}^t[W_b] \cdot [\text{Pyth}_b] \cdot [W_b] = \frac{1}{4S^2} \begin{pmatrix} a^2 & -S_c & -S_b \\ -S_c & b^2 & -S_a \\ -S_b & -S_a & c^2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (7.20)$$

Proof. This comes directly from the orthopoint formula. Normalization factor $1/4S^2$ is useless here, but will be required when measuring, i.e. computing angles or distances. Moreover, one can check that, for example, the first column gives the direction of the first altitude (orthogonal to sideline BC). \square

Remark 7.6.6. Characteristic polynomial of $S \times [\mathcal{M}_b]$ is : $\chi(\mu) = \mu^3 + \mu^2 S_\omega/S + 3\mu$ and it can be checked that its left null space is $[1, 1, 1]$, the row associated with \mathcal{L}_b : for any column X , $[\mathcal{M}_b] \cdot X \in \mathcal{L}_b$ (as it should be).

Proposition 7.6.7. Isotropic lines. *A line $[f, g, h]$ that satisfies $\Delta \cdot [\mathcal{M}_b] \cdot {}^t\Delta = 0$ is orthogonal to itself, whence the name 'isotropic' given to these lines. This equation can be factored:*

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta \cdot [\mathcal{M}_b] \cdot {}^t\Delta &\doteq \frac{1}{2S} (a^2 f^2 + b^2 g^2 + c^2 h^2 - 2S_a gh - 2S_b hf - 2S_c fg) \\ &\simeq (\Delta \cdot \Omega_x) \times (\Delta \cdot \Omega_y) \end{aligned}$$

so that an isotropic line is a line that goes through one of the so-called **umbilics** of the plane, whose barycentrics are:

$$\Omega_x \simeq \begin{pmatrix} S_b - 2iS \\ S_a + 2iS \\ -c^2 \end{pmatrix} ; \quad \Omega_y \simeq \begin{pmatrix} S_b - 2iS \\ S_a + 2iS \\ -c^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Computed Proof. The possibility of this factorization comes from $\det[\mathcal{M}_b] = 0$. But a formal computing tool rather factorizes in the \mathbb{Q} field, and won't guess to use $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{-S^2})$! \square

Proof. Let us proceed by undetermined coefficients wrt f, g, h . Eliminating $u : v : w$ in the equation:

$$\Delta \cdot [\mathcal{M}_b] \cdot {}^t\Delta = (fp + gq + hr)(fu + gv + hw)$$

leads to $u = a^2/p$, $v = b^2/q$, $w = c^2/r$ (i.e. these points are isogonal conjugate of each other). And then solving in q, r leads to the given values. The appearance of these results is rather not symmetric... but using

$$\Omega_x \simeq \begin{pmatrix} (b^4 + c^4 - a^2 b^2 - a^2 c^2) a^2 + 4i(b^2 - c^2) a^2 S \\ (c^4 + a^4 - a^2 b^2 - b^2 c^2) b^2 + 4i(c^2 - a^2) b^2 S \\ (a^4 + b^4 - a^2 c^2 - b^2 c^2) c^2 + 4i(a^2 - b^2) c^2 S \end{pmatrix}$$

is rather too convoluted to be useful. \square

Remark 7.6.8. Spoiler: all the isotropic lines form a 'degenerate tangential conic' (see Proposition 11.4.2). Therefore, the adjoint of matrix $[\mathcal{M}_b]$ is ${}^t\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \mathcal{L}_b$ (the "all ones" matrix) and describes the line Ω_x, Ω_y , i.e. the \mathcal{L}_b line. Rank is one (since $[\mathcal{M}_b]$ has rank $n - 1$), so that product $\text{Adjoint}([\mathcal{M}_b]) \cdot [\mathcal{M}_b]$ is the null matrix.

7.7 Angles between straight lines

Proposition 7.7.1. *Let P, U_1, U_2 be three points at finite distance, such that $\overrightarrow{PU_i} \neq \vec{0}$. Then :*

$$\begin{aligned} |PU_1| \cdot |PU_2| \cdot \sin(\overrightarrow{PU_1}, \overrightarrow{PU_2}) &= 2S \frac{\det(P, U_1, U_2)}{(p+q+r) \prod (u_i + v_i + w_i)} \\ |PU_1| \cdot |PU_2| \cdot \cos(\overrightarrow{PU_1}, \overrightarrow{PU_2}) &= 2S \frac{(P \wedge U_1) \cdot [\mathcal{M}_b] \cdot {}^t(P \wedge U_2)}{(p+q+r)^2 \prod (u_i + v_i + w_i)} \end{aligned}$$

Proof. The sin formula comes from (7.10), while the cos formula can be obtained by using (7.12) into $|PU_1|^2 + |PU_2|^2 - |U_1U_2|^2$ and rearranging. \square

Theorem 7.7.2. *Let P be a point at finite distance, and U_1, U_2 two other points (at finite distance or not). Then the angle between straight lines PU_1, PU_2 is characterized by its **tangent**, according to :*

$$\tan \left(\overbrace{PU_1, PU_2} \right) = (p + q + r) \frac{\det(P, U_1, U_2)}{(P \wedge U_1) \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t(P \wedge U_2)} \quad (7.21)$$

When U_1, U_2 are at infinity, the angle between all the lines having the given directions can be computed as :

$$\tan_{\infty} \left(\overbrace{U_1, U_2} \right) = \frac{2S(v_1w_2 - w_1v_2)}{(v_1w_2 + w_1v_2)S_a + w_1w_2b^2 + v_1v_2c^2}$$

Proof. The key point here is that formula (7.21) is square-root free. Extension to U_i at infinity is obtained by continuity after cancellation of the $(u_i + v_i + w_i)$. Formula \tan_{∞} is not formally symmetric ($P = A$ has been used). But the u_i are nevertheless present since $u_i = -v_i - w_i$. \square

Theorem 7.7.3. Tangent of two lines. *If the triangle plane is oriented according to $\left(\overbrace{AB, AC} \right) = +A$, then the oriented angle from line Δ_1 to line Δ_2 is characterized by : where $\boxed{W_b}$ and $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b}$ are exactly as given in (7.6) and (7.20) (i.e. not up to a proportionality factor).*

$$\tan \left(\overbrace{\Delta_1, \Delta_2} \right) = \frac{\Delta_1 \cdot \boxed{W} \cdot {}^t\Delta_2}{\Delta_1 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}} \cdot {}^t\Delta_2} \quad (7.22)$$

Proof. Simple use of $\Delta_1 \wedge \Delta_2, \mathcal{L}_b \wedge \Delta_1, \mathcal{L}_b \wedge \Delta_2$ in (7.21). Among other things, this formula tells us that $\vartheta = 0$ when each line contain the point at infinity of the other, while $|\vartheta| = \pi/2$ when each line contains the orthopoint of the other (formula is anti-symmetric). \square

Theorem 7.7.4. Cosinus of two lines. *The non-oriented angle between lines Δ_1 and Δ_2 is characterized by :*

$$\cos(\Delta_1, \Delta_2) = \frac{\Delta_1 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t\Delta_2}{\sqrt{\Delta_1 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t\Delta_1} \sqrt{\Delta_2 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t\Delta_2}} \quad (7.23)$$

Proof. This is nothing but the general formula in an Euclidian space. Nevertheless, this result can be checked using Proposition 7.7.1. \square

7.8 Tangent of two lines: a proof from scratch

Due to the importance of formula (7.22), a full proof, starting ab initio, cannot be useless. So we have:

1. We start from the Euclidean space \mathbb{R}^2 imbeded into the $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^3)$ projective space. And we consider the two given lines $\Delta_j \simeq [a_j, b_j, c_j]$ as well as "the x axis" $\Delta_0 \simeq [1, 0, c]$.
2. The slope of line Δ_1 , as defined by $p_1 = b_1/a_1$, will be called "the tangent of angle (Δ_0, Δ_1) ".
3. We consider the change of reference frame defined by the matrix $\boxed{M} = [m_{jk}]$ and require that it defines a similitude. In other words, we require that:

$$\tilde{M} \doteq \text{submatrix} \left({}^t\boxed{M} \cdot \boxed{M}, 1..2, 1..2 \right) = \begin{bmatrix} \lambda & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda \end{bmatrix} ; \mathcal{L}_c \cdot \boxed{M} \simeq \mathcal{L}_c$$

namex	ψ	#	barycentrics	#	inclusive	#	cartesian
\mathcal{L}_b	2		$[1;1;1]$	(14.1)	$[0;1;0]$		linfz
pinf $\boxed{W_b}$	3	(7.6)	$\frac{1}{4S} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & -1 \\ -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	(14.7)	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -i \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ +i & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$\frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & +1 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	
pythagoras $\boxed{\text{Pyth}_b}$	5	(7.11)	$\frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -c^2 & -b^2 \\ -c^2 & 0 & -a^2 \\ -b^2 & -a^2 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	(14.5)	$\frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	
orthopoint $\boxed{\text{OrtO}}$	4	(7.19)	$\frac{1}{4S} \begin{pmatrix} c^2-b^2 & -a^2 & a^2 \\ b^2 & a^2-c^2 & -b^2 \\ -c^2 & c^2 & b^2-a^2 \end{pmatrix}$	(14.8)	$i \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	
orthodir $\boxed{\mathcal{M}}$	3	(7.20)	$\frac{1}{8S^2} \begin{pmatrix} a^2 & -S_c & -S_b \\ -S_c & b^2 & -S_a \\ -S_b & -S_a & c^2 \end{pmatrix}$	(14.9)	$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$	
tangent of $\left(\overbrace{\Delta_1, \Delta_2}^{\phantom{000$							

Table 7.1: All these matrices

4. We find that such transforms form two families, but only one encompasses the "change nothing" as an allowed one. And therefore the \boxed{M} are required to be:

$$\boxed{M} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} m_{22} & -m_{21} & m_{13} \\ m_{21} & m_{22} & m_{23} \\ 0 & 0 & m_{33} \end{bmatrix}$$

5. Now, let us define $\tan(\Delta_1, \Delta_2)$ as the value of $\tan(\Delta_1 \cdot \boxed{M}, \Delta_2 \cdot \boxed{M})$ when $\Delta_1 \cdot \boxed{M} = \Delta_0$.

This requires that $\widetilde{M} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} a_1 & -b_1 \\ b_1 & a_1 \end{bmatrix}$. As a result, we get

$$\tan(\Delta_1, \Delta_2) = \frac{p_2 - p_1}{1 + p_1 p_2} = \frac{a_1 b_2 - a_2 b_1}{a_1 a_2 + b_1 b_2}$$

6. In order to emphasise invariant properties, will use a matrix formulation of this formula, leading to:

$$\tan(\Delta_1, \Delta_2) = \frac{\Delta_1 \cdot \boxed{W} \cdot {}^t \Delta_2}{\Delta_1 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}} \cdot {}^t \Delta_2}$$

$$\text{where } \boxed{W} = \boxed{W_c} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}; \quad \boxed{\mathcal{M}} = \boxed{\mathcal{M}_c} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

7. And now, using (7.4), (7.5), we arrive at the barycentric formulas:

$$\boxed{W_b} = \boxed{b\Phi c}^{-1} \cdot \boxed{W_c} \cdot {}^t \boxed{b\Phi c}^{-1}; \quad \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} = \boxed{b\Phi c}^{-1} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_c} \cdot {}^t \boxed{b\Phi c}^{-1}$$

7.9 Rotations in the barycentric plane

Lemma 7.9.1. *When M is an ordinary point, then $\pi_1 \doteq (M \cdot \mathcal{L}_b) / (\mathcal{L}_b \cdot M)$ and $\pi_2 \doteq \boxed{1} - \pi_1$ are projectors.*

Lemma 7.9.2. *Then $\pi_1 \cdot \boxed{\text{OrtO}} = 0$, and therefore $\pi_2 \cdot \boxed{\text{OrtO}} = \boxed{\text{OrtO}}$*

Proposition 7.9.3. *The matrix of the rotation with angle ϑ and center M is:*

$$\boxed{rot} \doteq \pi_1 + \sin \vartheta \boxed{\text{OrtO}} \cdot \pi_2 + \cos \vartheta \pi_2$$

Proof. We obviously have $\boxed{rot} \cdot M = M$. From $\pi_2 \cdot \Omega_y = \Omega_y$, we have $\boxed{rot} \cdot \Omega_y = (\cos \vartheta + i \sin \vartheta) \Omega_y$, etc, as it should be. \square

7.10 Distance from a point to a line

Definition 7.10.1. The distance from a point P to a line Δ is the lower bound of the distance from P to a point U that belongs to Δ . By continuity, this bound is attained and is equal to the distance of P to its orthogonal projection P_0 on Δ .

Theorem 7.10.2. *Distance from point P to line Δ is given by :*

$$\text{dist}(P, \Delta) = \frac{\Delta \cdot P}{(\mathcal{L}_b \cdot P) \sqrt{\Delta \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t \Delta}} \quad (7.24)$$

where $\mathcal{L}_b = [1, 1, 1]$ and $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b}$ is as given in (7.20) (not up to a proportionality factor).

Proof. Project P into Q and compute $\sqrt{|PQ|^2}$. \square

Remark 7.10.3. Formula (7.24) is invariant when barycentrics of P or Δ are modified by a proportionality factor. Denominators are enforcing the fact that P is supposed to be finite, and Δ is not supposed to be an isotropic line.

Exercise 7.10.4. Check this formula by computing $\text{dist}(A, BC)$.

Proposition 7.10.5. *The distance between two parallel lines is defined as the distance from one of the lines to a point of the other. We have the formula:*

$$\text{dist}(\Delta, \Delta + \mu \mathcal{L}_b) = \frac{\mu}{\sqrt{\Delta \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t \Delta}}$$

Proof. Apply (7.24) with $(1/f : t/g : -(1+t)/h) \in \Delta$. About homogeneity: μ is like Δ , while $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b}$ is like $1/a^2$. \square

7.11 More about the Pyth matrix

As stated in Proposition 7.2.3, any matrix

$$\boxed{\text{Pyth}_U} \doteq \boxed{\text{Pyth}_b} + \frac{1}{2} \left(U \cdot \mathcal{L}_b + {}^t(U \cdot \mathcal{L}_b) \right)$$

can be used to define the euclidian metric of the $\vec{\mathcal{V}}$ vector space. Let us discuss this "degree of freedom" and note $U \simeq u : v : w$.

Proposition 7.11.1. *When applied to points $X \in \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$, matrix $\boxed{\text{Pyth}_U}$ describes a visible circle \mathcal{C}_U , characterized by power $(\mathcal{C}_U, A) = u$, etc.*

Proof. Obvious from the equation ${}^t X \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_U} \cdot X = 0$ and the power formula (7.13). \square

Remark 7.11.2. Spoiler: the Veronese representation of circle \mathcal{C}_U is therefore $u : v : w : 1$. Remember:

$$Ver_b(x : y : z) \cdot (u : v : w : 1) = 0 \iff -(a^2 yz + b^2 zx + c^2 xy) + (x + y + z)(ux + vy + wz) = 0$$

And therefore, any circle can be used: the center and the radius of \mathcal{C}_U can be chosen at will.

Example 7.11.3. The choice $U = 0 : 0 : 0$ leads to $\mathcal{C}_0 = \Gamma = (O, R)$, which is nothing else than the circumscribed circle.

Example 7.11.4. Requiring a diagonal form for $\boxed{\text{Pyth}_U}$ leads to

$$\boxed{\text{Pyth}_H} \doteq \begin{bmatrix} S_a & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & S_b & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & S_c \end{bmatrix}$$

that uses the polar circle $\mathcal{C}_H = (H ; \sqrt{-S_a S_b S_c} : 2S)$ as isotropic circle (see Section 12.7).

Example 7.11.5. Spoiler: the choice given by the change of basis formula applied to the Morley formula $\mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}} = 0$ leads to the $\mathcal{C}_M = (O; 0) = (O)$, the point circle centered at $X(3)$:

$$\mathcal{C}_M = \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} 2R^2 & 2R^2 - c^2 & 2R^2 - b^2 \\ 2R^2 - c^2 & 2R^2 & 2R^2 - a^2 \\ 2R^2 - b^2 & 2R^2 - a^2 & 2R^2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Proposition 7.11.6. *Let $P = (p, q, r) \in \mathbb{R}^3$ be a 3-uple that does not belongs to $\vec{\mathcal{V}}$. Then it exists a linear transform ψ such that (i) $\psi(P) = 0$, (ii) $\psi(\vec{\mathcal{V}}) = \vec{\mathcal{V}}$ (iii) for all $V \in \vec{\mathcal{V}}$, $\langle \psi(V) | \psi(V) \rangle = \langle V | V \rangle$ while $\langle \psi(V) | V \rangle = 0$. Then its characteristic polynomial is $\chi(\mu) = \mu^3 + \mu$ and we have :*

$$\text{Orth}(P) = \frac{1}{2S(p+q+r)} \begin{pmatrix} qS_b - rS_c & -(ra^2 + pS_b) & qa^2 + pS_c \\ rb^2 + qS_a & rS_c - pS_a & -(pb^2 + qS_c) \\ -(qc^2 + rS_a) & pc^2 + rS_b & pS_a - qS_b \end{pmatrix}$$

The opposite of this matrix is the only other solution to the problem.

Computed Proof. Assertions $M \cdot P = 0$, $\mathcal{L}_b \cdot M = 0$ and $\langle \psi(V) | V \rangle = 0$ when $V = x : y : -x - y$ gives nine equations. Elimination leads to the given matrix, up to a coefficient. Then $\langle \psi(V) | \psi(V) \rangle = \langle V | V \rangle$ gives the coefficient. The denominator $p + q + r$ enforces the fact that P is at finite distance. \square

Proposition 7.11.7. *For any U , matrix $\boxed{\text{Ort}U} \doteq \frac{1}{2S} {}^t\boxed{W_b} \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_U}$ is equal to $\text{Orth}(P)$ where P is the center of the isotropic circle \mathcal{C}_U . Thus, matrices $\text{Orth}(P)$ and $\text{Orth}(U)$ relative to finite points P, U are related by the "translation" formula :*

$$\text{Orth}(P) = \text{Orth}(U) \cdot \left(1 - \frac{1}{p+q+r} \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix} \cdot \mathcal{L}_b \right)$$

Proof. Acting at infinity, both matrices induces a quarter-turn. At finite distance, it remains only to move the kernel to the right place. \square

Remark 7.11.8. Any $\text{Orth}(P)$ matrix describes a quarter-turn in the euclidian plane $\vec{\mathcal{V}}$. In order to provide a better perception of this result, let $O = X(3)$, $H = X(4)$, put $W_3^2 = 16 |OH|^2 S^2 = \sum_3 a^6 - \sum_6 a^4 b^2 + 3a^2 b^2 c^2$ and consider the linear transform (collineation) whose matrix is $\phi = [X(3), X(30)/4S, X(523)]$. When computing $|OH|^2$, vector \vec{OH} is involved and therefore $X(30)$ (the direction of the Euler line), while $X(523)$ is known to be the direction orthogonal to the Euler line. We have :

$$\begin{aligned} \phi &= \begin{pmatrix} a^2(b^2 + c^2 - a^2) & \left[2a^4 - (b^2 - c^2)^2 - a^2(b^2 + c^2) \right] \div 4S & b^2 - c^2 \\ b^2(c^2 + a^2 - b^2) & \left[2b^4 - (c^2 - a^2)^2 - b^2(c^2 + a^2) \right] \div 4S & c^2 - a^2 \\ c^2(a^2 + b^2 - c^2) & \left[2c^4 - (a^2 - b^2)^2 - c^2(a^2 + b^2) \right] \div 4S & a^2 - b^2 \end{pmatrix} \\ {}^t\phi \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_b} \cdot \phi &= \begin{pmatrix} -16a^2c^2b^2S^2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & W_3^2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & W_3^2 \end{pmatrix} \\ \phi^{-1} \cdot \boxed{\text{OrtO}} \cdot \phi &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ {}^t\phi \cdot {}^t\boxed{\text{OrtO}} \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_b} \cdot \boxed{\text{OrtO}} \cdot \phi &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & W_3^2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & W_3^2 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Remark 7.11.9. Mind the signs in $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b}$! The following matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} a^2 & S_c & S_b \\ S_c & b^2 & S_a \\ S_b & S_a & c^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

describes the triangle of the midpoints of the altitudes. And also the Longchamps circle 12.8 (see 11.22.17).

7.12 Brocard points and the sequel

7.12.1 Some results

Proposition 7.12.1. Brocard points. *It exists exactly one point Br_1 and one point Br_2 such that :*

$$\begin{aligned} \angle(\text{ABr}_1, AC) &= \angle(\text{BBr}_1, BA) = \angle(\text{CBr}_1, CB) \\ \angle(AB, \text{ABr}_2) &= \angle(BC, \text{BBr}_2) = \angle(CA, \text{CBr}_2) \end{aligned}$$

They are given by $\text{Br}_1 = a^2b^2 : b^2c^2 : c^2a^2$ and $\text{Br}_2 = c^2a^2 : a^2b^2 : b^2c^2$. Moreover, when defined exactly that way, both angles are equal. This quantity is called the Brocard angle and one has :

$$\cot \omega = \frac{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}{4S} \quad (7.25)$$

Proof. Equating the tangents of the angles and eliminating, one obtains a third degree equation with one simple real root and two others which involves iS^2 . As it should be Brocard points are isogonal conjugates of each other. \square

Proposition 7.12.2. cot versus Conway. We have the following equalities between Conway symbols and some cotangents:

$$[S_a, S_b, S_c, S_\omega] = [2S \cot A, 2S \cot B, 2S \cot C, 2S \cot \omega]$$

$$\cot \left(\frac{A}{2} \right) = \frac{bc + S_a}{2S} ; \cot \left(\frac{B}{2} \right) = \frac{ac + S_b}{2S} ; \cot \left(\frac{C}{2} \right) = \frac{ab + S_c}{2S}$$

Proof. First three are obvious, the ω one is given just above. This proves the Volenec (2005) formula :

$$\cot \omega = \cot A + \cot B + \cot C \quad \square$$

Remark 7.12.3. A subsection about the so-called Brocard triangles is located at Subsection 23.9.

Remark 7.12.4. The ETC points on the Brocard line are 9 (Mittenpunkt), 512 (at infinity), 881, 882, 2524, 2531.

Lemma 7.12.5. Since $\tan \omega > 0$ and $|\omega| \leq \pi/6$, we have :

$$\cos(\omega) = \frac{c^2 + a^2 + b^2}{2\sqrt{a^2b^2 + a^2c^2 + b^2c^2}}, \quad \sin(\omega) = \frac{2S}{\sqrt{a^2b^2 + a^2c^2 + b^2c^2}} \quad (7.26)$$

Fact 7.12.6. Each Brocard point is at the intersection of three isogonal circles, according to :

$$\begin{aligned} \angle(\text{Br}_1B, \text{Br}_1C) &= \angle(BA, BC) \\ \angle(\text{Br}_2B, \text{Br}_2C) &= \angle(CB, CA) \end{aligned}$$

Proposition 7.12.7. Neuberg circles. The locus of A when B, C, ω are given is a circle (Neuberg circle of vertex A). Barycentric equation, center and radius are :

$$a^2yz + b^2xz + c^2xy - a^2(x+y+z)(y+z) = 0$$

$$N_a \simeq \begin{pmatrix} a^2(c^2 + a^2 + b^2) \\ (a^2 + b^2)c^2 - b^4 - a^4 \\ (a^2 + c^2)b^2 - c^4 - a^4 \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} -a \cos(\omega) \\ b \cos(C + \omega) \\ c \cos(B + \omega) \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\rho_A = \frac{a}{2} \sqrt{\cot^2 \omega - 3}$$

Proof. Straightforward computation, replacing b^2 by $|A'C|^2$ etc. The form given proves the circular shape. \square

Proposition 7.12.8. Tarry point. Triangle $N_aN_bN_c$ is perspective with ABC and perspector is the Tarry point $X(98)$ =

$$\frac{1}{a^2b^2 + a^2c^2 - b^4 - c^4} : \frac{1}{b^2c^2 + b^2a^2 - c^4 - a^4} : \frac{1}{c^2a^2 + c^2b^2 - a^4 - b^4}$$

Conversely, Neuberg center N_a is common point of the A cevian of X_{98} and the perpendicular bisector of side BC , etc.

²the next coming umbilics!

Proof. Direct computation. \square

Proposition 7.12.9. *The Steiner angles $\omega_1 > \omega_2$ are defined as follows. $2\omega_1$ is the maximal value of A when ω is given and $2\omega_2$ is the minimal value. We have the following relations :*

$$\begin{aligned}\cot 2\omega_j + 2/\cot \omega_j &= \cot \omega \\ \cot \omega_1 &= \cot \omega - \sqrt{\cot^2 \omega - 3} \\ \cot \omega_2 &= \cot \omega + \sqrt{\cot^2 \omega - 3} \\ \sin (2\omega_j + \omega) &= 2 \sin \omega \\ \omega + \omega_1 + \omega_2 &= \pi/2\end{aligned}$$

Proof. First formula comes from (7.25) (at extremum, triangle ABC is isosceles). This gives a second degree equation whose discriminant $\cot^2 \omega - 3$ is non negative, and last formula comes from $\cot (\omega_1 + \omega_2)$ depends on sum and product of the $\cot \omega_j$. \square

Proposition 7.12.10. *Any Neuberg circle is viewed from another vertex under angle 2ϑ where :*

$$\cos \vartheta = 2 \sin \omega = \sin (2\omega_j + \omega)$$

Proof. The polar of B cuts circle N_a in two points T_1, T_2 (equation of second degree, $\Delta = a^4 + b^4 + c^4 - a^2b^2 - a^2c^2 - b^2c^2$). And we have $2\vartheta = \angle (BT_1, BT_2)$. A better choice is $T_0 = \text{midpoint}(T_1, T_2)$ and $\vartheta = \angle (BT_1, BT_0)$... taking orientation into account ! \square

7.12.2 Results related to the Kiepert RH

This section has moved to Proposition 12.22.2.

7.12.3 Spoiler: study of the Neuberg pencil

Let us consider the level curves of the Brocard angle $\omega(M, B, C)$ when vertex M moves in the ABC plane. Barycentric coordinates are surely not the best system here, and using the Veronese map is probably not required. Therefore, this subsection should rather be considered as a spoiler related to the chapter devoted to pencils of cycles.

1. Let us note $M \simeq x : y : z$, $|MB| = \gamma$, $|MC| = \beta$ and $u/v = \tan \omega$. Then

$$\frac{u}{v} = \frac{a^2 + \beta^2 + \gamma^2}{4 S_M} \quad \text{where } \beta^2 = \frac{z(x+z)a^2 + x(x+z)c^2 - b^2zx}{(x+y+z)^2}, \text{ etc. ; } S_M = \frac{x S}{x+y+z}$$

2. It can be seen that numerator of $u/v - \dots$ collects nicely, leading to equation

$$v \times \mathcal{C}(x, y, z) - 4uS \times (x(x+y+z)) = 0$$

3. In the second term, one recognizes that $x(x+y+z)$ describes the line BC seen as a cycle, i.e. completed by the line at infinity. On the other hand, the conic $\mathcal{C}_0(x, y, z)$ can be recognized as the circle whose equation is the column : $V \simeq S_\omega : a^2 : a^2 : 1$. And therefore is centered

$$\text{at } \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ b \end{bmatrix} \cdot V \simeq 0 : 1 : 1 : \text{ and has radius } \sqrt{{}^t V \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ b \end{bmatrix} \cdot V} = ia\sqrt{3}/2.$$

4. Thus the set of the level curves is the pencil of cycles generated by the two special cases, i.e. the Neuberg pencil. Since \mathcal{C}_0 , the cycle centered on the radical axis, is virtual, the pencil is an *isotomic* pencil, whose limit points P_\pm are on the real circle associated with \mathcal{C}_0 : these points are the vertices of the equilateral triangles whose basis is BC .
5. From $u^2/(u^2 + v^2) = \cos(\omega_M)^2$, we have $u = v \cot(\omega_M)$ so that the level curves are the circles:

$$\begin{aligned}V &\simeq S_\omega - 2S \cot(\omega) : a^2 : a^2 : 1 \\ \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ b \end{bmatrix} \cdot V &\simeq a \cos(\omega) : -b \cos(\omega + C) : -c \cos(\omega + B) : -abc \cos(A + \omega) \\ \sqrt{{}^t V \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ b \end{bmatrix} \cdot V} &= \frac{1}{2} a \sqrt{\cot^2 \omega - 3}\end{aligned}$$

6. And therefore, \mathcal{C}_0 is the (virtual) locus of vertices M such that $\omega_M = 90^\circ$.

7.12.4 Spoiler: Brocard angle of a pedal triangle

1. Consider $M \simeq x : y : z$ and its pedal triangle. Apart from a common factor $1 \div (2R (x + y + z))^2$, area and squared sidelengths are:

$$S_M = S (a^2 yz + b^2 zx + c^2 xy) ; a_M^2 = a^2 (z(y+z)b^2 + y(y+z)c^2 - a^2 yz) ; \text{etc.}$$

Thus the level curves of the Brocard angle are given by

$$\frac{u}{v} = \cot(\omega_M) = \frac{a_M^2 + b_M^2 + c_M^2}{4S_M}$$

2. As before, the numerator collects nicely and the locus is given by:

$$v \mathcal{C}(x, y, z) - 4u S (a^2 yz + b^2 zx + c^2 xy) = 0$$

3. This locus is a circle, whose Veronese image V , center E and radius ρ are:

$$V \simeq \begin{pmatrix} b^2 c^2 v \\ c^2 a^2 v \\ a^2 b^2 v \\ 2uS + S_\omega v \end{pmatrix}$$

$$E \simeq \begin{pmatrix} a^2 (2Sv + S_a u) \\ b^2 (2Sv + S_b u) \\ c^2 (2Sv + S_c u) \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} a \cos(A - \omega_M) \\ b \cos(B - \omega_M) \\ c \cos(C - \omega_M) \end{pmatrix} ; \rho = \frac{R \sqrt{\cot^2(\omega_M) - 3}}{\cot(\omega_M) + \cot(\omega)}$$

4. One sees that $v = 0$ describes the circumcircle. Projections of M are aligned on the Simson line, so that $\omega_M = 0$.
5. One sees that $\omega_M = \pm 30^\circ$, i.e. $v = \cot(\omega_M) = \pm \sqrt{3}$, $u = 1$ characterizes two points ($\rho = 0$). They are X(15), X(16), the **isodynamic points**. No other pedal triangle is equilateral.
6. The locus characterized by $\omega_M = \omega_{ABC}$ is centered at X(182). One identifies the 3-6-Brocard circle. The locus characterized by $\omega_M = -\omega_{ABC}$ is a straight line ($\rho = \infty$). Therefore, this line is the perpendicular bisector of segment X(15),X(16): the line X(187),X(512).

7.13 Orthogonal projector onto a line

Proposition 7.13.1. *The matrix π_Δ of the **orthogonal projector** onto line $\Delta \simeq [p, q, r]$ –not the line at infinity – is given by :*

$$\pi_\Delta = \text{Id} - \frac{\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t \Delta \cdot \Delta}{\Delta \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t \Delta} \quad (7.27)$$

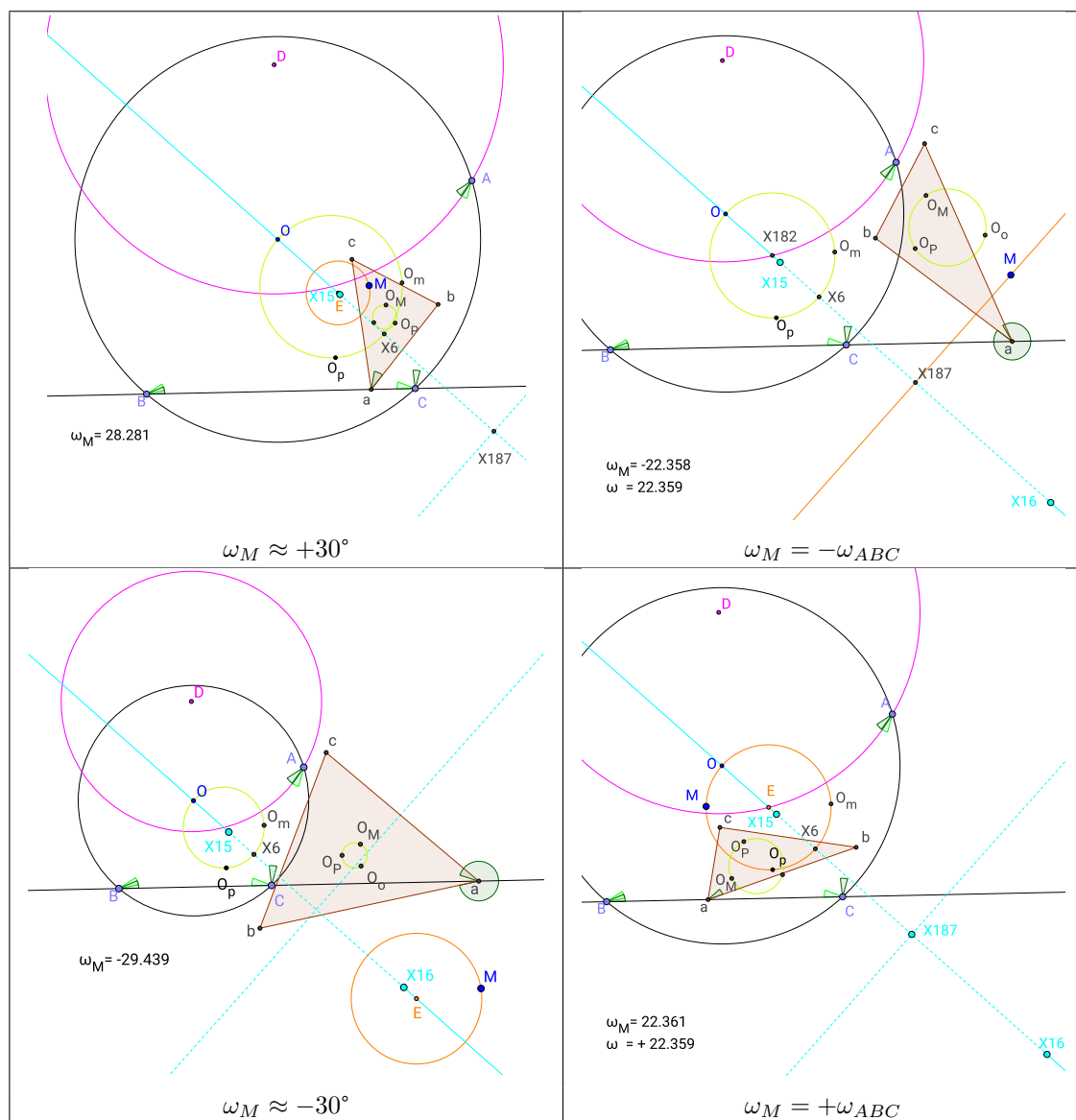
where matrix $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b}$ is defined by (7.20).

Proof. Let $\vec{\delta} = \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t \Delta$ be the orthodir of Δ and P a generic point of Δ . Then $\pi_\Delta = \text{Id} - \left(\vec{\delta} \cdot \Delta \right) \div \left(\Delta \cdot \vec{\delta} \right)$. Then $\pi_\Delta(P) = P$ since $\left(\vec{\delta} \cdot \Delta \right) \cdot P = \vec{\delta} \cdot (\Delta \cdot P) = 0$. On the other hand, one has $\left(\vec{\delta} \cdot \Delta \right) \cdot \vec{\delta} = \vec{\delta} \cdot (\Delta \cdot \vec{\delta})$ so $\pi_\Delta(\vec{\delta}) = 0$. As a result, $\pi_\Delta(P + \lambda \vec{\delta}) = P$, as it should be. \square

Proposition 7.13.2. *The matrix σ_Δ of the **orthogonal reflection** wrt line $\Delta \simeq [p, q, r]$ –not the line at infinity – is given by :*

$$\sigma_\Delta = \text{Id} - 2 \frac{\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t \Delta \cdot \Delta}{\Delta \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t \Delta} \quad (7.28)$$

where matrix $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b}$ is defined by (7.20).

Figure 7.1: Level curves of the Brocard angle of the pedal triangle of point M

Proof. Obvious from the preceding proof. \square

Proposition 7.13.3. Cosine of a projection. Consider line $\Delta_1 \simeq [p, q, r]$ and use $\vec{e}_1 = (q - r, r - p, p - q)$ as unit vector for this direction. Consider also line $\Delta_2 \simeq [u, v, w]$ and use $\vec{e}_2 = (v - w, w - u, u - v)$ as unit vector for that other direction. Then orthogonal projection π onto Δ_1 transforms Δ_2 -vectors into Δ_1 -vectors according to :

$$\pi(\vec{e}_2) = \vec{e}_1 \frac{\Delta_1 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t \Delta_2}{\Delta_1 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t \Delta_1}$$

Proof. Formula is homogeneous, as it should be. Vectors \vec{e}_i are not normalized, that the reason why this formula is square-root free. Formula $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} = 2 \boxed{{}^t W_b} \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_b} \cdot \boxed{W_b}$ indicates that scaling factor can be interpreted in terms of a "cosine of projection". \square

Proposition 7.13.4. Consider the **homothety** of center $P = p : q : r$ (not on the infinity line) and ratio k (not 0 !). Then points U are transformed as $U \mapsto h(P, k) \cdot U$ while lines Δ are transformed as $\Delta \mapsto \Delta \cdot h(P, 1/k)$ where :

$$h(P, k) = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} + \frac{1 - k}{k(p + q + r)} \begin{bmatrix} p & p & p \\ q & q & q \\ r & r & r \end{bmatrix} \simeq k + (1 - k) \frac{P \cdot \mathcal{L}_b}{\mathcal{L}_b \cdot P} \quad (7.29)$$

Proof. Applied to column P , the last formula gives P . Applied to a vector \vec{V} , this gives $k \vec{V}$ since a vector is defined by $\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \vec{V} = 0$. Another method: we want $U \mapsto X$ such that, given U , we have $(X - P) = k(U - P)$. Expressed in barycentrics, this leads to :

$$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \\ w \end{pmatrix} + \frac{(1 - k)(u + v + w)}{k(p + q + r)} \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix}$$

Property about lines comes from the fact that action over lines and action over points are inverse of each other. \square

7.14 The hortocenter romance

The three perpendicular bissectors of a triangle intersect at a single point. The proof is well known. Note them $\mu(B, C)$, etc and define P as $\mu(A, B) \cap \mu(B, C)$. Then $PA = PB$ together with $PB = PC$ (from Pythagoras theorem). This implies $PA = PC$ and proves $P \in \mu(A, C)$.

And now, define $A' = B + C - A$, etc. The $\mu(B'C')$, etc intersect at some point H , while $A = (B' + C')$, so that $\mu(B'C')$ is also the altitude issued from A and perpendicular to $BC \parallel B'C'$. As a result, we have proven that the three altitudes of a triangle intersect at a single point. This enlightening proof appears to be a recent one... while the property itself is not listed in the Greek geometry books (Bogomolny, 2015).

In this section, we will explore what happens when this result is taken as an axiom.

Definition 7.14.1. Orthopoints. Let us take a triangle ABC in the projective plane and choose the point $H \simeq p : q : r$ as the "rightfull center" together with choosing the line $\mathcal{L}_b \doteq [f, g, h]$ as the line at infinity. Points $H_a \doteq (HA) \cap (BC)$, etc are called the cevian feet of H . And then directions $D_a \doteq (BC) \cap \mathcal{L}_b$ and $T_a \doteq (AH) \cap \mathcal{L}_b$ are called orthopoints of each other (this relation will be extended later into an involution of \mathcal{L}_b).

Definition 7.14.2. Holy Garden and hortocenter. Let R_a be the fourth-harmonic of H wrt H_a, T_a , etc. Then A, B, C, R_a, R_b, R_c are co-conic. Let us call this conic Γ the holy garden, i.e. the most beautiful circle. Its perspector is the Lemoine point (and therefore is usually named K). Let us draw the polar of T_a . It goes through D_a . The three polars intersect at a single point (the pole of \mathcal{L}_b). This point is the center of the holy garden, i.e. the hortocenter. Let us call it O , since the orthocenter is called H .

Proof. One has

$$H_a, T_a, R_a \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} -qg - rh \\ qf \\ fr \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} -p(qg + rh) \\ q(2fp + qg + rh) \\ r(2fp + qg + rh) \end{pmatrix}$$

$$K, O \simeq \begin{pmatrix} p(qg + rh) \\ q(rh + pf) \\ r(pf + qg) \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} gh(qg + rh) \\ hf(rh + pf) \\ fg(pf + qg) \end{pmatrix}$$

□

Definition 7.14.3. Gravity center. By O , the hortocenter, let us draw the line OT_a having the same direction as (HA) and obtain the points $G_a \doteq (BC) \cap (OT_a)$, etc. The triangle $G_a G_b G_c$ is perspective with ABC , defining a point G . To avoid confusions with the Garden Center O , let us call G as the Gravity center. It occurs that O, G, H are colinear, defining the celebrated Euler line.

Proof. One has:

$$G \simeq \begin{pmatrix} gh \\ fh \\ fg \end{pmatrix} = \text{tripolar}(\mathcal{L}_b) ; \text{Euler} \simeq [f(qg - rh), g(rh - pf), h(pf - qg)]$$

□

Definition 7.14.4. Isogonal conjugacy and orthopoint transform. It happens that $G \overset{*}{\underset{b}{*}} K = O \overset{*}{\underset{b}{*}} H$. Let us extend this result to the whole plane and define the isogonal conjugacy as $M^* = G \overset{*}{\underset{b}{*}} K \div \underset{b}{*} M$. (Spoiler: this is a quadratic Cremona transform). Moreover, we can see that the pairs (T_a^*, D_a^*) , etc are aligned with O . Let us use this property to extend the orthopoint relation to the whole \mathcal{L}_b , i.e.

$$N = \text{orthopoint}(M) \iff \det |O, M^*, N^*| = 0$$

This leads to: $N \simeq \boxed{\text{OrtH}} \cdot M$ where $\boxed{\text{OrtH}} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -\frac{pr}{f} & \frac{pq}{f} \\ \frac{rq}{g} & 0 & -\frac{pq}{g} \\ -\frac{rq}{h} & \frac{pr}{h} & 0 \end{bmatrix}$

Proof. Write the system $\det |O, M^*, N^*| = \mathcal{L}_b \cdot M = \mathcal{L}_b \cdot N = 0$ and solve in r, q', r' . Substitute into $p' : q' : r'$, re-introduce r and take the gradient wrt M . One can remark that $\ker \boxed{\text{OrtH}}$ is $H \simeq p : q : r$ while $\ker {}^t \boxed{\text{OrtH}} = \mathcal{L}_b$. □

Proposition 7.14.5. The characteristic polynomial of $\boxed{\text{OrtH}}$ is:

$$\chi_{\boxed{\text{OrtH}}}(X) = X^3 + \frac{pqr(fp + qg + rh)}{fgh} X$$

Non vanishing roots can be taken as $\pm i$ or as ± 1 according to the signum of $pqr(fp + qg + rh) \div fgh$ (as it should be, this signum behaves projectively).

Chapter 8

Brief extension to 3D spaces

Previous chapters were dealing with 2D spaces (planes), represented as the projective of a 3D vector space. In this chapter, we are using a 4D vector space to describe a 3D geometric space.

8.1 Basic results

Definition 8.1.1. A 3D point is a projective column in $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^4)$, most of the time noted as:

$$X = \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ x_2 \\ x_3 \\ x_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \vec{X} \\ x \end{pmatrix}$$

Definition 8.1.2. We will say that four points X_j are coplanar when $\det_{1..4}(X_j) = 0$.

Theorem 8.1.3 (Universal factoring). *Given four columns, we have :*

$$\det(X_1 X_2 X_3 X_4) = {}^t X_1 \cdot \left(X_2 \wedge_6 X_3 \right) \cdot X_4 \quad \text{where}$$

$$\left(\begin{pmatrix} x_2 \\ y_2 \\ z_2 \\ t_2 \end{pmatrix} \wedge_6 \begin{pmatrix} x_3 \\ y_3 \\ z_3 \\ t_3 \end{pmatrix} \right) \doteq \begin{pmatrix} 0 & t_3 z_2 - t_2 z_3 & t_2 y_3 - t_3 y_2 & y_2 z_3 - y_3 z_2 \\ t_2 z_3 - t_3 z_2 & 0 & t_3 x_2 - t_2 x_3 & x_3 z_2 - x_2 z_3 \\ t_3 y_2 - t_2 y_3 & t_2 x_3 - t_3 x_2 & 0 & x_2 y_3 - x_3 y_2 \\ y_3 z_2 - y_2 z_3 & x_2 z_3 - x_3 z_2 & x_3 y_2 - x_2 y_3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. Operator \det is multilinear: this ensures the existence of the central matrix. The actual values of the coefficients are obtained by partial derivatives. \square

Definition 8.1.4. Matrix $\boxed{\Delta} \simeq (X_2 \wedge_6 X_3)$ is anti-symmetric, and thus depends on 6 parameters. We call it the punctual matrix. Two concurrent matrix notations are used in the litterature:

$$\boxed{\Delta} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & D_{1,2} & -D_{1,3} & D_{1,4} \\ -D_{1,2} & 0 & D_{2,3} & D_{2,4} \\ +D_{1,3} & -D_{2,3} & 0 & D_{3,4} \\ -D_{1,4} & -D_{2,4} & -D_{3,4} & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} 0 & B_z & -B_y & E_x \\ -B_z & 0 & B_x & E_y \\ B_y & -B_x & 0 & E_z \\ -E_x & -E_y & -E_z & 0 \end{array} \right) = \left(\begin{array}{c|c} \mathcal{B} & \vec{E} \\ \hline -\vec{E} & 0 \end{array} \right)$$

Notation 8.1.5. Beside the **electromagnetic notation** given above, there is another representation, called the Plucker column representation. We have:

$$col(\boxed{\Delta}) = \begin{pmatrix} D_{2,3} \\ D_{1,3} \\ D_{1,2} \\ D_{1,4} \\ D_{2,4} \\ D_{3,4} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} B_x \\ B_y \\ B_z \\ E_x \\ E_y \\ E_z \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \overleftarrow{B} \\ \vec{E} \end{pmatrix} \quad (8.1)$$

Remark 8.1.6. Caveat: (1) D_{12} is B_z , not B_x ; (2) a minus sign is used at place $[1, 3]$ (3) \mathcal{B} is the antisymmetric matrix such that $\mathcal{B} \cdot \vec{X} = \vec{X} \times \vec{B} = (X_x : X_y : X_z) \wedge (B_x : B_y : B_z) \dots$ mind the order ! (4) \mathcal{E} is defined by $\mathcal{E} \cdot \vec{Y} = \vec{Y} \times \vec{E}$.

Remark 8.1.7. When $X_2 \neq X_3$, the points collinear with X_2, X_3 are the elements of $\ker \boxed{\Delta}$. Moreover, the characteristic polynomial is :

$$\chi_{\Delta}(\lambda) = \lambda^4 + \lambda^2 \sum_6 D_{jk}^2 + \left(\sum_3 D_{1,j} D_{k,l} \right)^2$$

so that $\sum_3 D_{1,j} D_{k,l} = E_x B_x + E_y B_y + E_z B_z$ is null.

Proposition 8.1.8. When $X \notin \Delta$, the row characterizing the plane containing both point X and line Δ is obtained as $\Pi = {}^t M \cdot \boxed{\Delta}$.

Proposition 8.1.9. Beside the punctual matrix, let us define the planar matrix $\boxed{\Delta^*}$ so that the column characterizing the point common to plane \mathfrak{P} and line Δ is given by $X = \boxed{\Delta^*} \cdot {}^t \mathfrak{P}$ (obviously, $\Delta \not\subset \mathfrak{P}$ is assumed). Then, using notations of (8.1), we have:

$$\boxed{\Delta_0^*} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & D_{3,4} & -D_{2,4} & D_{2,3} \\ -D_{3,4} & 0 & D_{1,4} & D_{1,3} \\ D_{2,4} & -D_{1,4} & 0 & D_{1,2} \\ -D_{2,3} & -D_{1,3} & -D_{1,2} & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} 0 & E_z & -E_y & B_x \\ -E_z & 0 & E_x & B_y \\ E_y & -E_x & 0 & B_z \\ -B_x & -B_y & -B_z & 0 \end{array} \right) = \left(\begin{array}{c|c} \mathcal{E} & \vec{B} \\ \hline -\vec{B} & 0 \end{array} \right)$$

$$\text{col}(\boxed{\Delta^*}) = \begin{pmatrix} D_{1,4} \\ D_{2,4} \\ D_{3,4} \\ D_{2,3} \\ D_{1,3} \\ D_{1,2} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} E_x \\ E_y \\ E_z \\ B_x \\ B_y \\ B_z \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \vec{E} \\ \vec{B} \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. This result is obtained by solving $\mathfrak{P} \cdot X = 0$, $\boxed{\Delta} \cdot X = \vec{0}$ and then generically expressing X as $\boxed{\Delta^*} \cdot {}^t \mathfrak{P}$. \square

Proposition 8.1.10. Given two (different) planes $\mathfrak{P}_1, \mathfrak{P}_2$, the punctual matrix $\boxed{\Delta}$ of their diedral line can be obtained directly as:

$$\boxed{\Delta} \simeq {}^t \mathfrak{P}_1 \cdot \mathfrak{P}_2 - {}^t \mathfrak{P}_2 \cdot \mathfrak{P}_1$$

Given two (different) points P_1, P_2 , the planar matrix $\boxed{\Delta^*}$ of line $P_1 P_2$ can be obtained directly as:

$$\boxed{\Delta^*} \simeq P_1 \cdot {}^t P_2 - P_2 \cdot {}^t P_1$$

Remember that $\boxed{\Delta}$ describes a punctual line, while $\boxed{\Delta^*}$ describes a planar line.

Proof. These objects are clearly projective objects and antisymmetric matrices of rank 2. The first one satisfies $\boxed{\Delta} \cdot X = 0 : 0 : 0 : 0$ as soon as $\Pi_1 \cdot X = \Pi_2 \cdot X = 0$. The second one satisfies $Y \cdot \boxed{\Delta^*} = [0, 0, 0, 0]$ as soon as $Y \cdot P_1 = Y \cdot P_2 = 0$. \square

Proposition 8.1.11. The so-called *Klein quadratic form* defined by

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Klein}(\boxed{\Delta_1}, \boxed{\Delta_2}) &= \text{trace}(\boxed{\Delta_1} \cdot \boxed{\Delta_2}) \\ &= D_{1,2} E_{3,4} + D_{1,3} E_{2,4} + D_{2,3} E_{1,4} + D_{1,4} E_{2,3} + D_{2,4} E_{1,3} + D_{3,4} E_{1,2} \\ &= {}^t \text{col}(\boxed{\Delta_1}) \cdot \text{col}(\boxed{\Delta_2}) = \vec{C} \cdot \vec{E} + \vec{B} \cdot \vec{F} \end{aligned}$$

is indeed a quadratic form. Then $\text{Klein}(\boxed{\Delta_{23}}, \boxed{\Delta_{14}})$ is exactly equal to $\det(X_1 X_2 X_3 X_4)$ when $\boxed{\Delta_{14}} = (X_1 \wedge_6 X_4)$ and $\boxed{\Delta_{23}} = (M_2 \wedge_6 M_3)$. And therefore, $\text{Klein}(\boxed{\Delta_1},) = 0$ is the condition for the two lines to be coplanar (and therefore incident to each other).

Maple 8.1.12. In order to obtain independent points on a line Δ , take $\boxed{\Delta^*}$ and call `map(reduce, ColumnSpace(%))`. This gives a list of two columns.

Proposition 8.1.13. Using the electromagnetic notation, we have the following formulas:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{line through two points } (X \wedge_6 Y) &= \begin{pmatrix} \overleftarrow{B} \\ \overrightarrow{E} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} y\overrightarrow{X} - x\overrightarrow{Y} \\ \overrightarrow{X} \times \overrightarrow{Y} \end{pmatrix} \\ \text{line by a point } X \text{ and a direction } \overrightarrow{W} & (X \wedge_6 (\overrightarrow{W} : 0)) = \begin{pmatrix} x\overrightarrow{W} \\ \overrightarrow{W} \times \overrightarrow{X} \end{pmatrix} \\ \text{plane through a line and a point } {}^tX \cdot \boxed{\Delta} &= [x\overrightarrow{E} + \overrightarrow{X} \times \overleftarrow{B}; \overrightarrow{E} \cdot \overrightarrow{V}] \\ \text{incident punctual lines } \begin{pmatrix} \overleftarrow{B} \\ \overrightarrow{E} \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \overleftarrow{C} \\ \overrightarrow{F} \end{pmatrix} & \begin{pmatrix} \overrightarrow{E} \times \overrightarrow{F} \\ \overleftarrow{B} \cdot \overrightarrow{F} \end{pmatrix} = X \dots \text{ or vanishes} \\ \text{assuming } \overleftarrow{C} \cdot \overrightarrow{E} + \overleftarrow{B} \cdot \overrightarrow{F} = 0 & [\overleftarrow{B} \times \overleftarrow{C}; \overleftarrow{B} \cdot \overrightarrow{F}] = \mathfrak{P} \dots \text{ or vanishes} \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Direct examination. In the last two lines, one can check that $\mathfrak{P} \cdot X = 0$. Caveat: in some special cases, X or \mathfrak{P} can vanish. \square

Exercise 8.1.14. Compute by your-self, and check the following assertions. Four points P_1, P_2, P_3, P_4 and a collineation \mathcal{A} are given. Consider them as written, i.e. not to a proportionality factor.

$$\boxed{P} = \begin{bmatrix} 53 & -58 & 0 & 76 \\ -97 & -9 & -16 & 40 \\ -74 & 32 & -43 & 45 \\ 79 & -34 & 58 & 39 \end{bmatrix}; \det \boxed{P} = 24803093; \boxed{\mathcal{A}} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ -1 & -1 & -1 & 0 \\ -1 & 1 & -1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}; \det \boxed{\mathcal{A}} = 4$$

Let Q_1, Q_2, Q_3, Q_4 be the images of the P_j by the collineation. We have:

$$\boxed{\mathcal{A}^{-1}} = \frac{1}{4} \begin{bmatrix} +2 & -1 & 0 & 1 \\ -2 & -1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -2 & 0 & -2 \\ -4 & +2 & -4 & 2 \end{bmatrix}; \boxed{Q} \doteq \boxed{\mathcal{A}} \boxed{P} = \begin{bmatrix} 150 & -49 & 16 & 36 \\ 118 & 35 & 59 & -161 \\ -155 & 51 & -31 & -120 \\ 30 & -99 & 27 & 71 \end{bmatrix}; \det \boxed{Q} = 99212372$$

Using the (\wedge_6) operator, we compute line $P_{23} = (P_2 \wedge_6 P_3)$ and $Q_{23} = (Q_2 \wedge_6 Q_3)$:

$$P_{23} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 394 & 1066 & 899 \\ -394 & 0 & -3364 & -2494 \\ -1066 & 3364 & 0 & 928 \\ -899 & 2494 & -928 & 0 \end{bmatrix}; Q_{23} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -1692 & -6786 & -4094 \\ 1692 & 0 & 261 & -703 \\ 6786 & -261 & 0 & -3451 \\ 4094 & 703 & 3451 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

And also the planes $P_{123} = \bigwedge_3(P_1, P_2, P_3)$ and Q_{123} :

$$P_{123} = [46081, -31028, 309494, 220893]; Q_{123} = [-729354, -192255, -883572, -162149]$$

Proposition 8.1.15. Action of a collineation. We have the following properties:

1. ${}^tP_1 \cdot P_{23} \cdot P_4 = P_{123} \cdot P_4 = \det \boxed{P}$, ${}^tQ_1 \cdot Q_{23} \cdot Q_4 = Q_{123} \cdot Q_4 = \det Q = \det \boxed{P} \det \boxed{\mathcal{A}}$
2. $Q_{23} = \det \boxed{\mathcal{A}} \boxed{{}^t\mathcal{A}^{-1}} \cdot P_{23} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{A}^{-1}}$
3. $Q_{123} = \det \boxed{\mathcal{A}} P_{123} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{A}^{-1}}$

$$4. P_{123} \wedge P_{234} = \det P \text{ dual}(P_{23}) ; {}^t P_{123} \cdot P_{234} - {}^t P_{234} \cdot P_{123} = \det P \cdot P_{23}$$

5. The same $\text{dual}(\vec{B}, \overleftarrow{E}) = \epsilon(\overleftarrow{E}, \vec{B})$ is used for P and Q .

Exercise 8.1.16. Loosely speaking and using Cartesian coordinates: a line goes through $(-1, 1, 5)$ and is incident with line $D_1 : \{x + y = 2, x - y = 2\}$ together with line $D_2 : (1, 3, 1) + \lambda(2, -2, 1)$. We have two planes $\mathfrak{P}_{11} \simeq [1, 1, 0, -2]$, $\mathfrak{P}_{12} \simeq [1, -1, 0, -2]$ and three points $P_0 \simeq -1 : 1 : 5 : 1$, $P_{21} \simeq 1 : 3 : 1 : 1$, $P_{22} \simeq 2 : -2 : 1 : 0$. Thus $D_1 = \text{dual}(\mathfrak{P}_{11} \wedge_6 \mathfrak{P}_{12})$, $D_2 = (P_{21} \wedge_6 P_{22})$, and we have to solve the set of equations :

$$\Delta \cdot P_0 = 0 : 0 : 0 : 0, \phi(\Delta, D_1) = \phi(\Delta, D_2) = 0$$

After expansion, we obtain:

$$\begin{cases} -6B_y - 3E_z ; -B_y - B_x + E_z ; B_z + 5B_x + E_y ; B_z - 5B_y + E_x ; \\ E_x - E_y - 5E_z ; -8B_z + B_y + 5B_x - 2E_x + 2E_y - E_z \end{cases}$$

so that $\overleftarrow{B}, \vec{E} = -3 : 1 : 1 : 4 : 14 : -2$. The incidence points are: $P_4 \simeq 2 : 0 : 4 : 1$ (who clearly belongs to both planes) and $P_5 \simeq 5 : -1 : 3 : 1$ (obtained with $\lambda = 2$). Finally, P_0, P_4, P_5 are aligned, since P_4 is the middle of the other two.

One can also obtain the rows that describes the plane through P_0, D_1 , the plane through P_0, D_2 and obtain Δ using Proposition 8.1.10.

8.2 Euclidian cartesian metric

Notation 8.2.1. In the "usual" cartesian space, points are noted $\vec{M} : m \doteq M_x : M_y : M_z : m$, and the metric is described by:

$$\mathcal{L}_{4c} \simeq [0, 0, 0, 1] ; \boxed{\text{Pyth}_{4c}} = \boxed{\mathcal{M}_{4c}} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

The c in the $4c$ index is "cartesian", while indices 4 are spared for a later use (tetrahedron barycentric space).

Proposition 8.2.2. Assume that \mathfrak{P} is not the plane at infinity. Then the orthogonal projection of point $P \simeq X : Y : Z : T$ on $\mathfrak{P} \simeq [E, F, G, H]$ is given by:

$$\begin{aligned} pr(P, \mathfrak{P}) &= (E^2 + F^2 + G^2) \begin{bmatrix} X \\ Y \\ Z \\ T \end{bmatrix} - (EX + FY + GZ + HT) \begin{bmatrix} E \\ F \\ G \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \\ &= (\mathfrak{P} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_{4c}} \cdot {}^t \mathfrak{P})(P) - (\mathfrak{P} \cdot P) (\boxed{\mathcal{M}_{4c}} \cdot {}^t \mathfrak{P}) \end{aligned}$$

and therefore

$$dist(P, \mathfrak{P}) = \frac{\mathfrak{P} \cdot P}{\mathcal{L}_b \cdot P} \frac{1}{\sqrt{(\mathfrak{P} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_4} \cdot {}^t \mathfrak{P})}}$$

Proof. Express that the generic $M \in \mathfrak{P}$ is generated by the three points $[H : 0 : 0 : -E], [0 : H : 0 : -F], [0 : 0 : H : -G]$. Then compute $|PM|^2$, minimize and substitute. \square

Proposition 8.2.3. The orthogonal projection of point $P \simeq X : Y : Z : T$ on $\Delta = [\vec{B}, \vec{E}]$ is given by:

$$pr(P, \Delta) \stackrel{T}{=} \begin{pmatrix} B_z E_y - B_y E_z \\ B_x E_z - B_z E_x \\ B_y E_x - B_x E_y \\ B_x^2 + B_y^2 + B_z^2 \end{pmatrix} + (X B_x + Y B_y + Z B_z) \begin{pmatrix} B_x \\ B_y \\ B_z \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. Minimize

$$\left| t \operatorname{nor} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -E_z \\ +E_y \\ -B_x \end{pmatrix} + (1-t) \operatorname{nor} \begin{pmatrix} +E_z \\ 0 \\ -E_x \\ -B_y \end{pmatrix} - \operatorname{nor} \begin{pmatrix} X \\ Y \\ Z \\ T \end{pmatrix} \right|^2 \quad \square$$

Proposition 8.2.4. *It exists a unique point situated at equal distance from four given points when (1) they are all at finite distance (2) they are not coplanar.*

Proof. Consider the four $U_j \simeq x_j : y_j : z_j : t_j$. The computation is straightforward, and the denominator of R^2 is $(\prod t_j)^2 \times \det(U_j)^2$. Nevertheless, the length of the formal formula is roughly equal to 470.000 ! \square

8.3 Rotations in the 3D Euclidean space

In this section, the usual Cartesian coordinates $x : y : z$ are used to describe the usual 3D Euclidean space, \mathcal{E}_3 using the usual metric $|v| = \sqrt{x^2 + y^2 + z^2}$.

Proposition 8.3.1. *In the Euclidean space \mathcal{E}_3 , the orthogonal projector onto the line directed by the (not zero) vector $V \doteq {}^t[f, g, h]$ is given by*

$$\boxed{\pi^{\parallel}} = \frac{1}{f^2 + g^2 + h^2} V \cdot {}^tV$$

On the contrary, the matrix

$$\boxed{\omega} \doteq \frac{1}{\sqrt{f^2 + g^2 + h^2}} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & h & -g \\ -h & 0 & f \\ g & -f & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

describes "project onto V^\perp and quarter-turn", while the projector itself is given by $\pi^\perp = -\omega^2$. Thus the matrix of the **3D-rotation** of angle τ around axis V is given by:

$$\boxed{\rho} = \boxed{\text{Id}} + \sin \tau \boxed{\omega} + (1 - \cos \tau) \boxed{\omega}^2 \quad (8.2)$$

Proof. One can see that $\omega^2 + \omega^4 = 0$. Thus $-\omega^2$ is a projector. And the rest follows. One can check that $\chi_\omega = X(X^2 + 1)$, while $\chi_\rho = (X - 1)(X^2 - 2X \cos \tau + 1)$. \square

8.4 Euclidian metric in the tetrahedron space

Proposition 8.4.1. *The matrix describing the metric in the **tetrahedron** $A_0B_0C_0D_0$ space is*

$$\boxed{\text{Pyth}_4} = \frac{-1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & c^2 & b^2 & A^2 \\ c^2 & 0 & a^2 & B^2 \\ b^2 & a^2 & 0 & C^2 \\ A^2 & B^2 & C^2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

where $a \doteq B_0C_0$ and $A = A_0D_0$ (in this context, vertices are noted with index 0 while the sidelength are noted with bare letters). And the matrix giving the direction orthogonal to a given plane is symmetric matrix whose fourth column is:

$$\operatorname{col}(\boxed{\mathcal{M}_4}, 4) \doteq \delta_D = \begin{bmatrix} 2A^2a^2 + a^4 - (B^2 + C^2 + b^2 + c^2)a^2 - (b^2 - c^2)(B^2 - C^2) \\ 2B^2b^2 + b^4 - (C^2 + A^2 + a^2 + c^2)b^2 - (c^2 - a^2)(C^2 - A^2) \\ 2C^2c^2 + c^4 - (A^2 + B^2 + a^2 + b^2)c^2 - (a^2 - b^2)(A^2 - B^2) \\ (b + a + c)(a + b - c)(a + c - b)(b + c - a) \end{bmatrix} \quad (8.3)$$

Proposition 8.4.2. *The squared volume of the reference tetrahedron is*

$$\begin{aligned} V^2 &= \frac{1}{144} \left(-a^2 b^2 c^2 + \sum_3 a^2 [b^2 (A^2 + B^2) - A^2 a^2 + (A^2 - B^2) (C^2 - A^2)] \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{36} \mathcal{L}_b \cdot \text{adjoint} \left(\boxed{\text{Pyth}_4} \right) \cdot {}^t \mathcal{L}_b = \frac{1}{2304} |\delta_D|^2 \div S_D^2 \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Cf. the Heron's formula: $\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \text{adjoint} \left(\boxed{\text{Pyth}_b} \right) \cdot {}^t \mathcal{L}_b = 4S^2$. \square

Proposition 8.4.3. *Let medAB be the plane perpendicular to line AB at $(A+B)/2$, i.e. the perpendicular bissector of the edge. Let cutAB be parallel to medAB through $(C+D)/2$. Then the six med planes intersect at a point Ω called the circumcenter of the tetrahedron. Its barycentrics wrt ABCD are:*

$$\Omega \underset{b}{\simeq} \begin{bmatrix} a^2 A^2 (B^2 + C^2 - a^2) + b^2 B^2 (a^2 + C^2 - B^2) + c^2 C^2 (a^2 + B^2 - C^2) - 2 a^2 B^2 C^2 \\ a^2 A^2 (C^2 + b^2 - A^2) + b^2 B^2 (A^2 + C^2 - b^2) + c^2 C^2 (A^2 + b^2 - C^2) - 2 A^2 b^2 C^2 \\ a^2 A^2 (B^2 + c^2 - A^2) + b^2 B^2 (A^2 + c^2 - B^2) + c^2 C^2 (A^2 + B^2 - c^2) - 2 A^2 B^2 c^2 \\ a^2 A^2 (b^2 + c^2 - a^2) + b^2 B^2 (a^2 - b^2 + c^2) + c^2 C^2 (a^2 + b^2 - c^2) - 2 a^2 b^2 c^2 \end{bmatrix}$$

The circumscribed sphere is described by the $\boxed{\text{Pyth}_4}$ quadratic form while its radius R is given by:

$$R^2 = (Aa + Bb + Cc) (Bb + Cc - Aa) (Cc + Aa - Bb) (Aa + Bb - Cc) \div (24V)^2$$

Moreover, the six cut planes intersect at a point M called the Monge point of the tetrahedron. And we have $2(\Omega + M) = A + B + C + D$.

Proof. 1. Obtain medAB as the X -gradient of $XA^2 - XB^2$, etc;
2. Take the wedge of the three planes medAB, medBC, medCD. The result is symmetric, proving the existence of Ω . And we have $2\mathcal{L}_4 \cdot \Omega = (24V)^2$
3. Compute R from the Pythagoras formula (the obtained value is symmetric, as it should be).
4. Compute cutAB, etc by solving $(\text{medAB} + x\mathcal{L}_4) \cdot (C + D) = 0$, etc and obtain M using \bigwedge_3 . \square

Proposition 8.4.4. *The distance between a point P and a plane \mathfrak{P} is given by:*

$$\text{dist}(P, \mathfrak{P}) = \frac{\mathfrak{P} \cdot P}{\mathcal{L}_b \cdot P} \frac{12V}{\sqrt{(\mathfrak{P} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_4} \cdot {}^t \mathfrak{P})}}$$

Proof. This formula is homogeneous in P , in \mathfrak{P} and in a, b, c, A, B, C . Moreover, it obeys to the general model $\text{dist}(x, \ker \phi) = \phi(x) / \|\phi\|$. \square

Proposition 8.4.5. *There are 8 points that are at the same distance from the faces of the standard tetrahedron. They are the centers of eight spheres tangents to theses faces. The coordinates of the centers and the radiuses are:*

$$I_j \simeq \pm S_A : \pm S_B : \pm S_C : \pm S_D ; \quad \frac{1}{\rho_j} = \frac{1}{h_A} + \frac{1}{h_B} + \frac{1}{h_C} + \frac{1}{h_0}$$

where $h_j = 3V/S_j$ are the altitudes of the tetrahedron.

Proof. The distances from point $x : y : z : t$ to the four faces of the reference tetrahedron are:

$$\left[\frac{x}{S_A}, \frac{y}{S_B}, \frac{z}{S_C}, \frac{t}{S_0} \right] \times \frac{3V}{x + y + z + t}$$

\square

Proposition 8.4.6. *The distance d_j from the in/excenter I_j to the circumcenter is given by:*

$$d_j^2 - R^2 = - \left(\sum_6 |AB| S_C S_D \right) \div \left(\sum_4 S_j \right)^2$$

Proof. Compute ${}^t \text{nor}(\Omega) \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_4} \cdot \text{nor}(\Omega)$ and obtain $-R^2$, proving that $\boxed{\text{Pyth}_4}$ gives the power of a point wrt the sphere (and not some multiple). And then use the barycentrics of I_j . Thus \sum_6 sums the product of each sidelength by the areas of the two adjacent faces (taken with the relevant sign). \square

Example 8.4.7. The tetrahedron used in [Hecquet \(1980\)](#) is characterized by

$$a^2 = 19, b^2 = 13, c^2 = 7, A^2 = 21, B^2 = 28, C^2 = 37$$

It's existence granted by the reality of the areas:

$$\frac{S_A}{26} = \frac{S_B}{19} = \frac{S_C}{14} = \frac{S_D}{11} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}$$

One has $V^2 = 105/2$, $R^2 = 973/90$, $r^2 = 18/35$, $d^2 = 2851/630$.

8.5 HH: hyperbolic hyperboloids

Remark 8.5.1. Caveat 1: the \mathfrak{H} used here means "hyperbolic hyperboiloid" and therefore is not the \mathfrak{H} used at Section 27.9, in the Sister Marie Cordia Karl section.

Caveat 2: HH are also called one-sheet hyperboloids.

Definition 8.5.2. Let L_1, L_2, L_3 be three lines in the 3D space, no two of them being incident. For each point M_3 on L_3 , it exists a line Δ going through M_3 and incident to L_1 and L_2 . The union of these lines Δ is called the **hyperbolic hyperboloid** defined by the three L_j .

Proposition 8.5.3. *It exist a 4×4 matrix $\boxed{\mathfrak{H}}$ such that ${}^t \boxed{\Delta^*} \cdot \boxed{\mathfrak{H}} \cdot \boxed{\Delta^*} = \boxed{0_4}$ is verified by the (planar) matrix of Δ when M_3 moves on L_3 . Moreover, any point M on such a Δ verifies: ${}^t M \cdot \boxed{\mathfrak{H}} \cdot M = 0$.*

Proof. Use the four points $A_0, B_0 \in L_1$ and $C_0, D_0 \in L_2$ as barycentric basis, and note L_3 as $\left(\vec{B}, \vec{E}\right)$. Let Δ be a line incident to L_1 at $M_1 \doteq t A_0 + (1-t) B_0$ and to L_2 at $M_2 \doteq s C_0 + (1-s) D_0$. This gives:

$$\Delta \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & (1-s)(1-t) & s(t-1) \\ 0 & 0 & (s-1)t & st \\ (s-1)(1-t) & (1-s)t & 0 & 0 \\ s(1-t) & -st & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

and then write that Δ and L_3 are incident. This leads to an homomorphic relation between s and t , so that:

$$M \doteq k M_1 + (1-k) M_2 \simeq \begin{pmatrix} ((E_x - E_y + B_x + B_y)kt + (E_y - B_x)k)t \\ ((E_x - E_y + B_x + B_y)kt + (E_y - B_x)k)(1-t) \\ ((E_x - E_y)t + E_y)(1-k) \\ ((B_x + B_y)t - B_x)(1-k) \end{pmatrix}$$

And now, eliminate the parameters in ${}^t M \cdot \boxed{\mathfrak{H}} \cdot M = 0$. This leads to

$$\boxed{\mathfrak{H}_0} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & -B_y & E_x \\ 0 & 0 & B_x & E_y \\ -B_y & B_x & 0 & 0 \\ E_x & E_y & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{where} \quad \begin{pmatrix} \mathcal{L}_1 \\ \mathcal{L}_2 \\ \mathcal{L}_3 \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ B_x & B_y & B_z & E_x & E_y & E_z \end{bmatrix} \quad \square$$

Proposition 8.5.4. *When three (distinct) points of a line Δ belong to \mathfrak{H} , then all points of Δ belong to \mathfrak{H} . Moreover, we have ${}^t \boxed{\Delta^*} \cdot \boxed{\mathfrak{H}} \cdot \boxed{\Delta^*} = \boxed{0_4}$.*

Proof. Use \mathfrak{H}_0 and consider $M \simeq \vec{V} : v$; $N \simeq \vec{W} : w$. Then $p(\mu) \doteq {}^t(M + \mu B) \cdot \boxed{\mathfrak{H}_0} \cdot (M + \mu B)$ is a second degree polynomial in μ . When its three coefficients vanish, then matrix ${}^t\boxed{\Delta^*} \cdot \boxed{\mathfrak{H}} \cdot \boxed{\Delta^*}$ vanishes either. \square

Proposition 8.5.5. *By any point M of \mathfrak{H} , two straight lines can be drawn which belong to \mathfrak{H} . More precisely, when $M \simeq \vec{U} : u$ and K is defined by $K U_z E_z + E_x U_x + E_y U_y = 0$, then lines*

$$\Delta_M \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & u U_y & -U_z U_y \\ 0 & 0 & -u U_x & U_x U_z \\ -u U_y & u U_x & 0 & 0 \\ U_z U_y & -U_x U_z & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}; \delta_K \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \frac{B_z}{K} & -B_y & E_x \\ -\frac{B_z}{K} & 0 & B_x & E_y \\ B_y & -B_x & 0 & K E_z \\ -E_x & -E_y & -K E_z & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

are going through M and are included in \mathfrak{H}_0 . All of the Δ_M are incident with all of the δ_K , while $\mathcal{L}_1, \mathcal{L}_2, \mathcal{L}_3$ are nothing else than $\delta(K = \infty), \delta(K = 0), \delta(K = 1)$.

Proof. Use \mathfrak{H}_0 , consider both points $M \simeq \vec{U} : u$; $N \simeq \vec{V} : v$ and write that the $p(\mu)$ introduced just above is identically nul. Solving in u, v, V_x gives the two families of solutions. It only remains to use all of the compatibility equations to obtain good looking formulas. \square

Remark 8.5.6. When dealing with a circumscribed QH, i.e. when $\boxed{\mathfrak{H}} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & H_z & H_y & K_x \\ H_z & 0 & H_x & K_y \\ H_y & H_x & 0 & K_z \\ K_x & K_y & K_z & 0 \end{bmatrix}$,

both series of lines Δ, δ are involving the same radical W , where

$$W^2 = H_x^2 K_x^2 + K_y^2 H_y^2 + H_z^2 K_z^2 - 2 H_x K_x H_y K_y - 2 K_y H_y H_z K_z - 2 H_z K_z H_x K_x$$

Proposition 8.5.7. *The four altitudes of a tetrahedron $ABCD$ belong to a same HH. When using barycentrics wrt $ABCD$, we have*

$$\boxed{\mathfrak{H}} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & u(a, b, c, A, B, C) & u(c, a, b, C, A, B) & u(b, C, A, B, c, a) \\ * & 0 & u(b, c, a, B, C, A) & u(c, A, B, C, a, b) \\ * & * & 0 & u(a, B, C, A, b, c) \\ * & * & * & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

where $u(a, b, c, A, B, C) =$

$$(B^2 - A^2 + b^2 - a^2)((A^2 - B^2)(a^2 - b^2) + (a^2 + b^2 + A^2 + B^2 - 2C^2)c^2 - c^4)$$

$$\text{so that : } \det \boxed{\mathfrak{H}} = 82944 V^2 \times \prod_3 (B^2 - C^2 + b^2 - c^2)^2$$

Proof. Read the direction δ_D of the fourth altitude Δ_D at (8.3). Compute $\Delta_D \simeq (D \wedge_6 \delta_D)$, etc.

And check that the four sets of equations: ${}^t\boxed{\Delta_D^*} \cdot \boxed{\mathfrak{H}} \cdot \boxed{\Delta_D^*} = \boxed{0_4}$, etc are compatible. \square

Proposition 8.5.8. *Orthocentric tetrahedron. When $A^2 + a^2 = B^2 + b^2$, then $A_0 B_0 \perp C_0 D_0$ and conversely. When two sets of opposite edges are orthogonal, so is the third set and the HH is totally degenerate: the four altitudes are concurrent, defining an orthocenter H . One has:*

$$H \simeq \begin{pmatrix} S_b S_c (A^2 - S_a) \\ S_c S_a (A^2 - S_a) \\ S_a S_b (A^2 - S_a) \\ S_a S_b S_c \end{pmatrix}; V_H^2 = \frac{1}{9} S^2 A^2 - \frac{1}{36} a^2 S_a^2$$

Proof. Direct computation. \square

Exercise 8.5.9. What happens when there is only one pair of orthogonal opposite edges ?

8.6 HH: some examples

Proposition 8.6.1. *Consider a tetrahedron A, B, C, D . Affect a coefficient to each edge, e.g. $BC = a$, etc and $AD = d$, etc. On each face, take the barycenter of the three vertices using the weight of the opposite side, and obtain*

$$\begin{aligned} D^+ &= (a A + b B + c C) / (a + b + c) \\ A^+ &= (f B + e C + a D) / (f + e + a) \\ B^+ &= (f A + d C + b D) / (f + d + b) \\ C^+ &= (e A + d B + c D) / (e + d + c) \end{aligned}$$

Then lines AA^+ , BB^+ , CC^+ , DD^+ are imbedded in a same HH.

Proof. A simple computation gives:

$$\boxed{\mathfrak{H}} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & (ad - be)c & (cf - ad)b & (be - cf)d \\ (ad - be)c & 0 & (be - cf)a & (cf - ad)e \\ (cf - ad)b & (be - cf)a & 0 & (ad - be)f \\ (be - cf)d & (cf - ad)e & (ad - be)f & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

together with $W = (ad - be)(be - cf)(cf - ad)$. □

Corollary 8.6.2. *If we take $a = |BC|$ and so on, we obtain a property relative to the four lines joining a vertex to the incenter of the opposite face in a tetrahedron. And the same occurs for the Lemoine centers. And for their isotomic images $X(75)$ and $X(76)$. When all coefficients are equal, the four lines are simply concurrent at the gravity center.*

Exercise 8.6.3. Consider the four points:

$$A, B, C, D \simeq \begin{pmatrix} -13 \\ -43 \\ 43 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} -21 \\ -11 \\ 41 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} -13 \\ 21 \\ -91 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 22 \\ 53 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

and compute the orthocenters, by minimizing $\delta^2(A, xB + yC + zD)$ or otherwise. Consider the lines AH_a , etc. Show they aren't independent. Compute the QH containing these four lines. One obtains

$$\boxed{\mathfrak{H}} = \begin{bmatrix} -6048 & 40004 & -96004 & 3786528 \\ 40004 & 94944 & 64701 & -288685 \\ -96004 & 64701 & -88896 & -4296565 \\ 3786528 & -288685 & -4296565 & 520174122 \end{bmatrix}$$

Exercise 8.6.4. (Follow-up). Take two points P, Q on AH_a and two points R, S on BH_b . Consider the line Δ joining $eP + fQ$ with $gR + hS$. Solve in h so that Δ becomes incident to CH_c . And now check that the generic point of Δ belongs to the HH.

Chapter 9

Orthogonal stuff

In a previous life, this Section was intended as foreword to Chapter 7 (orthogonality). Now, this Section is rather the symmetric aisle of Chapter 3 (cevian stuff).

9.1 Pedal and Steiner triangles

Definition 9.1.1. The **pedal triangle** of point P is the triangle whose vertices are the orthogonal projections of P on the sides of the triangle.

Definition 9.1.2. The **Steiner triangle** of point P is the triangle whose vertices are the orthogonal reflections P_a, P_b, P_c of the point P on the sides of the triangle.

Remark 9.1.3. Crossover the Channel, the pedal triangle is called "triangle podaire", while "pédal triangle" is used to denote the Cevian triangle. *Plaisante vérité qu'une rivière borne* (Pascal, 1670, p. 46). More details about this Steiner triangle are given at Section 17.5.2. For the *anti-pedal* triangle, see Proposition 25.4.8.

Proposition 9.1.4. *The pedal and Steiner triangles of point P have the following barycentrics (each point is a column) :*

$$\text{pedal} \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix} \underset{b}{\simeq} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & S_c q + b^2 p & S_b r + c^2 p \\ S_c p + a^2 q & 0 & S_a r + c^2 q \\ S_b p + a^2 r & S_a q + b^2 r & 0 \end{bmatrix} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \frac{q S_c}{b^2} + p & \frac{r S_b}{c^2} + p \\ \frac{p S_c}{a^2} + q & 0 & \frac{r S_a}{c^2} + q \\ \frac{p S_b}{a^2} + r & \frac{q S_a}{b^2} + r & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (9.1)$$

$$\text{Steiner} \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix} \underset{b}{\simeq} \begin{bmatrix} -p & \frac{2q S_c}{b^2} + p & \frac{2r S_b}{c^2} + p \\ \frac{2p S_c}{a^2} + q & -q & \frac{2r S_a}{c^2} + q \\ \frac{2p S_b}{a^2} + r & \frac{2q S_a}{b^2} + r & -q \end{bmatrix} \quad (9.2)$$

Proof. As usual, $S_a = (b^2 + c^2 - a^2)/2$, etc, while (7.27) and (7.28) lead directly to the result. \square

9.1.1 More about the pedal triangle

Proposition 9.1.5. *Condition for an inscribed triangle $P_1 P_2 P_3$ to be the pedal triangle of some P is :*

$$\frac{q_1 - r_1}{q_1 + r_1} a^2 + \frac{r_2 - p_2}{p_2 + r_2} b^2 + \frac{p_3 - q_3}{p_3 + q_3} c^2 \quad (9.3)$$

In such a case, point P is the perspector between $P_1P_2P_3$ and triangle $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b}$ and is given by the following formula (or any of its rotated expression) :

$$\begin{bmatrix} b^2c^2p_2p_3 - (S_cr_2 - S_ap_2)(S_bq_3 - S_ap_3) \\ b^2c^2p_2q_3 + (S_bq_3 - S_ap_3)b^2r_2 \\ b^2c^2p_3r_2 + (S_cr_2 - S_ap_2)c^2q_3 \end{bmatrix}$$

Proof. P is on the line through P_1 and orthopoint of BC etc. The required condition is the determinant of these three lines. The various ways of writing P are the wedge product of two rows at a time. A more symmetric formula would be great... \square

Proposition 9.1.6. *There exists exactly one pedal triangle of a given shape. When the shape is given by the tangents $t_A \doteq \tan(\overrightarrow{APB_P}, \overrightarrow{APC_P})$, etc (bound by $t_A + t_B + t_C = t_{AT_BTC}$), the central point is given by*

$$P \simeq \begin{bmatrix} a^2t_Bt_C(S_at_A + 2S) \\ b^2t_Ct_A(S_bt_B + 2S) \\ c^2t_At_B(S_ct_C + 2S) \end{bmatrix}$$

Proof. Substitute 9.1 in the tan formula (7.22) and obtain three equations. And then eliminate. \square

Exercise 9.1.7. The area of the P -pedal triangle is $\frac{S}{4} \left(1 - \frac{|OP|^2}{R^2}\right)$. Spoiler: a proof is given at Proposition 27.8.14.

Exercise 9.1.8. From Proposition 9.1.6, there exists exactly one pedal triangle of each shape. What to say about the only pedal triangle who is skew similar to a given one ?

Construction 9.1.9. *Construct the ABC -pedal triangle similar to a given triangle $T_aT_bT_c$. Through point A , draw the parallel B_pC_p to T_bT_c , etc and obtain triangle $A_pB_pC_p$. Draw circles BCA_p , etc. Call M_q their common (Miquel) point. Then $\mathcal{E} \doteq \text{isogon}(M_q)$ is the center of the sought pedal triangle.*

9.1.2 The Steiner circle

Proposition 9.1.10. *The circumcenter of the Steiner triangle has the following center and radius:*

$$Q \simeq \begin{pmatrix} a^2qr \\ b^2rp \\ c^2pq \end{pmatrix} ; \rho = \frac{\prod \sqrt{b^2r^2 + 2qrS_a + c^2q^2}}{(a^2qr + b^2rp + c^2qb)(p + q + r)} \quad (9.4)$$

Proof. Determine Q using the perpendicular bisectors $|QM_a|^2 - |QM_b|^2 = 0$ and then compute $|QM_a|$. (Spoiler) Another method will be described at Section 13.3: compute $\mathcal{V}_b = \bigwedge_3 Ver(M_j)$, and then use (13.14) together with (13.15) \square

9.2 Isogonal conjugacy and Steiner triangle

Definition 9.2.1. The point appearing at Proposition 9.1.10 is called the **isogonal conjugate** of point P . The formula

$$Q \simeq P^* \doteq \text{isogon}(p : q : r) \doteq \frac{a^2}{p} : \frac{b^2}{q} : \frac{c^2}{r} \quad (9.5)$$

requires that P is not on a sideline.

Remark 9.2.2. The isogonal conjugate of a point P is often noted P^{-1} in ETC since its trilinears are $1/p : 1/q : 1/r$ when the trilinears of P are $p : q : r$. Using the pedal circle to define P^* comes from Yiu (2004, p. 4-5). It only remains to explain such a name by the following eponymous property !

Proposition 9.2.3. *The isogonal conjugate Q of the point P (not on a sideline) is characterized by the three relations:*

$$(AB, AP) + (AC, AQ) = 0, \text{ etc}$$

In other words, lines AP and AQ are equally inclined over lines AB, AC . This property is obviously symmetric between P, Q and both points are said to form a pair of isogonal conjugates.

Proof. One has $\tan(A, B, P) + \tan(A, C, Q) = 0$, etc. Mind the order ! When line AP cuts BC between B and C , then line AQ does the same. \square

Remark 9.2.4. See also Section 17.5.2

9.3 Cyclopedal conjugate

Definition 9.3.1. The pedal circle of a given point is the circle circumscribed to the pedal triangle of this point. (spoiler) It's representative is:

$$\mathcal{V}_P \simeq \begin{bmatrix} p(c^2q + S_a r)(b^2r + S_a q) \\ q(a^2r + S_b p)(c^2p + S_b r) \\ r(b^2p + S_c q)(a^2q + S_c p) \\ (a^2qr + b^2pr + c^2pq)(p + q + r) \end{bmatrix}$$

Proposition 9.3.2 (Matthieu). *When P and Q are isogonal conjugates, they share the same pedal circle. The center of this circle is the middle of P and Q (cf Figure 9.1)*

Proof. Straightforward computation (using \mathcal{V} or not !). \square

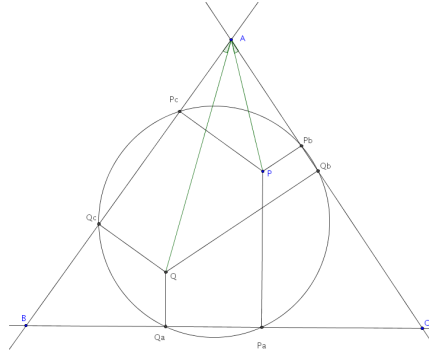


Figure 9.1: Cyclopedal conjugates are isogonal conjugates

Remark 9.3.3. The definition of "cyclopedal conjugacy" has been coined to enforce symmetry with the cyclocevian conjugacy, cf. Section 12.23. Some examples are :

point	code	bary	cycp	cyclopedal center
incenter	$X(1)$	a	$X(1)$	$X(1)$
centroid	$X(2)$	1	$X(6)$	$X(597)$
Lemoine	$X(6)$	a^2	$X(2)$	$X(597)$
circumcenter	$X(3)$	$a^2(-a^2 + b^2 + c^2)$	$X(4)$	$X(5)$
orthocenter	$X(4)$	$1/(-a^2 + b^2 + c^2)$	$X(3)$	$X(5)$

Proposition 9.3.4. (Spoiler). *The center K_P of the RH through A, B, C, H, P belongs to the pedal circle of P . As a result, K_P and K_Q are the common points of the (P, Q) pedal circle and the Euler circle.*

Proof. This can be checked by using:

$$K_P \simeq \begin{bmatrix} (r(p+q)b^2 - q(r+p)c^2)(S_bq - S_cr)p \\ (p(q+r)c^2 - r(p+q)a^2)(S_cr - S_ap)q \\ (q(r+p)a^2 - p(q+r)b^2)(S_ap - S_bq)r \end{bmatrix}$$

\square

9.4 Steiner line

Proposition 9.4.1 (Steiner line). *Let P be a point in the barycentric plane. When its Steiner triangle $A'B'C'$ is flat, the corresponding line is called the Steiner line of point P . This occurs when either:*

- (1) P is on the line at infinity. Then $A' = B' = C' = P$ and $\text{Steiner}(P) = \mathcal{L}_b$.
- (2) P is on the circumcircle. Then $Q = \text{isogon}(P) \in \mathcal{L}_b$ while $\text{Steiner}(P)$ goes through the orthocenter X_4 and has the following equation :

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Steiner}(P) &\simeq \text{isogon} \left(P *_b X_4 \right) \simeq \left(Q \div_b X_4 \right) \\ &\simeq [S_a(\tau - \sigma), S_b(\rho - \tau), S_c(\sigma - \rho)] \\ &\simeq \left[\frac{a^2 S_a}{p}, \frac{b^2 S_b}{q}, \frac{c^2 S_c}{r} \right] \end{aligned} \quad (9.6)$$

using the Steiner circle. . Say that $\rho = \infty$ at (9.4). □

using the Steiner line itself. Compute $\det \text{Steiner}$ from (9.2) and obtain :

$$(p + q + r)(a^2 qr + b^2 rp + c^2 pq) / R^2$$

The case $p + q + r = 0$ is the line at infinity and is not to be discarded, since the orthogonal projection of a point at infinity onto a line at finite distance is the point at infinity of this line. When $P \in \Gamma$, computing (9.6) is straightforward. □

Remark 9.4.2. The study of the properties of the so called Simson lines is delayed until Section 27.6. Indeed, their envelope is a third degree curve, and not a simple point as for the Steiner lines.

Proposition 9.4.3. *When U_1 and U_2 are on the circumcircle, then :*

$$\left(\overbrace{\text{Steiner}(U_1), \text{Steiner}(U_2)} \right) = -\frac{1}{2} \left(\overrightarrow{X_3 U_1}, \overrightarrow{X_3 U_2} \right)$$

where the "overbrace" denotes the oriented angle between two straight lines. Therefore, it exists a one-to-one correspondence between lines through X_4 and points U on the circumcircle. Moreover, Steiner lines relative to diametrically opposed points on the circumcircle are orthogonal to each other.

Proof. From elementary euclidian geometry... or using $\tan(2\vartheta) = 2 \tan \vartheta / (1 - \tan^2 \vartheta)$ and (7.22). □

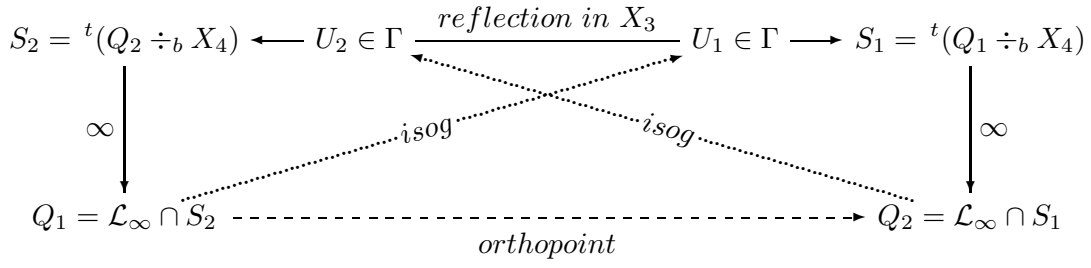
Corollary 9.4.4. *For each point on the circumcircle, the isogonal conjugate is the orthopoint of the Steiner line (cf. Figure 9.2, and also –far below– Figure 21.7).*

Proof. Let Q_1 be a point at infinity. Take the isogonal conjugate of Q_1 and obtain $U_1 \in \Gamma$. Take the Steiner line of U_1 and obtain S_1 . Take the point at infinity of S_1 and obtain Q_2 . Take the isogonal conjugate of Q_2 and obtain $U_2 \in \Gamma$. Take the Steiner line of U_2 and obtain S_2 . Now Q_1 is the point at infinity of S_2 while Q_1, Q_2 are orthopoints of each other and U_1, U_2 are antipodes of each other on the circumcircle. □

Proposition 9.4.5. *When Q_1, Q_2 are orthopoints, their barycentric product lies on the orthic axis, i.e. the tripolar of X_4 .*

Proof. Use parametrization (7.16), eliminate k, σ in $kX = Q_1 *_b Q_2$ and obtain an equation of first degree. □

Example 9.4.6. The following list gives the triples (I, J, K) where $X(I)$ and $X(J)$ are named orthopoints of each other and $X(K)$ is their (named) barycentric product :



$$\text{orthopoint}(Q) = \mathcal{L}_b \wedge {}^t \left(Q \div_b X_4 \right) \quad (9.7)$$

$$\text{Steiner}(P) = X_4 \wedge \text{orthopoint}(\text{isogon}(P)) \quad (9.8)$$

Figure 9.2: The orthopoint transform

30	523	1637
511	512	2491
513	517	3310
514	516	676
2574	2575	647
3307	3308	3310

9.5 Parallelogy

This section has moved to Section [25.3](#)

9.6 Orthology

This section has moved to Section [25.4](#)

9.7 Orthopole

The section has moved to "Pedal LFIT and orthopole" (Section [27.8](#)), while "orthojoin" has disappeared.

9.8 Spoiler: Moebius-Steiner-Cremona transform

This section should be skipped by a reader not familiar with Morley spaces (Chapter [14](#)) and Cremona transforms (Chapter [17](#)).

Definition 9.8.1. Let $\alpha : 1 : 1/\alpha$, etc be the reference triangle ABC , and $z : t : \zeta$ the Morley affix of a point P .

Proposition 9.8.2. Let $\boxed{\mathcal{T}}$ be the Steiner triangle of point P . The affine transform ψ characterized by $\boxed{ABC} \mapsto \boxed{\mathcal{T}}$ sends O on H and satisfies:

$$z(\psi(M)) = +s_1 - z_M - \frac{\zeta s_3}{t} \zeta_M$$

Proof. The Steiner triangle of P is described by:

$$\boxed{\mathcal{T}} \simeq \frac{1}{t} \begin{pmatrix} t(\beta + \gamma) - \beta\gamma\zeta & t(\gamma + \alpha) - \gamma\alpha\zeta & t(\alpha + \beta) - \alpha\beta\zeta \\ t & t & t \\ \frac{t(\beta + \gamma) - z}{\beta\gamma} & \frac{t(\gamma + \alpha) - z}{\gamma\alpha} & \frac{t(\alpha + \beta) - z}{\alpha\beta} \end{pmatrix}$$

and, therefore, the matrix of ψ is:

$$\boxed{\mathcal{T}} \cdot \boxed{Lu^{-1}} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} -1 & s_1 & -\frac{\zeta s_3}{t} \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -\frac{z}{s_3 t} & \frac{s_2}{s_3} & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

□

Corollary 9.8.3. *Applied to $Q \doteq \text{isogon}(P)$ and using Fact 17.5.7, this gives (17.8).*

Proposition 9.8.4. *Let us consider two points and their Steiner triangles. Define the collineation ϕ by $\mathcal{T}_1 \mapsto \mathcal{T}_2$; $\mathcal{L}_z \mapsto \mathcal{L}_z$. Its matrix is :*

$$\begin{aligned} \boxed{\phi} &\simeq \boxed{\psi_2} \cdot \boxed{\psi_1}^{-1} \simeq \boxed{\mathcal{T}_2} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{T}_1}^{-1} \\ &\simeq \begin{pmatrix} t_1 t_2 - \zeta_2 z_1 & \frac{(\zeta_2 t_1 - \zeta_1 t_2)(z_1 \sigma_1 - \sigma_2 t_1)}{t_1} & \sigma_3 (\zeta_2 t_1 - \zeta_1 t_2) \\ 0 & \frac{(t_1^2 - z_1 \zeta_1) t_2 / t_1}{t_1 \sigma_3} & 0 \\ \frac{1}{\sigma_3} (z_2 t_1 - z_1 t_2) & \frac{(z_2 t_1 - z_1 t_2)(\zeta_1 \sigma_2 - \sigma_1 t_1)}{t_1 \sigma_3} & t_1 t_2 - z_2 \zeta_1 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

its characteristic polynomial is

$$\chi(\mu) = (\mu - 1) \left(\mu^2 - \frac{t_1 (2 t_1 t_2 - \zeta_2 z_1 - z_2 \zeta_1)}{t_2 (t_1^2 - z_1 \zeta_1)} \mu + \frac{(t_2^2 - z_2 \zeta_2) t_1^2}{(t_1^2 - z_1 \zeta_1) t_2^2} \right)$$

and we have $\phi(H) = H$.

Remark 9.8.5. Considering some special cases:

1. For ϕ to be parallelogic, condition is $\phi_{11} + \phi_{33} = 0$, i.e: $z_2 \zeta_1 + \zeta_2 z_1 - 2 t_1 t_2 = 0$. Each point is on the circle-polar of the other.
2. For ϕ to be orthologic, condition is $\phi_{11} - \phi_{33} = 0$, i.e. $z_2 \zeta_1 - \zeta_2 z_1 = 0$. Both points are aligned with the circumcenter $X(3)$.
3. For ϕ to be an skew similarity, condition is $\phi_{11} = \phi_{33} = 0$. Both points are inverse in the circumcircle.
4. For triangles $\boxed{\mathcal{T}_1}, \boxed{\mathcal{T}_2}$ to be in perspective (homologic), condition is

$$\sigma_4 (z_2 t_1 - t_2 z_1) (\zeta_2 t_1 - \zeta_1 t_2) ((z_1 t_2 - t_1 z_2) \sigma_2 + (\zeta_1 z_2 - z_1 \zeta_2) \sigma_3 + (t_1 \zeta_2 - \zeta_1 t_2) \sigma_3 \sigma_1) = 0$$

In other words, either the points are equal in one of the spherical maps, or they are aligned with $X(4)$. In this case, the perspector is a point S on the circumcircle, and line $U_1 H U_2$ is nothing but the Steiner line of S .

Proof. Compute the perspector of $\mathcal{T}(M_1)$ and $\mathcal{T}(k M_1 + (1 - k) H)$. □

Proposition 9.8.6. *In the map $\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T}$, the homography μ defined by $A \mapsto A', B \mapsto B', C \mapsto C'$ is called the Moebius-Steiner transform related to U . This transform is involutive and we have:*

$$\mu(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T}) = \frac{t^2 \mathbf{Z} - (t^2 \sigma_1 - t \zeta \sigma_2 + \zeta^2 \sigma_3) \mathbf{T}}{\zeta t \mathbf{Z} - t^2 \mathbf{T}}$$

Image $\mu(U)$ is isogon(U), i.e. the other focus of the inscribed conic whose U is the first focus. Moreover, $\mu(\infty) = t/\zeta$, i.e. the symmetric of U wrt the circumcircle. Finally, A', B', C', H are concyclic when either U is on the circumcircle (the Steiner property) or U is on the orthoptic of the polar circle (centered at H).

Proof. Write the reality of the cross-ratio and obtain $(t^2 - z\zeta)(s_1 s_3 t\zeta + s_2 tz - s_3 z\zeta - s_3 t^2) = 0$. □

9.9 Orthocorrespondents

Definition 9.9.1. Suppose P is a point in the plane of triangle ABC . The perpendiculars through P to the lines AP, BP, CP meet the lines BC, CA, AB , respectively, in collinear points. Let L denote their line. The trilinear pole of L is P^\perp , the *orthocorrespondent* of P . This definition is introduced in [Gibert \(2003\)](#). If $P = p : q : r$ is given in barycentrics, then $P^\perp = u : v : w$ is given by :

$$-(b^2 + c^2 - a^2)p^2 + (a^2 - b^2 + c^2)pq + (a^2 + b^2 - c^2)pr + 2qra^2$$

Remark 9.9.2. It follows that if $P = x : y : z$ is given in trilinears, then P^\perp has trilinears given cyclically by :

$$yz + (-x \cos A + y \cos B + z \cos C)x$$

Example 9.9.3. Pairs (I,J) for which the orthocorrespondent of X(I) is X(J) include the following:

1	57	11	651	62	2005	109	1813	125	648	1566	677
2	1992	13	13	80	2006	111	895	132	287	1785	57
3	1993	14	14	98	287	112	110	186	1994	1845	2006
4	2	15	62	100	1332	113	2986	242	1999	1878	1997
5	1994	16	61	101	1331	114	2987	403	1993	3563	2987
6	1995	19	2000	103	1815	115	110	468	1992		
7	1996	32	2001	105	1814	117	2988	915	2990		
8	1997	33	2002	106	1797	118	2989	917	2989		
9	1998	36	2003	107	648	119	2990	1300	2986		
10	1999	61	2004	108	651	120	2991	1560	895		

Proposition 9.9.4. The orthocorrespondent of every point on the line at infinity is the centroid. Conversely, given a finite point U , different from the centroid, it exists exactly two orthoassociate points P_1 and P_2 (real or not, distinct or not) that share the same orthocorrespondent U . When P_1 is given, then :

$$p_2 \simeq (q_1 + r_1)p_1 + \frac{a^2 - b^2 + c^2}{a^2 - b^2 - c^2} q_1^2 + \frac{a^2 + b^2 - c^2}{a^2 - b^2 - c^2} r_1^2$$

When U is given, the condition of reality is $\Delta \geq 0$ where :

$$\Delta \doteq S^2(u + v + w)^2 - u(w + v)S_c S_b - v(u + w)S_a S_c - w(u + v)S_b S_a$$

$S = \text{area}$ and $S_a = (b^2 + c^2 - a^2)/2$. Then, cyclically, we have :

$$p_1, p_2 \simeq \begin{pmatrix} S((u - w)(u + v - w)S_b + (u - v)(u - w + w)S_c) \\ \pm ((u - w)S_b + (u - v)S_c) \sqrt{\Delta} \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. Write $\text{orthocorr}(P) = kU$ and eliminate (rationally) k, p . Obtain a second degree equation, whose discriminant is $S^2(v - w)^2 \Delta$. In order to obtain a symmetric form for the barycentrics $p : q : r$, all these expressions must be simplified using $(\sqrt{\Delta})^2 = \Delta$, then rationalized and simplified again, and finally normalized using $p + q + r = 1$. \square

9.10 Isoscelizer

An isoscelizer is a line perpendicular to an angle bisector. If P is a point, then the A -isoscelizer of P is the line $L(P, A)$ through P perpendicular to the line that bisects vertex angle A ; the B - and C - isoscelizers are defined cyclically. Let D and E be the points where $L(P, A)$ meets sidelines AB and AC . Unless $D = E = A$, the triangle ADE is isosceles.

In ETC, there are several triangle centers defined in terms of isoscelizers. These were discovered or invented by Peter Yff, in whose notebooks the word *isoscelizer* dates back to 1963.

Chapter 10

Circumcevian stuff

10.1 Circum-cevians, circum-anticevians

Definition 10.1.1. Circumcevian. Let P be a point, not on Γ (the circumcircle of ABC). Let A' be the other intersection of line AP with Γ and define B', C' cyclically. Then $A'B'C'$ is the circumcevian triangle of P . Using barycentric columns,

$$\text{circumcevian}(P) = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{-gra^2}{c^2q + b^2r} & p & p \\ q & \frac{-rpb^2}{a^2r + c^2p} & q \\ r & r & \frac{-pqc^2}{b^2p + a^2q} \end{pmatrix} \quad (10.1)$$

Proposition 10.1.2. *A circumcevian triangle is a central triangle. When P is on Γ , the corresponding triangle is totally degenerate. Three points on the circumcircle form a circumcevian triangle when the triangle obtained by killing the diagonal of the matrix is a cevian triangle.*

Proof. Centrality follows directly from (10.1) (that's a reason to keep denominators), while killing the diagonal gives the intersections with sidelines. Determinant is $\Gamma(P)^3$ over $\prod (a^2q + b^2p)$. \square

Definition 10.1.3. Circum-anticevian. Consider the anticevian triangle $P_AP_BP_C$ of a point P that is not a vertex of triangle ABC . Line P_BP_C cuts circumcircle Γ at A . Let A' be the other intersection and define B', C' cyclically. Then $A'B'C'$ is the circum-anticevian triangle of P . Using barycentric columns,

$$\text{circumanticevian}(P) = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{gra^2}{c^2q - b^2r} & -p & p \\ q & \frac{rpb^2}{a^2r - c^2p} & -q \\ -r & r & \frac{pqc^2}{b^2p - a^2q} \end{pmatrix} \quad (10.2)$$

Proposition 10.1.4. *This triangle should be a central triangle (does the definition allows that?). When one of the three other points $\pm p : \pm q : \pm r$ is on Γ , the circum-anticevian triangle degenerates.*

10.2 Steinbart transform

Definition 10.2.1. Exceter point. The circumcevian triangle of the centroid, X_2 , is perspective to the tangential triangle \mathcal{A}_6 . The perspector, X_{22} , is named Exceter point, for Phillips Exceter Academy in Exceter, New Hampshire, USA, where X_{22} was detected in 1986 using a computer.

Definition 10.2.2. Steinbart transform. The circumcevian triangle of a point P is ever perspective to the tangential triangle \mathcal{A}_6 . The corresponding perspector has been called Steinbart point by Funck (2003) and was called in TCCT (p. 201). This transformation carries triangle centers to triangle centers. Using barycentrics :

$$\text{Steinbart}(P) = a^2 \left(\frac{b^4}{q^2} + \frac{c^4}{r^2} - \frac{a^4}{p^2} \right) : b^2 \left(\frac{a^4}{p^2} - \frac{b^4}{q^2} + \frac{c^4}{r^2} \right) : c^2 \left(\frac{a^4}{p^2} + \frac{b^4}{q^2} - \frac{c^4}{r^2} \right)$$

Example 10.2.3. On the circumcircle, Steinbart transform is the identity. Here is a list of other (I,J) such that Steinbart(X(I)) = X(J) :

1	3	14	1606	56	1616	162	1624	365	55
2	22	17	1607	57	1617	163	1625	366	1631
3	1498	18	1608	58	595	174	1626	509	1486
4	24	19	1609	59	1618	188	2933	648	1632
5	1601	21	1610	63	1619	251	1627	651	1633
6	6	25	1611	64	1620	254	1628	662	1634
7	1602	28	1612	81	1621	259	198		
8	1603	31	1613	83	1078	266	56		
9	1604	54	1614	84	1622	275	1629		
13	1605	55	1615	88	1623	284	1630		

Points X(1601)-X(1634) have been contributed in ETC by Jean-Pierre Ehrmann (August 2003).

Remark 10.2.4. See [Grinberg \(2003e\)](#) and his Extended Steinbart Theorem in Hyacinthos #7984, 2003/09/23.

10.3 Circum-eigentransform

Definition 10.3.1. The circum-eigentransform of point $U = u : v : w$, different from X_6 , is the eigencenter of the circumcevian triangle of point U and is denoted by $CET(U)$. In trilinears, we have :

$$\frac{avw}{av^2 + aw^2 - buv - cuw} : \frac{bwu}{bw^2 + bu^2 - cvw - avu} : \frac{cuv}{cu^2 + cv^2 - awu - bvw}$$

and in barycentrics (cyclically) :

$$\frac{a^2vw}{a^2c^2v^2 + a^2b^2w^2 - b^2c^2uv - bc^2uw}$$

Proposition 10.3.2. Point $CET(U)$ lies on the circumcircle, and we have $CET(U) = isog(U)$ if and only if $U \in \mathcal{L}_b$.

Remark 10.3.3. My own computations are leading to :

$$\frac{a^2vw}{-a^2c^2v^2 + a^2b^2w^2 - b^2c^2uv + bc^2uw}$$

This point is also on the circumcircle, but property $CET(U) = isog(U)$ if and only if $U \in \mathcal{L}_b$ is lost. Some signs have changed : why ?

Example 10.3.4. Apart from points on the infinity line, pairs (I, J) such that $X(J) = CET(X(I))$ include :

1	106	41	767	74	1294	238	741
2	729	42	2368	75	701	265	1300
3	1300	43	106	81	2375	670	3222
4	1294	44	106	110	99	694	98
9	1477	55	2369	125	827	895	2374
19	2365	56	2370	184	2367	1084	689
25	2366	57	2371	194	729	1279	1477
31	767	58	2372	213	2368	1634	689
32	2367	67	2373	219	2376		
37	741	69	2374	220	2377		

Exercise 10.3.5. For a given point P on the circumcircle, which points U satisfy $CET(U) = P$? For example, CET carries each of the points $X(1)$, $X(43)$, $X(44)$, $X(519)$ to $X(106)$.

10.4 Dual triangles, DC and CD Points

Definition 10.4.1. Dual triangle. Suppose DEF is a triangle (at finite distance) in the plane of triangle ABC . Let D' be the isogonal conjugate of the point at infinity of line EF . Define E' and F' cyclically. The triangle $D'E'F'$ is called the *dual* of DEF . Its vertices lie on the circumcircle.

Proposition 10.4.2. *The dual triangle $D'E'F'$ characterizes the class of all triangles homothetic to DEF . Moreover, this triangle is similar to the original one.*

Proof. Vertices of $D'E'F'$ depends only on direction of sidelines DE , EF , FD and conversely. Similarity between DEF and $D'E'F'$ can be proved in many ways. Brute force method : Pythagoras Theorem 7.4.4 applied to both triangles leads to proportional sidelengths. \square

Remark 10.4.3. (Proof of similarity follows from Theorem 6E in TCCT, as the "gamma triangle" there is the dual of a triangle whose sidelines are respectively perpendicular to those of DEF .)

Definition 10.4.4. DC point. Suppose $U = u : v : w$ is a point having cevian triangle DEF and dual triangle $D'E'F'$. It happens that the latter triangle is also the circum-anticevian triangle of some point. This point will be described as $DC(U)$. Using barycentrics :

$$DC(U) = \frac{a^2}{u(v+w)} : \frac{b^2}{v(w+u)} : \frac{c^2}{w(u+v)}$$

Remark 10.4.5. The barycentrics of triangle $D'E'F'$ are :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \frac{a^2}{wu - vu} & \frac{-a^2}{wu + vu} & \frac{a^2}{wu + vu} \\ \frac{vu + wv}{-c^2} & \frac{vu - wv}{c^2} & \frac{vu + wv}{c^2} \\ \frac{wv + wu}{wv + wu} & \frac{wv + wu}{wv + wu} & \frac{wv - wu}{wv - wu} \end{array}$$

Proposition 10.4.6. *To construct $DC(U)$ from U and $D'E'F'$, let $A' = AD' \cap BC$ and let A'' be the harmonic conjugate of A' with respect to B and C . Define B'' and C'' cyclically. The lines AA'' , BB'' and CC'' concur in $DC(U)$. We have also the formula :*

$$DC(U) = \text{cevamul}(\text{isog}(U), X(6))$$

Example 10.4.7. There are 115 pairs (I, J) such that $I < 2980$ and $X(J) = DC(X(I))$. Among them $(1, 81)$, $(2, 6)$, $(3, 275)$, $(4, 2)$, $(5, 288)$, $(6, 83)$, $(7, 1)$, $(8, 57)$, $(9, 1170)$, $(10, 1171)$. The longest chain for this relation is : $69 \mapsto 4 \mapsto 2 \mapsto 6 \mapsto 83 \mapsto 3108$.

Proposition 10.4.8. *Inversely, the circum-anticevian triangle of a point P is the dual of the cevian triangle of a point $CD(P)$, given for $P = p : q : r$ by the inverse of the DC -mapping; that is:*

$$\frac{1}{-a^2qr + b^2pr + c^2pq} : \frac{1}{a^2qr - b^2pr + c^2pq} : \frac{1}{a^2qr + b^2pr - c^2pq}$$

In other words, we have :

$$CD(P) = \text{isog}(\text{cevadiv}(P, X(6)))$$

10.5 Saragossa points

Definition 10.5.1. Saragossa points. Let P be a point not on the circumcircle of ABC . Let $\mathcal{T}' = A'B'C'$ be the cevian triangle of P and $\mathcal{T}'' = A'', B'', C''$ the circumcevian triangle of P . Consider triangle \mathcal{T} that is the crosstriangle of \mathcal{T}' and \mathcal{T}'' , i.e. the triangle whose vertices are $U = B'C'' \cap B''C'$, $V = C'A'' \cap C''A'$ and $W = A'B'' \cap A''B'$. Then (Figure 10.1) triangles ABC , \mathcal{T}' , \mathcal{T}'' and \mathcal{T} are pairwise perspective ((Grinberg, 2003d). The first, second and third Saragossa points of P are the perspector of \mathcal{T} with, respectively, ABC , \mathcal{T}' and \mathcal{T}'' . The name *Saragossa* refers to the king who proved Ceva's theorem before Ceva did (Hogendijk, 1995).

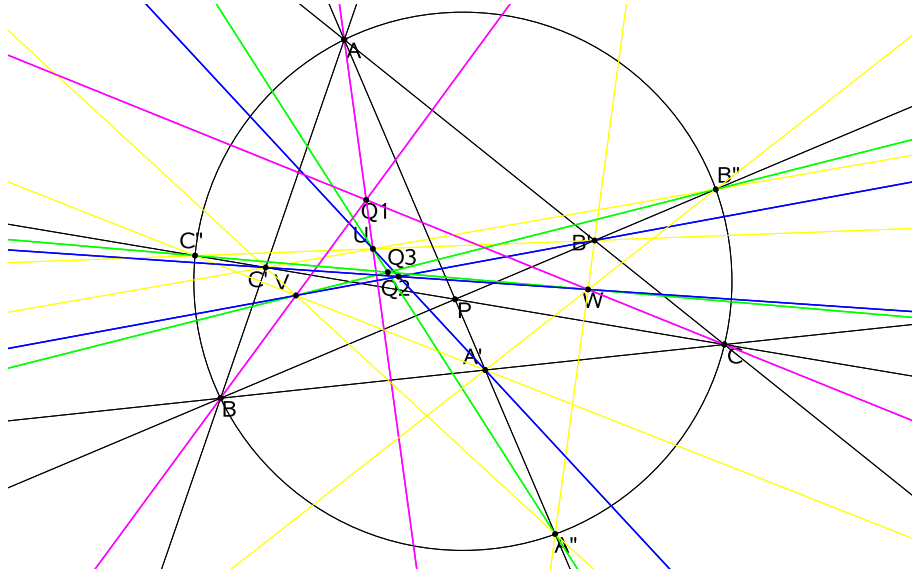


Figure 10.1: Saragossa points of point P

Proposition 10.5.2. *The barycentrics of the Saragossa points of $P = p : q : r$ are (cyclically) :*

$$\begin{aligned} g_1(a, b, c) &= \frac{a^2}{a^2qr - (a^2qr + b^2pr + c^2pq)} \\ g_2(a, b, c) &= p - \left(\frac{1}{c^2q} + \frac{1}{b^2r} \right) (a^2qr + b^2pr + c^2pq) \\ g_3(a, b, c) &= 2p - \left(\frac{1}{c^2q} + \frac{1}{b^2r} \right) (a^2qr + b^2pr + c^2pq) \end{aligned} \quad (10.3)$$

Points P, Q_2, Q_3 are clearly collinear. When one of the Saragossa points is equal to P then P is $X(6)$ or lies on the circumcircle.

Proof. Computations are straightforward. \square

Example 10.5.3. The following table give the Saragossa points of the $X(I)$ whose number is given in the first line.

1	2	3	4	5	6	19	21	24	25	28	31
58	251	4	54	1166	6	284	961	847	2	943	81
386	1180	1181	?	?	6	1182	1183	?	1184	?	1185
1193	1194	185	389	?	6	1195	?	?	1196	?	1197

10.6 Vertex associates

Definition 10.6.1. Vertex associate. Consider the circumcevian triangles $A_pB_pC_p, A_uB_uC_u$ of points P, U (not both on the circumcircle) and draw their may be degenerate vertex triangle \mathcal{T} i.e. the triangle whose sidelines are A_pA_u, B_pB_u, C_pC_u . It happens that \mathcal{T} is perspective to ABC : the corresponding perspector X is called the vertex associate of P and U .

Proposition 10.6.2. *When $P \in \Gamma$ but $U \notin \Gamma$, $A_pB_pC_p$ and \mathcal{T} are totally degenerate at P , so that $X = P$ (regardless of U). Otherwise, the barycentrics of the vertex associate of $p : q : r$ and $u : v : w$ are (cyclically) :*

$$\text{vertexthird}(P, U) = \frac{a^2}{wra^4qv - p(wb^2 + vc^2)u(rb^2 + c^2q)}$$

Proof. When both P, U are on Γ , both circumcevians are totally degenerate and X is not defined. \square

Remark 10.6.3. The definition of vertex conjugate allows $X = U$. To extend the geometric interpretation to the case that $X = U$, as X approaches U , the vertex triangle approaches a limiting triangle which we call the tangential triangle of U , a triangle perspective to ABC with perspector U -vertex conjugate of U .

Proposition 10.6.4. *When P is not on Γ , but U is on P_Γ^* (the Γ -polar of P), then \mathcal{T} is totally degenerate to a point X that is the Γ -pole of line PU . Finally, triangle PUX is autopolar wrt Γ .*

Proof. Concurrence of A_pA_u , B_pB_u , C_pC_u in a point X is straightforward, and $X \in P_\Gamma^*$ too. \square

Proposition 10.6.5. *Operation vertexthird is commutative and "formally involutory" i.e. :*

$$\text{vertexthird}(P, \text{vertexthird}(P, U)) \simeq U$$

unless P lies on the circumcircle (where $\text{vertexthird}(P, U) = P$, regardless of U).

Proof. Commutativity is from the very definition, and the formal involutory property is from straightforward computations. It remains only to track degeneracies. Determinant of the vertex triangle \mathcal{T} is the square of determinant of the corresponding trigone (\mathcal{T} is either a genuine triangle, or totally degenerate). The factors are the conditions for $U \in \Gamma$, $P \in \Gamma$ and the condition for one point to be on the Γ -polar of the other. \square

Exercise 10.6.6. In the general case, what can be said about the way the three circumcevian triangles are lying on Γ ?

Example 10.6.7. Here are some vertex conjugates $X(I)$, $X(J)$, $X(K)$:

	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
1	56	3415	84	3417		2163	3418		3420
2	3415	25	3424	3425		1383			
3	84	3424	64	4		3426	3427		
4	3417	3425	4	3		3431			
5					3432				
6	2163	1383	3426	3431		6			
7	3418		3427				3433		
8								3435	
9	3420								1436

Proposition 10.6.8. *For a given U , not on the circumcircle, the associated first Saragossa point (10.3) is the sole and only point X such that $\text{vertexthird}(U, X) = X$.*

Proof. We want $U = VT(X, VT(X, U)) = VT(X, X)$ while $\text{sarag1}(VT(P, P)) = P$ is straightforward. \square

Proposition 10.6.9. *Vertex association wrt X_3 maps the Darboux cubic to the Darboux cubic (X_3 is the reflection center of this cubic, whose pole is X_6 and pivot X_{20}). The appearance of (I, J) in the following list means that $X(I), X(J)$ are on the Darboux cubic and that $X(3), X(I), X(J)$ are vertex associates :*

1	3	4	20	40	1490	1498	2131	3182
84	64	4	3346	3345	3347	3348	3183	3354

Chapter 11

About conics

Notation 11.0.1. \mathcal{C} is a conic, $\boxed{\mathcal{C}}$ is the matrix of the punctual equation while $\boxed{\mathcal{C}^*}$ is the matrix of the tangential equation. Point P is (often) the *perspector*, $U \simeq u : v : w$ is (often) the *center*, $Q \simeq f : g : h$ the auxiliary point (of an inconic), $F_j \simeq f_j : g_j : h_j$ the focuses i.e. F_0 for a parabola and F_1, F_2 otherwise.

11.1 Tangent to a curve

Definition 11.1.1. An algebraic curve \mathcal{C} is the set of all the points $x : y : z$ that satisfy a polynomial equation $\mathcal{C}(x, y, z) = 0$. In order to be a projective property, the polynomial $\mathcal{C}(x, y, z)$ is required to be homogeneous (this is ever assumed in what follows).

Proposition 11.1.2. Consider an algebraic curve \mathcal{C} (not necessarily a conic). The line tangent to \mathcal{C} at point $P = p : q : r$ is given by :

$$\overrightarrow{\text{grad}}(\mathcal{C})_{p:q:r} = \left[\left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{C}}{\partial x} \right)_{X=P}, \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{C}}{\partial y} \right)_{X=P}, \left(\frac{\partial \mathcal{C}}{\partial z} \right)_{X=P} \right] \quad (11.1)$$

Proof. Let $P \in \mathcal{C}$ be the contact point and $P + kQ$ be a point in the vicinity. If we require $P + kQ \in \mathcal{C}$, we must have $\mathcal{C}(P + kQ) - \mathcal{C}(P) = O(k^2)$ and this is $\overrightarrow{\text{grad}}(\mathcal{C})_{p:q:r} \cdot U = 0$. But polynomial \mathcal{C} is homogeneous and we have $\overrightarrow{\text{grad}}(\mathcal{C})_{p:q:r} \cdot P = dg(\mathcal{C}) \mathcal{C}$. The result follows. \square

Exercise 11.1.3. Use parametrization (7.17) to describe the points P of the circumcircle. Obtain the tangent at P . Take the orthodir and obtain the normal. Differentiate and wedge to catch the contact point of the envelope of all the normals... and obtain X(3).

Definition 11.1.4. Pole and polar. The polar line of point X with respect to an algebraic (homogeneous) curve \mathcal{C} is the line whose affix is the gradient of \mathcal{C} evaluated at point X . Point X is called a pole of its polar.

Remark 11.1.5. When point X is a simple point on an algebraic curve, its polar is nothing but the line tangent at X to the curve. Finding all the points whose polar is a given line is not an easy task in the general case.

Proof. Well-known result. In fact, this is the rationale for the concept of polarity. \square

Definition 11.1.6. To avoid misunderstandings, it is often useful to specify the curve used to polarize. So we will use **circumpolar** to describe polarity wrt the circumcircle, and conipolar to describe polarity wrt a given specified conic.

Remark 11.1.7. Triangle ABC can be seen as the curve xyz . Gradient evaluated at point $P \simeq p : q : r$ is $[qr, rp, pq]$ i.e. the already defined tripolar. And we can see why the tripolar transform is not "as nice as" the usual conipolar transform: the degree of the underlying curve is not 2: there is no more "reciprocity".

11.2 Folium of Descartes

The curve know as the "folium of Descartes" is surely not a conic ! But, in our opinion, it could be useful to see how some general methods are working in the general case, before using them in the rather specific situation of the algebraic curves of degree two.

Definition 11.2.1. The **folium** \mathcal{F} is the curve which Descartes used to check his methods regarding the coordinate system. The Cartesian equation of this curve is $x^3 + y^3 - 6xy = 0$, and its homogeneous equation is

$$X^3 + Y^3 - 6XYT = 0$$

Proposition 11.2.2. *The folium presents a double point at $0 : 0 : 1$. If we cut by the line $Y = pX$, we obtain the parametrization : $M \simeq 6p : 6p^2 : 1 + p^3$. A better parametrization is :*

$$M \simeq 3(1+q)(1-q)^2 : 3(1+q)^2(1-q) : 3q^2 + 1 \quad (11.2)$$

Then the tangent Δ_M at $M \in \mathcal{F}$ is given by

$$N = x : y : z \in \Delta_M \quad \text{when} \quad [3X^2 - 6T, 3Y^2 - 6T, -6XY] \cdot \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = 0$$

Proof. Homography $q = (p-1)/(p+1)$ has been used to move point $p = -1$ at $q = \infty$ in order to have a "one piece" curve. Tangency condition is $\overrightarrow{\text{grad}\phi} \cdot \overrightarrow{MN} = 0$, while, due to the Darboux property, we already have $\overrightarrow{\text{grad}\phi} \cdot M = 0$. \square

Example 11.2.3. When $q_1 = 1/3$ and $q_2 = -3$, we obtain points $M_1 = 4 : -5 : 8$ and $M_2 = 24 : -12 : 7$. Tangents are $\begin{bmatrix} 4 & -5 & 8 \end{bmatrix}$, $\begin{bmatrix} 17 & 20 & 24 \end{bmatrix}$ while their common point is (see Figure 11.1) given by :

$$\begin{bmatrix} 4 & -5 & 8 \end{bmatrix} \wedge \begin{bmatrix} 17 & 20 & 24 \end{bmatrix} = 56 : -8 : -33 \approx -1.70 : +0.24 : 1$$

Visible asymptote is the tangent at the visible $T = 0$ point, i.e. at $+1 : -1 : 0$. Using the gradient at that point, we see that asymptote is $[3, 3, -6] \simeq [1, 1, -2]$.

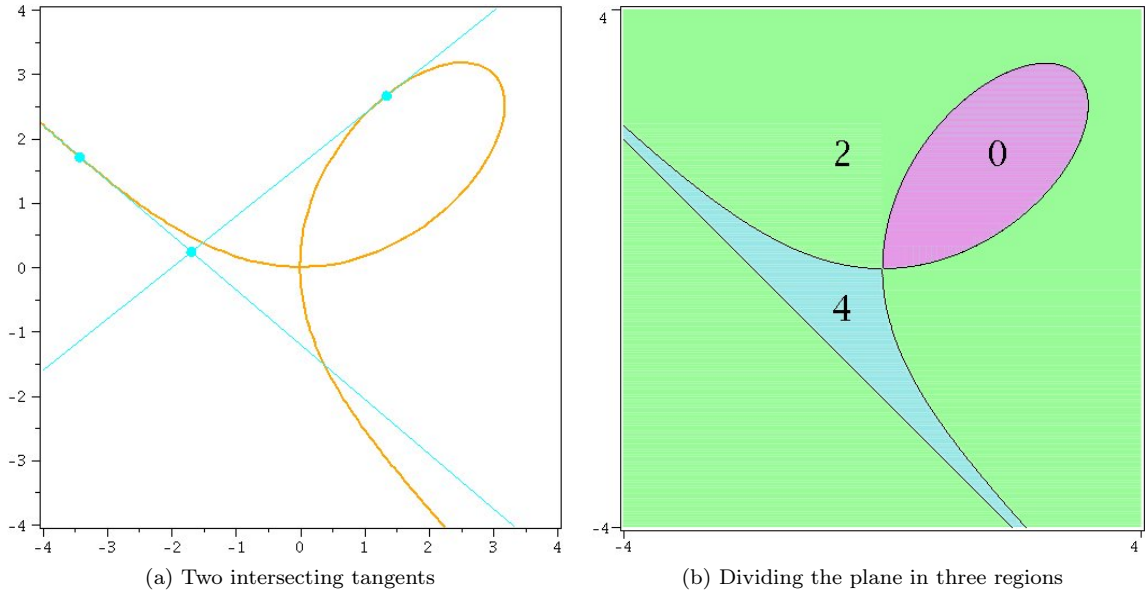


Figure 11.1: Folium of Descartes

Proposition 11.2.4. *Tangential equation of the folium (i.e. the condition for a line $\Delta \simeq [u, v, w]$ to be tangent to the curve is :*

$$\mathcal{F}^*(u, v, w) \doteq 48u^2v^2 - 32w(u^3 + v^3) + 24uvw^2 - w^4 = 0$$

Proof. Tangency requires a contact point, so that :

$$\left\{ (q-1)(3q^3+9q+3q^2+1) = Kv, (q+1)(3q^3+9q-3q^2-1) = Ku, 6(q+1)^2(q-1)^2 = Kw \right\}$$

is required. Apart from $w = 0$ or $q = \pm 1$, last equation gives a K value, that can be substituted into the other equations. Writing that the remaining two polynomials have the same roots, we obtain the resultant :

$$\begin{vmatrix} -w-6v & -9w-6v & -3w+6v & -3w+6v & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -w-6v & -9w-6v & -3w+6v & -3w+6v & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -w-6v & -9w-6v & -3w+6v & -3w+6v \\ w+6u & -9w-6u & 3w-6u & -3w+6u & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & w+6u & -9w-6u & 3w-6u & -3w+6u & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & w+6u & -9w-6u & 3w-6u & -3w+6u \end{vmatrix}$$

Suppressing the non vanishing factors leads to the given result. \square

Example 11.2.5. Start from a point $N \simeq x : y : z$ and search the u, v, w such that

$$\{ux + vy + wz = 0, \Psi = 0\}$$

We have three different possibilities, that are exemplified by :

	u	v	w
$N \simeq 1 : 1 : 1,$	1.0	$-0.51903 - 1.16372i$	$-0.48097 + 1.16372i$
	1.0	$-0.31967 + 0.71674i$	$-0.68033 - 0.71674i$
	1.0	$-0.51903 + 1.16372i$	$-0.48097 - 1.16372i$
	1.0	$-0.31967 - 0.71674i$	$-0.68033 + 0.71674i$
$N \simeq 4 : 2 : 1,$	1.0	1.0	-6.0
	1.0	-1.52334	-0.95333
	1.0	$-0.73833 - 1.09791i$	$-2.52334 + 2.19582i$
	1.0	$-0.73833 + 1.09791i$	$-2.52334 - 2.19582i$
$N = -\frac{1}{2} : -\frac{1}{2} : 1,$	1.0	1.35307	1.17653
	1.0	0.73906	0.86953
	1.0	-0.43584	0.28208
	1.0	-2.29442	-0.64721

In other words, the curve and its asymptote are dividing the plane into three zones. From a magenta point (see Figure 11.1b) no tangents can be drawn to the curve, but two from a green point and four from a cyan point.

Proposition 11.2.6 (Plucker formulas). *Let d, δ, κ be respectively the degree of a curve \mathcal{C} , its number of nodes (double points with two tangents), its number of cups (double point with a single tangent) and d', δ', κ' be the corresponding numbers for the dual curve \mathcal{C}' then we have the following relations :*

$$\begin{aligned} d' &= d(d-1) - 2\delta - 3\kappa \\ \kappa' &= 3d(d-2) - 6\delta - 8\kappa \\ d &= d'(d'-1) - 2\delta' - 3\kappa' \\ \kappa &= 3d'(d'-2) - 6\delta' - 8\kappa' \\ g &\doteq \frac{1}{2}(d-1)(d-2) - \delta - \kappa = \frac{1}{2}(d'-1)(d'-2) - \delta' - \kappa' \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Proof is not obvious since the formula turns weird when points with multiplicity greater than two are occurring. There is no simpler formula giving δ than $g = g'$. A remark : we have $3d - \kappa = 3d' - \kappa'$. Application : see Figure 11.2. Cups are occurring at $x = y = 1/2$ and at $x = j/2, y = j^2/2$ and conjugate. \square

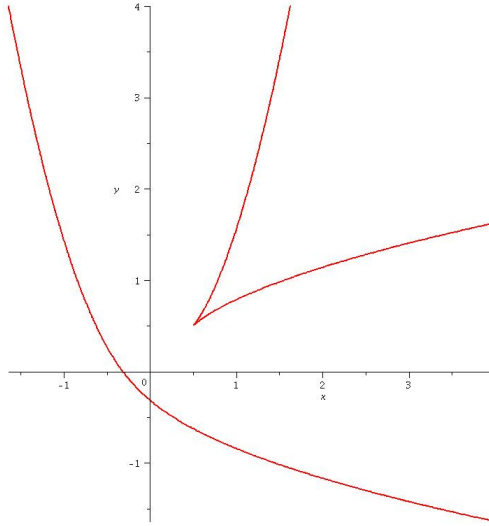


Figure 11.2: Dual curve of the folium

11.3 General facts about conics

Definition 11.3.1. A conic \mathcal{C} is a curve whose barycentric equation is an homogeneous polynomial of second degree. This can be written using the usual matrix apparatus :

$$X \in \mathcal{C} \iff {}^tX \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}} \cdot X = (x, y, z) \begin{pmatrix} m_{11} & m_{12} & m_{13} \\ m_{12} & m_{22} & m_{23} \\ m_{13} & m_{23} & m_{33} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = 0$$

Lemma 11.3.2. Comatrix. Let \boxed{M} be a $n \times n$ matrix and $\boxed{M^*}$ the matrix of the cofactors (at the right place, such that cofactors of a row form a column). Then :

$$\boxed{M} \cdot \boxed{M^*} = \boxed{M^*} \cdot \boxed{M} = \det(\boxed{M}) \mathbf{1}_n$$

Moreover $\text{rank } \boxed{M^*} = n$ when $\text{rank } \boxed{M} = n$, $\text{rank } \boxed{M^*} = 1$ when $\text{rank } \boxed{M} = n-1$, and otherwise $\boxed{M^*}$ is the 0 matrix.

Proof. When $\det \boxed{M} \neq 0$, both matrices can be inverted. In the second case a row of $\boxed{M^*}$ describes the hyperplane obtained by any non-zero wedge of two columns of \boxed{M} . In the last one, all minors are 0 since rank is less than $n-1$. \square

Remark 11.3.3. Comatrix $\boxed{M^*}$ is also called the **adjoint** matrix of M . Frenchies are usually proud to dispose wrongly the cofactors... and then are reduced to use the transpose of what they are wrongly calling "comatrices".

Definition 11.3.4. Proper conic. A quadratic form can be written as the sum of as many squares of independent linear forms as its rank, leading to the following classification :

1. When rank is one, \mathcal{C} is a straight line, whose points are each counted twice (strange object).
2. When rank is 2, \mathcal{C} is the union of two intersecting lines. When these lines are complex conjugate of each other (not real), only their intersection is real and this point appears as an isolated point. When one of these lines is the line at infinity, \mathcal{C} is considered as some kind of extended circle (see Chapter 12).
3. When $\det \boxed{\mathcal{C}} \neq 0$, intersection of \mathcal{C} and any straight line contains exactly two points (real or not, may be a double point). A such conic is called a proper conic.

Proposition 11.3.5. Conic by five points. Let $P_j \simeq p_j : q_j : r_j$ be five fixed points and $P = P_6 \simeq x : y : z$ be a generic sixth point. In this section we define the (conic) Veronese map as

$$Ver_b : [p : q : r] \mapsto [p^2 : q^2 : r^2 : pq : qr : rp]$$

Let \widehat{Q} be the 6×6 matrix $\begin{bmatrix} Ver_b(P_j) \end{bmatrix}$. Then the six points $P_1 \dots P_5, P$ are coconic when the six Veronese are co-hyperplanar, i.e. when $Q(x, y, z) \doteq \det \widehat{Q} = 0$. Let \boxed{Q} be the matrix of Q so that $Q = {}^t P \cdot \boxed{Q} \cdot P$. Then :

1. When none of the 10 P_j -triples are collinear, then \boxed{Q} defines a proper conic.
2. When four of the five points P_j are collinear, then $Q \equiv 0$ and no conic is defined.
3. Otherwise, the conic degenerates into the reunion of two lines.

Proof. In all of the cases, a simple computation leads to the "ten determinants formula"

$$\det \boxed{Q} = \prod_{j,k,l}^{10} \det (P_j P_k P_l)$$

while the relation $P_3 = a P_1 + b P_2$ leads to the factorization:

$$\det \widehat{Q} = ab \det (P_1 P_2 P_4) \det (P_1 P_2 P_5) \times \det (P_1 P_2 P) \det (P_4 P_5 P) \quad \square$$

Proposition 11.3.6. Proper parametrization. Given a proper conic \mathcal{C} , a basis can be found where the equation of \mathcal{C} becomes $xz - y^2 = 0$. And then, a parametrization is $u^2 : uv : v^2$.

Proof. Rewrite the equation as a sum of three squares. And then use $x^2 + z^2 = (x - iz)(x + iz)$. More precisely, defining

$$K^2 \doteq m_{22} m_{33} - m_{23}^2 ; \chi \doteq \begin{bmatrix} m_{12} & m_{22} & m_{23} \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ m_{22} m_{13} - m_{23} m_{12} & 0 & K^2 \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ -iK & 0 & iK \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\text{leads to } {}^t \chi \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}} \cdot \chi \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & K^2 \\ 0 & 2m_{22} \det \mathcal{C} & 0 \\ K^2 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad \square$$

Definition 11.3.7. Pole and polar. According to the general definitions, the polar of a point X wrt a proper conic \mathcal{C} is the line ${}^t X \boxed{\mathcal{C}}$, i.e. the locus of the points Y such that ${}^t X \boxed{\mathcal{C}} Y = 0$, while the pole of line $\{Y \mid \Delta Y = 0\}$ is the point $X = \text{Adjoint}(\boxed{\mathcal{C}})^t \Delta$.

Remark 11.3.8. This polarity is not to be confused with polarity wrt the main triangle. Therefore, it can be useful to describe line ${}^t X \boxed{\mathcal{C}}$ as the conipolar of X and line ${}^t \text{isotom}(X)$ as the tripolar of X .

Remark 11.3.9. The relation "point Q belongs to the polar of P " is symmetric. When point P belongs to \mathcal{C} , its polar wrt the conic is nothing but the line tangent at X to the conic.

Proposition 11.3.10. For two distinct points A, B , and for two distinct lines Δ_1, Δ_2 , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{polar}(A \wedge B) &= (\text{polar} A) \wedge (\text{polar} B) \\ \text{polar}(\Delta_1 \wedge \Delta_2) &= (\text{polar} \Delta_1) \wedge (\text{polar} \Delta_2) \end{aligned}$$

Proof. When M is a 3×3 invertible matrix, then, for any columns A, B , we have:

$$({}^t A \cdot M) \wedge ({}^t B \cdot M) = M^* \cdot {}^t(A \wedge B)$$

This can be seen by taking coordinates, and expanding $({}^tA \cdot M) \wedge ({}^tB \cdot M) - M^* \cdot {}^t(A \wedge B)$ to 0. Another proof is using a generic row, called X in what follows, and check that:

$$\begin{aligned} X \cdot ({}^tA \cdot M) \wedge ({}^tB \cdot M) &= \det [X \cdot M^{-1} \cdot M, {}^tA \cdot M, {}^tB \cdot M] \\ &= \det [X \cdot M^{-1}, {}^tA, {}^tB] \times \det M \\ &= \det [X \cdot M^*, {}^tA, {}^tB] \\ &= X \cdot M^* \cdot ({}^tA \wedge {}^tB) = X \cdot M^* \cdot {}^t(A \wedge B) \end{aligned}$$

□

Definition 11.3.11. Taking the polar lines of the vertices of a triangle \mathcal{T} gives a trigone. The associate triangle is called the polar triangle of \mathcal{T} and noted $\text{polar}\mathcal{T}$. When both triangles are equal, we say that \mathcal{T} is autopolar wrt \mathcal{C} .

Proposition 11.3.12. When quadrangle A, B, C, D is inscribed in a proper conic \mathcal{C} , its diagonal triangle, i.e. $AB \cap CD, AC \cap BD, AD \cap BC$ is autopolar wrt \mathcal{C} .

Computed Proof. From 11.3.6, we can describe the problem by:

$$\boxed{\mathcal{C}} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix} ; A, B, C, D \simeq \begin{pmatrix} u_1^2 \\ u_1 v_1 \\ v_1^2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} u_2^2 \\ u_2 v_2 \\ v_2^2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} u_3^2 \\ u_3 v_3 \\ v_3^2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} u_4^2 \\ u_4 v_4 \\ v_4^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

and ${}^t(AB \wedge CD) \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}} \cdot (AC \wedge BD) = 0$ is easy to verify. □

Construction 11.3.13. The polar line of a point P wrt a conic \mathcal{C} is the locus of the points $AC \cap BD$ where AB and CD are chords of \mathcal{C} that meet in P . As a result, the required conipolar is the line $AC \cap BD ; AD \cap BC$.

Proof. Obvious from the previous proposition. □

Proposition 11.3.14. Triangle \mathcal{T} is autopolar wrt a proper conic \mathcal{C} if and only if the matrix of \mathcal{C} wrt triangle \mathcal{T} is diagonal.

Proof. Use \mathcal{T} as barycentric basis. Then eliminate and see that either \mathcal{C} is diagonal, or contains a null column □

Proposition 11.3.15. Perspector of a conic wrt a triangle. When the polar triangle of \mathcal{T} is not \mathcal{T} itself, then both triangles are in perspective. This defines a perspector and a perspectrix (related to the triangle). When \mathcal{T} is the reference triangle itself, the polar triangle is $\boxed{\mathcal{C}^*}$ so that:

$$P \simeq \begin{pmatrix} (m_{22} m_{13} - m_{23} m_{12}) (m_{33} m_{12} m_{13} m_{23}) \\ (m_{33} m_{12} - m_{13} m_{23}) (m_{11} m_{23} - m_{13} m_{12}) \\ (m_{11} m_{23} - m_{13} m_{12}) (m_{22} m_{13} - m_{23} m_{12}) \end{pmatrix} ; \Delta \simeq [m_{13} m_{12}, m_{23} m_{12}, m_{13} m_{23}]$$

When nothing vanishes, the following shorter formulas can be used:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{isotom}P &\simeq m_{11} m_{23} - m_{13} m_{12} : m_{22} m_{13} - m_{23} m_{12} : m_{33} m_{12} m_{13} m_{23} \\ \text{tripolar}\Delta &\simeq m_{23} : m_{13} : m_{12} \end{aligned}$$

Proof. The $\mathcal{T} = ABC$ case is easy to compute. And suffices to prove the general case. □

Definition 11.3.16. Dual of a conic. The dual of a given conic \mathcal{C}_1 is the conic \mathcal{C}_2 such that point $x : y : z$ belongs to \mathcal{C}_2 when line (x, y, z) is tangent to \mathcal{C}_1 . When dealing with proper conics, we have $\boxed{\mathcal{C}_2} = \text{Adjoint}(\boxed{\mathcal{C}_1})$ and conversely. When rank is 2, the dual is rank 1 : all tangents have to pass through the common point.

Definition 11.3.17. The **center** U of a conic \mathcal{C} is the pole of the line at infinity \mathcal{L}_b with respect to the conic. Its barycentrics are :

$$\begin{aligned} -m_{23}^2 + (m_{13} + m_{12}) m_{23} + m_{22} m_{33} - m_{13} m_{22} - m_{12} m_{33} \\ -m_{13}^2 + (m_{12} + m_{23}) m_{13} + m_{33} m_{11} - m_{12} m_{33} - m_{23} m_{11} \\ -m_{12}^2 + (m_{23} + m_{13}) m_{12} + m_{11} m_{22} - m_{23} m_{11} - m_{13} m_{22} \end{aligned}$$

Definition 11.3.18. A **parabola** is a conic whose center is at infinity (more about parabolas in Section 11.21). Two parallel lines make a non proper parabola. The union of the line at infinity and another line is ... some kind of circle rather than a "special special" parabola.

Fact 11.3.19. When a conic goes through its center and this center is not at infinity, the conic is the union of two different straight lines. When a conic is a single line whose points are counted twice, $\det \mathcal{C}$ vanishes and center has no meaning.

Proposition 11.3.20. When \mathcal{C} is not a parabola, its center is the symmetry center of the conic.

Computed Proof. Substitute (3.1) into the equation and obtain $\mathcal{C}(x, y, z)$ times the square of the condition to be a parabola. \square

Proposition 11.3.21. Let P be a point not on the sidelines of ABC . Six points are obtained by intersecting a sideline with a parallel through P to another sideline. These points are on the same conic \mathcal{C} . Equation, perspector T and center U are :

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{C} &= \sum (q+r)qrx^2 - \sum (p^2 + pq + pr + 2qr)pyz \\ T &= \frac{p}{2pr + 2pq + qr} : \frac{q}{2pq + pr + 2qr} : \frac{r}{pq + 2pr + 2qr} \\ U &= p(2qr + pr + pq - p^2) : q(2pr + pq + qr - q^2) : r(2pq + pr + qr - r^2)\end{aligned}$$

Center U is at infinity (and \mathcal{C} is a parabola) when P is at infinity or on the Steiner inconic. Points P and $Q = p(q+r-p) : q(r+p-q) : r(p+q-r)$ are leading to the same center U . Point Q is at infinity when P is on the Steiner inconic.

Proof. Equation in Q is of third degree. The discriminant factors into minus a product of squares. Other computations are straightforward. Examples are $[P, U]$, $[115, 523]$, $[1015, 513]$, $[1084, 512]$, $[1086, 514]$, $[1146, 522]$, $[2482, 524]$, $[3163, 30]$ where P is on the Steiner inconic and $[P, U]$, $[2, 2]$, $[6, 182]$, $[3, 182]$, $[9, 1001]$, $[1, 1001]$, $[190, 1016]$, $[664, 1275]$ for other points. \square

Exercise 11.3.22. Show that points $X(13), X(14), X(15), X(16), X(17), X(18)$ belong to a same conic (Evans, 2002). Identify 50 ETC points on its perimeter. Center is $X(3054)$.

11.4 Tangential conics

Definition 11.4.1. A point-conic is a 'conic as usual', i.e. a locus of points, whose equation is ${}^tM \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}} \cdot M = 0$. In the general case, a line is tangent to \mathcal{C} when $\Delta \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}^*} \cdot {}^t\Delta = 0$. A line-conic or **tangential conic** is what is obtained when seeing \mathfrak{C} in equation $\Delta \cdot \boxed{\mathfrak{C}} \cdot {}^t\Delta = 0$ as the primitive object, and seeing the punctual conic ${}^tM \cdot \boxed{\mathfrak{C}^*} \cdot M = 0$ as a derivative object.

Proposition 11.4.2. Degenerate line-conic. When $\det \boxed{\mathfrak{C}} = 0$, the equation splits in two first degree factors, and a line belongs to the conic when it goes through either of the fixed points (the centers) defined by each factor (supposed distinct).

Example 11.4.3. The degenerate line-conic of the isotropic lines (see Proposition 7.6.7).

Proposition 11.4.4. Conic of tangents. The degenerate conic \mathcal{D}_0 formed by the two tangents drawn from a point X_0 to a given conic $\boxed{\mathcal{C}}$ is given by

$$\begin{aligned}{}^tX \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{D}_0} \cdot X &\simeq \left({}^tX_0 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}} \cdot X_0 \right) * \left({}^tX \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}} \cdot X \right) + (-1) * \left({}^tX_0 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}} \cdot X \right)^2 \\ \boxed{\mathcal{D}_0} &\simeq \left({}^tX_0 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}} \cdot X_0 \right) \boxed{\mathcal{C}} - \boxed{\mathcal{C}} \cdot X_0 \cdot {}^tX_0 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}}\end{aligned}\tag{11.3}$$

Computed Proof. From 11.3.6, we can describe the problem by:

$$\boxed{\mathcal{C}} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}; X_1, X_2 \simeq \begin{pmatrix} u_1^2 \\ u_1v_1 \\ v_1^2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} u_2^2 \\ u_2v_2 \\ v_2^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$\tan_1, \tan_2 \simeq [v_1^2, -2u_1v_1, u_1^2], [v_2^2, -2u_2v_2, u_2^2]$; $X_0 \doteq \tan_1 \wedge \tan_2 \simeq 2u_1u_2 : u_1v_2 + u_2v_1 : 2v_1v_2$
Then compute $(\tan_1 \cdot X) * (\tan_2 \cdot X)$ and check the formula. \square

more geometrico. Consider the pencil of all the conics that are bi-tangent to conic \mathcal{C} . Among them, we have \mathcal{C} itself, the required \mathcal{D}_0 and the polar line of X_0 ... when counted twice. Thus:

$$\boxed{\mathcal{D}_0} \simeq \alpha \left(\boxed{\mathcal{C}} \right) + \beta \left(\boxed{\mathcal{C}} \cdot X_0 \cdot {}^t X_0 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}} \right)$$

It remains to choose α, β so that \mathcal{D}_0 goes through X_0 . □

11.5 Locusconi

Theorem 11.5.1. locusconi. *Suppose that the projective coordinates of a point $P(s)$ are second degree polynomials in a given parameter s . Then the locus of $P(s)$ is a conic. Moreover, we have the following algorithm.*

Require: tmp is the column of the coordinates, and s is the parameter to eliminate

```
LOCUSCONI := proc tmp, s, conitan :: uneval ; local tmp1, tmp0, conic2
tmp1 := Matrix([seq](map(coeff, reduce(tmp), s, j), j = [2, 1, 0]))
tmp0 := Matrix([[0, 0, 2], [0, -1, 0], [2, 0, 0]])
conic2 := reduce(tmp1.tmp0.Tr(tmp1))
if nargs = 3 then assign(conitan, conic2) end if
reduce(Adjoint(conic2))
```

LISTING 11.1: The locusconi procedure

Proof. When using $\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}$ as the algebraic basis, the equation of the fundamental circle is $\mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}} - \mathbf{T}^2$. We are doing the same here, using $1 : t : t^2$ as algebraic basis. This leads to the tangential equation of the conic... and we save it immediately. Don't compute it afterwards by taking the adjoint of the main result ! See also [Kimberling \(2001, p. 2\)](#). □

Exercise 11.5.2. Use the example $P(s) = \begin{pmatrix} 7s^2 - 12 \\ 3s^2 + 2s \\ 3s^2 - 2s - 6 \end{pmatrix}$. Show that the brute force identification method, i.e. solve $({}^t P \cdot \boxed{m_{jk}} \cdot P = 0, m_{jk})$ amounts to write

$$[s^4, s^3, s^2, s, 1] \cdot \begin{bmatrix} 49 & 9 & 9 & 42 & 18 & 42 \\ 0 & 12 & -12 & 28 & 0 & -28 \\ -168 & 4 & -32 & -72 & -44 & -156 \\ 0 & 0 & 24 & -48 & -24 & 48 \\ 144 & 0 & 36 & 0 & 0 & 144 \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} m_{11} \\ m_{22} \\ m_{33} \\ m_{12} \\ m_{23} \\ m_{13} \end{bmatrix} = 0$$

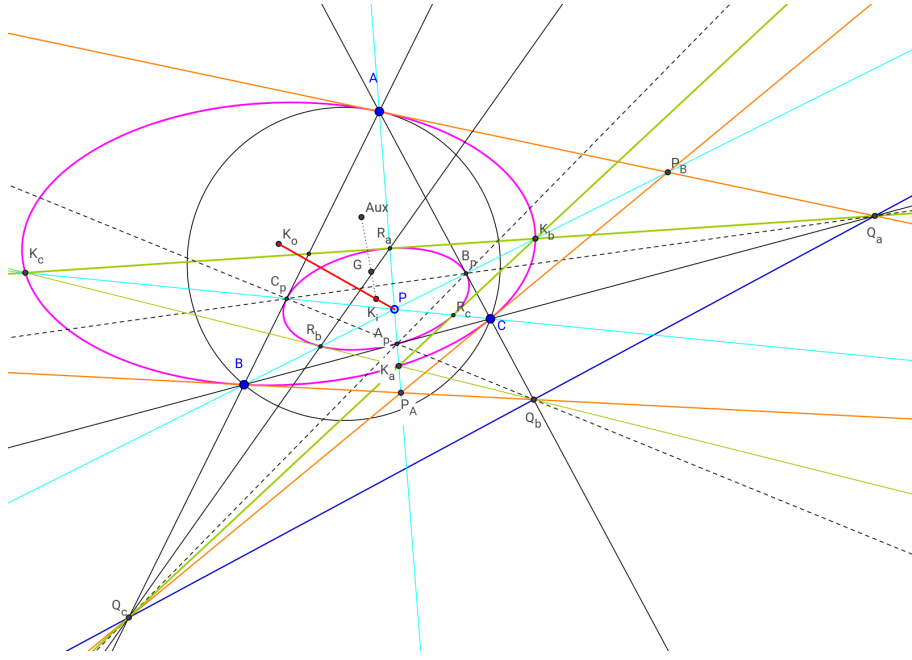
and then to compute the 6 cofactors of this 5×6 matrix, while locusconi amounts to write

$${}^t \begin{pmatrix} s^2 \\ s \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \boxed{\Gamma} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} s^2 \\ s \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = 0 \quad \text{where } \boxed{\Gamma} \doteq {}^t Q \cdot \boxed{m_{jk}} \cdot Q ; Q \doteq \begin{bmatrix} 7 & 0 & -12 \\ 3 & 2 & 0 \\ 3 & -2 & -6 \end{bmatrix}$$

and then to solve this system as: $\text{Adjoint}(\boxed{m_{jk}}) \doteq {}^t Q \cdot \text{Adjoint}(\boxed{\Gamma}) \cdot Q$.

11.6 Founding configuration

Definition 11.6.1. Let us start from triangle ABC and perspector $p : q : r$. Its tripolar $\Delta \simeq [qr : rp : pq]$ goes through points $Q_a \simeq 0 : +q : -r$, $Q_b \simeq -p : 0 : +r$, $Q_c \simeq +p : -q : 0$. From

Figure 11.3: Starting from perspector P

Proposition 3.8.12, all the triangles that can be written as $\mathcal{T}_t \simeq \begin{pmatrix} tp & p & p \\ q & tq & q \\ r & r & tr \end{pmatrix}$ share P and Δ as perspector and perspectrix. And their vertices are on the P -cevia lines (dotted cyan).

Proposition 11.6.2. We have $\text{cross_ratio}(A, A_P, P, A_t) = \text{cross_ratio}(\infty, 0, 1, t) = t$, etc.

Proof. Obvious since the cevian vertex A_p is nothing but A_0 . \square

Proposition 11.6.3. Vertices of $\boxed{\mathcal{T}_t}$ and $\boxed{\mathcal{T}_s}$ are on the same conic (noted $\mathcal{C}(s, t)$) if and only if

$$2ts + t + s - 4 = 0 ; s = \sigma(t) \doteq \frac{-t + 4}{2t + 1}$$

Fixed points of σ are $t = 1, t = -2$. And we have the decomposition:

$$\boxed{\mathcal{C}_t} = (t^2 + 2) \begin{bmatrix} 2q^2r^2 & -pqr^2 & -pq^2r \\ -pqr^2 & 2p^2r^2 & -p^2qr \\ -pq^2r & -p^2qr & 2p^2q^2 \end{bmatrix} - 2(t-1)^2 \begin{bmatrix} q^2r^2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & p^2r^2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & p^2q^2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Proof. The corresponding 6×6 determinant factors into $(t-1)^2(s-1)^2(t-s)^3q^4r^4p^4(2st + s + t - 4)$. \square

Proposition 11.6.4. The center K_t of conic \mathcal{C}_t belongs to line PP^2 . More precisely, we have

$$(t^2 + 2)(p + q + r) \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix} - 2(t-1)^2 \begin{pmatrix} p^2 \\ q^2 \\ r^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

And we have the formula:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{cross_ratio}(K(t_j)) &= \text{cross_ratio}(t_1, t_2, t_3, t_4) \times \text{cross_ratio}(\sigma(t_1), \sigma(t_2), t_3, t_4) \\ &= \text{cross_ratio}(t_1, t_2, t_3, t_4) \times \text{cross_ratio}(t_1, t_2, \sigma(t_3), \sigma(t_4)) \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Mind the fact that $\text{cross_ratio}(\sigma(t_1), \sigma(t_2), \sigma(t_3), \sigma(t_4)) = \text{cross_ratio}(t_1, t_2, t_3, t_4)!$ \square

Exercise 11.6.5. Prove that $\text{cross_ratio}(K_{in}, P^2, P, K_{out}) = -1$. that involves the conic $t = 1 = \sigma(1)$ which is centered at P and degenerates into $3(jqr x + j^2 rpy + pqz)$ ($j^2 qrx + j rpy + qpz$) and the conic $t^2 + 2 = 0$ which is centered at P^2 .

Example 11.6.6. We have the following cases of interest:

$\mathcal{C}(-2, -2)$ degenerates into $-6(qrx + rpy + pqz)^2$, i.e. the tripolar line $Q_a Q_b Q_c$.

$\mathcal{C}_1 \doteq \mathcal{C}(1, 1)$ is centered at P , and degenerates into

$$3(jqr x + j^2 rpy + pqz)(j^2 qrx + j rpy + pqz) = 0$$

$\mathcal{C}_{diag} = \mathcal{C}(\pm i\sqrt{2})$ is centered at P^2 and is diagonal.

$\mathcal{C}_{out} \doteq \mathcal{C}(\infty, -1/2)$ is the so called P -circumconic (see Section 11.7). It goes through the vertices ($t = \infty$) and the extra points $K_a = -p : 2q : 2r$, etc ($t = -1/2$).

$\mathcal{C}_{in} \doteq \mathcal{C}(0, 4)$ is the so called P -inconic (see Section 11.8). It goes through the cevian points $A_P B_P C_P$ ($t = 0$) and the extra points $R_a = 4p : q : r$, etc ($t = +4$).

$\mathcal{T}(-1)$ is the anticevian triangle $P_A P_B P_C$, obtained from the orange trigone AQ_a, BQ_b, CQ_c .

Proposition 11.6.7. The six sidelines of the following triangles:

$$\mathcal{T}(\kappa(t)), \mathcal{T}(\sigma(\kappa(t))) \quad \text{where } \kappa(t) \doteq \frac{2-t}{t}$$

are tangent to the conic $\mathcal{C}(t, \sigma(t))$ at the vertices of the defining triangles. Note that $(\sigma\kappa\sigma) = \kappa$, enforcing the symmetry, while Q_a, X_b, X_c are aligned for any triangle \mathcal{T} .

Proof. Obvious computations □

Example 11.6.8. Three tangents to $\mathcal{C}_{in} \doteq \mathcal{C}(0, 4)$ are provided by $\mathcal{T}(-1/2)$, see the green lines $Q_a R_a K_b K_c$, etc. As it should be, the other triangle is $\mathcal{T}(\infty)$. i.e. the ABC triangle itself.

Six tangents to $\mathcal{C}_{out} \doteq \mathcal{C}(\infty, -1/2)$ are provided by $\mathcal{T}(-5)$ and, as it should be, by the anticevian triangle $\mathcal{T}(-1)$, see the orange lines $Q_a A P_B P_C$, etc.

Moreover, we have the alignments $Q_a R_b R_c$ (not drawn), $Q_a B_P C_P$ (black dotted).

11.7 Circumconics

Definition 11.7.1. A **circumconic** is a conic that contains the vertices A, B, C of the reference triangle. Its equation can be written as :

$$CC(P) = {}^t X \boxed{\mathcal{C}_c} X = 0 \quad \text{where } \boxed{\mathcal{C}_c} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & r & q \\ r & 0 & p \\ q & p & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (11.4)$$

Construction 11.7.2. Graphical tools can construct any conic from five points. Given the perspector $P \simeq p : q : r$, the other points on the cevian lines are $-p : 2q : 2r$, etc i.e points $2qB + 2rC - pA$.

Proposition 11.7.3. When $p : q : r$ is the perspector, a **parametrization** of $CC(P)$ is

$$M(t) \simeq \frac{p}{1} : \frac{q}{t} : \frac{-r}{1+t} \quad (11.5)$$

Proof. Direct inspection. □

Theorem 11.7.4 (circumconics). We have the following four properties :

(i) Point P is the perspector of the conic, and the polar triangle of ABC wrt $CC(P)$ is the anticevian triangle of P wrt ABC (in other words, $CC(P)$ is tangent at A to $P_B P_C$ etc.

(ii) When U is the center of $CC(P)$ then P is the center of $CC(U)$. Both are related by :

$$U = \text{cevadiv}(X_2, P) = P *_b \text{anticomplem}(P)$$

(iii) Circumconic $CC(P)$ is the P isoconjugate of \mathcal{L}_b . Inter alia,

$$X \in \text{circumcircle} \iff \text{isog}(X) \in \mathcal{L}_b$$

(iv) The polar line of $M \simeq x : y : z$ wrt $CC(P)$ is $\simeq[qz + ry, rx + pz, py + qx] \dots$ aka the polarmul of (P, M) .

Proposition 11.7.5. Points at infinity. A circumscribed conic is an ellipse, a parabola or an hyperbola when its perspector is inside, on or outside the Steiner in-ellipse. Moreover, its points at infinity, expressed from the perspector $P = p : q : r$ have the following barycentrics :

$$M_\infty \simeq \begin{pmatrix} -2p \\ p + q - r - W \\ p + r - q + W \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{where } W^2 = p^2 + q^2 + r^2 - 2pq - 2qr - 2rp$$

When the point at infinity of a circumparabola is $u : v : w$, its perspector is $P = u^2 : v^2 : w^2$.

Proof. Immediate computation. Mind the fact that $W^2 = -3$ when P is at $X(2)$. For the second part, start from $T = u : v : -u - v$, and compute the circumconic relative to $u^2 : v^2 : (u + v)^2$. \square

Remark 11.7.6. Properties of the CircumRH, aka the circumscribed rectangular hyperbola, are collected at Subsection 11.22.2

Proposition 11.7.7. The four common points of two (non equal) circumconics $CC(P)$ and $CC(Q)$ are the three vertices and the tripole of line PQ .

Proof. Conics that share five distinct points are equal. The value of X follows by direct inspection. \square

Exercise 11.7.8. A stupid person would rewrite this property as "the fourth point is isotom $(P \wedge Q)$ ". But you, the astute reader, would not. Expand why !

Proposition 11.7.9. The perspector P of a circumconic going through point Q lies on the tripolar of Q . In other words,

$$P = Q *_b T \quad \text{where } T \in \mathcal{L}_b$$

Therefore, the perspector of the circumconic which goes through two additional points Q_1, Q_2 is the intersection of the tripolars of Q_1 and Q_2 (caveat: this is not the tripole of line Q_1Q_2). In other words, :

$$P = Q_1 *_b Q_2 *_b^t(Q_1 \wedge Q_2)$$

Proof. Direct inspection. \square

Remark 11.7.10. Collineations can be used to transform any circumconic into the circumcircle or the Steiner out-ellipse, so that many proofs can be done assuming such special cases. More details in Proposition 15.4.3.

Proposition 11.7.11. Let be given Δ and K where Δ is a line (tripole G) that cuts the sidelines BC, CA, AB in A', B', C' and K is a circumconic (perspector P). Let $M = x : y : z$ be a point on Δ , and A'' the other intersection of MA with K and cyclically $B'' \in MB \cap K, C'' \in MC \cap K$. Then lines $A'A'', B'B'', C'C''$ are concurrent on a point $Q \in K$. Moreover, the conjugacy that exchanges P and G exchanges also M and $Q(M)$.

Proof. Use $\Delta \simeq [\rho, \sigma, \tau]$, $P = p : q : r$, $M = 1/\rho : t/\sigma : -(1+t)/\tau$ (where t is a parameter) and obtain

$$Q = \frac{p}{\rho x} : \frac{q}{\sigma y} : \frac{r}{\tau z} \quad \square$$

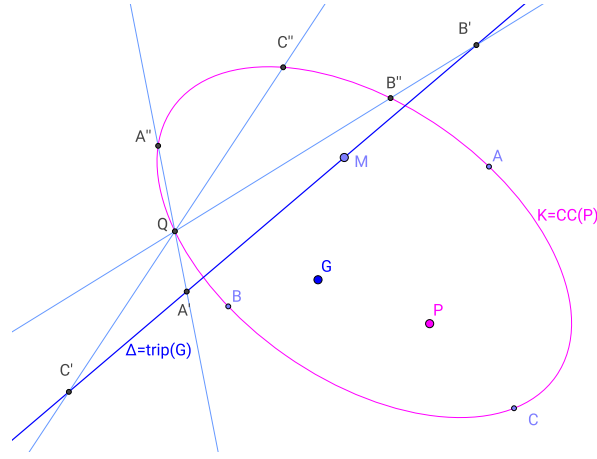


Figure 11.4: Conjugacy between a line and a circumconic

11.8 Inconics

Definition 11.8.1. An inconic is a conic that is tangent to the three sides of the reference triangle.

Exercise 11.8.2. Compute the determinant which asserts that $pB + (1 - p + K)C$, etc and $pB + (1 - p - K)C$, etc are con-conics where K is evanescent. Conclude.

Theorem 11.8.3 (inconics). *The punctual and tangential equations of an inconic \mathcal{C}_i can be written as :*

$${}^tX \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}_i} \cdot X, \Delta \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}_i^*} \cdot {}^t\Delta \quad \text{where} \quad \boxed{\mathcal{C}_i} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} f^2 & -fg & -fh \\ -fg & g^2 & -hg \\ -fh & -hg & h^2 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \boxed{\mathcal{C}_i^*} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & h & g \\ h & 0 & f \\ g & f & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.6)$$

where $\Delta = [f, g, h]$ is the so-called **auxiliary line** of the conic. Let us note $P \doteq \text{tripolar}(\Delta) \simeq 1/f : 1/g : 1/h$ and $Q = \text{isotom}P \simeq f : g : h$. The dual conic of \mathcal{C}_i is precisely $CC(Q)$ (that acts over lines). The contact points of $\boxed{\mathcal{C}_i}$ are $0 : h : g$, etc (mind the order !). They are the cevians of point P . This point P is the perspector between triangle ABC and its polar triangle with respect to the conic, while Δ is its perspectrix. Finally, the center of \mathcal{C}_i is the complement of $\text{isotom}(P)$.

Proof. By definition, $\boxed{\mathcal{C}_i^*}$ must have a zero diagonal. Then $\boxed{\mathcal{C}_i}$ is its adjoint. Perspectivity is obvious, while center is the pole of the line at infinity. \square

Corollary 11.8.4. *Direct relations between center and perspector are as follows :*

$$\begin{aligned} U &= \text{complem}(\text{isotom}(P)) = \text{crossmul}(X_2, P) = P *_b \text{complem}(P) \\ P &= \text{isotom}(\text{anticomplem}(U)) = \text{crossdiv}(U, X_2) \end{aligned}$$

Construction 11.8.5. (inconics) *A graphical tool can construct any conic from five points. Given the perspector $P \simeq p : q : r$, the points on the cevian lines are $A_1 = qB + rC$, etc and $A_2 = qB + rC + 4pA$, etc. And therefore,*

$$\text{cross_ratio}(A, A_1, P, A_2) = 4$$

Proposition 11.8.6. *When $p : q : r$ is the perspector, a **parametrization** of $IC(P)$ is*

$$M(t) \simeq p : q t^2 : r(1+t)^2 \quad (11.7)$$

Proof. Direct inspection. \square

Proposition 11.8.7. *The 'complem formula' is as follows:*

$$1 \frac{M_{cc}(t)}{\text{tripolar}(P) \cdot M_{cc}(t)} + 2 \frac{M_{ic}(t)}{\text{tripolar}(P) \cdot M_{ic}(t)} = 3 \frac{P}{\text{tripolar}(P) \cdot P} = P$$

where $M_{cc}(t)$ is the standard parametrization of $CC(P)$ and $M_{ic}(t)$ the standard parametrization of $IC(P)$. This amounts to use $\text{tripolar}(P)$ as 'line at infinity' to normalize the columns in the assertion $M_{cc} + 2M_{ic} \simeq P$.

Proof. From (11.5), (11.7) and the obvious :

$$1 \times \left(\frac{1}{t^2 + t + 1} \begin{bmatrix} t(1+t)p \\ (1+t)q \\ -tr \end{bmatrix} \right) + 2 \times \left(\frac{1/2}{t^2 + t + 1} \begin{bmatrix} p \\ qt^2 \\ r(1+t)^2 \end{bmatrix} \right) = 3 \times \left(\frac{1}{3} \begin{bmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{bmatrix} \right)$$

□

Construction 11.8.8. An inscribed conic can be generated as follows. Given the perspector $P \simeq p : q : r$, draw the cevians, obtain $A_P B_P C_P$ and draw the cevian triangle. Draw an arbitrary line Δ through B . Define $B_a = (B_P A_P) \cap \Delta$ and $B_c = (B_P C_P) \cap \Delta$. Then $M = B_a C_P \cap B_c A_P$ is on the conic. Thereafter, you can define Δ by a point X on the circumcircle, and generate C_i as the locus of M (parametrization by a turn).

Proof. Use $X = x : y : z$ so that $\Delta \simeq [-z, 0, x]$. Thereafter :

$$B_a \simeq \begin{pmatrix} prx \\ pqz - qrx \\ zpr \end{pmatrix}, B_c \simeq \begin{pmatrix} prx \\ qrx - pqz \\ zpr \end{pmatrix}, M \simeq \begin{pmatrix} pr^2 x^2 \\ q(pz - rx)^2 \\ z^2 p^2 r \end{pmatrix}$$

One can check that M is on the conic and that $t = \frac{px}{rx} - 1$.

□

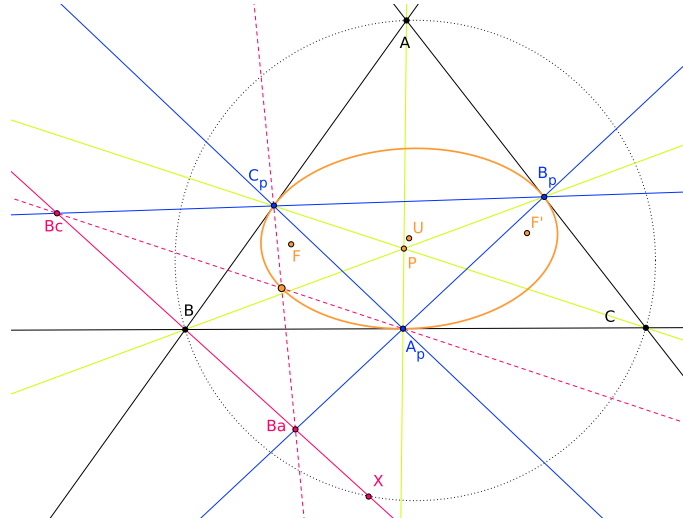


Figure 11.5: How to generate an inscribed conic from its perspector.

Proposition 11.8.9. Points at infinity. An inscribed conic, with auxiliary point $Q \simeq f : g : h$, perspector $P \simeq p : q : r$ and center $U \simeq u : v : w$ is an ellipse, a parabola or an hyperbola when quantity

$$W^2 = fgh(f + g + h) = \frac{pq + pr + rq}{p^2 q^2 r^2} = (u + v + w)(v + w - u)(u + v - w)(w + u - v)$$

is, respectively, positive, null or negative. The boundaries are the line at infinity and the sidelines of ABC for Q , the Steiner circum-ellipse for P and the line at infinity and the sidelines of the medial triangle for U . Moreover, its points at infinity have the following barycentrics :

$$M_{\infty}^{\pm} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} (h + g)^2 \\ fg - (f + g + h)h \pm 2\sqrt{-W^2} \\ fh - (f + g + h)g \mp 2\sqrt{-W^2} \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. Immediate computation for the M_∞ , followed by $P = \text{isotom}(Q)$, $U = \text{anticomplem}(Q)$. \square

Proposition 11.8.10. *When center U is given, the perspectors P_i , P_c of the corresponding in- and circum-conics are related by :*

$$P_i *_b P_c = U \quad ; \quad P_i = \text{anticomplem}(P_c)$$

When perspector P is given, the centers U_i , U_c are aligned with $P = p : q : r$ together with $p^2 : q^2 : r^2$.

Proof. Direct inspection. \square

Proposition 11.8.11. *Let P be a fixed point, not on the sidelines, and Q be a point moving point on $\text{tripolar}(P)$. The envelope of all the lines $\Delta \doteq \text{tripolar}(Q)$ is the inconic $IC(P)$. Moreover, the contact point of Δ is $T = Q *_b Q \div_b P$.*

Proof. This result has already be given. But now, this is the right place to prove it. Write :

$$\begin{aligned} P &= p : q : r \\ Q &= p(\sigma - \tau) : q(\tau - \rho) : r(\rho - \sigma) \\ \Delta &\simeq (1 \div p(\sigma - \tau) : 1 \div q(\tau - \rho) : 1 \div r(\rho - \sigma)) \\ T &= p(\sigma - \tau)^2 : q(\tau - \rho)^2 : r(\rho - \sigma)^2 \end{aligned}$$

and check that : $\Delta \cdot \text{Adjoint}(\boxed{C_i}) \cdot {}^t\Delta = 0$, $\Delta \cdot T = 0$ and ${}^tT \cdot \boxed{C_i} \cdot T = 0$ where $\boxed{C_i}$ is given in (11.6) \square

11.9 Poncelet porism

Definition 11.9.1. We will say that two conics $C_{\text{in}}, C_{\text{out}}$ form a Poncelet configuration when it exists a triangle A, B, C inscribed in C_{out} and circumscribed to C_{in} .

Proposition 11.9.2. Poncelet porism. *Let A, B, C be the existing triangle, taken as reference, and $P \simeq p : q : r$, $U \simeq u : v : w$ the perspectors of the circumconic C_{out} and inconic C_{in} . Then any point $M \in C_{\text{out}}$ can be taken as the initial vertex of a poristic triangle.*

The vertices and the contact points are given by

$$\begin{aligned} M_t \in C_{\text{out}} &\simeq p : \frac{q}{t} : \frac{-r}{1+t} \\ N_t \in C_{\text{in}} &\simeq u : v t^2 : w (1+t)^2 \end{aligned}$$

where parameters $t = t_1, t_2, t_3$ are bound by the relations

$$\begin{aligned} t_1 + t_2 + t_3 &= \mu \\ t_1 t_2 + t_2 t_3 + t_3 t_1 &= -\mu - 1 - (qu \div pv) - (ru \div pw) \\ t_1 t_2 t_3 &= (qu) \div (pv) \end{aligned}$$

In other words, parameter μ describes the poristic triangle as a whole, while the t_j describe the individual vertices and contact points.

Proof. Start from $M_t, M_s \in C_{\text{out}}$ and write that $M_t M_s$ is tangent to C_{in} . This gives an equation in s where

$$s_1 + s_2 = -\frac{p v w t (1+t) + q w u (1+t) + r u v t}{t (1+t) p v w} ; \quad s_1 s_2 = \frac{q u}{t p v}$$

And now, compute the line

$$M_{s;1} \wedge M_{s;2} \simeq [qr, pr s_1 s_2, pq (1 + s_1 + s_2 + s_1 s_2)]$$

This gives $M_2 M_3 \simeq \left[\frac{1}{u}, \frac{1}{v t}, \frac{-1}{w (1+t)} \right]$, which is indeed tangent to C_{in} , while the contact point is $N_1 \simeq u : v t^2 : w (1+t)^2$.

From now on, using $t = t_1$ as main parameter would be an error: due to the symmetry, each object would be described three times, increasing the degree of the expressions by a factor 3. \square

Proposition 11.9.3. *Synchronization: $M' \doteq M \div_b P$ and $N \div_b U$ belong, respectively, to the out-Steiner and in-Steiner conics. And then $N' \ast_b M' \ast_b M' \simeq G = X(2)$.*

Proposition 11.9.4. *When both conics are circles, we have $R(R - 2r) = d^2$ where R, r are both radiuses and d the distance between the centers. When they are the circum- and the in-circle of ABC then we have the so called *Brisse Transform* (2001):*

$$N = \text{isogon}(M) \ast_b \text{isogon}(M) \ast_b X(7)$$

Proof. First part is the Euler's formula, second part is the previous proposition. \square

11.10 Conic cross-ratios

Proposition 11.10.1. *All the lines λ through a given point P form a linear projective family F . Consider a transversal line D (i.e. a line that doesn't go through P). Then cross ratio remains unchanged by application $F \hookrightarrow D, \lambda \mapsto \lambda \cap D$.*

Proof. Obvious since the wedge operator is a linear transform $\lambda \mapsto \lambda \wedge D$: the parametrization is preserved. \square

Proposition 11.10.2. *Consider four fixed points A, B, C, U with no alignments and define the moving cross-ratio of a point M in the plane as the cross-ratio of lines MA, MB, MC, MU . The level lines of this function are the conics passing through A, B, C, U . Using barycentrics with respect to ABC , we have the more precise statement: the level line of a given μ is the circumscribed conic whose perspector is $P \simeq -u : v\mu : w(1 - \mu)$, on the tripolar of $U = u : v : w$.*

Definition 11.10.3. Conic-cross-ratio. Consider a fixed proper conic \mathcal{C} , and four points A, B, C, U lying on this conic. Then the cross-ratio of lines MA, MB, MC, MU does not depends upon the choice of the auxiliary point M as long as this point M remains on the conic. If we consider \mathcal{C} as a circumconic with perspector $P = p : q : r$ wrt triangle ABC , we have :

$$\text{cross_ratio}(A, B, C, U) = \mu \quad \text{when} \quad U \simeq \begin{pmatrix} (\mu^2 - \mu)p \\ (1 - \mu)q \\ \mu r \end{pmatrix}$$

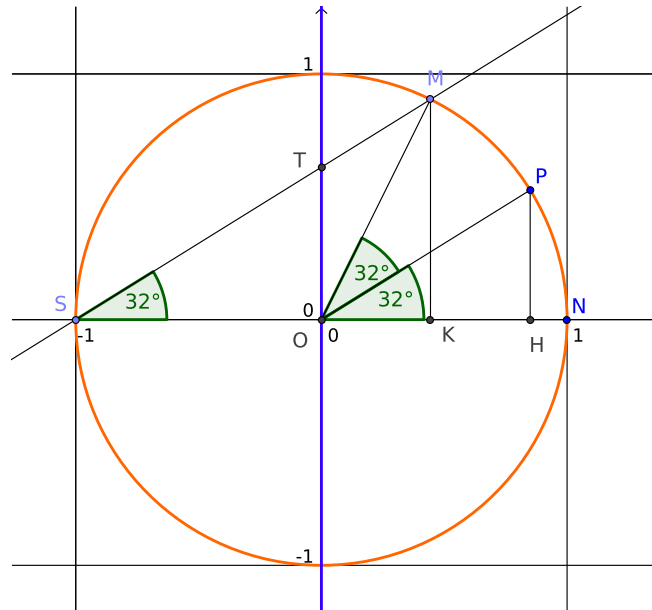


Figure 11.6: Stereographic projection

Remark 11.10.4. In the complex plane, the quantity defined in Theorem 3.2.10 is nothing but the usual cross-ratio, as computed from complex affixes. In order to be sure that, given four points on a circle, the conic cross-ratio and the usual \mathbb{C} cross-ratio are the same quantity, let us consider the stereographic projection.

Definition 11.10.5. Stereographic projection. See Figure 11.6. Use cartesian coordinates. The North and South points are $(+1, 0)$ and $(-1, 0)$.

Start from $P(c, s)$. Define $M(C, S)$ by doubling the rotation and $T(0, t)$ by intersection of SM with the y -axis. Apply Thales to similar triangles SOT and SKM , and Pythagoras to OHP . This gives :

$$c^2 + s^2 = 1, (C, S) = (c^2 - s^2, 2cs), \frac{t}{1} = \frac{S}{1+C}$$

and leads to $t = s/c$, proving that $(SO, ST) = (ON, OP)$ and therefore that

$$\cos 2\vartheta = \frac{1 - t^2}{1 + t^2}, \sin 2\vartheta = \frac{2t}{1 + t^2}$$

Moreover, circular cross-ratio between M_j points is equal to linear cross-ratio between T_j points (this is the definition), while complex cross-ratio between M_j points is equal to complex cross-ratio between T_j points due to the homography :

$$z = (1 + it)/(1 - it); t = i(1 - z)/(1 + z)$$

11.11 Some in- and circum- conics

A list of specific in- and circum- conics is given in Table 11.1. Kiepert RH is studied at Brocard Section.

P	IC	center	CC	center
X_1		X_{37}		X_9
X_2	inSteiner 11.19	X_2	circumSteiner	X_2
X_3		X_{216}	outMacBeath 11.11.3	X_6
X_4	orthic	X_6		X_{1249}
X_5		X_{233}		X_{216}
X_6	Brocard 11.20	X_{39}	circumcircle 12.4	X_3
X_7	incircle 12.5	X_1	Soddy conic 11.14.1	X_{3160}
X_8	Mandart	X_9		X_{3161}
X_{99}	Kiepert parabola 11.21.6	IX_{523}		???
X_{190}	Yff parabola	IX_{514}		???
X_{264}	inMacBeath 11.11.2	X_5		???
∞X_{523}		X_{115}	Kiepert RH 12.22.2	X_{115}
X_{598}	inLemoine 11.2	X_{597}		???
X_{647}		???	Jerabek RH 11.22.12	X_{125}
X_{650}		???	Feuerbach RH 11.22.13	X_{11}

RH is rectangular hyperbola

Table 11.1: Some Inconics and Circumconics

Example 11.11.1. The **Steiner** ellipses (centers=perspector= X_2) are what happen to both the circum- and in-circle of an equilateral triangle when this triangle is transformed into an ordinary triangle by an affinity. The Steiner circumellipse (S) is the isotomic conjugate of \mathcal{L}_b and the isogonal conjugate of the Lemoine axis. Since $isog(\mathcal{L}_b)$ is the circumcircle (C), the mapping $X \mapsto X *_b X_6$ sends (S) onto (C). Steiner in-ellipse is the envelope of the line whose tripole is at infinity (more about Steiner in-ellipse in Section 11.19).

Example 11.11.2. The **MacBeath-inconic** was introduced as follows:

Lemma 1: Let O, H be the common points of a coaxial system of circles. Let a variable circle of the system cut the line of centers at C . Let T be a point on the circumference such that $TC = k * OC$, where k is a fixed ratio. Then the locus of T is a conic with foci at O, H (Macbeath, 1949)

Its perspector is X(264), center X(5) and foci X(3) and X(4). Its barycentric equation is :

$$\sum \frac{a^4 (-a^2 + b^2 + c^2) x^2}{(c^2 + a^2 - b^2)(a^2 + b^2 - c^2)} - 2 \sum \frac{b^2 c^2 yz}{b^2 + c^2 - a^2}$$

and this conic goes through X(I) for I =

$$339, 1312, 1313, 2967, 2968, 2969, 2970, 2971, 2972, 2973, 2974$$

(spoiler) imaginary foci are $X(5) \pm 4iS X(523)$, on "the shortest cubic" Proposition 21.4.28.

Example 11.11.3. The **MacBeath-circumconic**, is the dual to the MacBeath-inconic. Its perspector is X(3) and its center X(6). Its barycentric equation is :

$$a^2(b^2 + c^2 - a^2)yz + b^2(c^2 + a^2 - b^2)zx + c^2(a^2 + b^2 - c^2)xy = 0$$

and it goes through X(I) for I =

$$110, 287, 648, 651, 677, 895, 1331, 1332, 1797, 1813, 1814, 1815$$

11.12 Cevian conics

Proposition 11.12.1. Cevian conic. For any points $P = p : q : r$ and $Q = u : v : w$, not on a sideline of ABC , the cevians of P and Q are on a same conic, whose equation in $x : y : z$ is *conicev* (P, Q) given by :

$$\frac{1}{up} x^2 + \frac{1}{qv} y^2 + \frac{1}{rw} z^2 - \left(\frac{1}{qu} + \frac{1}{vp}\right) yx - \left(\frac{1}{ru} + \frac{1}{wp}\right) zx - \left(\frac{1}{rv} + \frac{1}{qw}\right) zy = 0$$

$$\text{conicev}(P, Q) \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 2qr vw & -(pv + uq) rw & -(pw + ru) qv \\ -(pv + uq) rw & 2rp uw & -(qw + rv) pu \\ -(pw + ru) qv & -(qw + rv) pu & 2pq uv \end{bmatrix}$$

Proof. Apply $(x, y, z) \rightarrow [x^2, xy, y^2, yz, z^2, zx]$ to the six points and check that rank isn't 6. \square

Example 11.12.2. Any inconic is a cevian conic : $IC(P) = \text{conicev}(P, P)$. For example, the incircle is $IC(X_7) = \text{conicev}(X_7, X_7)$.

A non trivial example is the nine-points circle, aka $\text{conicev}(X_2, X_4)$.

Proposition 11.12.3. Assume that a conic \mathcal{C} encounters the sidelines of ABC in six (real) points, none of them being a vertex A, B, C . Three of these points are the cevians of some point P if and only if :

$$m_{33}m_{22}m_{11} - m_{11}m_{23}^2 - m_{22}m_{13}^2 - m_{33}m_{12}^2 - 2m_{13}m_{23}m_{12} = \det M - 4m_{13}m_{23}m_{12} = 0$$

In this case, the remaining three intersections are the cevians of some point Q and both P, Q are given by :

$$P, Q \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \left(+m_{13}m_{12} + m_{11}m_{23} + m_{13}\sqrt{m_{12}^2 - m_{22}m_{11}} \right) / m_{11} \\ \left(-m_{22}m_{13} - m_{23}m_{12} + m_{23}\sqrt{m_{12}^2 - m_{22}m_{11}} \right) / m_{22} \\ -\sqrt{m_{12}^2 - m_{22}m_{11}} \end{bmatrix}$$

Proof. Hypotheses are implying $m_{11} \neq 0$ ($A \notin \mathcal{C}$) and $m_{12}^2 - m_{22}m_{11} \geq 0$ (existence of intersections). \square

Exercise 11.12.4. The fourth common point F between cevian conics $\text{conicev}(P, Q_1)$ and $\text{conicev}(P, Q_2)$ can be obtained from the tripolars of Q_1, Q_2 . We have :

$$\begin{aligned} F &\simeq \text{anticomplem} \left(X \div_b P \right) *_b X \quad \text{where} \\ X &\doteq \text{tripolar}(Q_1) \cap \text{tripolar}(Q_2) = (Q_1 \wedge Q_2) *_b Q_1 *_b Q_2 \end{aligned}$$

Exercise 11.12.5. When $Q = X(2)$, then $\text{conicev}(P, Q)$ contains also points $(P + A)/2$, etc (de Villiers, 2006).

Proposition 11.12.6. For any points $P = p : q : r$ and $Q = u : v : w$, not on a sideline of ABC , the eight points $\pm p : \pm q : \pm r$ and $\pm u : \pm v : \pm w$ (i.e. P, Q and their anticevians) are on a same conic, whose equation in $x : y : z$ is $\text{conacev}(P, Q)$ given by :

$$\text{conacev}(P, Q) \simeq \begin{bmatrix} g^2r^2 - h^2q^2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & h^2p^2 - f^2r^2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & f^2q^2 - g^2p^2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Proof. Straightforward computation. Formally, the coefficients are $[f^2 : g^2 : h^2] \wedge [p^2 : q^2 : r^2]$. \square

11.13 Direction of axes

Proposition 11.13.1. Let \mathcal{C} be a conic, but not a circle, and γ an auxiliary circle. Consider, in any order, the common points X_1, X_2, X_3, X_4 of \mathcal{C} and γ . Then axes of \mathcal{C} have the same directions as bisectors of angle $\left(\overbrace{X_1X_2, X_3X_4} \right)$.

Proof. Use rectangular Cartesian coordinates. Then \mathcal{C} is $y^2 = 2px + qx^2$ and γ is $(x - a)^2 + (y - b)^2 = r^2$. Substitution $y^2 = Y$ gives :

$$2by = (1 + q)x^2 + (2p - 2a)x + b^2 + a^2 - r^2 \quad ; \quad Y = 2px + qx^2$$

By substitution and reorganization :

$$2b \left(\frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} + \frac{y_4 - y_3}{x_4 - x_3} \right) = 4(p - a) + (1 + q)(x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4)$$

But the fourth degree equation $0 = Y - y^2 = (1 + q)x^4 - 4(1 + q)(a - p)x^3 \dots$ leads to $\sum x_i = 4(a - p)/(1 + q)$. This proves that lines X_1X_2 and X_3X_4 are symmetric wrt the axes and the conclusion follows. By the way, it has been proven that points X_i can be sorted in any order without changing the result. \square

Definition 11.13.2. Gudulic point. The gudulic point of a circumconic is defined as its fourth intersection with the circumcircle. Its barycentrics are rational wrt the barycentrics of the perspector.

$$\begin{aligned} Gu &= \text{isotom}(b^2r - c^2q : c^2p - a^2r : a^2q - b^2p) \\ &= \text{tripole}(P \wedge X(6)) \end{aligned} \tag{11.8}$$

Definition 11.13.3. Gudulic point (general method). The former proposition shows that any pair of orthogonal directions can be specified by giving a point M on the circumcircle Γ of ABC such that the bisectors of $\left(\overbrace{BC, AM} \right)$ have the required directions. This method was firstly used by Lemoine (1900) who called it "the point M method". In order to have a more specific name, the expression "gudulic point" was coined in a discussion at www.les-mathematiques.net. May be in honor of St Gudula of Brussels.

Proposition 11.13.4. *When \mathcal{C} is a circumconic, but not the circumcircle itself, directions of axes are given by the bisectors of $\left(\overbrace{BC, AG_u}\right)$ where G_u is the fourth common point of \mathcal{C} and Γ . When \mathcal{C} is not a circumconic, it exists nevertheless an unique point $G_u \in \Gamma$ so that axes of \mathcal{C} have the same directions as the bisectors of $\left(\overbrace{BC, AG_u}\right)$. We have the formulas :*

$$\boxed{\mathcal{C}} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} m_{11} & m_{12} & m_{13} \\ m_{12} & m_{22} & m_{23} \\ m_{13} & m_{23} & m_{33} \end{bmatrix} \mapsto G_u \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{(m_{11} - 2m_{12} + m_{22})b^2 - (m_{11} - 2m_{13} + m_{33})c^2} \\ \frac{1}{(m_{22} - 2m_{23} + m_{33})c^2 - (m_{11} - 2m_{12} + m_{22})a^2} \\ \frac{1}{(m_{11} - 2m_{13} + m_{33})a^2 - (m_{22} - 2m_{23} + m_{33})b^2} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$CC(P) \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} 1/(rb^2 - qc^2) \\ 1/(pc^2 - ra^2) \\ 1/(qa^2 - pb^2) \end{pmatrix} \quad ; \quad IC(U) \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} 1/(w^2b^2 - v^2c^2) \\ 1/(u^2c^2 - w^2a^2) \\ 1/(v^2a^2 - u^2b^2) \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. First part is the preceding proposition. For the second part, we have :

$$\begin{aligned} \tan\left(\overbrace{BC, BU}\right) + \tan\left(\overbrace{AG_u, BU}\right) &= 0 \\ \tan\left(\overbrace{BU_1, BU}\right) + \tan\left(\overbrace{BU_2, BU}\right) &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

where U_1, U_2 are the points at infinity of the conic, U is the unknown direction of either axis and G_u is the required gudulic point. We use the usual parametrization of points at infinity (using t, t_1, t_2, s) to describe U, U_1, U_2 , isogon (G_u). We extract $t_1 + t_2$ and $t_1 t_2$ from the very equation of the conic, and substitute. This gives a quadratic equation in t alone, and a linear equation in s , with t as parameter. Eliminating leads to s and thus to G_u . \square

Proposition 11.13.5. *(Spoiler) Let $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta$ be four turns on the unit circle. Then bisectors of the two lines obtained by pairing these four points have clinant τ^2 where $\tau^4 = \alpha\beta\gamma\delta$.*

Proof. Write that $\tan(AB, OT) + \tan(CD, OT) = 0$, and factor the numerator. \square

11.14 Focuses of a conic

Definition 11.14.1. A point F is a **focus** for a curve when the isotropic lines from this point are tangent to the curve.

Proposition 11.14.2. *The geometric focuses of a conic are examples of the preceding definition. But a conic has, in the general case, four analytical focuses : the two geometrical ones, and two extra focuses which stay on the other axis and are not visible*

Proof. Let us consider ellipse $x^2/a^2 + y^2/b^2 = 1$ and isotropic line $(x - x_0) + i(y - y_0) = 0$. Their intersection is given by a second degree equation whose discriminant is $(x_0 + i y_0)^2 - (a^2 - b^2) = 0$. It vanishes when $y_0 = 0, x_0 = \pm f$ (as usual) but also when $x_0 = 0, y_0 = \pm i f$. \square

Proposition 11.14.3. *(spoiler) When using the Morley space to compute the focuses, one equation applies to map $\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T}$ and the other one applies to map $\overline{\mathbf{Z}} : \mathbf{T}$. When going back to the Morley space, there are four ways of pairing the two "focuses" of the first map with the two "focuses" of the second map.*

Proof. When, for a visible conic, the first map says $z = u \pm v\sqrt{w}$, the second map says $\zeta = \bar{u} \pm \bar{v}\sqrt{w}$ (with $w \in \mathbb{R}$). But the conjugate of \sqrt{w} is either \sqrt{w} or $-\sqrt{w}$, depending of the sign of the real number w . \square

Proposition 11.14.4. *Let be given two points $F_1 \simeq f_1 : g_1 : h_1$ and $F_2 \simeq f_2 : g_2 : h_2$. All the conics that admit F_1, F_2 as foci form a tangential pencil. This pencil is generated by (1) the tangential conic $\{F_1, F_2\}$ of all the lines $\Delta \simeq [u, v, w]$ through F_1 or F_2 , whose equation is :*

$$(f_1u + g_1v + h_1w)(f_2u + g_2v + h_2w)$$

and (2) the tangential conic $\{\Omega^+, \Omega^-\}$ of all the isotropic lines (through one or another umbilic), whose equation is : $\Delta \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t\Delta$.

Proof. Giving the focuses gives four lines that are tangent to the conic. \square

Remark 11.14.5. The "Joint Orthoptic Circle" of two confocal conics is now described at [11.25](#).

Remark 11.14.6. Non parabolic inconics are considered at [11.18](#), while inscribed parabola and circumscribed parabola are considered at [Section 11.21](#)

11.14.1 Soddy Conic

Definition 11.14.7. The **Soddy line** is the line that goes through X(1) [incircle], X(7) [Gergonne], X(20) [Longchamps], 77, 170, X(175) and X(176) [Soddy focuses], 269, 279, 347, 390, 481, 482, 516 [infinity] ... 360 ETC points (in 2024).

Definition 11.14.8. The **Soddy conic** is the circumconic whose perspector is X(7).

Proposition 11.14.9. *Center is X(3160). Gudulic point is X(927). Direction of axes are X(516) and X(514). The foci are X(175) and X(176). This curve is bi-tangent with the polar circle (along the $[a, b, c]$ line).*

Proof. Foci can be obtained by the Plucker method. This leads to a fourth degree equation, that factors easily. For the contact, one can check that:

$$\text{Soddy} = \text{polar_circle} + (ax + by + cz)^2$$

\square

11.15 Heptagonal triangle

Remark 11.15.1. I am not sure about the right place of this section in this Glossary. For the moment, this section rather deals with conics and focuses.

Definition 11.15.2. Symbols δ, τ are intended to be unevaluated, inert variables, while quantities $\hat{\delta}, \hat{\tau}$ are defined as "the first root after $z = 1$ " of polynomials $\delta^7 - 1$ and $\tau^{28} - 1$. Introducing the algebraic number $\hat{\delta}$ to study the heptagon is self-explanatory. And then $\hat{\tau}$ is introduced in order to deal with surds of surds. As a result

$$\begin{aligned} \delta &= \hat{\delta} \doteq \text{RootOf}(\mathbf{Z}^6 + \mathbf{Z}^5 + \mathbf{Z}^4 + \mathbf{Z}^3 + \mathbf{Z}^2 + \mathbf{Z} + 1) && \approx 0.6235 + 0.7818i \\ \tau &= \hat{\tau} \doteq \text{RootOf}(\mathbf{Z}^{12} - \mathbf{Z}^{10} + \mathbf{Z}^8 - \mathbf{Z}^6 + \mathbf{Z}^4 - \mathbf{Z}^2 + 1) && \approx 0.9749 + 0.2225i \end{aligned}$$

Moreover, companion matrices of these polynomials will be noted $\boxed{\delta}$ and $\boxed{\tau}$.

Theorem 11.15.3. *Surd $\sqrt{7}$ belongs to $\mathbb{Q}(\delta, i)$ and, therefore, belongs to $\mathbb{Q}(\tau)$. Moreover,*

$$\begin{aligned} \text{rac7}_{\delta} &\doteq && -i(2\delta^4 + 2\delta^2 + 2\delta + 1) = && \sqrt{7} \\ \text{rac7}_{\tau} &\doteq && -2\tau^{11} + 2\tau^9 - \tau^7 + 2\tau = && \sqrt{7} \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Let $\boxed{\mathcal{C}}$ be the conic through the points $1, \delta, \delta^2, \delta^4$ and \mathbf{Z} . Then $\langle \boxed{\mathcal{M}_z} | \boxed{\mathcal{C}} \rangle = 0$ is the equation of the RH through $1, \delta, \delta^2, \delta^4$. Its matrix is

$$\mathcal{H} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 2 & -1 - K & 0 \\ -1 - K & -2 & K \\ 0 & K & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

where $K \doteq \delta + \delta^2 + \delta^4$. It happens that $K = (-1 + i\sqrt{7})/2$. This can be seen by obtaining $7I_{12}$ when substituting $\delta = \boxed{\delta}$ into $(-i(2K + 1))^2 \dots$ and obtaining a non negative value when substituting δ by an approximate value before squaring. \square

Proposition 11.15.4. *Algebraic number δ is constructible by circles and conics.*

Proof. This result is attributed to Archimedes ([Hogendijk, 1984](#)). Quantity $\sqrt{7}$ is constructible. Vertices of \mathcal{H} are $(1 \pm \sqrt{2} + i\sqrt{7})/4$, while the center of \mathcal{H} is $(1 + i\sqrt{7})/4$ and can be used to construct the replicas of $z_0 = 1$ (axes are directed along X, Y axes). \square

Proposition 11.15.5. *Sidelength a, b, c don't belong to $\mathbb{Q}(\delta)$. Nevertheless, one has:*

$$\begin{aligned} a^2 &= \delta^5 + \delta^4 + \delta^3 + \delta^2 + 3 & b^2 &= -\delta^4 - \delta^3 + 2 & c^2 &= -\delta^5 - \delta^2 + 2 \\ a &= -\tau^9 + \tau^5 & b &= -\tau^{11} + \tau^9 - \tau^7 + \tau^5 - \tau^3 + 2\tau & c &= -\tau^{11} + \tau^3 \end{aligned}$$

together with $S = \sqrt{7}/4$.

Proof. Direct computation. \square

Exercise 11.15.6. Consider the Kiepert RH, which goes through $ABCGH$ (see Definition 12.22.1). Compute the focuses –they belong to $\mathbb{Q}(\tau)$. One of them is on the circumcircle, the other on the Euler line.

Exercise 11.15.7. Consider the conic which goes through A, B, C, G, O . Compute the focuses –they belong to $\mathbb{Q}(\tau)$. What can be said about the circle $[F_1, F_2]$?

11.16 PPPP, the four points pencil

Definition 11.16.1. The conics \mathcal{C} that are going through four fixed points $M_1 = A, M_2 = B, M_3 = C, M_0 = D$ form a linear pencil, called a PPPP, i.e. a "four points pencil".

Notation 11.16.2. Using triangle ABC as barycentric basis, the fourth point is described as $1/p : 1/q : 1/r$ while the pencil will be parametrized by $E^* \simeq 1 : t : -1 - t \in \mathcal{L}_b$, i.e. by $E \simeq a^2 : b^2/t : -c^2/(1+t)$ – the gudulic point of \mathcal{C} (see (11.8)).

Proposition 11.16.3. *The matrix of \mathcal{C} , the ABCDE conic, is*

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & c^2(b^2q - a^2pt) & -b^2(a^2p(1+t) + c^2r) \\ c^2(b^2q - a^2pt) & 0 & a^2(b^2q(1+t) + c^2rt) \\ -b^2(a^2p(1+t) + c^2r) & a^2(b^2q(1+t) + c^2rt) & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

The tangents at ABC determine a trigone. Let $\mathcal{T}_P \doteq P_a P_b P_c$ be the corresponding triangle. Then

$$P_a \simeq a^2(b^2q(1+t) + c^2rt) : b^2(a^2p(1+t) + c^2r) : c^2(a^2pt - b^2q)$$

Triangle \mathcal{T}_P is perspective with $\mathcal{T}_0 = ABC$, perspector P , and with \mathcal{T}_G (the midpoints triangle), perspector U . Point P is the usual perspector of \mathcal{C} when seen as an ABC circumconic, while U is the center of \mathcal{C} . The locus of P when $E \in \Gamma$ is the tripolar of D , while the locus of U is the conic G through the six midpoints of quadrangle $ABCD$.

Proof. One has $\text{loc}(P) = [p, q, r]$ and $\text{loc}(U) = \begin{bmatrix} -2p & p+q & p+r \\ p+q & -2q & q+r \\ p+r & q+r & -2r \end{bmatrix}$. \square

Proposition 11.16.4. Let $N_a = BC \cap DA$, etc be the diagonal points of quadrangle $ABCD$. All three are on G . The locus of the foci is a sixth degree algebraic curve, say \mathfrak{B}_6 , with six double points: the three N_j and the three R_j where

$$N_a \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ r \\ q \end{bmatrix} ; R_a \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 2rq(a^2p + S_b r + S_c q) \\ r(p^2a^2 - q^2b^2 + c^2r^2 + 2S_b rp) \\ q(p^2a^2 + q^2b^2 - c^2r^2 + 2S_c qp) \end{bmatrix}$$

Triangles \mathcal{T}_0 and \mathcal{T}_N are perspective (at D), while \mathcal{T}_0 and \mathcal{T}_R are perspective at

$$K_R \simeq \begin{bmatrix} qr(2S_a rq - p^2a^2 + q^2b^2 + c^2r^2) \\ rp(2S_b rp + p^2a^2 - q^2b^2 + c^2r^2) \\ pq(2S_c qp + p^2a^2 + q^2b^2 - c^2r^2) \end{bmatrix}$$

Moreover, R_a belongs to line $N_b N_c$, so that triangles \mathcal{T}_N and \mathcal{T}_R are perspective at:

$$\begin{aligned} K &\simeq \text{crossmul}(P, K_R) \\ &\simeq \begin{bmatrix} (a^2 p + S_b r + S_c q) (2 S_a r q - p^2 a^2 + q^2 b^2 + c^2 r^2) \\ (b^2 q + S_c p + S_a r) (2 S_b r p + p^2 a^2 - q^2 b^2 + c^2 r^2) \\ (c^2 r + S_a q + S_b p) (2 S_c q p + p^2 a^2 + q^2 b^2 - c^2 r^2) \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Direct computation. Moreover, one has $R_a *_b R_b *_b R_c \simeq K *_b K_R *_b D$. \square

11.17 FF, the focal tangential pencil

Definition 11.17.1. All of the tangential conics that share the same foci (homofocal conics) form a linear pencil. We will use B, C to note the foci, and A for a specific point (on the punctual conic).

Proposition 11.17.2. The FF pencil is generated by $\text{hyp}A^*$ and $\text{lip}A^*$ which are, respectively, the hyperbola and the ellipse through A . One has:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{hyp}A &\simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 2c(b-c) & 2b(c-b) \\ 2c(b-c) & a^2 - (b-c)^2 & -a^2 - (b-c)^2 \\ 2b(c-b) & -a^2 - (b-c)^2 & a^2 - (b-c)^2 \end{bmatrix} \\ \text{lip}A &\simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 2c(b+c) & 2b(b+c) \\ 2c(b+c) & (b+c)^2 - a^2 & a^2 + (b+c)^2 \\ 2b(b+c) & a^2 + (b+c)^2 & (b+c)^2 - a^2 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (11.9)$$

Proof. The four isotropic tangents provide four equations implying the matrix $\boxed{\mathcal{C}^*}$. Taking the adjoint matrix of the result and saying that $A \in \mathcal{C}$ leads to a second degree equation, which provides two solutions (as a reminder of the fact that the set of the \mathcal{C} is **not** a linear pencil). \square

Proposition 11.17.3. Tangent at A to $\text{hyp}A$ is the internal bisector (through I_0, I_a), while the tangent to $\text{lip}A$ is the external one (through I_b, I_c). Moreover (spoiler !) the (11.18) formulas are giving:

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma, \pi, f^4 &= \frac{(b-c)^2}{2} - \frac{a^2}{4}, \frac{-S^2(b-c)^2}{(b+c-a)(b+c+a)}, \frac{a^4}{16} \\ \sigma, \pi, f^4 &= \frac{(b+c)^2}{2} - \frac{a^2}{4}, \frac{+S^2(b+c)^2}{(a+b-c)(a+c-b)}, \frac{a^4}{16} \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Obvious computations. Moreover, the value of f^4 shouldn't be a surprise, while the signum of π characterizes beyond any doubt which one is the hyperbola and which one is the ellipse among this pair of conics. \square

11.18 Focuses of an inconic

Proposition 11.18.1. Let $F = p : q : r$ be a point not lying on the sidelines. As in Figure 11.8, we note F_a, F_b, F_c and F'_a, F'_b, F'_c the projections and the reflections of F about the sidelines ; G the isogonal conjugate of F , $\omega = (F + G)/2$ and $P_a = FG'_a \cap F'_a G$, etc. Then points P_a, P_b, P_c are the cevians of $P = (\text{isotom} \circ \text{anticomplem})(\omega)$, and are the contact points of $\mathcal{C} \doteq \text{inconic}(P)$. This conic admits ω as center and F, G as geometrical focuses. Moreover circle $F'_a F'_b F'_c$, centered at G is the circular directrix of this conic wrt focus F while circle $F_a F_b F_c G_a G_b G_c$ (the common pedal circle of F and G) is the principal circle of \mathcal{C} (tangent at major axis).

When either F or G is at infinity, the other is on the circumcircle, P is on the Steiner circumconic, and \mathcal{C} is a parabola.

P	F_1	F_2	P	F_1	F_2	P	F_1	F_2	P	F_1	F_2	P	F_1	F_2
2	2239162	39163	4555	900	901	18811	8	56	34393	102	515	35172	9111	9055
7	1	1	4569	934	3900	18812	10	58	34410	20	64	35174	2222	3738
13	13	15	4577	826	827	18813	17	61	34413	40	84	35179	1296	1499
14	14	16	4586	824	825	18814	18	62	35136	3565	3566	35181	4160	8691
69	46357	46358	4597	4588	4777	18815	36	80	35137	7927	7953	35510	42411	42412
80	39150	39151	5641	542	842	18816	104	517	35138	3906	11636	39626	39624	39625
99	110	523	6189	1380	3414	18817	186	265	35139	476	526	41072	30664	30665
190	101	514	6190	1379	3413	18818	187	671	35140	1297	1503	42371	688	689
264	3	4	6528	107	520	18819	371	485	35141	17768	28471	43091	530	2378
290	98	511	6540	4977	8701	18820	372	486	35142	3563	3564	43092	531	2379
598	2	6	6606	6362	?	18821	528	840	35143	35101	35105	43093	674	675
648	112	525	6613	42337	?	18822	537	2382	35145	2249	8680	43094	702	703
664	109	522	6635	6550	6551	18823	543	843	35147	2703	2787	43095	716	717
666	918	919	6648	3910	8687	18824	696	697	35148	2702	2786	43097	752	753
670	99	512	9487	9136	?	18825	712	713	35149	2708	2792	43099	760	761
671	111	524	10512	23	67	18827	740	741	35150	2700	2784	46132	788	789
886	888	9150	10604	25	69	18830	932	4083	35151	2699	2783	46133	912	915
889	891	898	11117	532	2380	18831	933	6368	35152	2711	2795	46134	924	925
892	690	691	11118	533	2381	23895	5995	23870	35156	1290	8674	46135	926	927
903	106	519	14727	42341	?	23896	5994	23871	35157	6366	14733	46136	952	953
1494	30	74	14970	732	733	32036	16806	23872	35159	35104	35108	46137	971	972
2481	105	518	15164	1113	2574	32037	16807	23873	35162	17770	28482	46138	1141	1154
2966	2715	2799	15165	1114	2575	32038	23880	32693	35164	2717	2801	46139	930	1510
3225	698	699	18026	108	521	32040	26716	?	35168	545	2384	46142	2698	2782
3227	536	739	18810	7	55	32041	4762	8693	35171	1308	3887	46143	2705	2789

Figure 11.7: Inconics: some P , F_1 , F_2

Remark 11.18.3. The Moebius-Steiner-Cremona transform (Section 9.8) provides another point of view... but computations aren't easier (nor worse).

Proposition 11.18.4. *The focus of an inconic can be obtained from the perspector by two successive second degree equations (ruler and compass construction). Let $P = p : q : r$ be the perspector. Then the four focuses can be written as :*

$$F_i \simeq \begin{pmatrix} p(r+q) + \sqrt{K} \\ q(r+p) + t\sqrt{K} \\ r(q+p) - (1+t)\sqrt{K} \end{pmatrix}$$

Then t is homographic in K , while K is solution of a second degree equation. The converse is true : K is homographic in t , while t is solution of a second degree equation (with same discriminant). Obviously, the two solutions in t lead to orthogonal directions (orthopoints at infinity)

Proof. Straightforward elimination. □

P	ω	F	G	FG	HK	nom
2	2			see 11.19		Steiner
7	1	1	1	$X1$	$X1$	inscrit
598	597	2	6	$X597 \pm X524$	$X597 \pm \frac{i}{4S} X1499$	Lemoine
264	5	4	3	$X5 \pm X30$	$X5 \pm i4S X523$	MacBeath
6	39	Br_1	Br_2	$X39 \pm X512$	$X39 \pm \frac{i}{4S} X511$	Brocard
80	44			$X44 \pm \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4S} X517$	$X44 \pm i\sqrt{3} X513$	
673	3008			$X3008 \pm W X514$	$X3008 \pm \frac{i}{4S} W X516$	
694	3229			$X3229 \pm W X512$	$X3229 \pm \frac{i}{4S} W X511$	

Table 11.2: Perspector and focuses of some in-conics

Example 11.18.5. Table 11.2 gives some examples of perspectors and focuses. In this table, expressions like $X5 \pm X30$ are not "up to a proportionality factor", but are addressing the usual simplified values. All expressions are "centered" at the center, the \pm term being at infinity. Imaginary focuses associated with perspector $X(80)$ have a very simple expression, namely $a : bj : cj^2$ and $a : bj^2 : cj$ where j is the third of a full turn.

$$W_{673} = \sqrt{a^2 + c^2 + b^2 - 2bc - 2ac - 2ba}$$

$$W_{694} = a^2 b^2 c^2 \sqrt{\left(\frac{1}{a} + \frac{1}{b} + \frac{1}{c}\right) \left(\frac{1}{a} + \frac{1}{b} - \frac{1}{c}\right) \left(\frac{1}{a} - \frac{1}{b} + \frac{1}{c}\right) \left(-\frac{1}{a} + \frac{1}{b} + \frac{1}{c}\right)}$$

Proposition 11.18.6. *Figure 11.7 gives some triples (P, F_1, F_2) where P is the perspector of an inscribed conic while F_1, F_2 are the corresponding focuses (isogonal conjugate of each other).*

Proof. For each point of the Kimberling's database taken as F_1 , compute $F_2 = isogon(F_1)$ and see if the corresponding P is also on the database. □

11.19 Focuses of the Steiner inconic

Remark 11.19.1. While having the simplest equation, this inconic rather illustrates that going from perspector to focuses is a hard road to follow !

Definition 11.19.2. The **Steiner** in-ellipse \mathcal{S} is what happen to the incircle of an equilateral triangle when this triangle is transformed into an ordinary triangle by an affinity. One has center =perspector = $X(2)$. Moreover, the Steiner inconic is the envelope of the lines whose tripoles are at infinity.

Fact 11.19.3. Since \mathcal{S} goes through $(B + C)/2$, etc, it goes also through $(4A + B + C)/6$.

Remark 11.19.4. As of now (2025-04-28) ency is not initialized at 39162..39165 !!!

11.19.1 Using Morley affixes

Lemma 11.19.5. Using Morley affixes, the tangential equation of the Steiner inconic is :

$$\boxed{\mathcal{C}_z^*} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 2\sigma_2\sigma_3 & 2\sigma_1\sigma_3 & \sigma_2\sigma_1 - 3\sigma_3 \\ 2\sigma_1\sigma_3 & 6\sigma_3 & 2\sigma_2 \\ \sigma_2\sigma_1 - 3\sigma_3 & 2\sigma_2 & 2\sigma_1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. Matrix $\boxed{\mathcal{C}_z^*}$ can be derived from Fact 11.19.3. One can also start from the barycentrics and transmute using $\boxed{\mathcal{C}_z^*} = \boxed{Lu} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}_b^*} \cdot {}^t\boxed{Lu}$. \square

Proposition 11.19.6. Therefore, the four foci are given by :

$$F_j \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \sigma_1 \pm W_0 W_f \\ 3 \\ \frac{\sigma_2}{\sigma_3} \pm \frac{W_g}{W_0} \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{where } W_0 = \sqrt{\sigma_3}, W_f = \sqrt{\frac{\sigma_1^2 - 3\sigma_2}{\sigma_3}}, W_g = \sqrt{\frac{\sigma_2^2 - 3\sigma_1\sigma_3}{\sigma_3}}$$

Note: W_f, W_g have been chosen to be conjugate of each other (while the conjugate of W_0 is $1/W_0$)

Proof. Write that the isotropic lines $\Omega_{\pm} F_j$ are tangent to the ellipse. From all the four possibilities, the $+, +$ and $-, -$, lead to the real focuses (visible points), the other two lead to non visible points (the analytical focuses). \square

Proposition 11.19.7. The axes of the conic are directed by

$$X_{3413}, X_{3414} \simeq \pm s_3 \frac{W_a}{W_b} : 0 : 1 \simeq \pm \sigma_3 \sqrt{\frac{\sigma_1^2 - 3\sigma_2}{\sigma_2^2 - 3\sigma_1\sigma_3}}$$

Proof. Compute $F_1 \wedge F_4$, etc. \square

Proposition 11.19.8 (Marden's theorem). (1945). When the vertices aren't aligned, the foci of the Steiner in-ellipse relative to the triangle ABC are the roots of the derivative polynomial, i.e. the roots of $\frac{\partial}{\partial \mathbf{Z}} (\mathbf{Z} - \alpha)(\mathbf{Z} - \beta)(\mathbf{Z} - \gamma)$.

Proof. Direct substitution. \square

11.19.2 Using barycentrics

Proposition 11.19.9. The barycentric equation of the Steiner inconic \mathcal{S} is :

$$x^2 + y^2 + z^2 - 2xy - 2yz - 2zx = (x, y, z) \begin{pmatrix} +1 & -1 & -1 \\ -1 & +1 & -1 \\ -1 & -1 & +1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = 0$$

When point $P \simeq p : q : r$ is inside the medial triangle, then $Q \simeq p^2 : q^2 : r^2$ is inside \mathcal{S} . Moreover point $M_a \doteq (q + r)^2 : q^2 : r^2$ is the intersection of \mathcal{S} and segment $[AQ]$.

Proof. Direct computation. □

Exercise 11.19.10. Applying the **mksgpi** formulas, we have:

$$\widehat{a} = \sqrt{\frac{S_\omega + W}{18}}, \widehat{b} = \sqrt{\frac{S_\omega - W}{18}}, f = \sqrt{\frac{W}{9}}$$

Notation 11.19.11. In this section, the following radicals will be used :

$$W = \sqrt{a^4 + b^4 + c^4 - a^2b^2 - b^2c^2 - c^2a^2}$$

$$W_a = \sqrt{(a^2 + W)^2 - b^2c^2}; W_b = \sqrt{(b^2 + W)^2 - c^2a^2}; W_c = \sqrt{(c^2 + W)^2 - a^2b^2}$$

Proposition 11.19.12. *The four radicals W, W_j are real. Moreover, assuming $c > a, c > b$, we have :*

$$\begin{aligned} W_c &= W_a + W_b \\ (c^2 - b^2) W_b &= WW_a + (b^2 - a^2) W_a \end{aligned}$$

Proof. For each of the W_j : let $\widehat{W}_a = \sqrt{(a^2 - W)^2 - b^2c^2}$. Then (1) W_a^2, \widehat{W}_a^2 are real ; (2) $W_a^2 \times \widehat{W}_a^2 = -16S^2(b^2 - c^2)^2 < 0$; (3) $W_a^2 > \widehat{W}_a^2$. Therefore $W_a^2 > 0$ and, since W_a is real, we can assume that $W_a \geq 0$.

Consider now the expression $Q_1 \doteq$

$$(W_a + W_b + W_c)(-W_a + W_b + W_c)(W_a - W_b + W_c)(W_a + W_b - W_c)$$

Depending only on the W_i^2 , this quantity Q is intended to be rational in W . Substituting the value of W^2 , one obtains $Q = 0$ so that one of the W_i is the sum of the other two. If c is the greatest side, this leads to $W_c = W_a + W_b$.

In the same manner, the product $Q_2 \doteq$

$$((c^2 - b^2) W_c + (c^2 - a^2 + W) W_a)((c^2 - b^2) W_c - (c^2 - a^2 + W) W_a)$$

simplifies to 0. If c is the greatest side, the first factor cannot vanish. And the W_b formula results using $W_c = W_a + W_b$. □

Lemma 11.19.13. *Points $X(3413)$ and $X(3414)$, given by*

$$X_{3413}, X_{3414} = \begin{bmatrix} a^4 - b^2c^2 + W^2 \\ -a^4 + b^2c^2 + a^2c^2 - b^4 \\ -a^4 + b^2c^2 + a^2b^2 - c^4 \end{bmatrix} \pm 2W \begin{bmatrix} -a^2 \\ S_c \\ S_b \end{bmatrix} \quad (11.10)$$

belong to the line at infinity \mathcal{L}_b and are orthopoints of each other. They are also the infinity point of the Kiepert RH.

Proposition 11.19.14. *The foci of the Steiner inconic are $X(39162) \dots X(39165)$. They are given by*

$$\begin{aligned} F_{\pm} &= X_2 \times \frac{1}{3} \pm X_{3413} \times \frac{W_a}{48S^2(b^2 - c^2)} \\ \widehat{F}_{\pm} &= X_2 \times \frac{1}{3} \pm X_{3414} \times \frac{W_b}{48S^2(b^2 - c^2)} \end{aligned} \quad (11.11)$$

Proof. One can check that all the eight lines $F\Omega$ are tangent to the conic. These (11.11) coordinates are obtained using the usual Plucker method, leading to radicals like W, W_a, \widehat{W}_a . Trying to obtain symmetric formulas only leads to more lengthy expressions, and we just have to live with such a fact.

Nevertheless, using a center \pm direction scheme is unavoidable. □

Remark 11.19.15. Figure 11.9 summarizes these properties. The hyperbola is Kiepert RH, the Tarry point $X(98)$ is the gudulic point of the KRH axes, while it's circumcircle antipode, the Steiner point $X(99)$, is the gudulic point of both the KRH asymptotes and the Steiner axes.

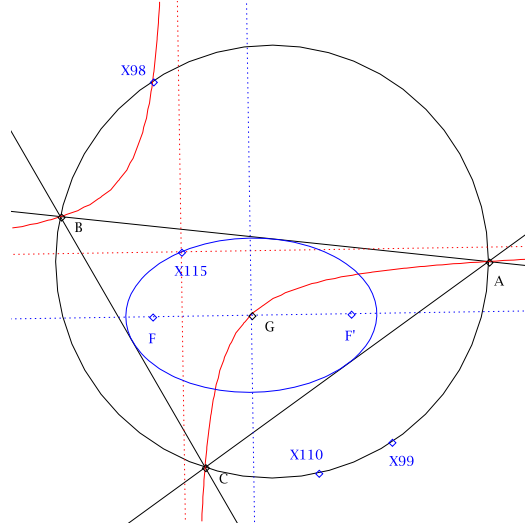


Figure 11.9: The Steiner in ellipse

11.19.3 Using one of the focuses

Remark 11.19.16. The main result at 11.19.14 is mostly that going from a, b, c to focuses is a hard road. In this subsection, the road from focuses to a, b, c will be examined.

Proposition 11.19.17. *Let $F_1 \simeq p : q : r$ be the first focus of the Steiner inconic. Then*

$$\begin{pmatrix} a^2 \\ b^2 \\ c^2 \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} p(-p + 2q + 2r) \\ q(+2p - q + 2r) \\ r(+2p + 2q - r) \end{pmatrix}$$

As it should be, the other focus is $F_2 \simeq a^2/p : b^2/q : c^2/r$, so that $F_1 + F_2 = 2X(2)$.

Proof. As said at 11.19.14, isotropic lines through the focus $f : g : h$ are tangent to the curve. Write that $F\Omega^+$ is tangent to \mathcal{C} and separate real and imaginary parts. And now, solve in a, b, c instead of solving in $f : g : h$. \square

11.20 The Brocard ellipse, aka the K-ellipse

Remark 11.20.1. Since the K-circumconic, i.e. $\text{CC}(X(6))$, is nothing but the circumcircle, the name "K-ellipse" applies only to the K-inconic.

Proposition 11.20.2. Brocard ellipse. *Perspector P is Lemoine $X(6)$, center U is $U = a^2(b^2 + c^2) \therefore = X(39)$, focuses F_j are Brocard points Br_1, Br_2 , the other axis is the so called Brocard axis $X(3)X(6)$.*

1. P, U are coming from the equation of the K-ellipse:

$$\frac{x^2}{a^4} + \frac{y^2}{b^4} + \frac{z^2}{c^4} - 2 \frac{xy}{a^2b^2} - 2 \frac{yz}{b^2c^2} - 2 \frac{zx}{a^2c^2} = 0$$

2. Draw the circumcircle of the contact points $A_K B_K C_K$ and obtain :

$$a^2yz + b^2xz + xyc^2 - (x + y + z) \frac{\sum x b^2 c^2 (b^4 + c^4 + a^2 b^2 + b^2 c^2 + a^2 c^2 - a^4)}{2(b^2 + c^2)(a^2 + c^2)(a^2 + b^2)} = 0$$

3. Compute the fourth intersection of this circle with the conic and obtain :

$$Q = a^2(b^2 - c^2)^2(a^4 + a^2b^2 + a^2c^2 - b^4 - b^2c^2 - c^4)^2, \text{ etc}$$

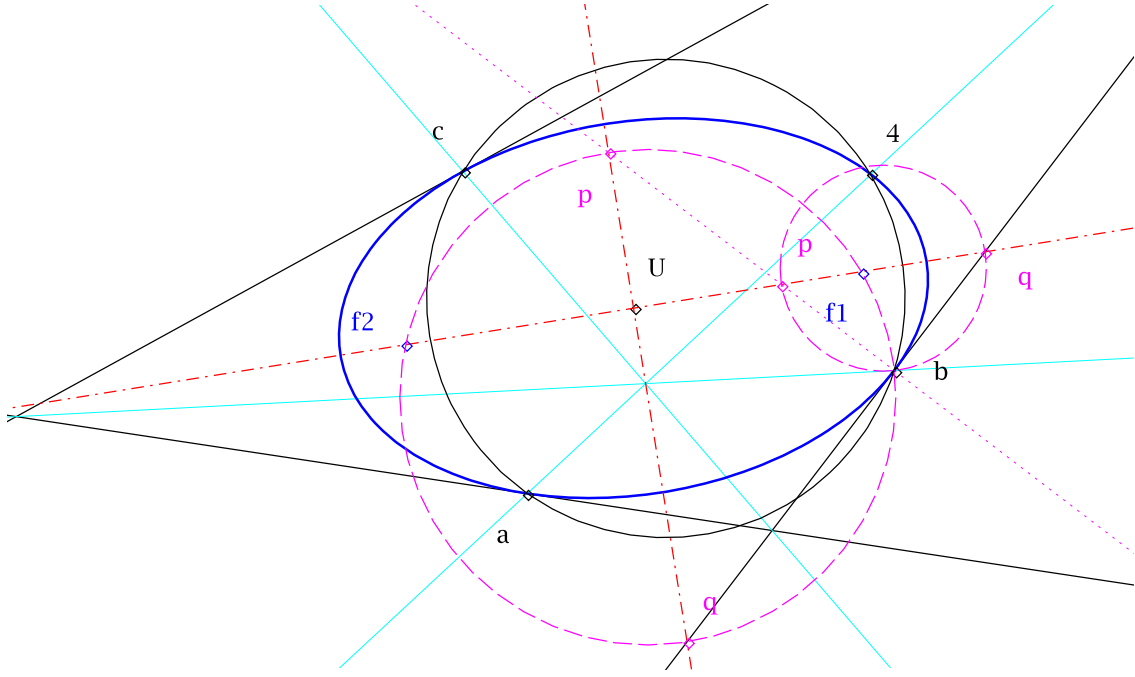


Figure 11.10: The K-ellipse

4. The axes are the lines through the center that are parallel to the bisectors of $\left(\overbrace{A_K C_K, B_K Q}\right)$.
Therefore, compute :

$$T = \tan \left(\overbrace{A_K C_K, A_K B_K} \right)$$

$$t = \tan \left(\overbrace{A_K C_K, UV} \right)$$

where $V \simeq \rho : 1 : -1 - \rho$ is an unknown point at infinity, substitute into $T = 2t / (1 - t^2)$ and solve. Solutions are rational, leading to $V_1 = a^2 (b^2 - c^2)$, etc =X(512) and $V_2 = a^2 (a^2 b^2 + a^2 c^2 - b^4 - c^4)$, etc =X(511).

5. Compute the axes as $U \wedge V_1 = (a^4 - b^2 c^2) \div a^2$, etc and $U \wedge V_2 = (b^2 - c^2) \div a^2$, etc : the Brocard axis X(3)X(6).
Having the perspector on an axis is special.

6. The sideline AC and the perpendicular to AC through B_K cut the first axis in P_1, Q_1 and the second in P_2, Q_2 . The idea is to draw circle having diameter $[P_1, Q_1]$, then the circle centered at U orthogonal to the former and obtain the focuses by intersection with the axis.
7. More simply, write $F_i = \mu P_1 + (1 - \mu) Q_1$ and find μ such that $(\overline{UF_i} / \overline{UP_1}) \div (\overline{UF_i} / \overline{UQ_1}) = 1$. These ratios involve vectors that all have the same direction, and no radicals are appearing. In our special case, the equation factors, leading to a well-known result (the Brocard points) :

$$F_1 = a^2 b^2 : b^2 c^2 : c^2 a^2 \quad ; \quad F_2 = c^2 a^2 : a^2 b^2 : b^2 c^2$$

8. Proceed the same way with the other axis. Obtain an equation that doesn't factors directly, but whose discriminant splits nevertheless when using the Heron formula (7.8). Finally,

$$F_3, F_4 = \begin{pmatrix} 4 (a^2 b^2 + a^2 c^2) S + i (b^4 + c^4 - a^2 c^2 - a^2 b^2) a^2 \\ 4 (b^2 c^2 + b^2 a^2) S + i (a^4 + c^4 - a^2 b^2 - b^2 c^2) b^2 \\ 4 (c^2 a^2 + c^2 b^2) S + i (a^4 + b^4 - a^2 c^2 - b^2 c^2) c^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

9. To summarize, $F_1, F_2 = X(39) \pm X(512)$, $F_3, F_4 = X(39) \pm i X(511)/4S$. As it should be, the focal distance (from center to a focus) is the same since X(512) and X(511)/4S are obtained by a rotation (in space \vec{V}).

11.21 Parabola

For the sake of completeness, let us recall the definition.

Definition 11.21.1. A **parabola** is a conic tangent to the infinity line. Two parallel lines make a non proper parabola. The union of line at infinity and another line is ... some kind of circle rather than a "special special" parabola.

Corollary 11.21.2. The conic defined by matrix \boxed{C} is a parabola when

$$\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \text{Adjoint} \left(\boxed{C} \right) \cdot {}^t \mathcal{L}_b = 0$$

Definition 11.21.3. The **directrix** of a parabola is the polar line of the focus.

Remark 11.21.4. This directrix is also the orthoptic cycle of the parabola. See Section 11.25.

11.21.1 Inscribed parabola

Proposition 11.21.5. The focus F of an inscribed parabola is the isogonal conjugate of its point at infinity U (and is therefore on the circumcircle), while the perspector P is the isotomic conjugate of U (and is therefore on the Steiner circumconic). Moreover line FP goes through $X(99)$, the fourth intersection of the circumcircle and the outSteiner ellipse. Finally, the directrix is the Steiner line of F and therefore goes through the orthocenter $H = X(4)$.

Proof. The first part is from Proposition 11.18.1, the last one is detailed at Section 11.25. And the $X(99)$ part is easy to compute. This situation was used at Example 14.5.3 to illustrate how to use the inclusive coordinates. \square

Example 11.21.6. The Kiepert parabola.

1. Let us take M at the Lemoine point $K = X(6)$ in Example 14.5.3. The circumpolar line of K is called the Lemoine axis¹. One obtains the Kiepert parabola, where :

$$\boxed{\mathcal{P}_K^*} \underset{z}{\simeq} \begin{bmatrix} 2\sigma_2\sigma_3 & \sigma_3\sigma_1 & 0 \\ \sigma_3\sigma_1 & 0 & -\sigma_2 \\ 0 & -\sigma_2 & -2\sigma_1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \boxed{\mathcal{P}_K} \underset{z}{\simeq} \begin{bmatrix} -\sigma_2^2 & 2\sigma_3\sigma_1^2 & -\sigma_2\sigma_3\sigma_1 \\ 2\sigma_3\sigma_1^2 & -4\sigma_2\sigma_3\sigma_1 & 2\sigma_2^2\sigma_3 \\ -\sigma_2\sigma_3\sigma_1 & 2\sigma_2^2\sigma_3 & -\sigma_1^2\sigma_3^2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\boxed{\mathcal{P}_K^*} \underset{b}{\simeq} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & * & c^2 - a^2 \\ a^2 - b^2 & 0 & b^2 - c^2 \\ c^2 - a^2 & * & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \quad \boxed{\mathcal{P}_K} \underset{b}{\simeq} \begin{bmatrix} (b^2 - c^2)^2 & * & (a^2 - b^2)(c^2 - b^2) \\ (a^2 - c^2)(b^2 - c^2) & (c^2 - a^2)^2 & (c^2 - a^2)(b^2 - a^2) \\ (a^2 - b^2)(c^2 - b^2) & * & (a^2 - b^2)^2 \end{bmatrix}$$

2. As stated in Proposition 11.3.15, the triangle of the circle-polars of the sidelines of triangle $\boxed{\mathcal{T}}$ is described by matrix $\boxed{\mathcal{C}^*} \cdot {}^t \boxed{\mathcal{T}^*}$. Both triangle are in perspective (lines AA' , etc are concurrent). The perspector is obtained as $AA' \wedge BB'$ and concurrence is verified by the symmetry of the result. It is well-known that $P = X(99)$, the Steiner point.

$$P_K \underset{z}{=} \frac{\sigma_3(\sigma_1^2 - 3\sigma_2)}{\sigma_2^2 - 3\sigma_3\sigma_1} \underset{b}{\simeq} \left[\frac{1}{b^2 - c^2} : \frac{1}{c^2 - a^2} : \frac{1}{a^2 - b^2} \right]$$

3. Applying the ordinary Plucker method (or the formula already given at Example 14.5.3) the focus is $F_K = \frac{\sigma_2}{\sigma_1}$

$$F_K \underset{z}{=} \frac{\sigma_2}{\sigma_1} \underset{b}{\simeq} \left[\frac{a^2}{b^2 - c^2} : \frac{b^2}{c^2 - a^2} : \frac{c^2}{a^2 - b^2} \right] = X(110)$$

and one can see that the directrix is nothing but the Euler line.

¹Everything is K here. The Lemoine point, the Kiepert parabola, as well as the KRH.

11.21.2 Circumscribed parabola

Remark 11.21.7. Let $T_0 = u : v : w$ be the barycentrics of the point at infinity of a circumparabola. Then, from Proposition 11.22.9, its perspector is $P = u^2 : v^2 : w^2$ and lies on the inSteiner ellipse.

Remark 11.21.8. The perspectors of the two circumparabolas through the four points A, B, C, D are the intersection of tripolar D and the inSteiner conic.

Proposition 11.21.9. *Using Morley affixes, let $\kappa : 0 : 1$ be the point at infinity of a given circumparabola. Then equation, perspector and focus are:*

$$\begin{aligned} \boxed{\mathcal{C}_z} &\simeq \begin{pmatrix} 2\sigma_3 & -\kappa^2 - \sigma_1\sigma_3 & -2\sigma_3\kappa \\ -\kappa^2 - \sigma_1\sigma_3 & 2\sigma_1\kappa^2 + 4\sigma_3\kappa + 2\sigma_2\sigma_3 & -\sigma_2\kappa^2 - \sigma_3^2 \\ -2\sigma_3\kappa & -\sigma_2\kappa^2 - \sigma_3^2 & 2\sigma_3\kappa^2 \end{pmatrix} \\ P &\simeq \begin{pmatrix} \left(\frac{3\sigma_2 - 4\sigma_1^2}{\sigma_3} + \frac{\sigma_1\sigma_2^2}{\sigma_3^2}\right)\kappa + \frac{4\sigma_2^2}{\sigma_3} - 12\sigma_1 + (\sigma_2\sigma_1 - 9\sigma_3)\frac{1}{\kappa} & \\ \left(\frac{2\sigma_2^2}{\sigma_3^2} - 6\frac{\sigma_1}{\sigma_3}\right)\kappa + 2\frac{\sigma_2\sigma_1}{\sigma_3} - 18 + (2\sigma_1^2 - 6\sigma_2)\frac{1}{\kappa} & \\ \left(\frac{\sigma_2\sigma_1}{\sigma_3^2} - \frac{9}{\sigma_3}\right)\kappa + \frac{4\sigma_1^2 - 12\sigma_2}{\sigma_3} + \left(3\sigma_1 + \frac{\sigma_1^2\sigma_2 - 4\sigma_2^2}{\sigma_3}\right)\frac{1}{\kappa} & \end{pmatrix} \\ F &\simeq \begin{pmatrix} \left(\frac{4\sigma_1}{\sigma_3} - \frac{\sigma_2^2}{\sigma_3^2}\right)\kappa^2 + 8\kappa + 2\sigma_2 - \frac{\sigma_3^2}{\kappa^2} & \\ 4\left(\frac{1}{\sigma_3}\kappa^2 + \frac{\sigma_2}{\sigma_3}\kappa + \sigma_1 + \sigma_3\frac{1}{\kappa}\right) & \\ -\frac{1}{\sigma_3^2}\kappa^3 + \frac{2\sigma_1}{\sigma_3}\kappa + 8 + (4\sigma_2 - \sigma_1^2)\frac{1}{\kappa} & \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Use point $\kappa + i\kappa h$ with $h \rightarrow 0$ as the fifth point of the conic and compute the determinant. Thereafter, compute the polar triangle and its perspector. Finalize by writing that $\Omega \pm F$ are tangent to the conic. \square

Proposition 11.21.10. *The locus of the foci of all the circumscribed parabola is a circular quintic. Singular focus (not on the curve) is $X(143)$, the nine points center of the orthic triangle. Other asymptotes are through points whose barycentrics are respectively, $2 : 1 : 1$, $1 : 2 : 1$, $1 : 1 : 2$. Its equation is :*

$$\begin{aligned} &1024\sigma_3^3 \mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}} (\mathbf{Z} + \beta\gamma\overline{\mathbf{Z}}) (\mathbf{Z} + \gamma\alpha\overline{\mathbf{Z}}) (\mathbf{Z} + \alpha\beta\overline{\mathbf{Z}}) \\ &-256 \begin{pmatrix} (4\sigma_2 - \sigma_1^2)\sigma_3^2\mathbf{Z}^4 + (4\sigma_2^2 + 9\sigma_1\sigma_3 - \sigma_1^2\sigma_2)\sigma_3^2\mathbf{Z}^3\overline{\mathbf{Z}} \\ + (3\sigma_3^2 + 13\sigma_1\sigma_2\sigma_3 - \sigma_1^3\sigma_3 - \sigma_2^3)\sigma_3^2\mathbf{Z}^2\overline{\mathbf{Z}}^2 \\ + (4\sigma_1^2\sigma_3 + 9\sigma_2\sigma_3 - \sigma_1\sigma_2^2)\sigma_3^3\mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}}^3 + \sigma_3^4(4\sigma_1\sigma_3 - \sigma_2^2)\overline{\mathbf{Z}}^4 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{T} \\ &+64 \begin{pmatrix} 512\sigma_3^2 \left((\sigma_3 + 4\sigma_2\sigma_1 - \sigma_1^3)\mathbf{Z}^3 + (\sigma_3^3 + 4\sigma_1\sigma_2\sigma_3^2 - \sigma_2^3\sigma_3)\overline{\mathbf{Z}}^3 \right) \\ + (\sigma_1^3\sigma_2^2 - 4\sigma_1^4\sigma_3 - 8\sigma_1\sigma_2^3 + 30\sigma_1^2\sigma_2\sigma_3 + 28\sigma_2^2\sigma_3 + 33\sigma_1\sigma_3^2)\sigma_3^2\mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}}^2 \\ + (\sigma_1^2\sigma_2^3 - 4\sigma_2^4 - 8\sigma_1^3\sigma_2\sigma_3 + 30\sigma_1\sigma_2^2\sigma_3 + 28\sigma_1^2\sigma_3^2 + 33\sigma_2\sigma_3^2)\sigma_3\mathbf{Z}^2\overline{\mathbf{Z}} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{T}^2 \\ &+16\sigma_3 \begin{pmatrix} 2(-\sigma_1^3\sigma_2^2 + 4\sigma_1\sigma_2^3 + 12\sigma_1^4\sigma_3 - 42\sigma_1^2\sigma_2\sigma_3 - 24\sigma_2^2\sigma_3 - 29\sigma_1\sigma_3^2)\mathbf{Z}^2 \\ \left(12\sigma_1\sigma_2^4 - 3\sigma_1^3\sigma_2^3 + (12\sigma_1^4\sigma_2 - 31\sigma_1^2\sigma_2^2 - 28\sigma_2^3)\sigma_3 \right)\mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}} \\ - (28\sigma_1^3 + 177\sigma_1\sigma_2)\sigma_3^2 - 77\sigma_3^3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{T}^3 \\ &+32\sigma_3 \begin{pmatrix} 2(-\sigma_1^2\sigma_2^3 + 4\sigma_1^3\sigma_2\sigma_3 + 12\sigma_2^4 - 42\sigma_1\sigma_2^2\sigma_3 - 24\sigma_1^2\sigma_3^2 - 29\sigma_2\sigma_3^2)\sigma_3\overline{\mathbf{Z}}^2 \\ \left(\sigma_1^2\sigma_2^4 - 5\sigma_1^3\sigma_2^2\sigma_3 + 4\sigma_1^4\sigma_3^2 - 4\sigma_2^5 + 14\sigma_1\sigma_2^3\sigma_3 + 6\sigma_1^2\sigma_2\sigma_3^2 + 13\sigma_2^2\sigma_3^2 + 35\sigma_1\sigma_3^3 \right)\overline{\mathbf{Z}} \\ + (\sigma_1^4\sigma_2^2 - 5\sigma_1^2\sigma_2^3 + 4\sigma_2^4 - 4\sigma_1^5\sigma_3 + 14\sigma_1^3\sigma_2\sigma_3 + 6\sigma_1\sigma_2^2\sigma_3 + 13\sigma_1^2\sigma_3^2 + 35\sigma_2\sigma_3^2)\mathbf{Z} \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{T}^4 \\ &+ \begin{pmatrix} \sigma_1^4\sigma_2^4 - 8\sigma_1^2\sigma_2^2(\sigma_2^3 + \sigma_1^3\sigma_3) + 16(\sigma_2^6 + \sigma_1^6\sigma_3^2) - 80(\sigma_1^4\sigma_2\sigma_3 + \sigma_1\sigma_2^4)\sigma_3 \\ + 52(\sigma_1^3\sigma_2^3 + 2\sigma_1^2\sigma_2^2\sigma_3 - 4\sigma_1\sigma_2\sigma_3^2)\sigma_3 - 104(\sigma_2^3 + \sigma_1^3\sigma_3)\sigma_3^2 - 343\sigma_3^4 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{T}^5 \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Elimination is straightforward. The real asymptotes are parallel to the sidelines. \square

11.22 Hyperbola

Definition 11.22.1. An **hyperbola** is a conic that intersects the line at infinity in two different points. An ellipse is a special hyperbola (the intersection points are not visible) and a parabola is not an hyperbola.

Proposition 11.22.2. Let $\Delta_1 \simeq (\rho, \sigma, \tau)$ and $\Delta_2 \simeq (u, v, w)$ be the asymptotes of an hyperbola \mathcal{C} . Then equation of \mathcal{C} can be written as :

$$(\rho x + \sigma y + \tau z)(ux + vy + wz) - k(x + y + z)^2 = 0 \quad (11.12)$$

Proof. Consider the line $\Delta_1 \simeq (\rho, \sigma, \tau)$ and its point at infinity $T_1 = \sigma - \tau : \tau - \rho : \rho - \sigma$. The matrix of the quadratic form is :

$$[\mathcal{C}] = \frac{1}{2} ({}^t\Delta_1 \cdot \Delta_2 + {}^t\Delta_2 \cdot \Delta_1) - k ({}^t\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \mathcal{L}_b) \quad (11.13)$$

It can be seen that ${}^tT_1 \cdot [\mathcal{C}] \cdot T_1 = 0$ (T_1 belongs to conic) while ${}^tT_1 \cdot [\mathcal{C}] = \Delta_1$ (the tangent to the conic at T_1 is line Δ_1). Another method is $\Delta_1 \cdot \text{Adjoint}([\mathcal{C}]) \cdot {}^t\Delta_1 = 0$ (line Δ_1 is tangent to the conic) while $[\mathcal{C}] \cdot {}^t\Delta_1 = T_1$ (the contact point of Δ is T). \square

Corollary 11.22.3. Equation (11.12) is the parametrization in k of the pencil of hyperbola that share a given pair of asymptotes.

Proposition 11.22.4. The angle between the asymptotes Δ_1, Δ_2 of a conic is characterized by

$$\tan^2(\Delta_1, \Delta_2) = \left(\frac{\Delta_1 \cdot [\mathcal{W}_b] \cdot {}^t\Delta_2}{\Delta_1 \cdot [\mathcal{M}_b] \cdot {}^t\Delta_2} \right)^2 = (-4) \frac{\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \text{Adjoint}[\mathcal{C}] \cdot {}^t\mathcal{L}_b}{\langle [\mathcal{M}_b] | [\mathcal{C}] \rangle^2} \quad (11.14)$$

See some additional comments at Corollary 11.23.6.

Proof. The first equality is the general formula for the tangent, while the second part is easily checked using (11.13). As it should be, $\tan V$ itself is not accessible, since it depends on the order chosen for the asymptotes.

Caveat: everything must be used "as is", without any reduction by a proportionality factor. \square

Remark 11.22.5. This amounts to restate (11.12) as searching k so that

$$\det([\mathcal{C}] - k {}^t\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \mathcal{L}_b) = \det[\mathcal{C}] - k (\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \text{Adjoint}[\mathcal{C}] \cdot {}^t\mathcal{L}_b)$$

vanishes. Solution is unique... except when \mathcal{C} is a parabola.

Proposition 11.22.6. A rectangular hyperbola is an hyperbola with orthogonal asymptotes. Such an RH is characterized among all the conics by :

$$\langle [\mathcal{C}] | [\mathcal{M}_b] \rangle \doteq \text{trace}([\mathcal{C}] \cdot [\mathcal{M}_b]) = 0 \quad (11.15)$$

Spoiler: when using Morley coordinates, this reduces to $m_{13} = 0$.

Proof. Obvious from the previous proposition. Another method: for any matrix Q , we have $\text{trace}({}^t\Delta_1 \cdot \Delta_2 \cdot Q) = \Delta_2 \cdot {}^tQ \cdot {}^t\Delta_1$. Since matrix $[\mathcal{M}_b]$ is symmetric, $\text{trace}([\mathcal{C}] \cdot [\mathcal{M}_b])$ equals $\Delta_2 \cdot [\mathcal{M}_b] \cdot {}^t\Delta_1$ and the result follows. \square

11.22.1 Circum-hyperbolas

Proposition 11.22.7. A circumconic \mathcal{C} can be characterized by one asymptote $\Delta_1 \simeq (\rho, \sigma, \tau)$. Then the second asymptote Δ_2 is $k/\rho : k/\sigma : k/\tau$ where k is the constant appearing in (11.12). Perspector P , center U , points at infinity T_1, T_2 are given by :

$$\begin{aligned} P &= \rho(\sigma - \tau)^2 & : & \sigma(\tau - \rho)^2 & : & \tau(\rho - \sigma)^2 \\ U &= \rho(\sigma^2 - \tau^2) & : & \sigma(\tau^2 - \rho^2) & : & \tau(\rho^2 - \sigma^2) \\ T_1 &= \sigma - \tau & : & \tau - \rho & : & \rho - \sigma \\ T_2 &= \rho(\sigma - \tau) & : & \sigma(\tau - \rho) & : & \tau(\rho - \sigma) \end{aligned}$$

while the equation of the conic can be rewritten into $T_1 *_b T_2 \div_b X \in \mathcal{L}_b$, and asymptotes as $T_1 *_b X \div_b T_2 \in \mathcal{L}_b$ and $T_2 *_b X \div_b T_1 \in \mathcal{L}_b$. Moreover, $P = T_1 *_b T_2$ and $U = T_1 *_b T_2 * \text{polarmul}(T_1, T_2)$.

Proof. Direct examination. \square

Proposition 11.22.8. Consider a circumconic and its perspector P . The points at infinity are given by :

$$\begin{pmatrix} (q^2 + r^2 - pq - pr) p + p(q - r) \text{ IST} \\ (r^2 + p^2 - qr - qp) q + q(r - p) \text{ IST} \\ (p^2 + q^2 - rp - qr) r + r(p - q) \text{ IST} \end{pmatrix}$$

where $\text{IST}^2 = p^2 + q^2 + r^2 - 2pq - 2qr - 2rp$ is the equation of the Steiner in-ellipse.

Proof. Direct inspection. \square

11.22.2 Circum-rectangular-hyperbolas

Proposition 11.22.9. When a circumscribed conic is a rectangular hyperbola, its perspector is on the tripolar of $H = X(4)$ –the so-called orthic axis–, while its center $C = \text{cevadiv}(X_2, P)$ is on the Euler circle (see also Corollary 11.23.8).

Proof. Write that $\text{trace}(\overline{\mathcal{M}_b} \overline{C}) = 0$ and obtain a first degree equation for the perspector. Then substitute $P = \text{cevadiv}(X_2, U)$. Even better: write $U = 2G - V$ and see that $V \in \Gamma$. \square

Proposition 11.22.10. Let M_1, M_2, M_3 be three distinct points on a RH. Then the Euler circle of $M_1 M_2 M_3$ goes through the center of the RH.

Proof. Obvious from preceding proposition. \square

Fact 11.22.11. The perspector of a circumRH can be written as:

$$\frac{1}{S_a} : \frac{-\mu}{S_b} : \frac{\mu - 1}{S_c}$$

on the tripolar of $X(4)$, while the RH itself is :

$$-S_a x (S_b y - z S_c) \mu + S_b y (S_a x - z S_c) = 0$$

Kiepert RH is $\mu = (a^2 - c^2) S_b \div (b^2 - c^2) S_a$.

Proof. A direct proof is that \mathcal{H} belongs to the pencil generated by $BC \cup AH$ and $AC \cup BH$. \square

Example 11.22.12. JRH, the Jerabek hyperbola, is the circumscribed RH through O and also the isogonal conjugate of the Euler line. Its perspector is $X(647)$, on the H tripolar, its center is $X(125)$, on the NPC. Points at infinity are $X(2574)$ and $X(2575)$, characterized by $\omega^4 = \sigma_3 \sigma_2 / \sigma_1$.

Example 11.22.13. FRH, the Feuerbach hyperbola, is the circumscribed RH through I and also the isogonal conjugate of the line (circumcenter, incenter). Its perspector is $X(650)$, on the H tripolar, its center is $X(11)$, on the NPC, $\text{Gu} = X(104)$. Points at infinity are $X(3307)$ and $X(3308)$, characterized by $\omega^4 = s_3^3 s_1 / s_2$.

11.22.3 Inscribed hyperbolas

Proposition 11.22.14. An inconic \mathcal{C} can be characterized by one asymptote $\Delta_1 \simeq (\rho, \sigma, \tau)$. Then :

$$\begin{array}{llll} \Delta_1 & \simeq & \rho & , \quad \sigma & , \quad \tau \\ T_1 & = & \sigma - \tau & : & \tau - \rho & : & \rho - \sigma \\ N_1 & \simeq & \rho \sigma + \rho \tau - \sigma \tau & : & \rho \sigma + \sigma \tau - \rho \tau & : & \rho \tau + \sigma \tau - \rho \sigma \\ \Delta_2 & \simeq & \rho / f & ; & \sigma / g & ; & \tau / h \\ T_2 & = & (\sigma - \tau) f^2 & : & (\tau - \rho) g^2 & : & (\rho - \sigma) h^2 \\ N_2 & \simeq & (\rho \sigma + \rho \tau - \sigma \tau)^{-1} & ; & (\rho \sigma + \sigma \tau - \rho \tau)^{-1} & ; & (\sigma \tau + \rho \tau - \rho \sigma)^{-1} \\ P & = & 1 \div ((\sigma - \tau) \rho^2) & : & 1 \div ((\tau - \rho) \sigma^2) & : & 1 \div ((\rho - \sigma) \tau^2) \\ C & = & (\sigma - \tau) f & : & (\tau - \rho) g & : & (\rho - \sigma) h \end{array}$$

where $(f, g, h) \simeq N_1 \simeq \text{anticomplem}(\text{isot}(\Delta))$ is the Newton line associated with line Δ_1 (cf Proposition 11.27.6). Therefore :

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta_2 &= \Delta_1 \div_b N_1 ; T_2 = T_1 *_b N_1 *_b N_1 ; N_2 = G \div_b N_1 \\ C &= T_1 *_b N_1 = T_2 *_b N_2 = \text{crossmul}(G, P) ; P = \text{crossdiv}(G, C) \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Let \boxed{M} be the matrix $\boxed{IC}(p : q : r)$ of the general inconic with perspector $p : q : r$. Then formula giving P from Δ is obtained by elimination from $\Delta \cdot \text{Adjoint}(\boxed{M}) \cdot {}^t\Delta = 0$ (tangency) and $\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \text{Adjoint}(\boxed{M}) \cdot {}^t\Delta = 0$ ($T \in \mathcal{L}_b$). Thereafter, all formulas are proven by direct computing from matrix $\boxed{C} = \boxed{IC}(P)$ where P is as given (cf. Stothers, 2003a). \square

Proposition 11.22.15. Consider an inconic and its center U . The points at infinity are given by :

$$\begin{pmatrix} u^2(v^4 + w^4 - u^2v^2 - u^2w^2) \\ v^2(u^4 + w^4 - v^2w^2 - u^2v^2) \\ w^2(u^4 + v^4 - u^2w^2 - v^2w^2) \end{pmatrix} \pm \text{OST}(v + w - u)(w + u - v)(u + v - w) \begin{pmatrix} (v^2 - w^2)u^2 \\ (w^2 - u^2)v^2 \\ (u^2 - v^2)w^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

where $\text{OST}^2 = -qr - rp - pq$ is the equation of the Steiner out-ellipse.

Proof. Direct inspection. \square

Proposition 11.22.16. Consider point $U = v - w : w - u : u - v \in \mathcal{L}_b$ and its tripolar $\Delta_0 \simeq [1/(v - w), 1/(w - u), 1/(u - v)]$. This line is tangent to Steiner in-ellipse and the contact point is $T_0 = (v - w)^2 : (w - u)^2 : (u - v)^2$. Define (index i =inscribed, c =circumscribed) lines $\Delta_i = \text{tripole}(T_0)$, $\Delta_c \simeq [v - w, w - u, u - v]$ and point

$$C = TG(U) = (v - w)^2(v + w - 2u) : (w - u)^2(u + w - 2v) : (u - v)^2(u + v - 2w)$$

Then C is the common center of a circum-hyperbola with asymptotes Δ_0, Δ_c and an in-hyperbola with asymptotes Δ_0, Δ_c . The locus of C (and also of the circum-perspector) is K219 :

$$\sum_3 x^3 - \sum_6 x^2y + 3xyz = 0$$

while the locus of the in-perspector is : $\sum_6 x^2y - 6xyz = 0$. All lines Δ_c contain $G = X_2$ while envelope of the Δ_i is cubic : $\sum_3 x^3 + 3\sum_6 x^2y - 21xyz = 0$.

Proof. In all these cubics, G is an isolated point (and don't belong to the locus). Otherwise, computing as usual. \square

11.22.4 Inscribed-rectangular-hyperbolas

Proposition 11.22.17. An inscribed conic is a rectangular hyperbola if, and only if, its auxiliary point is on the Longchamps circle. Equivalently, its center is on the polar circle. See Section 12.7 and Section 12.8. As a result, such conics are visible only for obtuse triangles.

Proof. Use Proposition 11.22.6 and write that trace $\left(\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \boxed{C}\right) = 0$. \square

11.23 Metric elements

Proposition 11.23.1. A degenerate conic ($\det C = 0$) is the reunion of two lines Δ_1, Δ_2 . And then

$$\cos^2(\Delta_1, \Delta_2) = \frac{\langle \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \mid \boxed{C} \rangle^2}{2 \langle \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot \boxed{C} \mid \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot \boxed{C} \rangle - \langle \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \mid \boxed{C} \rangle^2} \quad (11.16)$$

Proof. When $\Delta_1 = \Delta_2$, the formula don't demerit... and acknowledges that $\cos^2 = 1$. Othewise, use $\Delta_1 = [f, g, h] ; [u, v, w]$, obtain $\tan(\Delta_1, \Delta_2)$ from 7.22 and then use $\cos^2 = 1/(1 + \tan^2)$. This gives a 4, 4, rational fraction in u, v, w, f, g, h . What is given is the matrix (m_{jk}) of the bilinear form $(fx + gy + hz) \times (ux + vy + wz)$. An identification leads to a 2, 2 rational fraction in the m_{jk} . And the \cos^2 formula follows. \square

Definition 11.23.2. The metric elements of a proper conic are the a and b that are used to write the "standard equation relative to the standard axes"

$$P \in \mathcal{C} \iff \frac{x^2}{a^2} + \frac{y^2}{b^2} = 1$$

when the only allowed transforms are isometries. Due to their symmetry properties, the following quantities will remain useful in every context:

$$\sigma \doteq a^2 + b^2 ; \pi \doteq a^2 b^2$$

Remark 11.23.3. In the elementary situation, were we have an ellipse and $b < a$ can be assumed, it is convenient to introduce f as the focal distance $|UF|$, δ as the distance center-directrix, e as the excentricity i.e. the constant ratio $\text{dist}(M, F) / \text{dist}(M, \Delta)$ and p , the parameter, as $e(\delta - f)$, all these quantities being ruled by:

$$f = \sqrt{a^2 - b^2} ; \delta = a^2 / f ; e = f / a ; p = b^2 / a = e(\delta - f) \quad (11.17)$$

In a context of dynamic geometry, the elementary quantities a, b, f, δ, e, p have to be replaced because we can only assume $a^2, b^2 \in \mathbb{R}$ while $|b| < |a|$ is not granted. On the contrary, using $\sigma \doteq a^2 + b^2 ; \pi \doteq a^2 b^2$ don't require to know who is the "main" axis and who is the "other" axis to be able to even define them.

Proposition 11.23.4. Using $\langle | \rangle$ to denote the scalar product of two matrices (the trace of their product), we have:

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_b &= (-2S) \frac{\langle \mathcal{M}_b | \text{Adjoint}[\mathcal{C}_b^*] \rangle}{\left(\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}_b^*} \cdot {}^t \mathcal{L}_b \right)^2} ; \pi_b = (-2S)^2 \frac{\det \boxed{\mathcal{C}_b^*}}{\left(\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}_b^*} \cdot {}^t \mathcal{L}_b \right)^3} \\ &= (-2S) \frac{\langle \mathcal{M}_b | \boxed{\mathcal{C}_b} \rangle \det \boxed{\mathcal{C}_b}}{\left(\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \text{Adjoint}[\boxed{\mathcal{C}_b}] \cdot {}^t \mathcal{L}_b \right)^2} = (-2S)^2 \frac{\det^2 \boxed{\mathcal{C}_b}}{\left(\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \text{Adjoint}[\boxed{\mathcal{C}_b}] \cdot {}^t \mathcal{L}_b \right)^3} \quad (11.18) \\ \sigma_z &= \left(\frac{iR^2}{2} \right) \frac{\langle \mathcal{M}_z | \text{Adjoint}[\mathcal{C}_z^*] \rangle}{\left(\mathcal{L}_z \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}_z^*} \cdot {}^t \mathcal{L}_z \right)^2} ; \pi_z = \left(\frac{iR^2}{2} \right)^2 \frac{\det \boxed{\mathcal{C}_z^*}}{\left(\mathcal{L}_z \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}_z^*} \cdot {}^t \mathcal{L}_z \right)^3} \end{aligned}$$

Quantities f, e are only accessible through:

$$f^4 = \sigma^2 - 4\pi ; \frac{\pi}{\sigma^2} = \phi(e) \doteq \frac{1 - e^2}{(2 - e^2)^2}$$

so that we have **four** focuses for a conic (not a parabola), while $\phi(e) = \phi(e')$ leads to $e' = \pm e$ but also to $e' = \pm e / \sqrt{e^2 - 1}$ for hyperbolas.

Proof. Formulas for f^4 and $\phi(e)$ come from elimination between equations (11.17). Concerning (11.18), one can establish them for $x^2/a^2 + y^2/b^2 - 1$ in the Morley context and extend them to the barycentrics. Another method is the following algorithm. \square

Algorithm 11.23.5. Consider a conic \mathcal{C}^* not tangent to the infinity line (i.e. not a parabola). Its center is $U \simeq \boxed{\mathcal{C}^*}^t \mathcal{L}_b$. Consider the point at infinity $\delta \simeq 1 : t : -1 - t$, and draw line $\Delta = U\delta$. Then consider line $\Delta' \doteq U\delta + \mu \mathcal{L}_b$ and determine μ such that Δ' is tangent to the conic. This results in an equation that can be written as:

$$\left(\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}^*}^t \mathcal{L}_b \right) (\mu^2 + \text{poly}_2(t)) = 0$$

The first factor is the condition for $U \in \mathcal{L}_b$ (parabola). The other factor gives μ^2 . Then we consider $D^2(t) = \text{dist}^2(U, \Delta')$, that occurs to be a rational fraction of degrees $(+2, -2)$.

Condition $\partial(D^2(t))/\partial t = 0$ is second degree in t . Let us call s, t its two roots. Then $s + t$ and st are known from $\boxed{C^*}$. And therefore $\sigma = D^2(s) + D^2(t)$ and $\pi = D^2(s) \times D^2(t)$ are accessible.

Corollary 11.23.6. *The formula (11.14) that gives the angle between the asymptotes Δ_1, Δ_2 of a conic can be completed as:*

$$\tan^2(\Delta_1, \Delta_2) = (-4) \frac{\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \text{Adjoint } \mathcal{C} \cdot {}^t \mathcal{L}_b}{\left\langle \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \mid \mathcal{C} \right\rangle^2} = -4\phi(e) = \frac{-4\pi}{\sigma^2} = -\frac{4(1-e^2)}{(2-e^2)^2}$$

Proof. The first part is (11.14), the others are immediate from preceding results. \square

Remark 11.23.7. The excentricity of the conic is controlled by this quantity $\phi(e)$, which is the quotient of $\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \text{Adjoint } \mathcal{C} \cdot {}^t \mathcal{L}_b$ which is null when \mathcal{C} is a parabola, and of $\left\langle \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \mid \mathcal{C} \right\rangle^2$ which is null when \mathcal{C} is a rectangular hyperbola RH.

Therefore, $\phi(e)$ can be perceived as the quotient of the measure of the parabolic character, by the measure of the RH character. The square at denominator allows for a formula that remains homogeneous in \mathcal{C} . The above formula doesn't depends on k since all hyperbolas that share the same asymptotes are similar to each other.

Corollary 11.23.8. *Applied to the circumscribed conic with perspector $P \simeq p : q : r$, we obtain:*

$$\phi(e) = \frac{\pi}{\sigma^2} = \frac{(1-e^2)}{(2-e^2)^2} = -\frac{S^2(p^2 + q^2 + r^2 - 2pq - 2qr - 2rp)}{(S_ap + S_bq + S_cr)^2}$$

We re-obtain that perspectors of the circumscribed parabolas stay on the in-Steiner conic, while those of the RH stay on the orthic axis.

Corollary 11.23.9. *Applied to the inscribed conic with perspector $P \simeq p : q : r$, auxiliary point isotom $P \simeq f : g : h$ and center $U \simeq u : v : w$ we obtain:*

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(e) = \frac{\pi}{\sigma^2} = \frac{(1-e^2)}{(2-e^2)^2} &= \frac{16 S^2 p^2 q^2 r^2 (pq + pr + rq)}{(a^2 q^2 r^2 + b^2 p^2 r^2 + c^2 p^2 q^2 + 2 S_a p^2 qr + 2 S_b pq^2 r + 2 S_c pqr^2)^2} \\ &= \frac{16 S^2 f g h (f + g + h)}{(a^2 f^2 + b^2 g^2 + c^2 h^2 + 2 S_a gh + 2 S_b hf + 2 S_c fg)^2} \\ &= \frac{S^2 (v + w - u)(w + u - v)(u + v - w)(w + v + u)}{(S_a u^2 + S_b v^2 + S_c w^2)^2} \end{aligned}$$

We re-obtain that perspectors of the inscribed parabolas stay on the out-Steiner conic, auxiliary points and centers at infinity. On the contrary, auxiliary points of the inscribed RH are on the on Longchamps circle and centers on the polar circle.

11.24 Diagonal conics

Triangle ABC is autopolar wrt conic \mathcal{C} if, and only if, the non-diagonal coefficients vanish. Such conic is called either autopolar or diagonal.

Remark 11.24.1. The only autopolar circle is the polar circle (see Section 12.7).

Remark 11.24.2. An autopolar parabola is tangent to $[1, 1, 1]$ (the line at infinity) and therefore to $[\pm 1, \pm 1, \pm 1]$ the sidelines of the medial triangle $A'B'C'$. If U is its point at infinity, its focus F is the $A'B'C'$ -isogonal of U (on the Euler circle) while the $A'B'C'$ -perspector is the $A'B'C'$ -isotomic of U .

11.24.1 Pencils of diagonal conics

Proposition 11.24.3. *Let $\gamma(\mu)$ be a pencil of diagonal conics :*

$$\gamma(\mu) \doteq (1 - \mu)(\alpha_1 x^2 + \beta_1 y^2 + \gamma_1 z^2) + \mu(\alpha_2 x^2 + \beta_2 y^2 + \gamma_2 z^2) = 0$$

and $U = u : v : w$ a point, not a vertex of ABC . Then polar lines of U wrt all the conics of the pencil are concurring at a point U^* that will be called the *isoconjugate* of U wrt the pencil. In fact, $U^* = U_P^*$ -cf (17.5)- where :

$$P = \beta_1 \gamma_2 - \gamma_1 \beta_2 : \gamma_1 \alpha_2 - \alpha_1 \gamma_2 : \alpha_1 \beta_2 - \beta_1 \alpha_2$$

The four fixed points (real or not) of the conjugacy, i.e. the points $\pm\sqrt{p} : \pm\sqrt{q} : \pm\sqrt{r}$, are the points common to all conics of the pencil.

When a pair of isoconjugates U_1 and U_2 is known, P is known and therefore the isoconjugacy. The pencil contains the conic γ_1 through U_1 , *cevadiv* (U_2, U_1) and the vertices of their respective anti-cevian triangles. Conic γ_2 is defined cyclically. Both conics are tangent to $U_1 U_2$.

Circumconic $CC(P)$ is together the P -isoconjugate of \mathcal{L}_b , the locus of centers of the conics of the pencil and the conic that contains the six midpoints of the quadrangle formed by the four fixed points.

11.25 Orthoptic cycle

Proposition 11.25.1. *The **orthoptic cycle** \mathfrak{D} of a given conic \mathcal{C} is the locus of points m where the tangents from m to \mathcal{C} are orthogonal to each other. When \mathcal{C} is a parabola, \mathfrak{D} is nothing but its directrix. Otherwise, \mathfrak{D} is concentric with \mathcal{C} and its radius is given by:*

$$\rho^2 = \frac{(-2S) \det \boxed{\mathcal{C}} \langle \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} | \boxed{\mathcal{C}} \rangle}{\left(\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \text{Adjoint} \boxed{\mathcal{C}} \cdot {}^t \mathcal{L}_b \right)^2} = \frac{(-2S) \langle \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} | \text{Adjoint} \boxed{\mathcal{C}^*} \rangle}{\left(\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}^*} \cdot {}^t \mathcal{L}_b \right)^2} = a^2 + b^2$$

Proof. This can be seen as an obvious corollary of 11.25.7. A direct proof is obtained by using (11.3) to describe the reunion \mathcal{D}_0 of the two tangents issued from m as a (degenerate) RH. We have:

$$\begin{aligned} {}^t M \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{D}_0} \cdot M &\doteq \left({}^t M \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}} \cdot M \right) \left({}^t m \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}} \cdot m \right) - \left({}^t m \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}} \cdot M \right)^2 \\ \boxed{\mathcal{D}_0} &= \boxed{\mathcal{C}} \left({}^t m \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}} \cdot m \right) - \boxed{\mathcal{C}} \cdot m \cdot {}^t m \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}} \end{aligned}$$

The required condition is $\langle \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} | \boxed{\mathcal{D}_0} \rangle = 0$. One can check that the result is not only a conic, but actually a cycle. In the general case (not a parabola), center and ρ^2 are straightforward. The $\boxed{\mathcal{C}^*}$ part comes from $\text{Adjoint}(\text{Adjoint} M) = (\det M) M$, while the $a^2 + b^2$ part comes from 11.18. \square

Corollary 11.25.2. *The orthoptic cycle of an RH is the point-circle concentric with \mathcal{C} .*

Corollary 11.25.3. *The orthoptic cycle of a parabola is its directrix.*

Proof. From the previous proposition, this is a cycle with $\rho = \infty$, and therefore is a line. At Proposition 11.25.4, i.e. in the special case of an inscribed parabola, this line will be proven to be the directrix. But a parabola can ever be inscribed in some triangle. \square

Proposition 11.25.4. Orthoptic cycle of an inscribed conic. *Let $P \simeq p : q : r$ be the perspector of an inscribed conic. Its auxiliary point is $Q \doteq \text{isotom} P \doteq f : g : h$, while the center is $U \simeq p(q+r)$, etc. The orthoptic circle is described by:*

$$\boxed{\mathcal{C}^*} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 0 & h & g \\ h & 0 & f \\ g & f & 0 \end{pmatrix} ; \mathfrak{D} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} f S_a \\ g S_b \\ h S_c \\ f + g + h \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} (v+w-u) S_a \\ (w+u-v) S_b \\ (u+v-w) S_c \\ w+v+u \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} qr S_a \\ pr S_b \\ pq S_c \\ qr + rp + pq \end{pmatrix} \quad (11.19)$$

and is orthogonal to γ , the polar circle of ABC .

When \mathcal{C} is not a parabola, circle \mathfrak{D} and conic \mathcal{C} are concentric at $u : v : w \simeq g + h : h + f : f + g$, while the radius of \mathfrak{D} is given by:

$$\rho^2 = \frac{a^2 f^2 + b^2 g^2 + c^2 h^2 + 2 S_a g h + 2 S_b h f + 2 S_c f g}{4(h + g + f)^2} = \frac{S_a u^2 + S_b v^2 + S_c w^2}{(w + v + u)^2}$$

(so that the center of any inscribed RH is on the polar circle).

When \mathcal{C} is an inscribed parabola, $Q \in \mathcal{L}_b$ and the orthoptic circle becomes a line ($\rho = \infty$) and this line is the directrix of the conic.

Proof. Since $\gamma \simeq {}^t[S_a, S_b, S_c, 1]$, orthogonality is straightforward. For a RH, $\rho = 0$ implies $U \in \gamma$. For a parabola (see Proposition 11.21.5), one has $Q \in \mathcal{L}_b$, while the center is $U \simeq f^2 : g^2 : h^2$ (on in-Steiner), the focus is isogon Q (on the circumcircle) and its polar –the directrix, going through $X(4)$ – is $[f S_a, g S_b, h S_c]$, as required. \square

Proposition 11.25.5. Circle \mathfrak{D} is the locus of points M such that:

$$f \overrightarrow{MB} \cdot \overrightarrow{MC} + g \overrightarrow{MC} \cdot \overrightarrow{MA} + h \overrightarrow{MA} \cdot \overrightarrow{MB} = 0$$

Construction 11.25.6. *Construct the orthoptic circle of an inconic.* Let P be the perspector and $A_P B_P C_P$ its cevians. Circle $\delta \doteq [AA_P]$ cuts circle $\epsilon \doteq [BC]$ in two points, etc. These six points belong to the required circle.

Proof. One has $\delta \simeq S_a : 0 : 0 : 1$; $\epsilon \simeq 0 : r S_b : q S_c : q + r$. And $x\delta + (1 - x)\epsilon = \mathfrak{D}$ holds when $x = qr / (pq + pr + qr)$. Remark: all these circles are orthogonal to the polar circle. \square

–

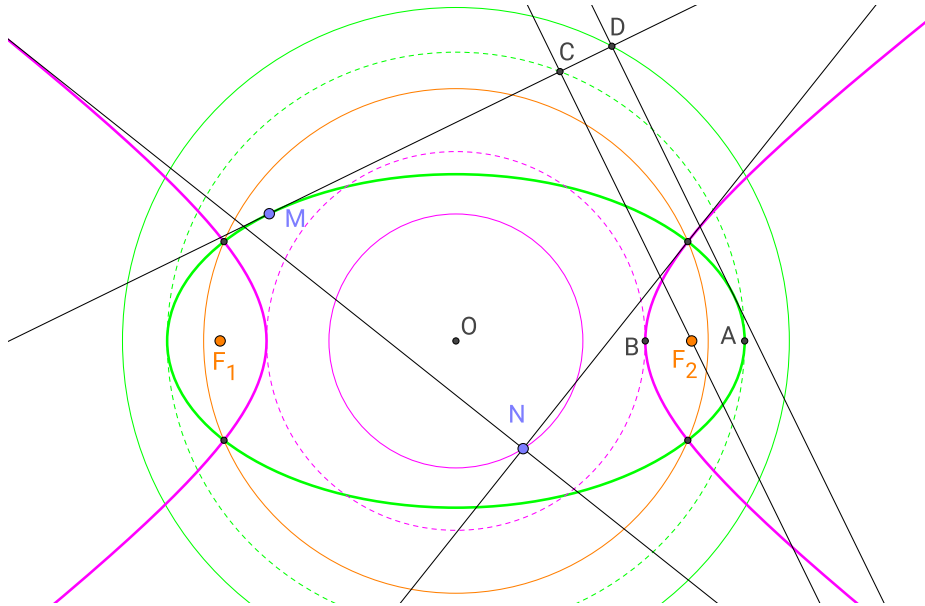


Figure 11.11: Confocal conics and orthoptic circles.

Theorem 11.25.7. *Joint-orthoptic circle.* When \mathcal{C}_t and \mathcal{C}_s are two confocal conics, but not circles, the punctual pencil they generate contains exactly one circle Ω . Then $\Omega, \mathcal{C}_s, \mathcal{C}_t$ are concentric while Ω is the locus of points from which one can issue a tangent Δ_t to \mathcal{C}_t and a tangent Δ_s to \mathcal{C}_s so that $\Delta_t \perp \Delta_s$. As special cases, using $\mathcal{C}_s = \mathcal{C}_t$ leads to previously described orthoptic cycle, while using $\mathcal{C}_F \doteq \{F_1, F_2\}$ as conic \mathcal{C}_s leads to the auxiliary circle of \mathcal{C}_t . Moreover, using obvious notations, we have:

$$2\rho^2(\mathcal{C}_s, \mathcal{C}_t) = \rho^2(\mathcal{C}_s) + \rho^2(\mathcal{C}_t) ; \rho^2(\mathcal{C}_t) = a^2 + b^2 ; \rho^2(\mathcal{C}_F) = f^2$$

Proof. The conics having their foci at $F_1(z = -1)$ and $F_2(z = +1)$ are:

$$\boxed{\mathcal{C}_t^*} \simeq (1-t) \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -1 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & -t \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ -t & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \boxed{\mathcal{C}_t} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & t \\ 0 & 1-t^2 & 0 \\ t & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Thus the circle that belongs to the punctual pencil generated by $\boxed{\mathcal{C}_t}$ and $\boxed{\mathcal{C}_s}$ is $\boxed{\mathcal{C}_t} - \boxed{\mathcal{C}_s}$, whose center is $z = 0$ while $2\rho^2 = s + t$. Consider now a generic point $m \simeq z_0 : t_0 : \zeta_0$. Using (11.3) to describe the tangents issued from m to \mathcal{C}_t , we obtain:

$$\left({}^tM \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}_t} \cdot M \right) \left({}^tm \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}_t} \cdot m \right) - \left({}^tm \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}_t} \cdot M \right)^2 = 0$$

where $M \simeq \mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}$ is the generic point. The ω^2 of the tangents are obtained by substituting $T = 0$, leading to

$$\left(\frac{\mathbf{Z}}{\overline{\mathbf{Z}}} \right)^2 - 2 \frac{(t \times t_0^2 - z_0 \zeta_0)}{(t_0^2 - \zeta_0^2)} \left(\frac{\mathbf{Z}}{\overline{\mathbf{Z}}} \right) + \frac{(t_0^2 - z_0^2)}{(t_0^2 - \zeta_0^2)} = 0$$

Their product is constant, well known property: the tangents are reflected by the bisectors of (mF_1, mF_2) . Thus the orthogonality involves also the other pair of tangents, so that the sums of the ω^2 are opposite. But this gives $(t+s)t_0^2 - z_0\zeta_0 = 0$, i.e. the joint circle. \square

11.26 PTPT, the bitangent pencil

PTPT means point,tangent,point,tangent.

Remark 11.26.1. Many properties are better stated when using complex projective coordinates (the Morley frame) and therefore, it could be better to read the corresponding chapter before the present section.

11.26.1 The focal cubic

Definition 11.26.2. All of the conics that are tangent to two fixed lines at two given points form a linear pencil, called the bitangent pencil \mathcal{F} . We define B, C as the contact points and A as the intersection of the tangents.

Definition 11.26.3. A', R, F_s . Midpoint A' is defined by $A' = (B + C)/2$. Then $A' \simeq_b 0 : 1 : 1$. Gudulic point R is the second intersection of the ABC circumcircle and the A -symmedian of this triangle. We have:

$$R \simeq_b a^2 : -2b^2 : -2c^2; \quad R \simeq_z \frac{\alpha\beta + \alpha\gamma - 2\gamma\beta}{2\alpha - \gamma - \beta} : 1 : \frac{2\alpha - \gamma - \beta}{\alpha\beta + \alpha\gamma - 2\gamma\beta}$$

Lastly, we define F_s as $(A + R)/2$.

Proof. One can verify that:

$$\omega_{AR} \times \omega_{AM} = \frac{\alpha(\gamma\alpha + \alpha\beta - 2\beta\gamma)}{\beta + \gamma - 2\alpha} \times \frac{\alpha\beta\gamma(\beta + \gamma - 2\alpha)}{\gamma\alpha + \alpha\beta - 2\beta\gamma} = (-\alpha\beta) \times (-\alpha\gamma) = \omega_{AB} \times \omega_{AC}$$

\square

Theorem 11.26.4. The punctual and tangential equation of the conics \mathcal{C}_λ of the tangential pencil \mathcal{F} are :

$$\boxed{\mathcal{C}_b} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \lambda & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad \boxed{\mathcal{C}_b^*} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \lambda \\ 0 & \lambda & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Their centers are $O_\lambda \simeq 1 : \lambda : \lambda$ (on the median line AA'). Their two focuses F_λ lie on the cubic \mathcal{K} , whose barycentric equation is :

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{K}_b(x, y, z) &= (c^2y^2 - b^2z^2)x + 2S_b y^2z - 2S_c z^2y \\ &= (z - y)(a^2yz + b^2zx + c^2xy) + (b^2 - c^2)yz(x + y + z) \end{aligned} \quad (11.20)$$

This curve goes through the umbilics, while the singular focus $F_s = (A + R)/2 \simeq 2S_a : b^2 : c^2$ belongs to the curve. The curve goes also through points B, C and twice the point A . The asymptote Δ_∞ is the parallel to the median AM through point $\Omega' = (3A - R)/2$.

As a consequence, the curve is unicursal, i.e. has rational parametrizations.

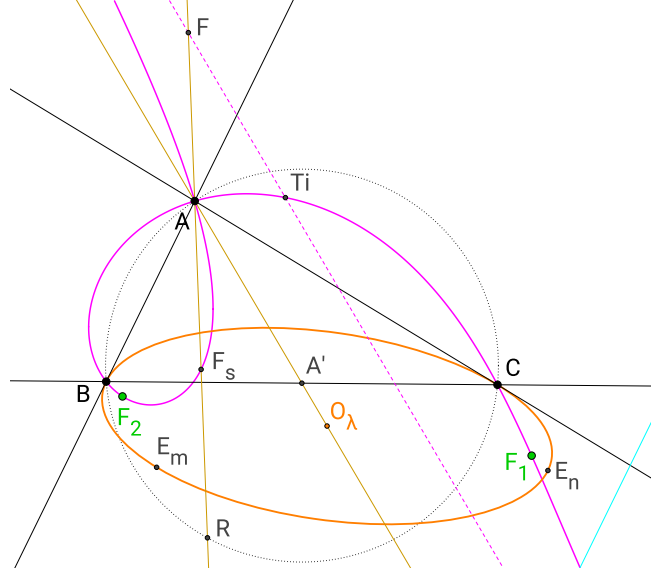


Figure 11.12: The tangential pencil

Proof. Usual computations, using the Plucker's method, i.e. $(F \wedge \Omega_x) \cdot [\mathcal{C}^*] \cdot {}^t(F \wedge \Omega_x) = 0$ and then taking real and imaginary parts. Other properties are straightforward from the gradient. \square

Proposition 11.26.5. *Line FA is a bisector of angle FB, FC . This comes from the following relations between parameter λ and focuses F_λ described as $\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \bar{\mathbf{Z}}$ in the Morley frame:*

$$\frac{-1}{2\lambda} = \frac{(\mathbf{Z} - \beta\mathbf{T})(\mathbf{Z} - \gamma\mathbf{T})}{(\mathbf{Z} - \alpha\mathbf{T})^2} = \frac{(\bar{\mathbf{Z}} - \mathbf{T}/\beta)(\bar{\mathbf{Z}} - \mathbf{T}/\gamma)}{(\bar{\mathbf{Z}} - \mathbf{T}/\alpha)^2} \quad (11.21)$$

Moreover, the Morley equation of the "focal cubic" is \mathcal{K}_z :

$$\begin{aligned} & \left(\frac{2}{\alpha} - \frac{1}{\beta} - \frac{1}{\gamma} \right) \mathbf{Z}^2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} + (\gamma + \beta - 2\alpha) \mathbf{Z} \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 + \left(\frac{1}{\beta\gamma} - \frac{1}{\alpha^2} \right) \mathbf{Z}^2 \mathbf{T} + (\alpha^2 - \beta\gamma) \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 \mathbf{T} + \\ & 2 \left(\frac{\alpha}{\gamma} + \frac{\alpha}{\beta} - \frac{\beta + \gamma}{\alpha} \right) \mathbf{Z} \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{T} + \left(\frac{\beta + \gamma}{\alpha^2} - \frac{2\alpha}{\beta\gamma} \right) \mathbf{Z} \mathbf{T}^2 + \left(\frac{2\beta\gamma}{\alpha} - \frac{\alpha^2}{\gamma} - \frac{\alpha^2}{\beta} \right) \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{T}^2 + \left(\frac{\alpha^2}{\beta\gamma} - \frac{\beta\gamma}{\alpha^2} \right) \mathbf{T}^3 \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Use $[\mathcal{C}_z] = {}^t[\mathcal{L}_u]^{-1} \cdot [\mathcal{C}_b] \cdot [\mathcal{L}_u]^{-1}$; $[\mathcal{C}_z^*] = [\mathcal{L}_u] \cdot [\mathcal{C}_b^*] \cdot {}^t[\mathcal{L}_u]$ to obtain the matrices, and then use the Plucker's equations. A separation of the variables occurs, giving one equation in the upper view $\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T}$ and another in the lower view $\bar{\mathbf{Z}} : \mathbf{T}$. Equation of \mathcal{K}_z is easily obtained from \mathcal{K}_b and even more easily by subtracting both sides of (11.21). \square

Proposition 11.26.6. *In the Morley frame, the focal cubic can be parametrized by a turn τ :*

$$F_\tau \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \frac{(\alpha - \gamma)(\alpha - \beta)\tau^2 + \alpha(2\beta\gamma - \alpha\beta - \alpha\gamma)\tau + \beta\gamma(\alpha^2 - \beta\gamma)}{(2\beta\gamma - \alpha\beta - \alpha\gamma)\tau + \beta\gamma(2\alpha - \beta - \gamma)} \\ 1 \\ \frac{1}{\alpha\tau} \frac{(\beta\gamma - \alpha^2)\tau^2 + \beta\gamma(2\alpha - \beta - \gamma)\tau + \beta\gamma(\alpha - \gamma)(\alpha - \beta)}{(2\beta\gamma - \alpha\beta - \alpha\gamma)\tau + \beta\gamma(2\alpha - \beta - \gamma)} \end{bmatrix}$$

Proof. Let K be the point $\tau : 1 : 1/\tau$. Cut the cubic by line AK , and obtain A (twice) and F . \square

Proof. The equation of the circles γ_k are parametrized by:

$$\begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ 2\alpha \\ -\alpha^2 \\ \alpha \end{pmatrix} + k \begin{pmatrix} (\alpha\beta + \alpha\gamma - 2\beta\gamma) \\ (\beta + \gamma)(\beta\gamma - \alpha^2) \\ \alpha\beta\gamma(2\alpha - \beta - \gamma) \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Multiply by the Veronese of $F(\tau)$ and obtain the condition $F(\tau) \in \gamma_k$: first degree in k , second degree in τ . And conclude, since this condition divides the condition ensuring that $F_s F(\tau)$ is tangent to γ_k . Then substitute the k values of $\tau + \kappa$ and $\tau\kappa$ into (11.22). \square

Proposition 11.26.10. Using the circumcircle. Start from the variable point $K = \tau : 1 : 1/\tau$ on the circumcircle. It defines a variable line AK . Reflect B, C into AK and obtain B_k, C_k . Then point $F = BC_k \cap CB_k$ is on the cubic.

Proof. The idea comes from the bisector property of the last proposition. \square

Proposition 11.26.11. Using the A-Apollonian circle. The isogonal \mathcal{K}^* of the focal cubic is the circle:

$$\mathcal{K}^* \simeq \alpha^2 (yc^2 - zb^2) (x + y + z) + (b^2 - c^2) (a^2 yz + b^2 xz + c^2 xy)$$

i.e. the A-Apollonian circle, centered at $0 : b^2 : -c^2$ and going through A (a diameter is given by the feet of the A-bisectors).

Proof. Obvious from (11.20). Using the Morley isogonal formula (17.6), one obtains:

$$F^* \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\alpha(\alpha\beta + \alpha\gamma - 2\beta\gamma)}{\alpha^2 - \beta\gamma} - \frac{(\alpha - \gamma)(\alpha - \beta)}{(\alpha^2 - \beta\gamma)} \frac{\beta\gamma}{\tau} \\ 1 \\ \frac{2\alpha - \beta - \gamma}{\alpha^2 - \beta\gamma} + \frac{(\alpha - \gamma)(\alpha - \beta)}{(\alpha^2 - \beta\gamma)} \frac{\tau}{\beta\gamma} \end{bmatrix} \quad \square$$

Proposition 11.26.12. Knowing the center. When center O_λ is given on the median AA' , the focuses F, F' can be constructed as follows (see Figure 11.15). Draw the bisectors Δ_1, Δ_2 of $O_\lambda A, O_\lambda R$. Cut them at H_1, H_2 by the perpendicular bisector of $[A, R]$. Draw circle $\gamma_1 (H_1, A)$ and cut Δ_2 . Additionally, draw circle $\gamma_2 (H_2, R)$ and cut Δ_1 . This gives the four focuses.

Proof. This comes from the involutory homography ψ . \square

Proposition 11.26.13. Using the cissoidal property. Consider a point P on the circle γ through A and centered at $\Omega' = (3A - R)/2$. Define Q as the intersection of AP with Δ_∞ . Then $F \doteq A + Q - P$ belongs to the cubic. The cissoidal property is the relation : $\overrightarrow{AF} = \overrightarrow{PQ}$.

Proof. A possible parametrization of the cissoidal circle is :

$$P_\mu \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \frac{3\alpha^2 + \beta\gamma - 2\alpha(\beta + \gamma)}{2\alpha - \beta - \gamma} + \frac{(\alpha - \gamma)(\alpha - \beta)}{\alpha\beta + \alpha\gamma - 2\beta\gamma} \tau \\ 1 \\ \frac{2\alpha(\beta + \gamma) - \alpha^2 - 3\beta\gamma}{\alpha(\alpha\beta + \alpha\gamma - 2\beta\gamma)} - \frac{(\alpha - \gamma)(\alpha - \beta)}{(2\alpha - \beta - \gamma)\alpha} \frac{1}{\tau} \end{bmatrix}$$

Here A is $\mu = (\alpha\beta + \alpha\gamma - 2\beta\gamma) \div (\beta + \gamma - 2\alpha)$. Everything else is straightforward. \square

Proposition 11.26.14. The two visible focuses F, F' of a given conic \mathcal{C}_λ are exchanged :

1. in the parametrization of Proposition 11.26.6 by $\tau\tau' = \beta\gamma$.
2. in the construction of Proposition 11.26.10 by using lines AK and AK' that are equally inclined on lines AB, AC .

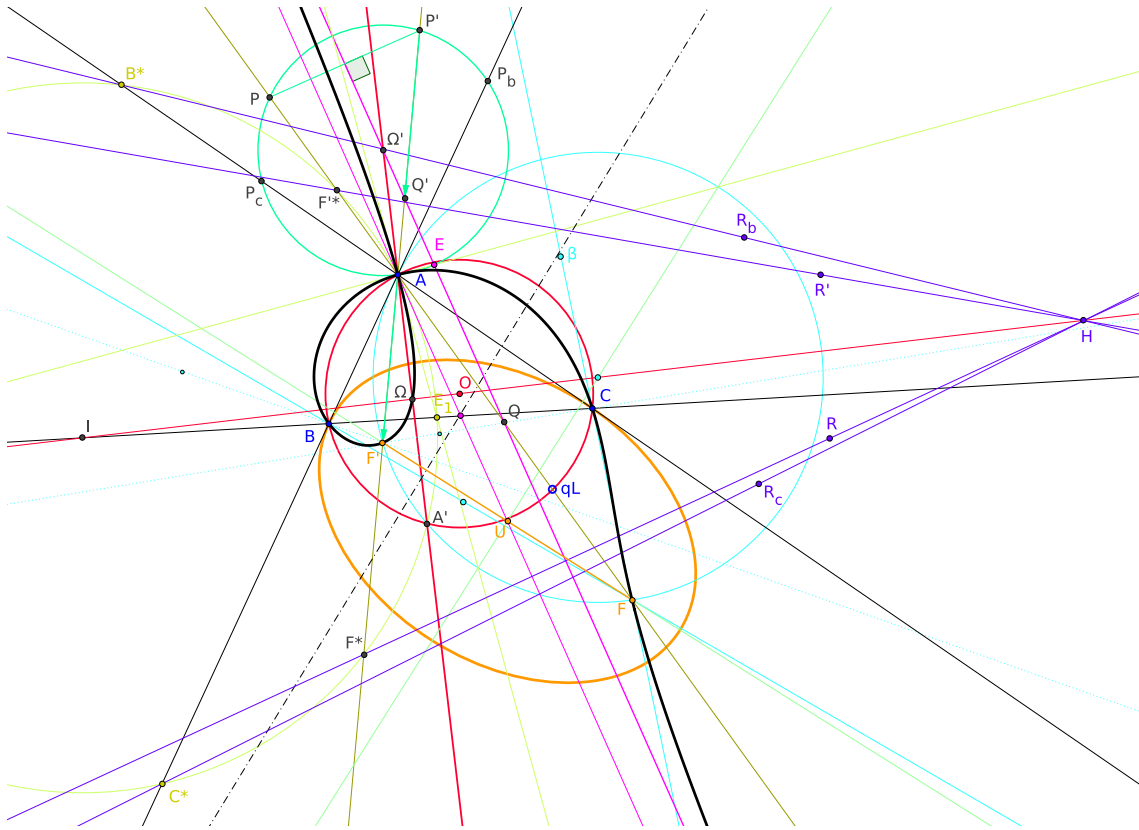


Figure 11.14: Two transformations of the focal cubic.

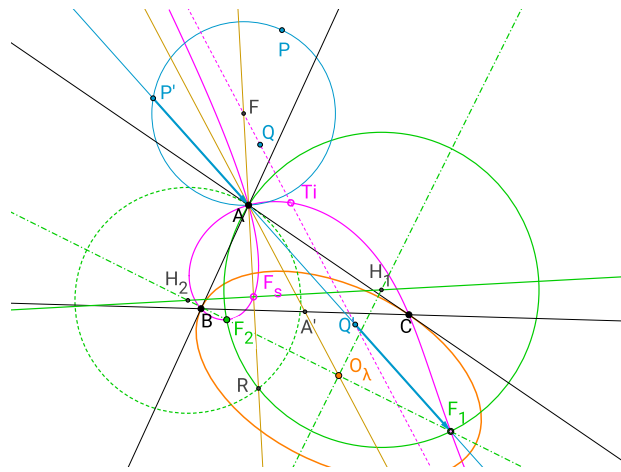


Figure 11.15: Constructions of paired foci

3. in the upper Riemann sphere by the involutory homography

$$\psi : \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z}' \\ \mathbf{T}' \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \beta\gamma - \alpha^2 & \alpha^2\beta + \gamma\alpha^2 - 2\alpha\beta\gamma \\ \beta + \gamma - 2\alpha & \alpha^2 - \beta\gamma \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \end{pmatrix}$$

The fixed points of ψ are A and R (the second intersection of the A -symmedian with the circumcircle).

4. in the isogonal parametrization of Proposition 11.26.11, points F^* , F'^* are symmetric with respect to BC .
5. in the construction Proposition 11.26.13, P' is the reflection of P into the asymptote Δ_∞ while

Q' is the reflection of Q in the cissoidal circle.

Proof. (1) One has $\frac{-1}{2\lambda} = \frac{(\tau - \gamma)(\tau - \beta) \left(\tau - \gamma \frac{\alpha - \beta}{\alpha - \gamma} \right) \left(\tau - \beta \frac{\alpha - \gamma}{\alpha - \beta} \right)}{(\tau^2 - \beta\gamma)^2}$. Then $\lambda(\tau) - \lambda(\tau') = 0$ gives four values for τ , since there are four focuses. But, apart τ itself, only $\tau' = \beta\gamma/\tau$ is unimodular. The other two are not turns (and lead to both non visible focuses). (2) $\kappa\tau = \beta\gamma$.

(3) Write and factor $\lambda(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T}) - \lambda(z : t)$ from (11.21). This gives $(z\mathbf{T} - t\mathbf{Z})$ together with another first degree factor with respect to \mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{T} and also with respect to z, t : this is our homography. The fixed points of ψ are α and $z_R = (\alpha\beta + \alpha\gamma - 2\beta\gamma) / (2\alpha - \beta - \gamma)$.

(4) Reflection into the asymptote is obvious from parametrization. Reflection into the circle comes from $\overrightarrow{\Omega'Q} \cdot \overrightarrow{\Omega'Q'} = |\overrightarrow{\Omega'A}|^2$. \square

11.27 LLLL, the Miquel pencil

Definition 11.27.1. All of the conics that are tangent to four fixed lines form a pencil, called the Miquel pencil \mathcal{F} of these four lines.

Lemma 11.27.2. Let us use describe our four lines as the three sidelines of ABC and the transversal whose tripole is $p : q : r$. In other words, $\mathcal{L}_0 \simeq_b [qr, rp, pq]$. See Theorem 3.5.5 for more details.

In the Lubin frame, the transversal points, the Newton line, the Miquel point M_q of the quadrilateral and the Clawson-Schmidt homography Ψ are :

$$A', B', C' \simeq_z \begin{pmatrix} \beta q - \gamma r \\ q - r \\ \frac{q}{\beta} - \frac{r}{\gamma} \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \gamma r - \alpha p \\ r - p \\ \frac{r}{\gamma} - \frac{p}{\alpha} \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \alpha p - \beta q \\ p - q \\ \frac{p}{\alpha} - \frac{q}{\beta} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{Newton} \simeq_z [2c_2, -s_2 c_1 - c_3, 2s_3 c_1]$$

$$M_q \simeq_z \begin{pmatrix} c_2/c_1 \\ 1 \\ c_1/c_2 \end{pmatrix}; \Psi \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \end{pmatrix} \simeq_z \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{Z}c_2 - \mathbf{T}c_3 \\ \mathbf{Z}c_1 - \mathbf{T}c_2 \\ 1 \\ \frac{c_1\overline{\mathbf{Z}} - c_0\mathbf{T}}{c_2\overline{\mathbf{Z}} - c_1\mathbf{T}} \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\text{where} \begin{cases} c_3 &= \alpha^2(\gamma - \beta)p + \beta^2(\alpha - \gamma)q + \gamma^2(\beta - \alpha)r \\ c_2 &= \alpha(\gamma - \beta)p + \beta(\alpha - \gamma)q + \gamma(\beta - \alpha)r \\ c_1 &= (\gamma - \beta)p + (\alpha - \gamma)q + (\beta - \alpha)r \\ c_0 &= \frac{1}{\alpha}(\gamma - \beta)p + \frac{1}{\beta}(\alpha - \gamma)q + \frac{1}{\gamma}(\beta - \alpha)r \end{cases}$$

Remark 11.27.3. The Miquel point is the pole of the Clawson-Schmidt homography.

Remark 11.27.4. The four quantities c_j are bound by relations :

$$\begin{aligned} c_2 \frac{\sigma_1}{\sigma_3} + c_0 &= c_3 \frac{1}{\sigma_3} + c_1 \frac{\sigma_2}{\sigma_3} \in i\mathbb{R} \\ \overline{c_k} &= -\frac{c_{3-k}}{\sigma_3} \end{aligned}$$

Proposition 11.27.5. The four fixed points of the isoconjugacy Ψ are given by :

$$\Phi \simeq \begin{pmatrix} c_2/c_1 + W_u/c_1 \\ 1 \\ c_1/c_2 + W_d/c_2 \end{pmatrix}$$

where the up and down radicals are given by :

$$\begin{aligned} W_u^2 &= (\alpha - \beta)(\beta - \gamma)(\gamma - \alpha) \times d_1 \\ W_d^2 &= \frac{(\alpha - \beta)(\beta - \gamma)(\gamma - \alpha)}{\alpha\beta\gamma} \times d_2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{where } \begin{cases} d_2 &= \alpha (\gamma - \beta) qr + \beta (\alpha - \gamma) rp + \gamma (\beta - \alpha) pq \\ d_1 &= (\gamma - \beta) qr + (\alpha - \gamma) rp + (\beta - \alpha) pq \end{cases}$$

They can be constructed as follows. Lines Δ_1, Δ_2 are the common bisectors of $\Omega A, \Omega A', \Omega B, \Omega B', \Omega C, \Omega C'$ and δ_A is the perpendicular bisector of $[A, A']$. Then $H_1 = \Delta_1 \cap \delta_A$ (resp. $H_2 = \Delta_2 \cap \delta_A$) is the center of a circle by A, A' that cuts Δ_2 (resp Δ_1) at the four Φ_j points.

Proof. These points are characterized by

$$c_1 \mathbf{Z}^2 - 2c_2 \mathbf{Z}\mathbf{T} + c_3 \mathbf{T}^2 = 0 \quad ; \quad c_2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 - 2c_1 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}\mathbf{T} + c_0 \mathbf{T}^2 = 0 \quad \square$$

Proposition 11.27.6 (Newton). *All the conics that are tangent to four given lines have their centers on a line, that goes through the midpoints M_j of the diagonal pairs AA', BB', CC' (called the Newton axis of the quadrilateral). When this center $U \in \text{Newton}$ is defined as $K M_b + (1 - K) M_c$ the conic can be written as :*

$$\boxed{C_b^*} \simeq (r - p) \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -p \\ 0 & 0 & q \\ -p & q & 0 \end{pmatrix} + K p \begin{pmatrix} 0 & p - q & r - p \\ p - q & 0 & q - r \\ r - p & q - r & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. Let $\rho : \sigma : \tau$ be the "service point" of a conic $\mathcal{C} \in \mathcal{F}$. We have $\boxed{C_b^*} = [0, \tau, \sigma; \tau, 0, \rho; \sigma, \rho, 0]$ and therefore $p\rho + q\sigma + r\tau = 0$. Since $U = \sigma + \tau : \tau + \rho : \rho + \sigma$, the Newton line is :

$$[q + r - p, r + p - q, p + q - r]$$

and the conclusions follow (remember that $p : q : r$ is the tripole of the transversal). \square

Theorem 11.27.7. *The Morley affixes $\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \bar{\mathbf{Z}}$ of a focus of the conic $\mathcal{C}(K) \in \mathcal{F}$ are bound to the parameter K by :*

$$K = \frac{(p - r)(\mathbf{Z} - \gamma\mathbf{T})((q - p)\mathbf{Z} + (\alpha p - \beta q)\mathbf{T})}{p\mathbf{T}(c_1\mathbf{Z} - c_2\mathbf{T})} \quad (11.23)$$

$$= \frac{(p - r)(\mathbf{T} - \bar{\mathbf{Z}}\gamma)(\alpha\beta(p - q)\bar{\mathbf{Z}} + (\alpha q - p\beta)\mathbf{T})}{p\mathbf{T}(c_1\mathbf{T} - c_2\bar{\mathbf{Z}})} \quad (11.24)$$

and therefore the focuses are located on the "focal cubic" \mathcal{K} :

$$\frac{c_2}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} + c_1 \mathbf{Z} \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 - \frac{c_1}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^2 \mathbf{T} - \frac{c_3 + c_1 \sigma_2}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z} \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{T} - c_2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 \mathbf{T} + \frac{c_1 \sigma_1}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z} \mathbf{T}^2 + \frac{c_2 \sigma_2}{\sigma_3} \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{T}^2 + \frac{c_3 - c_2 \sigma_1}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{T}^3$$

Proof. Matrix $\boxed{C_z^*}$ is obtained as $\boxed{Lu} \cdot \boxed{C_b^*} \cdot {}^t \boxed{Lu}$ and then Plucker method is used. Some factors $(q - r)$ are appearing during the elimination process, but not all the $(p - q)(q - r)(r - p)$. Nothing special occurs when P is on a median (but not at the centroid). One can check that the cubic \mathcal{K} is turned into its opposite when taking the (complex) conjugate. \square

Theorem 11.27.8. *This focal cubic is nothing else than the vanRees cubic studied at Section 27.11.*

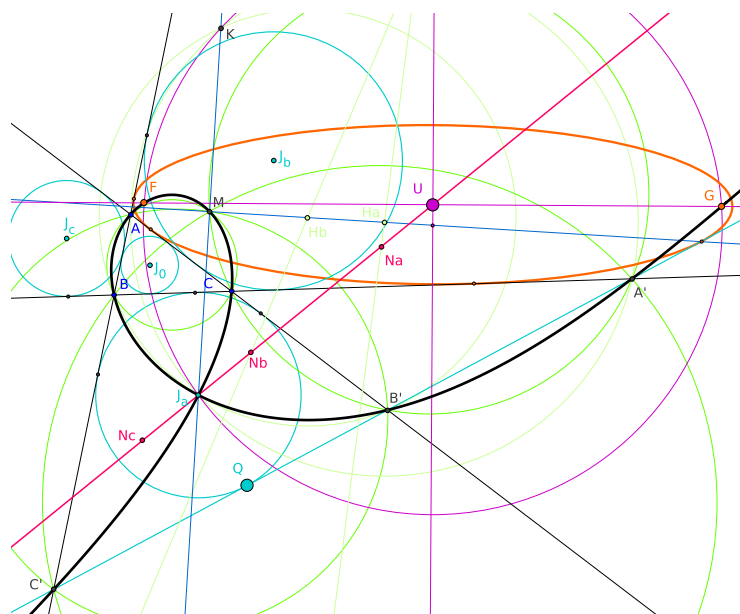
Proof. Check the six points A, B, C, A', B', C' together with the six points $n_A, n_B, n_C, n_{A'}, n_{B'}, n_{C'}$. More than nine is used to avoid a Cayley-Bacharach phenomenon. \square

Theorem 11.27.9. *The focuses F_j of a given conic $\mathcal{C}(K) \in \mathcal{F}$ are exchanged by homographies $\psi, \bar{\psi}$. They can be constructed as follows. Call New^\perp the perpendicular to the Newton line at Ω . Draw the bisectors Δ_1, Δ_2 of $U\Phi_1, U\Phi_2$. Cut them at H_1, H_2 by New^\perp . Draw circle $\gamma_1(H_1, \Phi_1)$ and cut Δ_2 . Additionally, draw circle $\gamma_2(H_2, \Phi_2)$ and cut Δ_1 .*

Proof. Write and factor $K(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \bar{\mathbf{Z}}) - K(z : t : \zeta)$ from (11.23). This gives $(p - q)(p - r)$ but not $(q - r)$, being smooth except at the centroid (i.e. when the fourth line at infinity). Otherwise, this gives $(z\mathbf{T} - t\mathbf{Z})$ together with another first degree factor with respect to \mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{T} and also with respect to z, t . In the upper view $\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T}$, this induces the identity together with another homography. Since the later has to provide $A \longleftrightarrow A', B \longleftrightarrow B', C \longleftrightarrow C'$, it has to be ψ . The same occurs in the lower view $\bar{\mathbf{Z}} : \mathbf{T}$, and the conclusion follows. \square



(a) The general case



(b) The unicursal case

Figure 11.16: The Miquel pencil and its focal cubic

Remark 11.27.10. In the Geogebra Figure 11.16, the orange conic is drawn as follows. Reflect focuses F, F' into sideline AC and obtain F_b, F'_b . Then point $E_b = FF'_b \cap F'F_b$ on sideline AC belongs to the conic. In the same way, obtain the point E_c on AB . We draw both conics, an ellipse and an hyperbola, with focuses F, F' that go through E_b , but only the one that goes also through E_c is displayed.

Proposition 11.27.11. *When the transversal is tangent to one of the inexcircles of triangle ABC , the pencil contains one circle and the focal conic has a double point. This point is the center of the circle (see Figure 11.16b). When the transversal touches two of the inexcircles, the focal cubic degenerates into the Newton line and a circle having the corresponding inexcircles as antipodal points.*

Proof. Only circles have equal focuses. □

11.28 Tg and Gt mappings

Definition 11.28.1. Tg and Gt mappings. Suppose U is a point not on a sideline of ABC .

Let :

gU = isogonal conjugate of U , tU = isotomic conjugate of U

tgU = isotomic conjugate of gU , gtU = isogonal conjugate of tU

GtU = intersection of lines $U - tU$ and $gU - gtU$,

TgU = intersection of lines $U - gU$ and $tU - tgU$.

If $U = u : v : w$ (barycentrics), then :

$$GtU = \frac{a^2 (b^2 - c^2)}{(v^2 - w^2)u} : \frac{b^2 (c^2 - a^2)}{(w^2 - u^2)v} : \frac{c^2 (a^2 - b^2)}{(u^2 - v^2)w}$$

$$TgU = \frac{b^2 - c^2}{(w^2b^2 - v^2c^2)u} : \frac{c^2 - a^2}{(u^2c^2 - w^2a^2)v} : \frac{a^2 - b^2}{(v^2a^2 - u^2b^2)w}$$

Proposition 11.28.2. *For any point U , not on a sideline of ABC , points $A, B, C, gU, tU, TgU, GtU$ are on a same conic (Tuan, 2006). The perspector of this conic is $X_{512} \div_b U$. This conic is the isogonal image of line $U - gtU$ and also the isotomic image of line $U - tgU$.*

Proof. Straightforward computation. □

Example 11.28.3. Points X(3112) to X(3118) are related to Gt and Tg functions.

The X(31)-conic passes through X(I) for

$$I = 75, 92, 313, 321, 561, 1441, 1821, 1934, 2995, 2997, 3112, 3113$$

The X(32)-conic passes through X(I) for

$$I = 76, 264, 276, 290, 300, 301, 308, 313, 327, 349, 1502, 2367, 3114, 3115$$

The X(76)-conic passes through X(I) for

$$I = 6, 32, 83, 213, 729, 981, 1918, 1974, 2207, 2281, 2422, 3114, 3224, 3225$$

11.29 Polar coordinates

Definition 11.29.1. The polar equation of a curve is $z_\vartheta = \exp(i\vartheta) f(\vartheta)$. Quantity $\rho \doteq f(\vartheta)$ is the so called algebraic radius and equals $+\text{dist}(O, M)$... or $-\text{dist}(O, M)$.

Proposition 11.29.2. *The polar equation of the circle through O and centered at $a + ib$ is*

$$f(\vartheta) = 2a \cos \vartheta + 2b \sin \vartheta$$

Proof. Parametrize using $t = \tan(\vartheta/2)$. □

Proposition 11.29.3. *Equation $\rho = \frac{p}{1 + e \cos(\theta)}$ describes the conic whose focuses are O and $2pe/(e^2 - 1)$, with excentricity $e = f/a$ and parameter $p = b^2/a$.*

Proof. Parametrize as above and obtain the matrix $\begin{bmatrix} e^2 & -2pe & e^2 - 2 \\ -2pe & 4p^2 & -2pe \\ e^2 - 2 & -2pe & e^2 \end{bmatrix} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} f^2 & -2b^2f & -a^2 - b^2 \\ -2b^2f & 4b^4 & -2b^2f \\ -a^2 - b^2 & -2b^2f & f^2 \end{bmatrix}$

Exercise 11.29.4. When ρ ranges over the four intersections of the conic and the circle of the former two propositions, then $\sum 1/\rho$ doesn't depend on the circle ([Koehler, 1886-1888](#), n°32, p.37).

Chapter 12

More about circles

12.1 General results

Let us start by recalling two key results.

Theorem 12.1.1 (Already stated in Section 7.5 as Theorem 7.5.2). *Let Ω be the circle centered at P with radius ω . The **power formula** giving the Ω -power of any point $X = x : y : z$ from the power at the three vertices of the reference triangle is :*

$$\begin{aligned} \text{power}(\Omega, X) &\doteq |PX|^2 - \omega^2 = \frac{ux + vy + wz}{x + y + z} - \frac{a^2yz + b^2xz + c^2xy}{(x + y + z)^2} \\ \text{where } u &= \text{power}(\Omega, A), \text{ etc} \end{aligned} \quad (12.1)$$

Definition 12.1.2 (Already stated in Section 7.5 as Definition 7.5.3). From $\text{power}(\Gamma, A) = 0$, etc, we have defined the standard equation of the circumcircle as :

$$\Gamma_{\text{std}}(x, y, z) \doteq -\frac{a^2yz + b^2xz + c^2xy}{x + y + z} = 0 \quad (12.2)$$

Proposition 12.1.3. *Let \mathcal{C} be a conic, with matrix $\boxed{\mathcal{C}} = (m_{jk})$ (notations of Definition 11.3.1). Then \mathcal{C} is a cycle if and only if, for a suitable factor k , we have :*

$$\boxed{\mathcal{C}} - \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 2m_{11} & m_{11} + m_{22} & m_{33} + m_{11} \\ m_{11} + m_{22} & 2m_{22} & m_{22} + m_{33} \\ m_{33} + m_{11} & m_{22} + m_{33} & 2m_{33} \end{pmatrix} = k \begin{pmatrix} 0 & c^2 & b^2 \\ c^2 & 0 & a^2 \\ b^2 & a^2 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. Obvious from (12.1). □

Proposition 12.1.4. *Four points at finite distance belong to the same cycle (aka circle or straight line) when their barycentrics $p_i : q_i : r_i$ are such that :*

$$\det_{i=1}^{i=4} [p_i, q_i, r_i, \Gamma_{\text{std}}(p_i, q_i, r_i)] = 0 \quad (12.3)$$

Proof. Obvious from (12.1). Don't forget how Γ_{std} was defined in (12.2) ! □

Computed Proof. Denominators are a reminder of the fact that circles don't escape to infinity. Write the Cartesian equation of the circle as :

$$\Delta_{\text{cart}} \doteq \det_{i=1}^{i=4} [\xi_i^2 + \eta_i^2, \xi_i, \eta_i, 1] = 0$$

where ξ, η are the Cartesian coordinates of the points. Substitute these coordinates by :

$$\xi = \frac{x\xi_a + y\xi_b + z\xi_c}{x + y + z}, \quad \eta = \frac{x\eta_a + y\eta_b + z\eta_c}{x + y + z}$$

and obtain another determinant $\Delta'(x, y, z)$. Then compute $F \cdot \Delta' \cdot T^{-1} \cdot G$ where F is the diagonal matrix $\text{diag}(p_i + q_i + r_i)$ and

$$T = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \xi_a & \eta_a & 1 \\ 0 & \xi_b & \eta_b & 1 \\ 0 & \xi_c & \eta_c & 1 \end{bmatrix}, \quad G = \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ \xi_a^2 + \eta_a^2 & 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \xi_b^2 + \eta_b^2 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \xi_c^2 + \eta_c^2 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

Matrix F acts on rows and kills quite all denominators, T acts on the last three columns and goes back to barycentrics while G acts on the first column to kill all square terms. After what everything simplifies nicely and leads to (12.3) \square

Proposition 12.1.5. *The barycentric equation of circle with center $P = p : q : r$ and radius ω is :*

$$(u_0x + v_0y + w_0z)(x + y + z) - \omega^2(x + y + z)^2 - (a^2yz + b^2zx + c^2xy) = 0 \quad (12.4)$$

where quantities u_0, v_0, w_0 are defined as :

$$\begin{aligned} u_0 &\doteq |PA|^2 = (c^2q^2 + b^2r^2 + (b^2 + c^2 - a^2)qr) \div (p + q + r)^2 \\ v_0 &\doteq |PB|^2 = (a^2r^2 + c^2p^2 + (c^2 + a^2 - b^2)rp) \div (p + q + r)^2 \\ w_0 &\doteq |PC|^2 = (b^2p^2 + a^2q^2 + (b^2 + a^2 - c^2)pq) \div (p + q + r)^2 \end{aligned} \quad (12.5)$$

Proof. Obvious from (12.1). The added value here is the emphasis on center and ω^2 . It must be noticed that $u : v : w$ is not a point nor a line. Quantities u, v, w are strongly defined objects and are not defined up to a proportionality factor. They are to be considered exactly as ω^2 , i.e. are of the same nature as a surface. It can be observed that u (or v or w) is zero-homogeneous wrt the barycentrics of point $P = p : q : r$. More details are given in Chapter 13 \square

Proposition 12.1.6. Center. *The center of a circle defined by its equation (12.1) is given by :*

$$\text{center} \simeq \frac{1}{2}vX(3) - [\mathcal{K}] \cdot {}^tU = \begin{pmatrix} a^2 S_a \\ b^2 S_b \\ c^2 S_c \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} a^2 & -S_c & -S_b \\ -S_c & b^2 & -S_a \\ -S_b & -S_a & c^2 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \\ w \end{pmatrix} \quad (12.6)$$

$$\simeq \frac{1}{2S} (a^2 S_a : b^2 S_b : c^2 S_c) - [\mathcal{M}_b] \cdot {}^tU \quad (12.7)$$

Proof. As stated in Definition 11.3.17, the center of a conic is the pole of the line at infinity wrt the conic. Computations are straightforward. It can be noticed that product $[\mathcal{K}] \cdot {}^tU$ gives the orthodir of line U (i.e. the point at infinity in the orthogonal direction). Since the line of centers is orthogonal to the radical axis of Γ and Ω , this formula describes the coefficients to be used when the circumcenter $X(3)$ is described as in ETC by $vX(3) = a^2(b^2 + c^2 - a^2) \dots$. Let us recall the Al-Kashi formula $[\mathcal{K}] = 2S[\mathcal{M}_b]$. \square

Remark 12.1.7. In both the center and the radius formulas, everything must be used exactly as written, and not to a proportionality factor. A more efficient formulation will be given later, with formula (13.15)

Proposition 12.1.8. Radius. *The radius of a circle defined by its equation (12.1) is given by :*

$$\omega^2 = \frac{1}{16S^2} \left(U \cdot [\mathcal{K}] \cdot {}^tU - U \cdot vX(3) + a^2b^2c^2 \right) \quad (12.8)$$

Proof. Subtract formula (12.1) from $|PX|^2$ obtained from (12.6) and Pythagoras formula. \square

Definition 12.1.9. *kitW*. Some usual square roots are given in Table 12.1, and some other notations in Table 12.2.

Example 12.1.10. Table 12.3 describes some of the usual circles in triangle geometry. For further information on many circles, refer to

<http://mathworld.wolfram.com/Circle.html>

name	#	value	where	
Lemoine	W_1	$\sqrt{a^2b^2 + a^2c^2 + b^2c^2}$	$e^{i\omega} = \frac{a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + 4iS}{2W_1}$	(12.11)
Brocard	W_2	$\sqrt{a^4 + b^4 + c^4 - a^2b^2 - a^2c^2 - b^2c^2}$	$ OK = \frac{2W_2R}{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}$	(12.12)
Euler	W_3	$\sqrt{\sum_3 a^6 - \sum_6 a^4b^2 + 3a^2b^2c^2}$	$ OH = \frac{W_3}{4S} = \frac{R}{abc} W_3$	(12.13)
Fuhrmann	W_4	$\sqrt{\sum_3 a^3 - \sum_6 a^2b + 3abc}$	$ HN = 2W_4R \sqrt{\frac{1}{abc}}$	(12.14)

Table 12.1: Some usual square roots (kitW)

#	value	name
s	$(a + b + c) / 2$	half-perimeter
R	$\frac{abc}{\sqrt{s(s-a)(s-b)(s-c)}}$	circumradius
S	$\frac{abc}{4R}$	area of triangle
ω	$\exp(i\omega) = \frac{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}{2W_1} + i \frac{2S}{W_1}$	Brocard angle
e	$\sqrt{\frac{a^4 + b^4 + c^4}{b^2c^2 + c^2a^2 + a^2b^2} - 1}$	$\sqrt{1 - 4 \sin^2 \omega}$
r	$\frac{S}{s} = \frac{abc}{2R(a+b+c)}$	inradius

Table 12.2: Some usual notations (circle kit 2)

Definition 12.1.11. Pencil of cycles. When \mathcal{C}_1 and \mathcal{C}_2 are two circles, then $\lambda\mathcal{C}_1 + \mu\mathcal{C}_2$ is also a cycle. The family generated from two given circles is called a pencil. Then all centers are on the same line, which is orthogonal to the only line contained in the pencil (the so called radical axis). More details in Chapter 13

Definition 12.1.12. The **radical trace** of two non-concentric circles is the point of intersection of the radical axis of the circles and the line of the centers of the circles. (For examples, see X(I) for I = 6, 187, 1570, 2021-2025, 2030-2032.)

12.2 Inversion in a circle

Remark 12.2.1. All results relative to the inversion in a cycle have moved to Section 13.8.

12.3 Antipodal Pairs on Circles

Remark 12.3.1. Since the previous section has moved, the present section is now orphaned... and probably should be moved.

Proposition 12.3.2. Suppose (O_1) and (O_2) are circles and that P, P' are antipodes on (O_1) . Let $U = \text{insim}(O_1, O_2)$ and $V = \text{exsim}(O_1, O_2)$ be the respective internal and external center of homothety of circles (O_1) and (O_2) . Define $Q = P'U \cap PV$ and $Q' = PU \cap P'V$. Then Q, Q' are antipodes on (O_2) . Moreover, the lines PP' and QQ' are parallel.

Proof. The result is quite obvious, but giving a non-circular proof is not so obvious... except from using $z : t : \zeta$ coordinates. Write the antipodal points as $P = z_1/t_1 + r_1\tau$ and $P' = z_1/t_1 - r_1\tau$

Name	Center	Radius	
circumcircle	X(3)	R	12.4
incircle	X(1)	r	12.5
nine-point circle	X(5)	$\frac{1}{2}R$	12.6
polar circle	X(4)	$\sqrt{-S_a S_b S_c} \div 2S$	12.7
Longchamps circle	X(20)	$\sqrt{-S_a S_b S_c} \div S$	12.8
Bevan circle	X(40)	$2R$	12.9
Spieker circle	X(10)	$r/2$	12.10
Apollonius circle	X(970)	$(r^2 + s^2) \div 4r$	12.13
1st Lemoine	X(182)	$R \div 2 \cos \omega$	12.14
2nd Lemoine	X(6)	$abc / (a^2 + b^2 + c^2)$	12.15
Sin-triple-angle	X(49)	R_{sta}	12.16
Brocard circle	X(182)	$eR \div 2 \cos \omega$	12.17
Brocard second	X(3)	eR	12.17
Orthocentroidal	X(381)	$ OH /2$	12.19
Fuhrmann	X(355)	$ HN /2$	12.20

Table 12.3: Some circles

where τ is a turn. Point U, V are obtained as

$$U = (r_2 z_1 / t_1 + r_1 z_2 / t_2) / (r_2 + r_1) ; V = (r_2 z_1 / t_1 - r_1 z_2 / t_2) / (r_2 - r_1)$$

Two wedges later, we have:

$$Q = z_2 / t_2 + r_2 \tau ; Q' = z_2 / t_2 - r_2 \tau$$

and we are done. □

In the following examples, suppose $P = p : q : r$ on the first circle.

12.4 Circumcircle

Definition 12.4.1. The circumcircle is the circle through A, B, C . Perspector is X_6 and center X_3 . Equation, matrix, column are :

$$a^2 yz + b^2 zx + c^2 xy = 0 ; \boxed{\text{Pyth}_b} ; \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Its standard parametrization is (7.17), i.e. :

$$\frac{a^2}{\sigma - \tau} : \frac{b^2}{\tau - \rho} : \frac{c^2}{\rho - \sigma} \mid \rho : \sigma : \tau \neq \mathcal{L}_b$$

Lemma 12.4.2. The distance $|PX_3|$ to center from any point of the plane is given by :

$$|PX_3|^2 = R^2 - \frac{a^2 qr + b^2 rp + c^2 pq}{(p + q + r)^2}$$

Proof. Direct inspection using Theorem 7.4.4. As it should be, $|X_3 X_3| = 0$ while the equation of the circumcircle is $|PX_3|^2 = R^2$. □

Proposition 12.4.3. *For any finite point, other than the circumcenter X_3 , the inverse-in-circumcircle of $P = p : q : r$ has barycentrics $u : v : w$ obtained cyclically from :*

$$u = -p^2 + \frac{c^2 - a^2}{b^2} pq + \frac{b^2 - a^2}{c^2} pr + \frac{a^2 (b^2 + c^2 - a^2)}{b^2 c^2} qr$$

1	36	24	403	54	1157	352	353	1692	3053
2	23	25	468	55	1155	371	2459	2482	2930
4	186	26	2072	56	1319	372	2460	2935	3184
5	2070	27	2073	57	2078	399	1511	3110	3286
6	187	28	2074	58	1326	667	1083	3438	3480
10	1324	29	2075	67	3455	859	3109	3439	3479
15	16	32	1691	115	2079	1054	1283	3513	3514
20	2071	35	484	131	2931	1145	2932		
21	1325	39	2076	182	2080	1384	2030		
22	858	40	2077	237	1316	1687	1688		

Proof. Points $X(3)$, P , U are on the same line, and distance from $X(3)$ to U is $R^2/|PX_3|$. Therefore, in normalized barycentrics, we have : $u = x_3 + (p - x_3) R^2/|PX_3|^2$. \square

Remark 12.4.4. On ETC $n \leq 3587$, there are :

- 258 named points that belongs to Γ
- 47 pairs of "true" inverses that both are named
- 220 named points of Γ that have a named isogonal conjugate (among the 229 points of \mathcal{L}_b)
- 62 pairs of named antipodal points

12.5 Incircle

Definition 12.5.1. The incircle is one of the four circles that are tangent to the sidelines. This circle is inside the triangle, and also inside the nine point circle (these circles are tangent). Center $X(1)$, perspector $X(7)$, radius $r = S/s = abc \div 2R(a + b + c)$, while equation and column are :

$$\Gamma_{\text{std}} + \frac{1}{4} \sum x (b - a + c)^2 ; \left(\begin{array}{c} (-a + b + c)^2 \\ (+a - b + c)^2 \\ (+a + b - c)^2 \\ 4 \end{array} \right) \quad (12.9)$$

Proof. well-known properties. \square

Remark 12.5.2. On ETC $n \leq 3587$, there are :

- 39 named points on the incircle
- 7 pairs of "true" inverses that both are named
- 10 pairs of named antipodal points

Proposition 12.5.3. *Centers of homothety with the circumcircle are $in=X(55)$, and $ex=X(56)$. When $p : q : r \in \Gamma$, then Q , Q' are antipodal points on the incircle :*

$$Q = \left((b - c)^2 p + a^2 q + a^2 r \right) (b + c - a), \text{ etc}$$

$$Q' = \frac{(b + c)^2 p + a^2 q + a^2 r}{b + c - a}, \text{ etc}$$

Proof. Proposition 12.3.2. \square

Proposition 12.5.4. Incircle transform. Let $U = u : v : w$ be a point other than the symmedian point, X_6 . Then reflection of \mathcal{T}_7 (the intouch triangle) in the line UX_1 is perspective with triangle ABC . The isogonal conjugate of the corresponding perspector is called the incircle transform of U . Its barycentrics are :

$$IT(u : v : w) = \frac{a^2 (bw - cv)^2}{b + c - a} : \frac{b^2 (cu - aw)^2}{a + c - b} : \frac{c^2 (av - bu)^2}{b + a - c}$$

and this point is on the incircle.

Proof. Line UX_1 is a diameter of the incircle and the reflected triangle \mathcal{T} is also inscribed in the incircle. The barycentrics of UX_1 are $[bw - cv, cu - aw, av - ub]$. Reflection in this line is obtained using (7.28), and barycentrics of \mathcal{T} are obtained. Perspectivity and perspector are easily computed and conclusion follows by substituting in the incircle equation. \square

Remark 12.5.5. In ETC another formula is given... and the point is also on the incircle :

$$IT2(U) = \frac{a^2 (b^2 w - c^2 v)^2}{b^2 c^2 (b + c - a)} : \frac{b^2 (c^2 u - a^2 w)^2}{a^2 c^2 (c + a - b)} : \frac{c^2 (a^2 v - b^2 u)^2}{a^2 b^2 (a + b - c)}$$

One has $IT(X) = IT(U)$ when U, X aligned with X_1 while $IT2(X) = IT(U)$ when U, X aligned with X_6 .

12.6 Nine-points circle

Definition 12.6.1. The nine point circle is the circumcircle of the orthic triangle. It goes also through the six midpoints of the orthocentric quadrangle $ABCH$. Center $X(5)$, radius $R/2$ (half the ABC circumradius), perspector $X(3613)$:

$$\frac{1}{b^2 c^2 + 2 S_a a^2} : \frac{1}{a^2 c^2 + 2 b^2 S_b} : \frac{1}{b^2 a^2 + 2 c^2 S_c}$$

while equation, matrix, column are :

$$\Gamma_{\text{std}} + \frac{1}{2} (xS_a + yS_b + zS_c) ; \begin{bmatrix} 2S_a & -c^2 & -b^2 \\ -c^2 & 2S_b & -a^2 \\ -b^2 & -a^2 & 2S_c \end{bmatrix} ; \begin{bmatrix} S_a \\ S_b \\ S_c \\ 2 \end{bmatrix} \quad (12.10)$$

Proposition 12.6.2. Centers of homothety with Γ are $in=X(2)$, and $ex=X(4)$. Ω intersects Γ when ABC is not acute. Radical trace $X(468)$, direction of center axis (Euler line) $X(30)$, direction of radical axis $X(523)$. Standard parametrization (homothety from circumcircle) :

$$U \simeq \begin{pmatrix} (\sigma - \tau) (c^2 \tau - b^2 \sigma + b^2 \rho - c^2 \rho) \\ (\tau - \rho) (a^2 \rho - c^2 \tau + c^2 \sigma - a^2 \sigma) \\ (\rho - \sigma) (b^2 \sigma - a^2 \rho + a^2 \tau - b^2 \tau) \end{pmatrix}$$

Remark 12.6.3. On ETC $n \leq 3587$, there are :

- 37 named points on the nine points circle
- 9 pairs of "true" inverses that both are named
- 12 pairs of named antipodal points

Proposition 12.6.4 (Feuerbach). The nine-point circle is tangent to the incircle and the three excircles. The contact with incircle is $X(11)$, the so-called Feuerbach point.

Proof. Use (12.9) and (12.10) to obtain the radical axis. \square

12.7 Polar circle

Definition 12.7.1. The polar circle is the only circle whose matrix is diagonal (and triangle ABC is autopolar). Center $X(4)$, the orthocenter, radius $\sqrt{-S_a S_b S_c} \div 2S$, equation and column are :

$$\frac{1}{x+y+z} \sum S_a x^2 = \Gamma_{\text{std}} + (x S_a + y S_b + z S_c) = 0 ; \quad \begin{pmatrix} S_a \\ S_b \\ S_c \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Proposition 12.7.2. *This circle belongs to the same pencil as the circum- and the nine-points circles. This circle is real only when triangle ABC is not acute. Therefore, no named points can belong to this circle.*

Proposition 12.7.3. *The polar circle is the locus of the centers of the inscribed rectangular hyperbolas (cf Section 11.8).*

12.8 Longchamps circle

Definition 12.8.1. The Longchamps circle of ABC is the polar circle of the antimedial triangle. Center $X(20)$, the Longchamps point, radius $\sqrt{-S_a S_b S_c}/S$, equation, matrix and column are :

$$\Gamma_{\text{std}} + (x a^2 + y b^2 + z c^2) = 0 ; \quad \begin{bmatrix} a^2 & S_c & S_b \\ S_c & b^2 & S_a \\ S_b & S_a & c^2 \end{bmatrix} ; \quad \begin{pmatrix} a^2 \\ b^2 \\ c^2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Proposition 12.8.2. *The Longchamps circle is the locus of the auxiliary points of the inscribed rectangular hyperbolas (cf Section 11.8).*

12.9 Bevan circle

Definition 12.9.1. The Bevan circle is the circumcircle of the excentral triangle. Perspector $X(57)$, center $X(40)$, radius $2R$, equation and column :

$$\Gamma_{\text{std}} + (-bcx - acy - abz) = 0 ; \quad \begin{pmatrix} -bc \\ -ac \\ -ba \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Proposition 12.9.2. *Centers of homothety with Γ are $in=X(165)$, and $ex=X(1)$. Radical trace $X(1155)$, center axis $X(517)$, radical axis $X(513)$. Moses parametrization leads to Q (bad looking) and $Q' = -(a+2b+2c)p + aq + ar$.*

Remark 12.9.3. On ETC $n \leq 3587$, there are :

- 9 named points on the Bevan circle, namely : 1054, 1282, 1768, 2100, 2101, 2448, 2449, 2948, 3464
- 5 pairs of "true" inverses that both are named
- 2 pairs of named antipodal points

12.10 Spieker circle

Definition 12.10.1. Spieker circle is the incircle of the medial triangle. Perspector $X(2)$, center $X(10)$, radius $r/2$ (half the ABC inradius), equation :

$$\Gamma_{\text{std}} + \frac{1}{16} \sum x (5c^2 + 5b^2 - 3a^2 + 2ac + 2ab - 6bc)$$

Proposition 12.10.2. *Centers of homothety with Γ are $in=X(958)$, and $ex=X(1376)$. Radical trace not named, center axis $X(515)$, radical axis $X(522)$. Moses parametrization leads to :*

$$Q = (b + c - a) ((ab^2 + ac^2 + b^3 - b^2c - c^2b + c^3) p + a(q + r)(a^2 + ab + ac + 2bc))$$

$$Q' = (ab^2 + c^2a + b^2c + c^2b - c^3 - b^3) p + a(q + r)(+a^2 - ab - ac + 2bc), \text{ etc}$$

Centers of homothety with the incircle are $in=X(8)$ and $ex=X(2)$.

Remark 12.10.3. On ETC $n \leq 3587$, there are :

- 8 named points on the Spieker circle, namely : 3035, 3036, 3037, 3038, 3039, 3040, 3041, 3042
- no pairs of "true" inverses that both are named
- 2 pairs of named antipodal points [3035,3036], [3042,3042]

12.11 Alt-Spieker circle

Definition 12.11.1. The alt-Spieker circle is the common orthogonal cycle to the three excircles (see Subsection 13.11.5). Center $X(10)$, radius $\sqrt{r_0^2 + s^2} \div 2$, equation and column :

$$4\Gamma_{\text{std}} - \sum x(a - b + c)(a + b - c) = 0 ; \quad \begin{pmatrix} -(a - b + c)(a + b - c) \\ -(b - c + a)(b + c - a) \\ -(c - a + b)(c + a - b) \\ 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

12.12 Apollonian circles

Definition 12.12.1. Let J_a and P_a be the points where the interior and exterior bisectors of angle A meet the opposite sideline. In other words, the J_k and P_k are, respectively, the cevians and the coccevians of $I_0 = X(1)$. The circle drawn using $[J_a, P_a]$ as diameter is called the **A-Apollonian circle**. It goes obviously through vertex A .

Proposition 12.12.2. *The equation of the A-circle is $0 : -a^2c^2 : a^2b^2 : b^2 - c^2$. Its center is $E_a \simeq 0 : -b^2 : c^2$, the cocevian of $X(6)$. The three (E_k) belong to a same pencil (the so-called Lemoine pencil) whose base points are the isodynamic points $X(15)$, $X(16)$, while the radical axis is the Brocard line.*

(Spoiler) Since J_a, P_a are Lemoine-conjugates, the Apollonian circles can be described in the Lubin-1 frame. One obtains:

$$(E_a) \underset{1}{\simeq} \beta + \gamma - 2\alpha : \alpha^2 - \beta\gamma : \alpha(2\beta\gamma - \alpha\beta - \alpha\gamma) : \alpha^2 - \beta\gamma$$

Proof. Straightforward from $\bigwedge_3(A, J_a, P_a)$. □

12.13 Apollonius circle

Definition 12.13.1. The **Apollonius circle** is tangent to the three excircles and encloses them (see Subsection 13.11.5). Center $X(970)$, perspector not named, equation :

$$\Gamma_{\text{std}} - \frac{a+b+c}{4} \sum \frac{a^2 + ab + ac + 2bc}{a} x = 0 ; \quad \begin{pmatrix} a + b + c + 2bc \div a \\ a + b + c + 2ca \div b \\ a + b + c + 2ab \div c \\ -4 \div (a + b + c) \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{radius} = (abc + \sum_6 a^2b) \div 8S = \frac{r_0^2 + s^2}{4r_0}$$

Proposition 12.13.2. *Centers of homothety with Γ are $in=X(573)$, and $ex=X(386)$. Radical trace not named, center axis $X(511)$, radical axis $X(512)$. Moses parametrization leads to bad looking Q and*

$$Q' = -(b+c)^2(a+c)(a+b)p + (ab+ac+bc+b^2+c^2)a^2q + r(ab+ac+bc+b^2+c^2)a^2, \text{ etc}$$

Centers of homothety with the nine-points circle are $in=X(10)$ and $ex=X(2051)$.

Remark 12.13.3. On ETC $n \leq 3587$, there are :

- 8 named points on the Apollonius circle, namely : 2037, 2038, 3029, 3030, 3031, 3032, 3033, 3034
- no pairs of "true" inverses that both are named
- 1 pairs of named antipodal points [2037, 2038].

12.14 First Lemoine circle

Definition 12.14.1. The **first Lemoine circle** of ABC is obtained as follows. Draw parallels to the sidelines of ABC through Lemoine point X_6 . The six intersections of these lines with sidelines are concyclic on the required circle. The following surd is useful :

$$W_1 = \sqrt{a^2b^2 + a^2c^2 + b^2c^2} \quad (12.11)$$

Proposition 12.14.2. *Center is $X(182)$ (i.e. $[O, K]$ midpoint), radius $R \div 2 \cos \omega = W_1 R / (a^2 + b^2 + c^2)$, perspector :*

$$\frac{a^2}{2a^2b^2 + 2a^2c^2 + b^2c^2}, \frac{b^2}{a^2c^2 + 2a^2b^2 + 2b^2c^2}, \frac{c^2}{a^2b^2 + 2a^2c^2 + 2b^2c^2}$$

is not named, equation :

$$\Gamma_{\text{std}} + \frac{1}{(a^2 + b^2 + c^2)^2} \sum x (b^2 + c^2) b^2 c^2$$

This circle is concentric with and external to the first Brocard circle.

Proof. Difference of squared radiuses factors into $(abc / (a^2 + b^2 + c^2))^2$. □

Proposition 12.14.3. *Centers of homothety with Γ are $in=X(1342)$, and $ex=X(1343)$. Radical trace $X(1691)$, center axis $X(511)$, radical axis $X(512)$. Moses parametrization leads to bad looking Q and Q' . Poncelet centers of the pencil : $X(1687)$ (inside) and $X(1688)$ outside.*

Proof. In order to see that $X(1687)$ is inside, compute $\Omega(X(182)) \times \Omega(X(1687))$ and obtain a quantity that is clearly positive. □

Remark 12.14.4. On ETC $n \leq 3587$, there are :

- 2 named points on the first Lemoine circle, namely : 1662, 1663 (intersection with the Brocard axis, $X(3)X(6)$).
- 7 pairs of "true" inverses that both are named :

$$\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 6 & 32 & 39 & 371 & 372 & 1687 \\ 2456 & 1691 & 1692 & 2458 & 2461 & 2462 & 1688 \end{bmatrix}$$

- 1 pairs of named antipodal points [1662, 1663].

12.15 Second Lemoine circle

Definition 12.15.1. The **second Lemoine circle** of ABC is obtained as follows. Draw parallels to the sidelines of orthic triangle through Lemoine point X_6 . The six intersections of these lines with sidelines are concyclic on the required circle.

Proposition 12.15.2. Center is $X(6)$ itself, radius $abc/(a^2 + b^2 + c^2)$, perspector $X(3527)$, equation :

$$\Gamma_{\text{std}} + \frac{4}{(a^2 + b^2 + c^2)^2} \sum x S_a b^2 c^2 = 0$$

Centers of homothety with Γ are $\text{in}=X(371)$, and $\text{ex}=X(372)$. Radical trace $X(1692)$, center axis $X(511)$, radical axis $X(512)$. Moses parametrization leads to bad looking Q and Q' . Poncelet centers of the pencil are involving radical $\sqrt{6 \sum a^2 b^2 - 5 \sum a^4}$ and are not named. Moreover, the second Lemoine circle is bitangent to the Brocard ellipse.

Remark 12.15.3. On ETC $n \leq 3587$, there are :

- 2 named points on the second Lemoine circle, namely : 1666, 1667 (intersection with the Brocard axis, $X(3)X(6)$).
- 5 pairs of "true" inverses that both are named :

$$\begin{bmatrix} 3 & 576 & 1316 & 1351 & 2452 \\ 1570 & 1691 & 2451 & 1692 & 3049 \end{bmatrix}$$

- 1 pairs of named antipodal points [1666, 1667].

12.16 Sine-triple-angle circle

Definition 12.16.1. Define inscribed triangles \mathcal{T}_1 and \mathcal{T}_2 by the properties :

$$\angle(AB, AC) = \angle(B_1A, B_1C_1) = \angle(C_2B_2, C_2A), \text{ etc}$$

the idea being to obtain isosceles "remainders". Then all the six vertices are on the same circle.

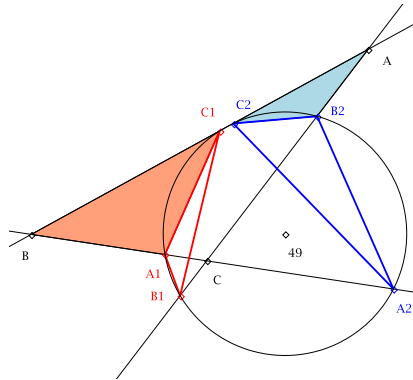


Figure 12.1: Sin triple angle circle

Proof. Using the tangent formula, the six points are easily obtained. \mathcal{T}_1 is a central triangle, and each vertex of \mathcal{T}_2 is obtained by a transposition.

$$A_1 \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ (a^2 - ac - b^2)(a^2 + ac - b^2)(a^2 + b^2 - c^2) \\ (a^2 - bc - c^2)(a^2 + bc - c^2)c^2 \end{pmatrix} \quad \square$$

Proposition 12.16.2. *Center $X(49)$, perspector not named, equation horrific, radius $R_{tsa} = R^3 / (|OH|^2 - 2R^2)$. Centers of homothety with Γ are $in=X(1147)$, and $ex=X(184)$, direction of radical axis $X(924)$. Moses parametrization leads to bad looking Q and :*

$$Q' = a^2 (a^2 - c^2) (a^2 - b^2) p - a^4 (b^2 + c^2 - a^2) (q + r), \text{ etc}$$

Remark 12.16.3. On ETC $n \leq 3587$, there are :

- 6 named points on the Sine Triple Angle circle, namely : 3043, 3044, 3045, 3046, 3047, 3048
- 0 pairs of "true" inverses that are both named
- 1 pairs of named antipodal points [3043, 3047].

12.17 Brocard 3-6 circle

Definition 12.17.1. The **Brocard 3-6 circle** has $[X_3, X_6]$ for diameter. Center $X(182)$. Radius $eR \div 2 \cos \omega = W_2 R / (a^2 + b^2 + c^2)$ where :

$$W_2 = \sqrt{a^4 + b^4 + c^4 - (b^2 c^2 + a^2 b^2 + a^2 c^2)} \quad (12.12)$$

while the perspector :

$$\frac{a^2}{2a^4 + b^2 c^2} : \frac{b^2}{2b^4 + a^2 c^2} : \frac{c^2}{2c^4 + a^2 b^2}$$

is not named. Equation :

$$\Gamma_{\text{std}} + \frac{1}{(a^2 + b^2 + c^2)} (x b^2 c^2 + y c^2 a^2 + z a^2 b^2) = 0$$

Proposition 12.17.2. *Centers of homothety with Γ are $in=X(1340)$, and $ex=X(1341)$. Radical trace $X(187)$, center axis $X(511)$, radical axis $X(512)$. Moses parametrization leads to :*

$$Q = \left(\begin{array}{c} a^2 (a^4 - a^2 c^2 - a^2 b^2 - 2 b^2 c^2) (p + q + r) \\ \pm W ((a^2 b^2 + a^2 c^2 + 2 b^2 c^2 - b^4 - c^4) p - a^2 (b^2 + c^2 - a^2) (q + r)) \end{array} \right), \text{ etc}$$

Poncelet centers of the pencil are $X(15)$ and $X(16)$, the isodynamic points (see Section 13.10).

Remark 12.17.3. On ETC $n \leq 3587$, there are :

- 4 named points on the first Brocard circle, namely : 3, 6, 1083, 1316. Moreover, this circle goes through the Brocard points (cf 7.12.1).
- 47 pairs of "true" inverses that are both named
- 1 pairs of named antipodal points [3, 6].

12.18 Second Brocard circle

Definition 12.18.1. First anti-Brocard circle: circumcircle of the first anti-Brocard triangle. Equation:

$$\Gamma_{\text{std}} - \sum_3 \frac{a^2 (b^2 + bc + c^2) (b^2 - bc + c^2)}{W_2^2} x = 0$$

Definition 12.18.2. The **Brocard second circle** is centered on $X(3)$ and goes through the Brocard's centers. Radius $eR = W_2 R / \sqrt{a^2 b^2 + b^2 c^2 + c^2 a^2}$, while the perspector :

$$\frac{a^2}{2a^4 - a^2 b^2 - a^2 c^2 + b^2 c^2}, \text{ etc}$$

is not named. Equation :

$$\Gamma_{\text{std}} + \frac{a^2 b^2 c^2}{a^2 b^2 + a^2 c^2 + b^2 c^2} = 0$$

Remark 12.18.3. On ETC $n \leq 3587$, there are :

- 6 named points on the second Brocard circle, namely : 1670, 1671, 2554, 2555, 2556, 2557. Moreover, this circle goes through the Brocard points (cf 7.12.1).
- 17 pairs of "true" inverses that are both named

6	39	62	3106	1340	3558	2026	2561
15	3105	76	99	1341	3557	2027	2560
16	3104	182	3095	1666	2563		
32	3094	371	3103	1667	2562		
61	3107	372	3102	1689	1690		

- 3 pairs of named antipodal points [1670, 1671], [2554, 2555], [2556, 2557].

12.19 Orthocentroidal 2-4 circle

Definition 12.19.1. Orthocentroidal circle has $[X_2, X_4]$ for diameter. Center is $X(381)$ and radius $R W_3 \div 3abc$ where :

$$W_3 = \sqrt{a^6 + b^6 + c^6 - (a^4b^2 + a^4c^2 + a^2b^4 + a^2c^4 + b^4c^2 + b^2c^4) + 3a^2b^2c^2} \quad (12.13)$$

while the perspector :

$$\frac{1}{b^2c^2 + 2a^2(b^2 + c^2 - a^2)}$$

is not named. Equation and column are :

$$\Gamma_{\text{std}} + \frac{2}{3} (x S_a + y S_b + z S_c) = 0 ; \quad \begin{pmatrix} 2 S_a \\ 2 S_b \\ 2 S_c \\ 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

Proposition 12.19.2. Centers of homothety with Γ are $\text{in}=X(1344)$, and $\text{ex}=X(1345)$. Radical trace $X(468)$, center axis $X(30)$, radical axis $X(523)$. Moses parametrization leads to :

$$Q = \left(\begin{array}{c} abc (a^4 + a^2b^2 + a^2c^2 - 2b^4 + 4b^2c^2 - 2c^4) (p + q + r) \\ \pm W ((a^2b^2 + a^2c^2 + 2b^2c^2 - b^4 - c^4) p - a^2 (b^2 + c^2 - a^2) (q + r)) \end{array} \right), \text{ etc}$$

Poncelet points are real when triangle is acute.

Remark 12.19.3. On ETC $n \leq 3587$, there are :

- 2 named points on the orthocentroidal circle, namely (antipodal) 2, 4
- 45 pairs of "true" inverses that are both named

Proposition 12.19.4. The orthocentroidal circle goes through points $A' = (A + 2A_H)/3$, etc. where $A_H B_H C_H$ are the feet of the altitudes.

Proof. One has $A_H \simeq a^2 : 2S_c : 2S_b$. Then one has $\text{Ver}(A_H) \cdot \mathcal{V}_b = 0$. □

Proposition 12.19.5. Among the four in/ex-centers, the in-center is inside the orthocentroidal circle, and the other three are outside.

Proof. One can check that

$$\begin{aligned} |OI_0|^2 - 4|NI_0|^2 &= +2r_0(R - 2r_0) &= |OI_0|^2 \times (+2r_0/R) &\geq 0 \\ |OI_A|^2 - 4|NI_A|^2 &= -2r_A(R + 2r_A) &= |OI_A|^2 \times (-2r_A/R) &\leq 0 \end{aligned}$$

while the locus of $|OM|^2 = 4|NM|^2$ is precisely the said circle ($M = H$ and $M = G$ are solutions). □

Proposition 12.19.6. *Let O, N, I be three points on the plane and let $\psi(\Phi)$ be the image of the curve*

$$\Phi : 3\bar{Z}^2 Z^2 + 14\mathbf{Z}\bar{Z}(\mathbf{Z} + \bar{Z})\mathbf{T} + 27\left(Z^2 + \frac{4}{3}\mathbf{Z}\bar{Z} + \bar{Z}^2\right)\mathbf{T}^2 + 54(\mathbf{Z} + \bar{Z})\mathbf{T}^3 + 27\mathbf{T}^4 = 0$$

*by the similitude ψ which sends $z = -1$ to O and $z = 0$ to N . When I is outside $\psi(\Phi)$, it exists a triangle such that O is the circum-center, N is the Euler-center and I is one of the in/ex-centers. When I is inside this **exclusion curve**, no such triangle can be found.*

Sketch of the proof, more details in [Guinand, 1984](#). Consider the polynomial:

$$P(X) \doteq X^3 - X^2\left(\frac{3}{2} - \frac{2\sigma}{\rho}\right) + X\left(\frac{2\sigma(\sigma - \kappa)}{\rho^2} - \frac{3\sigma}{\rho} + \frac{3}{4}\right) - \frac{1}{8} + \frac{2\sigma\kappa}{\rho^2}$$

When $\rho = |OI_0|^2$, $\sigma = |NI_0|^2$, $\kappa = |ON|^2$, the roots of P are the three $\cos A$, etc. When a is changed into $-a$, I_0 becomes I_a and the roots of P become $\cos A$, $-\cos B$, $-\cos C$. This is easily checked using the Al-Kashi formula. (How to obtain P is another story, see [Guinand](#)).

Since all roots have to be real, we must have

$$0 \geq \Delta(P) = 16 \frac{\sigma^2 S^2(\rho, \sigma, \kappa)}{\rho^6} (32\sigma\kappa - 27\rho^2 + 40\sigma\rho - 16\sigma^2)$$

And then Φ is obtained by substituting

$$\rho = (\bar{Z} + \mathbf{T})(\mathbf{Z} + \mathbf{T})/\mathbf{T}^2; \sigma = \mathbf{Z}\bar{Z}/\mathbf{T}^2; \kappa = 1$$

in the last factor. When $\Delta = 0$, the roots are $X = -1$ (simple) and $X = 5/4 - \sigma/\rho$ (double). \square

Remark 12.19.7. Due to the relation $A + B + C = \pi$, the three cosines are related by

$$\cos^2 A + \cos^2 B + \cos^2 C = 1 - 2 \cos A \cos B \cos C.$$

In other words, we have $s_1^2 - 2s_2 + 2s_3 - 1 = 0$. And this can be checked for polynomial P . The Lemoine's transforms changes two signs, and the relation remains.

Exercise 12.19.8. Generate "a lot" of α, β, γ on the unit circle, and draw the corresponding

$$\psi^{-1}(I) = -\frac{(\alpha + \beta + \gamma)^2}{\alpha^2 + \beta^2 + \gamma^2}$$

(the green points). Superpose the graph of Φ , and draw the circle $[-1/3; +1]$.

12.20 Fuhrmann 4-8 circle

Definition 12.20.1. Fuhrmann circle has $[X_4, X_8]$ for diameter (see also [Ayme, 2009](#)). Center $X(355)$, radius $RW_4 \div \sqrt{abc}$ where :

$$W_4 = \sqrt{a^3 + b^3 + c^3 - (a^2b + a^2c + ab^2 + ac^2 + b^2c + bc^2) + 3abc} \quad (12.14)$$

perspector not named (and not handy). Equation and column are :

$$\Gamma_{\text{std}} + \frac{2}{a+b+c}(x a S_a + y b S_b + z c S_c) = 0; \begin{pmatrix} 2 S_a a \\ 2 S_b b \\ 2 S_c c \\ b + a + c \end{pmatrix}$$

Remark 12.20.2. The only named points of this circle are $X(2)$ and $X(4)$. Five inverse pairs are :

1	11	72	2475	3434
80	1837	3419	3448	3436

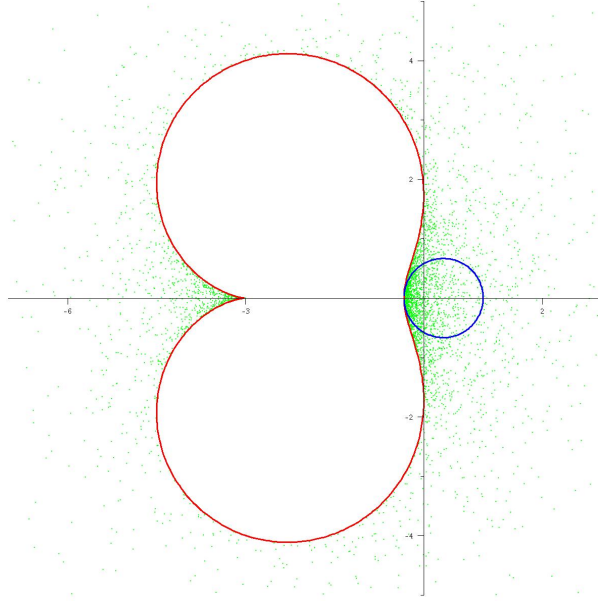


Figure 12.2: The exclusion curve

12.21 Taylor circle

Definition 12.21.1. Project the foot of any altitude onto the two other sidelines. The six points obtained are concyclic, defining the Taylor circle. Center X(389) with barycentrics

$$a^2 (4S^2 + S_b S_c) (2S_a^2 - b^2 c^2) - a^4 b^2 c^2 S_a, \text{ etc}$$

squared radius

$$\frac{4S^4}{a^2 b^2 c^2} + \frac{S_a^2 S_b^2 S_c^2}{16 a^2 b^2 c^2 S^2} = \frac{rad_H^4 + 4S^2}{16R^2}$$

where rad_H is the radius of the polar circle (so that $rad_H^4 \geq 0$), perspector not so simple (and not named). No named point on it. Equation and column are :

$$\Gamma_{\text{std}} + \frac{4S^2}{a^2 b^2 c^2} (x S_a^2 + y S_b^2 + z S_c^2) = 0 ; \quad \begin{bmatrix} 4S^2 S_a^2 \\ 4S^2 S_b^2 \\ 4S^2 S_c^2 \\ a^2 b^2 c^2 \end{bmatrix} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} S_a^2 \\ S_b^2 \\ S_c^2 \\ 4R^2 \end{bmatrix}$$

12.22 Kiepert RH and isosceles adjunctions

Definition 12.22.1. **Kiepert RH** is the rectangular hyperbola through A, B, C, G . It goes through X(4) (general RH property) and also through 10,13,14,17,18... and circa 400 other ETC centers. Center is X(115), perspector X(523), points at infinity X(3413) and X(3414), i.e.

$$b^2 - c^2 : a^2 - b^2 \pm W_2 : c^2 - a^2 \mp W_2$$

where $W_2 = \sqrt{a^4 - a^2 b^2 - a^2 c^2 + b^4 - b^2 c^2 + c^4}$ is the Brocard radical

Proposition 12.22.2. . Chose angle ϕ and construct isosceles triangles $BA'C$, $CB'A$, $AC'B$ with basis angle $\angle(BC', BA') = \phi$ ($\phi < 0$ when A' is outside). Then triangles ABC and $A'B'C'$ are perspective wrt a point $N(\phi)$:

$$N(\phi) \simeq \frac{1}{2S \cot \phi - S_a}, \text{ etc} \simeq \frac{a}{\sin(A - \phi)}, \text{ etc} \quad (12.15)$$

and Kiepert RH is the locus of such points.

Proof. One has : $A' = a^2 \tan \phi : 2S - S_c \tan \phi : 2S - S_b \tan \phi$. □

Remark 12.22.3. Triangle $A'B'C'$ is perspective from $X(3)$ to the tangential triangle of ABC ...

Proposition 12.22.4. For a given K , the points $A'B'C'$ are on the same cubic as the vertices, the inexcetters, orthocenter, circumcenter and the points $A'B'C'$ relative to the opposite value of K . This cubic can be written as $(K^2 + 1) K001 + (3 - K^2) K003$ where $K001$ and $K003$ are the standardized equations of, respectively, the Neuberg and the McCay cubics, as given in Proposition 21.4.25 and Proposition 21.4.24. The pole is $X(6)$, while pivot is $3vX(2) - K^2 vX(20)$ i.e. : $(1 + K^2) s_1 s_3 : (3 - K^2) s_3 : (1 + K^2) s_2$.

Proof. Details are given in Proposition 21.4.22. □

Remark 12.22.5. Points at infinity of Kiepert RH are parametrized by :

$$\cot \phi = \frac{-1}{3} \left(1 + \frac{2W_2}{a^2 + b^2 + c^2} \right) \cot(\omega) = \frac{-1}{12S} (a^2 + b^2 + c^2 + 2W_2)$$

Remark 12.22.6. Fixed values of angle ϕ can be obtained by adding some regular shape to each side of the reference triangle. This created a race for the most inventive adjunction. Among them is the Pelle à Tarte, whose name was coined from a charade whose solution was "neon lamp, pie shovel" (i.e. lampe au néon, pelle à tarte, an approximation for Napoleon Bonaparte)

Example 12.22.7. In Figure 12.3, a Pelle à Tarte (pie shovel) like $AFUGC$ is made of a square $AFGC$ and an equilateral triangle FUG . It defines the angle $\phi = \left(\overbrace{AU, AC} \right) = -75^\circ$. When the triangle is inside the square, we obtain a Pelle Pliée (folded shovel) like $AFWGC$ that defines angle $\phi = \left(\overbrace{AU, AC} \right) = -15^\circ$.

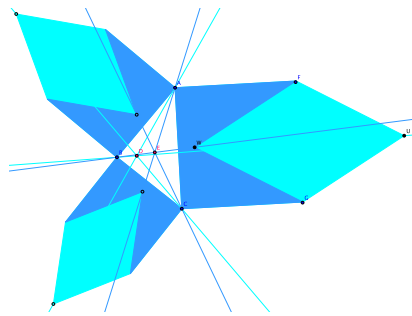


Figure 12.3: Cake server (Pelle a Tarte)

Example 12.22.8. Arbelos. Another idea to obtain some adding object is as follows. Divide $[AB]$ in a given ratio, obtaining D . Use the same ratio to obtain E, F . Draw the half circles and perpendicular DM , then the tangent circles. The triangle of the centers is perspective with ABC if and only if the ratio is $(\sqrt{5} - 1)/2$. Perspector is $X(2672)$. And belongs to Kiepert RH. Therefore, we have isosceles triangle. Value is $\pm \tan \phi = 3 - \sqrt{5}$ (plus is inward, minus is outward).

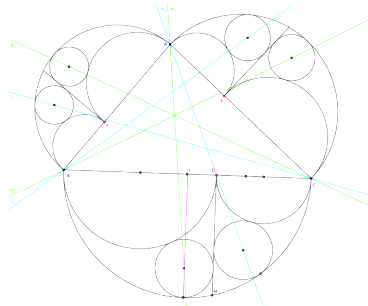


Figure 12.4: Arbelos configuration

-90°	-0°	-75°	-15°	-72°	-18°	-at3	-67.5°	-22.5°	
4	2	3391	3366	1139	3370	1327	???	3387	3373
4	2	3367	3392	1140	3397	1328	???	3374	3388
+90°	+0°	+75°	+15°	+72°	+18°	+at3	+67.5°	+22.5°	
H	G	Pelle à Tarte		pentagons		arctan 3			
-at2		-60°	-30°	-54°	-36°	-arb	-45°		
1131	3316	13	17	3381	???	???	2671	485	
1132	3317	14	18	???	3382	???	2672	486	
+at2		+60°	+30°	+54°	+36°	+arb	+45°		
		Fermat	Napol.			Arbelos		Vecten	
-2ω	2ω - π/2	-ω	ω - π/2	-1/2ω	1/2ω - π/2	-1/2ω - π/4			
3407	3399	83	262	1676	???	???			
1916	3406	76	98	???	1677	2010			
+2ω	π/2 - 2ω	+ω	π/2 - ω	+1/2ω	π/2 - 1/2ω	+1/2ω + π/4			
Gibert		Brocart		Lemoine circ		Galaty circ			

Table 12.4: Blocks related to Kiepert adjunctions

Example 12.22.9. When using the center of a regular triangle, square, pentagon, we have $\phi = 30^\circ$, $\phi = 45^\circ$, $\phi = 54^\circ$; when using the farthest vertex (or the midpoint of the farthest side), $\phi = 60^\circ$, $\phi = at2 \doteq \arctan 2$, $\phi = 72^\circ$. We even have points relative to $at3 = \arctan 3$. Points are collected into 2×2 blocks corresponding to $-\phi$, $\phi - 90^\circ$, $90^\circ - \phi$, ϕ , see Table 12.4

Example 12.22.10. Brocard angle is often involved since :

$$P_\phi \simeq \frac{1}{(b^2 + a^2 + c^2) \cot(\phi) - S_a \cot(\omega)}, \text{ etc}$$

Proposition 12.22.11. Let σ be a constant value. Then all lines $N(\phi)N(\sigma - \phi)$ are passing through point $T(\sigma)$ where :

$$T(\sigma) \simeq \begin{pmatrix} a^2 S_a \\ b^2 S_b \\ c^2 S_c \end{pmatrix} + 2S \cot \sigma \begin{pmatrix} a^2 \\ b^2 \\ c^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Therefore all the $N(\phi)N(-\phi)$ lines (columns in a block) are passing through $X(6)$, the Lemoine point. And all the $N(\phi)N(\frac{\pi}{2} - \phi)$ lines (rows in a block) are passing through $X(3)$ the circumcenter. All the $T(\sigma)$ are on the Brocard axis $X(3)X(6)$.

Proof. Obvious from (12.15). □

Proposition 12.22.12. Let δ be a constant value. Then all lines $N(\phi)N(\phi + \delta)$ are tangent to a conic $D(\delta)$. When $\delta = 0$ this conic is the Kiepert RH itself. When $\delta = \pi/2$ (diagonals in a block), the conic reduces to a real point : the Euler center $X(5)$. In the general case, $D(\delta) = 16S^2 (\prod (a^2 - b^2)) \cot^2(\delta) D(0) + D(\pi/2)$.

Proof. This can be proved using the usual techniques : differentiate and wedge. When δ is rational wrt π , conics $D(\delta)$ and $D(0)$ are in a Poncelet configuration. □

Lemma 12.22.13. Consider circle $\mathcal{C}_0 : x^2 + y^2 = 1$ and points $U = (u, 0)$, $V = (v, 0)$ in the Cartesian plane. When $u + v \neq 0$, these points are the centers of homothety of circles \mathcal{C}_0 and $\mathcal{C}(P, \rho)$ where

$$P = \left(\frac{2uv}{u+v}, 0 \right), \quad \rho = \left| \frac{u-v}{u+v} \right|$$

Proof. Consider $M = (0, +1)$ and $N = (0, -1)$. Their counterparts in circle \mathcal{C} are obtained by the intersections $J = UM \cap VN$ and $K = UN \cap VM$. We have $P = (J + K)/2$ and $\rho = |J - K|/2$. □

Proposition 12.22.14. *A circle $\mathcal{C}(P, \rho)$ can be found such that points $U = N(\phi)$, $V = N(\phi + \pi/2)$ are the centers of homothety between \mathcal{C} and the nine-points circle. We have :*

$$P \simeq \cot(2\phi) \begin{pmatrix} a^2 S_a \\ b^2 S_b \\ c^2 S_c \end{pmatrix} - 2S \begin{pmatrix} a^2 \\ b^2 \\ c^2 \end{pmatrix} \cong \cot(2\phi) X_3 - 2S X_6$$

$$\rho = \frac{abc \sqrt{1 + \cot^2(2\phi)}}{a^2 + b^2 + c^2 - 4S \cot(2\phi)}$$

Proof. These two points are aligned with $E=X(5)$. Define $W = (U + V)/2$. From the above lemma, we have :

$$P = E + k(U - E) ; \rho = (1 - k) \frac{R}{2} \quad \text{where } k = \frac{V - E}{W - E}$$

Computations are greatly simplified when remarking that the results depends not really from $\cot \phi$ itself, but rather from $\cot \phi - 1/\cot \phi$. That is the reason why all these formulas are involving $\cot(2\phi)$. \square

12.23 Cyclocevian conjugate

Definition 12.23.1. Two points are called cyclocevian conjugates when their cevian triangles share the same circumcircle. This definition has to be compared with cyclopedal conjugacy, see Section 9.3.

Proposition 12.23.2 (Terquem). *Each point not on the sidelines has a cyclocevian conjugate. Its barycentrics are given by (Grinberg, 2003b) :*

$$U = \text{cyclocevian}(P) = (\text{isot} \circ \text{anticomplement} \circ \text{isog} \circ \text{complement} \circ \text{isot})(P)$$

Proof. This proposition asserts that the other intersections of the circumcircle of $A_P B_P C_P$ with the sidelines are the vertices of another cevian triangle. As it should be, the formula is involutory. \square

Example 12.23.3. Some examples :

point	code	bary	cycc	circumcenter
Gergonne	$X(7)$	$1/(-a + b + c)$	$X(7)$	$X(1)$
centroid	$X(2)$	1	$X(4)$	$X(5)$
orthocenter	$X(4)$	$1/(-a^2 + b^2 + c^2)$	$X(2)$	$X(5)$
Nagel	$X(8)$	$-a + b + c$	$X(189)$	$X(1158)$

Point X_7 is the only center that is invariant by *cyclocevian*. Three other points share this property, obtained by changing one of the a, b, c into its opposite in the barycentrics of X_7 .

12.24 Mixtilinear circles

Definition 12.24.1. In triangle ABC , the circle γ tangent to the sidelines AB, AC and the circumcircle is called the A mixtilinear circle when γ_A is inside the circumcircle. The other circle tangent to these three lines is called the external mixtilinear circle and noted $\widehat{\gamma}_A$.

Proposition 12.24.2. *Using barycentrics or Lubin-2 lead to:*

$$\gamma_A \simeq_b \begin{bmatrix} 4b^2c^2 \\ c^2(a-b+c)^2 \\ b^2(a+b-c)^2 \\ (b+a+c)^2 \end{bmatrix} ; \gamma_A \simeq_z \left(\begin{bmatrix} (\alpha s_2 + s_3)^2 \\ \alpha^2(\beta - \gamma)^2 \\ (\alpha + s_1)^2 \end{bmatrix} ; \rho = \frac{2(s_1 s_2 - s_3)}{(\beta - \gamma)^2 \alpha} \right)$$

The external mixtilinear circle is obtained using the A-Lemoine transform.

ϕ	U	V	P	ρ	$name$
0	2	4	3	R	<i>circum</i>
$\pi/12$	3392	3391	16	$\frac{2\sqrt{3}abc}{12S - \sqrt{3}(a^2 + b^2 + c^2)}$	
$-\pi/12$	3366	3367	15	$\frac{2\sqrt{3}abc}{12S + \sqrt{3}(a^2 + b^2 + c^2)}$	
$\pi/10$	3397	1139	3393		
$-\pi/10$	3370	1140	3379		
$\arctan(3)$	1328	?	?	$\frac{5abc}{16S + 3(a^2 + b^2 + c^2)}$	
$-\arctan(3)$	1327	?	?	$\frac{5abc}{16S - 3(a^2 + b^2 + c^2)}$	
$\pi/8$	3388	3387	372	$\frac{\sqrt{2}abc}{4S - (a^2 + b^2 + c^2)}$	
$-\pi/8$	3373	3374	371	$\frac{\sqrt{2}abc}{4S + (a^2 + b^2 + c^2)}$	
$\arctan(2)$	1132	3316	?	$\frac{5abc}{12S + 4(a^2 + b^2 + c^2)}$	
$-\arctan(2)$	1131	3317	?	$\frac{5abc}{12S - 4(a^2 + b^2 + c^2)}$	
$\pi/6$	18	13	62	$\frac{2abc}{4S - \sqrt{3}(a^2 + b^2 + c^2)}$	
$-\pi/6$	17	14	61	$\frac{2abc}{4S + \sqrt{3}(a^2 + b^2 + c^2)}$	
$\pi/5$	3382	3381	3395	--	
$-\pi/5$?	?	3368	--	
$\arctan(3 - \sqrt{5})$	2672	?	?	$\frac{3(4\sqrt{5} + 5)abc}{44S - 2(9 + 5\sqrt{5})(a^2 + b^2 + c^2)}$	
$-\arctan(3 - \sqrt{5})$	2671	?	?	$\frac{3(4\sqrt{5} + 5)abc}{44S + 2(9 + 5\sqrt{5})(a^2 + b^2 + c^2)}$	
$\pi/4$	486	485	6	$\frac{abc}{a^2 + b^2 + c^2}$	2° Lemoine
$\operatorname{arccot} \frac{(a+b+c)^2}{4S}$	10	2051	970	$\frac{r^2 + p^2}{4r}$	Apollonius
$-\operatorname{arccot} \frac{(a+b+c)^2}{4S}$?	?	?		
2ω	1916	3399	?	$\frac{(a^2b^2 + a^2c^2 + b^2c^2)R}{a^4 + b^4 + c^4 + a^2c^2 + a^2b^2 + b^2c^2}$	
-2ω	3407	3406	?		
ω	76	262	3095	R	
$-\omega$	83	98	3398	$\frac{(a^2b^2 + a^2c^2 + b^2c^2)R}{a^4 + b^4 + c^4 + a^2c^2 + a^2b^2 + b^2c^2}$	
$\omega/2$?	?	511	∞	<i>Linfty</i>
$-\omega/2$	1676	1677	182	$\frac{R}{2\cos(\omega)}$	1° Lemoine
$\pi/4 + \omega/2$	2010	2009	39	$R\sin(\omega)$	<i>Gallatly</i>
$-\pi/4 - \omega/2$?	?	32	$\frac{abc(b^2 + a^2 + c^2)}{2(b^4 + c^4 + a^4)\cos(\omega)}$	

Table 12.5: Similicenters on Kiepert RH

Proof. Formulas are easy to verify... and then non-displayed ones are rather huge ! □

Construction 12.24.3. *The second intersection of line $A-X(56)$ cuts again the circumcircle at $A_1 \in \gamma_A$. Line OA_1 cuts line AI_0 at K_a , the center of γ_A . Contacts A_b, A_c with the sidelines are aligned with I . Moreover $A_bA_c \perp AI_0$.*

Chapter 13

Pencils of Cycles in the Triangle Plane

13.1 Introductory remarks

13.1.1 How many points at infinity should be used ?

In the context of the (barycentric) Triangle Plane, points are described by projective columns living in $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^3)$. In the same vein, the present chapter will describe the circles and their pencils by projective columns \mathcal{V} living in $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^4)$. Later, the Morley plane will be introduced, where points are described by columns living in $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$ while, in Chapter 18, circles will be described by projective columns \mathcal{V} living in $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^4)$.

Efficient notations are powerful, but poor notations can be confusing. Thus we will use $\mathcal{V}_b, \mathcal{V}_z, \mathcal{V}_p, \mathcal{V}_s$ to distinguish between barycentric, general Morley, Pedoe and spherical objects. When a formula is valid in all the four contexts, indices will be omitted.

Using such 4D spaces is not the most frequent method to describe the circles and their pencils. The tradition (Poncelet, 1822, 1865) is rather to use the Riemann sphere $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^2)$ where $(z_1, z_2) \simeq (\lambda z_1, \lambda z_2)$ for any non-zero $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$. But Triangle Geometry deals with points and lines living in projective 3D-spaces, i.e. described as $x : y : z$ where $x : y : z \simeq kx : ky : kz$ for any non-zero multiplier k .

Obviously, the 2D and 4D points of view are reducing to the same elementary Cartesian coordinates when restricted to the finite domain. But they are conflicting *where they are the most useful*, i.e. where they are implementing the Poncelet's continuity principle for objects at infinity. This is even more true concerning the "circular points at infinity", the so-called umbilics of the plane.

An ordinary line must be completed in a way or another to become a "circle with infinite radius" and having a clear definition of this completion is required in order to unify the three concepts of circle ($0 < \rho < \infty$), point ($\rho = 0$) and line ($\rho = \infty$) into a single concept of cycle.

But the intuition of an "infinite sphere whose center is everywhere and its circumference nowhere"¹ (? , p. 3 [83])pascal:pensees has to be formulated in minute detail to become effective and fruitful.

In the Riemann sphere $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^2)$, there exists only one point at infinity (noted ∞). In this context, a "circle with infinite radius" is an ordinary line Δ completed with the point noted ∞ , i.e. $\overline{\Delta} = \Delta \cup \{\infty\}$, while point-circles are either the set $\{\infty\}$ or a circle with radius 0 around an ordinary point.

In the Triangle Plane $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^3)$, there exists a whole line \mathcal{L}_b of points at infinity, verifying $x + y + z = 0$. In this document, barycentrics are used. Using trilinears would only change some formulas, but not the very nature of the underlying space. In this context, the barycentric equation of an ordinary circle leads to define a cycle as a second degree curve (a conic) that goes through the so-called umbilics Ω^{\pm} . Therefore, the equation of a completed line becomes $(x + y + z)(ux + vy + wz) = 0$ so that we must define $\overline{\Delta}$ as $\Delta \cup \mathcal{L}_b$, while the role of $\{\infty\}$ in $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^2)$ is played now by the horizon circle \mathcal{C}_{∞} defined by $(x + y + z)^2 = 0$, i.e. defined as the object having the same points as \mathcal{L}_b but each of them counted twice.

In Chapter 7, orthogonality of lines has been reduced to a polarity wrt operator $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b}$. Here,

¹une sphère infinie dont le centre est partout, la circonférence nulle part,

the same treatment will be applied to cycles, i.e. the family of all curves that are either a circle or a line. This leads to a fundamental quadric \mathcal{Q} in a 4-D projective space $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^4)$ [here] or $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^4)$ [some chapters later]. Finite points on the quadric can be interpreted as representatives of point-circles, quite the same thing as an ordinary point in the triangle plane. Points outside this quadric are representatives of cycles, while points inside are assigned to the later defined virtual circles.

When dealing with tangency of cycles, a better description would be secured by using oriented cycles, living in a Lie sphere, embedded into a 5D space obtained by a double coating of the ordinary 4D space of cycles. We haven't developed this concept here.

13.1.2 Umbilics

Lemma 13.1.1. *We have $\boxed{\text{OrtO}_b} \cdot \boxed{\text{OrtO}_b} \cdot \boxed{W_b} = -\boxed{W_b}$. Therefore, restricted to $\vec{\mathcal{V}}$, $\boxed{\text{OrtO}_b}^2$ is nothing but an half turn. Multiplied by $\boxed{\text{Pyth}_b}$, this leads to $\boxed{\text{OrtO}_b}^3 + \boxed{\text{OrtO}_b} = 0$, so that eigenvalues of $\boxed{\text{OrtO}_b}$ are 0, $+i$, $-i$.*

Notation 13.1.2. CAVEAT (2024-12-19). Among the two hands, the right hand is the hand where the thumb is on the left hand side. Notations $\Omega_x, \Omega_y, \Omega^+, \Omega^-$ have been used in this document. But a strict application of the rules may have been lacking. Here is the eternal rule ! $\Omega_y = \Omega^+ \underset{z}{\simeq} 1 : 0 : 0$. Let the heretics tremble with fear!

Definition 13.1.3. Umbilics. Let $U \in \mathcal{L}_b$ be a point at infinity, i.e. a point such that $u + v + w = 0$. The associated umbilics are the complex points :

$$\begin{aligned} \Omega^+ &\simeq \left(i\boxed{1} + \boxed{\text{OrtO}} \right) \cdot U \quad ; \quad \Omega^- \simeq \left(i\boxed{1} - \boxed{\text{OrtO}} \right) \cdot U \\ \Omega^+ = \Omega_y &\simeq 4SX_{512} - iX_{511} \\ &\simeq 4S \begin{pmatrix} a^2(b^2 - c^2) \\ b^2(c^2 - a^2) \\ c^2(a^2 - b^2) \end{pmatrix} \pm i \begin{pmatrix} a^2(a^2(b^2 + c^2) - b^4 - c^4) \\ b^2(b^2(c^2 + a^2) - c^4 - a^4) \\ c^2(c^2(a^2 + b^2) - a^4 - b^4) \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (13.1)$$

where i is the imaginary unit and S the area of the triangle. Another choice is :

$$\Omega^+ = \Omega_y \simeq \begin{pmatrix} S_b + 2iS \\ S_a - 2iS \\ -c^2 \end{pmatrix} ; \quad \Omega^- = \Omega_x \simeq \begin{pmatrix} S_b - 2iS \\ S_a + 2iS \\ -c^2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (13.2)$$

These expressions are no more symmetric, but computations become easier.

Remark 13.1.4. Spoiler. Using Morley representation $z_A = \alpha$, etc, we obtain:

$$\Omega_y \underset{z}{\simeq} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \underset{b}{\simeq} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\gamma} - \frac{1}{\beta} \\ \frac{\gamma}{\alpha} - \frac{1}{\gamma} \\ \frac{1}{\beta} - \frac{1}{\alpha} \end{pmatrix} ; \quad \Omega_x \underset{z}{\simeq} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \underset{b}{\simeq} \begin{pmatrix} \beta - \gamma \\ \gamma - \alpha \\ \alpha - \beta \end{pmatrix} \quad (13.3)$$

Proposition 13.1.5. *When seen as elements of $\vec{\mathcal{V}}_{\mathbb{C}}$, all Ω^{\pm} are eigenvectors of operator $\boxed{\text{OrtO}_b}$, with eigenvalues (respectively) $\pm i$ and therefore belong to the light cone. When seen as elements of $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$, points Ω^+ and Ω^- are now independent of the choice of U , and are the fixed points of the orthopoint transform. They both belong to the circumcircle, and are isogonal conjugates to each other.*

Proof. See Postnikov (1982, 1986) for better insights on real-complex spaces. Property $\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \Omega = 0$ is obvious. Umbilics are eigenvectors because of

$$\boxed{\text{OrtO}} \cdot \Omega^+ = \boxed{\text{OrtO}} \cdot \left(i\boxed{1} + \boxed{\text{OrtO}} \right) \cdot U$$

$$\boxed{\text{OrtO}} \cdot \Omega^+ = \boxed{\text{OrtO}} \cdot (\mathbf{i} \boxed{1} + \boxed{\text{OrtO}}) \cdot U = (\mathbf{i} \boxed{\text{OrtO}} - \boxed{1}) \cdot U = +\mathbf{i} \times (\mathbf{i} \boxed{1} + \boxed{\text{OrtO}}) \cdot U$$

Since eigenvalues of $\boxed{\text{OrtO}}$ are simple, the \mathbb{C} -dimension of eigenspaces is one, and uniqueness in $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$ follows. For this reason, points Ω^\pm are also called the "circular points at infinity". Finally, intersection of circumcircle and the infinity line must be invariant by isogonal conjugacy, while $\Omega^+ *_b \Omega^+$ cannot be real, even up to a complex proportionality factor. \square

Remark 13.1.6. And now, 2024-12-19, the "+" in Ω^+ is linked to the "+" in the $\boxed{\text{OrtO}} \cdot \Omega^+ = +\mathbf{i} \Omega^+$ formula. Whaow !

Proposition 13.1.7. *A circle is a conic that goes through the umbilics [Samuel \(1986, p. 53\)](#). Above all, choosing the umbilics is deciding which of the circum-ellipses is ***the*** circumcircle.*

Proof. By definition, umbilics are the (non real) points where the line at infinity intersects the circumcircle. By (12.3), these points belong to any circle. For the converse, consider the values taken by $x^2, y^2, z^2, xy, yz, zx$ at A, B, C together with both umbilics. This gives a 5×6 matrix whose rank is 5 : the first three lines are 1, 0, 0, 0, 0, 0 etc. and it remains only to show that rank of submatrix 4..5, 4..6 is two. A direct inspection shows that critical factors are $a^2 + b^2 - c^2$ (straight angle, that can occur only once) and $a^4 + b^4 + c^4 - b^2c^2 - a^2b^2 - a^2c^2$ (condition of equilaterality). In such a case, the property remains when umbilics are written as $1 : j : j^2$ and $1 : j^2 : j$. \square

Remark 13.1.8. When the umbilics are given, the euclidian structure of the Triangle Plane is known. From $\Omega^+ *_b \Omega^- = a^2 : b^2 : c^2$, the $\boxed{\text{Pyth}_b}$ matrix is known (up to the value of R), while the orthopoint transform, and its matrix $\boxed{\text{OrtO}_b}$ is characterized by its diagonal shape, namely $(0, +\mathbf{i}, -\mathbf{i})$, when using the triple $X(3)$, Ω^+, Ω^- as barycentric basis.

13.1.3 Notations

We have done our best effort to use unified notations. In this whole chapter,

Notation 13.1.9. Conventions about letters.

P, Q	denote some flat true points in the Triangle Plane and X_n a Kimberling -named triangle center, all of them being 3-columns.
Γ, Ω	Γ denotes the circumcircle of the fundamental triangle ABC (and nothing else) while Ω denotes a cycle, both of them being curves, i.e. a set of points. The 3×3 -matrices describing their equations as a quadratic form are noted using a box.
U, \mathcal{V}_b	U denotes the representative of a circle-point, while \mathcal{V}_b denotes the representative of any cycle, all of them being columns in $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^4)$.
Y	denotes the representative of an oriented cycle in $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^5)$
G	denotes a Gram matrix. The elements of this matrix are noted w^2 along the diagonal and W for the non-diagonal elements.

Notation 13.1.10. To design a circle known by a pair center/radius, parentheses will be used, exemplified by $\Gamma = (X_3, R)$. Using parentheses around a single Roman letter –e.g. (P) – will be reserved to denote the circle $(P, 0)$ i.e. the circle whose unique real point is P itself.

13.2 Cycles and representatives

Definition 13.2.1. The (barycentric) Veronese map is the correspondence that maps a $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^3)$ column into a $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^4)$ row proportional to:

$${}^t \begin{pmatrix} x(x+y+z) \\ y(x+y+z) \\ z(x+y+z) \\ -a^2yz - b^2xz - c^2xy \end{pmatrix}$$

Proposition 13.2.2. *The Veronese map is obviously homogeneous. Both umbilics are send to $[0, 0, 0, 0]$ (points of indeterminacy). The other points at infinity are send to $[0, 0, 0, 1]$. Otherwise, the map is injective.*

Definition 13.2.3. Veronese map. For points at finite distance, we will use (7.14) and define $Ver(x, y, z)$ by the simpler formula:

$$Ver(x : y : z) \simeq [x, y, z, \Gamma_{\text{std}}(x, y, z)] \quad (13.4)$$

Remark 13.2.4. Requiring that four points are on the same circle leads to Proposition 12.1.4, i.e. to equation :

$$\det_{i=1}^{i=4} [p_i, q_i, r_i, \Gamma_{\text{std}}(p_i, q_i, r_i)] = 0$$

But, conversely, this equation only implies that our four points are on the same circle or on the same straight line. To summarize both situations under a single concept, we introduce :

Definition 13.2.5. The cycle Ω associated with the representative $\mathcal{V}_b \simeq u : v : w : t \in \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^4)$ is Samuel (1988) the locus of the points $X \in \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^3)$ which satisfy the equation :

$$Ver_b(X) \cdot (u : v : w : t) = 0 \quad (13.5)$$

For example, the representative of circumcircle Γ is $\mathcal{V}_{\Gamma} \simeq 0 : 0 : 0 : 1$.

Remark 13.2.6. When $t \neq 0$, cycle Ω is the (ordinary) circle whose standardized equation is :

$$\frac{u}{t}x + \frac{v}{t}y + \frac{w}{t}z + \Gamma_{\text{std}}(x, y, z) \quad (13.6)$$

Remark 13.2.7. The representative of a circle is seen as a 3D point (described by a column). The Veronese of a 2D point is an action over the 3D points: i.e. a plane, described by a row.

Definition 13.2.8. Cycle \mathcal{C}_{∞} represented by $\mathcal{V}_b \simeq 1 : 1 : 1 : 0$ has to be understood as the line at infinity \mathcal{L}_b described twice, and will be called the **horizon circle**. This object has to be perceived as a circle "whose center is everywhere and circumference nowhere" (Empedocles).

The representative itself, i.e. the point $\mathcal{V}_{\infty} \simeq 1 : 1 : 1 : 0$, will be called Sirius, following Kimberling (1998-2024) in using stars to coin the name given to a point. While using that specific star for a very distant point is from (Voltaire, 1752).

Definition 13.2.9. Otherwise, the cycle represented by $u : v : w : 0$ is the union of an ordinary line and \mathcal{L}_b , and will be called a **completed line**.

Theorem 13.2.10. *The representative of the point-circle (P) associated with a point at finite distance $P \simeq p : q : r$ is the column given by:*

$$U_P \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q}^{-1} \\ b \end{bmatrix} \cdot {}^t Ver(P) \quad \text{where} \quad \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q}^{-1} \\ b \end{bmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & c^2 & b^2 & 1 \\ c^2 & 0 & a^2 & 1 \\ b^2 & a^2 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (13.7)$$

$$U_P = c^2 q^2 + b^2 r^2 + 2 S_a q r : c^2 p^2 + a^2 r^2 + 2 S_b p r : b^2 p^2 + a^2 q^2 + 2 S_c p q : (p + q + r)^2 \quad (13.8)$$

Conversely, we have:

$$Ver(P) \simeq {}^t U_P \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ b \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{where} \quad \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ b \end{bmatrix} = \frac{-1}{8S^2} \begin{bmatrix} a^2 & -S_c & -S_b & -a^2 S_a \\ -S_c & b^2 & -S_a & -b^2 S_b \\ -S_b & -S_a & c^2 & -c^2 S_c \\ -a^2 S_a & -b^2 S_b & -c^2 S_c & a^2 b^2 c^2 \end{bmatrix} \quad (13.9)$$

Proof. Direct computation. Mind the fact that both formulas are hard equalities, and that, when both matrices are written exactly that way, the obvious result $\begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ b \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q}^{-1} \\ b \end{bmatrix} = +1$ is enforced ! \square

Remark 13.2.11. It must be taken into account that radiuses that are not "up to a proportionality factor". The values of matrix $\begin{bmatrix} Q \\ b \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} Q^{-1} \\ b \end{bmatrix}$ were chosen to obtain the best looking formula at (13.10) and the normalized Minkowski formula (13.12)

$$\left\langle \begin{bmatrix} \nu_1 \\ b \end{bmatrix} \middle| \begin{bmatrix} Q \\ b \end{bmatrix} \middle| \begin{bmatrix} \nu_2 \\ b \end{bmatrix} \right\rangle = d^2 - r_1^2 - r_2^2$$

The price to pay is the appearance of a -2 factor when computing radiuses, at the general formula (13.15), and at the orthogonal formula (13.18). Be prudent, don't over-simplify !

Remark 13.2.12. Sometimes, "the representative of the point-circle P " will be shortened into "the representative of P ". This object (a column) is not to be confused with the Veronese image of P (a row) !

Example 13.2.13. Here are some point representatives :

$P \setminus x$	u	v	w	t
$1 : 0 : 0$	0	c^2	b^2	1
$0 : 1 : 1$	$2b^2 + 2c^2 - a^2$	a^2	a^2	4
$X(1)$	$bc(b + c - a)$	$ac(c + a - b)$	$ab(b + a - c)$	$a + b + c$
$X(2)$	$2b^2 + 2c^2 - a^2$	$2a^2 + 2c^2 - b^2$	$2b^2 + 2a^2 - c^2$	9
$X(3)$	R^2	R^2	R^2	1
$X(4)$	$R^2 a^2 (b^2 + c^2 - a^2)^2$	$R^2 b^2 (c^2 + a^2 - b^2)^2$	$R^2 c^2 (a^2 + b^2 - c^2)^2$	$a^2 b^2 c^2$
$X(6)$	$b^2 c^2 (2b^2 + 2c^2 - a^2)$	$a^2 c^2 (2c^2 + 2a^2 - b^2)$	$a^2 b^2 (2a^2 + 2b^2 - c^2)$	$(a^2 + b^2 + c^2)^2$
umb	0	0	0	0
∞	1	1	1	0

The fact that formula (13.8) *would* give $Sirius \simeq 1 : 1 : 1 : 0$ for each point on \mathcal{L}_b is the reason of their exclusion from the definition of the point representatives.

Corollary 13.2.14. The **representative of the circle** (P, ω) where $P \simeq p : q : r$ is a point at finite distance is obtained by :

$$\begin{bmatrix} Q^{-1} \\ b \end{bmatrix} \cdot {}^t Ver \left(\frac{P}{p + q + r} \right) - \omega^2 Sirius \quad (13.10)$$

where $Sirius$ is exactly ${}^t[1, 1, 1, 0]$ and $\begin{bmatrix} Q^{-1} \\ b \end{bmatrix}$ is exactly as in (13.7).

Proof. Obvious from the above theorem. □

Example 13.2.15. Compute the representative of the incircle. Two equivalent methods are:

```
mQQI.(Tr@Factor@Ver@norb@vX)(1)-ri^2*Sirius:
method1:= (Factor@subs)(kitcircleS, valS6, %);
method2:= (nor4@wedge3)(seq(Ver(j), j=Column(matcev(vX(7)), 1..3)));
```

$$incircle = \frac{1}{4} \left((a - b - c)^2 : (b - c - a)^2 : (c - a - b)^2 : 4 \right)$$

Remark 13.2.16. Assuming that representatives are living in $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^4)$ has many advantages. The top one could be to enforce the fact that a representative is not a point in the Triangle Plane. It is a key fact that the triple $[\hat{u}, \hat{v}, \hat{w}]$ appearing in the standardized equation (13.6) is **not** defined up to a proportionality factor. The same remark applies to the so-called "circle function" $[\hat{u} \div bc, \hat{v} \div ca, \hat{w} \div ab] \in \mathbb{R}^3$ that appears when using trilinears as in Weisstein (1999-2009).

13.3 Fundamental quadric and orthogonality

Theorem 13.3.1. *Any point representative $U = u : v : w : t$ belongs to the quadric \mathcal{Q} :*

$$\left\langle U \middle| \mathcal{Q} \middle| U \right\rangle = 0 \quad = \quad 0 \quad (13.11)$$

where $\boxed{\mathcal{Q}_b}$ is as given in (13.9).

Proof. One has $Ver(P) \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_b^{-1}} \cdot {}^t Ver(P) = 0$ by the very definition of $Ver(P)$. \square

Proposition 13.3.2. *Object Sirius $\simeq 1 : 1 : 1 : 0$ is the only (real) point at infinity of the quadric \mathcal{Q} . Therefore, \mathcal{Q} is a paraboloid.*

Proof. Substitute $t = 0$, then compute the discriminant with respect to w and obtain $-(u - v)^2 a^2 b^2 c^2 / R^2$. This requires $u = v$, etc. \square

Remark 13.3.3. In the usual $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^2)$ model, \mathcal{L}_b is "in the South plane" while the horizon circle \mathcal{C}_{∞} is nothing but the point-circle $\{\infty\}$.

Proposition 13.3.4. *An element $\mathcal{V}_b = u : v : w : t$ of $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^4)$ is the representative of a (real) cycle if only if \mathcal{V}_b is outside of \mathcal{Q} (i.e. on the same side as $0 : 0 : 0 : 1$ characterized by $\left\langle (u : v : w : t) \middle| \mathcal{Q} \middle| (u : v : w : t) \right\rangle \geq 0$ when (13.11) is used.*

Proof. Obvious from (13.10), that states that representative of (P, ω) is "below" the representative of (P) , while representatives of completed lines are at infinity in $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^4)$ and therefore outside of paraboloid \mathcal{Q} . \square

Theorem 13.3.5. Orthogonal cycles. *Consider two cycles Ω_1, Ω_2 with representatives $\mathcal{V}_b^1, \mathcal{V}_b^2$. When \mathcal{V}_b^2 belongs to the polar plane of point \mathcal{V}_b^1 wrt the fundamental quadric then cycles Ω_1 and Ω_2 are orthogonal –and conversely.*

Computed Proof. Begin with two circles. Write representative \mathcal{V}_b^j as in (13.10) from representative U_j of point-circle (P_j) . This implies that $\mathcal{V}_b^j[4] = 1$. Compute $\left\langle \mathcal{V}_b^1 \middle| \mathcal{Q}_b \middle| \mathcal{V}_b^2 \right\rangle$ and –using (7.12)– obtain :

$$\left\langle \mathcal{V}_b^1 \middle| \mathcal{Q}_b \middle| \mathcal{V}_b^2 \right\rangle = (|P_1 P_2|^2 - \omega_1^2 - \omega_2^2) \quad (13.12)$$

Compute now $\left\langle \mathcal{V}_b^1 \middle| \mathcal{Q}_b \middle| \mathcal{V}_b^3 \right\rangle$ where $\mathcal{V}_b^3 = u_3 : v_3 : w_3 : 0$ and obtain :

$$\left\langle \mathcal{V}_b^1 \middle| \mathcal{Q}_b \middle| \mathcal{V}_b^3 \right\rangle = (p_1 u_3 + q_1 v_3 + r_1 w_3) \div (p_1 + q_1 + r_1) \quad (13.13)$$

In both cases, the result is the orthogonality condition times a non vanishing factor. Finally, when the representatives of two lines are involved, the conclusion follows directly from the properties of the orthopoint transform. \square

Remark 13.3.6. The elementary formula $\left\langle \mathcal{V}_b^1 \middle| \mathcal{Q}_b \middle| \mathcal{V}_b^2 \right\rangle = d^2 - r_1^2 - r_2^2$ has to be enforced at any cost. But this implies that $\left\langle \mathcal{V}_b^1 \middle| \mathcal{Q}_b \middle| \mathcal{V}_b^1 \right\rangle = -2r^2$, and we have to live with this disgracious -2 factor when computing the radius of a circle.

Corollary 13.3.7. *The locus of the representatives of the points of a given cycle Ω is the intersection between \mathcal{Q} and the polar plane –wrt \mathcal{Q} – of the representative of Ω .*

Proof. By definition, point P belongs to cycle Ω if and only if Ω and (P) are orthogonal. \square

Theorem 13.3.8. Back to barycentrics. Let $\mathcal{V}_b = u : v : w : t \in \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^4)$ be a representative. Then either

(1) $\mathcal{V}_b \simeq 1 : 1 : 1 : 0$. Then \mathcal{V}_b is Sirius, i.e. represents the horizon circle

(2) $t = 0$, but $\mathcal{V}_b \neq \text{Sirius}$. Then \mathcal{V}_b represents a line.

(3) $t \neq 0$. Then \mathcal{V}_b represents a circle (may be reduced to a point). The associated center and squared radius are given by :

$$(p : q : r) \simeq \left(\boxed{\mathcal{Q}} \cdot \mathcal{V}_b \right)_{1..3} \quad (13.14)$$

$$\omega^2 = \left(\frac{-1}{2} \right) \frac{\left\langle \mathcal{V}_b \middle| \boxed{\mathcal{Q}} \middle| \mathcal{V}_b \right\rangle}{t^2} \quad (13.15)$$

Moreover, the representative of the center (as a point-circle) is $U = \mathcal{V}_b/t + \omega^2 \text{Sirius} \in \mathcal{Q}$.

Proof. The radius formula is a corollary of the preceding theorem. Let $\mathcal{V}_b = x : y : z : \tau$ be any cycle representative and $U \in \mathcal{Q}$ be the representative of point $P = p : q : r$. Then $\left\langle W \middle| \boxed{\mathcal{Q}} \middle| U \right\rangle = 0$ implies

$$xp + yq + zr + \tau \Gamma_{\text{std}}(p, q, r) = 0$$

where $\Gamma_{\text{std}}(p, q, r) = -(a^2qr + b^2rp + c^2pq) \div (p + q + r)$, so that equation (13.14) must hold for rank reason (and can be checked directly). Conversely, starting from any \mathcal{V}_b and applying (13.14) and then (13.8) leads back to \mathcal{V}_b . \square

Example 13.3.9. Re obtain the radius of the incircle.

```
factor(Tr(incircle).mQQ.incircle); subs(kitcircleS, valS6, %/ri^2); ↦
1
```

Proposition 13.3.10. Power of a point wrt a circle. When \mathcal{W} is the Veronese of a point M and \mathcal{V}_b is the representative of circle (P, ω) , then

$$\text{power}(M, (P, \omega)) \doteq |PM|^2 - \omega^2 = \frac{\mathcal{W}}{\mathcal{W}_1 + \mathcal{W}_2 + \mathcal{W}_3} \cdot \frac{\mathcal{V}_b}{\mathcal{V}_4} \quad (13.16)$$

This requires that $\mathcal{W}_1 + \mathcal{W}_2 + \mathcal{W}_3 \neq 0$, i.e. $M \notin \mathcal{L}_b$ and that $\mathcal{V}_4 \neq 0$, i.e. that (P, ω) is a true circle (and not a completed line).

Proof. Obvious from definitions. Mind the normalizations ! \square

Exercise 13.3.11. Compute the power of X(3) wrt the circumcircle (and obtain $-R^2$). Compute the power of X(4) wrt the same circle. This formula enforces the fact that X(4) is inside the circle when triangle is acute.

Proposition 13.3.12. The angle of two circles is defined as:

$$\cos(\Omega_1, \Omega_2) = \frac{-\left\langle \mathcal{V}_1 \middle| \boxed{\mathcal{Q}} \middle| \mathcal{V}_2 \right\rangle}{\sqrt{\left\langle \mathcal{V}_1 \middle| \boxed{\mathcal{Q}} \middle| \mathcal{V}_1 \right\rangle} \sqrt{\left\langle \mathcal{V}_2 \middle| \boxed{\mathcal{Q}} \middle| \mathcal{V}_2 \right\rangle}} \quad (13.17)$$

Proof. When the circles intersect at a visible point M , this value is nothing but the Al-Kashi formula applied to triangle $M\omega_1\omega_2$. In any case, this formula is homogeneous wrt each of $\boxed{\mathcal{Q}}$, \mathcal{V}_1 and \mathcal{V}_2 . \square

Theorem 13.3.13. Common orthogonal cycle. *Let be given three cycles $\Omega_1, \Omega_2, \Omega_3$. If they don't belong to the same pencil, the bundle they generate is exactly the set of all the cycles orthogonal to a fixed cycle Ω_\perp . We have the formulas (see (13.7), (13.9) for the precise values of the matrices):*

$$W \doteq \bigwedge_3 \begin{pmatrix} \mathcal{V}_1 \\ \mathcal{V}_2 \\ \mathcal{V}_3 \end{pmatrix} \quad (\text{a 4-sized row}) \quad (13.18)$$

$$\mathcal{V}_\perp = \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q}^{-1} \\ b \end{bmatrix} \cdot {}^t W \quad (13.19)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{center} &= W_1 : W_2 : W_3 \\ \text{squared radius} &= \left(\frac{-1}{2} \right) \frac{{}^t \mathcal{V}_\perp \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ b \end{bmatrix} \cdot \mathcal{V}_\perp}{\left(\mathcal{V}_\perp [4] \right)^2} = \left(\frac{-1}{2} \right) \frac{W \cdot \mathcal{V}_\perp}{\left(\mathcal{V}_\perp [4] \right)^2} \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Let $j = 1, 2, 3$. By definition, $W \cdot \mathcal{V}_j = 0$, so that ${}^t \mathcal{V}_j \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ b \end{bmatrix} \cdot \left(\begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ b \end{bmatrix}^{-1} \cdot {}^t W \right)$ vanishes. Then the center follows by (13.14) and the radius as well. \square

Remark 13.3.14. Mind the normalizing factor in the formula just above (see Remark 13.2.11). Don't simplify anything in the formula giving the radius ! Remember that

$${}^t \mathcal{V}_1 \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ b \end{bmatrix} \cdot \mathcal{V}_2 = (d_{12}^2 - r_1^2 - r_2^2) \times \begin{pmatrix} \mathcal{V}_1 [4] & \mathcal{V}_2 [4] \end{pmatrix}$$

Example 13.3.15. Compute the radius of the Euler circle (useless factor K, means whatever).

```
seq(mQQI.Tr(Ver(j)), j= Column(matcev(vX(2)),1..3) );;
tmp1:= K*(wedge3)(%);;
tmp2:= FActor(mQQI.Tr(tmp1)): # (Tr@reduce)(tmp1[1..3]); ency(%);
methode1:= (-1/2)* tmp1.tmp2/tmp2[4]^2: subs(rapbpc, factor(%));
methode2:= (-1/2)* Tr(tmp2).mQQ.tmp2/tmp2[4]^2: subs(kitRcircle, factor(%));
And obtain  $R^2/4$  by each method.
```

Definition 13.3.16. Radical center. The ever visible point $W_1 : W_2 : W_3$ in the former theorem is called the radical center of the three cycles. Having the same power wrt all the cycles of the bundle is a characteristic property of this point.

Remark 13.3.17. As emphasized later, the nature of the radius of Ω_4 , i.e. real, zero or imaginary fixes the nature of the bundle defined by $\Omega_1, \Omega_2, \Omega_3$.

Example 13.3.18. The example of the three excircles is examined in Subsection 13.11.5. Center is $X(10)$ and radius is

$$\omega_4 = \sqrt{\frac{b^2c + ab^2 + bc^2 + a^2b + ac^2 + a^2c + acb}{4(a + b + c)}}$$

13.4 Pencils of cycles

Definition 13.4.1. Pencil. When Ω_1, Ω_2 are distinct cycles (with non proportional representatives), all curves $\lambda_1 \Omega_1 + \lambda_2 \Omega_2 = 0$, where $(\lambda_1, \lambda_2) \neq (0, 0)$, are cycles and the set of all these cycles is called the pencil generated by Ω_1, Ω_2 . It is clear that representatives of the cycles of a given pencil are on the same projective line in $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^4)$ –called the representative of the pencil.

Example 13.4.2. Formula (13.6) describes circle Ω as a member of the pencil generated by the circumcircle and a completed line. Therefore, the ordinary line $ux + vy + wz = 0$ is the radical axis Δ of both circles Ω and Γ . That's another way to see that knowing $u : v : w$ is not enough to determine a circle.

Example 13.4.3. Formula (13.10), i.e. $\Omega(P, \omega) = \left[\frac{\mathcal{Q}}{b} \right]^{-1} \cdot {}^tVer \left(\frac{P}{p+q+r} \right) - \omega^2 \mathcal{C}_\infty$, describes the circle (P, ω) as a member of the pencil generated by the point-circle (P) and the horizon circle, i.e. the pencil of all circles concentric with $(P, 0)$.

Remark 13.4.4. Here again, the triple $u : v : w$ is not sufficient to specify P , and $[u; v; w; t]$ must be used. It can be checked that representative is well specified, i.e. doesn't depends on whichever triple (kp, kq, kr) is chosen as barycentrics of point P .

13.5 Classification of pencils

Theorem 13.5.1 (Classification). *Pencils of cycles fall in three classes, depending on the way their representative line \mathcal{P} intersects –in $\mathbb{P}_\mathbb{R}(\mathbb{R}^4)$ – the fundamental quadric \mathcal{Q} .*

\mathcal{Q}, \mathcal{P} *tangent* : \mathcal{P} is the **tangent pencil** of all the cycles containing a given point ω_0 and tangent at ω_0 to a line Δ_1 containing ω_0 . Archetype : $\omega_0 = \infty$ and \mathcal{P} is "all the lines parallel to a given line Δ_1 ".

\mathcal{Q}, \mathcal{P} *secant* : \mathcal{P} is the **isotomic pencil** generated by two different point-circles $\{\omega_1\}$ and $\{\omega_2\}$ (ω_i are the **limit** points of \mathcal{P}). Archetype : $\omega_2 = \infty$ and \mathcal{P} is, apart from $\{\infty\}$, "all the circles centered at a finite point ω_1 ".

\mathcal{Q}, \mathcal{P} *disjoint* : \mathcal{P} is the **isoptic pencil** of all the cycles going through two different points ω_1 and ω_2 (the **base** points). Archetype : $\omega_2 = \infty$ and \mathcal{P} is "all the lines through a finite point ω_1 ".

When \mathcal{P} is a tangent pencil, so is \mathcal{P}^\perp (using ω_0 and Δ_1^\perp orthogonal to Δ_1 at ω_0). When \mathcal{P} is isoptic (ω_1, ω_2) then \mathcal{P}^\perp is isotomic (ω_1, ω_2) and conversely. In all cases, representative of \mathcal{P} and \mathcal{P}^\perp are conjugate lines wrt \mathcal{Q} .

Proof. Everything goes as in (Pedoe, 1970) –using another paraboloid– or (Douillet, 2009) –using a sphere. The only striking thing is that the usual point at infinity of the complex plane, namely $\infty \in \mathbb{P}_\mathbb{C}(\mathbb{C}^2)$, has to be replaced by the horizon circle $\mathcal{C}_\infty : (x + y + z)^2 = 0$. \square

Proposition 13.5.2. *A pencil of cycles that contains two lines is a pencil of lines. A concentric pencil contains the horizon cycle. All other pencils (i.e. all the non archetypal pencils) contain exactly one straight line (the radical axis of the pencil).*

Proof. The representative of \mathcal{P} ever intersects the plane at infinity of $\mathbb{P}_\mathbb{R}(\mathbb{R}^4)$. \square

Proposition 13.5.3. *Let $P = p : q : r$ be a point in the Triangle Plane. Define its shadow in the Triangle Plane as point $S = u : v : w$ where u, v, w are defined in (13.8). Then S is not outside the inconic $IC(X_{76})$. Any point on the border of $IC(X_{76})$ is the shadow of exactly one point on the circumcircle, while a point inside $IC(X_{76})$ –except from X_2 – is the shadow of exactly two points. Moreover, these points are inverse in the circumcircle.*

Remark 13.5.4. Figure 13.1 shows the shadows of all the named points in ETC (Kimberling, 1998–2024), using the standard values $a = 6, b = 9, c = 13$. One can see two lines of points : $L(X_2, X_6)$ and $L(X_2, X_{39})$ containing the shadows of points from $L(X_3, X_2)$ –Euler line– and $L(X_3, X_6)$ –Brocard axis– respectively.

Proof of Proposition 13.5.3. The locus of representatives of the points P_0 that belongs to Γ is the intersection of quadric \mathcal{Q} and the polar plane Π of $0 : 0 : 0 : 1$, namely :

$$ua^2(b^2 + c^2 - a^2) + vb^2(c^2 + a^2 - b^2) + wc^2(a^2 + b^2 - c^2) - 2ta^2b^2c^2 = 0$$

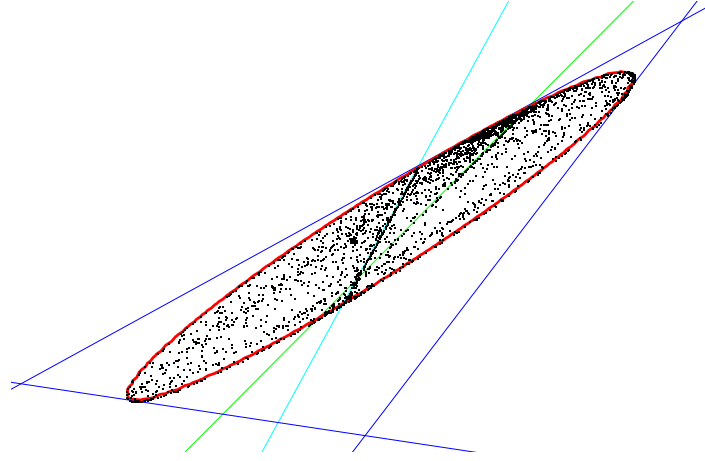


Figure 13.1: No point-shadow fall outside of the IC(X76) inconic

Extracting t and substituting in \mathcal{Q} leads (apart from a constant non-zero factor) to :

$$u^2 a^4 + b^4 v^2 + c^4 w^2 - 2 uva^2 b^2 - 2 vwb^2 c^2 - 2 wuc^2 a^2 = 0$$

i.e. the equation of $IC(X_{76})$.

When two points P_1, P_2 in the Triangle Plane share the same shadow, then points U_1, U_2 and $0 : 0 : 0 : 1$ are collinear in $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^4)$ so that cycles $(P_1), (P_2)$ and Γ belongs to the same pencil. Therefore P_1, P_2 are inverse in the circumcircle. Moreover $U_0 \doteq U_1 U_2 \cap \Gamma$ is inside $IC(X_{76})$ –otherwise U_0 would be the representative of a real circle belonging to pencil $(P_1), (P_2)$ and orthogonal to Γ . \square

Proposition 13.5.5. *Points inside of \mathcal{Q} are representative of virtual circles (real center, imaginary radius). The reason to imagine such circles is that inversion in such a circle is a real transform. Moreover a real cycle Ω is orthogonal to $(X, i\omega)$ when Ω cuts (X, ω) along a diameter.*

Proof. Straightforward computation. \square

Proposition 13.5.6. *Formally, the isoptic (ω_1, ω_2) pencil is also the isotomic (ω_3, ω_4) pencil where $\omega_3 + \omega_4 = \omega_1 + \omega_2$ and $\omega_3 - \omega_4 = i(\omega_1 - \omega_2)^\perp$ (ω_1, ω_2 are supposed to be at finite distance and normalized, while orthopoint is obtained using $\boxed{\text{OrtO}}$).*

Proof. Denote the common middle by ω_0 and use Pythagoras theorem to compute $|\omega_1 \omega_3|^2$. One has $|\omega_1 \omega_3|^2 = |\omega_0 \omega_1|^2 + |\omega_0 \omega_3|^2 = 0$ and thus both $\{\omega_3\}, \{\omega_4\}$ are orthogonal to $\{\omega_1\}, \{\omega_2\}$. Using $\boxed{\text{OrtO}}$, i.e. a rotation acting over $\vec{\mathcal{V}}$. \square

13.6 Quadrimatrix of a pencil

Proposition 13.6.1. Orthogonality formula (Spoiler). Let $\mathcal{V}_j, j = 1..4$ be the representatives of four cycles \mathcal{C}_j . Describe the pencil generated by $\mathcal{C}_1, \mathcal{C}_2$ using the matrix $\boxed{\Delta_{12}} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathcal{V}_1 \wedge \mathcal{V}_2 \\ b & 6 & b \end{pmatrix}$, and the pencil generated by $\mathcal{C}_3, \mathcal{C}_4$ using the matrix $\boxed{\Delta_{34}} = \begin{pmatrix} \mathcal{V}_3 \wedge \mathcal{V}_4 \\ b & 6 & b \end{pmatrix}$. When each pencil is orthogonal to the other, then

$$\boxed{\Delta_{34}} \simeq \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_b} \cdot \boxed{\Delta_{12}^*} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_b} \quad (13.20)$$

Proof. Cut Δ_{12} by the four base hyperplanes. Among the four expressions obtained, at most two are $0 : 0 : 0 : 0$. Do the same with $\boxed{\Delta_{34}}$, and assert that all the 16 orthogonality relations are fulfilled. Use `eliminate` to solve in C_x, C_y, C_z . Use `eliminate` onto the three shortest remaining equations and solve in F_x, F_y, F_z (up to a common multiplier). Use the Klein's relation $\left\langle \Delta_{12} | \mathcal{Q}_b | \Delta_{12} \right\rangle = E_x B_x + E_y B_y + E_z B_z = 0$ to simplify the results, obtain first degree formulas

and check the compliance with our claim. This is for the necessity. Sufficiency is easily checked by direct examination (if you don't trust the Maple's `eliminate`). One can also check that the process is involutive, as it should be. \square

Exercise 13.6.2. Check this formula using the following circles

$$\mathcal{C}_1 \doteq \mathcal{C}(A; 0 : b : +c; 0 : b : -c); \mathcal{C}_2 \doteq \mathcal{C}(B; a : 0 : +c; a : 0 : -c)$$

The second pencil is supposed to contain both the circumcircle and the 3-6 Brocard circle. See Section 13.10 for more details.

13.7 Apexes

Definition 13.7.1. We define the (barycentric) **apex** of a point, or of a circle, as the columns:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{A}(M) &\doteq {}^t V_b(M) \\ \mathcal{A}(\mathcal{C}) &\doteq \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ b \end{bmatrix} \cdot \mathcal{V}(\mathcal{C}) \end{aligned}$$

With this definition, the apex of a point is the same as the apex of the null-radius circle centered at this point.

Maple 13.7.2. One can check these assertions by:

```
mQQ. bar2colu(vp,0), (Tr@Ver)(vp): subs(sapbpc, zipd(%));
```

Proposition 13.7.3. The apex of a line lies on the "South plane" $[1 : 1 : 1 : 0]$.

Proof. Obvious from $\mathcal{V}([p, q, r]) = p : q : r : 0$ and $[1, 1, 1, 0] \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ b \end{bmatrix} = [0, 0, 0, 1]$. \square

13.8 Inversion

13.8.1 One cycle

Definition 13.8.1. Two points X_1, X_2 are inverses in a given circle with center P and radius ω when P, X_1, X_2 are in straight line and $\langle \overrightarrow{PU_1} | \overrightarrow{PU_2} \rangle = \omega^2$. Here $\omega \in \mathbb{R}$ is allowed.

Proposition 13.8.2. The *inverse of a point* $X = x : y : z$ in the circle Ω having center $P = p : q : r$ and radius ω is given by :

$$\text{nor}(\text{inv}(X)) = \text{nor}(P) + (\text{nor}(X) - \text{nor}(P)) \frac{\omega^2}{\text{pytha}(X, P)} \quad (13.21)$$

This can be rewritten as

$$\text{inv}(X) = \left(\frac{\Gamma_{\text{std}}(X)}{x+y+z} + \frac{\Gamma_{\text{std}}(P)}{p+q+r} - \omega^2 \right) \text{nor}(P) + \left(\omega^2 - \frac{2}{(p+q+r)^2} P \cdot {}^t P \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \text{Pyth}_b \end{bmatrix} \right) \cdot \text{nor}(X)$$

This formula is to be compared with formula (13.22) given in Theorem 13.8.4.

Proof. The first formula is nothing but the definition. Multiplying by $\text{pytha}(X, P)$, we obtain $\text{inv}(X) \simeq (\text{pytha}(X, P) - \omega^2) \text{nor}(P) + \omega^2 \text{nor}(X)$. Then pytha is expanded using its definition, and we conclude using $({}^t P \cdot X) P = (P \cdot {}^t P) \cdot X$. \square

Remark 13.8.3. When circle Ω is given by its equation (12.1) and (P, ω) are obtained from (12.6) and (12.8), the following identity can be useful :

$$\frac{\Gamma_{\text{std}}(P)}{(p+q+r)^2} - \omega^2 = \frac{U \cdot (vX(3)/2) - a^2 b^2 c^2}{8 S^2}$$

(remember: U and $vX(3)$ are "as is" and not "up to a proportionality factor", while P is projective and ω is a number).

Theorem 13.8.4. Inversion of cycles in a cycle. Let Ω_0 be a fixed cycle with representative \mathcal{V}_0 and Ω_1 another cycle with representative \mathcal{V}_1 . Assume that Ω_0 is not a point-circle and call $\widehat{\mathcal{V}}_1$ the intersection of line $\mathcal{V}_0\mathcal{V}_1$ with the polar plane of \mathcal{V}_0 . Define σ as the transform $\Omega_1 \mapsto \Omega_3$ where \mathcal{V}_3 , the representative of Ω_3 , is such that division $\mathcal{V}_0, \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_1, \mathcal{V}_1, \mathcal{V}_3$ is harmonic. Then the cycle Ω_3 is the inverse of Ω_1 in cycle Ω_0 (inversion in a straight line is the ordinary reflection in this line) while the matrix of the transform $\mathcal{V}_1 \mapsto \mathcal{V}_3$ is given by :

$$\boxed{\sigma} = \text{Id} - 2 \frac{\mathcal{V}_0 \cdot {}^t\mathcal{V}_0 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}}}{\left\langle \mathcal{V}_0 \middle| \mathcal{Q} \middle| \mathcal{V}_0 \right\rangle} \quad (13.22)$$

Moreover, when \mathcal{V}_2 is yet another cycle representative, we have the conservation law :

$$\left\langle \sigma \left(\mathcal{V}_1 \right) \middle| \mathcal{Q} \middle| \sigma \left(\mathcal{V}_2 \right) \right\rangle = \left\langle \mathcal{V}_1 \middle| \mathcal{Q} \middle| \mathcal{V}_2 \right\rangle \quad (13.23)$$

Proof. Write $\widehat{\mathcal{V}}_1$ as $\alpha_1 \mathcal{V}_0 + \mathcal{V}_1$ in $\left\langle \mathcal{V}_0 \middle| \mathcal{Q} \middle| \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_1 \right\rangle = 0$ and then obtain \mathcal{V}_3 as $2\alpha_1 \mathcal{V}_0 + \mathcal{V}_1$ since division $(\infty, 1, 0, 2)$ is harmonic. Equation (13.23) is obvious from (13.21), and shows that σ preserves orthogonality. Moreover, (13.21) shows that cycles orthogonal to Ω_0 are invariant while cycles concentric with Ω_0 are transformed into cycles concentric with Ω_0 : all together, this proves that σ is the inversion in cycle Ω_0 . \square

13.8.2 Two cycles

Here, all barycentrics are supposed to be in their normalized form.

Proposition 13.8.5. Centers of homothety. Let $\mathcal{C}_j(O_j, r_j)$, etc be two circles. Points U, V defined by :

$$U = \frac{r_1 O_2 + r_2 O_1}{r_1 + r_2}, \quad V = \frac{r_1 O_2 - r_2 O_1}{r_1 - r_2}$$

are respectively the internal and the external centers of homothety of these two circles. At [Kimberling](#), ETC, they are called insimilicenter and exsimilicenter. When $X_1 \in \mathcal{C}_1$ then :

$$(r_1 + r_2)U - r_2 X_1 \in \mathcal{C}_2 \quad \text{and} \quad (r_1 - r_2)V + r_2 X_1 \in \mathcal{C}_2$$

Proof. When $r_1 = r_2$, point V defines a translation, not an homothety. Otherwise, all steps are obvious. \square

Proposition 13.8.6. Let $\mathcal{C}_j(O_j, r_j)$, etc be two circles, X_1 the generic point of \mathcal{C}_1 and $U = (r_1 O_2 + r_2 O_1) / (r_1 + r_2)$ as above. Then the line UX_1 cuts \mathcal{C}_2 in two points. The first one is $X_2 = ((r_1 + r_2)U + r_2 X_1) / r_1$, obtained by homothety. The second one is Y_2 , obtained by inversion into the circle centered at U with power :

$$\rho^2 = \left(1 - \frac{|O_1 O_2|^2}{(r_1 + r_2)^2} \right) r_1 r_2$$

Changing one of the radiuses into its opposite give the results relative to V (assuming $r_1 \neq r_2$)

13.8.3 Three circles

Notation 13.8.7. We start with three generic circles $\mathcal{C}_j(z_j, r_j)$, i.e. the centers are not aligned and all the radiuses are different. And we note $\gamma_j(U_j, \rho_j)$ and $\gamma'_j(V_j, \rho'_j)$ the six circles

$$\gamma_1 \doteq \frac{r_3 \mathcal{C}_2 + r_2 \mathcal{C}_3}{r_3 + r_2}, \text{ etc ; } \gamma'_1 \doteq \frac{r_3 \mathcal{C}_2 - r_2 \mathcal{C}_3}{r_3 - r_2}, \text{ etc}$$

so that γ_j is the internal circle of homothety of $\mathcal{C}_i, \mathcal{C}_k$, and γ'_j is the external one. As stated in the previous subsection, we have:

$$U_1, V_1 \doteq \frac{r_3 O_2 \pm r_2 O_3}{r_3 \pm r_2} ; (\rho_1)^2 = r_2 r_3 \left(1 - \frac{|z_3 - z_2|^2}{(r_3 + r_2)^2} \right) ; (\rho'_1)^2 = r_2 r_3 \left(\frac{|z_3 - z_2|^2}{(r_3 - r_2)^2} - 1 \right)$$

Finally, \mathcal{C}_4 is the common orthogonal cycle to all these circles.

Lemma 13.8.8. *The product of three inversions α, β, γ wrt circles of a same pencil is another inversion wrt a circle of the pencil. Thus the chain $M_0 \xrightarrow{\alpha} M_1 \xrightarrow{\beta} M_2 \xrightarrow{\gamma} M_3 \xrightarrow{\alpha} M_4 \xrightarrow{\beta} M_5 \xrightarrow{\gamma} M_6$ closes with $M_6 = M_0$. Moreover, these 6 points are on a same circle, which belongs to the orthogonal pencil.*

Proof. (Spoiler) Use Morley affixes and consider the circles $-p : 0 : -p : 1$ (where $p, q, r, \in \mathbb{R}$). Then

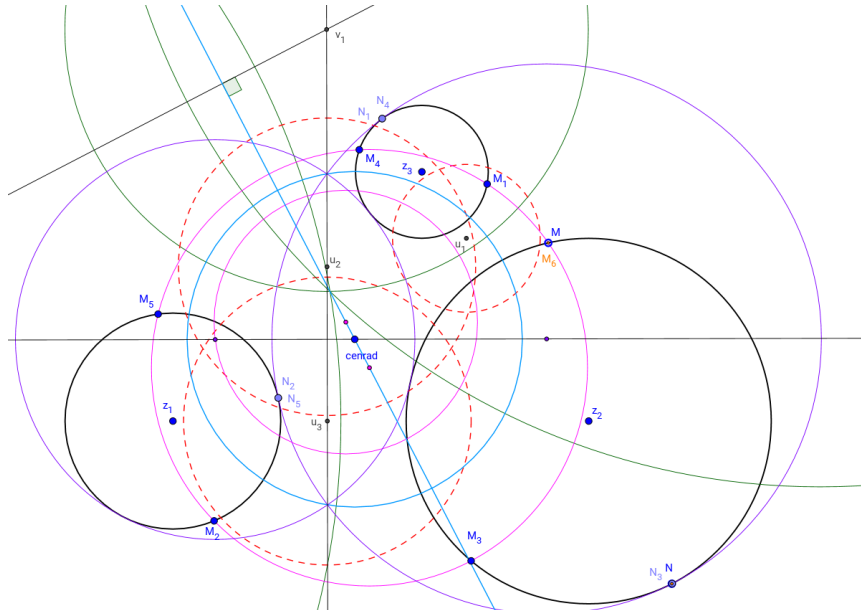
$$\alpha \left(\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \end{array} \right) \simeq \left(\begin{array}{c} \frac{p\overline{\mathbf{Z}} + \mathbf{T}}{\overline{\mathbf{Z}} - p\mathbf{T}} \\ 1 \\ \frac{p\mathbf{Z} + \mathbf{T}}{\mathbf{Z} - p\overline{\mathbf{T}}} \end{array} \right) ; \gamma\beta\alpha \left(\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \end{array} \right) \simeq \left(\begin{array}{c} \frac{(pqr + p - q + r)\overline{\mathbf{Z}} + (pq - pr + qr + 1)\mathbf{T}}{(pq - pr + qr + 1)\overline{\mathbf{Z}} - (pqr + p - q + r)\mathbf{T}} \\ 1 \\ \frac{(pqr + p - q + r)\mathbf{Z} + (pq - pr + qr + 1)\mathbf{T}}{(pq - pr + qr + 1)\mathbf{Z} - (pqr + p - q + r)\overline{\mathbf{T}}} \end{array} \right)$$

Moreover the six points are on the circle $[-(\mathbf{T}^2 + \mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}}), 2\mathbf{T}(\mathbf{Z} - \overline{\mathbf{Z}}), \mathbf{T}^2 + \mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}}, \mathbf{T}(\mathbf{Z} - \overline{\mathbf{Z}})]$. \square

Proposition 13.8.9 (Monge). *Centers $V_1 V_2 V_3$ are aligned, and also centers $V_j U_i U_k$ (even number of internal centers).*

Proof. Alignment of the V_j comes from: $r_1(r_2 - r_3)V_1 + r_2(r_3 - r_1)V_2 + r_3(r_1 - r_2)V_3 = \vec{0}$. When changing r_j into $-r_j$, two circles are impacted, inducing the parity requirement. \square

Proposition 13.8.10. *Starting by $M_0 \in \mathcal{C}_2$, the inversions $\gamma'_1, \gamma'_2, \gamma'_3, \gamma'_1, \gamma'_2, \gamma'_3$ are leading to a set of six concyclic points where M_j belongs to \mathcal{C}_{j+2} (indexes taken modulo 3) and $M_6 = M_0$. All circles (M_k) are centered on the perpendicular to line $V_1 V_2 V_3$ issued from z_4 (radical axis of circles $\gamma'_1, \gamma'_2, \gamma'_3$).*



$\mathcal{C}_1(z_1), \mathcal{C}_2(z_2), \mathcal{C}_3(z_3)$: black ; $\mathcal{C}_4(\text{cenrad})$: blue ; $\gamma'_j(v_j)$: green ; $\gamma_j(u_j)$: dot-red

Figure 13.2: Three circles, six inversions

Proof. Circles \mathcal{C}_j are orthogonal to \mathcal{C}_4 and circles γ_j inherit of this property. By Monge proposition, they are orthogonal to line $V_1V_2V_3$. Therefore circles γ_j belong to a same pencil, the lemma applies and the conclusion follows. When $M_0 \in \mathcal{C}_2 \cap \mathcal{C}_4$, all the M_j are concyclic on \mathcal{C}_4 . See Figure 13.2 where the M_j are obtained using $V_1V_2V_3$. The inverse of this circle in \mathcal{C}_4 is also given (both in magenta). \square

Fact 13.8.11. N_0 can be chosen on \mathcal{C}_2 so that $N_3 = N_0$. And then circle $N_0N_1N_2$ is tangent to the \mathcal{C}_j circles. See Figure 13.2 where the N_j are obtained using $V_1U_2U_3$. The inverse of this circle in \mathcal{C}_4 is also given (both in violet). And then line $V_1U_2U_3$ is the radical axis of these two circles. See Section 13.11

13.8.4 Steiner porism

Definition 13.8.12. A n -Steiner chain of circles is a series of n circles, finite in number, each tangent to two fixed circles and to two other circles of the series (borrowed from Johnson, 1929, p. 113)).

Proposition 13.8.13. If two circles α, β admit a n -Steiner chain, they admit an infinite number of such chains, and any circle tangent in the same way to α, β is a member of one chain.

Proof. Use an inversion and transform α, β in two concentric circles. The whole chain transforms into another chain. \square

13.9 Euler pencil and incircle

Consider $\mathcal{C}_1 = (X_1, r)$, $\mathcal{C}_3 = (X_3, R)$, $\mathcal{C}_5 = (X_5, R/2)$ and $\mathcal{C}_z = (X_z = X_{381}, |GH|/2)$ i.e., respectively, the in-, circum- nine points and orthocentroidal circles (Figure 13.3a). Let $U_j, \mathcal{V}_j, x_j, c_j$ be the respective representatives of centers and circles, together with their respective shadows (Figure 13.3b). Then :

1. Circles $(X_1), \mathcal{C}_1, \mathcal{C}_\infty$ are concentric so that $U_1, \mathcal{V}_1, \text{Sirius}$ are aligned and therefore x_1, c_1, G are aligned too. The same happens for $j = 5$ and $j = z$.
2. Cycles $\mathcal{C}_3, \mathcal{C}_5, \mathcal{C}_z$ belong to the same (Euler) pencil, together with their radical axis $AR_{3,5}$, so that representatives $\mathcal{V}_3, \mathcal{V}_5, \mathcal{V}_z, \mathcal{V}_{3,5}$ are aligned and therefore $c_3, c_5, c_z, ar_{3,5}$ are aligned too. Since c_3 is "far below the paper sheet", we have $c_5 = c_z = ar_{3,5}$. For the same reason, $c_1 = ar_{3,1}$.
3. Circles \mathcal{C}_1 and \mathcal{C}_5 are tangent at $F \doteq X_{11}$, the Feuerbach point. Thus cycles $(F), \mathcal{C}_1, \mathcal{C}_5$ belong to the same pencil, together with their common tangent $AR_{1,5}$. Representatives $U_f, \mathcal{V}_1, \mathcal{V}_5, \mathcal{V}_{1,5}$ are aligned and so are $x_f, c_1, c_5, ar_{1,5}$.
4. Cycles $AR_{1,3}, AR_{1,5}, AR_{3,5}$ are on the same pencil (they concur in the radical center X_k) and their shadows $ar_{1,3}, ar_{1,5}, ar_{3,5}$ are aligned.
5. In fact line c_1c_5 is not representative of a specific pencil, but rather of the bundle generated by $\mathcal{C}_1, \mathcal{C}_3, \mathcal{C}_5$. We have :

$$\mathcal{V}_1 \simeq \begin{bmatrix} (b+c-a)^2 \\ (c+a-b)^2 \\ (a+b-c)^2 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}, \mathcal{V}_5 \simeq \begin{bmatrix} b^2+c^2-a^2 \\ c^2+a^2-b^2 \\ a^2+b^2-c^2 \\ 4 \end{bmatrix}, \mathcal{V}_3 \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

and therefore :

$$\mathcal{V}_k \simeq \begin{bmatrix} (c-b)(b+c-a)(b^2+c^2-a^2)(b^2+c^2-ab-ac) \\ (a-c)(c+a-b)(c^2+a^2-b^2)(c^2+a^2-bc-ba) \\ (b-a)(a+b-c)(a^2+b^2-c^2)(a^2+b^2-ca-cb) \\ 4(a-b)(b-c)(c-a)(a+b+c) \end{bmatrix}$$

From \mathcal{V}_k , the well-known result $X_k = X_{676}$ and the obvious $r_k = |X_k X_f|$ can be re-obtained.

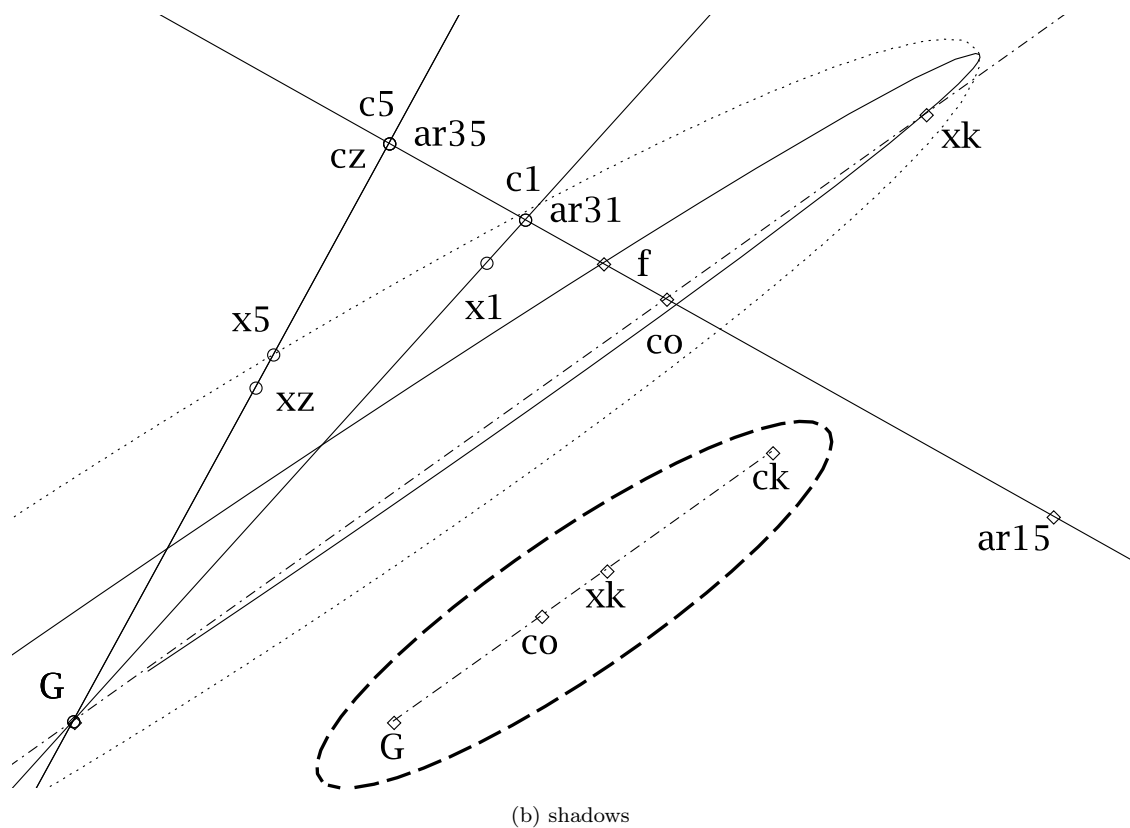
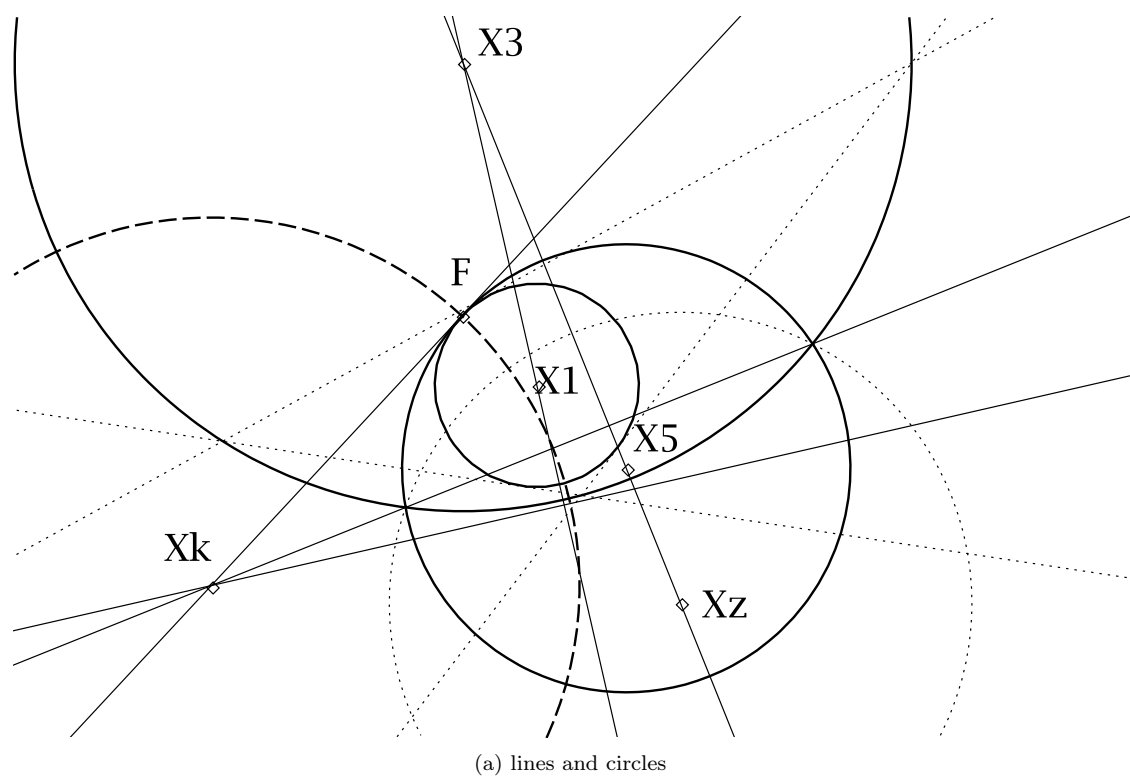


Figure 13.3: Euler pencil and incircle

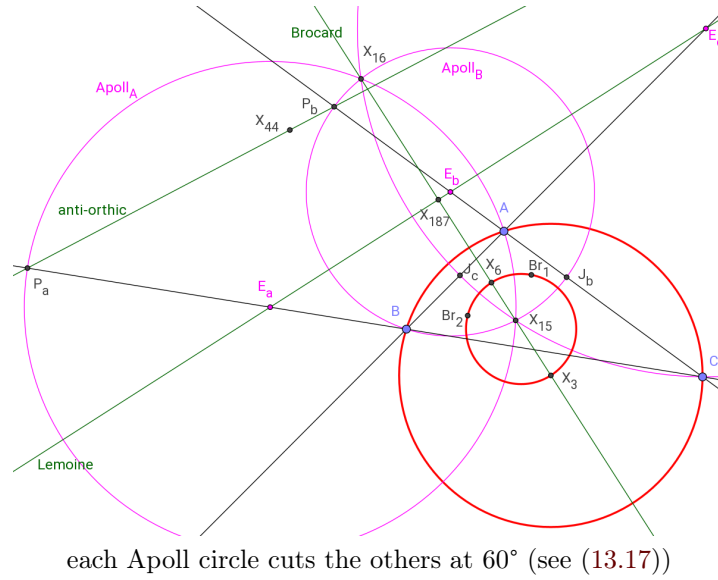


Figure 13.4: Lemoine and Brocard pencils

6. As it should be, x_k, c_k, G are aligned (small insert, at the bottom of Figure 13.3b).
7. Consider W_k at intersection between *line* $(V_k \text{ Sirius})$ and *plane* (V_1, V_3, V_5) . This points represents a circle that is both concentric and orthogonal to C_k . This circle is therefore $(X_k, i r_k)$ and its shadow co belongs to both Gx_k and $c_5 c_1$. Moreover, division G, x_k, co, c_k is harmonic.

13.10 The Brocard-Lemoine pencils

Notation 13.10.1. The cevians of a point M are usually noted M_a , etc. When dealing with the incenter I_0 , this would collide with I_a , etc, the usual notation of the excenters. Thus we will use J_a , etc to note the cevians of I_0 (i.e. the feet of the internal bisectors).

Proposition 13.10.2. *Let J_a and P_a be the points on sideline BC met by the interior and exterior bisectors of angle A . In other words, the J_j and P_j are respectively the cevians and the cocevians of I_0 . The circle (E_a) having diameter $[J_a, P_a]$ goes through A and is called the **A-Apollonian circle**. The B- and C- Apollonian circles are similarly constructed, while the centers E_j are the cocevians of $K = X(6)$.*

The Apollonian circles belong to a same (Lemoine) pencil whose base points are the isodynamic points $X(15)$, $X(16)$, while the radical axis is the Brocard line. The orthogonal (Brocard) pencil contains the circumcircle and the Brocard 3-6 circle, while the radical axis is the Lemoine line.

Proof. These assertions depend of the following Lemmas. □

Lemma 13.10.3. Lemoine pencil (of Apollonian circles). *Point J_a is the A cevian of $X(1)$. Thus $J_a \simeq 0 : b : c$ and $P_a \simeq 0 : b : -c$. Now, we take the wedge of the Veronese of A, J_a, P_a and obtain the column describing the A-Apollonian circle:*

$$\mathcal{V}_a \simeq \bigwedge_3 ([1, 0, 0, 0], [0, b(b+c), (b+c)c, -a^2bc], [0, b(c-b), c(b-c), -a^2bc]) \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ -a^2c^2 \\ a^2b^2 \\ b^2 - c^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Let us remember that \mathcal{V}_a is a column that describe a point in $\mathbb{P}_\mathbb{C}(\mathbb{C}^4)$, while each Veronese is a plane incident to this point. Here, it is obvious that the three \mathcal{V}_j are not independent from each

other. Using the usual formalism to describe the corresponding pencil, one obtains :

$$\boxed{Lemoine_{point}} \doteq \left(\mathcal{V}_a \underset{6}{\wedge} \mathcal{V}_b \right) \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 0 & a^2 b^2 (b^2 - a^2) & a^2 c^2 (c^2 - a^2) & a^4 b^2 c^2 \\ a^2 b^2 (a^2 - b^2) & 0 & b^2 c^2 (c^2 - b^2) & a^2 b^4 c^2 \\ a^2 c^2 (a^2 - c^2) & b^2 c^2 (b^2 - c^2) & 0 & a^2 b^2 c^4 \\ -a^4 b^2 c^2 & -a^2 b^4 c^2 & -a^2 b^2 c^4 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

where the index 'point' is used to remember that this object has to be multiplied by a point in $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^4)$, i.e. a column, to determine if the point belongs to the pencil.

Lemma 13.10.4. In order to determine the point-circles that belong to the pencil, we solve

$Ver(x : y : z) \cdot \boxed{Q_b^{-1}} \cdot \boxed{Lemoine_{point}} = 0$. We obtain both umbilics, together with

$$E_{\pm} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} a^2 \mp i a^2 \sqrt{3} \\ -2 b^2 \\ c^2 \pm i c^2 \sqrt{3} \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} a^2 (2 a^2 - b^2 - c^2) \pm i \sqrt{3} a^2 (b^2 - c^2) \\ b^2 (2 b^2 - a^2 - c^2) \pm i \sqrt{3} b^2 (c^2 - a^2) \\ c^2 (2 c^2 - b^2 - a^2) \pm i \sqrt{3} c^2 (a^2 - b^2) \end{pmatrix}$$

The fact that $E_{\pm} \simeq X(187) \pm i \sqrt{3} X(512)$ is not real indicates that the pencil is an isoptic one. From these values, one sees that the line of centers is the Lemoine axis (eponymous property).

Lemma 13.10.5. The polar planes Π_j of the \mathcal{V}_j are obtained by $\Pi_j \doteq {}^t \mathcal{V}_j \cdot \boxed{Q_b}$. Their pencil is described by

$$\boxed{Brocard_{plane}} \doteq \left(\Pi_a \underset{6}{\wedge} \Pi_b \right) \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & b^2 c^2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & a^2 c^2 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & a^2 b^2 \\ -b^2 c^2 & -a^2 c^2 & -a^2 b^2 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

where the index "plane" is to remember that this object has to be multiplied by a plane (i.e. a row) to determine if the plane belongs to the pencil of planes.

Lemma 13.10.6. Brocard pencil (of Γ and 3-6 Brocard). The dual of the $\boxed{Brocard_{plane}}$ pencil is called the Brocard pencil. Its matrix (acting over points, i.e. over representatives of cycles), is the dual of the former matrix:

$$\boxed{Brocard_{point}} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 0 & a^2 b^2 & -a^2 c^2 & 0 \\ -a^2 b^2 & 0 & b^2 c^2 & 0 \\ a^2 c^2 & -b^2 c^2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

This pencil contains both the circum-circle and the 3-6 Brocard circle (obvious).

Moreover, the point circles of the pencil are both umbilics, together with the isodynamic points points $X(15), X(16)$.

Proof. Using the same algorithm as before gives an expression which isn't symmetric... and rather complicated. The best thing to do is using the Kimberling's search keys. Thereafter, one can check that:

$$F_{\pm} = \begin{pmatrix} a^2 (2 a^2 - b^2 - c^2) + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4S} a^2 ((b^2 + c^2) a^2 - b^4 - c^4) \\ b^2 (2 b^2 - c^2 - a^2) + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4S} b^2 ((c^2 + a^2) b^2 - c^4 - a^4) \\ c^2 (2 c^2 - a^2 - b^2) + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4S} c^2 ((a^2 + b^2) c^2 - a^4 - b^4) \end{pmatrix}$$

i.e. $F_{\pm} \simeq X(187) \pm \sqrt{3} \boxed{OrtO} \cdot X(512)$ (see Proposition 13.5.6). From these values, one sees that the line of centers is the Brocard axis (eponymous property). \square

Remark 13.10.7. These pencils are reexamined at Section 18.3.2 (using Morley coordinates).

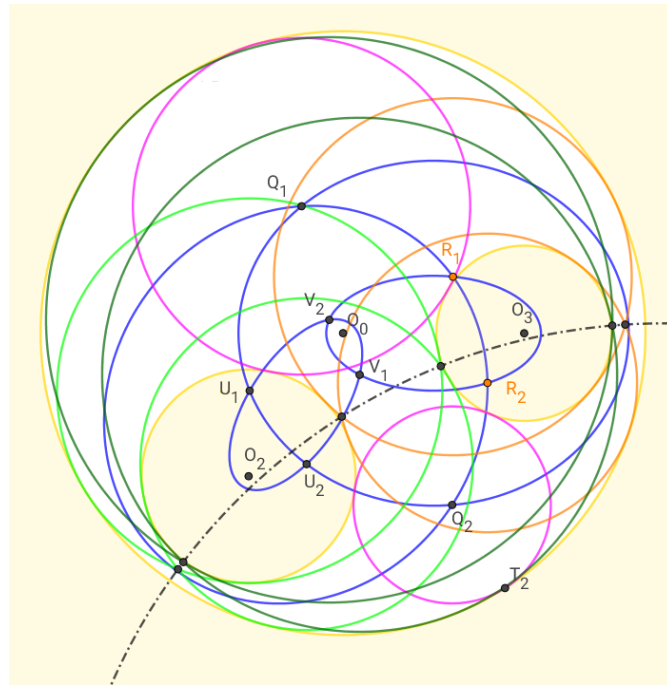


Figure 13.5: Using ellipses to construct the eight centers

13.11 The Apollonius configuration

In the general case, it exists eight cycles Ω tangent to three given cycles $\Omega_1, \Omega_2, \Omega_3$ (not coming from the same pencil). Two notable reviews of this question are [Gisch and Ribando \(2004\)](#) and [Kunkel \(2007\)](#). The usual decomposition into ten cases is [Wikipedia: WillowW et al. \(2006\)](#); [Bogomolny \(2009\)](#). The best space where this Apollonius problem can be discussed is $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^5)$ (cf Chapter 19). Nevertheless, most of the results can be stated in $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^4)$... and it will appear that only one situation is really special (cycles through the same point), all the other belonging to the same general case.

13.11.1 Construction using conics

Construction 13.11.1.

1. Assume that circles $\Omega_1, \Omega_2, \Omega_3$ have no points in common.
2. If necessary, invert the circles wrt one of them and obtain a configuration where circle (O_0) encloses circles $(O_2), (O_3)$.
3. Draw the ellipses $\mathcal{E}_p, \mathcal{E}_m$ enforcing $O_0M + O_2M = r_0 \pm r_2$; and also the ellipses $\mathfrak{E}_p, \mathfrak{E}_m$ enforcing $O_0N + O_3N = r_0 \pm r_3$ (the blue curves at Figure 13.5).
4. Cut each \mathcal{E} by each \mathfrak{E} and obtain four pairs of points Q, R, U, V . Then cut (O_0) by the ray $[O_0M]$ to obtain the contact point.
5. Verify: the intersections of the paired circles are on a same circle (black dash-dot). Here: the green, dark-green, orange pairs.

Proof. Appearance of the ellipses is obvious. Pairing is discussed at ([Gheorghe, 2020](#)). All these properties are covered by our Theorem 13.11.7. \square

13.11.2 Tangent cycles in the representative space

Proposition 13.11.2. *Two cycles are tangent when their pencil line is tangent to the fundamental quadric. Therefore, the locus of the representatives of all cycles tangent to a given (real) cycle Ω represented by V (not inside \mathcal{Q}) is the cone whose vertex is V and that goes through $\mathcal{Q} \cap \text{polar}(V)$.*

Proof. Two tangent cycles are defining a tangent pencil ! \square

Remark 13.11.3. When Ω is a point circle, its representative U belongs to the fundamental quadric, and the cone of the tangent cycles degenerates into a doubly coated plane.

Definition 13.11.4. The Gram matrix $\text{Gram}_{p,q,\dots,r}$ of $X_p, X_q, \dots, X_r \in \mathbb{R}^4$ is the matrix of all the products ${}^t X_p \boxed{\mathcal{Q}} X_q$. In this context, notation $W_{pq} = \left\langle X_p \middle| \mathcal{Q} \middle| X_q \right\rangle$ and $w_p^2 = \left\langle X_p \middle| \mathcal{Q} \middle| X_p \right\rangle$ will be used, leading to

$$\text{Gram}_{pq} = \begin{pmatrix} w_p^2 & W_{pq} \\ W_{pq} & w_q^2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (13.24)$$

Remark 13.11.5. For two circles, we have $\det \text{Gram}_{pq} = \left(d^2 - (\rho_1 - \rho_2)^2 \right) \left(d^2 - (\rho_1 + \rho_2)^2 \right)$

Proposition 13.11.6. *Two cycles Ω_1, Ω_2 are secant, tangent or external when $\text{signum}(\det \text{Gram}_{12})$ is (respectively) $+1, 0$ or -1 .*

Theorem 13.11.7. *Special cases of the Apollonius problem are (1) cycles from the same pencil and (2) cycles through the same point (tangent bundle). Otherwise, representatives V_j of the three given cycles and their common orthogonal cycle Ω_4 form a basis that splits the problem into four pairs of solutions. One of the solutions is given by $V_0 = \sum k_j V_j$ where :*

$$\begin{aligned} k_1 &= (w_2 w_3 - W_{23})(-w_1 w_2 w_3 - w_1 W_{23} + w_2 W_{13} + w_3 W_{12}) \\ k_2 &= (w_1 w_3 - W_{13})(-w_1 w_2 w_3 + w_1 W_{23} - w_2 W_{13} + w_3 W_{12}) \\ k_3 &= (w_1 w_2 - W_{12})(-w_1 w_2 w_3 + w_1 W_{23} + w_2 W_{13} - w_3 W_{12}) \\ k_4 &= \sqrt{-2(w_2 w_3 - W_{23})(w_1 w_3 - W_{13})(w_1 w_2 - W_{12}) \text{Gram}_{123}} / w_4 \end{aligned} \quad (13.25)$$

and the others are obtained by changing k_4 into $-k_4$ (inversion through Ω_4) or changing the signs of w_1, w_2, w_3 . A solution is real/imaginary or "unimaginable" (object that would have a non real center) according to the sign of k_4^2 . Globally, the number of "imaginable" solutions changes when the tangency condition $\prod \text{Gram}_{jk}$ vanishes.

Proof. When $\Omega_j, j = 1, 2, 3$ is a basis of a non tangent bundle, then $\Omega_j, j = 1, 2, 3, 4$ is a basis of the whole representative space. The fundamental quadratic form is described, in this basis, by matrix Gram_{1234} where $W_{j4} = 0$ for $j = 1, 2, 3$. Computing, in this basis, the tangency condition of Ω_0 and any of the Ω_j leads to 0. Since the w_j are defined as $\sqrt{W_{jj}}$ we have 4 choices of signs leading, due to the possibility of a global proportionality factor, to eight different values. \square

13.11.3 An example: the Soddy circles

Proposition 13.11.8. *Soddy circles are three mutually, externally, tangent circles. Let A, B, C be their centers. Then the common orthogonal circle of the Soddy's is the incircle of ABC (see [Oldknow, 1996](#)).*

Proof. Let x be the radius of circle (A) , etc. We have $a = y + z, b = z + x, c = x + y$. Therefore $x = b + c - a$, etc. The contact point of the $(B), (C)$ circles is $G_a \simeq 0 : y : z$, etc. As a result, the G_j are the cevians of the Gergonne point $G_e = X(7)$, and the conclusion follows. \square

Proposition 13.11.9. *The Apollonius circles of the Soddy circles are twice each of them, a small circle (inside the intouch triangle) and an outer circle. The center of the smaller circle is called $X(176)$, the other is called $X(175)$. Let \mathcal{H}_a be the branch of hyperbola that goes through A, G_a and has B, C as focuses. Then the three branches through a vertex of the hyperbolas concur at $X(176)$, while the other three branches concur at $X(175)$.*

Proof. This is clear from $a = y + z$, etc. \square

Proposition 13.11.10. *Centers and radiuses of the Soddy circles are given by :*

$$\begin{aligned} nX(175) &= \frac{2s}{2s - (4R + r_0)} nX(1) - \frac{4R + r_0}{2s - (4R + r_0)} nX(7) \simeq \begin{bmatrix} a - \frac{2S}{b+c-a} \\ \vdots \\ \vdots \end{bmatrix} \\ nX(176) &= \frac{2s}{2s + (4R + r_0)} nX(1) + \frac{4R + r_0}{2s + (4R + r_0)} nX(7) \simeq \begin{bmatrix} a + \frac{2S}{b+c-a} \\ \vdots \\ \vdots \end{bmatrix} \\ \frac{1}{\rho_6} - \frac{1}{\rho_5} &= \frac{4}{r_0} ; \frac{1}{\rho_6} + \frac{1}{\rho_5} = 2 \frac{4R + r_0}{s r_0} ; \rho_5 = \frac{r_0 s}{2s - (4R + r_0)} \end{aligned} \quad (13.26)$$

Proof. Using (13.10), the representatives of circles $\Omega_1 \cdots \Omega_4$ are :

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} (b+c-a)^2 & (b+c-a)(b-3c-a) & (b+c-a)(c-a-3b) & (b+c-a)^2 \\ (c+a-b)(a-b-3c) & (c+a-b)^2 & (c+a-b)(c-3a-b) & (c+a-b)^2 \\ (a+b-c)(a-3b-c) & (a+b-c)(b-c-3a) & (a+b-c)^2 & (a+b-c)^2 \\ -4 & -4 & -4 & 4 \end{array} \right)$$

Their Gram matrix is :

$$\left(\begin{array}{ccc|c} (b+c-a)^2 & -(b+c-a)(c+a-b) & -(a+b-c)(b+c-a) & 0 \\ -(b+c-a)(c+a-b) & (c+a-b)^2 & -(c+a-b)(a+b-c) & 0 \\ -(a+b-c)(b+c-a) & -(c+a-b)(a+b-c) & (a+b-c)^2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \frac{16S^2}{(a+b+c)^2} \end{array} \right)$$

Then (13.25) gives the decomposition of the Soddy's circles on the Ω basis. We have :

$${}^t K \simeq \left[\frac{1}{b+c-a}; \frac{1}{c+a-b}; \frac{1}{a+b-c}; \frac{a+b+c}{2S} \right]$$

and the conclusion follows (since $a+b+c=2s$). \square

Remark 13.11.11. We have cross_ratio $(X_1, X_7, X_{175}, X_{176}) = -1$, while condition $4R + r_0 = 2s$ is not excluded. In this case, the $X(1)$ and $X(7)$ are on Ω_6 , the inner Soddy circle, while $X(175)$ is at infinity and Ω_5 is a straight line. When ABC ($a=b=c=1$), then $s=3$, $R=\sqrt{1/3}$, $r_0=\sqrt{1/12}$ and (13.26) provides a positive ρ_6 .

Proposition 13.11.12. *The Soddy radiuses satisfy the following "curvature formula" :*

$$\left(\frac{1}{\rho_1} + \frac{1}{\rho_2} + \frac{1}{\rho_3} + \frac{1}{\rho_5} \right)^2 = 2 \left(\frac{1}{\rho_1^2} + \frac{1}{\rho_2^2} + \frac{1}{\rho_3^2} + \frac{1}{\rho_5^2} \right)$$

Proof. For an elementary proof: substitute and simplify. For a stratospheric (and interesting !) proof, see [Pedoe \(1967\)](#). See [Soddy \(1936\)](#) for a poetic statement of this property. \square

Proposition 13.11.13. *Let ε_a , etc be the cocevians and G_a , etc be the cevians of $G_e = X(7)$. Draw circles E_j centered at ε_j and going through G_j . Then E_j cuts C_j at the contact points with the Soddy circles. Moreover the three E_j circles concur at $X(3638)$ and $X(3639)$.*

Proof. It is easy to check that each of the $E_j \cap C_j$ points belongs to one Soddy circle. Moreover, one has

$$\begin{aligned} X(1323) &\simeq \frac{2a^2 - a(b+c) - (b-c)^2}{b+c-a} :: \\ X(516) &\simeq 2a^3 - b^3 - c^3 + (bc - a^2)(b+c) \\ X(3638) &= 3X(516) + 4\sqrt{3}SX(1323) \end{aligned}$$

And it is easy to check that $X(3638)$ belongs to the three E_j circles. Caveat: the Soddy points are not the common points of the E_j circles, but they are the Poncelets of the Soddy circles. \square

13.11.4 An other example: the not so Soddy circles

Proposition 13.11.14. *The **not so Soddy circles** of a triangle are the circles centered at A with radius $a = BC$, etc. Their common orthogonal circle is the Longchamps circle λ (i.e. the polar circle of the antimedial triangle).*

Proof. The circle γ_a , centered at A with radius a is described by :

$$yza^2 + b^2zx + c^2yx + (x + y + z)(a^2x + y(a^2 - c^2) + z(a^2 - b^2)) = 0$$

Its intersections with the circumcircle are :

$$Q_b \simeq a^2 - c^2 : -b^2 : c^2 - a^2 \quad \text{and} \quad Q_c \simeq a^2 - b^2 : b^2 - a^2 : -c^2$$

while its intersections with γ_b (resp. γ_c) are Q_c and $U_c \simeq 1 : 1 : -1$ (resp. Q_b and $U_b \simeq 1 : -1 : 1$). Points U_a, U_b, U_c are on circle $(H, 2R)$ and form the antimedial triangle. Lines Q_aU_a are the altitudes of $U_aU_bU_c$ and concur at $L \doteq H' = X(20)$. But they are also the radical axes of our circles. The radius r_L of the orthogonal circle is obtained by :

$$r_L^2 = |AL|^2 - a^2, \text{ etc} = \frac{-S_a S_b S_c}{S^2} = 4(2R + \rho + s)(2R + \rho - s)$$

□

Proposition 13.11.15. *The Apollonius circles of the not so Soddy circles are obtained by extraversions (i.e. $a \mapsto -a$) from their central versions. These central circles are centered at the Soddy points $X(175)$ and $X(176)$.*

Proof. The representatives and the Gram matrix of $\gamma_a, \gamma_b, \gamma_c, \lambda$ are :

$$\begin{pmatrix} -a^2 & c^2 - b^2 & b^2 - c^2 & a^2 \\ c^2 - a^2 & -b^2 & a^2 - c^2 & b^2 \\ b^2 - a^2 & a^2 - b^2 & -c^2 & c^2 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} a^2 & S_c & S_b & 0 \\ S_c & b^2 & S_a & 0 \\ S_b & S_a & c^2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -S_a S_b S_c \div S^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Changing $w_1 \mapsto -w_1$ is $a \mapsto -a$, proving the extraversions. Formula(13.25) gives the coefficients :

$$K \simeq \begin{pmatrix} (bc - S_a)(-bca - aS_a + bS_b + cS_c) \\ (ca - S_b)(-bca - bS_b + cS_c + aS_a) \\ (ab - S_c)(-bca - cS_c + aS_a + bS_b) \\ 16 S^3 \div (a + b + c) \end{pmatrix}$$

Organizing the obtained equations, we have :

$$\begin{aligned} \gamma_6 &= \lambda + 2(x + y + z)(ax + by + cz)\rho_6 & \text{where } \rho_6 &= \frac{+2s(2R + \rho + s)}{4R + \rho + 2s} \\ \gamma_5 &= \lambda + 2(x + y + z)(ax + by + cz)\rho_5 & \text{where } \rho_5 &= \frac{-2s(2R + \rho - s)}{4R + \rho - 2s} \end{aligned}$$

This leads to $\gamma_6 = (X_{176}, \rho_6)$, etc. Additionally, this proves that $ax + by + cz = 0$ is the radical axis of the three circles. Moreover, the Soddy conic (through A, B, C , with focuses $X(175)$, $X(176)$ and perspector $X(7)$) is tangent to the Longchamps circle at the common points of $\lambda, \gamma_6, \gamma_5$ since we have :

$$\text{conic} = \lambda + (ax + by + cz)^2$$

□

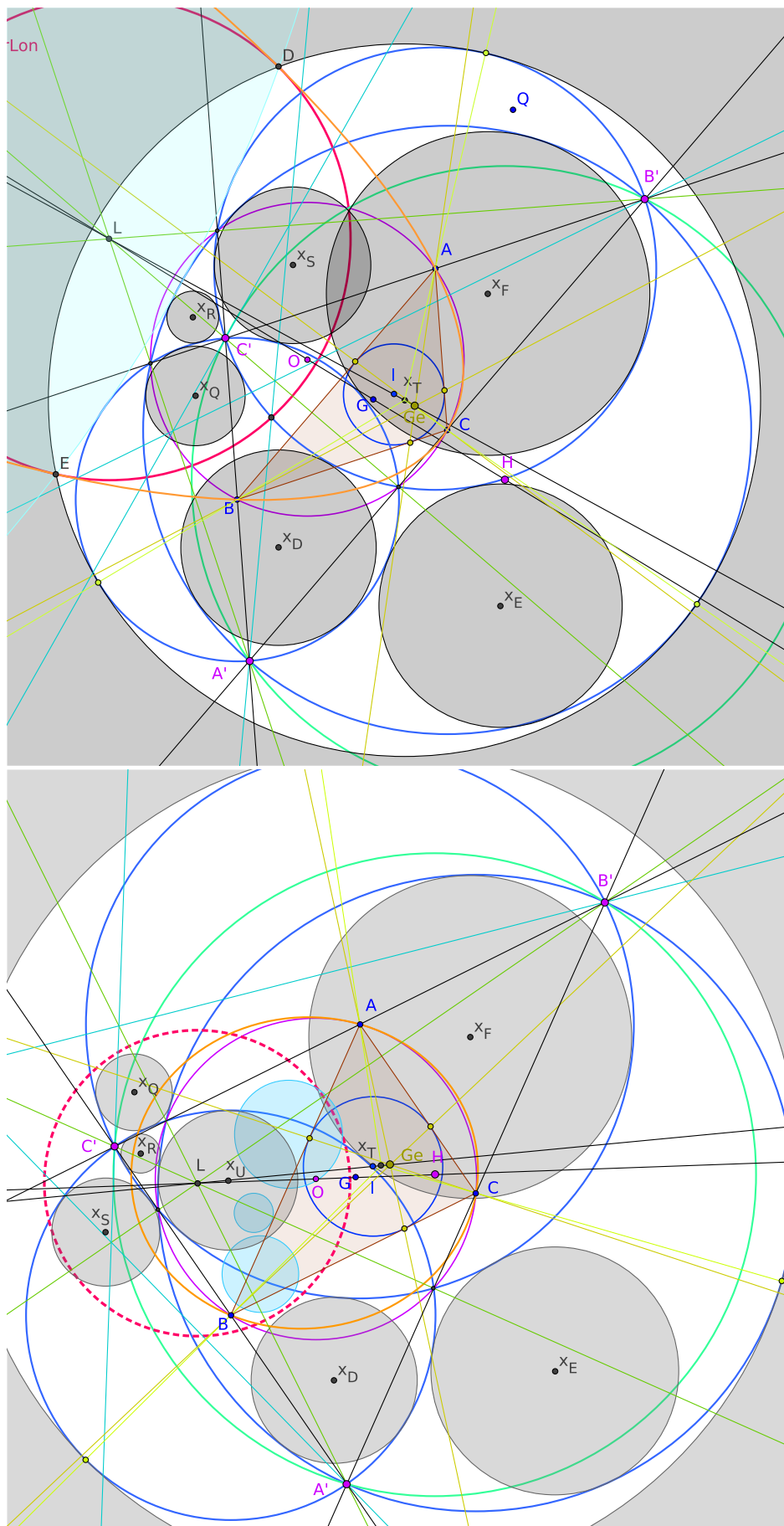


Figure 13.6: Apollonius circles of the not so Soddy configuration.

13.11.5 The three excircles

Taking the three excircles as $\Omega_1, \Omega_2, \Omega_3$ leads to a well-known situation (Stevanovic, 2003).

1. The representative of the point-circle $(X_1; 0)$ is :

$$U_0 = [bc(b+c-a); ca(c+a-b); ab(a+b-c); a+b+c]$$

while radius of the incircle is :

$$r = \sqrt{\frac{(b+c-a)(c+a-b)(a+b-c)}{4(a+b+c)}}$$

2. The representative of the incircle, given by (13.10), is :

$$V_0 = [(b+c-a)^2; (c+a-b)^2; (a+b-c)^2; 4]$$

3. Centers, radiuses and representatives V_a, V_b, V_c of the excircles are obtained by changing one of the sidelengths into its opposite in the respective formulas for the incircle.
4. The alt_Spieker circle is defined as the common orthogonal circle to the three excircles. From (13.18), this circle can be computed as :

$$V_4 = [(c+a-b)(a+b-c); (a+b-c)(b+c-a); (b+c-a)(c+a-b); -4]$$

5. The radius of this circle, as computed from (13.15), is :

$$\begin{aligned} \omega_4 &= \sqrt{\frac{b^2c + ab^2 + bc^2 + a^2b + ac^2 + a^2c + acb}{4(a+b+c)}} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{r_0^2 + s^2} \end{aligned}$$

while the representative of the center is :

$$U_4 = \begin{pmatrix} 2a(b^2+c^2) - acb + b^3 + c^3 - a^3 \\ 2b(c^2+a^2) - acb + c^3 + a^3 - b^3 \\ 2c(a^2+b^2) - acb + a^3 + b^3 - c^3 \\ 4(a+b+c) \end{pmatrix}$$

and the center itself is :

$$b+c : a+c : a+b = X_{10}$$

6. The pairs of solutions of the Apollonius problem, as given by (13.25), are :

$$\begin{pmatrix} S_1 \\ S_5 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} b^2+c^2-a^2 & c^2+a^2-b^2 & a^2+b^2-c^2 & 4 \\ a+b+c+\frac{2bc}{a} & a+b+c+\frac{2ca}{b} & a+b+c+\frac{2ab}{c} & \frac{-4}{a+b+c} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$S_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, S_6 = \begin{pmatrix} (a+b+c)(b^2+ab+ac+c^2) \\ (b+c)(a-b-c)(a+b-c) \\ (b+c)(a-b-c)(a-b+c) \\ 4(b+c) \end{pmatrix}$$

where point S_1 is the representative of the nine-points circle, centered at X_5 while S_5 is related to the Apollonius circle, centered at X_{970} . Points S_2, S_3, S_4 are the representatives of lines BC, CA, AB while S_6 and S_7, S_8 (obtained cyclically) are the representatives of the last three solutions.

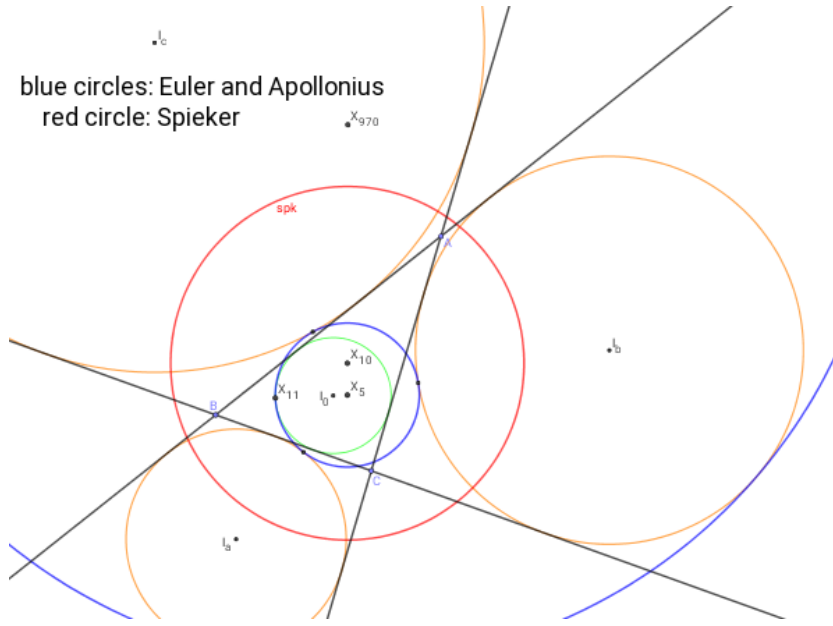


Figure 13.7: Alt-Spieker configuration

13.11.6 The special case

Proposition 13.11.16. *Let $\Omega_1, \Omega_2, \Omega_3$ be three cycles generating a bundle whose common orthogonal cycle is a point-cycle (ω_5), and ω_4 be any other point. The representative of one of the cycles tangent to $\Omega_1, \Omega_2, \Omega_3$ is given by $V_0 = \sum_1^3 k_j V_j + 4U_4$ where :*

$$k_1 = \left(\frac{w_2 w_3 - W_{2,3}}{(w_1 w_3 - W_{1,3})(w_1 w_2 - W_{1,2})} \text{Gram}_{1,2,3,4} - 2 \text{Gram}_{2,3,4} \right) \div \Delta_{2,3,4}^{1,2,3} \quad (13.27)$$

$\Delta_{2,3,4}^{1,2,3}$ is the minor obtained by deleting row 1 and column 4 in $\text{Gram}_{1,2,3,4}$, while k_2, k_3 are obtained cyclically. Three other cycles are obtained by changing one of the w_1, w_2, w_3 into its opposite. The other solutions are four times the point cycle ω_5 .

Proof. In this special case, $\text{Gram}_{1,2,3} = 0$ and Ω_4 is chosen so that $w_4 = 0$. When assuming that $\Omega_1, \Omega_2, \Omega_3$ aren't pairwise tangent, a direct substitution shows that Ω_0 is tangent to any of the given cycles. \square

Example 13.11.17. Using $\Omega_1 = 1 : 0 : 0 : 0$ (representative of line BC) etc, leads to $\omega_5 = \text{Sirius}$. An efficient choice for ω_4 is any vertex. Using, for example, $U_4 = 0 : c^2 : b^2 : 1$, one re-obtains easily the in/excircles.

Example 13.11.18. The Apollonius circles relative to the three circles $(ABH), (BCH), (CAH)$ are $(H, 0)$ four times, $(H, 2R)$ once and three other circles, Ta, Tb, Tc .

Circles Ta, Tb, Tc are ever external to each other, and their common orthogonal circle To is real. Condition of (external) tangency is :

$$(a^2 - b^2)^2 - (a^2 + b^2) c^2 = 0$$

(etc) or ABC rectangular. The Apollonius circles of Ta, Tb, Tc are (ABH) etc, their inverses in To and two others. Center $X = x : y : z$ and radius ω of the first one are :

$$x = (b^2 + c^2 - a^2) \times \frac{a^8 - 2(b^2 + c^2)a^6 + 2(b^4 - b^2c^2 + c^4)a^4 - 2(b^2 + c^2)(b^2 - c^2)^2 a^2 + (b^2 - c^2)^4}{a^6 + b^6 + c^6 - a^2b^4 - a^4b^2 - c^2b^4 - a^4c^2 - b^2c^4 - c^4a^2 + 4a^2b^2c^2}$$

while the second is less simple.

Chapter 14

Morley and complex numbers

Our aim in this chapter is to describe how to translate into complex numbers all of the *methods* we have described in the previous chapters. This is equivalent to give the complex version of all the operators which were described as of now.

In fact, some of these operators have a very simple form when using complex numbers and could have been introduced directly. In any case, we will prove the equivalence between "the Morley version" and "the barycentric version" of these operators.

14.1 Inclusive coordinates

When working with points $M = (\xi, \eta) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ and describing curves \mathcal{C} by polynomials P so that $M \in \mathcal{C}$ when $P(\xi, \eta) = 0$, one has to face the following theorem:

Theorem 14.1.1 (Bezout). *Two algebraic curves $\mathcal{C}(P_n)$ and $\mathcal{C}(P_m)$ of respective degrees m, n have exactly $m \times n$ common points when polynomials P_n and P_m have no non-constant common factor. To obtain this result, all the points have to be taken into account, including points with non real coordinates as well as points at infinity, and also considering the multiplicities of the solutions (Bezout, 1764).*

Obviously, a better formulation of this result can be obtained using the so called complex affixes

Definition 14.1.2. Complex affixes of a point. Let ξ_P, η_P be the Cartesian coordinates of a point P in the euclidian plane. The \mathbb{C} -affix of this point is defined as

$$z_P \doteq \xi_P + i \eta_P$$

In this definition, quantity i is a quarter turn. Since two quarter turns performed one after another is nothing but one half turn, we have $i^2 = -1$. This equation has another solution, namely $-i$, the quarter turn in the opposite orientation. Obviously, the very choice of a frame to obtain Cartesian coordinates like ξ_P, η_P ensures a choice of orientation of the plane: when Bob looks at the plane from above, he measures angles by placing his protractor onto the plane, seeing $z_P = \xi_P + i \eta_P$. But Alice, the girl who lives on the other side of the looking glass, will be watching from her seat. She will place her protractor on her side of the plane and, therefore, Alice will see

$$\zeta_P \doteq \xi_P - i \eta_P$$

Remark 14.1.3. The Conjugate Coordinate System describes points as $(z_P, \zeta_P) \in \mathbb{C}^2$ and curves as $z = f(t)$ where $z \in \mathbb{C}$ and parameter t ranges in $\mathbb{R} \cup \{\infty\}$. See Carver (1956) for a survey.

Definition 14.1.4. Inclusive Coordinate System is the projective version of the Conjugate Coordinate System. When the projective cartesian coordinates of a point are $P \underset{\mathbb{C}}{\simeq} X : Y : \mathbf{T}$, the **inclusive** coordinates of this point are defined by

$$P \underset{z}{\simeq} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \end{pmatrix} \doteq \begin{pmatrix} X + iY \\ \mathbf{T} \\ X - iY \end{pmatrix}$$

where $\mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{T}, \overline{\mathbf{Z}}$ are to be read as: "big z ", "big tea" and "big zeta". In other words:

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \end{pmatrix} = \boxed{\mathbf{c}\Phi\mathbf{m}} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} X \\ Y \\ \mathbf{T} \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{where } \boxed{\mathbf{c}\Phi\mathbf{m}} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & +i & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & -i & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Remark 14.1.5. An algebraic variable is a placeholder used to write polynomials. It was therefore necessary to find a notation in order to satisfy the following constraints:

1. Use capital letters, since polynomials are usually written $P(X_1, X_2, \dots, X_k)$
2. Avoid indices, and deal with the fact that the usual capitalization of the letter " ζ " has the same shape as the letter "big z " (nevertheless, letter $\overline{\mathbf{Z}}$ has to be read as "big zeta").
3. Have a robust cursive version, to facilitate hand computations: a Z is clearly a \mathbf{Z} , while a \overline{Z} is clearly a $\overline{\mathbf{Z}}$!
4. Don't suggest the stupid feeling that the variable $\overline{\mathbf{Z}}$ could be the \mathbb{C} -conjugate of the variable \mathbf{Z} . What could be the \mathbb{C} -conjugate of a placeholder ?

The name "inclusive coordinates" has been coined in order to emphasise the fact that we are avoiding a choice of orientation by including both of the Bob's and Alice's viewpoints. ¹

Proposition 14.1.6. *When an algebraic curve is defined by a cartesian polynomial $P_n(X : Y : \mathbf{T})$, it is also defined by the complex polynomial Q_n*

$$Q_n(\mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{T}, \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) = P_n\left(\frac{\mathbf{Z} + i\overline{\mathbf{Z}}}{2}, \frac{\mathbf{Z} - i\overline{\mathbf{Z}}}{2i}, \mathbf{T}\right)$$

The complex polynomial associated to polynomial $\overline{P_n}$ (obtained by complex conjugation of the coefficients) is noted $\text{conj}(Q_n)$ and is therefore

$$\text{conj}\left(\sum_{p+q+r=n} c_{p,q,r} \mathbf{Z}^p \overline{\mathbf{Z}}^q \mathbf{T}^r\right) = \sum_{p+q+r=n} \overline{c_{p,q,r}} \mathbf{Z}^q \overline{\mathbf{Z}}^p \mathbf{T}^r$$

in other words, conjugate the coefficients and exchange \mathbf{Z} with $\overline{\mathbf{Z}}$.

Definition 14.1.7. Visible points. When a point $P \simeq \mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \in \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$ can be written as $z_P : 1 : \overline{z_P}$ for some $z_P \in \mathbb{C}$, then P will be referred as a visible finite point (aka an ordinary point). When P can be written as $\tau : 0 : 1/\tau$ for some $\tau = \exp(i\vartheta), \vartheta \in \mathbb{R}$, then P will be referred as visible point at infinity (aka an ordinary direction). Taken together, ordinary points and ordinary directions are referred as the **visible points**. All the other points of $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$ are described as being **not-visible**.

Remark 14.1.8. The not-visible points of $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$ correspond to the points that cannot be written as $(x : y : t)$ with $x, y, t \in \mathbb{R}$ in the cartesian projective representation. In the $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{R}^3)$ context, they are referred as "non real" objects. In the context of $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$, this designation is no more suitable, and another name must be coined.

Proposition 14.1.9. *An algebraic curve is said to be "reduced to a point" when it contains only one visible point, and "visible" when it contains an infinite number of visible points. The (homogeneous) polynomial of an irreducible visible curve must be proportional to its conjugate.*

Remark 14.1.10. From an abstract point of view, using a constant factor to enforce $\text{conj}(P) = P$ is always possible. But in real life, this can only be done by carrying annoying factors and has to be avoided. Before any simplification, a polynomial obtained from a determinant, like the equation of a line or a circle, verifies $\text{conj}(P) = -P$.

¹On the other hand, it cannot be totally excluded that such a name could have been coined in order to provide the additional result of infuriating some old salafs

14.2 Morley method to deal with complex conjugacy

As everybody knows, complex conjugacy is not a smooth transform. Using it poisons the well and kills all polynomial properties. As a result, complex conjugacy has to be avoided at all costs. Therefore all parameters should either

1. belong to $\mathbb{R} \cup \{\infty\}$, and then $\bar{k} = k$
2. belong to the unit circle, and then $\bar{\tau} = 1/\tau$

Definition 14.2.1. Following [Morley and Morley \(1933\)](#), we define a **turn** as a complex number τ used to describe a point on the unit circle, leading to $M \simeq \tau : 1 : 1/\tau$. On the other hand, we define a **clinant** as a complex number κ used to describe a point on the line at infinity, leading to $N \simeq \kappa : 0 : 1$. When M, N are supposed to be visible, the numbers τ, κ are supposed to be unimodular. But "strange" values like 0 or ∞ are allowed (spoiler: they are used to describe the umbilics).

Definition 14.2.2. In the Morley space, the **line at infinity** is defined as

$$\mathcal{L}_z \doteq [0, 1, 0] \quad (14.1)$$

Taken up to a proportionality factor, this would only be a repetition of " $\mathbf{T} = 0$ implies $P \in \mathcal{L}_z$ ". Here, an hard equality is used.

Theorem 14.2.3. In the Morley space, the **area of triangle** ABC is given by :

$$\text{area}(ABC) = \frac{1}{z} \left(-\frac{1}{4} i \right) \begin{vmatrix} z_A & z_B & z_C \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ \bar{z}_A & \bar{z}_B & \bar{z}_C \end{vmatrix} \quad (14.2)$$

Proof. Despite it's great consequences, this result has a very short proof: formula (7.7) using Cartesian coordinates has to be modified by factor $-i/2$ since this is the value of $1/\det[\text{c}\Phi\text{m}]$. \square

Definition 14.2.4. $[\text{b}\Phi\text{m}]$, the **bartomor Matrix**. Let ABC be a non degenerate triangle and (O, R) its circumcircle. The complex Lubin's coordinate system associated to ABC is centered at O and we have

$$[\text{b}\Phi\text{m}] \doteq R^2 \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta & \gamma \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1/\alpha & 1/\beta & 1/\gamma \end{pmatrix} =_z (ABC) \quad (14.3)$$

where α, β, γ are some turns.

Definition 14.2.5. Since our interest is directed toward central objects, we will largely use the so-called **elementary symmetric functions** :

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma_1 &= z_A + z_B + z_C, \quad \sigma_2 = z_A z_B + z_B z_C + z_A z_C, \quad \sigma_3 = z_A z_B z_C \\ \sigma_4 &= i(z_A - z_B)(z_B - z_C)(z_C - z_A) \end{aligned} \quad (14.4)$$

Remark 14.2.6. Quantity s_4 , i.e. i times the Vandermonde of the three numbers, is skew-symmetric and verifies :

$$s_4^2 = -s_1^2 s_2^2 + 4 s_3 s_1^3 + 4 s_2^3 - 18 s_3 s_1 s_2 + 27 s_3^2$$

so that s_4 will not appear by a power greater than one. These "big" symmetric functions are not to be confused with the "small" ones, that will be defined later.

Exercise 14.2.7. Use the s_j to write the polynomial $\prod (X - I_k)$ where I_k ranges over the four in/excenters $\pm\beta\gamma \pm \gamma\alpha \pm \alpha\beta$. Then rewrite it using the σ_j and obtain

$$X^4 - 2\sigma_2 X^2 + 8\sigma_3 X + (\sigma_2^2 - 4\sigma_1\sigma_3).$$

Proposition 14.2.8. *In the Morley space, the matrix $\boxed{\text{Pyth}_z}$ of the quadratic form that gives the squared length of a vector in the $\vec{\mathcal{V}}$ space can be written as :*

$$\boxed{\text{Pyth}_z} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (14.5)$$

Proof. Here, equalities are required since a length is not defined up to a proportionality factor. Remember that an element of $\vec{\mathcal{V}}$ is obtained as the difference of the normalized columns of two finite points, and therefore looks like $z_1/t_1 - z_2/t_2, 0, \bar{z}_1/t_1 - \bar{z}_2/t_2$. The resulting formula is nothing but the usual $|\zeta|^2 = \zeta \bar{\zeta}$. \square

Proposition 14.2.9. *We have the following forward substitutions formulae:*

$$S = \frac{i R^2 (\alpha - \beta) (\beta - \gamma) (\gamma - \alpha)}{4 \alpha \beta \gamma}, a = \frac{R (\beta - \gamma)}{\sqrt{-\beta \gamma}}, \text{ etc} \quad (14.6)$$

Proof. Direct examination. These partial results are required when trying to use

$$\boxed{\text{Pyth}_z} = {}^t \boxed{\text{b}\Phi\text{m}}^{-1} \cdot \boxed{\text{Pyth}_b} \cdot \boxed{\text{b}\Phi\text{m}}^{-1}$$

as a method to prove the $\boxed{\text{Pyth}_z}$ formula from the $\boxed{\text{Pyth}_b}$ formula. \square

14.3 Morley version of the usual operators

Remark 14.3.1. The usual building process is cartesian coordinates \mapsto complex coordinates \mapsto barycentrics. In this book, barycentric coordinates have been treated first, and it only remains now to deduce the properties of complex coordinates from those of barycentric coordinates and from the \mathcal{L}_z , $\boxed{\text{Pyth}_z}$ and $\boxed{\text{b}\Phi\text{m}}$ formulae that were obtained in the previous section.

Proposition 14.3.2. *Let V be the point at infinity of a line Δ given by their z -coordinates. Then we have*

$$V \doteq \Delta \wedge \mathcal{L}_z \simeq \boxed{W_z} \cdot {}^t \Delta \quad \text{where } \boxed{W_z} = 2i \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ +1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (14.7)$$

Proof. This assertion is nothing but the very definition of the \wedge operator, while the $2i$ coefficient is not involved in this property. This can also be seen as $\boxed{W_z} = \boxed{\text{b}\Phi\text{m}} \cdot \boxed{W_b} \cdot {}^t \boxed{\text{b}\Phi\text{m}}$ \square

Proposition 14.3.3. Orthopoint. *In the Morley space, the operator that transforms a direction $V \in \mathcal{L}_z$ into its orthogonal direction while transforming the circumcenter into $0 : 0 : 0$, is described by :*

$$\boxed{\text{OrtO}_z} = i \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (14.8)$$

Proof. One can use $\boxed{\text{OrtO}_z} = \boxed{\text{b}\Phi\text{m}} \cdot \boxed{\text{OrtO}_b} \cdot \boxed{\text{b}\Phi\text{m}}^{-1}$ and then the usual substitutions. On the other hand, eigenvectors of $\boxed{\text{OrtO}_z}$ are obviously both umbilics $\Omega_y \simeq 1 : 0 : 0$, $\Omega_x \simeq 0 : 0 : 1$ and $0 : 1 : 0$ (the circumcenter): umbilic Ω_y is rotated by a quarter of turn, and umbilic Ω_x is rotated by the opposite amount. \square

Proposition 14.3.4. *The orthodir operator gives the orthopoint V^\perp of the point at infinity of a line Δ . In the Morley space, this operator can be written using matrix $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_z}$ according to :*

$$V^\perp = \boxed{\mathcal{M}_z} \cdot {}^t \Delta \quad \text{where } \boxed{\mathcal{M}_z} \doteq 2 \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \boxed{\text{OrtO}_z} \cdot \boxed{W_z} \quad (14.9)$$

Proof. Obvious from definitions. One can check that $|V| = |V^\perp|$. This can also be seen as $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_z} = \boxed{\mathbf{b}\Phi\mathbf{m}} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t\boxed{\mathbf{b}\Phi\mathbf{m}}$. \square

Theorem 14.3.5. Tangent of two lines. *In the Morley space, the oriented angle from a visible line Δ_1 to a visible line Δ_2 is characterized by :*

$$\tan\left(\overbrace{\Delta_1, \Delta_2}\right) = \frac{\Delta_1 \cdot \boxed{W_z} \cdot {}^t\Delta_2}{\Delta_1 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_z} \cdot {}^t\Delta_2} \quad (14.10)$$

where $\boxed{W_z}, \boxed{\mathcal{M}_z}$ are exactly as given in (14.7) and (14.9) (not up to a proportionality factor).

Proof. Formulas (7.22) and (14.10) have exactly the same shape and each of them generates the other through $\boxed{\mathbf{b}\Phi\mathbf{m}}$. This can also be obtained from the fact that $\tan(D_1, D_2)$ is obviously

$$(p_2 - p_1) \div (1 + p_1 p_2)$$

when considering the two Cartesian lines $y = p_1 x + m_1$ and $y = p_2 w + m_2$. Indeed, the slope of a line is the tangent of the angle from the x axis to the line; it only remains to use the addition formula. Numerator tell us when lines are parallel, and denominator when they are orthogonal. \square

Proposition 14.3.6 (Laguerre Formula). *Consider two (distinct) lines Δ_1, Δ_2 and their common point M . Then*

$$\text{cross_ratio}(M\Omega_y, M\Omega_x, \Delta_1, \Delta_2) = \exp\left(2i \left(\overbrace{\Delta_1, \Delta_2}\right)\right)$$

Proof. A tedious proof: compute and check using (14.10). \square

Proof. A better proof: the four lines are cutting the line at infinity, and we have:

$$\text{cross_ratio}\left(\left[\begin{array}{c} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{array}\right], \left[\begin{array}{c} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{array}\right], \left[\begin{array}{c} \tau \\ 0 \\ 1/\tau \end{array}\right], \left[\begin{array}{c} \sigma \\ 0 \\ 1/\sigma \end{array}\right]\right) = \frac{\sigma^2}{\tau^2} \quad \square$$

Proposition 14.3.7. *In the Morley space, **distance from point P to line Δ** is given by :*

$$\text{dist}(P, \Delta) = \frac{\Delta \cdot P}{(\mathcal{L}_z \cdot P) \sqrt{\Delta \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_z} \cdot {}^t\Delta}} = \frac{fp + gq + hr}{2q\sqrt{hf}} \quad (14.11)$$

where $\mathcal{L}_z = [0, 1, 0]$ and $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_z}$ is as given in (14.9) (not up to a proportionality factor).

Proof. Immediate consequence of the barycentric formula (7.24). One can also transpose the proof given there. \square

Remark 14.3.8. Formula (14.11) is invariant when coordinates of P or Δ are modified by a proportionality factor. Denominators are enforcing the fact that P is supposed to be at finite distance, and Δ is supposed not to be isotropic. The square root is the operator norm of the application

$$\phi : \mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \mapsto (z\mathbf{Z} + t\mathbf{T} + \zeta\overline{\mathbf{Z}}) / (\mathbf{T})$$

Replace $\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}$ by $\mathbf{Z} + \mathbf{T}r\tau : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}} + \mathbf{T}r/\tau$. Derive wrt τ and obtain $r z - r \zeta/\tau^2$. Solve in τ and obtain $\tau = \sqrt{\zeta/z}$. So that $\Delta\phi = 2\sqrt{z\zeta} r$.

Proposition 14.3.9. *The Clawson-Schmidt homography is defined by:*

$$\Psi : A \mapsto A', B \mapsto B', C \mapsto C'$$

where A, B, C form a true triangle, while $A' \in BC$, etc. Then A', B', C' are aligned if and only if Ψ is involutive.

Proof. Let $A' = pB + (1-p)C$, etc. Compute Ψ , use the $a + d = 0$ rule and obtain the usual

$$pqr + (1-r)(1-q)(1-p) = 0 \quad \square$$

14.4 Lubin representation of first degree

Proposition 14.4.1. *The Morley-affix of a point P whose barycentrics are $p : q : r \in \mathbb{P}_\mathbb{R}(\mathbb{R}^3)$ with respect to triangle ABC is given by :*

$$\zeta_P \simeq \begin{pmatrix} z_A & z_B & z_C \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ \overline{z_A} & \overline{z_B} & \overline{z_C} \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix} \quad (14.12)$$

Proof. When $p + q + r \neq 0$, this is nothing but the usual definition of a barycenter, and ζ_P is a Morley finite point. When $p + q + r = 0$, P is at infinity and ζ_P is a Morley direction. The condition $p, q, r \in \mathbb{R}$ ensures that no invisible points in the Morley-space can be generated from a real point in the Kimberling space. \square

Definition 14.4.2. The Lubin parametrizations are obtained by assuming that the circumcircle of triangle ABC is nothing but the unit circle of the complex plane, together with the relations :

$$z_A = \alpha^n, z_B = \beta^n, z_C = \gamma^n$$

Remark 14.4.3. The $z_A = \alpha^1$, etc parametrization has already been introduced at (14.3) in order to avoid conjugacies. Here, an additionnal aim is to avoid the fractional powers that would otherwise appear from $a = \sqrt{a^2}$ and other angle division.

Definition 14.4.4. Since our interest is directed toward central objects, we will largely use the so-called **elementary symmetric functions**. The "big" ones are the already defined $\sigma_1 = z_A + z_B + z_C$, etc, while the "small" ones are:

$$s_1 \doteq \alpha + \beta + \gamma, s_2 \doteq \alpha\beta + \beta\gamma + \alpha\gamma, s_3 \doteq \alpha\beta\gamma, s_4 \doteq i(\alpha - \beta)(\beta - \gamma)(\gamma - \alpha) \quad (14.13)$$

Theorem 14.4.5 (Newton). *For any commutative ring A , every symmetric polynomial in n variables has a unique representation as a polynomial into the elementary symmetric functions of the said variables.*

Proof. See 14.2: one proceeds recursively on a sorted polynomial. \square

```

1: FUNSYM := proc(qui)
2: if type(qui, {Matrix, Vector}) then return map(Procname, qui) end if
3: if type(qui, '+' ) then return funsym1(qui) end if
4: return funsym1(numer(qui))/funsym1(denom(qui))

```

Ensure: transmits only polynomials

```

1: FUNSYM1 := proc(qui) ; local fac1, fac2, vals4
2: vals4 := subs(trickle, s4)
3: factor(subs([alpha = beta, beta = alpha], qui) - qui) / 2
4: fac1 := -factor(Ditto1()/vals4) ; fac2 := factor(qui - fac1 * vals4)
5: return s4 * funsym0(fac1) + funsym0(fac2)

```

Ensure: transmits only symmetric polynomials

LISTING 14.1: Calling funsym0

Exercise 14.4.6. Consider the Brocard points

Theorem 14.4.7. Forward substitutions. *Suppose that barycentrics $p : q : r$ of point P depends rationally on a^2, b^2, c^2, S . Then Morley-affix of P is obtained by substituting the identities (14.6), i.e. :*

$$S = \frac{i R^2 (\alpha - \beta)(\beta - \gamma)(\gamma - \alpha)}{4 \alpha \beta \gamma}, a = \frac{R (\beta - \gamma)}{\sqrt{-\beta \gamma}}, \text{ etc}$$

into $p : q : r$ and premultiplying by $\boxed{\mathbf{b}\Phi\mathbf{m}}$. The result obtained is a rational fraction in α, β, γ whose degree is +1. When P is a triangle center, ζ_P depends only on $\sigma_1, \sigma_2, \sigma_3$. When P is invariant by circular permutation, but not by transposition, a σ_4 term appears.

Require: — **lexorder** should suffice but, in fact, **order=plex(γ, β, α)**, **ascending** is required.

```

1: FUNSYM0 := proc(qui) ; local resu, qq, qui, quii, coco, mono, toto, tutu, tmp
2: resu := 0 ; tmp := sort(expand(qui), lexorder)
3: for j to 100 while tmp ≠ 0 do
4:   if type(tmp, '+') then quii := op(-1, tmp) else quii := tmp end if
5:   coco := subs(α = 1, β = 1, γ = 1, quii)
6:   tutu := [seq](degree(quii, j), j = [α, β, γ])
7:   toto := [tutu[1], tutu[2] - tutu[1], tutu[3] - tutu[2]]
8:   mono := coco * s3^toto[1] * s2^toto[2] * s1^toto[3]
9:   if hastype(toto, negative) then
10:    print("==== error ====" , quii, tutu, toto, mono) ; Error()
11:   end if
12:   resu := resu + mono ; tmp := sort(expand(tmp - subs(trickle, mono)), lexorder)
13: end for
14: return resu

```

LISTING 14.2: The funsym0 procedure

Proof. Cancellation of radicals is assured by condition $p, q, r \in \mathbb{Q}(a^2, b^2, c^2, S)$. Elimination of R comes from homogeneity. Symmetry properties are evident. \square

Proposition 14.4.8. Backward substitutions. *Let $z_P \in \mathbb{C}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$ be an homogeneous rational fraction, supposed to be the complex affix of a finite point. Then $\deg(z_P) = 1$ is required. Alternatively, let $\omega^2 \in \mathbb{C}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$ be an homogeneous rational fraction, supposed to describe the Morley affix of a direction. Then $\deg(\omega^2) = 2$ is required. When these conditions are fulfilled, the ABC-barycentrics $p : q : r$ of these objects can be obtained as follows. Compute the corresponding vector :*

$$\begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix} = [\mathbf{b}\Phi\mathbf{m}]^{-1} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} z_P \\ 1 \\ \bar{z}_P \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix} = [\mathbf{b}\Phi\mathbf{m}]^{-1} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} \omega^2 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

then apply substitutions

$$\begin{aligned} \beta &= \left(\frac{a^4 + b^4 + c^4 - 2(a^2 + b^2)c^2}{2a^2b^2} + 2iS \frac{a^2 + b^2 - c^2}{a^2b^2} \right) \alpha \\ \gamma &= \left(\frac{a^4 + b^4 + c^4 - 2(a^2 + c^2)b^2}{2a^2c^2} - 2iS \frac{c^2 + a^2 - b^2}{a^2c^2} \right) \alpha \end{aligned}$$

to this vector and simplify the obtained expression using the Heron formula :

$$S^2 = -\frac{1}{16} (a + b + c)(b + c - a)(c + a - b)(a + b - c)$$

Proof. Transform α, β, γ into $\alpha\delta, \beta\delta, \gamma\delta$. Since this transform is a similarity, barycentrics must remain unchanged and the z_P affix is turned by δ . On the other hand, polynomial z_P is homogeneous and z_P is multiplied by δ^k where $k = \deg(z_P)$. Concerning the directions, $\arg(\omega^2)$ is twice the angle with the real axis, and degree 2 is required.

Alternatively, the degrees of rows of ζ_P are $+k, 0, -k$ while the degrees of columns of $[\mathbf{b}\Phi\mathbf{m}]^{-1}$ are $-1, 0, +1$. Quantities p, q, r will therefore be a sum of terms whose degrees are respectively $k-1, 0, 1-k$. But homogeneity is required in order that a transformation $\beta = B\alpha, \gamma = C\alpha$ can eliminate α , leading to $k = 1$.

To obtain the substitution formulas, compute β from $c^2\alpha\beta = -R^2(\alpha - \beta)^2$. A choice of branch (a sign for i) has to be done. Exchange b and c (and therefore change S into $-S$) and obtain the corresponding γ . \square

Remark 14.4.9. The substitution formulas can be written as:

$$\beta = \left(2 \left(\frac{S_c}{ab} \right)^2 - 1 + 2i \left(\frac{2S}{ab} \right) \left(\frac{S_c}{ab} \right) \right) \alpha ; \quad \gamma = \left(2 \left(\frac{S_b}{ac} \right)^2 - 1 - 2i \left(\frac{2S}{ac} \right) \left(\frac{S_b}{ac} \right) \right) \alpha$$

i.e. $\beta = \alpha \exp(2i C)$, $\gamma = \alpha \exp(-2i B)$. This result is indeed symmetric, since $\widehat{B} = (BC, BA)$ while $\widehat{C} = (CA, CB)$.

Remark 14.4.10. When starting with a symmetric Morley-affix, the obtained $p : q : r$ remains symmetric in α, β, γ . The given substitutions are breaching the symmetry of individual coefficients p, q, r , that can only be reestablished by cancellation of asymmetric common factors between the p, q, r . Most of the time, it's more efficient to proceed by numerical substitution and use the obtained search key to identify the point (and proceed back to obtain a proof of the result).

Proposition 14.4.11. *The Kimberling search key associated to a visible finite point defined by its Morley affix (short= Morley's search key) is obtained by substituting :*

$$z_A = 1; z_B = -\frac{391}{729} - i \frac{104}{729} \sqrt{35}; z_C = \frac{401}{1521} - i \frac{248}{1521} \sqrt{35}$$

into \mathbf{Z}/\mathbf{T} and then computing :

$$\text{searchkey} \left(\frac{\mathbf{Z}}{\mathbf{T}} \right) \doteq \Re \left(\left(\frac{157}{840} \sqrt{35} - i \frac{22}{3} \right) \frac{\mathbf{Z}}{\mathbf{T}} \right) + \frac{321}{280} \sqrt{35}$$

Proof. Kimberling's search keys are associated with triangle $a = 6, b = 9, c = 13$. The radius of the circumcircle is $R = (351/280) \sqrt{35}$. One can see that sidelengths of triangle $\alpha\beta\gamma$ are $6/R, 9/R, 13/R$. We apply these substitutions to obtain the numerical value of the "wayback" matrix, and then use (6.1) \square

Remark 14.4.12. When using Lubin-n with $n > 1$, adequate substitutions have to be used to calculate \mathbf{Z}/\mathbf{T} .

Proposition 14.4.13. *The Morley's searchkey of a visible point at infinity ($\mathbf{T} = 0$) is obtained from $\Omega = \mathbf{Z}/\overline{\mathbf{Z}}$ by :*

$$\frac{1108809 (241 + 16 i \sqrt{35}) \Omega^2 - 907686 (157 + 176 i \sqrt{35}) \Omega + (-224394311 + 30270800 i \sqrt{35})}{389191959 \Omega^2 - (106136082 + 118980576 i \sqrt{35}) \Omega + (19397664 i \sqrt{35} - 371888361)}$$

Another method is identifying the isogonal conjugate of the given point, which is simply : $\sigma_3/\Omega : -1 : \Omega/\sigma_3$.

Proof. The searchkey of an point at infinity is : $\frac{x}{a} \times \left(\frac{a}{x} + \frac{b}{y} + \frac{c}{z} \right)$, leading to this tremendous expression. But after all, this formula is not designed for hand computation but rather to a floating evaluation by a computer... \square

14.5 Some examples of first degree

Example 14.5.1. The circumcenter O . By definition, $\zeta_O = 0 : 1 : 0$. The preceding transformations are giving :

$$\begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \alpha (\beta - \gamma) (\beta + \gamma) \\ \beta (\gamma - \alpha) (\alpha + \gamma) \\ \gamma (\alpha - \beta) (\alpha + \beta) \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} a^2 (b^2 + c^2 - a^2) \\ b^2 (c^2 + a^2 - b^2) \\ c^2 (a^2 + b^2 - c^2) \end{pmatrix}$$

Example 14.5.2. Symmedian point $X(6)$, aka Lemoine point.

1. Consider the middle A' of segment $[B, C]$ and define the A symmedian as the line Δ_A that goes through A and verifies $\angle(AB, \Delta_A) = \angle(AA', AC)$. We will use P instead ζ_P since this is more readable ... and hand-writable. A remark : symmetry wrt bisectors would be irrelevant, since bisectors are unreachable in the Lubin-1 representation !
2. We have $A' = B + C$, $AA' = A \wedge A'$ etc. and our equations are

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta_A \cdot A &= 0 \\ \tan(AB, \Delta_A) + \tan(AC, AA') &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

solving this system, then permuting, gives :

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta_A &\simeq \begin{pmatrix} 2\alpha - \beta - \gamma & ; & (\alpha\gamma + \alpha\beta - 2\beta\gamma)\alpha & ; & -2\alpha^2 + 2\beta\gamma \end{pmatrix} \\ \Delta_B &\simeq \begin{pmatrix} 2\beta - \gamma - \alpha & ; & (\alpha\beta + \beta\gamma - 2\alpha\gamma)\beta & ; & -2\beta^2 + 2\alpha\gamma \end{pmatrix}\end{aligned}$$

3. Intersecting two symmedians gives a symmetric result. Therefore, the three symmedians are concurrent at some point. This point is well-known as the Lemoine point, and we have :

$$K = \zeta(6) = \Delta_A \wedge \Delta_B = \begin{pmatrix} 2\sigma_2^2 - 6\sigma_3\sigma_1 \\ \sigma_2\sigma_1 - 9\sigma_3 \\ 2\sigma_1^2 - 6\sigma_2 \end{pmatrix}$$

4. Going back to barycentrics, we obtain the well-known result :

$$X(6) \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \alpha(\gamma - \beta)^2 \\ \beta(\alpha - \gamma)^2 \\ \gamma(\alpha - \beta)^2 \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} a^2 \\ b^2 \\ c^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Example 14.5.3. Inscribed parabola.

1. Morley equation of the circumcircle is $\mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}} - \mathbf{T}^2 = 0$. The Morley affix Δ_P of the polar line of point $M = z : 1 : \zeta$ wrt the circumcircle is therefore given by :

$$\Delta_P \doteq \begin{bmatrix} z & 1 & \zeta \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & -2 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

2. The coefficients of the tangential conic determined by five given lines $[u_j, v_j, w_j]$ are obtained as :

$$\bigwedge_{j=1..5} [u_j^2, v_j^2, w_j^2, u_j v_j, v_j w_j, w_j u_j]$$

by universal factorization of the corresponding 6×6 determinant. Let us consider the inconic tangent to the infinity line (parabola) and to the circumpolar of point M . Using $(BC) \simeq B \wedge C$, etc together with the previous equation, we obtain the symmetric matrix :

$$\boxed{\mathcal{P}_M^*} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 2\sigma_3 z^2 - 2\sigma_2\sigma_3 z\zeta + 4\sigma_3^2\zeta & qsp & -\sigma_1 z^2 + \sigma_2\sigma_3\zeta^2 + 2\sigma_2 z - 2\sigma_3\sigma_1\zeta \\ -\sigma_3\sigma_1 z\zeta + \sigma_3^2\zeta^2 + 2\sigma_3 z & 0 & -z^2 + \sigma_2 z\zeta - 2\sigma_3\zeta \\ -\sigma_1 z^2 + \sigma_2\sigma_3\zeta^2 + 2\sigma_2 z - 2\sigma_3\sigma_1\zeta & qsp & 2\sigma_1 z\zeta - 2\sigma_3\zeta^2 - 4z \end{pmatrix}$$

Degrees of all these expressions are :

$$\text{dg}(\boxed{\mathcal{P}_M^*}) = \begin{pmatrix} 5 & 4 & 3 \\ 4 & . & 2 \\ 3 & 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

3. A focus is a point such that both isotropic lines through that point are tangent to the conic. Writing that $Q = (\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) \wedge (1 : 0 : 0)$ satisfies $Q \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{P}_M^*} \cdot {}^t Q = 0$ and the similar with the other umbilic gives two equations whose solution is

$$F_M(z) \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \frac{z^2 - \sigma_2 z\zeta + 2\sigma_3\zeta}{2z - \sigma_1 z\zeta + \sigma_3\zeta^2} \\ 1 \\ \frac{2z - \sigma_1 z\zeta + \sigma_3\zeta^2}{z^2 - \sigma_2 z\zeta + 2\sigma_3\zeta} \end{pmatrix}$$

and this point is on the circumcircle.

Proposition 14.5.4. *Given two points B, C , the point A such that A, B, C is **equilateral direct** is obtained by*

$$\text{third_quilat}(B, C) := \begin{pmatrix} -J \\ 1 \\ -J^2 \end{pmatrix} *_b \frac{B}{\mathcal{L}_z \cdot B} + \begin{pmatrix} -J^2 \\ 1 \\ -J \end{pmatrix} *_b \frac{C}{\mathcal{L}_z \cdot C} - \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (14.14)$$

where $j = \exp(2i\pi/3)$. Algebraically, we have $1 + J + J^2 = 0$.

Proof. Assuming $A = G + \overrightarrow{GA}$, $B = G + j\overrightarrow{GA}$, $C = G + j^2\overrightarrow{GA}$ induces $A + jB + j^2C = 0$ (where $A, B, C \in \mathbb{C}$ are the ordinary affixes of the three vertices). \square

Example 14.5.5. Isogonic, isodynamic and Napoleon.

1. Use (14.14) to construct P_A , etc such that triangles $P_A BC$, etc are equilaterals. The three lines AP_A, BP_B, CP_C are concurrent, leading to the first isogonic center $X(13)$. Changing J into J^2 leads to the second isogonic point $X(14)$. A simple computation leads to :

$$\frac{9\sigma_2\sigma_3 - 12\sigma_3\sigma_1^2 + 3\sigma_1\sigma_2^2}{6\sigma_2^2 - 18\sigma_3\sigma_1} \pm \sqrt{3} \frac{\sigma_4\sigma_2}{6\sigma_2^2 - 18\sigma_3\sigma_1}$$

2. When trying to transform the former expression into barycentrics, the formal computer is poisoned by the following fact. Quantity σ_4 describes the orientation of the triangle, while the choice of $\pm\sqrt{3}$ depends on the orientation of the whole plane. We better generalize the problem using $\tan(\angle AB, AA') = K$. This leads to :

$$\zeta_K \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 4K(\sigma_2^2 - 3\sigma_3\sigma_1) + \sigma_4(K^2 + 1)\sigma_1 \\ 2K(\sigma_2\sigma_1 - 9\sigma_3) + \sigma_4(3 + K^2) \\ 4K(\sigma_1^2 - 3\sigma_2) + \sigma_4(K^2 + 1)\frac{\sigma_2}{\sigma_3} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\gamma - \beta}{(\beta + \gamma)K + i(\gamma - \beta)} \\ \frac{(\alpha + \gamma)K + i(\alpha - \gamma)}{\beta - \alpha} \\ \frac{(\alpha + \beta)K + i(\beta - \alpha)}{\alpha - \gamma} \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{2S - S_a K} \\ \frac{1}{2S - S_b K} \\ \frac{1}{2S - S_c K} \end{pmatrix}$$

3. And we obtain a lot of results when changing K , and even more by isogonal conjugacy. In the following table, line K lists usual values for the tangent of an angle, while the other two lines give the Kimberling number of the corresponding points. The P_K points are on the Kiepert RH (more details in Proposition 12.22.2).

K	$-\sqrt{3}$	-1	$\frac{-1}{2}$	$\frac{-1}{\sqrt{3}}$	0	$\frac{\pm 1}{\sqrt{3}}$	$\frac{\pm 1}{2}$	1	$\sqrt{3}$	∞
P_K	13	485	3316	17	2	18	3317	486	14	4
$isog(P_K)$	15	371	3311	61	6	62	3312	372	16	3

14.6 Lubin representation of second degree

When dealing with half angles, we have to introduce the mid-arcs on the circumcircle of ABC , i.e. the circumcevians of the inexceters.

Proposition 14.6.1. Lubin-2 parametrization. *When using parametrization $z_A = \alpha^2$, etc, the mid-arcs M_j are $\pm\beta\gamma, \pm\gamma\alpha, \pm\alpha\beta$. But there are only four choices of sign since*

$$\text{product of midarcs} = (-1) \times \text{product of vertices}$$

must be enforced. When using the symmetric choice, i.e. $-\alpha\beta, -\beta\gamma, -\gamma\alpha$ then the three lines AM_a, BM_b, CM_c concur at $-\alpha\beta - \beta\gamma - \gamma\alpha = -s_2$.

Remark 14.6.2. Lemoine transform. As already stated at Theorem 2.1.9, the Lemoine transforms are obtained by $\alpha \mapsto -\alpha$ or $\beta \mapsto -\beta$ or $\gamma \mapsto -\gamma$ when using the Lubin-2 parametrization. And then, the Lubin-1 points (aka the strong points) remain unchanged under these actions.

Proof. Here again, the fact that $L_a \circ L_b = L_c$ comes from the homogeneity required for the formulas of interest. Remember: a theorem is a proposition with the biggest consequences, not something difficult to prove. \square

Proposition 14.6.3. Forward-2 and backward-2 matrices. *Using the Lubin-2 parametrization, we have :*

$$\boxed{Lu_2} = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha^2 & \beta^2 & \gamma^2 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1/\alpha^2 & 1/\beta^2 & 1/\gamma^2 \end{pmatrix} ; \quad \det \boxed{Lu_2} = \frac{i\sigma_4}{\sigma_3} = \frac{i s_4}{s_3} \frac{s_1 s_2 - s_3}{s_3} = \frac{4i}{R^2} S \quad (14.15)$$

$$\boxed{Lu_2^{-1}} = \frac{1}{i\sigma_4} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha^2 (\beta^2 - \gamma^2) & \alpha^2 (\gamma^4 - \beta^4) & \sigma_3 (\beta^2 - \gamma^2) \\ \beta^2 (\gamma^2 - \alpha^2) & \beta^2 (\alpha^4 - \gamma^4) & \sigma_3 (\gamma^2 - \alpha^2) \\ \gamma^2 (\alpha^2 - \beta^2) & \gamma^2 (\beta^4 - \alpha^4) & \sigma_3 (\alpha^2 - \beta^2) \end{bmatrix}$$

Proof. These formulas come from (14.2). Remember that $s_1 = \alpha + \beta + \gamma$ while $\sigma_1 = z_A + z_B + z_C$ etc. \square

Theorem 14.6.4. Forward-2 substitutions. *Suppose that barycentrics $p : q : r$ of point P depends rationally on a, b, c, S . Then Morley-affix of P is obtained by substituting the identities :*

$$S = \frac{i R^2 (\alpha^2 - \beta^2) (\gamma^2 - \alpha^2) (\beta^2 - \gamma^2)}{4 \alpha^2 \beta^2 \gamma^2} ; \quad a = iR \left(\frac{\gamma}{\beta} - \frac{\beta}{\gamma} \right), \text{ etc} \quad (14.16)$$

into $p : q : r$ and applying (14.12). The result obtained is a rational fraction in α, β, γ whose degree is +2. When P is a triangle center, ζ_P depends only on s_1, s_2, s_3 . When P is invariant by circular permutation, but not by transposition, a s_4 term appears.

Proof. Elimination of R comes from homogeneity. Symmetry properties are evident. Sign chosen for a is irrelevant, but signs of b, c must be chosen accordingly. \square

Proposition 14.6.5. Backward substitutions. *Let $z_P \in \mathbb{C}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$ be an homogeneous rational fraction, supposed to be the Lubin-2 affix of a finite point. Then $\deg(z_P) = 2$ is required. Alternatively, let $\omega^2 \in \mathbb{C}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$ is an homogeneous rational fraction, supposed to describe the Lubin-2 affix of a direction. Then $\deg(\omega^2) = 4$ is required. When these conditions are fulfilled, the ABC-barycentrics $p : q : r$ of these objects can be obtained as follows. Compute the corresponding vector :*

$$\begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix} = \boxed{Lu_2^{-1}} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} z_P \\ 1 \\ \bar{z}_P \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{or} \quad \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix} = \boxed{Lu_2^{-1}} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} \omega^2 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

then apply substitutions

$$\alpha = -1 ; \quad \beta = \frac{S_c + 2iS}{ab} ; \quad \gamma = \frac{S_b - 2iS}{ac} \quad (14.17)$$

to this vector and simplify the obtained expression using the Heron formula :

$$S^2 = -\frac{1}{16} (a + b + c) (b + c - a) (c + a - b) (a + b - c)$$

Proof. Result about degrees follows Proposition 14.4.8. Substitutions are $\alpha = -1$, $\beta = \exp(+iC)$, $\gamma = \exp(-iB)$. This result is indeed symmetric, since $\widehat{B} = (BC, BA)$ while $\widehat{C} = (CA, CB)$. \square

14.7 Poncelet representation

Notation 14.7.1. In this section z_M denotes the Lubin(2) affix of a point M , while ζ_M denotes the Poncelet affix of the same point M . The respective "coordinates in the view from below" will be noted as \bar{z}_M and $\bar{\zeta}_M$, leading to

$$M \underset{\text{Lubin}}{\simeq} \begin{pmatrix} z_M \\ 1 \\ \bar{z}_M \end{pmatrix} \underset{\text{Poncelet}}{\simeq} \begin{pmatrix} \zeta_M \\ 1 \\ \bar{\zeta}_M \end{pmatrix}$$

Definition 14.7.2. The parameters of this representations are the contact points of the incircle, described as ρ, σ, τ in a frame using this circle as unit circle. Thus $\bar{\rho} = 1/\rho$, etc.

Proposition 14.7.3. *This representation describes the triangle ABC by:*

$$\boxed{Pon} = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{2\tau\sigma}{\sigma+\tau} & \frac{2\rho\tau}{\tau+\rho} & \frac{2\rho\sigma}{\rho+\sigma} \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 2(\sigma+\tau)^{-1} & 2(\tau+\rho)^{-1} & 2(\rho+\sigma)^{-1} \end{bmatrix}$$

The algebraic direct substitutions are:

$$\begin{aligned} a &= \frac{2i\rho(\sigma-\tau)}{(\tau+\rho)(\rho+\sigma)} r_0 ; b = \frac{2i\sigma(\tau-\rho)}{(\rho+\sigma)(\sigma+\tau)} r_0 ; c = \frac{2i\tau(\rho-\sigma)}{(\sigma+\tau)(\tau+\rho)} r_0 \\ S &= i r_i^2 \frac{(\rho-\sigma)(\sigma-\tau)(\tau-\rho)}{(\tau+\rho)(\rho+\sigma)(\sigma+\tau)} ; R = -r_i \frac{2\tau\rho\sigma}{(\tau+\rho)(\rho+\sigma)(\sigma+\tau)} \end{aligned} \quad (14.18)$$

while the backward substitutions are:

$$\sigma = \frac{-2i\rho S}{ab} - \frac{\rho(a^2+b^2-c^2)}{2ab} ; \tau = \frac{2i\rho S}{ac} - \frac{\rho(a^2-b^2+c^2)}{2ac} \quad (14.19)$$

Proof. Tangent T_ρ at ρ to the unit circle is $[\rho^{-1}, -2, \rho]$, and $A = T_\sigma \cap T_\rho$, etc. Signum for a can be chosen at will, but the other two have to be synchronized. The σ, τ formulas are using $\sigma = \rho \exp i(\pi + C)$, $\tau = \rho \exp i(\pi - B)$ i.e. the $\pi - A$ property, and correct orientations. \square

Proposition 14.7.4. *Going back from the Poncelet affix ζ_M of a point M to the Lubin-2 affix z_M of this point only requires the similarity:*

$$z_M = -s_2 + \frac{1}{2} (s_2 s_1 - s_3) \bar{\zeta}_M = -s_2 - s_3 \frac{r_0}{R} \bar{\zeta}_M$$

Proof. Due to homogeneity, we can multiply all the ρ, σ, τ by a same non vanishing factor, and enforce $\rho = \alpha$. Then substituting (14.16) into (14.19) leads to:

$$\left\{ \rho = \alpha ; \sigma = \beta ; \tau = \gamma ; r_0 = -R \frac{(\beta+\gamma)(\alpha+\gamma)(\alpha+\beta)}{2\alpha\beta\gamma} = -R \frac{s_1 s_2 - s_3}{2s_3} \right\}$$

And then, it only remains a change of the projective basis, that is given by:

$$\text{subs} \left(\rho = \alpha, \boxed{Lu} \cdot \boxed{Pon}^{-1} \right) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -s_2 & \frac{1}{2}(s_2 s_1 - s_3) \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \frac{s_2 s_1 - s_3}{2s_3^2} & -\frac{s_1}{s_3} & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

\square

Fact 14.7.5. *The Poncelet affix of an ordinary point (i.e. ζ_M) is an homogeneous fraction whose total degree is $+1$. The Lubin-2 affix (i.e. z_M) of the same point has total degree 2... and this is verified in $z_M = -s_2 + \frac{1}{2} (s_2 s_1 - s_3) \bar{\zeta}_M$ since the degree of $\bar{\zeta}$ is -1 .*

Remark 14.7.6. In fact, formula $z_M = -s_2 - s_3 \left(\frac{r_0}{R} \right) \bar{\zeta}_M$ is rather obvious.

- The translation $-s_2$ is required to move I_0 from point $\zeta = 0$ to its new place in the Lubin-2 frame, i.e. $z = -\beta\gamma - \gamma\alpha - \alpha\beta$.
- Homothety r_i/R is required to acknowledge that the radius of the "unit" circle has changed.
- Exchanging the umbilics is required by the orientations, i.e. the values of :

$$\det \overline{Lu}/S = 4i/R^2 ; \det \overline{Pon}/S = -4i/r_0^2$$

- And lastly, the $-s_3$ is required by the property used in the Acknowledgment of this book: the intouch triangle is perspective with the circumcevian triangle of the incenter, while the perspector X(56) is the similitude center of the incircle and the circumcircle: the mid-arcs are $-\beta\gamma$, etc. By complex conjugacy, they become $-1/\beta\gamma$ and multiplying by $-\alpha\beta\gamma$ is the rotation that gives the required α , etc.

Remark 14.7.7. The only notable difference between the Poncelet and the Lubin-2 parametrizations is their behavior wrt the Lemoine transform. Since Lubin-2 coordinates are relative to the strong points Ω^\pm and $\Omega_0=X(3)$, all of the strong points are invariant by the Lemoine transforms. When using Poncelet representation, the origin changes, and therefore the coordinates of the strong points don't remain unchanged, an annoying property.

14.8 Poulbot's points (using the Lubin-4 parametrization)

Proposition 14.8.1. *When using half angles, i.e. $A/2$, etc, we can introduce α , etc such that $z_A = \alpha^4$, etc. The intermediate points on the circumcircle can be described as:*

$$\beta^4 ; i\beta^3\gamma, -\beta^2\gamma^2, -i\beta\gamma^3 ; \gamma^4 ; \gamma^3\alpha, \gamma^2\alpha^2, \gamma\alpha^3 ; \alpha^4 ; \alpha^3\beta, \alpha^2\beta^2, \alpha\beta^3 ; \beta^4$$

And then we have:

$$\cot \frac{A}{2} = \frac{bc + S_a}{2S} ; \cos \frac{A}{2} = \frac{\sqrt{b+c+a}\sqrt{b+c-a}}{2\sqrt{b}\sqrt{c}} ; \sin \frac{A}{2} = \frac{\sqrt{a+b-c}\sqrt{a-b+c}}{2\sqrt{b}\sqrt{c}}$$

$$\cos \frac{A}{2} = i \frac{\beta^2 - \gamma^2}{2\beta\gamma} ; \sin \frac{A}{2} = -\frac{\beta^2 + \gamma^2}{2\beta\gamma}$$

Proof. Everything goes like in Lubin-2: product of points 2,5,8 must be i times the product of points 1,4,7, etc. \square

Remark 14.8.2. The following quantity belongs to Lubin-2 :

$$\sin\left(\frac{A}{2}\right)\sin\left(\frac{B}{2}\right)\sin\left(\frac{C}{2}\right) = \frac{r_i}{4R} = \frac{S_3 - S_1 S_2}{8S_3}$$

Remember that $s_1 = \alpha + \beta + \gamma$, $S_1 = \alpha^2 + \beta^2 + \gamma^2$, $\sigma_1 = \alpha^4 + \beta^4 + \gamma^4$.

Example 14.8.3. Consider the circles going through the incenter I and tangent to AB and AC .

1. Clearly the centers of these circles, say A_j , must be on the AI line. Thus:

$$A_j = \mu A + (1 - \mu) I = \left[\begin{array}{c} \mu\alpha^4 + (1 - \mu)(-\alpha^2\beta^2 - \alpha^2\gamma^2 - \beta^2\gamma^2) \\ 1 \\ \frac{\mu}{\alpha^4} - (1 - \mu) \frac{(\alpha^2 + \beta^2 + \gamma^2)}{\alpha^2\beta^2\gamma^2} \end{array} \right]$$

2. Equating the distance to I and the distance to AB (14.11) we obtain :

$$\pm\mu \frac{(\alpha^2 + \gamma^2)(\alpha^2 + \beta^2)}{\alpha^2\beta\gamma} = (1 - \mu) \frac{(\beta^2 + \gamma^2)(\alpha^2 + \gamma^2)(\alpha^2 + \beta^2)}{2\alpha^2\beta^2\gamma^2}$$

α	β	γ	I_0	I_a	I_b	I_c	A_j	B_j	C_j	A_{jk}	B_{kn}	C_{nj}	A_{jk}	B_{kn}	C_{nj}
$i\alpha$	β	γ	I_a	I_0	I_c	I_b									
α	β	γ	I_0	I_a	I_b	I_c	A_1	B_1	C_1	A_{11}	B_{11}	C_{11}	A_{00}	B_{00}	C_{00}
$-\alpha$	$+\beta$	γ	I_0	I_a	I_b	I_c	A_1	B_0	C_0	A_{00}	B_{01}	C_{10}	A_{11}	B_{10}	C_{01}
$+\alpha$	$-\beta$	γ	I_0	I_a	I_b	I_c	A_0	B_1	C_0	A_{10}	B_{00}	C_{01}	A_{01}	B_{11}	C_{10}
α	β	$-\gamma$	I_0	I_a	I_b	I_c	A_0	B_0	C_1	A_{01}	B_{10}	C_{00}	A_{10}	B_{01}	C_{11}

Table 14.1: Action of the Klein group

leading to $\mu = (\beta^2 + \gamma^2) \div (\beta^2 \pm 2\beta\gamma + \gamma^2)$, and to:

$$A_1 = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{S_2 \alpha^3 - \alpha s_3^2 + 2 S_2 s_3}{-\alpha^3 + S_1 \alpha - 2 s_3} \\ 1 \\ \frac{S_1 s_3 - \alpha^2 s_3 + 2 S_1 \alpha^3}{\alpha^3 s_3 (-\alpha^3 + S_1 \alpha - 2 s_3)} \end{bmatrix}; \quad A_0 = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{S_2 \alpha^3 - \alpha s_3^2 - 2 S_2 s_3}{-\alpha^3 + S_1 \alpha + 2 s_3} \\ 1 \\ \frac{S_1 s_3 - \alpha^2 s_3 - 2 S_1 \alpha^3}{\alpha^3 s_3 (-\alpha^3 + S_1 \alpha + 2 s_3)} \end{bmatrix}$$

Here $s_3 = \alpha\beta\gamma$ while $S_1 = \alpha^2 + \beta^2 + \gamma^2$, etc. Point A_1 is unchanged by $\alpha \mapsto -\alpha$ (since this leads also to $s_3 \mapsto -s_3$). But $\beta \mapsto -\beta$ changes only s_3 and exchanges A_1 and A_0 .

- Obviously, circles (A_1) and (A_0) are tangent at I .
- Let us note X_{jk} the second intersection of circle Y_j and circle Z_k . For example, B_{31} is $(C_3) \cap (A_1)$. We obtain:

$$z(A_{11}) = \frac{\left(2\alpha^3\beta\gamma(\beta^2 + \gamma^2) + 2\alpha\beta^3\gamma^3 + \beta^2\gamma^2(\beta + \gamma)(\beta^2 + \gamma^2) \right) + \alpha^2(\beta^2 + \beta\gamma + \gamma^2)(\beta^2 - \beta\gamma + \gamma^2)(\beta + \gamma)}{\alpha^2(\beta + \gamma) - 2\alpha\beta\gamma}$$

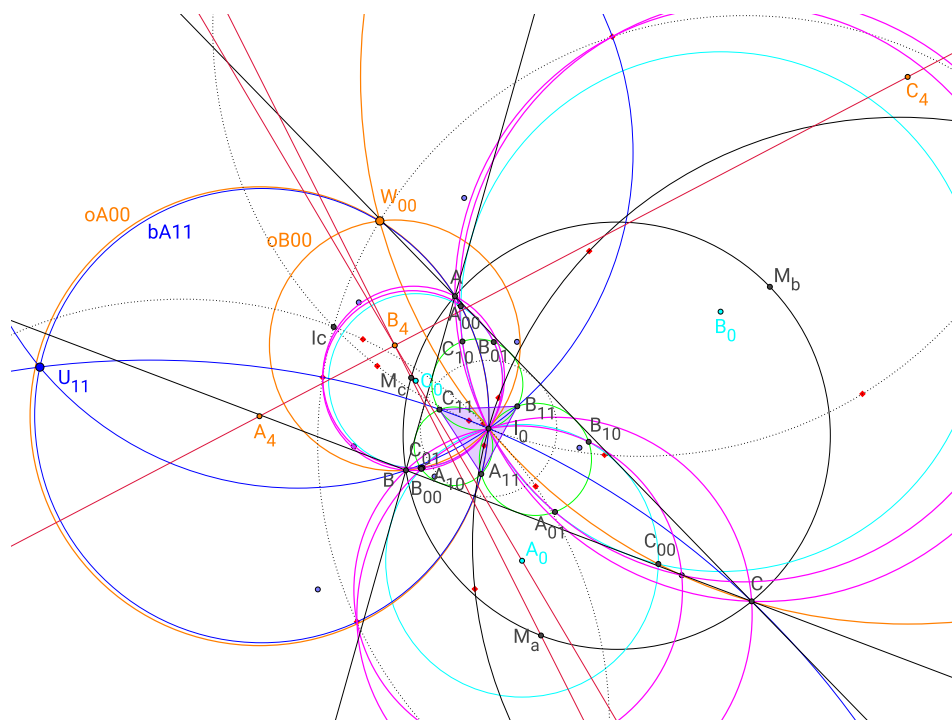
And then, we use $\beta + \gamma = s_1 - \alpha$ and $\beta\gamma = s_2 - \alpha s_1 + \alpha^2$. This leads to "huge" polynomials in α , that can be reduced using the relation $\alpha^3 - s_1\alpha^2 + s_2\alpha - s_3 = 0$. As a result:

$$z(A_{11}) = \frac{\left(2s_1^3s_3 - s_1^2s_2^2 + s_2^3 \right) \alpha + \left(-2s_1^4s_3 + s_1^3s_2^2 + 4s_1^2s_2s_3 \right)}{\alpha s_2 - 3s_3}$$

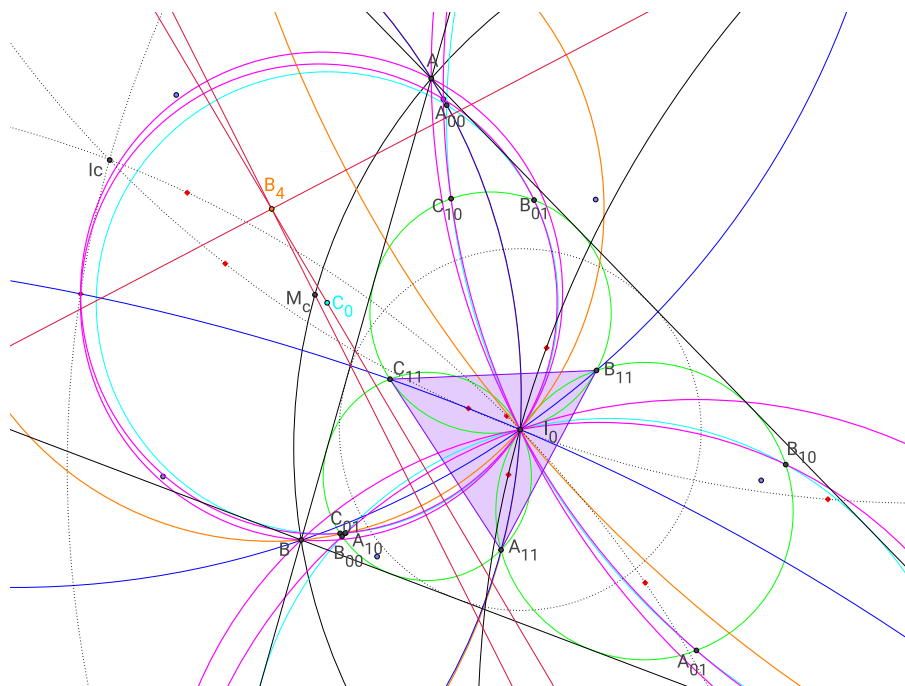
- And now consider circles (A, A_{jk}, I) , (B, B_{kn}, I) , (C, C_{nj}, I) . On the Figure, we can see that these circles concur in a second point. Under the action of the Klein group of the $\alpha \mapsto -\alpha$ transforms, the parity of $j + k + n$ is kept, as described in Table 14.1: two situations are encountered.
- Construction. The center B_4 of circle (B, B_{00}, I) can be obtained as $A_0C_0 \cap M_aM_c$ where A_0, C_0 are the centers described above, and M_a, M_c are the mid-arcs relative to the incentre I_0 .
- Spoiler (Veronese map). Use $z(A) = \alpha^4$, $z(I) = 2s_1s_3 - s_2^2$ and $z(A_{11})$ as above. Take the Veronese of these points, and then the wedge of these three rows. Reduce this column, and take the remainder of each element wrt $\alpha^3 - s_1\alpha^2 + s_2\alpha - s_3$. Now, the representative of circle (I, A, A_{11}) is written as

$$V_a = V_1 + \alpha V_2 + \alpha^2 V_3$$

were V_1, V_2, V_3 are symmetric in α, β, γ . One can see that the family V_1, V_2, V_3 is not independent, so that the V_a, V_b, V_c belong to a same pencil.



(a) Whole figure



(b) Core figure

orange: 11 circles, blue 00 circles, magenta: 01 or 10 circles

Figure 14.1: Poulbot's points

8. Spoiler (pencil of circles). Determine the point-circles in this pencil, i.e. determine K so that $\left\langle (V_1 + K V_2) \middle| \underset{z}{Q} \middle| (V_1 + K V_2) \right\rangle = 0$. This equation factors gently, giving K and therefore the point-circles. Going back to the equations in $\mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{T}, \overline{\mathbf{Z}}$, we obtain factored equations:

$$\begin{pmatrix} (s_1^2 - 2s_2) \mathbf{T} \\ + \overline{\mathbf{Z}} s_3^2 \end{pmatrix} \times \begin{pmatrix} (2s_1^4 s_2 s_3 - s_1^3 s_2^3 - 2s_1^3 s_3^2 - 3s_1^2 s_2^2 s_3) \\ + 2s_1 s_2^4 + 10s_1 s_2 s_3^2 - 4s_2^3 s_3 - 4s_3^3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{T} + \begin{pmatrix} s_1^3 s_2 - 2s_1 s_2^2 \\ -3s_1^2 s_3 + 4s_2 s_3 \end{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} = 0$$

and conjugate. This characterizes the base points of an *isoptic* pencil. Thus the $jkn = 111$ case leads to Poulbot's points of first kind (Ayme et al., 2014) :

$$z_U = \frac{-2s_1^4 s_2 s_3 + s_1^3 s_2^3 + 2s_1^3 s_3^2 + 3s_1^2 s_2^2 s_3 - 2s_1 s_2^4 - 10s_1 s_2 s_3^2 + 4s_2^3 s_3 + 4s_3^3}{s_1^3 s_2 - 2s_1 s_2^2 - 3s_1^2 s_3 + 4s_2 s_3}$$

9. In the same vein, the $jkn = 000$ case leads to Poulbot points of second kind:

$$z_W = \frac{s_1^2 s_2^3 - 2s_1^3 s_2 s_3 - 2s_2^4 + 3s_1 s_2^2 s_3 + 2s_1^2 s_3^2 - 2s_2 s_3^2}{s_1^2 s_2 - 2s_2^2 + s_1 s_3}$$

and it can be seen that this point is on the Bevan circle $J_a J_b J_c$. So are the other three.

14.9 More about the foci of a conic

Chapter 15

Collineations

15.1 Definition

Definition 15.1.1. A collineation is a reversible linear transformation of the barycentrics, i.e. $U = \phi(P)$ determined by :

$$\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \\ w \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} m_{11} & m_{12} & m_{13} \\ m_{21} & m_{22} & m_{23} \\ m_{31} & m_{32} & m_{33} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix}$$

where \simeq is a reminder of the fact that barycentrics are determined up a proportionality factor.

Proposition 15.1.2. A collineation is determined by two ordered lists four points: P_i , $i = 1, 2, 3, 4$, U_i , $i = 1, 2, 3, 4$ such that no triples of P points are on the same line, and the same for the U points.

Proof. If ϕ is reversible, then $\det M \neq 0$ is required and the $\phi(P_i)$ haven't alignments when the P_i haven't. Conversely, we have the following algorithm. \square

Algorithm 15.1.3. Collineation algorithm. Let be given the two lists of points P_i , $i = 1, 2, 3, 4$, U_i , $i = 1, 2, 3, 4$. With obvious notations, the question is to find the m_{ij} (not all being 0) and the k_i (none being 0) in order to ensure :

$$\begin{pmatrix} u_1 & u_2 & u_3 & u_4 \\ v_1 & v_2 & v_3 & v_4 \\ w_1 & w_2 & w_3 & w_4 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} k_1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & k_2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & k_3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & k_4 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} m_{11} & m_{12} & m_{13} \\ m_{21} & m_{22} & m_{23} \\ m_{31} & m_{32} & m_{33} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} p_1 & p_2 & p_3 & p_4 \\ q_1 & q_2 & q_3 & q_4 \\ r_1 & r_2 & r_3 & r_4 \end{pmatrix}$$

This system has 13 unknowns and 12 equations, since a global proportionality factor remains undetermined. The k_i are determined (up to a global proportionality factor) by

$$\frac{1}{k_i} \det_{\neq i} U = \det_{\neq i} P \det M$$

where a 3×4 matrix subscribed by an $\neq i$ refers to the square matrix obtained by deleting the i -th column. Thereafter, M is easily obtained. To summarize :

$$k_i = \det_{\neq i} U \div \det_{\neq i} P \quad M = U \cdot K \cdot \left(P_{\neq 4} \right)^{-1}$$

With the given hypotheses, transformation ϕ is clearly reversible.

Remark 15.1.4. An efficient choice of the P_i , U_i is eight centers, or a central triangle and a center for the P and the corresponding U . In such a case, any center is transformed into a center, and homogeneous curves into homogeneous curves of the same degree.

15.2 Involutory collineations

Proposition 15.2.1. . Let M_1, M_2, N_1, N_2 be four (different points). The collineation ψ that swaps the (M_1, M_2) pair and also the (N_1, N_2) pair is involutory. The line through the crossed intersections $M_1N_1 \cap M_2N_2$ and $M_1N_2 \cap M_2N_1$ is a line of fixed points (the axis of ψ). The paired intersection, i.e. point $P = M_1M_2 \cap N_1N_2$ is an isolated fixed point (the pole of ψ). Reciprocally, given an axis Δ and a pole P (outside of the axis), we obtain an involutory transform $U \mapsto X = \psi(U)$ by requiring P, U, X aligned together with $(P, U, PU \cap \Delta, X) = -1$ (harmonic conjugacy).

Proof. Consider ψ defined by $A \longleftrightarrow P$ and $B \longleftrightarrow C$. Its matrix $\boxed{\psi}$ can be obtained by the general ALG. 15.1.3. Then the cevian triangle of P provides a diagonalization basis and we have :

$$\boxed{\psi} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ \frac{q}{p} & 0 & -\frac{q}{r} \\ \frac{p}{r} & -\frac{r}{q} & 0 \end{pmatrix} ; \quad \boxed{\mathcal{T}_P} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & p & p \\ q & 0 & q \\ r & r & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\boxed{\mathcal{T}_P}^{-1} \cdot \boxed{\psi} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{T}_P} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

In the general case, we can chose matrix $\boxed{\psi}$ to enforce $\det \boxed{\psi} = -1$. Then minimal polynomial is $\mu^2 - 1$ while characteristic polynomial is $\chi(\mu) = (\mu - 1)^2(\mu + 1)$. \square

15.3 Usual affine transforms as collineations

Remark 15.3.1. Umbilics have been defined in Subsection 13.1.2. A possible choice can be described as $\Omega^\pm \simeq abc X_{512} \pm iR X_{511}$. The exact value is given in (13.2).

Proposition 15.3.2. Translation. The matrix of the translation $U \mapsto U + \vec{V}$ where $\vec{V} = (p, q, r)$ is given by :

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1+p & p & p \\ q & 1+q & q \\ r & r & 1+r \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} + \vec{V} \cdot \mathcal{L}_b \quad (15.1)$$

Proof. Use $P_i = A, B, \Omega^+, \Omega^-$ and $Q_i = C, D, \Omega^+, \Omega^-$. Characteristic polynomial is

$$\chi(\mu) = (\mu - 1)^2(\mu - 1 - p - q - r)$$

For a translation, $p + q + r = 0$, and the matrix is not diagonalizable. \square

Remark 15.3.3. The translation operator is linear, meaning that $M(\vec{V}_1) + M(\vec{V}_2) = M(\vec{V}_1 + \vec{V}_2)$.

Proposition 15.3.4. Homothety. When $p + q + r$ is different from 0 and -1 then (15.1) characterizes the homothety centered at point $P = p : q : r$ with ratio $\mu = 1 / (1 + p + q + r)$.

Proof. The factor is the reciprocal of the eigenvalue λ_P since a fixed point should be described by $\lambda = 1$: all the eigenvalues have to be divided by λ_P . This result can also be obtained by direct examination of $f(P)f(U)$. \square

Remark 15.3.5. When computing P , the column ${}^t(p, q, r)$ can be viewed as "defined up to a proportionality". This does not apply to the computation of μ . In any case, we are re-obtaining (7.29).

Remark 15.3.6. The matrix π_Δ of the orthogonal projector onto line $\Delta \simeq [p, q, r]$ is :

$$\pi_\Delta = \Delta \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t\Delta - \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t\Delta \cdot \Delta$$

while the matrix σ_Δ of the orthogonal reflection wrt line $\Delta \simeq [p, q, r]$ is :

$$\sigma_\Delta = \Delta \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t\Delta - 2 \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t\Delta \cdot \Delta$$

These formulas are recalled from Section 7.13, where more details are given.

Proposition 15.3.7. *The matrix of the rotation centered at finite point $P = p : q : r$ with angle ϕ is :*

$$(p + q + r) \boxed{\Phi} = \begin{pmatrix} p & p & p \\ q & q & q \\ r & r & r \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} r + q & -p & -p \\ -q & r + p & -q \\ -r & -r & q + p \end{pmatrix} \cos \phi + \boxed{\text{OrtO}} (\mathcal{L}_b \cdot P - P \cdot \mathcal{L}_b) \sin \phi$$

Proof. It suffices to check what happens to P, Ω^+, Ω^- : they are fixed points, with respective eigenvalues : $1, \exp(+i\phi), \exp(-i\phi)$, while the global factor $p + q + r$ is a remainder of the constraint $P \notin \mathcal{L}_b$. \square

Stratospherical proof. A rotation with angle ϕ is multiplication by $\Phi = \cos \phi + \mathbf{i} \sin \phi$ in the complex plane. Therefore, rotation with center P and angle ϕ can be written as :

$$\Phi(X) = P + \left(\boxed{1} \cos \phi + \boxed{\mathbf{i}} \sin \phi \right) \overrightarrow{PX}$$

Since matrix $\boxed{\text{OrtO}}$ describes a "project and turn" action, we have $\boxed{\text{OrtO}}^3 = -\boxed{\text{OrtO}}$, so that $\boxed{\mathbf{i}} = \boxed{\text{OrtO}}$. Multiplying, we get : $\boxed{\text{OrtO}}^4 = -\boxed{\text{OrtO}}^2$ and $-\boxed{\text{OrtO}}^2$ is a projector onto space $\overrightarrow{\mathcal{V}}$. This gives : $\boxed{1} = -\boxed{\text{OrtO}}^2$. Canceling the denominators, we obtain :

$$\Phi \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \simeq (x + y + z) \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix} + \left(\sin \phi \boxed{\text{OrtO}} - \cos \phi \boxed{\text{OrtO}}^2 \right) \left((p + q + r) \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} - (x + y + z) \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix} \right)$$

leading to the required matrix :

$$\boxed{\Phi} = \text{proj} + \left(\sin \phi \boxed{\text{OrtO}} - \cos \phi \boxed{\text{OrtO}}^2 \right) \cdot (\mathbf{1} - \text{proj}) \quad \text{where} \quad \text{proj} \doteq \frac{1}{\mathcal{L}_b \cdot P} (P \cdot \mathcal{L}_b) \quad \square$$

Proposition 15.3.8. Similarity. *When A, B, C, D are points at finite distance, with $A \neq B, C \neq D$ it exists two similarities ϕ, ψ , respectively called direct and skew, that sends $A \mapsto C$ and $B \mapsto D$. As collineations, they are characterized by :*

$$\begin{aligned} \phi &= \text{collineate}(A, B, \Omega^+, \Omega^-; C, D, \Omega^+, \Omega^-) \\ \psi &= \text{collineate}(A, B, \Omega^+, \Omega^-; C, D, \Omega^-, \Omega^+) \end{aligned}$$

Proof. The group of all the similarities is the stabilizer subgroup of the pair $\{\Omega^+, \Omega^-\}$ under the action of the group of all the collineations. This comes from the fact that any similarity transforms circles into circles, and therefore must preserve the umbilical pair. \square

Proposition 15.3.9. Similarity (Morley plane). *Spoiler: in the Morley plane, the matrix of the similarity σ defined by center $M \simeq z : t : \zeta$, ratio k and turn τ is:*

$$\boxed{\sigma} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} k\tau & \frac{z}{t} (1 - k\tau) & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{\zeta}{t} \left(1 - \frac{k}{\tau} \right) & \frac{k}{\tau} \end{bmatrix}$$

Stratospherical proof. Take Ω_y, M, Ω_x as basis and say that eigenvalues are $k\tau, 1, k/\tau$. \square

Computational proof. Say that $\sigma = \text{collineate}(\Omega_y, \Omega_x, M, N, \Omega_y, \Omega_x, M, N')$ while $|MN'|^2 = k^2 |MN|^2$ and $\tan(MN, MN') = \mathbf{i} (1 - \tau^2) / (1 + \tau^2)$. Solve for N' and obtain the former result. In fact there is another solution, obtained by $k\tau \mapsto -k\tau$. But we must obtain the unit matrix when $k\tau = 1$. \square

Proposition 15.3.10. *Let be given a triangle M_a, M_b, M_c . Then, the quantity*

$$\begin{aligned} \text{clasim}(M_a, M_b, M_c) &\doteq \left(\frac{M_c}{\mathcal{L}_z \cdot M_c} - \frac{M_a}{\mathcal{L}_z \cdot M_a} \right) \div \left(\frac{M_b}{\mathcal{L}_z \cdot M_b} - \frac{M_a}{\mathcal{L}_z \cdot M_a} \right) \\ &= \text{cross_ratio}_z(\infty, M_a, M_b, M_c) : 0 : \text{cross_ratio}_{zz}(\infty, M_a, M_b, M_c) \end{aligned}$$

characterizes the triangles similar to $[M_j]$ (clasim means "class of similarity"). When normalized, this leads to $\omega^2 : 0:1$, i.e. the clinant of the angle $(M_a M_b, M_a M_c)$.

Proof. In this formula, Bob sees $(c - a) \div (b - a)$ while Alice sees the conjugate quantity. \square

15.4 Barycentric multiplication as a collineation

Proposition 15.4.1. *Barycentric multiplication by $P = p : q : r$ is what happens to the plane when using collineation $\phi : (A, B, C, X_2) \mapsto (A, B, C, P)$. In other words :*

$$X \underset{b}{*} P = \boxed{P} \cdot X \quad \text{where } \boxed{P} \doteq \begin{pmatrix} p & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & q & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & r \end{pmatrix}$$

Remark 15.4.2. Obviously, trilinear multiplication can be described using collineations involving X_1 .

Proposition 15.4.3. *The collineation whose matrix is diagonal, with elements $U \div P$ transforms (A, B, C, P) into (A, B, C, U) and circumconic $CC(P)$ into $CC(U)$.*

Proof. Direct examination. One obtains :

$$\frac{pqr}{uvw} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{u}{p} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{v}{q} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{w}{r} \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 0 & w & v \\ w & 0 & u \\ v & u & 0 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} \frac{u}{p} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{v}{q} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \frac{w}{r} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & r & q \\ r & 0 & p \\ q & p & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \square$$

Construction 15.4.4. *The following recipe constructs $F \doteq D \underset{b}{*} E$ (see [Yiu, 2002](#), p. 97-98).*

1	Points	A, B, C, D, E	given
2	Line	ab	through A, B
3	Line	bc	through B, C
4	Line	ca	through C, A
5	Point	X_1	Intersection of bc , Line[A, D]
6	Point	X_2	Intersection of bc , Line[A, E]
7	Point	K_x	Intersection of ab , Line[X_2, ca]
8	Point	H_x	Intersection of ca , Line[X_1, ab]
9	Point	Y_1	Intersection of ca , Line[B, D]
10	Point	Y_2	Intersection of ca , Line[B, E]
11	Point	H_y	Intersection of ab , Line[Y_1, bc]
12	Point	K_y	Intersection of bc , Line[Y_2, ab]
13	Point	Q_x	Intersection of Line[B, H_x], Line[C, K_x]
14	Point	Q_y	Intersection of Line[C, H_y], Line[A, K_y]
15	Point	F	Intersection of Line[A, Q_x], Line[B, Q_y]

Proof. The idea (see [Yiu \(2002, p. 97\)](#)) is to construct parallelograms $AK_1X_1H_1$, $AK_2X_2H_2$ and use them as pantographs. Using $D \simeq p : q : r$ and $E \simeq u : v : w$, we have

$$\begin{array}{cccc|cccc|cc|c} X_1 & X_2 & K_x & H_x & Y_1 & Y_2 & H_y & K_y & Q_x & Q_y & F \\ 0 & 0 & w & q & p & u & p & 0 & wq & up & up \\ q & v & v & 0 & 0 & 0 & r & u & qv & ur & qv \\ r & w & 0 & r & r & w & 0 & w & wr & wr & wr \end{array} \quad \square$$

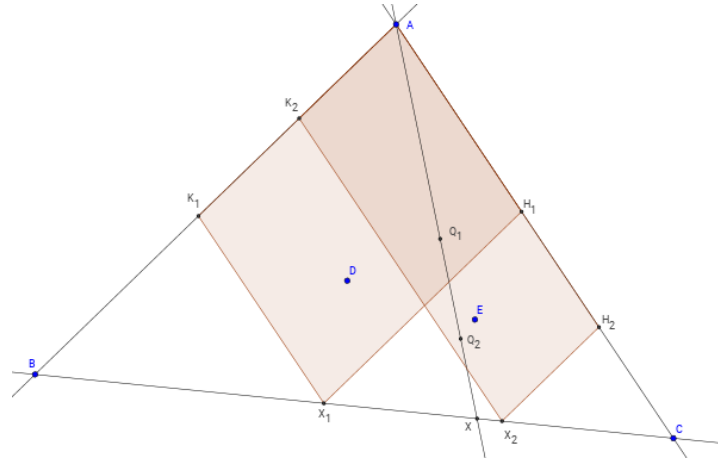


Figure 15.1: Construction of barymul

15.5 Complement and anticomplement as collineations

Proposition 15.5.1. *Complement is what happens to the plane when using collineation $(A, B, C, X_2) \mapsto (A_2B_2C_2, X_2)$ where $A_2B_2C_2$ is the medial triangle. In other words :*

$$\begin{aligned} \text{complement}(X) &= [\mathcal{C}] \cdot X & \text{where } [\mathcal{C}] &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ \text{anticomplement}(X) &= [\mathcal{C}^{-1}] \cdot X & \text{where } [\mathcal{C}^{-1}] &= \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Direct computation. □

Proposition 15.5.2. *The **cevian collineation** wrt point P is defined as collineation $(A, B, C, P) \mapsto (A_P B_P C_P, P)$. Its matrix is :*

$$\phi_P = [P] \cdot [\mathcal{C}] \cdot [P^{-1}] = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & p/q & p/r \\ q/p & 0 & q/r \\ r/p & r/q & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

where $[P^{-1}]$ is to be understood as the reciprocal of matrix $[P]$.

Proof. Composition of the two former collineations. □

Proposition 15.5.3. *We have the following relation between conics :*

$$\text{complement}(X) \in \text{conicev}(\text{isotom}(U), X_2) \iff X \in \text{conicir}(\text{complement}(U))$$

15.6 Collineations and cevamul, cevadiv, crossmul, crossdiv

In this Section 15.6, the start point will ever be Table 3.2 (II) i.e. $\mathcal{T}_1 = \mathcal{C}_P$ (the cevian of P), $\mathcal{T}_2 = ABC$, $\mathcal{T}_3 = \mathcal{A}_U$ (the anticevian of U).

Proposition 15.6.1. *Start as described, and use $\phi_U = [U] \cdot [\mathcal{C}] \cdot [U^{-1}]$. This collineation is tailored so that : $\phi(\mathcal{T}_3) = ABC$, $\phi(\mathcal{T}_2) = \mathcal{C}_U$ and $\phi(\mathcal{T}_1)$ is the cevian triangle of $\phi(P)$ wrt \mathcal{C}_U . Then :*

$$\begin{aligned} \phi \cdot \text{cevadiv}(P, U) &= \text{crossdiv}(\phi \cdot P, \phi \cdot U) = \frac{u^2}{p} : \frac{v^2}{q} : \frac{w^2}{r} = P_U^\# \\ \text{cevamul}(\phi^{-1} \cdot X, \phi^{-1} \cdot U) &= \phi^{-1} \cdot \text{crossmul}(X, U) = \frac{u^2}{x} : \frac{v^2}{y} : \frac{w^2}{z} = X_U^\# \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Direct computation. The symmetry between U, X is broken by using ϕ_U . \square

Exercise 15.6.2. Explain why one obtains $\text{sqrtdiv}(U, P)$ and $\text{sqrtdiv}(U, X)$, reverting the symmetry.

Proposition 15.6.3. Start as described and use $\psi_P = \boxed{P} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}^{-1}} \cdot \boxed{P^{-1}}$. This collineation is tailored so that $\psi(\mathcal{T}_1) = ABC$, $\psi(\mathcal{T}_2) = \mathcal{A}_P$ and $\psi(\mathcal{T}_3)$ is the anticevian of $\psi(U)$ wrt \mathcal{A}_P . Triangles $\psi(\mathcal{T}_3)$ and $\psi(\mathcal{T}_2)$ are perspective wrt $\psi(U)$ while $\psi(\mathcal{T}_3)$ and $\psi(\mathcal{T}_1)$ are perspective wrt $\psi(X)$ and :

$$\psi \cdot \text{cevdiv}(\psi^{-1} \cdot P, \psi^{-1} \cdot U) = \text{sqrtdiv}(P, U) = \frac{p^2}{u} : \frac{q^2}{v} : \frac{r^2}{w} = U_P^\#$$

Proposition 15.6.4. Start as before, but use instead collineation $(ABC, X_2) \mapsto (\text{ceva}(P), P)$ i.e. $\psi_P = \boxed{\mathcal{C}^{-1}} \cdot \boxed{P^{-1}}$. Then $\psi(\mathcal{T}_1)$ is ABC while $\psi(\mathcal{T}_2)$ is the anticomplementary triangle. Perspector between $\psi(\mathcal{T}_1)$ and $\psi(\mathcal{T}_2)$ is $\psi(U) = X_2$, perspector between $\psi(\mathcal{T}_2)$ and $\psi(\mathcal{T}_3)$ is $\psi(P) = \text{anticomplem}(U/P)$ while perspector between $\psi(\mathcal{T}_1)$ and $\psi(\mathcal{T}_3)$ is isotomic conjugate of the former. In other words :

$$X = \text{cevdiv}(P, U) = (\psi^{-1} \circ \text{isotom} \circ \psi)(U)$$

15.7 Cevian conjugacies

Definition 15.7.1. The psi-Kimberling collineation of pole P is the collineation ψ_P such that $ABC \mapsto \text{cevia}(P)$ and $X_1 \rightarrow P$. Therefore :

$$\begin{aligned} \psi_P(U) &= P *_b \text{complem}(U \div_b X_1) \\ &= p \left(\frac{v}{b} + \frac{w}{c} \right) : q \left(\frac{u}{a} + \frac{w}{c} \right) : r \left(\frac{u}{a} + \frac{v}{b} \right) \\ \psi_P^{-1}(U) &= X_1 *_b \text{anticomplem}(U \div_b P) \\ &= a \left(-\frac{u}{p} + \frac{v}{q} + \frac{w}{r} \right) : b \left(\frac{u}{p} - \frac{v}{q} + \frac{w}{r} \right) : c \left(\frac{u}{p} + \frac{v}{q} - \frac{w}{r} \right) \end{aligned} \quad (15.2)$$

Remark 15.7.2. It is clear that ψ_P, ψ_P^{-1} are type-keeping when $X_1(a : b : c)$, $P(p : q : r)$ and $U(u : v : w)$ are transformed. Moreover, $\psi_P(A) = A_P = 0 : q : r$, $\psi_P(X_1) = P$ (from the very definition) while $\psi_P(-a : b : c) = A$ is obvious.

This ψ_P collineation has been used by Kimberling (2002) to construct some new functions, following the patterns :

$$\phi \mapsto \psi_P \circ \phi \circ \psi_P^{-1} \quad \text{or} \quad \phi \mapsto \psi_P^{-1} \circ \phi \circ \psi_P$$

1. **cevdivision** of P by U can be re-obtained as $\psi_P \circ \text{isogon} \circ \psi_P^{-1}$. The result X is the perspector of $\text{cevia}(P)$ and $\text{anticevian}(U)$. More about this operation in Section 3.11. One has the formulas :

$$\begin{aligned} X &= (-uqr + vrp + wqp)u : (uqr - vrp + wqp)v : (uqr + vrp - wqp)w \\ P &= (vz + wy)^{-1} : (uz + wx)^{-1} : (yu + xv)^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

- (a) cevdivision and ceva-multiplication are both type-keeping with respect to P and U . Using isogonal conjugacy result in the disappearing of a, b, c from the equations.
- (b) fixed points are $P = \psi_P(X_1)$ and the three vertices $A = \psi_P(-a : b : c)$, since $\pm a : \pm b : \pm c$ are the fixed points of isogon . A brute force resolution leads also to the cevians of P . A Taylor expansion around $1 : 0 : 0$ shows that vertices are really fixed points of cevdivision, while a Taylor expansion around $0 : p : q$ shows that undetermined $\psi_P(0 : q : r) = 0 : 0 : 0$ must be determined as $\psi_P(0 : q : r) = 0 : -q : r$

2. **alephdivision** of P by $U : \psi_P^{-1} \circ isogon \circ \psi_P$ (Hyacinthos #4111, Oct. 11, 2001). Formulas (cyclically) :

$$x \simeq a(p^2 r^2 v^2 + q^2 p^2 w^2 - q^2 r^2 u^2) + \frac{p^2 r^2 b^2 + q^2 p^2 c^2 - q^2 r^2 a^2}{bc} (vaw + ubw + cuv)$$

$$p^2 : q^2 : r^2 = \frac{1}{(bw + cv)(bz + cy)} : \frac{1}{(cu + aw)(cx + az)} : \frac{1}{(av + bu)(ay + bx)}$$

Therefore, the alephmultiplication gives four result, one inside the triangle ABC and three outside

3. **bethdivision** of P by $U : \psi_P \circ sym3 \circ \psi_P^{-1}$ (Hyacinthos #4146, Oct. 26, 2001) where involution $sym3$ is the reflection in the circumcenter X_3 . This involution $sym3$ is related to the Darboux cubic. Barycentrics are :

$$\begin{aligned} x &\simeq au - \frac{p(c+b)(a+c-b)}{q(-a+b+c)}v - \frac{p(c+b)(b+a-c)}{r(-a+b+c)}w \\ &= -au + \frac{\hat{p}}{\hat{q}}(c+b)v + \frac{\hat{p}}{\hat{r}}(c+b) \quad \text{where } \hat{p} : \hat{q} : \hat{r} = P * X_7 \end{aligned}$$

- (a) This operation is type-keeping with respect to P, U .
- (b) The fixed points of $U \mapsto \beta(P, U)$ are obtained by ψ_P from the fixed points of $sym3$. They are $\psi_P(X_3)$ together with $\psi_P(\mathcal{L}_b)$, namely the line : $u/\hat{p} + v/\hat{q} + w/\hat{r} = 0$.
- (c) Bethdivision of $X_{21} = a(b+c-a)/(b+c)$ by the circumcircle gives the circumcircle.
- (d) Bethdivision of P by U is P if and only if $U = P *_b X_{57}$.
- (e) Bethmultiplication is not simple (equation of third degree).

Exercise 15.7.3. What are the situations where the discriminant vanishes ?

4. **gimeldivision** of P by $U : \psi_P^{-1} \circ sym3 \circ \psi_P$. Using barycentrics, one obtains :

$$\begin{aligned} F(U) &= 16\sigma^2 U - \alpha\beta X_1 + 2\alpha \left(X_{48} *_b isot(P) \right) \quad \text{where} \\ 16\sigma^2 &= (b+c-a)(a+c-b)(b+a-c)(b+a+c) \\ \alpha &= \frac{(q+r)u}{a} + \frac{(r+p)v}{b} + \frac{(p+q)w}{c} \\ \beta &= \frac{(b^2+c^2-a^2)a^2}{p} + \frac{(c^2+a^2-b^2)b^2}{q} + \frac{(a^2+b^2-c^2)c^2}{r} \end{aligned}$$

- (a) The fixed points of $U \mapsto \gamma(P, U)$ are obtained by ψ_P^{-1} from the fixed points of $sym3$. They are $\psi_P^{-1}(X_3)$ together with $\psi_P(\mathcal{L}_b)$, namely the line : $ubc(q+r) + vca(r+p) + wab(p+q) = 0$.
 - (b) Gimel multiplication leads to three points on the triangle sides, and three other points.
5. **mimosa** aka "much ado about nothing" X(1707)-X(1788). As with other names in ETC, the name Mimosa is that of a star. Define $mimosa(P)$ as $\psi_P^{-1}(X_3)$. Using barycentrics, one obtains :

$$mimosa(p : q : r) = u : v : w \quad \text{where}$$

$$u = a \left(-\frac{(-a^2 + b^2 + c^2)a^2}{p} + \frac{b^2(a^2 - b^2 + c^2)}{q} + \frac{c^2(a^2 + b^2 - c^2)}{r} \right)$$

and also :

$$\begin{aligned} mimosa(P) &= cevadiv \left(X_{92} *_b P, X_1 \right) \\ mimosa^{-1}(U) &= cevamul(U, X_1) *_b X_{63} \end{aligned}$$

Then, marvelously, the Mimosa transform $M(X)$ arises in connection with the equation $\text{gimeldiv}(P, X) = X$. And there are too many such cases of gimel conjugates for all to be itemized in ETC... Here is a list of pairs (I,J) for which $X(J) = M(X(I))$.

1	46	20	1712	48	43	71	846	85	1729
2	19	21	4	54	47	72	191	86	1730
3	1	27	1713	55	1721	73	1046	88	1731
4	920	28	1714	56	1722	74	1725	89	1732
6	1707	29	1715	57	1723	75	1726	90	90
7	1708	31	1716	58	1724	77	57	95	92
8	1158	35	1717	59	109	78	40	96	91
9	1709	36	1718	60	580	80	1727	97	48
10	1710	37	1719	63	9	81	579	98	1733
19	1711	40	1720	69	63	84	1728	99	1577

6. **zosma**, yet another star. $X(1824)$ - $X(1907)$. The Zosma transform of a point X is the isogonal conjugate of the inverse mimosa transform of X .
7. **dalethdivision** of P by $U : \psi_P \circ \text{hirst}_1 \circ \psi_P^{-1}$ where $\text{hirst}_1(X) = \text{hirstpoint}(X_1, X)$ and thus $U \neq P$. Using barycentrics, one obtains :

$$x \simeq \left(\frac{w}{r} - \frac{v}{q}\right)^2 p - \left(\frac{u}{p} + \frac{v}{q} + \frac{w}{r}\right) u - 3 \frac{u^2}{p}$$

- (a) This operation is type-keeping with respect to P, U .
- (b) The locus of fixed points of hirst_1 is the circumconic $cc(X_1)$. Therefore, the locus of fixed points of daleth_P is the conic $cvc(P, P)$ tangent to the sidelines of ABC at the cevian points of P .
8. **hedivision** of P by $U : \psi_P^{-1} \circ \phi \circ \psi_P$ where $\phi(X) = \text{hirstpoint}(X_1, X)$ and thus $U \neq \psi_P^{-1}(P)$. Using barycentrics, one obtains :

$$x \simeq -p \left(\frac{v}{b} + \frac{w}{c}\right)^2 + \frac{qa}{b} \left(\frac{u}{a} + \frac{w}{c}\right)^2 + \frac{ra}{c} \left(\frac{u}{a} + \frac{v}{b}\right)^2 + \frac{rqa^2}{cbp} \left(\frac{u}{a} + \frac{v}{b}\right) \left(\frac{u}{a} + \frac{w}{c}\right) - \frac{qcp}{br} \left(\frac{u}{a} + \frac{w}{c}\right) \left(\frac{v}{b} + \frac{w}{c}\right) - \frac{brp}{qc} \left(\frac{u}{a} + \frac{v}{b}\right) \left(\frac{v}{b} + \frac{w}{c}\right)$$

- (a) The locus of fixed points is a conic, but not a conic of cevians.

15.8 Miscellany

15.8.1 Poles-of-lines and polar-of-points triangles

In what follows, indexes are to be taken modulo 3.

Definition 15.8.1. Polars-of-points triangle. Consider the general triangle \mathcal{T} with vertices T_i , for $i = 1, 2, 3$. Taking the tripolars, we obtain a trigone. Taking the dual, we obtain the (may be degenerate) polars-of-points triangle $\mathcal{T}_U = \text{pntpoltri}(\mathcal{T})$. Its vertices are :

$$U_i = \text{tripolar}(T_{i+1}) \wedge \text{tripolar}(T_{i+2}) \quad (15.3)$$

Definition 15.8.2. Poles-of-lines triangle. Consider the general triangle \mathcal{T} with vertices T_i , for $i = 1, 2, 3$. Taking the dual trigone and then the tripoles, we obtain the (may be degenerate) poles-of-lines triangle $\mathcal{T}_P = \text{linpoltri}(\mathcal{T})$. Its vertices are :

$$P_i = \text{tripole}(T_{i+1} \wedge T_{i+2}) \quad (15.4)$$

Remark 15.8.3. An example of flat line-polar triangle is given by triangles sharing the circumcircle of ABC

Lemma 15.8.4. *The determinants of these triangles are:*

$$\det \mathcal{T}_U = (\det \mathcal{T}_{isot})^2 ; \det \mathcal{T}_P = \frac{(\det \mathcal{T})^2 \det \mathcal{T}_{isot}}{\prod_9 \text{Adjoint}(\mathcal{T})}$$

where $\det \mathcal{T}_{isot}$ is either the determinant of the triangle of the isotomics or the determinant of the trigone of the tripolars, and \prod_9 is the condition expressing that two vertices of \mathcal{T} are aligned with a vertex of ABC .

Proposition 15.8.5. *When isotomic conjugates are collinear, \mathcal{T}_U is totally degenerate. Otherwise $\text{pntpoltri}(\mathcal{T})$ is a triangle. Point-polarity is type-keeping (and both tribes share the same formula).*

Proof. For example, the polar of P_1 is the line $x/p_1 + y/q_1 + z/r_1 = 0$, and the polars of P_2 and P_3 are defined cyclically. Then U_1 is obtained as the common point of the last two lines. \square

Proposition 15.8.6. *When \mathcal{T} is flat (aligned points), then \mathcal{T}_P is totally degenerate. When isotomic conjugates are collinear, \mathcal{T}_P is flat, i.e. simply degenerate. Otherwise, $\text{linpoltri}(\mathcal{T})$ is a triangle. The line-polarity transform is type-keeping (and both tribes share the same formula).*

Proof. For example $U_2 \wedge U_3$ gives the barycentrics of line U_2U_3 , while tripole is transpose and invert : being the product of two type-crossing transforms, linpoltri is type-keeping. \square

Proposition 15.8.7. *Line-polar and point-polar transforms are converse of each other... in the generic case. More precisely, $\text{pntpoltri}(\text{linpoltri}(\mathcal{T}))$ gives \mathcal{T} times $\det \mathcal{T}$, going back to any non degenerate triangle. On the contrary, $\text{linpoltri}(\text{pntpoltri}(\mathcal{T}))$ gives \mathcal{T} times $1/\det \mathcal{T}_{isot}$: the converse relation holds certainly when isotomic conjugates of points P_i aren't collinear and points P_i aren't collinear either and points P_i aren't on the sidelines.*

15.8.2 Unary cofactor triangle, eigencenter

Definition 15.8.8. The **unary cofactor triangle** of triangle U_i ($i = 1, 2, 3$) is the triangle whose vertices are the isoconjugates of the vertices of the line-polar triangle of the points U_i . This operator is type-crossing over the U_i , but is nevertheless type-keeping over all involved points when using any fixed point F instead of $P = F^2$. Using barycentrics :

$$X_i = {}^t(U_{i+1} \wedge U_{i+2}) *_b P$$

Proposition 15.8.9. *When triangle $U_1U_2U_3$ is degenerate (collinear vertices), then triangle $X_1X_2X_3$ is totally degenerate (reduced to a point). Apart this situation, the unary cofactor transform is involutory.*

Definition 15.8.10. Eigencenter. Any triangle $U_1U_2U_3$ and its unary cofactor $X_1X_2X_3$ are perspective. Their perspector is called the eigencenter of these triangles (formula don't simplify, and has Maple-length 945).

When the original triangle is the cevian or the anticevian of a point U , formula shorten into :

$$\begin{aligned} \text{eigencenter}(\mathcal{C}_U) &= \text{anticomplem} \left(\left(U *_b U \right)_P^* \right) *_b U_P^* = \text{cevdiv}(U, U^*) \\ \text{eigencenter}(\mathcal{A}_U) &= \text{anticomplem} \left(U *_b U \div_b P \right) *_b U \end{aligned}$$

These points are called, respectively, the eigentransform and the antieigentransform of point U (see Section 21.4.8).

Chapter 16

Perspective Drawing

16.1 Working out an example

In the Euclidean plane, let us consider an equally divided square, where $A = (-1, -1)$ and $C = (+2, +2)$. And apply the following rules:

1. Perspective preserves alignment.
2. Real world parallels intersect in the drawing at a "vanishing point". All such points are on a same line (the horizon).
3. On a parallel to the horizon, the ratios of algebraic measurements are preserved.

In the drawing plane, let us take three points at random: $A(12, 0)$, $B(19, 6)$, $D(9, 5)$. Here, "at random" means: change these coordinates if you want to, but don't expect simpler numerics...).

1. `/home/douillet/docs/Forums/Phorum/0_Geometrie_projective/Perspective_in_art`
2. `/home/douillet/docs/Forums/Phorum/0_Geometrie_projective/Stfj_cobars`
 - (a) figures gauche - droite
 - (b) en particulier macros ABCx, ABCLx (à la fin)
3. Enseigner_projective_2024 : Swingmustard msg-2479049
4. Enseigner_projective_2024: Swingmustard msg-2479253 – 1 May 2024
5. même quand @pldx1 disait (p.3 de Cobars): — extrait de Swingmustard msg-2479577 – 3 May 2024 7:48PM

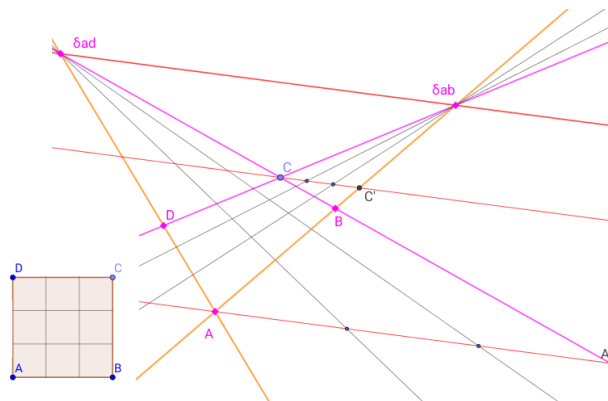


Figure 16.1: Drawing a divided square

16.2 Bibliography

1. Capstone at HKUST ([Li Weiping, 2016](#))
2. [O'Connor and Robertson, 2003](#) (MacTutor)
3. ([Schultz, 2019](#), p. 230-233) History of Mathematics, Univ. California, Riverside.
4. <https://www.nationalgallery.org.uk/research/research-resources/exhibition-catalogues/building-the-picture>
5. perspectives paradoxales, [Macary-Garipuy and Vannesson \(2010\)](#)
6. Arasse
 - (a) Longo thesis, about Arasse [Longo \(2014\)](#)
 - (b) Rowley, Neville: Daniel Arasse en perspective: une apostille à l'Annonciation italienne ([Rowley, 2006](#))
7. Leo Battista ALBERTI.
 - (a) ([Alberti, 1435a](#)) "De Pictura", Sinisgalli, Rocco ed., English Trans., Publisher = Cambridge University Press, ISBN = 9780511782190, pages=xvi+214, 2011
 - (b) ([Alberti, 1435b](#)) "De Pittura", Schefer, Jean-Louis ed., Latin+French Trans., Collection «La Littérature Artistique» Macula Dédale, introduction de Sylvie Deswarte-Rosa, Paris 1992.
 - (c) ([Alberti, 1435c](#)) "De Pittura", Popelin, Claudius ed. , 1869,
 - i. 001 (009) Prologue
 - ii. 029 (037) Leon-Battista Alberti
 - iii. 065 (073) De la statue
 - iv. 095 (103) De la peinture
 - v. 189 (197) Epilogue
 - (d) review: Vuilleumier: https://www.persee.fr/doc/rvart_0035-1326_1993_num_99_1_348099_t1_0084_0
 - (e) review: Jodogne Pierre [Jodogne \(1995\)](#)
 - (f) Chapitre dans irem Histoire...
8. Léo Battista ALBERTI "De Pittura" 1436. (?)Traduction de Jean- Pierre Le Goff. Texte et traduction originaux dans Les Cahiers de la Perspective n° 4 Irem de Basse-Normandie Caen.
9. Heinich: [Heinich \(1983\)](#) https://www.persee.fr/doc/arss_0335-5322_1983_num_49_1_2198: La perspective académique [article] Peinture et tradition lettrée : la référence aux mathématiques dans les théories de l'art au 17ème siècle
10. <https://www.math.utah.edu/~treiberg/Perspect/Perspect.htm>.
11. <https://elccarignanhistoiredelart1ereannee.blogspot.com/2021/10/blog-post.html>
see lyx document.
 - (a) <https://drive.google.com/file/d/0Bz4Gx3D4ZlgGZ1EtcUxibGNaVVU/view?resourcekey=0-kRXXD77eHG9ysBB5VdGV2w>
 - (b) https://drive.google.com/file/d/0Bz4Gx3D4ZlgGZzlsaG1hb0hxX1U/view?resourcekey=0-m59GO8_MKDzwPf_hut3Ggg
12. <http://elccarignanhistoiredelart2emeannee.blogspot.com/>
13. <https://www.essentialvermeer.com/technique/perspective/history.html>

Chapter 17

Cremona group and isoconjugacies

Notation 17.0.1. From now on, the four upright bold letters $\mathbf{a}, \mathbf{b}, \mathbf{c}, \mathbf{d}$ are four complex numbers involved in a Cremona homographic transforms, not to be confused with the slanted letters a, b, c which are used to note the sidelengths of a given triangle. In this context, $\mathbf{a}', \mathbf{b}', \mathbf{c}', \mathbf{d}'$ are four other (independent) complex variables, the relations $\mathbf{a}' = \bar{\mathbf{a}}$, etc being assumed only for visible objects.

The context should be sufficient to avoid any confusion between a and \mathfrak{a} , etc. Moreover, a careful reader will not confuse upright characters with italic ones.

17.1 Homographic Cremona transforms of the projective plane

Definition 17.1.1. The upper spherical map of the Morley space $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$ is the projection $\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \mapsto \mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T}$, while the lower spherical map is the projection $\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \mapsto \overline{\mathbf{Z}} : \mathbf{T}$. Each of them sends $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$ onto (yet another copy) of the Riemann sphere $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^2)$.

Definition 17.1.2. (reminder) An homography ψ is an element of $\mathbb{PGL}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^2)$. Such object can be seen as

$$z \mapsto \psi(z) \doteq \frac{az + b}{cz + d}$$

acting on the Riemann sphere $\overline{\mathbb{C}}$.

Construction 17.1.3. *Construct the middle of a subtangent $[J, K]$, even if E is inside the conic (so that only pole and BC are available, see Figure 17.1). Obtain T , the contact point and join to the center O . Then OT cuts $FG = \text{pole}$ at some point L . And finally, EL cuts BC at M which is the required middle of $[J, K]$. See [pappus \(2017\)](#) for some context, and [Construction 26.10.12](#) for an application.*

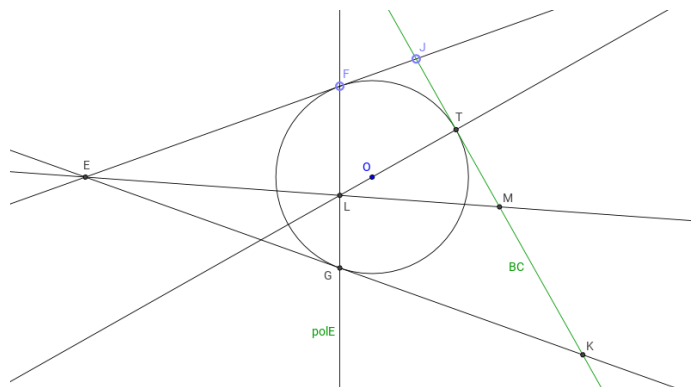


Figure 17.1: Construct the middle of a subtangent

Proof. A first step is to prove the result for the unit circle when E lies outside the circle and nothing goes at infinity, so that ordinary complex numbers can be used. Let F be a point on the unit circle, note $z_F = \alpha$ and let $z_G = 1/\alpha$. The tangents at F and G cut at a point E on the real axis, and $x_E = 2\alpha/(1 + \alpha^2)$. We have $FG \simeq [\alpha : -1 - \alpha^2 : \alpha]$.

Then define $J = E + k\overrightarrow{EF}$, $K = E + k'\overrightarrow{EG}$. If we require that JK remains tangent to \mathfrak{C} , this induces an homography between parameters:

$$k' = \frac{-4k + 4}{(\alpha^{+2} - 2 + \alpha^{-2})k + 4} = \frac{x_E^2 k - x_E^2}{(x_E^2 - 1)k - x_E^2}$$

Straightforward computations are leading to:

$$z_T = \frac{k\alpha(1 - \alpha^2) - 2\alpha}{k(\alpha^2 - 1) - 2\alpha^2} ; z_L = \alpha \frac{(\alpha^2 - 1)^2 k^2 + 4(\alpha^2 - 1)k + 4}{(\alpha^2 - 1)^2 k^2 + 4\alpha^2}$$

$$z_M = \frac{\alpha((\alpha^2 - 1)k + 2)((\alpha^2 - 1)^2 k + 6\alpha^2 + 2)}{2(\alpha^2 + 1)((\alpha^2 - 1)^2 k + 4\alpha^2)}$$

And we can check that $z_J + z_K = 2z_M$.

The key point is that line FG is the polar of E and therefore remains visible even if E goes inside the circle, while α ceases to be a "true" turn and J, K become conjugate invisible points on the visible line $BC \simeq \left[\frac{k(\alpha^2 - 1) - 2\alpha^2}{\alpha(k(\alpha^2 - 1) + 2)}, 2, \frac{\alpha(k(\alpha^2 - 1) + 2)}{k(\alpha^2 - 1) - 2\alpha^2} \right]$. \square

Definition 17.1.4. A **Cremona homography** combines two ordinary homographies, each of them acting on its own Riemann sphere. This can be seen as:

$$\Psi \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \end{pmatrix} \doteq (\psi, \psi') \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \frac{a\mathbf{Z} + b\mathbf{T}}{c\mathbf{Z} + d\mathbf{T}} \\ 1 \\ \frac{a'\overline{\mathbf{Z}} + b'\mathbf{T}}{c'\overline{\mathbf{Z}} + d'\mathbf{T}} \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} (a\mathbf{Z} + b\mathbf{T})(c'\overline{\mathbf{Z}} + d'\mathbf{T}) \\ (c\mathbf{Z} + d\mathbf{T})(c'\overline{\mathbf{Z}} + d'\mathbf{T}) \\ (a'\overline{\mathbf{Z}} + b'\mathbf{T})(c\mathbf{Z} + d\mathbf{T}) \end{pmatrix}$$

A visible homography is such that visible points are transformed into visible points. This implies the obvious relations of complex conjugacy between the coefficients of ψ and ψ' .

Theorem 17.1.5. Consider a proper conic \mathcal{C} in the projective plane and two fixed tangents Δ_1, Δ_2 to that conic. A moving tangent Δ cuts Δ_1 at M and Δ_2 at N . If we adopt two linear parametrization, k on Δ_1 and K on Δ_2 , the relation $M \mapsto N$ induces an homography between parameters k and K . Moreover correspondence $\Delta_1 \hookrightarrow \Delta_2 : M \mapsto N$ can be extended into a transform Ψ that acts into $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$ and looks like a pair of homographies $\psi, \overline{\psi}$, each of them acting onto one of the spherical maps.

Proof. Consider the inscribed conic whose auxiliary line is $Q = [u, v, w]$. Consider lines AB, AC and parametrize by $M = kA + (1 - k)B$, $N = KB + (1 - K)C$. Assume that MN is tangent to \mathcal{C} and obtain :

$$K = \frac{k w}{(u + v + w)k - v}$$

This proves the first part. Using the Lubin transmutation, we have :

$$M_z \doteq \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \end{pmatrix} \simeq \boxed{\text{aller}} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} k \\ 1 - k \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \alpha k + \beta(1 - k) \\ 1 \\ \frac{k}{\alpha} + \frac{1 - k}{\beta} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$N_z \doteq \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z}' \\ \mathbf{T}' \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}}' \end{pmatrix} \simeq \boxed{\text{aller}} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} K \\ 0 \\ 1 - K \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \alpha k w + \gamma(ku + vk - v) \\ k(u + v + w) - v \\ \frac{k w}{\alpha} + \frac{ku + vk - v}{\gamma} \end{pmatrix}$$

Identifying with respect to parameter k , we are conducted to define

$$\boxed{\psi} = \begin{pmatrix} (\gamma(u+v) + \alpha w) & -(\beta\gamma u + \gamma\alpha v + \alpha\beta w) \\ u+v+w & -(\alpha v + \beta(u+w)) \end{pmatrix}$$

in order to have :

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z}' \\ \mathbf{T}' \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}}' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \psi_{11} & \psi_{12} & 0 \\ \psi_{21} & \psi_{22} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z}' \\ \mathbf{T}' \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}}' \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \overline{\psi_{22}} & \overline{\psi_{21}} \\ 0 & \overline{\psi_{12}} & \overline{\psi_{11}} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \end{pmatrix} \quad \square$$

Theorem 17.1.6. (Continued). Finally, the four focuses of \mathcal{C} are the fixed points of the transform Ψ that acts into $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$ while the projections of the focuses onto the upper spherical map are the two ordinary fixed points of $\psi \in \mathbb{PGL}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^2)$.

Proof. Fixed points of ψ are the roots of :

$$(u+v+w)\mathbf{Z}^2 - (\alpha(v+w) + \beta(w+u) + \gamma(u+v))\mathbf{Z}\mathbf{T} + (\beta\gamma u + \gamma\alpha v + \alpha\beta w)\mathbf{T}^2 = 0$$

This equation can be rewritten into :

$$\frac{u}{\mathbf{Z} - \alpha\mathbf{T}} + \frac{v}{\mathbf{Z} - \beta\mathbf{T}} + \frac{w}{\mathbf{Z} - \gamma\mathbf{T}} = 0$$

and this equation characterizes the focuses of the conic in the upper map. \square

Notation 17.1.7. We will use concurrently $f_1, f_2 \in \mathbb{C}$, but also $z_1 : t_1 : \zeta_1$ and $z_2 : t_2 : \zeta_2 \in \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$ to describe the fixed points of ψ .

Proposition 17.1.8. Let $z \mapsto (az + b) / (cz + d)$ be an homography ψ of the Riemann sphere. If we assume that the fixed points are not equal, then ψ is characterized by a number $K \in \mathbb{C}$ that is neither 0 nor ∞ . We call it the **multiplier** of ψ and we have :

$$K \doteq \text{cross_ratio}(f_2, f_1, z, \psi(z)) = \frac{cf_2 + d}{cf_1 + d} = \psi'(f_1) = \frac{1}{\psi'(f_2)}$$

Conversely, when f_1, f_2, K are given, then ψ is given by:

$$a = k\kappa \frac{z_2}{t_2} - \frac{z_1}{t_1} ; b = \frac{z_1 z_2}{t_1 t_2} (1 - k\kappa) ; c = k\kappa - 1 ; d = \frac{z_2}{t_2} - \frac{k\kappa z_1}{t_1} \quad (17.1)$$

Proof. To see that, for any $z_3, z_4 \in \mathbb{C}$, $\text{cross_ratio}(f_2, f_1, z_3, \psi(z_3)) = \text{cross_ratio}(f_2, f_1, z_4, \psi(z_4))$, use the fact that $\text{cross_ratio}(f_2, f_1, z_3, z_4)$ is invariant by ψ . The rest is obvious from definitions. \square

Corollary 17.1.9. As a result, the Riemann homography $\psi \in \mathbb{PGL}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^2)$ induces a visible Cremona homography $\Psi : \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3) \hookrightarrow \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$ defined by

$$\Psi \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \frac{(k\kappa t_1 z_2 - t_2 z_1)\mathbf{Z} - z_1 z_2 (k\kappa - 1)\mathbf{T}}{(k\kappa - 1)t_1 t_2 \mathbf{Z} - (z_1 t_2 k\kappa - z_2 t_1)\mathbf{T}} \\ 1 \\ \frac{(kt_1 \zeta_2 - \kappa t_2 \zeta_1)\overline{\mathbf{Z}} - \zeta_1 \zeta_2 (k - \kappa)\mathbf{T}}{(k - \kappa)t_1 t_2 \overline{\mathbf{Z}} - (kt_2 \zeta_1 - \kappa t_1 \zeta_2)\mathbf{T}} \end{bmatrix} \quad (17.2)$$

and, in turn, Ψ admits the four fixed points:

$$F_1 \simeq \frac{z_2}{t_2} : 1 : \frac{\zeta_2}{t_2} ; F_2 \simeq \frac{z_2}{t_2} : 1 : \frac{\zeta_1}{t_1} ; F_3 \simeq \frac{z_1}{t_1} : 1 : \frac{\zeta_2}{t_2} ; F_4 \simeq \frac{z_1}{t_1} : 1 : \frac{\zeta_1}{t_1} \quad (17.3)$$

Lemma 17.1.10. *A more symmetric quantity is :*

$$\sigma \doteq k + \frac{1}{k} - 2 = \frac{(k-1)^2}{k} = \frac{(a-d)^2 + 4bc}{ad-bc}$$

Proof. Direct computation. □

Remark 17.1.11. An homography $z \mapsto (az + b) / (cz + d)$ of the Riemann sphere is involutory when $a + d = 0$.

Proposition 17.1.12. *The focal transform described at (17.2) is transmuted into the following standardized transform :*

$$\Psi_0 \doteq \mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \mapsto \frac{(1+\mu)\mathbf{Z} + (1-\mu)\mathbf{T}}{(1-\mu)\mathbf{Z} + (1+\mu)\mathbf{T}} : 1 : \frac{(1+\nu)\overline{\mathbf{Z}} + (1-\nu)\mathbf{T}}{(1-\nu)\overline{\mathbf{Z}} + (1+\nu)\mathbf{T}}$$

by similarity :

$$\begin{pmatrix} f_1 - f_2 & f_1 + f_2 & 0 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & \overline{f_1 + f_2} & \overline{f_1 - f_2} \end{pmatrix}$$

while Ψ can be factored into :

$$\Psi = \text{trans} \circ \sigma \circ \text{multi} \circ \text{trans}$$

where the Cremona transform σ , the multiplication and the translation (the same translation is applied once and again, not once and the reverse afterward) are defined by :

$$\sigma \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 1/\mathbf{Z} \\ 1/\mathbf{T} \\ 1/\overline{\mathbf{Z}} \end{pmatrix}, \quad \boxed{\text{multi}} = \begin{pmatrix} \sigma_\mu & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -4 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \sigma_\nu \end{pmatrix}, \quad \boxed{\text{trans}} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \frac{\mu+1}{\mu-1} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{\nu+1}{\nu-1} & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. Direct computation. □

17.2 Defining the general Cremona transforms

Definition 17.2.1. The Cremona group is defined as the set of the bi-rational transforms of $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$. Therefore a transformation $\Psi \in \text{Cremona}$ can be written as :

$$\Psi(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) = \psi_1(\mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{T}, \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) : \psi_2(\mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{T}, \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) : \psi_3(\mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{T}, \overline{\mathbf{Z}})$$

where the ψ_j are three homogeneous polynomials of the same degree. And the existence of another transform $\Phi \in \text{Cremona}$ is assumed so that, at least formally, $(\Phi \circ \Psi)(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) \simeq (\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}})$.

Exercise 17.2.2. What can be said about the degrees when two transforms are inverse of each other ? See [Diller \(2011\)](#)

Definition 17.2.3. Given a Cremona transform, we define the *indeterminacy points* and the *exceptional curves* by :

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Ind}(\Psi) &= \{ M \mid \psi_1(M) = \psi_2(M) = \psi_3(M) = 0 \} \\ \text{Exc}(\Psi) &= \left\{ M \mid \det \frac{\partial(\psi_1, \psi_2, \psi_3)}{\partial(\mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{T}, \overline{\mathbf{Z}})} = 0 \right\} \end{aligned}$$

Exercise 17.2.4. What do you think about : A quadratic transformation $f \in \text{Cremona}$ acts by blowing up three (indeterminacy) points $\text{Ind}(f) = \{p_1^+, p_2^+, p_3^+\}$ and blowing down the (exceptional) lines joining them. Typically, the points and the lines are distinct, but they can occur with multiplicity. Then f^{-1} is also a quadratic transformation and $\text{Ind}(f^{-1}) = \{p_1^-, p_2^-, p_3^-\}$ consists of the images of the three exceptional lines ?

Remark 17.2.5. This simple relation between indeterminacy points and exceptional curves does not hold for higher degree transforms.

Theorem 17.2.6. *The Cremona group is generated by collineations and the "inverse everything" transform i.e. $\sigma : (\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) \mapsto (\mathbf{T}\overline{\mathbf{Z}} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{Z}\mathbf{T})$.*

Proof. A detailed proof can be found in [Alberich-Carramiñana \(2002\)](#), and an historical sketch is given in [Déserti \(2009a\)](#). The idea is to separate infinitely neighbor points in $\text{Ind}(\psi)$ if required and then proceed to a descending recursion over the cardinal of $\text{Ind}(\psi)$. \square

17.3 Working out some examples

*** references [Alexander \(1916\)](#) [Coble \(1922\)](#) [Trkovska \(2008\)](#) should be introduced here ***

Example 17.3.1. Transform ρ is $\rho(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) = (\mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}} : \mathbf{T}\overline{\mathbf{Z}} : \mathbf{T}^2)$. This is an involution. The set $\text{Ind}(\rho)$ contains $1 : 0 : 0$ (twice) and $0 : 0 : 1$. The exceptional locus is the reunion of the contraction lines $\mathbf{T} = 0$ and $\overline{\mathbf{Z}} = 0$. The decomposition of this transform can be conducted as described in Table 17.1.

	result	$\text{Ind}(\psi)$	transform
1	$\begin{pmatrix} xz \\ yz \\ y^2 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$
2	$\begin{pmatrix} (x+y)z \\ yz \\ (y-z)y \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$	σ
3	$\begin{pmatrix} (y-z)y \\ (x+y)(y-z) \\ (x+y)z \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} +1 \\ -1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$
4	$\begin{pmatrix} (y-z)y \\ (x+y)(y-z) \\ (x+y)y \end{pmatrix}$	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} +1 \\ -1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix}$	σ
5	$\begin{pmatrix} x+y \\ y \\ y-z \end{pmatrix}$	none	$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$
6	$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix}$	none	

Table 17.1: Reduction of a Cremona transform

Example 17.3.2. Transform μ is $\mu(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) = (\mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}} : \mathbf{Z}^2 - \mathbf{T}\overline{\mathbf{Z}} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}^2)$. This is an involution. The points of indeterminacy form a sequence of infinitely close neighbor $\mu_3^+ \ll \mu_2^+ \ll \mu_1^+ = 0 : 1 : 0$. Similarly, the exceptional locus is line $\overline{\mathbf{Z}} = 0$, counted three times. Due to this specificity, its Cremona factorization is longer. A description of this process is given in [Déserti \(2008–2009\)](#), leading to a nine steps process $(\phi_5\sigma\phi_4\sigma\phi_3\sigma\phi_2\sigma\phi_1)$.

17.4 Isoconjugacy and sqrtdiv operator

Definition 17.4.1. Let us recall the **heuristic definition of the sqrtdiv operator** that was already given at Definition 1.4.10. We start from triangle ABC and 'fix' a point F not on the sidelines. If we call $f : g : h$ it's ABC -barycentrics, then $U_F^\#$, the sqrtdiv image of $U \simeq u : v : w$ is defined by :

$$\text{sqrtdiv}_F(U) \doteq U_F^\# \doteq \frac{f^2}{u} : \frac{g^2}{v} : \frac{h^2}{w} \quad (17.4)$$

Remark 17.4.2. Maps sqrtdiv and sqrtmul are related with cevian nests (Table 3.2, case III).

Proposition 17.4.3. *The operator sqrtdiv is globally type-keeping and therefore is a pointwise transform. Seen as a $U \mapsto U_F^\#$ transform, we have clearly a Cremona-wise involution. The fixed points are the four $\pm f : \pm g : \pm h$, i.e. F and its associates under the Lemoine transforms wrt triangle ABC ... In other words, any of the F_j and the vertices of its anticevian triangle.*

Proof. Obvious from definition. \square

Corollary 17.4.4. *When U is on line $F_j F_k$, so is $U_F^\#$ and we have :*

$$\text{cross_ratio}(F_j, F_k, U, U_F^\#) = -1$$

Proof. We have : $\det(F_1, F_2, U_F^\#) = (-gh/vw) \times \det(F_1, F_2, U)$. \square

Construction 17.4.5. . *When a pair $P, P^\#$ is known, the image $M^\#$ of a given point M can be constructed by ruler only. As a proof, the coordinates of the corresponding points are given, using $P \simeq p : q : r$, $P^\# \simeq u : v : w$, $M \simeq x : y : z$)*

1. $E_0 \doteq AM \cap CP^\# \simeq [uy, vy, vz]$
2. $E_1 \doteq PM \cap BC \simeq [0, qx - py, rx - pz]$
3. $E_2 \doteq AP \cap E_0 E_1 \simeq [puy, qvx, rvx]$
4. $E_3 \doteq AB \cap E_0 E_2 \simeq [uy(pz - rx), vx(qz - ry), 0]$
5. $M^\# \doteq CE_2 \cap E_3 P^\# \simeq \left[\frac{pu}{x}, \frac{qv}{y}, \frac{rw}{z} \right]$

Theorem 17.4.6. Formal definition of the sqrtdiv operator. *Start from four independent points F_1, F_2, F_3, F_4 (three of them are never on the same line). Call ABC their diagonal triangle, i.e. define*

$$A = F_1 F_4 \cap F_2 F_3 ; B = F_2 F_4 \cap F_1 F_3 ; C = F_3 F_4 \cap F_1 F_2$$

For any point U in the plane, draw both conics :

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{C}_{12} &\doteq \mathcal{C}(U, F_1, F_2, F_1 F_4 \cap F_2 F_3, F_2 F_4 \cap F_1 F_3) = \mathcal{C}(U, F_1, F_2, A, B) \\ \mathcal{C}_{34} &\doteq \mathcal{C}(U, F_3, F_4, F_1 F_4 \cap F_2 F_3, F_2 F_4 \cap F_1 F_3) = \mathcal{C}(U, F_3, F_4, A, B) \end{aligned}$$

Their fourth intersection is independent of the order chosen for the set $\{F_j\}$ and is the sqrtdiv_F image of U that was formerly defined wrt ABC , the diagonal triangle of the F_j .

Proof. Choose an order over set $\{F_j\}$, use the above defined triangle ABC as the reference triangle and let $f : g : h$ be the barycentrics of F_4 in this context. Then F_1, F_2, F_3 is the anticevian triangle of F_4 wrt ABC , enforcing $F_1 = -f : g : h$, etc. Compute the conics using the usual 6×6 determinant and obtain :

$$\begin{aligned} \boxed{\mathcal{C}_{12}} &\simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & h^2 w (fv + gu) & -g (fgw^2 + h^2 uv) \\ h^2 w (fv + gu) & 0 & -f (fgw^2 + h^2 uv) \\ -g (fgw^2 + h^2 uv) & -f (fgw^2 + h^2 uv) & 2 fgw (fv + gu) \end{bmatrix} \\ \boxed{\mathcal{C}_{34}} &\simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & h^2 w (gu - fv) & g (fgw^2 - h^2 uv) \\ h^2 w (gu - fv) & 0 & f (h^2 uv - fgw^2) \\ g (fgw^2 - h^2 uv) & f (h^2 uv - fgw^2) & 2 fgw (fv - gu) \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Computing their re-intersection is straightforward, and the symmetry of the result implies the independence from the way the set $\{F_j\}$ was ordered. \square

Construction 17.4.7. The fixed points. Given generic A, B, C, U, V the fixed points of the ABC -isoconjugacy that exchanges U, V are obtained as intersection of conics γ_U and γ_V where γ_U is the conic that goes through U , the anticevians of U and cevian (V, U) , etc. Remark: line UV is tangent at U to γ_U and at V to γ_V .

Proof. Equation of γ_U is $(g^2r^2 - h^2q^2)x^2 + (h^2p^2 - f^2r^2)y^2 + (f^2q^2 - g^2p^2)z^2 = 0$. It is obvious that the four F_j belong to this conic. \square

Construction 17.4.8. The fourth harmonic (harmonic conjugate of point $U \in (F_1, F_2)$ wrt points F_1, F_2) can be constructed by choosing two arbitrary points F_3, F_4 and then using the sqrtdiv operator having the four F_j as fixed points. If we chose F_3, F_4 in order to obtain the middle of F_1F_2 and the two umbilics as triangle ABC , we obtain the usual construction using one circle from the pencil admitting F_1F_2 as base points and one from the pencil admitting F_1F_2 as limit points.

Definition 17.4.9. Isoconjugacy. Forget that $f^2 : g^2 : h^2$ are the squares of the barycentrics of four points, and consider them as the barycentrics of a new point, called the pole $P = p : q : r$ of the transform. Then the isoconjugate of $U = u : v : w$ wrt pole P is obtained by:

$$U_P^* = (u : v : w)_P^* \doteq pvw : qwu : ruv \quad (17.5)$$

Remark 17.4.10. This transform was introduced in order to unify isotomic conjugacy (Section 3.4) and isogonal conjugacy into a common frame... and also to deal with the reluctance towards imaginary focuses. When using barycentrics, isotomic conjugacy is obtained with $P = X_2$ and isogonal conjugacy with $P = X_6$. When using trilinears, you have to use (respectively) $P = X_{75}$ and $P = X_1$. When X_2 is special, its isogonal conjugate X_6 is special too. When X_1 is special, its isotomic conjugate X_{75} is special too.

Remark 17.4.11. Isoconjugacy $U \mapsto U^*$, considered as a function of U alone is type-crossing, so that it is not so clear to say that this mapping has four fixed points (real or not), namely the points $F_i \doteq \pm\sqrt{p} : \pm\sqrt{q} : \pm\sqrt{r}$.

Remark 17.4.12. Most of the time, barycentric multiplication appears as the result of two successive isoconjugacies, according to :

$$(X_U^*)_P^* = X *_b U_P^*$$

For example, $\text{isot}(\text{isog}(X)) = (X_6^*)_2^* = X *_b \text{isot}(X_6)$ while $\text{isog}(\text{isot}(X)) = (X_2^*)_6^* = X *_b \text{isog}(X_2)$

17.4.1 Some other constructions

Remark 17.4.13. A construction has already been given at Construction 3.12.1. It "suffices" to draw \mathcal{T}_2 as the anticevian of F and then \mathcal{T}_3 as the anticevian of U wrt triangle \mathcal{T}_2 . Then $\text{sqrtdiv}_F(U)$ is the perspector of $\mathcal{T}_1 = ABC$ with \mathcal{T}_3 . But constructing anti-cevian triangles is not so easy.

Fact 17.4.14. Let be given A, B, C, U, V in generic position (without alignments). Then the ABC -isoconjugacy ψ that exchanges U, V can be constructed as follows. Once for ever, point R is chosen on line UV and its cevian triangle $A_R B_R C_R$ is obtained, and triangle \mathcal{T}_1 is constructed as :

$$A_1 = VA \cap UA_R, B_1 = VB \cap UB_R, C_1 = VC \cap UC_R$$

Then consider a point X not on the sidelines, define triangle \mathcal{T}_2 by $A_2 = A_1X \cap BC$ (etc) and triangle \mathcal{T}_3 as cross $(\mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_2)$ i.e. $A_3 = B_1C_2 \cap C_1B_2$ (etc). It happens that triangle ABC and $A_3B_3C_3$ are perspective, and this perspector is the required point $\psi(X)$.

Proof. Put $V = p : q : r$ and $U = u : v : w$. Express R as $R = V - \rho U$. Existence of A_1 requires $wq - vr \neq 0$, i.e. A, U, V not collinear. The result is :

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{T}_1 &= \begin{pmatrix} \rho u & p & p \\ q & \rho v & q \\ r & r & \rho w \end{pmatrix}, & \mathcal{T}_2 &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \rho vx - py & \rho wx - pz \\ \rho uy - qx & 0 & \rho wy - qz \\ \rho uz - rx & \rho vz - ry & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ \mathcal{T}_3 &= \begin{pmatrix} p(yw + zv) - \rho vwx & puz & puy \\ qvz & q(zu + xv) - \rho wuy & qxv \\ rwy & rwx & r(xv + yu) - \rho uvz \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

and the perspector is : $pu/x : qv/y : rw/z$ as required. In (Dean and van Lamoen, 2001), ψ was called **reciprocal conjugacy**. \square

Fact 17.4.15. *Another construction, with same hypotheses (A, B, C, U, V given, without alignments). Consider the conic γ that goes through A, B, C, U, V , and the traces of UV on the side-lines, i.e. $T_a \doteq UV \cap BC$, etc. For a moving point X , call shadows of X the re-intersections X_a, X_b, X_c of lines AX, BX, CX and the conic γ . Then traces and shadows are collinear, i.e. Y_a is the second intersection of $T_a X_a$ with γ , etc.*

Proof. Direct computation. Here again $wq - vr \neq 0$, etc is required. \square

17.4.2 Morley point of view

Proposition 17.4.16. Isogonal conjugacy. *The Morley affix of the isogonal conjugate of point $P = \mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \bar{\mathbf{Z}}$ is given by :*

$$isog \left(\begin{array}{c} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \\ \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \end{array} \right) \simeq \left(\begin{array}{c} \sigma_3 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 - \mathbf{Z}\mathbf{T} - \sigma_2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}\mathbf{T} + \sigma_1 \mathbf{T}^2 \\ \mathbf{T}^2 - \mathbf{Z}\bar{\mathbf{Z}} \\ \frac{1}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^2 - \frac{\sigma_1}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}\mathbf{T} - \bar{\mathbf{Z}}\mathbf{T} + \frac{\sigma_2}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{T}^2 \end{array} \right) \quad (17.6)$$

Proof. This formula can be stated using the representation of first degree. Start from point P and obtain Δ_A , the A -isogonal of line AP , by solving :

$$\begin{aligned} \Delta_A \cdot A &= 0 \\ \tan(AB, \Delta_A) + \tan(AC, AP) &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Compute $\Delta_A \wedge \Delta_B$ and obtain a symmetric expression, proving that Δ_C goes also through this point. One can check that $isog(\Omega^+) = \Omega^-$ and vice versa. \square

Exercise 17.4.17. Use unimodular α, β, γ to describe the reference triangle of the complex plane. Let $P \simeq \mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \bar{\mathbf{Z}}$ be the generic point, P^* its isogonal conjugate wrt ABC and $U = (P + P^*)/2$. Let O be the circum-center, and $N = X(5)$ the Euler center. Use formula (17.6), (14.10), and the usual law $s \star t = (s + t)/(1 - st)$ to check that quantity :

$$\psi(P) \doteq \text{tandrs}(Ox, OP) \star \text{tandrs}(Ox, OP^*) \star \text{tandrs}(Ox, NU)$$

is independent of P . One can also use barycentrics, and use BC instead of Ox as reference line. The question is: what does this prove ?

Proposition 17.4.18. *The four **inexcenters** of triangle ABC are enumerated by the polynomial :*

$$\zeta^4 - 2\sigma_2 \zeta^2 + 8\sigma_3 \zeta + (\sigma_2^2 - 4\sigma_1 \sigma_3) \quad (17.7)$$

Proof. The fixed points of the isogonal transform are obtained by solving the equation $\mathbf{T} isog(M) - (\mathbf{T}^2 - \mathbf{Z}\bar{\mathbf{Z}})M = 0$. This gives two polynomials of degree 3, that are not self-conjugate but conjugate of each other. The corresponding algebraic curves are not visible. Intersecting these curves, we obtain nine points. Among them, are both umbilics. The umbilical pair is fixed, but a given umbilic is not fixed. They are nevertheless appearing since both \mathbf{T} and $\mathbf{T}^2 - \mathbf{Z}\bar{\mathbf{Z}}$ are vanishing here. When computing the $\bar{\mathbf{Z}}$ resultant of these polynomials, we obtain an eight degree polynomial that factors into :

$$\mathbf{T} \times \prod_3 (\mathbf{Z} - \alpha \mathbf{T}) \times \text{poly}_4(\mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{T})$$

The umbilical pair is represented by \mathbf{T} , vertices are appearing and it remains the required polynomial of degree 4: this gives the $2 + 3 + 7 = 9$ intersections of two degree 3 curves. To be sure of what happens, we can compute the \mathbf{T} resultant of both polynomials and obtain :

$$\mathbf{Z}\bar{\mathbf{Z}} \times \prod_3 (\mathbf{Z} - \alpha^2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}) \times \text{poly}_4(\mathbf{Z}, \bar{\mathbf{Z}})$$

where each point is represented by a specific factor. \square

Remark 17.4.19. When substituting $\alpha = \alpha^2$, etc (i.e. using the Lubin representation of second degree), polynomial (17.7) splits, with roots $\pm\beta\gamma \pm \gamma\alpha \pm \alpha\beta$ as required.

17.4.3 The isogonal Morley formula

Proposition 17.4.20. *Points $\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \bar{\mathbf{Z}}$ and $z : t : \zeta$ are isogonal conjugate of each other if and only if :*

$$\begin{cases} \sigma_3 \zeta \bar{\mathbf{Z}} + t \mathbf{Z} + z \mathbf{T} - \sigma_1 t \mathbf{T} & \stackrel{=}{=} \frac{0}{1} \\ z \mathbf{Z} + (\zeta \mathbf{T} + t \bar{\mathbf{Z}}) \sigma_3 - \sigma_2 t \mathbf{T} & \stackrel{=}{=} \frac{0}{1} \end{cases} \quad (17.8)$$

Since these equations are complex conjugates of each other, only one relation is required for visible points.

Proof. This is Corollary 9.8.3. A method to find such an expression ϑ is as follows. We search coefficients such that :

$$z \mathbf{Z} c_{00} + t \mathbf{Z} c_{01} + \zeta \mathbf{Z} c_{02} + z \mathbf{T} c_{10} + t \mathbf{T} c_{11} + \zeta \mathbf{T} c_{12} + z \bar{\mathbf{Z}} c_{20} + t \bar{\mathbf{Z}} c_{21} + \zeta \bar{\mathbf{Z}} c_{22} = 0$$

when conjugacy occurs. This formula must be symmetric in M and M^* , so that $c_{10} = c_{01}$, $c_{20} = c_{02}$, $c_{12} = c_{21}$. Writing that incenter is a fixed point gives us 4 equations, leaving two indeterminate coefficients. One obtains, for example, $c_{01} \vartheta + c_{12} \vartheta'$. And we can go back to Lubin-1. But ϑ' happens to be the complex conjugate of ϑ . Exactly as written, equation $\vartheta = 0$ defines a line. But this equation is not self-conjugate, and only a point of the line is visible. When cutting by $\text{conj} \vartheta$, we obtain a point (and a 2nd degree equation, as it should be). \square

Exercise 17.4.21. Apply the same method to the isotomic conjugacy, obtain the only possible formula... and conclude.

17.4.4 Isoconjkim

In the old ancient times, Kimberling (1998) introduced another definition of the isoconjugacy, in an attempt to unify isotomic and isogonal conjugacies into a broader concept. Thereafter, this definition was changed into the one given above. To avoid confusion with (17.5), we will use the term **isoconjkim** to describe the older concept.

Definition 17.4.22. isoconjkim. For points outside the sidelines of ABC , the Kimberley **P-isoconjkim** of U is the point X such the product of the trilinears of P, U, X gives $1 : 1 : 1$. Restated into barycentrics, this gives :

$$P \underset{b}{*} U \underset{b}{*} X = X_1 \underset{b}{*} X_1 \underset{b}{*} X_1 \quad (17.9)$$

In this transformation, P and U play the same role so that *isoconjkim* acts like a multiplication. On the other hand U and X play also the same role, so that *isoconjkim_P* is involutory. Description $X = \text{isoconjkim}_P(U)$ reflects the fact that second point of view is the more useful.

Example 17.4.23. Here is a list of various isoconjkim transformations. The *isogonal conjugation* is X_1 -*isoconjkim* while the *isotomic conjugation* is X_{31} -*isoconjkim*.

P	barycentrics	trilinears	pole	bar(pole)	fixed
$X(1)$	$a^2 \frac{1}{u}$	$1 \frac{1}{u}$	$X(6)$	a^2	$X(1)$
$X(2)$	$a^3 \frac{1}{u}$	$a \frac{1}{u}$	$X(31)$	a^3	$X(365)$
$X(3)$	$(a^2 / \cos A) \frac{1}{u}$	$(1 / \cos A) \frac{1}{u}$	$X(19)$	a / S_a	$X(???)$
$X(4)$	$a^2 \cos A \frac{1}{u}$	$\cos A \frac{1}{u}$	$X(48)$	$a^3 S_a$	$X(???)$
$X(6)$	$a \frac{1}{u}$	$(1/a) \frac{1}{u}$	$X(1)$	a	$X(366)$
$X(19)$	$a \cos A \frac{1}{u}$	$(\cos(A) / a) \frac{1}{u}$	$X(3)$	$a^2 S_a$	$X(???)$
$X(31)$	$1 \frac{1}{u}$	$(1/a^2) \frac{1}{u}$	$X(2)$	1	$X(2)$
$X(48)$	$(a / \cos A) \frac{1}{u}$	$1 / (a \cos A) \frac{1}{u}$	$X(4)$	$1 / S_a$	$X(???)$

17.5 Angular coordinates

17.5.1 The general case

Notation 17.5.1. We will use $\mathfrak{X}, \mathscr{Y}, \mathfrak{Z}$ (as introduced in [Lormeau, 1891](#)) instead of the previous α, β, γ which conflicted with the Lubin's parameterization.

Definition 17.5.2. Let P be a point neither at infinity nor on the circumcircle. The three angles $\mathfrak{X} \doteq (PB, PC)$, etc are called the **angular coordinates** of P . According to the following proposition, these angles characterizes the point P .

Proposition 17.5.3. *Let be given three finite numbers $\cot \mathfrak{X}, \cot \mathscr{Y}, \cot \mathfrak{Z}$. The locus of the points such that $\cot(PB, PC) = \cot \mathfrak{X}$ is a circle μ_a . The three circles μ_j are concurrent in a point P if and only if*

$$\begin{aligned} (\cot \mathfrak{X} - \cot A)(\cot \mathscr{Y} - \cot B)(\cot \mathfrak{Z} - \cot C) &\neq 0 \\ \mathfrak{X} + \mathscr{Y} + \mathfrak{Z} &\equiv 0 \end{aligned}$$

and then we have : $P \simeq \frac{1}{\cot(\mathfrak{X}) - \cot(A)} : \frac{1}{\cot(\mathscr{Y}) - \cot(B)} : \frac{1}{\cot(\mathfrak{Z}) - \cot(C)}$

Conversely, if $P = p : q : r$ then

$$\cot(\mathfrak{X}) - \cot(A) = -\frac{a^2qr + b^2pr + c^2pq}{2S(p+q+r)} \frac{1}{p} \quad (17.10)$$

Proof. Obtain $\mu_a \simeq S_a - 2S \cot \mathfrak{X} : 0 : 0 : 1$, etc from the very definition of μ_a . Then compute $\nu \doteq \bigwedge_3(\mu_a, \mu_b, \mu_c)$ and require that $\nu \cdot \begin{bmatrix} Q^{-1} \\ b \end{bmatrix} \cdot \nu = 0$. This gives a product of four factors. Condition $\cot \mathfrak{X} = \cot A$ leads to A or to the whole circumcircle, and is to be discarded. The last factor is the denominator of the well known addition formula. Thereafter, obtaining P is straightforward. \square

Example 17.5.4. Here are some points having simple angular coordinates

	X(1)	X(80)	X(36)	X(1)	X(265)	X(3)	X(4)	X(186)
	$(\pi + A)/2$	$(\pi - A)/2$	$(3A - \pi)/2$		$-2A$	$2A$	$-A$	$3A$
a	aX(80)	aX(1)	33599		aX(3)	aX(265)	x	5962
i		10260	iX(1)	iX(36)	5961	x	iX(186)	iX(4)
g	gX(1)	36	80	gX(1)	gX(186)	gX(4)	gX(3)	gX(265)

	X(14)	X(13)	X(15)	X(16)	P	aP	gaP=igP	gP
	$+\pi/3$	$-\pi/3$	$A + \pi/3$	$A - \pi/3$	\mathfrak{X}	$-\mathfrak{X}$	$A + \mathfrak{X}$	$A - \mathfrak{X}$
a	aX(13)	aX(14)	11600	11601	*	*		
i	6105	6104	iX(16)	iX(15)			*	*
g	gX(16)	gX(15)	gX(13)	gX(14)4		*	*	

Proposition 17.5.5. *When P, P' are isogonal conjugates (g), then $\mathfrak{X} + \mathfrak{X}' = A$, etc. When P, P' are inverse in the circumcircle (i), then $\mathfrak{X} + \mathfrak{X}' = 2A$, etc.*

Proof. Obvious from the definitions. One can also substitute the isogonal formula into $1/\cot(\mathfrak{X} + \mathfrak{X}' - A)$, or the invincircum formula into $1/\cot(\mathfrak{X} + \mathfrak{X}' - 2A)$... and conclude using 17.10 (See also [Bernès, 1891](#)). \square

17.5.2 More about the Steiner triangle

Proposition 17.5.6. *As already stated at Definition 9.1.2, the vertices of the **Steiner triangle** of a point P are the orthogonal reflections P_a, P_b, P_c on the sidelines of the reference triangle. Therefore, we have*

$$\text{Steiner} \begin{pmatrix} z \\ t \\ \zeta \end{pmatrix} \simeq_z \begin{bmatrix} \beta + \gamma - \beta\gamma \frac{\zeta}{t} & \alpha + \gamma - \gamma\alpha \frac{\zeta}{t} & \alpha + \beta - \alpha\beta \frac{\zeta}{t} \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \\ \frac{1}{\gamma} + \frac{1}{\beta} - \frac{z}{\gamma\beta t} & \frac{1}{\gamma} + \frac{1}{\alpha} - \frac{z}{\gamma\alpha t} & \frac{1}{\beta} + \frac{1}{\alpha} - \frac{z}{\beta\alpha t} \end{bmatrix} \quad (17.11)$$

while the direct and the skew homographies ϕ and ψ defined by $A \mapsto P_a$, $B \mapsto P_b$, $C \mapsto P_c$ are

$$\begin{aligned} \phi(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) &\simeq \frac{t^2 \mathbf{Z} - (s_1 t^2 - s_2 \zeta t + s_3 \zeta^2) \mathbf{T}}{t \zeta \mathbf{Z} - t^2 \mathbf{T}} : 1 : \frac{s_3 t^2 \overline{\mathbf{Z}} - (s_2 t^2 - s_1 z t + z^2) \mathbf{T}}{(s_3 z t \overline{\mathbf{Z}} - s_3 t^2 \mathbf{T})} \\ \psi(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) &\simeq \frac{(s_1 t^2 - s_2 \zeta t + s_3 \zeta^2) \overline{\mathbf{Z}} - t^2 \mathbf{T}}{t(t \overline{\mathbf{Z}} - \zeta \mathbf{T})} : 1 : \frac{(s_2 t^2 - s_1 z t + z^2) \mathbf{Z} - s_3 t^2 \mathbf{T}}{s_3 t(t \mathbf{Z} - z \mathbf{T})} \end{aligned}$$

Their poles are, respectively, $iP \simeq tz : z\zeta : t\zeta$ and P itself. Moreover ϕ is involutive.

Proof. Direct computation. Caveat: ψ is obtained using `collhomo`, while ϕ is obtained using `collvers`. \square

Fact 17.5.7. *One has the result:*

$$\text{Steiner}(P) \cdot \text{isogon}(P) \simeq P$$

Proposition 17.5.8. *The circles $AP_b P_c$, $P_a B P_c$, $P_a P_b C$ are going through a common point on the unit circle, the celebrated Miquel point.*

$$M_q \simeq \frac{s_3 \zeta - s_2 t}{z - s_1 t} : 1 : \frac{z - s_1 t}{s_3 \zeta - s_2 t}$$

Therefore the four circles $P_a P_b P_c$, $P_a B C$, $A P_b C$, $A B P_c$ are going through a common point, namely $\phi(M_q)$. See Figure 17.2 (Schoute, 1882).

Exercise 17.5.9. Write down the inclusive coordinates of the pedal triangle.

17.5.3 Antigonal conjugacy

Theorem 17.5.10. *Points P and $Q \doteq (\phi \circ M_q)(P)$ from 17.5.8 are said to be **antigonal conjugates**. They are satisfying $(PB, PC) + (QB, QC) = 0$, etc. Using the formerly given notations, this amounts to $\mathfrak{X} + \mathfrak{X}' = 0$, etc. Thus the antigen transform is involutive and satisfies*

$$\text{antigon} = \text{isogon} @ \text{invincir} @ \text{isogon}$$

Proof. We have $\text{clasim}((\phi \circ M_q)(P), B, C) * \text{clasim}(P, B, C) \simeq 1 : 0 : 1$ (see Proposition 15.3.10). \square

Proposition 17.5.11. *When point P is given either by $P_b \simeq p : q : r$ (barycentrics) or by $P_z \simeq \mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}$ (Lubin affixes), its antigonal Q is given by :*

$$\begin{aligned} Q &\simeq_b \begin{pmatrix} \frac{p}{(a^2 - b^2 - c^2)p^2 + (a^2 - b^2)pq + (a^2 - c^2)pr + a^2qr} \\ \frac{q}{(b^2 - c^2 - a^2)q^2 + (b^2 - c^2)qr + (b^2 - a^2)qp + b^2rp} \\ \frac{r}{(c^2 - a^2 - b^2)r^2 + (c^2 - a^2)rp + (c^2 - b^2)rq + c^2pq} \end{pmatrix} \\ Q &\simeq_z \begin{pmatrix} \frac{-\sigma_3 \mathbf{Z} \overline{\mathbf{Z}}^2 + (\sigma_2 \mathbf{Z} \overline{\mathbf{Z}} + \sigma_3 \sigma_1 \overline{\mathbf{Z}}^2) \mathbf{T} - \sigma_1 \mathbf{Z} \mathbf{T}^2 + (\sigma_3 - \sigma_1 \sigma_2) \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{T}^2 + (\sigma_1^2 - \sigma_2) \mathbf{T}^3}{(\sigma_3 \overline{\mathbf{Z}}^2 - \mathbf{Z} \mathbf{T} - \sigma_2 \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{T} + \sigma_1 \mathbf{T}^2) \mathbf{T}} \\ 1 \\ \frac{-\sigma_3 \mathbf{Z}^2 \overline{\mathbf{Z}} + (\sigma_2 \mathbf{Z}^2 + \sigma_1 \sigma_3 \mathbf{Z} \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) \mathbf{T} - (\sigma_1 \sigma_2 - \sigma_3) \mathbf{T}^2 \mathbf{Z} - \sigma_2 \sigma_3 \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{T}^2 + (\sigma_2^2 - \sigma_1 \sigma_3) \mathbf{T}^3}{\sigma_3 (\mathbf{Z}^2 - \sigma_1 \mathbf{Z} \mathbf{T} - \sigma_3 \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{T} + \sigma_2 \mathbf{T}^2) \mathbf{T}} \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Direct computation. \square

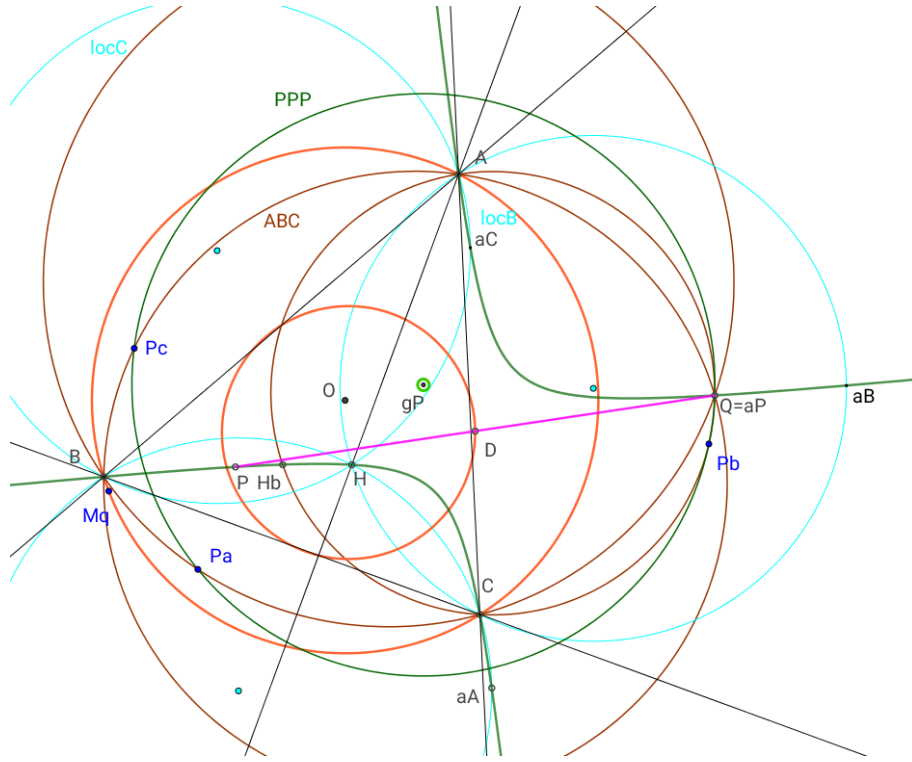


Figure 17.2: Antigonal conjugacy

Proposition 17.5.12. *The conic that goes through $A, B, C, P, Q \doteq \text{antigon}(A, B, C, P)$ is a rectangular hyperbola (and therefore, its center is on the NPC). It goes not only through Q and through $H \doteq X(A, B, C, 4)$ but it goes also through $aA \doteq \text{antigon}(P, B, C, A)$, etc and $H_a \doteq X(P, B, C, 4)$, etc. Moreover, (P, Q) are antipodes on this conic (and so are (A, aA) , etc. Circle $P_aP_bP_c$ is centered at isogon (P) and goes also through Q .*

Proof. Direct computation. One obtains, inter alia,

$$aA \simeq 1 : \frac{2(pS_a - rS_c)q}{q(p+r)a^2 - p(q+r)b^2} : \frac{2r(pS_a - qS_b)}{r(p+q)a^2 - p(q+r)c^2}$$

These results confirm the involutory nature of this transform. \square

Proposition 17.5.13. *Antigonal conjugacy is a 5th degree Cremona transform. The indeterminacy set contains the six following points: A, B, C, H and both umbilics. The exceptional locus is the reunion of six conics. Each of them goes through five points of $\text{Ind}(\text{antigon})$: circumcircle is blown-down into H , circle BCH (centered at $B+C-O$) is blown-down into A , idem for the other two vertices. Finally, curve :*

$$\gamma_y = \mathbf{Z}^2 - \sigma_1 \mathbf{ZT} - \sigma_3 \overline{\mathbf{Z}}\mathbf{T} + \sigma_2 \mathbf{T}^2$$

that goes through A, B, C, H, Ω_y is blown-down into Ω_y (the same umbilic), idem for the other umbilic.

Proof. Direct computation. \square

Proposition 17.5.14. *Define the ig transform as $ig = \text{invincir} \circ \text{isogon}$ then point $ig(A, B, C, P)$ is independent of the ordering of points A, B, C, P (Hyacinthos 20929).*

Proof. Transform triangle ABC into ABP , and thus C into $\phi^{-1}(P)$. Then use the usual change of triangle formula. Since ig only involves even powers of the sidelengths, everything goes fine... and the result follows. \square

Proposition 17.5.15. *Seen as a Cremona map, the ig transform has the same indeterminacy locus as the antigonial transform. The exceptional locus contains three lines and three conics. A sideline like BC blows-down into the opposite vertex A . Curve γ_x (the same as before) now blows down to Ω_y , while γ_y blows-down to Ω_x . Finally, the circumcircle blows-down to its center $X(3)$, while $X(3) \xrightarrow{\text{ig}} X(186)$ is regular and $X(265)$ is the only regular point that maps onto $H = X(4)$.*

Proof. This lack of symmetry (a curve that blows down to a regular point, a point of indeterminacy that does not blows-up under the reverse transform) is related to the fact that ig is not involutory. \square

17.6 Isogonality and perspectivity

Lemma 17.6.1. *Results from Proposition 3.8.11. Let \mathcal{T}_2 be a triangle perspective wrt $\mathcal{T}_1 = ABC$. Then triangle \mathcal{T}_2 , perspector P and perspectrix Δ can be written as :*

$$\mathcal{T}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} u & p & p \\ q & v & q \\ r & r & w \end{pmatrix} ; P \simeq p : q : r ; \Delta_2 = \left[\frac{1}{p-u} ; \frac{1}{q-v} ; \frac{1}{r-w} \right]$$

Point $U \simeq u : v : w$ is the perspector of \mathcal{T}_1 and $\mathcal{T}_3 \doteq \text{cross}(\mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_2)$. But, in these formulas, the same proportionality factor must be applied to (p, q, r) and (u, v, w) , so that factor $k \doteq (u + v + w) / (p + q + r)$ is a projective quantity.

Proposition 17.6.2. *Assume that vertices of \mathcal{T}_2 are not on the sidelines of \mathcal{T}_1 , and perspectivity as in Lemma 17.6.1. Define \mathcal{T}_2^* as the triangle whose vertices are the isogonal images of the \mathcal{T}_2 vertices. Then triangles \mathcal{T}_1 and \mathcal{T}_2^* are perspective, and P, U are replaced by P^* and U^* . Moreover, \mathcal{T}_2 and \mathcal{T}_2^* share the same perspectrix if and only if $U = k P^*$. In this case, the isogon \mathcal{T}_2^* and the crosstri \mathcal{T}_3 are equal.*

Proof. Computations are easy from the lemma. If A_1 is on BC then $A_2 = A$ and everything degenerates, etc. \square

Remark 17.6.3. This obviously occurs with the 27 Taylor-Marr triangles since, for example, A, B_1, C_2 are aligned on the same trisector (and cyclically).

Chapter 18

Pencils of cycles in the complex plane

In this chapter we will transpose to the Complex Plane what has already been done for the Triangle Plane at Chapter 13. There are three usual ways for this purpose, each of them using its own basis for the cycles space.

Veronese	$Ver_z(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) \simeq [\mathbf{Z}\mathbf{T}, \mathbf{T}^2, \overline{\mathbf{Z}}\mathbf{T}, \mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}}]$
Pedoe	$Ver_p(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) \simeq [\mathbf{Z}\mathbf{T}, \mathbf{T}^2, \overline{\mathbf{Z}}\mathbf{T}, \mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}} - \mathbf{T}^2]$
Spherical	$Ver_s(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) \simeq [2X\mathbf{T}, 2Y\mathbf{T}, \overline{\mathbf{Z}}\mathbf{Z} - \mathbf{T}^2, \mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}} + \mathbf{T}^2]$

The first choice is the simpler, the better. Dividing by four the size of each element of a 4×4 matrix divides the whole size by 64. The second choice is for comparison with the illuminating [Pedoe \(1970\)](#).

The third choice is rather an introduction to the stereographic formalism. This allows the most nice and intuitive figures (but there is a price to pay: computations are slower!).

Notation 18.0.1. For the the further use of the reader, we summarize here all the notations that will be introduced throughout this chapter.

index	barycent.	z Morley	p Pedoe	s Spherical
Veronese	Ver	Verz	Verp	Vers
Verx(∞)	Sirius	Sirius	Sirius	South pole
		Verb2Verz	Verp2Verb	Verb2Vers
\mathcal{Q}	mQQ	zQQ	pQQ	sQQ
\mathcal{Q}^{-1}	mQQI	zQQI	pQQI	sQQI
$[C_j] \mapsto \text{Gram}$	mkgram	mkzgram	mkpgram	mksgram
$eq \mapsto \mathcal{V}$	eq2colu	eq2coluz	eq2colup	eq2colus
$\mathcal{V} \mapsto (M, \rho^2)$	colu2bar	coluz2mor	colup2mor	colus2mor
$(M, \rho^2) \mapsto \mathcal{V}$	bar2colu	mor2coluz	mor2colup	mor2colus
$\mathcal{C} \mapsto \mathcal{V}$		mmz2colu	mmp2colu	mms2colu
$h \mapsto \text{action}$		mhatz	mhatp	mhats:

The induced objects will be named using the relevant index (z,p,s). For example, the (barycentric) matrix $\begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ b \end{bmatrix}$ will be declined as $\begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ z \end{bmatrix}$, $\begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ p \end{bmatrix}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ s \end{bmatrix}$.

Fact 18.0.2. In the Morley space, the equation

$$p \mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}} + (q_1 \mathbf{Z} + q_2 \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) \mathbf{T} + r \mathbf{T}^2 = 0$$

describes an ordinary, visible circle when $p = 1$, $q \doteq q_2 = \overline{q_1}$ and $\rho^2 \doteq q\overline{q} - r > 0$ (center is $-q$, radius is ρ). When $p = 0$, this describes the union of an ordinary line and the line at infinity (or the line at infinity where each point is counted twice, i.e. the horizon circle).

Definition 18.0.3. We will say that four points M_j are concyclic when

$$\det_{j=1}^4 \left(Ver_z(M_j) \right) = 0$$

Due to linearity, the Ver_z can be replaced (all the four at the same time) by the Ver_p or the Ver_s .

Definition 18.0.4. Alternatively, we can say that a **cycle** is a conic that goes through the **umbilics**, i.e. the points :

$$\Omega_x \doteq \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \Omega_y = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

We call it a "circle" when the conic is either \mathbf{T}^2 (the horizon circle) or isn't degenerate, and a "line" when it degenerates into the union of the line at infinity and another line.

Remark 18.0.5. When searching the intersection of two circles, we better subtract the normalized equations, and obtain $\mathbf{T}\Delta$ where Δ is the "flat" radical axis (first degree equation).

18.1 The Z formalism (Pencils in PCC3)

18.1.1 Z-Veronese map

lubo \boxed{Lu} luboo \boxed{Lu} luboo \boxed{Lv} lurret lurretq

Definition 18.1.1. The Veronese map used in the barycentric triangle plane was defined at (13.4). The Z-Veronese map used in the Z formalism is simply:

$$Ver_z(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) \simeq [\mathbf{ZT}, \mathbf{T}^2, \overline{\mathbf{ZT}}, \mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}}] \quad (18.1)$$

Proposition 18.1.2. Both umbilics are mapped to $[0,0,0,0]$ (points of indeterminacy) while all other points at infinity are mapped to $[0,0,0,1]$, called Sirius. When using $(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) = \boxed{\mathbf{b}\Phi\mathbf{m}}.(x : y : z)$, we have

$$Ver_z(\boxed{\mathbf{b}\Phi\mathbf{m}}.(x : y : z)) \simeq Ver_b(x : y : z) \cdot {}^t\boxed{\mathbf{b}\Psi\mathbf{m}} \quad \text{where } \boxed{\mathbf{b}\Psi\mathbf{m}} = \left(\frac{\boxed{\mathbf{b}\Phi\mathbf{m}}}{R^2, R^2, R^2} \middle| \begin{matrix} 0 \\ 1 \end{matrix} \right)$$

Proof. The $\boxed{\mathbf{b}\Phi\mathbf{m}}$ part is obvious, while the R^2 acknowledge the fact that (X_3, R) is the model of all the circles in the triangle plane. \square

Maple 18.1.3. One can check these results by:

```
subs(les1lon, VerB(1/bar2mor.vz)).Tr(vbar2mor): FActor(%);
Verz(norz(vz1)).zQOI. Tr(Verz(norz(vz2))); factor(% / zpytha(vz1,vz2));
```

Remark 18.1.4. The Veronese map amounts to generate the projective space of all the cycles from four of them, namely the horizon circle \mathbf{T}^2 (i.e. the line at infinity described twice), the fundamental isotropic lines (each of them completed by the line at infinity to obtain \mathbf{ZT} and $\overline{\mathbf{ZT}}$) and the "factored" circle $\mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}}$.

Proposition 18.1.5. The polar hyperplanes related to the $Ver_z(M_\tau)$ of all the points M_τ of a given cycle \mathcal{C} are going through a same point of $\mathbb{P}_\mathbb{C}(\mathbb{C}^4)$, called the circle representative, that will be noted $\mathcal{V}_z(\mathcal{C})$.

Proof. When the cycle is a circle, then it's generic point can be written as

$$\tau \simeq \frac{1}{t} (z : t : \zeta) + \rho \left(\tau : 0 : \frac{1}{\tau} \right)$$

and we only have to check that $\bigwedge_3 (V_z M_\tau, V_z M_{+1}, V_z M_{-1})$ doesn't depends on τ . As a result, we have:

$$\mathcal{V}_z [(z : t : \zeta), \rho^2] \doteq \left(-\zeta : \frac{z\zeta}{t} - t\rho^2 : -z : +t \right)$$

When the cycle is the line $\Delta \simeq [a, b, c]$ then $\mathcal{V}_z(\Delta) = a : b : c : 0$. □

Corollary 18.1.6. *The locus of the representatives \mathcal{V}_z of the $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$ lines is the plane*

$$\mathcal{P}_z \simeq [0 : 0 : 0 : 1]$$

Proposition 18.1.7. *The Veronese row-images of the ordinary $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$ points belong to a 3D quadric:*

$$V_z(P) \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q}^{-1} \\ z \end{bmatrix} \cdot {}^t V_z(P) = 0 \quad \text{where} \quad \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q}^{-1} \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (18.2)$$

Proof. We even have a more precise result: for any points at finite distance M_1, M_2 , one has:

$$V_z \left(\frac{M_1}{\mathcal{L}_z \cdot M_1} \right) \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q}^{-1} \\ z \end{bmatrix} \cdot {}^t V_z \left(\frac{M_2}{\mathcal{L}_z \cdot M_2} \right) = |M_1 M_2|^2$$

when V_z and $\begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q}^{-1} \\ z \end{bmatrix}$ are taken as exactly egal to their definitions (i.e. not up to a proportionality factor). □

Maple 18.1.8. One can check this result by:

```
Verz(norz(vz1)). zQQI. Tr(Verz(norz(vz2))); factor(% / zpytha(vz1,vz2));
```

Proposition 18.1.9. *The column-representatives of point-circles, i.e. the $\mathcal{V}_z(P) \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q}^{-1} \\ z \end{bmatrix} \cdot {}^t V_z(P)$, belong to the 3D paraboloid defined by $\begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ z \end{bmatrix}$. When two circles are involved, we have the more precise result :*

$$\frac{{}^t \mathcal{V}_z(M_1, \rho_1) \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ z \end{bmatrix} \cdot \mathcal{V}_z(M_2, \rho_2)}{(\mathcal{P}_z \cdot \mathcal{V}_1) \times (\mathcal{P}_z \cdot \mathcal{V}_2)} = |M_1 M_2|^2 - \rho_1^2 - \rho_2^2 \quad (18.3)$$

$$\text{where } \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. We have $\begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q}^{-1} \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{b}\Psi\mathbf{m} \end{bmatrix}^{-1} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q}^{-1} \\ b \end{bmatrix} \cdot {}^t \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{b}\Psi\mathbf{m} \end{bmatrix}^{-1}$ and $\begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{b}\Psi\mathbf{m} \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ b \end{bmatrix} \cdot {}^t \begin{bmatrix} \mathbf{b}\Psi\mathbf{m} \end{bmatrix}$. □

Remark 18.1.10. A failed attempt has been done in the past to use a set of factors -2 and $-1/2$ in order to obtain the squared radius itself in formula 18.3. But our final choice is to keep the value $d^2 - \rho_1^2 - \rho_2^2$ as the result of 18.4.

Maple 18.1.11. One can check these results by:

```
(vbar2mor).(FActor@subs)(les1lon, mQQ).Tr(vbar2mor): FActor(%); zipd(zQQ,%);
Tr(1/vbar2mor).(FActor@subs)(les1lon, mQQI).(1/vbar2mor): FActor(%); zipd(zQQI,%);
(mor2coluz)(vz,K^2): %/(plinfz.%): factor(Tr(%).zQQ.%)/(-2);
```

Proposition 18.1.12. *Two point-circles are orthogonal wrt the quadric when their centers share one of their two coordinates.*

Proof. Assuming $M_j \simeq z_j : t_j : \zeta_j$, we have the more precise result:

$$\frac{{}^t\left(\mathcal{V}_z[M_1, r_1^2]\right) \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ z \end{bmatrix} \cdot \left(\mathcal{V}_z[M_2, r_2^2]\right)}{\left(\mathcal{P}_z \cdot \mathcal{V}_z\right) \times \left(\mathcal{P}_z \cdot \mathcal{V}_z\right)} = \left(\frac{z_2}{t_2} - \frac{z_1}{t_1}\right) \left(\frac{\zeta_2}{t_2} - \frac{\zeta_1}{t_1}\right) - r_1^2 - r_2^2 \quad (18.4)$$

□

Remark 18.1.13. And then, business as usual, using the adapted matrices.

Maple 18.1.14. The Maple package 'faisceaux' contains:

constants: "zQQ" = $\begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ z \end{bmatrix}$, "zQQI" = $\begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q}^{-1} \\ z \end{bmatrix}$, "plinfz" = \mathcal{P}_z

functions: "Verz" = Ver , "mor2coluz" = \mathcal{V}_z , "coluz2mm", "coluz2mor", "eq2coluz", "mhatz", "mm2coluz", "mkzgram", "zaction"

Theorem 18.1.15. Common orthogonal cycle. *Let be given three cycles $\Omega_1, \Omega_2, \Omega_3$. If they don't belong to the same pencil, the bundle they generate is exactly the set of all the cycles orthogonal to a fixed cycle Ω_\perp . We have the formulas:*

$$W \doteq \bigwedge_3 \left(\mathcal{V}_z, \mathcal{V}_z, \mathcal{V}_z \right) \quad (\text{a 4-sized row}) \quad (18.5)$$

$$\mathcal{V}_z^\perp = \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q}^{-1} \\ z \end{bmatrix} \cdot {}^tW$$

$$\text{center} = W_1 : W_2 : W_3$$

$$\text{squared radius} = \left(\frac{-1}{2} \right) \frac{W \cdot \mathcal{V}_z^\perp}{\left(\mathcal{P}_z \cdot \mathcal{V}_z^\perp \right)^2} = \left(\frac{-1}{2} \right) \frac{{}^t\mathcal{V}_z^\perp \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ z \end{bmatrix} \cdot \mathcal{V}_z^\perp}{\left(\mathcal{P}_z \cdot \mathcal{V}_z^\perp \right)^2}$$

Remark 18.1.16. These formulas are –and should remain– exactly the same as the barycentric formulas (13.18). Don't even think of using any trick to "simplify" anything. Only remember that

$${}^t\mathcal{V}_z \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ z \end{bmatrix} \cdot \mathcal{V}_z = (d_{12}^2 - r_1^2 - r_2^2) \times \left(\mathcal{V}_z[4] \mathcal{V}_z[4] \right)$$

Proposition 18.1.17. *When the 4×4 matrix $\begin{bmatrix} \Delta \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \left(\mathcal{V}_z \wedge \mathcal{V}_z \right)$ describes the pencil generated by cycles $\mathcal{C}_1, \mathcal{C}_2$, the orthogonal pencil is described by:*

$$\begin{bmatrix} \Delta^\perp \\ z \end{bmatrix} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ z \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \Delta^* \\ z \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ z \end{bmatrix} \quad (18.6)$$

Proof. See the proof of (13.20). □

Proposition 18.1.18. Inversion of cycles in a cycle. *Let Ω_0 be a fixed cycle, and define the transformation σ by*

$$\begin{bmatrix} \sigma \\ z \end{bmatrix} \doteq \text{Id} - 2 \frac{\mathcal{V}_z(\Omega_0) \cdot {}^t\mathcal{V}_z(\Omega_0) \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ z \end{bmatrix}}{{}^t\mathcal{V}_z(\Omega_0) \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ z \end{bmatrix} \cdot \mathcal{V}_z(\Omega_0)} \quad (18.7)$$

Then a point circle is mapped onto a point circle, and the corresponding action is the reflection into the circle Ω_0 .

Proof. Compute ${}^t\left(\begin{bmatrix} \sigma \\ z \end{bmatrix} \cdot \vec{X}\right) \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ z \end{bmatrix} \cdot \left(\begin{bmatrix} \sigma \\ z \end{bmatrix} \cdot \vec{X}\right)$ and re-obtain ${}^t\vec{X} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ z \end{bmatrix} \cdot \vec{X}$. Moreover, γ is invariant ($\lambda = -1$) and so is any cycle orthogonal to γ ($\lambda = +1$). One can also use (13.22). □

18.1.2 Homographic actions over the cycles' space

CAVEAT: in this subsection, letters $a, b, c, d, a', b', c', d', k, \kappa$ are general complex numbers, while $a' = \bar{a}$, etc is intended for visible objects.

Proposition 18.1.19. *We will say that H , a Cremona transform H acting over $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$, is an homography when H is seen as $h : z \mapsto (az + b) / (cz + d)$ on the upper sphere $\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T}$ and seen as $\bar{h} : \zeta \mapsto (a'\zeta + b') / (c'\zeta + d')$ on the lower sphere $\bar{\mathbf{Z}} : \mathbf{T}$. As already said, $a, b, c, d, a', b', c', d' \in \mathbb{C}$, together with $ad - bc \neq 0$, $a'd' - b'c' \neq 0$ are assumed. Therefore, we have:*

$$H : \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \\ \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} (a\mathbf{Z} + b\mathbf{T})(c'\bar{\mathbf{Z}} + d'\mathbf{T}) \\ (c\mathbf{Z} + d\mathbf{T})(c'\bar{\mathbf{Z}} + d'\mathbf{T}) \\ (c\mathbf{Z} + d\mathbf{T})(a'\bar{\mathbf{Z}} + b'\mathbf{T}) \end{pmatrix} \quad (18.8)$$

Assuming that $cc' \neq 0$, the points of indeterminacy are both umbilics, and the so-called pole: $P \doteq -d/c : 1 : -d'/c'$. The exceptional locus is the union of $\mathcal{L}_z, P\Omega_x, P\Omega_y$ while $H(\mathcal{L}_z)$ collapses to a single point, the elop $E \simeq a/c : 1 : a'/c'$ (i.e. the pole of H^{-1}).

Proof. This is nothing but the usual formulas: $h^{-1}(\infty) = -d/c$ and $h(\infty) = a/c$. \square

Proposition 18.1.20. *Homography H , as an action over the points of $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$, induces an action which is linear over the columns of $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^4)$. Its matrix is :*

$$\boxed{\widehat{H}_z} \simeq \frac{1}{\left| \delta_{12}^4 \right|} \begin{bmatrix} +da' & -ca' & +cb' & -db' \\ -ba' & +aa' & -ab' & +bb' \\ +bc' & -ac' & +ad' & -bd' \\ -dc' & +cc' & -cd' & +dd' \end{bmatrix} \quad (18.9)$$

$$\text{and we have } {}^t\boxed{\widehat{H}_z} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_z} \cdot \boxed{\widehat{H}_z} = \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_z} \quad \text{where } (ad - bc)(a'd' - b'c') = \delta_{12}^4 \quad (18.10)$$

As a result, the image of a pencil of cycles is a pencil of cycles, while orthogonality is preserved.

Remark 18.1.21. Quantity δ_{12} is the distance z_1, z_2 (not its square or anything else).

Proof. H^{-1} is obtained by the substitution $a \leftrightarrow -d$; $a' \leftrightarrow -d'$ into (18.8). And then one identifies $V_{\bar{z}}(H^{-1}(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \bar{\mathbf{Z}})) = V_z(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \bar{\mathbf{Z}}) \cdot \boxed{\widehat{H}_z}$. \square

Proposition 18.1.22. *When the ordinary homography h , acting over $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^2)$, has exactly **two fixed points** $f_1, f_2 \in \mathbb{C}$, we introduce the multipliers $k\kappa, k/\kappa$ as described at (17.2). As already said,*

$$\Psi \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \\ \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \frac{(k\kappa t_1 z_2 - t_2 z_1)\mathbf{Z} - z_1 z_2 (k\kappa - 1)\mathbf{T}}{(k\kappa - 1)t_1 t_2 \mathbf{Z} - (z_1 t_2 k\kappa - z_2 t_1)\mathbf{T}} \\ 1 \\ \frac{(kt_1 \zeta_2 - \kappa t_2 \zeta_1)\bar{\mathbf{Z}} - \zeta_1 \zeta_2 (k - \kappa)\mathbf{T}}{(k - \kappa)t_1 t_2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} - (kt_2 \zeta_1 - \kappa t_1 \zeta_2)\mathbf{T}} \end{bmatrix} \quad (18.11)$$

This Ψ has four fixed points F_j and $\boxed{\widehat{H}_z}$ admits a basis of eigencolumns, namely the $\mathfrak{F}_j \simeq \mathcal{V}_z(F_j)$. Using normalized columns, we have:

$$\mathfrak{F}_z \simeq \begin{bmatrix} -\zeta_2 \div t_2 & -\zeta_1 \div t_1 & -\zeta_2 \div t_2 & -\zeta_1 \div t_1 \\ z_2 \zeta_2 \div t_2^2 & \zeta_1 z_2 \div t_1 t_2 & z_1 \zeta_2 \div t_1 t_2 & \zeta_1 z_1 \div t_1^2 \\ -z_2 \div t_2 & -z_2 \div t_2 & -z_1 \div t_1 & -z_1 \div t_1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\mathfrak{F}_z^{-1} \cdot \boxed{\widehat{H}_z} \cdot \mathfrak{F}_z \simeq \begin{bmatrix} k & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \kappa & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1/\kappa & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1/k \end{bmatrix} ; {}^t\mathfrak{F}_z \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_z} \cdot \mathfrak{F}_z \simeq \delta_{12}^2 \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Proof. Straightforward computations. (verified 2025-05-28) \square

Proposition 18.1.23. *When the ordinary homography h , acting over $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^2)$, has exactly **one fixed point** z_1 then conjugating by $g : z \mapsto 1 \div (z - z_1)$ leads to $(g^{-1} \circ h \circ g)(z) = z + k\kappa$ (where $k\kappa \in \mathbb{C} \setminus \{0\}$). Acting over $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$, H has only one fixed point $F \simeq z_1 : t_1 : \zeta_1$, while \widehat{H}_z can be reduced in Jordan form according to:*

$$\mathfrak{F}_z \simeq \left[\begin{array}{c|cc} -\kappa & -\frac{\zeta_1}{t_1} & \kappa & 0 \\ \frac{\kappa z_1}{t_1} - \frac{\zeta_1}{\kappa t_1} & \frac{z_1 \zeta_1}{t_1^2} & -\frac{\kappa z_1}{t_1} - \frac{\zeta_1}{\kappa t_1} & 1 \\ \frac{1}{\kappa} & -\frac{z_1}{t_1} & \frac{1}{\kappa} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

$$\mathfrak{F}^{-1} \cdot \widehat{H}_z^n \cdot \mathfrak{F} \simeq \left[\begin{array}{c|ccc} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 2k & k^2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & k \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right]^n = \left[\begin{array}{c|ccc} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 2kn & (kn)^2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & kn \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{array} \right]; {}^t \mathfrak{F} \cdot \widehat{Q}_z \cdot \mathfrak{F} \simeq k\kappa \left[\begin{array}{cccc} -2 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right]$$

Proof. The factorization is easy to check. The cSharacteristic polynomial is $(X - 1)^4$, but dimension of $\ker \left(\widehat{H}_z - \text{Id} \right)$ is only 2, allowing a large amount of cosmetic choices. Let us give some rationales for our choices. Obviously $F_2 \doteq \mathcal{V}_z(z_1/t_1)$ is unavoidable! \square

1. One has $\text{cross_ratio}(z - k, z + k, z, \infty) = -1$. By g -conjugacy, one has also $\text{cross_ratio}(h^2 M, M, hM, F) = -1$. As a result, each cycle (F, M, hM) is globally invariant.
2. Let $P \doteq h^{-1}(\infty) = \frac{z_1}{z} + \frac{1}{k\kappa}$ and $E \doteq h(\infty) = \frac{z_1}{z} - \frac{1}{k\kappa}$ be the pole and the elop of the homography. From the previous result, the line (PF_2E) is invariant (our column F_1). The tangent pencil generated by the circle point (F) and line (PE) is therefore invariant. So is its orthogonal pencil, so that $\text{med}[E, P]$ is a good candidate for F_3 . And we use \mathcal{L}_z for F_4 , the last column.

Exercise 18.1.24. For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, let $\gamma_n = h^n(\gamma_0)$ be the iterated images of a cycle γ_0 . Describe this circle by $x : y : z : t$, the coordinates of \mathcal{V}_0 wrt \mathfrak{F} as a basis, and find the condition such that γ_0 and γ_1 are tangent. Show that, in this case, cycles γ_n and γ_{n+1} are tangent for all n . A first case is when all the circles are going through F .

Otherwise, let N_n be the contact point of γ_n and γ_{n+1} . Show that all the N_n belong to a same circle q_0 while all the circles γ_n are tangent to two fixed circles q_1, q_2 that are inverse wrt q_0 . Check your results by inversion into \mathcal{C}_4 .

Exercise 18.1.25. Explore the following situation. A similitude (M, k, τ) acts over the cycles space. And the four proper spaces are:

$$k : \mathcal{L}_b ; \frac{1}{k} : \mathcal{C}(M, 0) ; \tau : \Omega_y \wedge M ; \frac{1}{\tau} : \Omega_x \wedge M$$

18.2 Revisiting the Euler pencil

Remark 18.2.1. Cycles representatives \mathcal{V} are columns. Thus $\left(\mathcal{V}_1 \underset{6}{\wedge} \mathcal{V}_2 \right)$ is a square matrix.

The Euler pencil has been treated in detail at Section 13.9. Let us examine again this pencil, in the light of the new formalism.

1. We use the Lubin-1 representation, i.e. $A^z \simeq \alpha : 1 : 1/\alpha$. The representative of Γ is known to be $V_{\text{cir}} \simeq 0 : -1 : 0 : 1$. The Euler circle goes through the midpoints. It's normalized

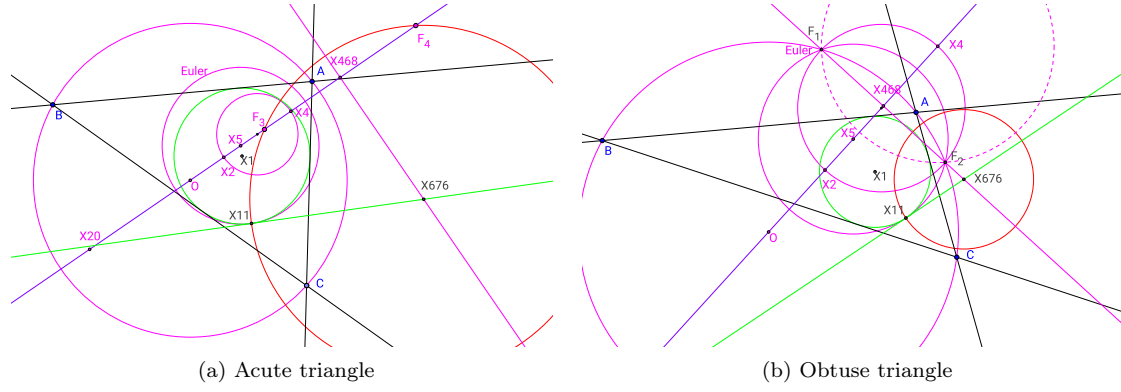


Figure 18.1: The Euler pencil

representative is therefore:

$$\bigwedge_3 \left(Ver_z(A^z + B^z), \text{ etc} \right) \simeq \mathcal{V}_{eul} \simeq \frac{1}{4\sigma_3} \begin{pmatrix} -2\sigma_2 \\ \sigma_1\sigma_2 - \sigma_3 \\ -2\sigma_1\sigma_3 \\ 4\sigma_3 \end{pmatrix}$$

2. Applying (18.3), we have

$${}^t\mathcal{V}_{eul} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} Q \\ z \end{bmatrix} \cdot (\mathcal{V}_{eul}) = \left(\frac{\sigma_1}{2}, 1, \frac{\sigma_2}{2\sigma_3}, \frac{\sigma_1\sigma_2 - \sigma_3}{4\sigma_3} \right) \cdot \mathcal{V}_{eul} = \frac{-1}{2}$$

i.e. a confirmation of center X(5) $z = \sigma_1/2$ and radius $1/2$.

3. The line representative of the Euler pencil (generated by circum- and Euler circles) is therefore:

$$\boxed{Euler_{colu}^z} \doteq \left(\mathcal{V}_{cir} \bigwedge_6 \mathcal{V}_{eul} \right) \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 2\sigma_1\sigma_3 & \sigma_1\sigma_2 + 3\sigma_3 & 2\sigma_1\sigma_3 \\ -2\sigma_1\sigma_3 & 0 & 2\sigma_2 & 0 \\ -\sigma_1\sigma_2 - 3\sigma_3 & -2\sigma_2 & 0 & -2\sigma_2 \\ -2\sigma_1\sigma_3 & 0 & 2\sigma_2 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

4. Consider a point $F \simeq z : t : \zeta$. Its Veronese image is $[zt, t^2, \zeta t, z\zeta]$ and the associated point circle is represented by $V_F \simeq -t\zeta : z\zeta : -tz : t^2$. This circle belongs to the Euler pencil when ${}^t\mathcal{V}_F \cdot \boxed{Euler_{colu}^z} = \vec{0}$. One obtains the so-called **Walsmith points** X(5000) and X(5001).

$$F_{\pm} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\sigma_1\sigma_2 + 3\sigma_3}{\sigma_2} \pm \frac{\sigma_3 W}{\sigma_2} \\ 4 \\ \frac{\sigma_1\sigma_2 + 3\sigma_3}{\sigma_1\sigma_3} \pm \frac{W}{\sigma_1} \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{where } W^2 \doteq \left(9 - \frac{\sigma_1\sigma_2}{\sigma_3} \right) \left(1 - \frac{\sigma_1\sigma_2}{\sigma_3} \right)$$

5. The midpoint of F_+, F_- is X(468). This is recognizable to the fact that $z_{468} = (z_4 + 3z_{186})/4$ where $z_4 = \sigma_1$ is the affix of the orthocenter X(4) and $z_{186} = \sigma_3/\sigma_2$ is the affix of the inverse of X(4) in the circumcircle, i.e. X(186).

6. The direction of line F_+F_- is $\sigma_1\sigma_3 : 0 : \sigma_2$ i.e. X(30)... the direction of the Euler line. This was obvious from the beginning.

7. Both factors of quantity W^2 are real. This can be seen from $\overline{\sigma_1} = \sigma_2/\sigma_3$. Since $|\sigma_1| < 3$, the first factor is ever positive. The second factor can be split into :

$$+1 - \frac{\sigma_1\sigma_2}{\sigma_3} = -\frac{(\beta + \gamma)(\alpha + \gamma)(\beta + \alpha)}{\alpha\beta\gamma}$$

Thus $W^2 = 1$ for equilateral triangles ($\sigma_1 = 0$) and vanishes only for right-angled triangles, so that $W^2 > 0$ characterizes acute triangles. One can also use:

$$9 - \frac{\sigma_1 \sigma_2}{\sigma_3} = \frac{32 S_\omega S^2}{a^2 b^2 c^2} ; 1 - \frac{\sigma_1 \sigma_2}{\sigma_3} = \frac{8 S_a S_c S_b}{a^2 b^2 c^2}$$

8. Points F_\pm are the base points of the Euler pencil, seen as an *isotomic* pencil. Consider now the *isoptic* pencil of the cycles that are orthogonal to all of the cycles of the Euler pencil (i.e. the orthic pencil). When $\mathcal{V}_1, \mathcal{V}_2$ are the representatives of two orthogonal cycles, then $\left\langle \mathcal{V}_1 \middle| \mathcal{Q} \middle| \mathcal{V}_2 \right\rangle = 0$. Thus ${}^t\mathcal{V}_{eul} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}}_z$ is an hyper-plane that describes the bundle of cycles orthogonal to Ω_{eul} . And therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \boxed{Orthic_{colu}^z} &\doteq \text{dual} \left(\left(\left(\left({}^t\mathcal{V}_a \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}}_z \right) \wedge_6 \left({}^t\mathcal{V}_b \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}}_z \right) \right) \right) \right) \\ &\simeq \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -2\sigma_1\sigma_3 & 0 & 2\sigma_1\sigma_3 \\ 2\sigma_1\sigma_3 & 0 & 2\sigma_2 & \sigma_1\sigma_2 + 3\sigma_3 \\ 0 & -2\sigma_2 & 0 & 2\sigma_2 \\ -2\sigma_1\sigma_3 & -\sigma_1\sigma_2 - 3\sigma_3 & -2\sigma_2 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

9. Using the same method as above, we search the centers of the point-circles that belong to the Orthic pencil. We obtain:

$$E_\pm \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\sigma_1\sigma_2 + 3\sigma_3}{\sigma_2} \pm \frac{\sigma_3 W}{\sigma_2} \\ 4 \\ \frac{\sigma_1\sigma_2 + 3\sigma_3}{\sigma_1\sigma_3} \mp \frac{W}{\sigma_1} \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{where } W \text{ is as above}$$

10. The midpoint of E_+, E_- is X(468) again, while the direction of E_+E_- is $\sigma_1\sigma_3 : 0 : -\sigma_2$, i.e. X(511).
11. When the triangle is acute, W^2 is positive, and W is real. Thus $\text{conjugate}(W) = W$ so that the F_\pm are visible, while the E_\pm are not. When the triangle is obtuse, W^2 is negative, and W is imaginary. Thus $\text{conjugate}(W) = -W$ so that the E_\pm are visible, while the F_\pm are not... as can be seen at Figure 18.1.

18.3 Isodynamic points

18.3.1 Equianharmonic points

Definition 18.3.1. A set of four points A, B, C, D are said to be equianharmonic set when one of their cross-ratio is either J or J^2 , where $J^2 + J + 1 = 0$.

Proposition 18.3.2. All the 24 cross-ratios of an equianharmonic set are either J or J^2 . When a set $\{A, B, C, \infty\}$ is equianharmonic, then the triangle ABC is equilateral (with one or the other orientation)..

Proof. Brute force. □

18.3.2 Revisiting the Brocard-Lemoine pencil

Notation 18.3.3. Here, J_a , etc are the cevians of the incenter I_0 while P_a , etc are its coccevians. See Section 13.10 for more details.

The Brocard-Lemoine pencils are build from the so-called **Apollonian circles**, whose diameters are the segments $[J_a, P_a]$, etc. They have been treated in detail at Section 13.10. Let us examine again these pencils, in the light of the new formalism.

1. We start from the Lubin-2 representation i.e. $A^z \simeq \alpha^2 : 1 : \alpha^{-2}$ and obtain :

$$J_a^z, P_a^z \simeq \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} \beta \gamma (\alpha^2 \beta^2 + \alpha^2 \beta \gamma + \alpha^2 \gamma^2 - \beta^2 \gamma^2) \\ (\alpha^2 + \beta \gamma) \beta \gamma \\ \beta^2 - \alpha^2 + \beta \gamma + \gamma^2 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \beta \gamma (\alpha^2 \beta^2 - \alpha^2 \beta \gamma + \alpha^2 \gamma^2 - \beta^2 \gamma^2) \\ (\alpha^2 - \beta \gamma) \beta \gamma \\ \alpha^2 - \beta^2 + \beta \gamma - \gamma^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

2. Now, we take the wedge of the Veronese of A, J_a, P_a . Since J_a, P_a are Lemoine-conjugates, the result can be expressed in the Lubin-1 frame, leading to:

$$\mathcal{V}_a \simeq \bigwedge_3 \left(Ver_z A^z, Ver_z P_a^z, Ver_z J_a^z \right) \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \beta + \gamma - 2\alpha \\ \alpha^2 - \beta \gamma \\ \alpha(2\beta \gamma - \alpha \beta - \alpha \gamma) \\ \alpha^2 - \beta \gamma \end{pmatrix} \simeq \boxed{Lv_1^{-1}} \cdot \mathcal{V}_b$$

3. When computing the line describing the pencil generated by $\mathcal{V}_a, \mathcal{V}_b$, one obtains a symmetric expression, proving that \mathcal{V}_c belongs to the pencil.

$$\boxed{Lemoine_{colu}^z} \doteq \left(\mathcal{V}_a \wedge_6 \mathcal{V}_b \right) \simeq \begin{matrix} t \\ 1 \end{matrix} \boxed{Lv_1} \cdot \boxed{Lemoine_{colu}^b} \cdot \boxed{Lv_1} \\ \simeq \begin{matrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 3\sigma_1 \sigma_3 - \sigma_2^2 & 0 & \sigma_2^2 - 3\sigma_1 \sigma_3 \\ \sigma_2^2 - 3\sigma_1 \sigma_3 & 0 & \sigma_1^2 - 3\sigma_2 & \sigma_1 \sigma_2 - 9\sigma_3 \\ 0 & 3\sigma_2 - \sigma_1^2 & 0 & \sigma_1^2 - 3\sigma_2 \\ 3\sigma_1 \sigma_3 - \sigma_2^2 & 9\sigma_3 - \sigma_1 \sigma_2 & 3\sigma_2 - \sigma_1^2 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

4. All these circles are going through X(15), X(16), the isodynamic points (as described §6 below).

5. The conjugate pencil is obtained by:

$$\boxed{Brocard_{colu}^z} \doteq \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_z} \cdot \text{dual} \left(\boxed{Lemoine_{colu}^z} \right) \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_z} \simeq \begin{matrix} t \\ 1 \end{matrix} \boxed{Lv} \cdot \boxed{Brocard_{colu}} \cdot \boxed{Lv} \\ \simeq \begin{matrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \sigma_2^2 - 3\sigma_1 \sigma_3 & \sigma_1 \sigma_2 - 9\sigma_3 & \sigma_2^2 - 3\sigma_1 \sigma_3 \\ 3\sigma_1 \sigma_3 - \sigma_2^2 & 0 & \sigma_1^2 - 3\sigma_2 & 0 \\ 9\sigma_3 - \sigma_1 \sigma_2 & 3\sigma_2 - \sigma_1^2 & 0 & 3\sigma_2 - \sigma_1^2 \\ 3\sigma_1 \sigma_3 - \sigma_2^2 & 0 & \sigma_1^2 - 3\sigma_2 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

6. Solving $Ver^z(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathcal{Z}}) \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_z}^{-1} \cdot \boxed{Brocard_{colu}^z} = \vec{0}$ give the point-circles that generate the Brocard pencil. One obtains :

$$F_{\pm}^z \simeq \begin{matrix} 1 \\ 1 \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\sigma_1 \sigma_2 - 9\sigma_3}{\sigma_1^2 - 3\sigma_2} \pm \frac{\sqrt{3}\sigma_4}{\sigma_1^2 - 3\sigma_2} \\ 2 \\ \frac{\sigma_1 \sigma_2 - 9\sigma_3}{\sigma_2^2 - 3\sigma_1 \sigma_3} \pm \frac{\sqrt{3}\sigma_4}{\sigma_2^2 - 3\sigma_1 \sigma_3} \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\beta \gamma + \alpha \beta J + \alpha \gamma J^2}{-(\alpha + \gamma J + \beta J^2)} \\ 1 \\ \frac{-(\alpha + \beta J + \gamma J^2)}{\beta \gamma + \alpha \gamma J + \alpha \beta J^2} \end{pmatrix} \quad (18.12)$$

where $J \doteq J_+ \doteq (-1 + i\sqrt{3})/2$ (and thus $J_- \doteq J^2$). One can check that F_+ is X(15) while F_- is X(16), i.e. the isodynamic points already obtained using barycentrics.

7. Solving $Ver^z(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathcal{Z}}) \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_z}^{-1} \cdot \boxed{Lemoine_{point}^z} = \vec{0}$ give the point-circles that generate the Lemoine pencil. One obtains :

$$E_{\pm}^z \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\sigma_1 \sigma_2 - 9\sigma_3}{\sigma_1^2 - 3\sigma_2} \pm \frac{\sqrt{3}\sigma_4}{\sigma_1^2 - 3\sigma_2} \\ 2 \\ \frac{9\sigma_3 - \sigma_1 \sigma_2}{3\sigma_1 \sigma_3 - \sigma_2^2} \pm \frac{\sqrt{3}\sigma_4}{3\sigma_1 \sigma_3 - \sigma_2^2} \end{pmatrix}$$

8. Obviously, pairs F_{\pm} and E_{\pm} share the same midpoint, while their directions are orthogonal. But there is a huge difference between both pairs: points of the F pair are visible, the others are not. Finally, one can check the usual relation: if one pair is noted $z_1 : 1 : \bar{z}_1$, $z_2 : 1 : \bar{z}_2$, the other one is $z_1 : 1 : \bar{z}_2$, $z_2 : 1 : \bar{z}_1$.

18.3.3 Homographic stabilizer

Remark 18.3.4. Isodynamic points $X(15), X(16)$ were characterized at Subsection 7.12.4 as the centers whose pedal triangle is equilateral. Just above, they appeared as the base points of the Brocard pencil, and therefore as the Poncelet points of the Lemoine pencil. Another point of view is as follows.

Definition 18.3.5. In the complex plane $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$, the set of all the Cremona homographies which are fixing a given set of three distinct points is called the homographic stabilizer of this set.

Proposition 18.3.6. *The homographic stabilizer of a given triple is a copy of the dihedral group $D_6 = \mathfrak{S}_3 \rtimes \mathfrak{S}_2$.*

Proof. Let ρ be the inversion wrt the circle $\Gamma(z_1, z_2, z_3)$. Then for each $\hat{\mu} \in \mathfrak{S}_3$, the relations $z_j \mapsto \hat{\mu}(z_j)$ are defining a direct Cremona-homography μ of the whole plane, while $\mu \circ \rho = \rho \circ \mu$ is a skew Cremona-homography. \square

Proposition 18.3.7. *The skew homography τ_a defined by $\alpha \mapsto \alpha$, $\beta \longleftrightarrow \gamma$ is the inversion into the circle γ_A through A, A' and orthogonal to $\Gamma(A, B, C)$, where A' is defined by*

$$\text{cross_ratio}_z(A, A', B, C) = \text{cross_ratio}_{\zeta}(A, A', B, C) = -1$$

Proof. Orthogonality is required since Γ has to be invariant. \square

Theorem 18.3.8. *Circles γ_A , etc are the already defined Apollonian circles. As a result, their common points (the isodynamic centers) are conveyed by any Cremona-homography of the stabilizer. In other words,*

$$\begin{cases} \mu(X(A, B, C, 15)) = X(\mu A, \mu B, \mu C, 15) & \text{when } \mu \text{ is direct} \\ \mu(X(A, B, C, 15)) = X(\mu A, \mu B, \mu C, 16) & \text{when } \mu \text{ is skew} \end{cases}$$

Proof. All the circles involved are conveyed by the group of the Cremona homographies. \square

Proposition 18.3.9. *When A, B, C are defined by their inclusive coordinates z_j, t_1, z_j , then*

$$X(15), X(16) = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{-t_1 z_3 z_2 - t_3 z_1 z_2 J - t_2 z_1 z_3 J^2}{t_2 t_3 z_1 + t_1 t_2 z_3 J + t_3 t_1 z_2 J^2} \\ 1 \\ \frac{-t_1 \zeta_2 \zeta_3 - t_2 \zeta_3 \zeta_1 J - t_3 \zeta_1 \zeta_2 J^2}{t_2 t_3 \zeta_1 + t_3 t_1 \zeta_2 J + t_1 t_2 \zeta_3 J^2} \end{bmatrix}$$

where $J = (-1 \pm \sqrt{3})/2$.

Proof. Consider the direct homography $M_1 \mapsto M_2 \mapsto M_3 \mapsto M_1$. Its fixed points are the required isodynamic points. One can check that any direct homography h transports $X(15)$ onto $h(X(15))$. \square

Proposition 18.3.10. *When applying these properties to the standard triangle, one obtains the following table, where σ is the cycle $\alpha \mapsto \beta \mapsto \gamma \mapsto \alpha$ and $\rho\tau_{bc}$ is the inversion into the **A-Apollonian circle** through $A, X(15), X(16)$. Moreover, $h(\infty)$ is the image of $\infty \simeq 0 : 1 \in (\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T})$.*

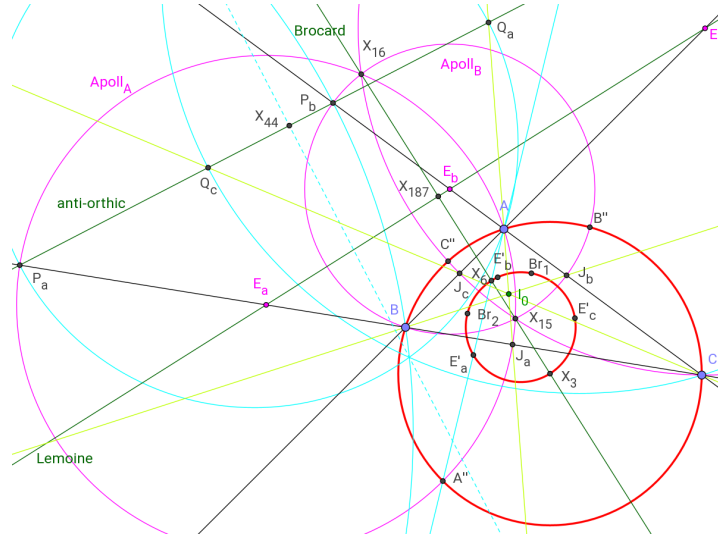


Figure 18.2: Lemoine and Brocard revisited

elop				elop			
	h	name	$h_z(\infty)$		ρh	name	$h_b(\infty)$
1	1_E		∞	7	ρ	X_3	circ
2	σ		$\frac{9s_3 - s_1s_2 - is_4}{6s_2 - 2s_1^2}$	8	$\rho\sigma$	Br_1	$a^2b^2 :: \frac{6s_1s_3 - 2s_2^2}{9s_3 - s_1s_2 + is_4}$
3	σ^2		$\frac{9s_3 - s_1s_2 + is_4}{6s_2 - 2s_1^2}$	9	$\rho\sigma^2$	Br_2	$a^2c^2 :: \frac{6s_1s_3 - 2s_2^2}{9s_3 - s_1s_2 - is_4}$
4	τ_{bc}	E'_a	$\frac{\kappa s_1 - s_2}{3\kappa - s_1}$	10	$\rho\tau_{bc}$	E_a	$\frac{\kappa s_2 - 3s_3}{\kappa s_1 - s_2}$
5	τ_{ca}	E'_b		11	$\rho\tau_{ca}$	E_b	
6	τ_{ab}	E'_c		12	$\rho\tau_{ab}$	E_c	

Proof. Inversion wrt the A-Apollonian circle maps the values α, γ, β onto α, β, γ . □

Fact 18.3.11. *The following properties are left as exercises.*

- Points 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9 are on the Brocard 3-6 circle (diameter $[O, K]$). Points 8, 9 are the Brocard points themselves.
- Points 1, 2, 3, 10, 11, 12 are on the Lemoine axis (tripolar of X_6). In fact, 10, 11, 12 are the ccevians E'_j of X_6 .
- Points $n, n + 6$ are inverse in the circum- circle (and thus aligned with O).
- Points $A, X_6, (4) = E'_a$ and A'' are aligned, etc.
- The fixed points of homographies σ, σ^2 are the isodynamics points X_{15}, X_{16} , while the fixed points of homography τ_{bc} are A and A'' .
- The Apollonian circles are at 60° from each other (consider the multiplier of an homography such that $\sigma^3 = id$).

Remark 18.3.12. The previous results aren't invalidated when points ABC are aligned while remaining distincts.

18.4 The Pedoe formalism

18.4.1 The Pedoe map

Definition 18.4.1. The Pedoe map, as defined in Pedoe (1970), uses the unit circle instead of the "factored" one. One has:

$$Ver_p(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) \simeq [\mathbf{Z}\mathbf{T}, \mathbf{T}^2, \overline{\mathbf{Z}}\mathbf{T}, \mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}} - \mathbf{T}^2] \quad (18.13)$$

Proposition 18.4.2. Both umbilics are mapped to $[0, 0, 0, 0]$ (points of indeterminacy) while all other points at infinity are mapped to $[0, 0, 0, 1]$, called Sirius. When using $(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) = \boxed{Lu} \cdot (x : y : z)$, we have

$$Ver_p(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) \simeq Ver(x : y : z) \cdot {}^t\boxed{Lv_p} \quad \text{where } \boxed{Lv_p} = \begin{pmatrix} \boxed{Lu} & 0 \\ 0 & 1/R^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. The \boxed{Lu} part is obvious. The $1/R^2$ acknowledges the fact that (X_3, R) is the model of all circles in the triangle plane. \square

Proposition 18.4.3. The polar hyperplanes related to the $Ver_p(M_\tau)$ of all the points M_τ of a same cycle are going through a same point of $\mathbb{P}_\mathbb{C}(\mathbb{C}^4)$, called the circle Pedoe-representative, that will be noted \mathcal{V}_p .

Proof. Similar to the \mathcal{V}_z proof. And we have:

$$\mathcal{V}_p[(z : t : \zeta), \rho^2] \doteq \left(-\zeta : \frac{z\zeta}{t} + t - t\rho^2 : -z : +t \right)$$

When the cycle is the line $\Delta \simeq [a, b, c]$ then $\mathcal{V}_z(\Delta) = a : b : c : 0$. \square

Corollary 18.4.4. The locus of the representatives \mathcal{V}_p of the $\mathbb{P}_\mathbb{C}(\mathbb{C}^3)$ lines is the plane

$$\mathcal{P}_p \simeq [0 : 0 : 0 : 1]$$

Proposition 18.4.5. The Pedoe row-images of the $\mathbb{P}_\mathbb{C}(\mathbb{C}^3)$ points belong to a 3D quadric:

$$Ver_p(P) \cdot \boxed{Q_p^{-1}} \cdot {}^tVer_p(P) = 0 \quad \text{where } \boxed{Q_p^{-1}} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & +2 & 0 & +1 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & +1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (18.14)$$

And the columns representative of point-circles, i.e. the $\mathcal{V}_p(P) \simeq \boxed{Q_p^{-1}} \cdot {}^tVer_p(P)$, belong to the 3D paraboloid defined by $\boxed{Q_p}$. For a circle (γ) , we have the more precise result :

$$\rho^2 = \frac{-1}{2} \times \frac{{}^t\mathcal{V}_p(\gamma) \cdot \boxed{Q_p} \cdot \mathcal{V}_p(\gamma)}{\left(\mathcal{P}_p \cdot \mathcal{V}_p(\gamma) \right)^2} \quad (18.15)$$

$$\text{where } \boxed{Q_p} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & +1 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & +1 & 0 & -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. See the proof of (13.9). \square

Proposition 18.4.6. *Two point-circles are orthogonal wrt the quadric when their centers share one of their two coordinates.*

Proof. Assuming $M_j \simeq z_j : t_j : \zeta_j$, we have the more precise result:

$$\frac{\left(\mathcal{V}_p [M_1, r_1^2] \right) \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_p} \cdot \left(\mathcal{V}_p [M_2, r_2^2] \right)}{\left(\mathcal{P}_p \cdot \mathcal{V}_p \right) \times \left(\mathcal{P}_p \cdot \mathcal{V}_p \right)} = \left(\frac{z_2}{t_2} - \frac{z_1}{t_1} \right) \left(\frac{\zeta_2}{t_2} - \frac{\zeta_1}{t_1} \right) - r_1^2 - r_2^2 \quad (18.16)$$

□

Remark 18.4.7. And then, business as usual, using the adapted matrices.

Maple 18.4.8. The Maple package 'faisceaux' contains:

constants: "pQQ" = $\boxed{\mathcal{Q}_p}$, "pQQI" = $\boxed{\mathcal{Q}_p^{-1}}$, "plinf" = \mathcal{P}_p

functions: "Verp" = \mathcal{V}_p , "mor2colup" = \mathcal{V}_p , "colup2mm", "colup2mor", "eq2colup", "mhatp",
"mm2colup", "mkpgram", "paction"

Proposition 18.4.9. Inversion of cycles in a cycle. *Strictly speaking, the reflection into a cycle γ is a transform that acts over the points of $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$. But, as a result, this transform induces a linear action over the Pedoe affixes, as described by the matrix:*

$$\boxed{\sigma} \doteq \text{Id} - 2 \frac{\mathcal{V}_p(\gamma) \cdot {}^t \mathcal{V}_p(\gamma) \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_p}}{{}^t \mathcal{V}_p(\gamma) \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_p} \cdot \mathcal{V}_p(\gamma)} \quad (18.17)$$

Proof. Same proof as for (13.22). □

18.4.2 Pedoe version of the homographic actions

CAVEAT: in this subsection, letters $a, b, c, d, a', b', c', d', k, \kappa$ are general complex numbers, while $a' = \bar{a}$, etc is intended for visible objects.

Proposition 18.4.10. *The homography Ψ , defined at (18.8), is an action over the points of $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$. It induces an action \widehat{H}_p which is linear over the Pedoe-columns. Its matrix is :*

$$\boxed{\widehat{H}_p} \simeq \frac{1}{\left| \delta_{12}^4 \right|} \begin{bmatrix} d a' & -c a' & c b' & c a' - d b' \\ -b a' - d c' & a a' + c c' & -a b' - c d' & -a a' + b b' - c c' + d d' \\ b c' & -a c' & a d' & a c' - b d' \\ -d c' & c c' & -c d' & -c c' + d d' \end{bmatrix} \quad (18.18)$$

$$\text{and we have } {}^t \boxed{\widehat{H}_p} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_p} \cdot \boxed{\widehat{H}_p} = \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_p} \quad \text{where } (a d - b c) (a' d' - b' c') = \delta_{12}^4$$

Proof. Same proof as for (18.9). □

Proposition 18.4.11. *When the ordinary homography ψ , acting over $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^2)$, has exactly two fixed points $f_1, f_2 \in \mathbb{C}$ then, using notations of (17.2), the associated Cremona homography Ψ acting over $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$ has four fixed points F_j . And then $\boxed{\widehat{H}_p}$, the induced linear action over $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^4)$ can be described using a basis of eigencolumns for $\boxed{\widehat{H}_p}$, made of the $\mathcal{V}_p(F_j)$, i.e.*

$$\mathfrak{F}_p \simeq \begin{bmatrix} -\zeta_2 \div t_2 & -\zeta_1 \div t_1 & -\zeta_2 \div t_2 & -\zeta_1 \div t_1 \\ 1 + z_2 \zeta_2 \div t_2^2 & 1 + \zeta_1 z_2 \div t_1 t_2 & 1 + z_1 \zeta_2 \div t_1 t_2 & 1 + \zeta_1 z_1 \div t_1^2 \\ -z_2 \div t_2 & -z_2 \div t_2 & -z_1 \div t_1 & -z_1 \div t_1 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{leading to}$$

$$\mathfrak{F}_p^{-1} \cdot \widehat{H_p} \cdot \mathfrak{F}_p \simeq \begin{bmatrix} k & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \kappa & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1/\kappa & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1/k \end{bmatrix}; \quad {}^t\mathfrak{F}_p \cdot \begin{bmatrix} Q \\ p \end{bmatrix} \cdot \mathfrak{F}_p \simeq \delta_{12}^2 \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Proof. Same as the proof for \mathfrak{F}_z □

Proposition 18.4.12. .When homography h has exactly one fixed point z_1 then a basis of triangulation is

$$\mathfrak{F}_p \simeq \left[\begin{array}{c|ccc} -\kappa & -\frac{\zeta_1}{t_1} & \kappa & 0 \\ \frac{\kappa z_1}{t_1} - \frac{\zeta_1}{\kappa t_1} & 1 + \frac{z_1 \zeta_1}{t_1^2} & -\frac{\kappa z_1}{t_1} - \frac{\zeta_1}{\kappa t_1} & 1 \\ \frac{1}{\kappa} & -\frac{z_1}{t_1} & \frac{1}{\kappa} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{array} \right] \simeq \left[\mathcal{V}_{EP}, \mathcal{V}_F, \mathcal{V}_{med[E,P]}, \mathcal{V}_{\mathcal{L}_z} \right]$$

$$\mathfrak{F}^{-1} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \eta \\ p \end{bmatrix}^n \cdot \mathfrak{F} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 2k & k^2 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & k \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}^n; \quad {}^t\mathfrak{F} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} Q \\ p \end{bmatrix} \cdot \mathfrak{F} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 2 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Proof. The factorization is easy to check. See Proposition 18.1.23 for more details concerning E, P , etc. □

Exercise 18.4.13. For $n \in \mathbb{N}$, let $\gamma_n = h^n(\gamma_0)$ be the iterated images of a cycle γ_0 . Describe this circle by $x : y : z : t$, the coordinates of \mathcal{V}_0 wrt \mathfrak{F} as a basis, and find the condition such that γ_0 and γ_1 are tangent. Show that, for all n , cycles γ_n and γ_{n+1} are tangent. A first case is when all the circles are going through F .

Otherwise, let N_n be the contact point of γ_n and γ_{n+1} . Show that all the N_n belong to a same circle q_0 while all the circles γ_n are tangent to two fixed circles q_1, q_2 that are inverse wrt q_0 . Check your results by inversion into \mathcal{C}_4 .

Exercise 18.4.14. Consider the homographic transposition $\beta \leftrightarrow \gamma, \alpha \leftrightarrow \infty$. Determine the associated Cremona transform, and its action over the cycles space. Determine a basis of $\ker(+1)$ and a basis of $\ker(-1)$. A line and a circle centered somewhere on BC would be a great choice. Check for the (13.20)(18.5). The images of the four in-ex-circles are the so-called four **A-mixtilinear circles** tangent to the circumcircle and to the AB, AC sidelines.

18.5 The Spherical formalism

Remark 18.5.1. On 2021-10-05, it has been decided to adopt the South pole point of view. As a result, the hyperplane containing the line representatives is the North plane!

Maple 18.5.2. As a result, we have `south=1` and therefore

$$\begin{aligned} V_z(\mathbf{Z} : 0 : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) &= V_p(\mathbf{Z} : 0 : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \\ V_s(\mathbf{Z} : 0 : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) &\simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \\ V_s(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) &\simeq [(\mathbf{Z} + \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) \mathbf{T}, -i(\mathbf{Z} - \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) \mathbf{T}, \mathbf{T}^2 - \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{T}^2 + \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{Z}] \\ \mathcal{P}_s &\simeq \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & +1 \end{bmatrix} \\ \mathcal{V}_s([f, g, h]) &\simeq h + f : i(f - h) : g : g \end{aligned}$$

18.5.1 The Spherical map

Definition 18.5.3. The projective sphere of $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^4)$ is defined as the locus of the points V such that $v_4^2 - v_1^2 - v_2^2 - v_3^2 = 0$. In other words

$$V \in \mathbb{S}_4 \Leftrightarrow ({}^tV \cdot \boxed{Mink} \cdot V = 0) \quad \text{where } \boxed{Mink} := \begin{pmatrix} -1 & & & \\ & -1 & & \\ & & -1 & \\ & & & +1 \end{pmatrix}$$

By analogy with the Pedoe formalism, we will also use $\boxed{Q_s} \doteq \boxed{Q_s^{-1}} \doteq \boxed{Mink}$

Remark 18.5.4. When restricted to \mathcal{E}_3 , i.e. to the real points where $v_4 \neq 0$, this is nothing but the ordinary unit sphere of the elementary geometry.

Definition 18.5.5. The Spherical version of the Veronese map uses both the unit visible circle and the unit imaginary circle and is defined by:

$$Ver_s(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) \simeq [2\mathbf{T}X, 2\mathbf{T}Y, \mathbf{T}^2 - \mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}}, \mathbf{T}^2 + \mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}}] \quad (18.19)$$

where $2X \doteq \mathbf{Z} + \overline{\mathbf{Z}}$; $2Y \doteq -i(\mathbf{Z} - \overline{\mathbf{Z}})$ so that $X + iY = \mathbf{Z}$; $X - iY = \overline{\mathbf{Z}}$

Remark 18.5.6. These four cycles are orthogonal to each other, since $d^2 - r_1^2 - r_2^2$ applied to the last two gives obviously zero. And thus, the associated matrices \boxed{Q} will be diagonal.

Due to the relation:

$$Ver_s(M) = Ver_z(M) \cdot {}^t\boxed{Z2S} \quad \text{where } \boxed{Z2S} = \begin{bmatrix} +1 & 0 & +1 & 0 \\ -i & 0 & +i & 1 \\ 0 & +1 & 0 & -1 \\ 0 & +1 & 0 & +1 \end{bmatrix},$$

we shall not expect some breaking results compared to Section 18.1. Nevertheless, the Veronese quadric $v_4 v_2 - v_3 v_1$, with signature $(+2, -2)$, has been replaced by the spherical quadric $v_4^2 - v_1^2 - v_2^2 - v_3^2$, with signature $(+1, -3)$.

Proposition 18.5.7. Both umbilics are mapped to $[0, 0, 0, 0]$ (points of indeterminacy) while all other points at infinity are mapped to $[0, 0, -1, 1]$, the so-called South pole. When using $(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) = \boxed{Lu} \cdot (x : y : z)$, we have

$$Ver_s(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) \simeq Ver(x : y : z) \cdot {}^t\boxed{Lv_s} \quad \text{where } \boxed{Lv_s} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{\alpha} + \alpha & \frac{1}{\beta} + \beta & \frac{1}{\gamma} + \gamma & 0 \\ \frac{i}{\alpha} - i\alpha & \frac{i}{\beta} - i\beta & \frac{i}{\gamma} - i\gamma & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & -1/R^2 \\ 2 & 2 & 2 & +1/R^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. One has $\boxed{Lv_s} = \boxed{Z2S} \cdot \boxed{Lv_z}$. □

Proposition 18.5.8. The polar hyperplanes related to the $Ver_s(M_\tau)$ of all the points M_τ of a same cycle are going through a same point of $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^4)$, called the cycle spherical-representative, that will be noted \mathcal{V}_s .

Proof. Similar to the \mathcal{V}_z proof. And we have:

$$\mathcal{V}_s \left[\begin{pmatrix} z \\ t \\ \zeta \end{pmatrix}, \rho^2 \right] \doteq \begin{pmatrix} \zeta + z \\ i\zeta - iz \\ \frac{+t^2 - z\zeta}{t} + t\rho^2 \\ \frac{-t^2 - z\zeta}{t} + t\rho^2 \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \frac{z}{t} + \frac{\zeta}{t} \\ i\frac{\zeta}{t} - i\frac{z}{t} \\ +1 - \frac{z\zeta}{t^2} \\ -1 - \frac{z\zeta}{t^2} \end{pmatrix} + \rho^2 \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ +1 \\ +1 \end{pmatrix}$$

When the cycle is the line $[f, g, h]$, it's generic point is $M_t \simeq \frac{1}{f} : \frac{t}{g} : -\frac{1+t}{h}$. Like above, the wedge of three of the $Ver_s(M_j)$ doesn't depend on the t_j and we obtain:

$$\mathcal{V}_s[[f, g, h]] \doteq \begin{pmatrix} f+h \\ if - ih \\ g \\ g \end{pmatrix} \quad (18.20) \quad \square$$

Corollary 18.5.9. *The locus of the representatives of the non-circles among the cycles (i.e. the completed lines) is the plane*

$$\mathcal{P}_s \doteq (1/\sqrt{2}) \times [0, 0, -1, +1]$$

whose equation is $V_4 - V_3 = 0$. This plane goes through the North pole... and will therefore be called the North plane. The $1/\sqrt{2}$ factor comes from $\sqrt{2} = \sqrt{(-1)^2 + (+1)^2}$ and will be required when dealing with measurements..

Proposition 18.5.10. *The spherical row-images of the $\mathbb{P}_\mathbb{C}(\mathbb{C}^3)$ points belong to the 3D sphere*

$$Ver_s(P) \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_s^{-1}} \cdot {}^t Ver_s(P) = 0 \quad (18.21)$$

For a circle (γ) , we have the more precise radius formula:

$$\rho^2 = \frac{-1}{2} \times \frac{{}^t(\mathcal{V}_s(\gamma)) \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_s} \cdot (\mathcal{V}_s(\gamma))}{(\mathcal{P}_s \cdot \mathcal{V}_s(\gamma))^2} \quad (18.22)$$

On the other hand, the columns representative of point-circles, i.e. the $\mathcal{V}_s(P) \simeq \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_s^{-1}} \cdot {}^t Ver_s(P)$, belong to the 3D sphere defined by $\boxed{\mathcal{Q}_s}$.

Proof. Obviously, the two spheres are two copies of \mathbb{S}_4 . But one of them is a punctual object, while the other is a tangential one, whose elements are hyper-planes. In a later step (stereographic formalism), we will only consider one sphere. \square

Proposition 18.5.11. *Two point-circles are orthogonal wrt the quadric when their centers share one of their two coordinates. And then each center lies on one of the isotropic lines through the other center.*

Proof. We have the more precise formula:

$$\frac{{}^t(\mathcal{V}_s[M_1, r_1^2]) \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_s} \cdot (\mathcal{V}_s[M_2, r_2^2])}{(\mathcal{P}_s \cdot \mathcal{V}_s[M_1]) \times (\mathcal{P}_s \cdot \mathcal{V}_s[M_2])} = \left(\frac{z_2}{t_2} - \frac{z_1}{t_1}\right) \left(\frac{\zeta_2}{t_2} - \frac{\zeta_1}{t_1}\right) - r_1^2 - r_2^2 \quad (18.23)$$

\square

Maple 18.5.12. The Maple package 'faisceaux' contains:

constants: "sQQ" = $\boxed{\mathcal{Q}_s}$, "sQQI" = $\boxed{\mathcal{Q}_s^{-1}}$, "plifs" = \mathcal{P}_s

functions: "Vers" = Ver_s , "mor2colus" = \mathcal{V}_s , "colus2mm", "colus2mor", "eq2colus", "mhats", "colus2mm", "mm2colus", "mksgm", "saction"

Proposition 18.5.13. Inversion of cycles in a cycle. *Strictly speaking, the reflection into a cycle γ is a transform that acts over the points of $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$. But, as a result, this transform induces a linear action over the spherical affixes, as described by the matrix:*

$$\boxed{\sigma} \doteq \text{Id} - 2 \frac{\mathcal{V}_s(\gamma) \cdot {}^t\mathcal{V}_s(\gamma) \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_s}}{{}^t\mathcal{V}_s(\gamma) \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_s} \cdot \mathcal{V}_s(\gamma)} \quad (18.24)$$

Proof. Same proof as for (13.22). Moreover, one can check that, in \mathbb{C}^4 , $\mathcal{V}_s(\gamma)$ is changed into its opposite, while the representative of any cycle orthogonal to γ is unchanged. \square

Example 18.5.14. The following table describes how to generate the four actions $v_j \mapsto -v_j$:

eqn	param	\mathcal{V}_s	action
X	$z : 1 : -z$	$1 : 0 : 0 : 0$	$v_1 \mapsto -v_1$
Y	$z : 1 : +z$	$0 : 1 : 0 : 0$	$v_2 \mapsto -v_2$
$-\mathbf{T}^2 + \mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}}$	$+\tau : 1 : 1/\tau$	$0 : 0 : 1 : 0$	$v_3 \mapsto -v_3$
$+\mathbf{T}^2 + \mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}}$	$-\tau : 1 : 1/\tau$	$0 : 0 : 0 : 1$	$v_4 \mapsto -v_4$

18.5.2 Spherical version of the homographic actions

CAVEAT: in this subsection, letters $a, b, c, d, a', b', c', d', k, \kappa$ are general complex numbers, while $a' = \bar{a}$, etc is intended for visible objects.

Proposition 18.5.15. *The Cremona-homography H , defined at (18.8), is an action over the points of $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$. It induces an action \widehat{H}_s wich is linear over the Spherical-columns. Its matrix is :*

$$\boxed{\widehat{H}_s} \simeq \frac{1}{2\delta_{12}^4} \times \quad (18.25)$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} -ad' - da' - bc' - cb' & i(da' - ad' + bc' - cb') & ac' + ca' - bd' - db' & ac' + ca' + bd' + db' \\ i(ad' - da' + bc' - cb') & -ad' - da' + bc' + cb' & i(ca' - ac' + bd' - db') & i(ca' - ac' - bd' + db') \\ ab' + ba' - cd' - dc' & i(ab' - ba' - cd' + dc') & -aa' + bb' + cc' - dd' & -aa' - bb' + cc' + dd' \\ ab' + ba' + cd' + dc' & i(ab' - ba' + cd' - dc') & -aa' + bb' - cc' + dd' & -aa' - bb' - cc' - dd' \end{bmatrix}$$

moreover ${}^t\boxed{\widehat{H}_s} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_s} \cdot \boxed{\widehat{H}_s} = \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_s}$ where $(ad - bc)(a'd' - b'c') = \delta_{12}^4$

Proof. Same as the $\boxed{\widehat{H}_z}$ proof. Mind the following fact: as it should be, a point-circle is mapped onto a point-circle. \square

Proposition 18.5.16. *When the ordinary homography h , acting over $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^2)$, has exactly two fixed points f_1, f_2 then, using notations of (17.2), a basis of eigencolumns for $\boxed{\widehat{H}_s}$ is made of the $\mathcal{V}_s(F_j)$, i.e. $\sqrt{2}$ times the value normalized using $\mathcal{V}_s(\mathcal{P}_s \cdot \mathcal{V}_s)$.*

$$\mathfrak{F}_s \simeq \begin{bmatrix} -\frac{z_2}{t_2} - \frac{\zeta_2}{t_2} & -\frac{z_2}{t_2} - \frac{\zeta_1}{t_1} & -\frac{\zeta_2}{t_2} - \frac{z_1}{t_1} & -\frac{z_1}{t_1} - \frac{\zeta_1}{t_1} \\ i\left(\frac{z_2}{t_2} - \frac{\zeta_2}{t_2}\right) & i\left(\frac{z_2}{t_2} - \frac{\zeta_1}{t_1}\right) & i\left(\frac{z_1}{t_1} - \frac{\zeta_2}{t_2}\right) & i\left(\frac{z_1}{t_1} - \frac{\zeta_1}{t_1}\right) \\ \frac{z_2\zeta_2}{t_2^2} - 1 & \frac{z_2\zeta_1}{t_1 t_2} - 1 & \frac{z_1\zeta_2}{t_1 t_2} - 1 & \frac{z_1\zeta_1}{t_1^2} - 1 \\ \frac{z_2\zeta_2}{t_2^2} + 1 & \frac{z_2\zeta_1}{t_1 t_2} + 1 & \frac{z_1\zeta_2}{t_1 t_2} + 1 & \frac{z_1\zeta_1}{t_1^2} + 1 \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{leading to}$$

$$\det \mathfrak{F}_s = +4i\delta_{12}^4; \quad \mathfrak{F}_s^{-1} \cdot \boxed{\widehat{H}_s} \cdot \mathfrak{F}_s = \begin{bmatrix} k & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \kappa & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1/\kappa & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1/k \end{bmatrix}; \quad {}^t\mathfrak{F}_s \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_s} \cdot \mathfrak{F}_s \simeq 2\delta_{12}^2 \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Proof. Straightforward computations. (verified 2025-05-28) □

Exercise 18.5.17. Examine what happens when Ψ is parabolic, i.e. has a single (double) fixed point.

18.6 Stereographic projection

On 2021-10-05, it has been decided to adopt the South pole point of view. Vae victis ! (see Remark 18.5.1).

Definition 18.6.1. When \mathbb{C} is identified with the $z = 0$ plane in \mathcal{E}_3 , the 'tangential' Riemann sphere is defined by its diameter $[S, O]$ where $S = [0, 0, -1]$ is the South pole and $O = [0, 0, 0]$ is the origin. And the 'tangential' stereography is defined by M on the plane, P_t on the tangential sphere, and S, M, P_t aligned.

Remark 18.6.2. This stereography is the projection used by cartographers to draw maps of the circumpolar places. Obviously, both local metrics in the vicinity of O (on the plane and on the sphere) are the same. Nevertheless, having the center of the sphere at the origin is more handy when studying the isometries of the sphere itself.

Definition 18.6.3. The sphere in \mathcal{E}_3 whose equator is the trigonometric circle (in the $z = 0$ plane) should be called the equatorial Riemann sphere. But we will rather describe it as *the* Riemann sphere. And the correspondence where A is on the plane, while P is on *the* sphere and S, A, P are aligned will be described as *the* stereographic projection.

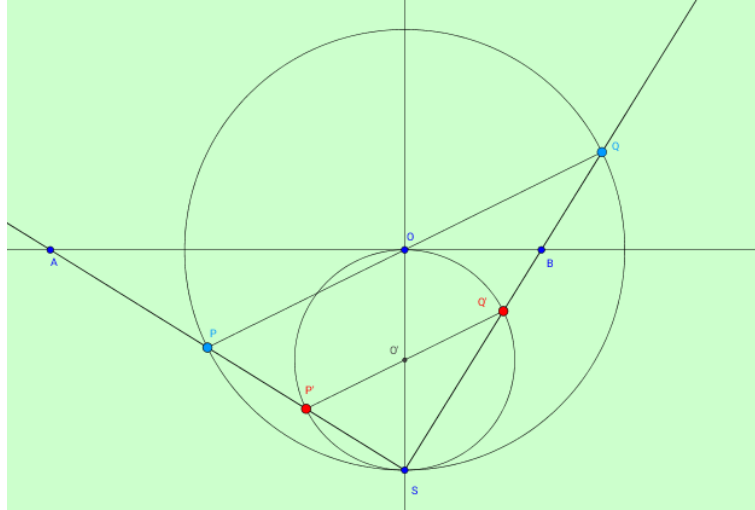


Figure 18.3: Points A, B in the complex plane, and both of their projections.

Proposition 18.6.4. *The stereographic correspondence can be computed as*

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{\pi} : \begin{pmatrix} z \\ t \\ \zeta \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3) &\mapsto \frac{1}{t^2 + z\zeta} \begin{pmatrix} t(z + \zeta) \\ -it(z - \zeta) \\ +t^2 - z\zeta \end{pmatrix} \\ \hat{\pi}^{-1} : \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ r \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^3 &\mapsto \begin{pmatrix} x + iy \\ 1 + r \\ x - iy \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3) \end{aligned} \quad (18.26)$$

where ζ is the conjugate of z and $x^2 + y^2 + r^2 = 1$ is assumed.

Proof. Write $P = \mu A + (1 - \mu) S$ and obtain μ using $x^2 + y^2 + r^2 = 1$. □

Theorem 18.6.5. The **spherical map** tV_s introduced at (18.19) is the projective version of the **stereographic map** (from the South pole) introduced at (18.26). While the map $M \mapsto \mathcal{V}_s(2O - M, 0)$ is the projective version of the stereographic map relative to the North pole.

Proof. Simple comparison between both formula. Remember: a theorem is characterized among the propositions by its efficiency, not by the difficulty of the proof. \square

Example 18.6.6. Let us consider two visible points: $z_1 = 1 + 2i$, $z_2 = 3 + i$. We have

$$F_1 \doteq \mathcal{V}_s(z_1) \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ -4 \\ -6 \end{pmatrix}; \quad F_4 \doteq \mathcal{V}_s(z_2) \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 6 \\ 2 \\ -9 \\ -11 \end{pmatrix}$$

One computes the family :

$$\begin{aligned} (1 - \mu) F_1 + (1 + \mu) F_4 \mapsto \text{Ponc}(\mu) &= \mathcal{V}_s \left[(1 - \mu) z_1 + (1 + \mu) z_2, R^2 = \frac{5}{4} (\mu^2 - 1) \right] \\ &= \mathcal{V}_s \left[\begin{pmatrix} 4 + 3i \\ 2 \\ 4 - 3i \end{pmatrix} + \mu \begin{pmatrix} 2 - i \\ 0 \\ 2 + i \end{pmatrix}, R^2 = \frac{5}{4} (\mu^2 - 1) \right] \end{aligned}$$

When μ is real and $|\mu| > 1$ we obtain a set of visible circles.

Let us consider the orthogonal point circles and their representatives:

$$F_2 \doteq \mathcal{V}_s \left[\begin{pmatrix} z_1/t_1 \\ 1 \\ \zeta_2/t_2 \end{pmatrix}, 0 \right] \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 4 + i \\ 3 + 2i \\ -4 - 5i \\ -6 - 5i \end{pmatrix}; \quad F_3 \doteq \mathcal{V}_s \left[\begin{pmatrix} z_2/t_2 \\ 1 \\ \zeta_1/t_1 \end{pmatrix}, 0 \right] \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 4 - i \\ 3 - 2i \\ -4 + 5i \\ -6 + 5i \end{pmatrix}$$

One computes the family:

$$\begin{aligned} (1 + i\mu) F_2 + (1 - i\mu) F_3 \mapsto \text{Arcs}(\mu) &\simeq \begin{pmatrix} 4 \\ 3 \\ -4 \\ -6 \end{pmatrix} + \mu \begin{pmatrix} -1 \\ -2 \\ +5 \\ +5 \end{pmatrix} \\ &= \mathcal{V}_s \left[\begin{pmatrix} 4 + 3i \\ 2 \\ 4 - 3i \end{pmatrix} + i\mu \begin{pmatrix} -(2 - i) \\ 0 \\ +(2 + i) \end{pmatrix}, R^2 = \frac{5}{4} (\mu^2 + 1) \right] \end{aligned}$$

When μ is real, we obtain a set of visible circles (visible center, real radius). All of them are orthogonal to F_1 and F_4 : these circles are going through points z_1 and z_2 . And therefore, the first pencil is the *isotomic* (Poncelet) pencil of points z_1 and z_2 , while the second one is their *isoptic* pencil.

18.7 Quaternions

Proposition 18.7.1. Consider the visible Cremona transform $\hat{\sigma}$ defined by

$$\sigma \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{where } \det \sigma = 1$$

and suppose that $\hat{\sigma}$ induces a rotation \hat{H} in \mathcal{E}_3 , then it exists reals A, f, g, h such that

$$\begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \simeq \cos A \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} + \sin A \begin{bmatrix} -h & -f + ig \\ -f - ig & +h \end{bmatrix} \quad (18.27)$$

Proof. In a rotation of the sphere, the antipodal relation is preserved. **** This amounts to the invariance by $v_4 \mapsto -v_4$, and matrix $\widehat{H_s}$ as to commute with $\begin{bmatrix} Q \\ s \end{bmatrix}$, leading to $\alpha = \frac{\delta d}{a}$, $\beta = -\frac{\delta c}{a}$, $\gamma = -\frac{\delta b}{a}$ where $\delta = a$ can be chosen. This leads to

$$a = c' - ih' ; b = g' - if' ; c = -g' - if' ; d = c' + ih'$$

It only remains to put $c' = \cos A$ and then normalize $f' : g' : h'$. □

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} \overline{\mathbb{C}} & \xrightarrow{h} & \overline{\mathbb{C}} & & \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3) & \xrightarrow{H} & \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3) & & \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3) & \xrightarrow{H} & \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3) \\ \pi \downarrow & & \pi \downarrow & & \widehat{\pi} \downarrow & & \widehat{\pi} \downarrow & & Arn \downarrow & & Arn \downarrow \\ \mathbb{S}^2 & \xrightarrow{\widehat{h}} & \mathbb{S}^2 & & \mathbb{S}^2 & \xrightarrow{\widehat{h}} & \mathbb{S}^2 & & \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^4) & \xrightarrow{\widehat{H}} & \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^4) \end{array}$$

Proposition 18.7.2. *Conversely, the equation defined at (18.27) induces a rotation of the unit sphere in \mathcal{E}_3 . Seen from the unit vector ${}^t[f, g, h]$, its angle is $+2A...$ while seen from ${}^t[-f, -g, -h]$, its angle is $-2A$.*

Proof. Substitute (18.27) into (18.25), use:

$$\sin A^2 = U - \cos A^2 ; \sin A = \frac{1}{2} \frac{\sin B}{\cos A} ; \cos A^2 = \frac{1}{2} \cos B + \frac{U}{2}$$

and collect in U, \sin, \cos . Restore $U = 1$ and obtain:

$$\widehat{H_s} = m_U + \sin 2A m_S - \cos 2A m_S^2$$

$$\text{where } m_U = \begin{bmatrix} f^2 & fg & fh & 0 \\ fg & g^2 & gh & 0 \\ fh & gh & h^2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} ; m_S = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & h & -g & 0 \\ -h & 0 & f & 0 \\ g & -f & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

□

Remark 18.7.3. One has: $\chi\left(\widehat{H_s}, X\right) = (X-1)^2(X-k)(X-\kappa)$ where $\bar{\kappa} = k = \exp iB\pi$, while $\chi\left(\widehat{h}, X\right) = (X-\mu_1)(X-\mu_2)$ where $\bar{\mu}_2 = \mu_1 = \exp iA\pi$. But the multipliers of h are the ratios of the eigenvalues, giving again k and κ .

Theorem 18.7.4. *When rotations are composed in \mathcal{E}_3 , quaternions are multiplied as 2×2 matrices. This amounts to use the Hamilton's rule: $+\vec{j} \cdot \vec{k} = \vec{i} = -\vec{k} \cdot \vec{j}$, etc.*

18.8 Stereographic formalism

Here, we will use the stereographic projection from the South pole, and apply the Theorem 18.6.5 to obtain a visual formalism using:

Definition 18.8.1. We define the **apex** of a point, or of a cycle, as the columns:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{A}(M) &\doteq {}^tVer_s(M) \\ \mathcal{A}(\mathcal{C}) &\doteq \widehat{Mink} \cdot \mathcal{V}_s(\mathcal{C}) \end{aligned}$$

Proposition 18.8.2. *The apex of a point $\mathbf{Z} = X + iY$ in the xOy plane is the stereographic projection of this point. All apexes are columns and live in the same copy of $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^4)$. Moreover, the apex of a point is the same as the apex of the point circle centered at this point.*

Proof. From former results, ${}^t\mathcal{A}(M) \cdot \boxed{Mink} \cdot \mathcal{A}(M) = 0$, so that $\mathcal{A}(M) \in \mathbb{S}_4$. One can check easily that $M \doteq X : Y : 0 : \mathbf{T}$ and the apex $\mathcal{A}(M)$ are aligned with *South*, proving the stereographic property. Moreover

$$\mathcal{A}(M) \doteq {}^tV_s(M) \simeq \begin{pmatrix} (z + \zeta)t \\ -i(z - \zeta)t \\ t^2 - z\zeta \\ t^2 + z\zeta \end{pmatrix} \simeq \boxed{Mink} \cdot \mathcal{V}_s(M, 0) \doteq \mathcal{A}[M, 0]$$

This is the rationale for using the same name for both objects. \square

Example 18.8.3. Consider the points

$$M_j = 0.22 + 0.84i ; 1.34 - 0.28i ; 0.22 - 0.44i$$

They define a circle with center $B = 0.7 + 0.2i$ and radius $\rho = 0.8$. Computing the apexes, we obtain:

$$A_B, A_0, A_1, A_2 \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 1.40 \\ 0.40 \\ 0.47 \\ 1.53 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 0.440 \\ 1.680 \\ 0.246 \\ 1.754 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} +2.680 \\ -0.560 \\ -0.874 \\ +2.874 \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} +0.440 \\ -0.880 \\ +0.758 \\ +1.242 \end{pmatrix}$$

and therefore,

$$U \doteq \mathcal{A}(\mathcal{C}(M_j)) = \boxed{Mink} \cdot {}^t\bigwedge_3(A_j) = \begin{pmatrix} 1.40 \\ 0.40 \\ 0.47 \\ 1.53 \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ +0.64 \\ -0.64 \end{pmatrix}$$

Proposition 18.8.4. *The apex of a line lies in the South plane, and we have:*

$$\mathcal{A}([f, g, h]) \doteq \begin{pmatrix} (f + h) \\ i(f - h) \\ +g \\ -g \end{pmatrix} \quad (18.28)$$

Proposition 18.8.5. *When using apexes, the orthogonality formula between two circles is now:*

$$\frac{{}^t(\mathcal{A}[M_1, r_1^2]) \cdot \boxed{Mink} \cdot (\mathcal{A}[M_2, r_2^2])}{{}^t(\mathcal{A}[M_1, r_1^2]) \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{N}_k} \cdot (\mathcal{A}[M_2, r_2^2])} = \left(\frac{z_2}{t_2} - \frac{z_1}{t_1} \right) \left(\frac{\zeta_2}{t_2} - \frac{\zeta_1}{t_1} \right) - r_1^2 - r_2^2 \quad (18.29)$$

$$\text{where } \boxed{\mathcal{N}_k} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

so that $M \in \mathcal{C}$ can be restated as $\mathcal{A}(M) \perp \mathcal{A}(\mathcal{C})$.

Proof. In (18.22) the normalization has to be changed due to the product by \boxed{Mink} . \square

Remark 18.8.6. Sending the plane $\mathcal{A}_4 = 0$ at infinity "discards" the circles orthogonal to $\mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}} + \mathbf{T}^2 = 0$ and the quadric appears as a sphere in the remaining space \mathcal{E}_3 . On the contrary, sending the South plane $\mathcal{A}_4 + \mathcal{A}_3 = 0$ at infinity "discards" the (completed) straight lines and allows for a normalization of the circle-representatives.

Proposition 18.8.7. *Define the **shadow** of a cycle \mathcal{C} as the locus of the apexes of the points of \mathcal{C} . The shadow of a cycle is a circle on the sphere \mathbb{S}_4 . Its center belongs to line $[O, U]$ and, in fact, is the inverse of U wrt the sphere. When \mathcal{C} is a circle, the line $[S, B]$ describes the pencil of all circles centered at B , and therefore goes through $\mathcal{A}(B)$ and $U = \mathcal{A}(\mathcal{C})$ (see Figure 18.4).*

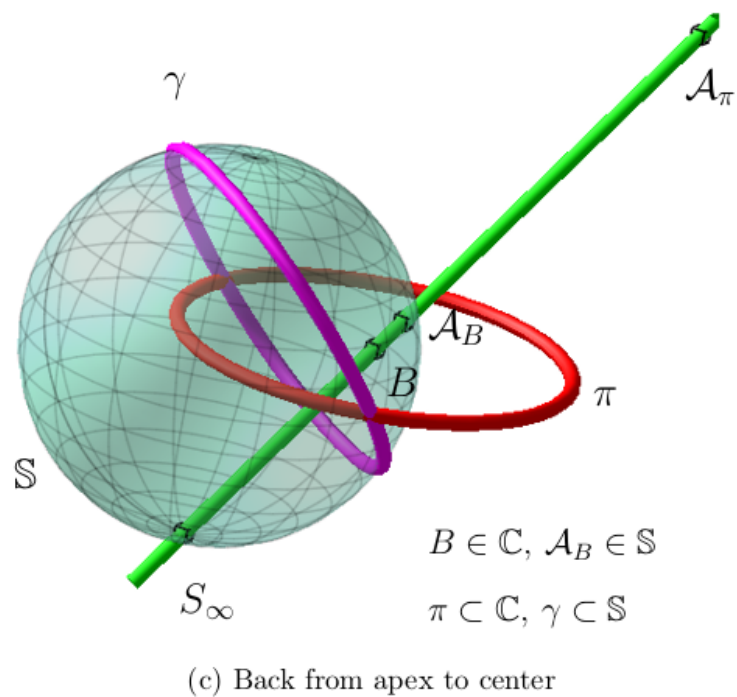
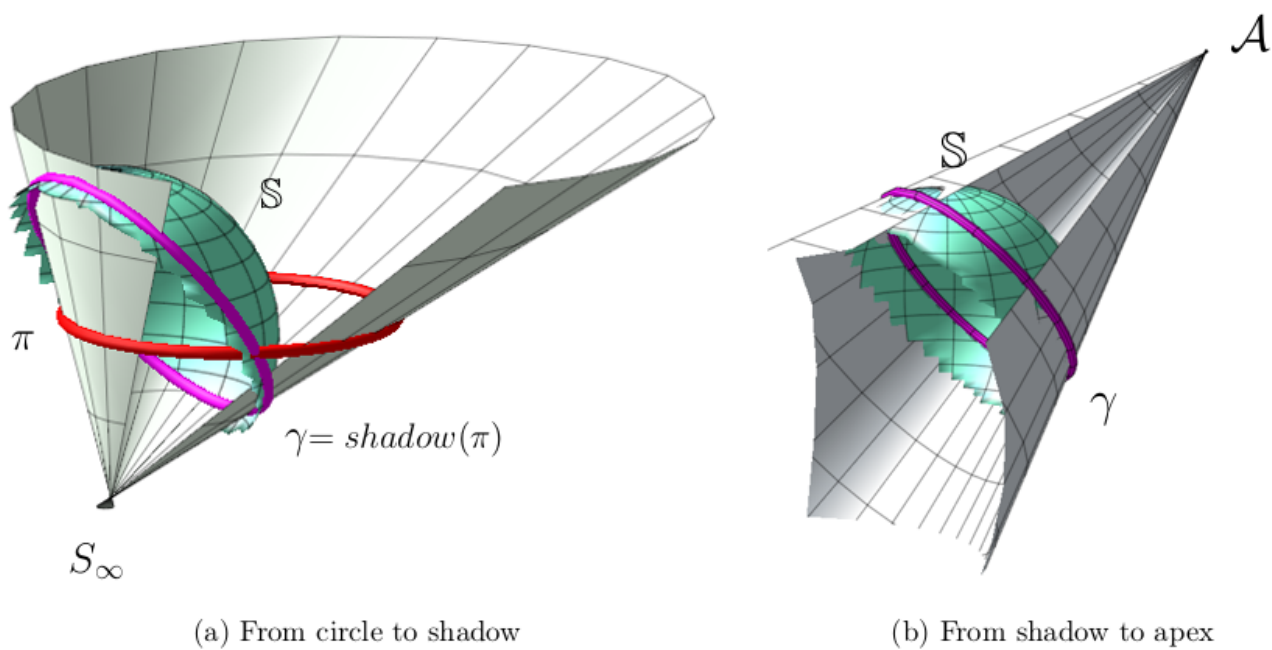


Figure 18.4: Stereographic projection and apices

Proposition 18.8.8. *Let \mathcal{A}_j , $j = 1..4$ be the apexes of four cycles \mathcal{C}_j . Describe the pencil generated by $\mathcal{C}_1, \mathcal{C}_2$ using the matrix $\boxed{\Delta_{12}} = \left(\mathcal{A}_1 \underset{6}{\wedge} \mathcal{A}_2\right)$, and the pencil generated by $\mathcal{C}_3, \mathcal{C}_4$ using the matrix $\boxed{\Delta_{34}} = \left(\mathcal{A}_3 \underset{6}{\wedge} \mathcal{A}_4\right)$. When each pencil is orthogonal to the other, then*

$$\boxed{\Delta_{34}} = \boxed{Mink} \cdot \boxed{\Delta_{12}^*} \cdot \boxed{Mink}$$

Using electrical notation (see Definition 8.1.5), if $\boxed{\Delta_{12}} = \left(\vec{E}, \overleftarrow{B}\right)$ then $\boxed{\Delta_{34}} = \left(\overleftarrow{B}, -\vec{E}\right)$.

Proof. Cut Δ_{12} by the four base hyperplanes. Among the four expressions obtained, at most two are $0 : 0 : 0 : 0$. Do the same with the proposed matrix. And check that all the 16 orthogonality relations are fulfilled (this computation is rather easy since most results are obviously 0, while the others involve $E_x B_x + E_y B_y + E_z B_z$. \square)

18.9 Comparison with Cartesian and Artinian metrics

To be written.

For all metrics, $\boxed{\text{OrtO}}^* = \left(\boxed{\text{OrtO}}^2\right)^*$ while $\text{trace}\left(\boxed{\text{OrtO}}^*\right) = 1$.

Chapter 19

The Lie Sphere

19.1 Elementary properties

Remark 19.1.1. In this chapter, the radius of a circle is noted either as r_j or as ρ_j . The r_j radiuses are unsigned quantities (only r_j^2 is meaningful). On the contrary, the ρ_j are signed quantities. The first point of view is more adapted to orthogonality, the second one is more adapted to contact properties.

Remark 19.1.2. Let us recall the following matrices

$$\boxed{\mathcal{Q}_b} \doteq -\frac{1}{8S^2} \begin{bmatrix} a^2 & -S_c & -S_b & -a^2 S_a \\ -S_c & b^2 & -S_a & -b^2 S_b \\ -S_b & -S_a & c^2 & -c^2 S_c \\ -a^2 S_a & -b^2 S_b & -c^2 S_c & b^2 a^2 c^2 \end{bmatrix} ; \quad \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_z} \doteq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

and how they are applied (see Remark 18.1.16)

$$(d_{12}^2 - \rho_1^2 - \rho_2^2) = \frac{{}^t \mathcal{V}_1 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}} \cdot \mathcal{V}_2}{(\mathcal{P}_\infty \cdot \mathcal{V}_1) \times (\mathcal{P}_\infty \cdot \mathcal{V}_2)}$$

As a result, the $\mathbb{P}_\mathbb{C}(\mathbb{C}^4)$ formalism only deals with squared radiuses. And therefore the $r^2 \in \mathbb{R}$ property allows the existence of imaginary radiuses (i.e. $r^2 < 0$).

Definition 19.1.3. The Lie Sphere formalism assigns a sign to the radius of a circle, and stores this signed radius into the fifth coordinate of the **Lie sphere representative** of this cycle, according to

$$\widehat{\mathcal{V}}(P, \rho) \doteq (\mathcal{V}(P, |\rho|) : \rho) \in \mathbb{P}_\mathbb{C}(\mathbb{C}^5)$$

where the \mathcal{V} is normalized using $\mathcal{P}_\infty \cdot \mathcal{V} = 1$. How to deal with completed lines will be stated later.

Proposition 19.1.4. All the $\widehat{\mathcal{V}}$ belong to a quadric, the so-called **Lie sphere quadric**.

$${}^t \widehat{\mathcal{V}} \cdot \boxed{\widehat{\mathcal{Q}}} \cdot \widehat{\mathcal{V}} = 0 \quad \text{where} \quad \boxed{\widehat{\mathcal{Q}}} \doteq \begin{bmatrix} \boxed{\mathcal{Q}} & 0 \\ 0 & +2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Here, the $\boxed{\mathcal{Q}}$ matrix is one of the "official" matrices, i.e. exactly $\boxed{\mathcal{Q}_b}$ or $\boxed{\mathcal{Q}_z}$ etc.

Proof. Obvious from ${}^t \mathcal{V} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}} \cdot \mathcal{V} = -2r^2$. □

Definition 19.1.5. Oriented contacts: we will say that two circles are gearing when ${}^t \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_1 \cdot \boxed{\widehat{\mathcal{Q}}} \cdot \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_2 = 0$ and that they are anti-gearing when

$${}^t \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_1 \cdot \boxed{\widehat{\mathcal{Q}}^x} \cdot \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_2 = 0 \quad \text{where} \quad \boxed{\widehat{\mathcal{Q}}^x} \doteq \begin{bmatrix} \boxed{\mathcal{Q}} & 0 \\ 0 & -2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Theorem 19.1.6. Assume that a circle is clockwise oriented when $\rho > 0$, and counterclockwise oriented when $\rho < 0$. When two circles are gearing, we have $d_{12}^2 - (\rho_1 - \rho_2)^2 = 0$. If, additionally, we assume that both circles have the same orientation, this implies $(d_{12} - r_1 + r_2)(d_{12} + r_1 - r_2)$ and one circle is internal to the other. If, on the contrary, we assume that both circles are oriented differently, this implies $(d_{12} - r_1 - r_2)(d_{12} + r_1 + r_2) = 0$ and the two circles are external to each other.

When the two circles are anti-gearing, we have $d_{12}^2 - (\rho_1 + \rho_2)^2 = 0$ and the conclusions are reversed.

Proof. Obvious from definitions. This is nevertheless the key property here. \square

Remark 19.1.7. Let us recall that the distance from a point to a line is given by (7.24), (14.11) i.e. by

$$\text{dist}(P, \Delta) = \frac{\Delta \cdot P}{(\mathcal{L}_\infty \cdot P) \sqrt{\Delta \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}} \cdot {}^t\Delta}}$$

Moreover, due to the choice of the b and z bases, we have

$$\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \doteq -2 \text{submatrix} \left(\begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ b \end{bmatrix}, 1..3, 1..3 \right) ; \quad \boxed{\mathcal{M}_z} \doteq -2 \text{submatrix} \left(\begin{bmatrix} \mathcal{Q} \\ z \end{bmatrix}, 1..3, 1..3 \right)$$

Proposition 19.1.8. In order to use ${}^t\widehat{\mathcal{V}}_1 \cdot \widehat{\mathcal{Q}} \cdot \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_3 = 0$ as a condition for an "oriented contact" between circle \mathcal{C}_1 and line Δ_3 , the representative $\widehat{\mathcal{V}}_3$ as to be defined as:

$$[f, g, h] \mapsto_z \left(f : g : h : 0 : \pm\sqrt{fh} \right)$$

and more generally by using : $\left(2\widehat{\mathcal{V}}_3[5] \right)^2 \underset{b}{=} \Delta \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}} \cdot {}^t\Delta$ i.e. by replacing $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_z}$ with its equivalent in the other formalisms.

Proof. Direct computation. For two lines, "contact" means parallelism ! \square

Remark 19.1.9. When using the Lie representation, objects that don't belong to $\widehat{\mathcal{Q}}$ are meaningless, while $\widehat{\mathcal{Q}}$ itself is obtained by a double coating of the outside of \mathcal{Q} in $\mathbb{P}_\mathbb{C}(\mathbb{C}^4)$. Therefore, imaginary circles are lost : when the radius decreases to 0 in an *isotomic* pencil, the differentiable continuation is going back to real radiuses (with the other orientation) and not escaping to imaginary values.

Definition 19.1.10. When $\widehat{\mathcal{V}}_0$ is not a point-circle, the **inversion wrt** $\widehat{\mathcal{V}}_0$ is the linear application defined by the matrix

$$\boxed{\Sigma_0} \doteq \begin{bmatrix} \boxed{\sigma_0} & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{bmatrix}$$

where the 4×4 matrix $\boxed{\sigma}$ is defined as in Theorem 13.8.4, i.e. by

$$\boxed{\sigma_0} = \text{Id} - 2 \left(\mathcal{V}_0 \cdot {}^t\mathcal{V}_0 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}} \right) \div \left({}^t\mathcal{V}_0 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}} \cdot \mathcal{V}_0 \right)$$

Proposition 19.1.11. Assuming that \mathcal{V}_0 is not a point-circle, we have the following properties:

1. Σ_0 is involutive.
2. $\ker(\Sigma_0 + 1)$ is generated by $\widehat{\mathcal{V}}$ and $0 : 0 : 0 : 0 : 1$,
while $\ker(\Sigma_0 - 1)$ is the plane $[-uz, ut, -ux, uy, 0], [0, 0, 0, 0, 1]$.
3. As a result, $\widehat{\mathcal{V}}_0$ and it's opposite are invariant (with their orientation), i.e. $\Sigma_0(\mathcal{V}_0 : +\rho_0) \simeq (\mathcal{V}_0 : +\rho_0)$ and $\Sigma_0(\mathcal{V}_0 : -\rho_0) \simeq (\mathcal{V}_0 : -\rho_0)$ while orthogonal circles are reverted.

Proof. Direct examination. \square

Theorem 19.1.12. *Following Searby (2009), we define*

$$\text{Searby}(\widehat{\mathcal{V}}_1, \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_2) = \frac{{}^t \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_1 \cdot \boxed{\widehat{\mathcal{Q}}} \cdot \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_2}{2 \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_1[5] \times \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_2[5]} - 1 = \frac{d_{12}^2 - \rho_1^2 - \rho_2^2}{2 \rho_1 \rho_2}$$

Then this quantity is projective, and invariant by inversion. Moreover, $\text{Searby}(\widehat{\mathcal{V}}_1, \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_2)$ equals respectively $+1, 0, -1$ when the cycles are respectively gearing, orthogonal and anti-gearing.

Proof. Direct examination. One can remark that $\rho_j \mapsto -\rho_j$ so that a squared difference remains a squared difference. \square

19.2 Example 1: the incircle

1. Using barycentrics, we have $BC \simeq [1, 0, 0]$ so that $\text{sid}_A \simeq 1 : 0 : 0 : 0 : -\frac{a}{4S}$. Solving

$$\left\{ {}^t X \cdot \boxed{\widehat{\mathcal{Q}}_b} \cdot J \mid J = \text{sid}_A, \text{sid}_B, \text{sid}_C, X \right\}$$

we obtain two solutions

$$(1 : 1 : 1 : 0 : 0) ; \left(\frac{(b+c-a)^2}{4} : \frac{(c+a-b)^2}{4} : \frac{(a+b-c)^2}{4} : 1 : \frac{2S}{a+b+c} \right)$$

i.e Sirius and the usual incentre.

2. Using Lubin2 coordinates, we have

$$A \simeq \alpha^2 : 1 : \frac{1}{\alpha^2} ; BC \simeq [1, -\beta^2 - \gamma^2, \gamma^2 \beta^2] ; \text{sid}_A \simeq 1 : -\beta^2 - \gamma^2 : \gamma^2 \beta^2 : 0 : -\beta \gamma$$

Solving the z -system, we obtain again Sirius (aka $0 : 1 : 0 : 0 : 0$) together with:

$$\widehat{\Omega}_0 \simeq_z \frac{s_1}{s_3} : -\frac{s_2^2 s_1^2}{4s_3^2} + \frac{3s_2 s_1}{2s_3} - \frac{1}{4} : s_2 : 1 : -\frac{(\beta + \gamma)(\gamma + \alpha)(\alpha + \beta)}{2\alpha\beta\gamma}$$

3. Solving the s -system, we obtain $0 : 0 : 1 : 1 : 0$ together with:

$$\widehat{\Omega}_0 \simeq_s \begin{bmatrix} -4s_3(s_1 + s_2 s_3) \\ -4is_3(s_1 - s_2 s_3) \\ s_2^2 s_1^2 - 6s_2 s_3 s_1 + 5s_3^2 \\ s_2^2 s_1^2 - 6s_2 s_3 s_1 - 3s_3^2 \\ 2\sqrt{2}s_3(s_1 s_2 - s_3) \end{bmatrix}$$

4. And, obviously, the three formalisms z, p, s lead to the same

$$I_0 \simeq_z -s_2 : 1 : -\frac{s_1}{s_3} ; r_0 \simeq_z -\frac{(\beta + \gamma)(\gamma + \alpha)(\alpha + \beta)}{2\alpha\beta\gamma}$$

19.3 Example 2: the three excenters

1. Let's use Lubin-2 and the z -formalism. We have $\widehat{A} \simeq_z \left(-\frac{1}{\alpha^2} : 1 : -\alpha^2 : 1 : 0 \right)$ and $BC \simeq_z (1 : -\beta^2 - \gamma^2 : \gamma^2 \beta^2 : 0 : \beta \gamma)$.

2. The incircle is

$$\widehat{\mathcal{V}} \simeq_z \left[\frac{\alpha + \beta + \gamma}{\alpha\beta\gamma} : \frac{6s_2 s_3 s_1 - s_2^2 s_1^2 - s_3^2}{4s_3^2} : \alpha\beta + \alpha\gamma + \beta\gamma : 1 : \frac{(\beta + \gamma)(\alpha + \gamma)(\alpha + \beta)}{2\alpha\beta\gamma} \right]$$

3. The ex-circles $\widehat{\mathcal{V}}_j$ are obtained by using $\alpha \mapsto -\alpha$, etc.
4. Solving the Apollonius equations

$$\left\{ {}^t X \cdot \begin{bmatrix} \widehat{\mathcal{Q}} \\ z \end{bmatrix} \cdot J \mid J = \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_A, \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_B, \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_C, X \right\}$$

one re-obtains $S_1 \simeq -\frac{\sigma_2}{2\sigma_3} : \frac{\sigma_1\sigma_2 - \sigma_3}{4\sigma_3} : -\frac{\sigma_1}{2} : 1 : \frac{1}{2}$ (i.e. the Euler circle¹) together with S_5 , the Apollonius circle itself (see Subsection 13.11.5).

5. The common orthogonal circle is the alt-Spiecker circle $\widehat{\mathcal{V}}_4 \underset{z}{\simeq}$

$$\left[\begin{array}{c} 2s_1s_3 - 2s_2^2 \\ -7s_3^2 + (-2s_1^3 + 6s_1s_2)s_3 + s_2^2(s_1^2 - 2s_2) \\ -2s_3^2(s_1^2 - s_2) \\ 4s_3^2 \\ 2Ws_3 \end{array} \right] \quad \text{where } W = \sqrt{s_1^3s_3 - 5s_2s_3s_1 + s_2^3 + 7s_3^2}$$

and one can check that the S_2 solution is the sideline BC , etc, while the four S_{4+j} are the inverses of the S_j wrt $\widehat{\mathcal{V}}_4$.

6. And we have the following Searby products:

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{Searby} \left(\left[\widehat{\mathcal{V}}_a, \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_b, \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_c \right] \otimes \left[S_1, S_5, S_a, S_6, S_b, S_7, S_c, S_8, \widehat{\mathcal{V}}_4 \right] \right) \\ &= \begin{bmatrix} -1 & +1 & -1 & +1 & +1 & -1 & +1 & -1 & 0 \\ -1 & +1 & +1 & -1 & -1 & +1 & +1 & -1 & 0 \\ -1 & +1 & +1 & -1 & +1 & -1 & -1 & +1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

7. The same computations can also be conducted within the b -formalism. One only has to deal with the usual radicals.

19.4 Mixtilinear circles

1. Use barycentrics and consider cycles Γ, AB, AC . Their representants are:

$$0 : 0 : 0 : 1 : -\frac{abc}{4S} ; 0 : 0 : 1 : 0 : -\frac{c}{4S} ; 0 : 1 : 0 : 0 : -\frac{b}{4S}$$

2. Solutions of the Apollonius equations are $0 : c^2 : b^2 : 1 : 0$ (i.e. the point-circle A) and

$$\frac{4b^2c^2}{(b+c-a)^2} : \frac{c^2(a+b-c)^2}{(b+c-a)^2} : \frac{b^2(a-b+c)^2}{(b+c-a)^2} : 1 : \frac{bc(a+b-c)(a-b+c)}{2S(b+c-a)}$$

3. Using the z -formalism, the three cycles are

$$0 : -1 : 0 : +1 : 1 ; -1 : \alpha^2 + \beta^2 : -\beta^2\alpha^2 : 0 : \alpha\beta ; -1 : \alpha^2 + \gamma^2 : -\gamma^2\alpha^2 : 0 : \alpha\gamma$$

and one obtains $(A, 0)$ together with

$$\left(\left[\begin{array}{c} \alpha^2(\alpha\beta + \alpha\gamma + 2\beta\gamma)^2 \\ \alpha^2(\beta - \gamma)^2 \\ (2\alpha + \beta + \gamma)^2 \end{array} \right], \frac{2(\beta + \gamma)(\alpha + \gamma)(\alpha + \beta)}{(\beta - \gamma)^2\alpha} \right)$$

4. When using the s -formalism, we have

$$\Gamma \simeq 0 : 0 : -2 : 0 : \sqrt{2} ; AB \simeq -\beta^2\alpha^2 - 1 : i\beta^2\alpha^2 - i : \alpha^2 + \beta^2 : \alpha^2 + \beta^2 : \sqrt{2}\alpha\beta, \text{ etc}$$

and obviously, one obtains the same results.

5. The difficulty here is the choice of the orientations of the circles...

¹caveat: $\sigma_1 = \sum \alpha^2 \neq s_1$!

19.5 Arbelos

Proposition 19.5.1. *Consider points $I_0 \simeq +ih : 0 : -ih$, $A \simeq a : 1 : a$, etc and circles $\mathcal{C}_0 \doteq \mathcal{C}(I_0, 1)$ and $\mathcal{C}_a \simeq \mathcal{C}([B, C])$, etc, where $h, a, b, c \in \mathbb{R}$. If we assume that the four circles are tangent by pairs, we have*

$$h = \pm 2 ; \{a, b, c\} \in \{x, \psi(x), \psi^2(x)\} \quad \text{where } \psi(x) = \frac{x-3}{x+1}$$

Chapter 20

Hyperbolic geometry

In a first step, hyperbolic geometry was created to prove that a geometry can be build which satisfies all of the usual axioms except from the Euclidean one about the parallel lines. As a result, it becomes proven that the Euclidean axiom is independent from the other axioms. See [Cannon et al. \(1997\)](#) and [Arlan Ramsay \(1995\)](#).

Notation 20.0.1. For the further use of the reader, we summarize here all the notations that will be introduced throughout this chapter.

- Prefixes "C-", "P-" and "K-" are used to distinguish the usual cartesian/complex objects from their Poincare or Klein counterparts.
- Letter O is ever the common origin to all spaces. The \mathbb{C} -unit circle, i.e. $\gamma_C(O, 1)$, is noted Γ . The same circle, when used as the P- or the K- horizon circle, is noted $\partial\mathbb{H}$, while \mathbb{H} denotes the open disk limited by $\partial\mathbb{H}$.
- A line through points A, B is noted AB , a circle centered at A and going through M is noted $(A; M)$. When enforcing the brand of a specific object seems useful, notations $\Delta_X(A, B)$ or $\gamma_X(A; M)$ are used.
- Coordinates $A_P \simeq z : t : \zeta$ of a P-point are the usual \mathbb{C} -coordinates, while a widehat denote the \mathbb{C} -reflection of a point into Γ , i.e. $\widehat{A} \simeq t/\zeta : 1 : t/z$.
- Coordinates $A_K \simeq k : 1 : \kappa$ are used for a K-point. From

$$W = \sqrt{1 - k\kappa} = (1 - z\zeta) / (1 + z\zeta) \in \mathbb{R}$$

the K-points are not supposed to cross the boundary Γ .

20.1 The Poincaré plane

Remark 20.1.1. Our strategy is as follows. We start from the \mathbb{C} -objects which occur in the vicinity of O , and then we convey everything to the vicinity of the generic point A_P . Therefore, the P-lines through O are the \mathbb{C} -diameters of Γ , while the P-circles $(O; M)$ are identified with the \mathbb{C} -circles $(O; M)$. Moreover, the space is assumed to be locally Euclidian at O , i.e.

$$(ds_O)^2 = \text{Cte}^2 (dz d\zeta)$$

Definition 20.1.2. The Poincaré model is what is obtained by using homographies as conveyors ([Stothers, 1998-2009](#)).

Theorem 20.1.3. The *Poincaré conveyor* is the Cremona homography defined by:

$$\tau_A : O \mapsto A_P \simeq \begin{pmatrix} z \\ t \\ \zeta \end{pmatrix} ; \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \end{pmatrix} \mapsto \begin{bmatrix} \frac{t\mathbf{Z} + z\mathbf{T}}{\zeta\mathbf{Z} + t\mathbf{T}} \\ 1 \\ \frac{t\overline{\mathbf{Z}} + \zeta\mathbf{T}}{z\overline{\mathbf{Z}} + t\mathbf{T}} \end{bmatrix}$$

Proof. Conveyor τ_A has to keep globally invariant both the horizon circle $\partial\mathbb{H}$ and the line OA . Therefore points $OA \cap \Gamma$, i.e. $\pm\sqrt{z/\zeta} : 1 : \pm\sqrt{\zeta/z}$, are the fixed points. Knowing 3 points and their images, we conclude using the cross-ratio. \square

Remark 20.1.4. Seen as a quadratic Cremona transform, τ_A has two more fixed points (on $\partial\mathbb{H}$, but not visible) $\pm\sqrt{z/\zeta} : 1 : \mp\sqrt{\zeta/z}$, while the three points of indeterminacy are the umbilics $\Omega_x \simeq 0 : 0 : 1$ $\Omega_y \simeq 1 : 0 : 0$ together with $1/\zeta : -1/t : 1/z$ (the reflection of A into the unit imaginary circle). Moreover, τ_A^{-1} is obtained by $t \mapsto -t$.

Theorem 20.1.5. *The **P-metric** near the P-point A_P is induced by the P-metric near O and we have :*

$$(ds_P)^2(A) = \text{Cte}^2 \frac{dzd\zeta}{(1-z\zeta)^2} \quad (20.1)$$

Proof. Use the τ_A^{-1} conveyor to carry back $A + dA \simeq z + dz : 1 : \zeta + d\zeta$ and then use the P-metric at O . \square

Proposition 20.1.6. *The P-line through points A, B is the visible part of the \mathbb{C} -circle through A, B, \hat{A}, \hat{B} Goodman-Strauss (2001, p. 42). When A is fixed, the supports of the P-lines through A are the members of the \mathbb{C} -isoptic(A, \hat{A}) pencil.*

Proof. Since τ_A is conformal, we have $\Delta_P(A, B) \perp \Gamma$ and therefore \hat{A} belongs to the \mathbb{C} -circle which supports the P-line. \square

Proposition 20.1.7. *The P-circles $\gamma_P(A, \rho)$ are the members of the \mathbb{C} -isotomic(A_P, \hat{A}_P) pencil, orthogonal to the former \mathbb{C} -pencil of the P-lines through A_P .*

When $M_1 \simeq z_1 : t_1 : \zeta_1$, then $\gamma_P(A, M_1) = \gamma_C(U, \rho_C)$ where

$$\begin{aligned} U &\simeq_C \begin{bmatrix} tz(t_1^2 - z_1\zeta_1) \\ t_1(t^2t_1 - tz\zeta_1 - t\zeta z_1 + z\zeta t_1) \\ t\zeta(t_1^2 - z_1\zeta_1) \end{bmatrix} \\ \rho_C^2 &= \frac{(\zeta_1 t - t_1 \zeta)(z_1 t - z t_1)(t t_1 - z_1 \zeta)(t t_1 - \zeta_1 z)}{t_1^2(t^2t_1 - tz\zeta_1 - t\zeta z_1 + z\zeta t_1)^2} \\ \rho_C &= \frac{\text{distance}(M, A)\text{distance}(M, \hat{A})}{2 \text{distance}(M, \text{med}(A, \hat{A}))} \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Adjust the value of p in $\mathcal{V}_z(\gamma) \simeq_C p\mathcal{V}_z(A, 0) + (1-p)\mathcal{V}_z(\hat{A}, 0)$ so that γ goes through M_1 and obtain

$$\gamma_P \simeq_C \begin{pmatrix} t\zeta(\zeta_1 z_1 - t_1^2) \\ -(z\zeta + t^2)z_1\zeta_1 + t t_1(z\zeta_1 + \zeta z_1) \\ z t(\zeta_1 z_1 - t_1^2) \\ (z\zeta + t^2)t_1^2 - t t_1(z\zeta_1 + \zeta z_1) \end{pmatrix} \quad \square$$

Proposition 20.1.8. *As points on the \mathbb{C} -line $A\hat{A}$, the \mathbb{C} -center U and the diametrical points $u_1, u_2 = \gamma_C \cap A\hat{A}$ are given by the following Geogebra commands*

*$U = \text{barycenter}(\{A, A'\}, \{\text{distance}(M, A')^2, -\text{distance}(M, A)^2\})$
 $u1 = \text{barycenter}(\{A, A'\}, \{\text{distance}(M, A'), +\text{distance}(M, A)\})$
 $u2 = \text{barycenter}(\{A, A'\}, \{\text{distance}(M, A'), -\text{distance}(M, A)\})$*

Proof. Simple substitution. \square

Remark 20.1.9. Spoiler: the line $\text{med}(A_P, \hat{A}_P)$ is the Γ polar of the later defined A_K .

Proposition 20.1.10. *The P-symmetry $\sigma_A : M \mapsto M'$ where M' belongs together to the P-line AM and to the P-circle $(A; M)$ is the following homography:*

$$\mathbf{Z} \mapsto \frac{(z\zeta + 1)\mathbf{Z} - 2z}{2\mathbf{Z}\zeta - (z\zeta + 1)}; \quad \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \end{pmatrix} \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} \frac{(z\zeta + t^2)\mathbf{Z} - 2tz\mathbf{T}}{2t\zeta\mathbf{Z} - (z\zeta + t^2)\mathbf{T}} \\ 1 \\ \frac{(z\zeta + t^2)\overline{\mathbf{Z}} - 2t\zeta\mathbf{T}}{2tz\overline{\mathbf{Z}} - (z\zeta + t^2)\mathbf{T}} \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. One has $\sigma_A = \tau_A \circ \sigma_O \circ \tau_A^{-1}$ where $\sigma_O = \mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \mapsto -\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : -\overline{\mathbf{Z}}$. As a result, \hat{A} is also invariant and we have $\text{cross_ratio}_C(A, \hat{A}, M, M') = -1$. \square

Construction 20.1.11. *Construct the P-circle when a P-diameter $[M, N]$ is known*

1. Draw the \mathbb{C} -circle $(B) \doteq (M, N, \widehat{M}, \widehat{N})$. This is the P-line MN .
2. Draw the \mathbb{C} -tangents MC and NC to the \mathbb{C} -circle (B) and obtain C
3. The required P-circle γ is the \mathbb{C} -circle $(C; M)$.
4. Add point Q on γ . The \mathbb{C} -tangent to γ at Q cut the \mathbb{C} -mediatrix of $[Q, \widehat{Q}]$ at some point B_Q . Then the \mathbb{C} -circle $(B_Q; Q)$ is another P-diameter of γ
5. The intersection of both diameters gives A (visible, in \mathbb{H}) and \hat{A} (visible, but transfinite).

Construction 20.1.12. *Construct the P-midpoint J of the P-segment $[O, A]$.*

1. Draw the \mathbb{C} -circle δ having $[A, O]$ for diameter.
2. Add a point R on this circle. Draw the \mathbb{C} -tangent at R . Cut by the \mathbb{C} -mediatrix of $[R, \widehat{R}]$ and obtain B_R .
3. Then the \mathbb{C} -circle $(B_R; R)$ is another diameter of δ , obtaining J .

20.2 The Klein plane

Definition 20.2.1. The Klein model is what is obtained by using collineations as conveyors.

Theorem 20.2.2. *The **Klein conveyor** is the collineation defined by:*

$$\vartheta_A : O \mapsto A \simeq \begin{pmatrix} k \\ 1 \\ \kappa \end{pmatrix}; \quad \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \end{pmatrix} \mapsto \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1+W}{2} & k & \frac{k}{\kappa} \left(\frac{1-W}{2} \right) \\ \kappa/2 & 1 & k/2 \\ \frac{\kappa}{k} \left(\frac{1-W}{2} \right) & \kappa & \frac{1+W}{2} \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \end{pmatrix}$$

where $W = \sqrt{1 - k\kappa}$

Proof. Matrix $\boxed{\vartheta_A}$ fulfills its requirements. Moreover, this matrix diagonalizes as

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 + W_a \\ 1 - W_a \\ \sqrt{1 - W_a^2} \end{pmatrix}; \quad \begin{bmatrix} k & k & -k \\ W_a & -W_a & 0 \\ \kappa & \kappa & \kappa \end{bmatrix} \quad \text{where } W_a = \sqrt{k\kappa}$$

The proper columns are related to the unavoidable fixed points, namely the intersections $OA \cap \Gamma$ and the Γ -pole of the OA line, while one has also $\lambda_1 \lambda_2 = \lambda_3^2$. As a result, we have not only the existence, but also the unicity of ϑ_A . Moreover, here again, $\boxed{\vartheta_A}^{-1}$ is nothing but $\boxed{\vartheta_{-A}}$. \square

Theorem 20.2.3. *The **K-metric** near the K-point $A_K \simeq k : 1 : \kappa$ is:*

$$(ds_K)^2(\mathfrak{A}_K) = \frac{\text{Cte}^2}{4} \left(\frac{dk d\kappa}{1 - k\kappa} + \frac{(\kappa dk + k d\kappa)^2}{4(1 - k\kappa)^2} \right)$$

See Theorem 20.2.3 for the fact that $\text{Cte} = 2$.

Proof. Use the ϑ_A^{-1} conveyor to carry back $A_K + dA \simeq k + dk : 1 : \kappa + d\kappa$ near the origin and then use the K-metric at O . \square

Remark 20.2.4. The K-line through A, B is nothing but the \mathbb{C} -line through the same points. Circles centered at A_K will be studied later.

Proposition 20.2.5. *The K-symmetry $\mathfrak{s}_A : M \mapsto M'$ centered at A_K is the involutive collineation defined by:*

$$\boxed{\mathfrak{s}_A} \simeq \frac{1}{1 - k\kappa} \begin{bmatrix} -1 & 2k & -k^2 \\ -\kappa & 1 + k\kappa & -k \\ -\kappa^2 & 2\kappa & -1 \end{bmatrix} \quad (20.2)$$

Proof. This comes from $\mathfrak{s}_A = \vartheta_A \circ \mathfrak{s}_O \circ \vartheta_A^{-1}$. Alternate proof: diagonalize and obtain:

$$\begin{pmatrix} +1 \\ -1 \\ -1 \end{pmatrix} ; \begin{bmatrix} k & \kappa^{-1} & -k \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \\ \kappa & k^{-1} & \kappa \end{bmatrix}$$

The proper columns are related to the unavoidable fixed points, namely A_K itself together with $\widehat{A_K}$ and the Γ -pole of OA . As a result \mathfrak{s}_A is an homology. \square

20.3 From a model to the other

Proposition 20.3.1. *Consider Δ_P and Δ_K , the P- and K-lines sharing the same \mathbb{C} -turns α, β as points at horizon $\partial\mathbb{H}$. When written in $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^4)$, the projective space of the \mathbb{C} -cycles, the maps $\mathfrak{PtoK} : \Delta_P \mapsto \Delta_K$ and $\mathfrak{KtoP} : \Delta_K \mapsto \Delta_P$ (Klein to Poincaré and conversely) are:*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{V}_z(\mathfrak{KtoP}(\Delta_K)) &= \mathcal{V}_z(\Delta_K) + \mathcal{V}_z(\text{horz}) \\ \mathcal{V}_z(\mathfrak{PtoK}(\Delta_P)) &= \mathcal{V}_z(\Delta_P) - \mathcal{V}_z(\text{horz}) \end{aligned}$$

(when normalizing the \mathbb{C} -circles by $U_4 = 1$ and the \mathbb{C} -lines by $U_2 = 2$).

Proof. We have $\Gamma \simeq 0 : -1 : 0 : 1$ while $\mathcal{V}_z(\Delta_P) \simeq * : 1 : * : 1$ and $\mathcal{V}_z(\Delta_K) \simeq * : * : * : 0$. \square

Proposition 20.3.2. *The map \mathfrak{PtoK} transforms the pencil of all the P-lines through a given A_P into the pencil of all the K-lines through a same point A_K . And one has the punctual maps:*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{PtoK}(A_P) = \mathfrak{PtoK} \begin{pmatrix} z \\ t \\ \zeta \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} 2zt \\ t^2 + z\zeta \\ 2\zeta t \end{pmatrix} = A_K \\ \mathfrak{KtoP}(A_K) = \mathfrak{KtoP} \begin{pmatrix} k \\ 1 \\ \kappa \end{pmatrix} &= \begin{pmatrix} (1 - \sqrt{1 - \kappa k}) \div \kappa \\ 1 \\ (1 - \sqrt{1 - \kappa k}) \div k \end{pmatrix} = A_P \end{aligned} \quad (20.3)$$

Proof. Straightforward computation. Moreover: $k = \frac{2z}{1 + z\zeta} = \widehat{(z + \widehat{z})} / 2$. \square

Proposition 20.3.3. *The Poincaré \leftrightarrow Klein maps can be illustrated by involving the 3D sphere \mathbb{S} having Γ as equatorial circle. Let N be the North pole of \mathbb{S} . Start from a point A_P in the P-plane. Draw the \mathbb{C} -line NA . It cuts the sphere at a point Q (the stereographic projection). And then draw the vertical of Q , intersecting the equatorial plane at A_K .*

20.4 More about hyperbolic distance

Notation 20.4.1. In what follows, δ_{AB} is $\text{distance}(A, B)$, i.e. $\delta_{AB}^2 =$

Proposition 20.4.2. *In the K-plane, the distance between the K-points M_1, M_2 is*

$$\left| \frac{1}{2} \ln \text{cross_ratio}(M_1, M_2, M_3, M_4) \right| \quad (20.4)$$

where $M_3, M_4 \in \Gamma$ and the M_j are K-aligned (in any order).

Proof. Use $M_1, M_2, M_3, M_4 = x_1, x_2, -1, +1$ on the x -axis. Substitute $k = \kappa = x$ and $dk = d\kappa = dx$ into

$$(ds_K)^2 = \frac{\text{Cte}^2}{4} \left(\frac{dk d\kappa}{1 - k\kappa} + \frac{(\kappa dk + k d\kappa)^2}{4(1 - k\kappa)^2} \right)$$

and obtain $ds = \frac{\text{Cte}}{4} \left(\frac{1}{1-x} + \frac{1}{x+1} \right) dx$. Integrating, we obtain

$$\delta = \frac{\text{Cte}}{4} \ln \left(\frac{(x_2 + 1)(x_1 - 1)}{(x_2 - 1)(x_1 + 1)} \right) = \frac{\text{Cte}}{4} \ln \left(\frac{(x_1 - x_4)(x_2 - x_3)}{(x_2 - x_4)(x_1 - x_3)} \right)$$

i.e. the required cross-ratio formula. This applies to all pair of points since the cross-ratio is invariant under any conveyor. When the M_j are not in this order, it becomes necessary to take the absolute value of the expression. \square

Proposition 20.4.3. *In the P-plane, the distance between the P-points M_1, M_2 is*

$$|\ln \text{cross_ratio}(M_1, M_2, M_3, M_4)| \quad (20.5)$$

where $M_3, M_4 \in \Gamma$ and the M_j are P-aligned.

Proof. Let $C, D \simeq \gamma : 1 : \gamma^{-1}, \delta : 1 : \delta^{-1} \in \Gamma$. They define the circle $\gamma \simeq \left[\frac{-2}{\gamma + \delta}, 1, \frac{-2\delta\gamma}{\delta + \gamma}, 1 \right]$. Therefore the points A_P, B_P on $\Delta_P(C, D)$ can be written as

$$A_P, B_P \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \frac{2\gamma\delta}{\delta + \gamma} \\ 1 \\ 2 \\ \frac{\delta}{\delta + \gamma} \end{pmatrix} + \frac{i(\delta - \gamma)}{\delta + \gamma} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ \alpha \end{pmatrix}, \text{ etc}$$

where α, β are some turns. And a straightforward computation leads to:

$$\text{cross_ratio}(A_K, B_K, C, D) = \left(\frac{(i\alpha + \gamma)(i\beta - \delta)}{(i\beta + \gamma)(i\alpha - \delta)} \right)^2 = \text{cross_ratio}(A_P, B_P, C, D)^2 \quad \square$$

Proposition 20.4.4. *With the same hypotheses, we have*

$$d_P(M_1, M_2) = \left| \ln \frac{d_{\mathbb{C}}(M_1, M_3) \times d_{\mathbb{C}}(M_2, M_4)}{d_{\mathbb{C}}(M_1, M_4) \times d_{\mathbb{C}}(M_2, M_3)} \right|$$

Proof. Continue using the same method as above. Rem: method used in geogebra. \square

Theorem 20.4.5. *There are algebraic expressions for the cosh of the hyperbolic distances:*

$$\begin{aligned} \cosh(d_P(A_P, B_P)) &= 1 + \frac{2\delta_{AB}^2}{\mathfrak{p}_A \mathfrak{p}_B} \\ \cosh(d_K(A_K, B_K)) &= \frac{\delta_{AB}^2 - \mathfrak{p}_A - \mathfrak{p}_B}{2\sqrt{\mathfrak{p}_A} \sqrt{\mathfrak{p}_B}} = \frac{(t_2 t_1 - \frac{1}{2}(z_1 \zeta_2 + z_2 \zeta_1))}{\sqrt{t_2^2 - z_2 \zeta_2} \sqrt{t_1^2 - \zeta_1 z_1}} \end{aligned} \quad (20.6)$$

Proof. For the P formula: obtain M_3, M_4 from $\Delta_P \cap \Gamma$. This involves the radical

$$W = \sqrt{(t_1 t_2 - \zeta_1 z_2)(t_1 t_2 - z_1 \zeta_2)(t_1 z_2 - t_2 z_1)(t_1 \zeta_2 - \zeta_1 t_2)}$$

Then substitute into (20.5) and take the cosh. For the K formula, the same method can be used, but using \mathfrak{P} to \mathfrak{K} is another possibility. \square

Corollary 20.4.6. *In the Poincaré model, we have the additional formula:*

$$\begin{aligned} \cosh^2(d_P(A_P, B_P)/2) &= \frac{(t_2 t_1 - z_1 \zeta_2)(t_2 t_1 - \zeta_1 z_2)}{(t_1^2 - z_1 \zeta_1)(t_2^2 - z_2 \zeta_2)} = 1 + \frac{\delta_{AB}^2}{\mathfrak{p}_A \mathfrak{p}_B} \\ \sinh^2(d_P(A_P, B_P)/2) &= \frac{(\zeta_2 t_1 - \zeta_1 t_2)(z_2 t_1 - z_1 t_2)}{(t_1^2 - z_1 \zeta_1)(t_2^2 - z_2 \zeta_2)} = \frac{\delta_{AB}^2}{\mathfrak{p}_A \mathfrak{p}_B} \\ \tanh(d_P(A_P, B_P)/2) &= \frac{|z_1 - z_2|}{|1 - z_1 \zeta_2|} = \frac{\delta_{AB}}{\sqrt{\delta_{AB}^2 + \mathfrak{p}_A \mathfrak{p}_B}} \end{aligned}$$

Remark 20.4.7. Another way to write (20.6) is

$$\cosh(d_K(M, N)) = \frac{1 - \langle M | N \rangle}{\sqrt{(1 - \langle M | M \rangle)(1 - \langle N | N \rangle)}}$$

Proposition 20.4.8. *Hyperbolic Pythagoras Theorem. When a, b are the right-angled sides and c is the third side, one has*

$$\cosh c = \cosh a \cosh b$$

Proof. Consider the triangle $0, x, iy$ and use either the Klein or the Poincaré formulas. \square

Proposition 20.4.9. *The \mathbb{C} -homology whose center A_K and axis Δ are Γ -polar of each other describes the K -symmetry wrt $A_K \simeq k : 1 : \kappa$ when this point is inside the Klein disk \mathbb{H} but describes the K -symmetry wrt Δ when A_K is in the outer world (and Δ_K is a real K -line).*

Proof. The matrix $\boxed{\mathfrak{s}_A}$ of this homology is given at (20.2). We have:

$$\begin{aligned} \cosh^2(d_K(A_K, M_j)) &= \frac{(\kappa \mathbf{Z} + k \bar{\mathbf{Z}} - 2 \mathbf{T})^2}{4(\mathbf{T}^2 - \mathbf{Z} \bar{\mathbf{Z}})(1 - \kappa k)} \\ \cosh^2(d_K(U_K, M_j)) &= 1 + \frac{(\kappa \mathbf{Z} + k \bar{\mathbf{Z}} - 2 \mathbf{T})^2}{4(\mathbf{T}^2 - \mathbf{Z} \bar{\mathbf{Z}})(\kappa k - 1)} \end{aligned}$$

where $M_2 \doteq \boxed{\mathfrak{s}_A} \cdot M_1$ and $U_K = \Delta \cap M_1 M_2$. \square

Proposition 20.4.10. *In the P -plane, the previous proposition becomes:*

$$M_2, M'_2 \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \frac{(t^2 + \zeta z) \mathbf{Z} - (2tz) \mathbf{T}}{(2t\zeta) \mathbf{Z} - (t^2 + \zeta z) \mathbf{T}} & 1 \\ \frac{(t^2 + \zeta z) \bar{\mathbf{Z}} - (2t\zeta) \mathbf{T}}{(2tz) \bar{\mathbf{Z}} - (t^2 + \zeta z) \mathbf{T}} & \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} \frac{(2tz) \bar{\mathbf{Z}} - (t^2 + \zeta z) \mathbf{T}}{(t^2 + \zeta z) \bar{\mathbf{Z}} - (2t\zeta) \mathbf{T}} & 1 \\ \frac{(2t\zeta) \mathbf{Z} - (t^2 + \zeta z) \mathbf{T}}{(t^2 + \zeta z) \mathbf{Z} - (2tz) \mathbf{T}} & \end{pmatrix}$$

where M_2 is the P -symmetric of M_1 wrt $A_P \simeq z : t : \zeta$ when $A_P \in \mathbb{H}$, while M_3 is the P -symmetric of M_1 wrt the P -line which is \mathbb{C} -centered at A_P when $A_P \notin \mathbb{H}$.

Proof. Substitute $k : 1 : \kappa$ with \mathfrak{P} to $\mathfrak{K}(z : t : \zeta)$, etc, compute and then goes back using \mathfrak{K} to \mathfrak{P} . Remark: M_2, M'_2 are \mathbb{C} -inverse wrt Γ . \square

Exercise 20.4.11. When the radius ρ varies, the K -circles $\gamma_K(\mathfrak{A}, \rho)$ form a family of \mathbb{C} -ellipses. Find the locus of their \mathbb{C} -foci

Exercise 20.4.12. Consider the P -points A, B . Determine the parameter R corresponding to the K -circles $(\mathfrak{A}, \mathfrak{B})$.

20.5 Hyperbolic triangle

(list of results)

20.5.1 Sideline

1. The K -line is equal to the \mathbb{C} -line, while the P -line is $\mathcal{C}(B, \widehat{B}, C, \widehat{C})$
2. The point $O_{BC} \doteq \text{Polar}(klinA, horz) = \text{Center}(plinA)$ is outside of \mathbb{H} .

20.5.2 Line-bisectors

1. The P -formula are:

$$\mathcal{V}_z(\mu_P) \simeq \mathfrak{p}_B \mathcal{V}_z(C_P) - \mathfrak{p}_C \mathcal{V}_z(B_P)$$

$$\omega = \left(\mathfrak{p}_2 \frac{z_3}{t_3} - \mathfrak{p}_3 \frac{z_2}{t_2} \right) / (\mathfrak{p}_2 - \mathfrak{p}_3) ; \rho^2 = \omega \bar{\omega} - 1$$

2. The K -formula are (where lines are normalized using $\Delta_2 = 1$)

$$med_A \simeq \sqrt{\mathfrak{p}_C} \text{Polar}(B) - \sqrt{\mathfrak{p}_B} \text{Polar}(C)$$

3. The three \mathbb{H} -line-bisectors are ever collinear. As a result, the K -line-bisectors are ever going through some point $O_K \in \mathbb{C}$. When this point belongs to \mathbb{H} , there exists an \mathbb{H} -circle going through A, B, C (and centered at $O_{\mathbb{H}}$). Otherwise, $O_{\mathbb{H}}$ is the pole of an \mathbb{H} -line and this line is the common perpendicular to the three line-bisectors.

Exercise 20.5.1. Let B, C be given in \mathbb{H} . Find all the $A \in \mathbb{H}$ such that the \mathbb{H} -circle (A, B, C) exist. Hint: use the K -model together with $B, C = \pm k$; $A = x + iy$ and obtain the horicycles:

$$(k^2 y^2 + k^2 - x^2 - 2y^2) \pm 2y(k^2 - 1)$$

as boundaries. One obtains also

$$(2k^2 y^2 - k^2 + x^2 - y^2) \pm 2ixy(k^2 - 1)$$

Any opinion on this extra-locus ?

20.5.3 Medians

Definition 20.5.2. Cut $\text{med}_P(B, C)$ with $\Delta_P(B, C)$ and obtain G_A . Then $\Delta_P(A, G_A)$ is called the Amedian.

Proposition 20.5.3. *The three medians of a triangle form a pencil.*

Proof. Computations are straightforward. □

20.5.4 Altitudes

1. $paltA = \mathcal{C}(A, \widehat{A}, \text{Reflect}(A, plinA))$
2. $kaltA = \Delta(A, O_{BC})$
3. the three \mathbb{C} -lines $kaltX$ are concurrent (inside \mathbb{H} or outside !)
4. The three \mathbb{H} -altitudes are ever collinear. As a result, the K -altitudes are ever going through some point $H_K \in \mathbb{C}$. When this point belongs to \mathbb{H} , the triangle admits an \mathbb{H} -orthocenter. Otherwise, $H_{\mathbb{H}}$ is the pole of an \mathbb{H} -line and this line is the common perpendicular to the three altitudes.

Exercise 20.5.4. Let B, C be given in \mathbb{H} . Find all the $A \in \mathbb{H}$ such that (A, B, C) admits an \mathbb{H} -orthocenter. Hint: use the K -model together with $B, C = \pm k$; $A = x + iy$ and obtain

$$(k^2 y^2 + k^2 - x^2 - 2y^2) \pm 2y(k^2 - 1)$$

as boundary.

20.5.5 Trigonometry

Proposition 20.5.5. *When triangle A, B, C is rectangular in C then:*

$$\sin A = \frac{\sinh a}{\sinh c} ; \cos A = \frac{\tanh b}{\tanh c} ; \tan A = \frac{\tanh a}{\sinh b}$$

$$\cosh(b) = \frac{\cos B}{\sin A}, \cosh(c) = \cosh(a)\cosh(b) = \frac{\cos A \cos B}{\sin A \sin B}$$

Proof. Consider the standard rectangular triangle $z_A = k, z_B = iK, z_C = 0$ and use the usual formula for the angle between two circles. \square

20.6 The Upper-half plane

Taking a point P on Γ and reflecting everything from the P-plane wrt the circle $\gamma_C(P, 2)$ leads to another model of the hyperbolic plane, where U-circles are C-circles and U-lines are half-C-circles, ending at the horizon line.

Exercise 20.6.1 (Soland's porism). (2018) Take n points a_j on circle Γ , with the intent to construct a sequence of n circles, sequentially tangent to each other and internally tangent to Γ . When n is odd, there is exactly one solution. When n is even, the n -th point is determined by the others. And then, one of the radii can be chosen at will.

Hint: at Figure 20.2, P is taken at a_0 and cirP , the inversion circle, is tangent to Γ . This leads to $a_j \mapsto A_j$. Find a relation between $d_{12} = d_C(A_1, A_2)$ and r_1, r_2 , the C-radii of the C-circles O_1, O_2 .

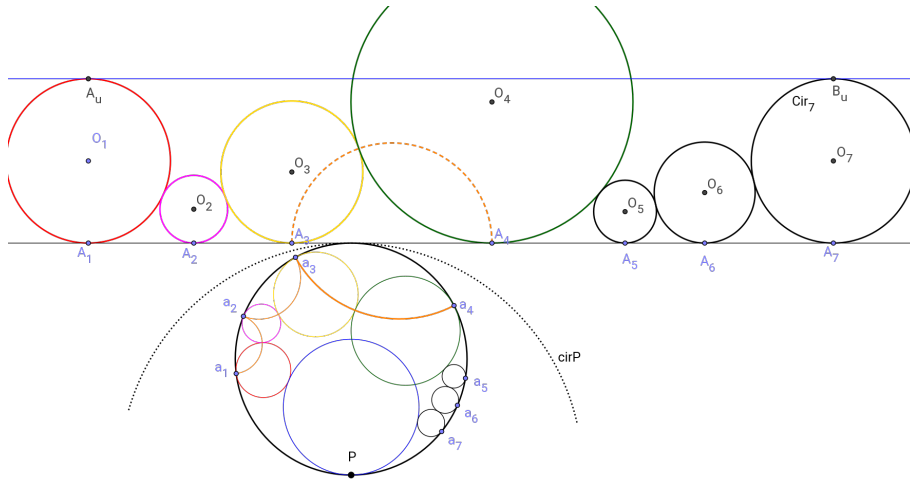


Figure 20.2: The Poincaré to Upper-half transform

20.7 Teaching tensors to a computer

Informally, tensors are friendly multi-dimensional arrays implementing the "two" Einstein's rules:

(0_1) in X_j^k , there aren't exponents, but only indices, the j being "down" while the k is "up"

(0_2) indices are implying ranges and variables

(1): repeated index (one up, one down): X_{jk}^k means $(j) \mapsto \sum_{k \in \text{range}(k)} X_{jk}^k$

(2): comma: $X_{j,k}$ means $(j, k) \mapsto \partial X_j / \partial x_k$ (assuming that index k implies variable x)

Notation 20.7.1. In the end, we will use four sets of variables, two external and two internal. Using an index will imply which variable is indexed. For example, $\mathfrak{N}_{,\nu}^m$ (where \mathfrak{N} means Jacobian) is to be read as $\frac{\partial x^m}{\partial u^\nu}$ while $\mathfrak{N}_{,\sigma}^\nu$ is to be read as $\frac{\partial u^\nu}{\partial t^\sigma}$. Everything will be introduced in details but, for the reader's convenience, these associations are summarized here, in Table 20.1.

index	range	tag	variables	comment	here
m, n, p, q, r	1..3	x	x, y, z	external	cartesian
a, b, c, d, e	1..3	w	u, v, w	extended	
$\mu, \nu, \phi, \psi, \rho$	1..2	u	u, v	1° internal	stereographic
$\sigma, \tau, \epsilon, \omega, \kappa$	1..2	t	t, s	2° internal	spheric

Table 20.1: Indices and the associated variables

Definition 20.7.2. We define a tensor as a triple `[index_list, updo_list, Maple_rtable]`. The `index_list` is a Maple list of unassigned names, where repetitions are allowed. The `updo_list` is a list of booleans, coded 1 for "up" and 0 for "down". When a name is repeated in the `index_list`, only two occurrences are allowed, one being tagged as "up" and the other as "down".

Remark 20.7.3. Another method would have been to build a stratospheric theory using the marvelous operator \otimes (read it as otimes). But we need something else, i.e. a practical computing tool. Using Mathematica, Sage or any other formal computing tool instead of Maple is probably possible... mind the details, they are where the devil lives.

Fact 20.7.4. When X is a Maple_rtable, the command `ArrDim`, defined by

```
macro(ArrDim=ArrayTools[Dimensions])
```

returns a list of Maple ranges, i.e. something like `1..3, 1..2, 1..4` and then `X[tut1, tut2, tut3]` returns some value, assuming that variables `tut1, tut2, tut3` contain integer numbers inside the right ranges. Here, the `tutj` are freshly build Maple variables, and not the names given in the `index_list`.

Maple 20.7.5. In order to implement Einstein's (1) or (2), the naming conventions must be explicitly stated. When assuming Table 20.1 the following procedure will inform the computer of our choices:

```
1: SETVARS := proc (var) ; global glodex
2: if member(var, [m, n, p, q, r]) then glodex := [m, n, p, q, r] ; return [x, y, z]
3: else if member(var, [a, b, c, d, e]) then glodex := [a, b, c, d, e] ; return [u, v, w]
4: else if member(var, [\mu, \nu, \phi, \psi, \rho]) then glodex := [\mu, \nu, \phi, \psi, \rho] ; return [u, v]
5: else glodex := [\sigma, \tau, \epsilon, \omega, \kappa] return [s, t]
6: end if
```

LISTING 20.1: The procedure setvars enforces our naming conventions

Maple 20.7.6. Applying some process to each element of the internal array is done by procedure ALG. 20.2. As examples, `action` can be `factor` or `U-> simplify(U, symbolic)`.

```
1: ATENS := proc (qui, action) ; local tt1, tt2, tt3
2: tt1, tt2, tt3 := op(qui)
3: return [tt1, tt2, map(action, tt3)]
```

LISTING 20.2: The atens procedure (A means Action)

Maple 20.7.7. While the reader is supposed to decipher $X_{,\mu}^j$ as $\partial X^j / \partial u^\mu$, this has to be explained to a computer by procedure ALG. 20.3.

Maple 20.7.8. While the reader is supposed to decipher $a^m b^n$ as another tensor build using $(m, n) \mapsto a^m \times b^n$, this has to be explained to a computer by procedure ALG. 20.4.

Require: *qui* depends on the *var* indexed variables

```

1: DTENS := proc (qui, var, updo)
2: local laproc, tt1, tt2, tt3, nn, lesdex, ttq, vars
3: tt1, tt2, tt3 := op(qui) ; vars := setvars(var)
4: nn := nops(tt1) ; lesdex := seq(Catenate(tut, j), j = 1..nn)
5: (lesdex, ttq) ↦ diff(tt3[lesdex], vars[ttq])
6: laproc := subs(lesdex = lesdex, %)
7: tt1 := [op(tt1), var] ; tt2 := [op(tt2), updo]
8: return [tt1, tt2, rtable(op(ArrDim(tt3)), 1..nops(vars), eval(laproc))]

```

LISTING 20.3: The dtens procedure (D means Derivation)

```

1: CTENS := proc (v1, v2)
2: local ss1, ss2, ss3, tt1, tt2, tt3, tmp, lesdex1, lesdex2, lesdex, laproc
3: ss1, ss2, ss3 := op(v1) ; tt1, tt2, tt3 := op(v2)
4: lesdex1 := seq(Catenate(tut, j), j = 1..nops(ss1))
5: lesdex2 := seq(Catenate(tvt, j), j = 1..nops(tt1))
6: lesdex := lesdex1, lesdex2
7: lesdex ↦ ss3[lesdex1] * tt3[lesdex2]
8: laproc := subs(lesdex = lesdex, lesdex1 = lesdex1, lesdex2 = lesdex2, %)
9: tmp := [op(ss1), op(tt1)], [op(ss2), op(tt2)]
10: return [tmp, rtable(op(ArrDim(ss3)), op(ArrDim(tt3)), eval(laproc))]

```

Ensure: Some tests are done on indices: repetition requires one index up, one down.

The "arrow" procedure defined at line 7 must go through the cryptic substitutions of line 8 in order to be accepted by the Maple constructor **rtable** at line 10.
Accept this state of affairs... or rewrite the whole **array** package !

LISTING 20.4: The ctens procedure (C means Catenate)

Maple 20.7.9. While the reader is supposed to decipher $a_{n\mu}^{mn}$ as a two indices tensor, build using $(m, \mu) \mapsto \sum_n a_{n\mu}^{mn}$, this new tensor has to be explicitly created by procedure **ALG. 20.5**.

```

1: RTENS := proc (qui, vas) ; global tt3, laproc
2: local tt1, tt2, ou1, ou2, lemu, lesdex, lesdey, lesdim, lestt2, lestt1
3: tt1, tt2, tt3 := op(qui)
4: member(vas, tt1, ou1) ; member(vas, subsop(ou1 = KKK, tt1), ou2)
5: lesdex := [seq](Catenate(tut, j), j = 1..nops(tt1))
6: lesdey := (op@subsop)(ou1 = NULL, ou2 = NULL, lesdex)
7: lesdim := (op@subsop)(ou1 = NULL, ou2 = NULL, ArrDim(tt3))
8: lesdex := (op@subsop)(ou1 = vas, ou2 = vas, lesdex)
9: lestt1 := subsop(ou1 = NULL, ou2 = NULL, tt1)
10: lestt2 := subsop(ou1 = NULL, ou2 = NULL, tt2)
11: lemu := ArrDim(tt3)[ou1] ; lesdeyy ↦ add(tt3[lesdex], vas = lemu)
12: laproc := subs(lesdex = lesdex, lesdeyy = lesdey, lemu = lemu, %)
13: if nops(lestt2) = 0 then return eval(laproc)()
14: return [lestt1, lestt2, rtable(lesdim, eval(laproc))]

```

LISTING 20.5: The rtens procedure (R means Reduce)

Example 20.7.10. $x_{,\mu}^m du^\mu$ means $\left[\left(\frac{\partial x_j}{\partial u} du + \frac{\partial x_j}{\partial v} dv \right), j = 1..3 \right]$. In our formalism, a sequence DCR is used to construct this 1-index tensor. From a complexity point of view, this is far from being optimal. But, in what we are doing, the underlying arrays are not sufficiently large to require a careful optimization.

Maple 20.7.11. Adding two tensors require that indices lists are exactly the same (and the up/down list also). Reordering of indices is done by ALG. 20.6, while the addition itself is done by ALG. 20.7.

```

1: XTENS := proc(qui, org) ; global tt3_
2: local tt1, tt2, ss2, frum, vers, lafun_, udpo, dims
3: tt1, tt2, tt3_ := op(qui)
4: if convert(org, set) <> convert(tt1, set) then Error("wrong set of indices")
5: frum := cat('@(op, map2)(sprintf, "%a", org))[1..-2]
6: vers := cat('@(op, map2)(sprintf, "%a", tt1))[1..-2]
7: cat(" ", frum, " " -> tt3_(" ", vers, " ")); lafun_ := parse(Ditto1())
8: udpo := table([seq](tt1[j] = tt2[j], j = 1..nops(tt1))); ss2 := [seq](udpo[j], j = org)
9: dims := table([seq](tt1[j] = ArrDim(tt3_)[j], j = 1..nops(tt1)))
10: return [org, ss2, eval(rtable(seq(dims[j], j = org), lafun_))]
```

LISTING 20.6: The xtens procedure (X means Xcross)

```

1: ADDTENS2 := proc(trr, tss, laproc := factor, {mul1 := 1, mul2 := 1})
2: local tt1, tt2, tt3, ss1, ss2, ss3
3: tt1, tt2, tt3 := op(trr) ; ss1, ss2, ss3 := op(tss)
4: if tt1 <> ss1 or tt2 <> ss2 then error ("indices doesn't match")
5: return [tt1, tt2, map('@(eval, laproc), mul1 * tt3 + mul2 * ss3)]
```

LISTING 20.7: The addtens2 procedure

20.8 The sphere: dealing with an example

20.8.1 External and internal coordinates

Fact 20.8.1. When describing a "surface", the simplest way to proceed is embedding the surface into some larger space, leading to something like

$$(x, y, z) \in (\text{Ext}) \text{ means } x^2 + y^2 + z^2 - 1 = 0$$

The first step towards a more intrinsic way of doing is to describe these external coordinates from "the real world" i.e. from the surface itself, as if there was nothing outside.

Example 20.8.2. One can check that equations $[u, v, w] = W$ and $[x, y, z] = \hat{X}$ where :

$$W^a = \begin{bmatrix} [a], [1], \left[\frac{x}{1+z}, \frac{y}{1+z}, \frac{x^2 + y^2 + z^2 - 1}{1+z} \right] \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\hat{X}^m = \begin{bmatrix} [m], [1], \left[\frac{u(w+2)}{1+u^2+v^2}, \frac{v(w+2)}{1+u^2+v^2}, \frac{1+w-u^2-v^2}{1+u^2+v^2} \right] \end{bmatrix}$$

describes a pair of bijections $(x, y, z) \mapsto (u, v, w) \mapsto (x, y, z)$. They are differentiable quite everywhere. When making $w = 0$, we are selecting the points of the sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 1$.

Let us define U and X by:

$$U^\mu = \begin{bmatrix} [\mu], [1], \left[\frac{x}{1+z}, \frac{y}{1+z} \right] \end{bmatrix}$$

$$X^m = \begin{bmatrix} [m], [1], \left[\frac{2u}{u^2+v^2+1}, \frac{2v}{u^2+v^2+1}, \frac{1-u^2-v^2}{1+u^2+v^2} \right] \end{bmatrix}$$

Then the pairs $U = (u, w)$ are a system of internal coordinates for the sphere, while the triples (x, y, z) are a system of external coordinates for the same surface, bound by the so called implicit equation of the sphere.

We will also introduce another set of internal coordinates $T^\sigma = [t, s]$ by equations

$$\begin{aligned} T^\sigma &= \begin{matrix} u \\ x \end{matrix} \left[[\sigma], [1], \left[\arcsin \left(\frac{1 - u^2 - v^2}{1 + u^2 + v^2} \right), \arctan \left(\frac{v}{1 + u^2 + v^2}, \frac{u}{1 + u^2 + v^2} \right) \right] \right] \\ &= \begin{matrix} [\sigma], [1], [\\ \arcsin(z), \arctan(y, x)] \end{matrix} \end{aligned}$$

and their converses:

$$U^\mu = \begin{matrix} [\mu], [1], \left[\frac{\cos(s) \cos(t)}{1 + \sin(t)}, \frac{\sin(s) \cos(t)}{1 + \sin(t)} \right] \end{matrix}$$

$$X^m = [[m], [1], [\cos s \cos t, \sin s \cos t, \sin t]]$$

20.8.2 Jacobians

Notation 20.8.3. More than ever, notations of Table 20.1 are used.

Fact 20.8.4. *The external description of the tangent plane at M is*

$$\frac{\partial(x^2 + y^2 + z^2 - 1)}{\partial(x; y; z)} \cdot \overrightarrow{[dx, dy, dz]} = 0$$

At a regular point, i.e. almost everywhere, the $[dx, dy, dz]$ variations of the external coordinates $[x, y, z]$ are linearly correlated with the variations of any other set of coordinates. In fact, this is the very existence of such an invertible transform which decides if changing from a set of coordinates to another set is allowed or not. The matrices expressing these transformations are called the Jacobians and noted $\mathfrak{N}_{,m}^\mu$ (where \mathfrak{N} indicates Jacobian, μ indicate new= u, v and m indicates old= x, y, z . In other words: $d^\mu = \mathfrak{N}_{,m}^\mu d^m$).

20.8.2.1 Internal versus another internal

Proposition 20.8.5. *The 2×2 tensors $\mathfrak{N}_{,\sigma}^\mu \mathbf{1}_\mu^\nu \mathfrak{N}_{,\nu}^\tau$ and $\mathfrak{N}_{,\sigma}^\mu \mathbf{1}_\sigma^\tau \mathfrak{N}_{,\nu}^\tau$ are respectively equal to and $\mathbf{1}_\sigma^\tau$ and $\mathbf{1}_\nu^\mu$.*

Proof. Both tensors describe respectively $[ds, dt]$ and $[du, dv]$ wrt themselves, so that obvious is obvious. But, in order to check the procedures given above, let us compute explicitly the Jacobians of (u, v) versus (s, t) and conversely. And then rewrite them using the other set of variables. This leads to: \square

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial(u, v)}{\partial(s, t)} \equiv \mathfrak{N}_{,\sigma}^\mu &= \begin{matrix} t \\ u \\ x \end{matrix} \left[[\mu, \sigma], [1, 0], \left[\begin{array}{cc} \frac{-\cos(s)}{1 + \sin(t)} & \frac{-\cos(t) \sin(s)}{1 + \sin(t)} \\ \frac{-\sin(s)}{1 + \sin(t)} & \frac{\cos(t) \cos(s)}{1 + \sin(t)} \end{array} \right] \right] \\ &= \begin{matrix} [\mu, \sigma], [1, 0], \left[\begin{array}{cc} \frac{-u(1 + u^2 + v^2)}{2\sqrt{u^2 + v^2}} & -v \\ \frac{-v(1 + u^2 + v^2)}{2\sqrt{u^2 + v^2}} & +u \end{array} \right] \end{matrix} \\ &= \begin{matrix} [\mu, \sigma], [1, 0], \left[\begin{array}{cc} \frac{-x}{(1 + z)\sqrt{1 - z^2}} & \frac{-y}{1 + z} \\ \frac{-y}{(1 + z)\sqrt{1 - z^2}} & \frac{+x}{1 + z} \end{array} \right] \end{matrix} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\frac{\partial(s,t)}{\partial(u,v)} \equiv \mathfrak{N}_{,\mu}^{\sigma} &= \begin{matrix} u \\ \end{matrix} \left[[\sigma, \mu], [1, 0], \left[\begin{array}{cc} \frac{-2u}{(1+u^2+v^2)\sqrt{u^2+v^2}} & \frac{-2v}{(1+u^2+v^2)\sqrt{u^2+v^2}} \\ \frac{-v}{u^2+v^2} & \frac{+u}{u^2+v^2} \end{array} \right] \right] \\
&= \begin{matrix} t \\ \end{matrix} \left[[\tau, \nu], [1, 0], \left[\begin{array}{cc} \frac{-\cos s(1+\sin t)}{\cos t} & \frac{-\sin s(1+\sin t)}{\cos t} \\ \frac{-\sin s(1+\sin t)}{\cos t} & \frac{\cos s(1+\sin t)}{\cos t} \end{array} \right] \right] \\
&= \begin{matrix} x \\ \end{matrix} \left[[\sigma, \mu], [1, 0], \left[\begin{array}{cc} \frac{-x(1+z)}{\sqrt{1-z^2}} & \frac{-y(1+z)}{\sqrt{1-z^2}} \\ \frac{-y}{1-z} & \frac{x}{1-z} \end{array} \right] \right]
\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, $\mathfrak{N}_{,\sigma}^{\mu} \mathbf{1}_{\mu}^{\nu} \mathfrak{N}_{,\nu}^{\tau}$ can be computed using any of u, t, x as algebraic basis, leading to

```
seq(rtens(ctens(
  Jac(sigma,mu,X),Jac(nu,tau,X),kron(mu,nu)), mu, nu), X=[u,t,x]);
The same remarks apply to
seq(rtens(ctens(
  Jac(sigma,mu,X),Jac(nu,tau,X),kron(tau,sigma)), sigma,tau), X=[u,t,x]);
```

20.8.2.2 internal versus external

Exercise 20.8.6. Show that the (u, v) versus (x, y, z) Jacobians are respectively:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathfrak{N}_{,m}^{\mu} &= \begin{matrix} x \\ \end{matrix} \left[[\mu, m], [1, 0], \left[\begin{array}{cc} \frac{1}{1+z} & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{1+z} \end{array} \right] \right] \\
&= \begin{matrix} u \\ \end{matrix} \left[[\mu, m], [1, 0], \frac{1}{2}(1+u^2+v^2) \left[\begin{array}{cc} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{array} \right] \right]
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathfrak{N}_{,\mu}^m &= \begin{matrix} u \\ \end{matrix} \left[[m, \mu], [1, 0], \frac{2}{(1+u^2+v^2)^2} \left[\begin{array}{cc} 1-u^2+v^2 & -2uv \\ -2uv & 1+u^2-v^2 \end{array} \right] \right] \\
&= \begin{matrix} x \\ \end{matrix} \left[[n, \nu], [1, 0], \left[\begin{array}{cc} 1-x^2+z & -yx \\ -yx & 1-y^2+z \\ -x(1+z) & -y(1+z) \end{array} \right] \right]
\end{aligned}$$

Moreover, compute $\mathfrak{N}_{,m}^{\mu} \mathbf{1}_n^m \mathfrak{N}_{,\nu}^n$ and $\mathfrak{N}_{,m}^{\mu} \mathbf{1}_{\mu}^{\nu} \mathfrak{N}_{,\nu}^n$.

Exercise 20.8.7. Show that the (t, s) versus (x, y, z) Jacobians are respectively:

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathfrak{N}_{,\mu}^{\sigma} &= \begin{matrix} x \\ \end{matrix} \left[[\sigma, m], [1, 0], \left[\begin{array}{cc} 0 & 0 \\ \frac{-y}{1-z^2} & \frac{+x}{1-z^2} \end{array} \right] \right] \\
&= \begin{matrix} t \\ \end{matrix} \left[[\sigma, m], [1, 0], \left[\begin{array}{cc} 0 & 0 \\ -2\sin s & +2\cos s \end{array} \right] \right] \\
&= \begin{matrix} u \\ \end{matrix} \left[[\sigma, m], [1, 0], \frac{1+u^2+v^2}{2(u^2+v^2)} \left[\begin{array}{cc} 0 & 0 \\ -v & +u \end{array} \right] \right]
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\mathfrak{N}_{,\sigma}^m &= \begin{bmatrix} [m, \sigma], [1, 0], \begin{bmatrix} -\cos s \sin t & -\sin s \cos t \\ -\sin s \sin t & \cos s \cos t \\ \cos t & 0 \end{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} [m, \sigma], [1, 0], \begin{bmatrix} \frac{-xz}{\sqrt{1-z^2}} & -y \\ \frac{-yz}{\sqrt{1-z^2}} & +x \\ \sqrt{1-z^2} & 0 \end{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix} \\
&= \begin{bmatrix} [m, \sigma], [1, 0], \begin{bmatrix} \frac{-u(1-u^2-v^2)}{\sqrt{u^2+v^2}(1+u^2+v^2)} & \frac{-2v}{1+u^2+v^2} \\ \frac{-v(1-u^2-v^2)}{\sqrt{u^2+v^2}(u^2+v^2+1)} & \frac{+2u}{1+u^2+v^2} \\ \frac{2\sqrt{u^2+v^2}}{1+u^2+v^2} & 0 \end{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

Moreover, compute $\mathfrak{N}_{,m}^\sigma \mathbf{1}_n^m \mathfrak{N}_{,\tau}^n$ and $\mathfrak{N}_{,m}^\sigma \mathbf{1}_\sigma^\tau \mathfrak{N}_{,\tau}^n$.

20.8.3 More about the projectors

Proposition 20.8.8. *The 2×2 tensor $\mathfrak{N}_{,m}^\sigma \mathbf{1}_n^m \mathfrak{N}_{,\tau}^n$ equals $\mathbf{1}_\tau^\sigma$, while the 3×3 tensor $\mathfrak{N}_{,m}^\sigma \mathbf{1}_\sigma^\tau \mathfrak{N}_{,\tau}^n$ describes a projector onto the tangent plane.*

Proof. The first tensor describes $[dt, ds]$ wrt itself and therefore is the Kronecker tensor. The second assertion comes from the fact that the normal vector necessarily belongs to orthogonal of $\text{colspan}(\mathfrak{N}_{,\sigma}^n)$. This can be checked using

```
pt_x, pt_u, pt_t:= seq(rtens(ctens(
  Jac(m,sigma,X),Jac(tau,n,X),kron(sigma,tau)), sigma,tau)[3], X=[x,u,t]):
```

which produces a matrix having $X(X-1)^2$ as characteristic polynomial:

$$U_t = \begin{bmatrix} [m, n], [1, 0], \frac{1}{x^2 + y^2} \begin{bmatrix} +y^2 & -yx & -xz \\ -yx & +x^2 & -yz \\ 0 & 0 & x^2 + y^2 \end{bmatrix} \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{u^2 + v^2} \begin{bmatrix} v^2 & -uv & \frac{u}{2} (u^2 + v^2 - 1) \\ -uv & u^2 & \frac{v}{2} (u^2 + v^2 - 1) \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

And now, we can consider matrices P, Q where:

$$\begin{aligned}
P &= \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ 0 \end{bmatrix} \mathfrak{N}_{,\sigma}^m = \begin{bmatrix} x & -zx & -y \\ y & -yz & +x \\ 0 & 1-z^2 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \cdot \text{diag}\left(1, \frac{1}{W}, 1\right) \\
Q &= \begin{bmatrix} \frac{1}{1-z^2} \begin{bmatrix} x & y & z \end{bmatrix} \\ \mathfrak{N}_{,m}^\sigma \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{1-z^2} \begin{bmatrix} x & y & z \\ 0 & 0 & W \\ -y & +x & 0 \end{bmatrix}
\end{aligned}$$

Then $P \cdot Q = \mathbf{1}$ while $Q \cdot U_t \cdot P = \text{diag}(0, 1, 1)$. □

20.8.4 The metric tensor

Proposition 20.8.9. *For each set of variables, the **metric tensor** \mathfrak{G}_{mn} is defined by*

$$ds^2 = dx^m \mathfrak{G}_{mn} dx^n$$

This is indeed a tensor, since a change of variable results into

$$\mathfrak{G}_{\mu\nu} = \mathfrak{N}_\mu^m \mathfrak{N}_\nu^n \mathfrak{G}_{mn} \quad (20.7)$$

Proof. Substitute $dx^n = \mathfrak{N}_\nu^n du^\nu$, etc and obtain an equality which must hold for all the \overrightarrow{du} □

Example 20.8.10. Here are the values of the two metric tensors $\mathfrak{G}_{\mu\nu}$ and $\mathfrak{G}_{\sigma\tau}$.

$$\begin{aligned}\mathfrak{G}_{\mu\nu} &= \underset{u}{\left[[\mu, \nu], [0, 0], \left(\frac{2}{1+u^2+v^2} \right)^2 \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \right]} \\ &= \underset{x}{\left[[\mu, \nu], [0, 0], \frac{1}{(1+z)^2} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \right]} \\ \mathfrak{G}_{\sigma\tau} &= \underset{t}{\left[[\sigma, \tau], [0, 0], \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \cos t^2 \end{bmatrix} \right]} \\ &= \underset{u}{\left[[\sigma, \tau], [0, 0], \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \left(\frac{2(u^2+v^2)}{1+u^2+v^2} \right)^2 \end{bmatrix} \right]} \\ &= \underset{x}{\left[[\sigma, \tau], [0, 0], \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1-z^2 \end{bmatrix} \right]}\end{aligned}$$

20.9 Christoffel symbols

Notation 20.9.1. More than ever, notations of Table 20.1 are in use.

20.9.1 Covariance

Definition 20.9.2. God said to Abraham: "down is covariant, up is contravariant. Don't discuss any more about that".

Remark 20.9.3. Before the divine decree, some theologians were arguing that

$$\vec{v} \doteq [\vec{e}_1, \vec{e}_2] \cdot (dx^1; dx^2) = dx^1 \vec{e}_1 + dx^2 \vec{e}_2$$

provides a model for covariant/contravariant. If \vec{v} is supposed to be a real, observable thing then the dx^j have to be divided by a factor 2 when the \vec{e}_j are multiplied by the same factor 2. Indeed, observable doesn't means that all observers obtain the same figures for their measurements, but that each observer can compute and predict which figures another specified observer will obtain for her measurements.

But the devil is in the details. The symbol dx^1 means the first element in the set of all the $(d^u)_{u \in J}$, while d^j means all of them... i.e. another copy of $d^k = (d^u)_{u \in J}$.

Remark 20.9.4. In linear algebra, $x = P \cdot x$ implies $x = P^{-1} \cdot x$ where P is the change of basis matrix. And this is because $\text{basis}_{\text{new}} = P \cdot \text{basis}_{\text{old}}$. Here, in tensor calculus, you only have to write:

$$\mathfrak{G}_{\mu\nu} = \mathfrak{G}_{mn} \mathfrak{N}_{,\mu}^m \mathfrak{N}_{,\nu}^n; \quad \mathfrak{G}_{mn} = \mathfrak{G}_{\mu\nu} \mathfrak{N}_{,m}^\mu \mathfrak{N}_{,n}^\nu$$

and the pairing of indices tells you which is the one to use from $\mathfrak{N}_{,\mu}^m$ or $\mathfrak{N}_{,m}^\mu$.

20.9.2 Taking the steepest line as an example

Definition 20.9.5. Vector $\vec{k} \doteq \overrightarrow{k_1, k_2, k_3} \doteq {}^t[k_1, k_2, k_3]$ is a "true" vector in the \mathbb{C}^3 space. Its tensor representation is $[[m], [1], [k_1, k_2, k_3]]$. Then the tensor:

$$\left(\wedge \vec{k} \right)_n^m \doteq \left[[m, n], [1, 0], \begin{bmatrix} 0 & k_3 & -k_2 \\ -k_3 & 0 & k_1 \\ k_2 & -k_1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \right]$$

implements the rule $\left(\wedge \vec{k} \right)_n^m (\vec{v})^n = (\vec{v} \wedge \vec{k})^m$.

Fact 20.9.6. When seeing the usual sphere (E) as embedded into \mathbb{C}^3 , a normal vector to (E) at $M = (x, y, z)$ is $\vec{n} = {}^t(x, y, z)$ while the vertical vector is $\vec{e}_z = {}^t(0, 0, 1)$. Then an horizontal vector at M and a **North pointing vector** at M are respectively B^m and A^m where

$$\begin{aligned} B^m &\doteq \left(\wedge \vec{k} \right)_n^m (\vec{e}_z)^n &&= \frac{x}{x} [[m], [1], [-y, x, 0]] \\ A^m &\doteq \left(\wedge \vec{k} \right)_n^m A^n &&= \frac{x}{x} [[m], [1], [xz, yz, -x^2 - y^2]] \end{aligned}$$

On the other hand, the horizontal line and the **steepest line** at M are respectively $\mathfrak{S}_{mn}B^n$ and $\mathfrak{S}_{mn}A^n$.

Fact 20.9.7. This requires that A^m and B^m aren't null, i.e. that $(x, y, z) \neq (0, 0, \pm 1)$. Moreover, these vectors belong to the tangent plane. Therefore, it makes sense to compute the "local coordinates" of these vectors using the formula already in use for the d , namely $d^\mu \doteq d^m \mathfrak{N}_{,m}^\mu$. We have:

$$\begin{aligned} B^\mu &\doteq B^m \mathfrak{N}_{,m}^\mu &= [[\mu], [1], [-v, +u]] && ; A^\mu &\doteq A^m \mathfrak{N}_{,m}^\mu &= [[\mu], [1], [+u, +v]] \\ B^\sigma &\doteq B^m \mathfrak{N}_{,m}^\sigma &= [[\sigma], [1], [0, 1]] && ; A^\sigma &\doteq A^m \mathfrak{N}_{,m}^\sigma &= [[\sigma], [1], [-\cos t, 0]] \end{aligned}$$

And we can check that $B_\sigma = B_\mu \mathfrak{N}_{,\sigma}^\mu$, etc, as required for a covariant tensor while we can check that $A^\mu = A^\sigma \mathfrak{N}_{,\sigma}^\mu$, etc, as required for a contravariant tensor.¹

20.9.3 Computing the Christoffels

A theoretical definition of the Christoffel symbols is delayed to a later subsection. Indeed, we want to discuss how to correctly define these objects, and indicate some wrong ways of doing. Therefore, we will introduce these symbols by taking their most important property... as a provisional definition, which can be used to check every equalities given in this document.

Definition 20.9.8. Quantities $\Gamma_{\psi|\mu\nu}$ and $\Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\phi$ (where μ, ν, ϕ, ψ are internal indices) are respectively called the Christoffels of first kind and second kind. They are not tensors, but will be used to form other tensors by contraction. They are computed from the metric, using

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma_{\psi|\mu\nu} &= \frac{1}{2} (\mathfrak{S}_{\mu\psi,\nu} + \mathfrak{S}_{\psi\nu,\mu} - \mathfrak{S}_{\nu\mu,\psi}) \\ \Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\phi &= \Gamma_{\psi|\mu\nu} \mathfrak{S}^{\phi\psi} \iff \Gamma_{\psi|\mu\nu} = \mathfrak{S}_{\psi\phi} \Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\phi \end{aligned}$$

Maple 20.9.9. The ALG. 20.8 algorithm implements the computation of the Christoffel symbols.

Require: σ, τ, v, t must be compatible with ω

```
1: CHDOTENS := proc (ω, σ, τ, t) ; global glodex, part1 _
2: local setglodex, lesvars, part1, fu1, gu2, qq, qq, tmp1, tmp2
3: lesvars := setvars(ω) ; setglodex := convert(glodex, set)
4: if {ω, σ, τ} 'minus' setglodex ≠ {} then Error("wrong indexes") end if
5: if not member(t, lesvars) then Error("wrong variable") end if
6: qq := setglodex minus {ω, σ, τ} ; qq := qq[1]
7: part1 _ := dtens(GG(σ, τ, t), qq) ; fu1 := mkfu(part1 _)
8: gu2 := ω, σ, τ ↦ eval((fu1(ω, σ, τ) + fu1(ω, τ, σ) - fu1(τ, σ, ω))/2)
9: tmp1 := [[ω, σ, τ], [0, 0, 0], rtable(1..2, 1..2, gu2)]
10: tmp2 := ctens(uGG(qq, ω, t), tmp1)
11: return tmp1, rtens(tmp2, ω)
```

Ensure: in $\Gamma_{\omega|\sigma\tau}$ and $\Gamma_{\sigma\tau}^v$ the first index is the "derivative" index

LISTING 20.8: The chdotens procedure

¹If you are affected by a dyslexia disorder more severe than 5%, then never ever use "contravariant" and "like" in the same sentence. Better use: A is contravariant, while dx is also contravariant. Don't create a mess like "the north end of a compass is attracted to the south magnetic pole of the earth, which lies close to the geographic north pole".

Exercise 20.9.10. Consider the usual unit sphere $x^2 + y^2 + z^2 = 1$ and introduce the usual geographic coordinates (t, s) by the equations

$$[x, y, z] = [\cos t \cos s, \cos t \sin s, \sin t],$$

where the latitude t ranges from $-\pi/2$ (aka 90° South) to $+\pi/2$ (aka 90° North). Everybody acts like that, except from a small minority of snobs. Therefore, $\cos t \geq 0$ is ever assumed. Show that the corresponding Christoffels are:

$[t, s]$	111	112	211	212
	121	122	221	222
$\Gamma_{\omega \sigma\tau}$	0	0	0	$-\cos t \sin t$
	0	$\cos t \sin t$	$-\cos t \sin t$	0
$\Gamma_{\sigma\tau}^\epsilon$	0	0	0	$-\tan t$
	0	$\cos t \sin t$	$-\tan t$	0

Exercise 20.9.11. Consider now the usual stereographic coordinates (u, v) defined by:

$$[x, y, z] = \left[\frac{2u}{1+u^2+v^2}, \frac{2v}{1+u^2+v^2}, \frac{1-u^2-v^2}{1+u^2+v^2} \right]$$

and show that the corresponding Christoffels are:

$[u, v]$	K	111	112	211	212
		121	122	221	222
$\Gamma_{\psi \mu\nu}$	$\frac{8}{(u^2+v^2+1)^3}$	$-u$	$-v$	$+v$	$-u$
		$-v$	$+u$	$-u$	$-v$
$\Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\phi$	$\frac{2}{u^2+v^2+1}$	$-u$	$-v$	v	$-u$
		$-v$	$+u$	$-u$	$-v$

20.9.4 Defining the Christoffels

Definition 20.9.12. Consider two tensors X_Z^m, Y_Z^m where Z is a set of internal indices in the same upper or lower places for both tensors and m is an external index (here $m \in 1..3$ is assumed). We will say that X and Y are equal up to their normal components, and note

$$X_Z^m = Y_Z^m + \mathcal{O}(\vec{n})$$

when the property

$$\overrightarrow{X_z^1, X_z^2, X_z^3} - \overrightarrow{Y_z^1, Y_z^2, Y_z^3} \in \mathbb{C} \vec{n} \subset \mathbb{C}^3.$$

holds for all the instanciations z of Z .

Proposition 20.9.13. Equivalently, tensors X_Z^m, Y_Z^m are equal up to their normal components when

$$(X_Z^m - Y_Z^m) \mathfrak{G}_{mn} \mathfrak{N}_{,\nu}^n = (0)_{Z\nu} \quad \text{where } \nu \notin Z$$

Proof. When $d\nu$ varies, the 3D-vectors $\overrightarrow{\mathfrak{N}_{,\nu}^1 d\nu}, \overrightarrow{\mathfrak{N}_{,\nu}^2 d\nu}, \overrightarrow{\mathfrak{N}_{,\nu}^3 d\nu}$ span the whole tangent plane. Thus an $\mathcal{O}(\vec{n})$ vector is orthogonal to all of them, and conversely. \square

Definition 20.9.14. The Christoffel symbols are defined by

$$\frac{\partial^2 x^m}{\partial u^\mu \partial u^\nu} = \Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\phi \frac{\partial x^m}{\partial u^\phi} + \mathcal{O}(\vec{n}) ; \Gamma_{\psi|\mu\nu} = \mathfrak{G}_{\psi\phi} \Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\phi$$

Equivalently, we have:

$$\mathfrak{G}_{mn} \left(\frac{\partial^2 x^m}{\partial u^\mu \partial u^\nu} - \Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\phi \frac{\partial x^m}{\partial u^\phi} \right) \frac{\partial x^n}{\partial u^\psi} = (0)_{\psi\mu\nu} \quad (20.8)$$

$$\Gamma_{\psi|\mu\nu} = \mathfrak{G}_{\phi\psi} \Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\phi = \mathfrak{G}_{mn} \mathfrak{N}_{,\mu\nu}^m \mathfrak{N}_{,\psi}^n$$

Remark 20.9.15. In [cyril@ERE \(2016\)](#), $\Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\phi$ is defined by $\Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\phi = \frac{\partial u^\phi}{\partial x^m} \frac{\partial^2 x^m}{\partial u^\mu \partial u^\nu} \dots$ but this formula is wrong when we simply replace each quantity by its (correct) definition. On the contrary, we have to define the $\Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\phi$ by the already given formula

$$x_{,\mu\nu}^m = x_{,\phi}^m \Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\phi + \mathcal{O}(\vec{\mathfrak{n}})$$

Theorem 20.9.16. *When the Christoffels are defined by (20.8), then the provisional definition*

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma_{\psi|\mu\nu} &= \frac{1}{2} (\mathfrak{G}_{\mu\psi,\nu} + \mathfrak{G}_{\psi\nu,\mu} - \mathfrak{G}_{\nu\mu,\psi}) \\ \Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\phi &= \Gamma_{\psi|\mu\nu} \mathfrak{G}^{\phi\psi} \iff \Gamma_{\psi|\mu\nu} = \mathfrak{G}_{\psi\phi} \Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\phi \end{aligned} \quad (20.9)$$

becomes a theorem.

Proof. Start from $g_{\mu\nu} \doteq \eta_{mn} \frac{\partial x^m}{\partial u^\mu} \frac{\partial x^n}{\partial u^\nu}$ and obtain the following relations:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\partial g_{\mu\nu}}{\partial u^\phi} &= \frac{\partial}{\partial u^\phi} \left(\eta_{mn} \frac{\partial x^m}{\partial u^\mu} \frac{\partial x^n}{\partial u^\nu} \right) \\ \frac{\partial g_{\mu\nu}}{\partial u^\phi} &= \eta_{mn} \left(\frac{\partial^2 x^m}{\partial u^\phi \partial u^\mu} \right) \frac{\partial x^n}{\partial u^\nu} + \eta_{mn} \left(\frac{\partial^2 x^n}{\partial u^\phi \partial u^\nu} \right) \frac{\partial x^m}{\partial u^\mu} \\ &= \eta_{mn} \left(\frac{\partial x^m}{\partial u^\psi} \Gamma_{\mu\phi}^\psi \right) \frac{\partial x^n}{\partial u^\nu} + \eta_{mn} \left(\frac{\partial x^n}{\partial u^\psi} \Gamma_{\nu\phi}^\psi \right) \frac{\partial x^m}{\partial u^\mu} \\ &= \left(\eta_{mn} \frac{\partial x^m}{\partial u^\psi} \frac{\partial x^n}{\partial u^\nu} \right) \Gamma_{\mu\phi}^\psi + \left(\eta_{mn} \frac{\partial x^m}{\partial u^\mu} \frac{\partial x^n}{\partial u^\psi} \right) \Gamma_{\nu\phi}^\psi \\ \frac{\partial g_{\mu\nu}}{\partial u^\phi} &= g_{\psi\nu} \Gamma_{\mu\phi}^\psi + g_{\mu\psi} \Gamma_{\nu\phi}^\psi = g_{\psi\nu} \Gamma_{\mu\phi}^\psi + g_{\psi\mu} \Gamma_{\phi\nu}^\psi \end{aligned}$$

Then call $\mathcal{F}(\mu, \nu, \phi)$ this formula, and compute $\mathcal{F}(\mu, \psi, \nu) + \mathcal{F}(\psi, \nu, \mu) - \mathcal{F}(\nu, \mu, \psi)$. \square

Proposition 20.9.17. *The Christoffels transform according to the rules:*

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma_{\sigma\tau}^\epsilon &= \Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\phi \mathfrak{N}_{,\sigma}^\mu \mathfrak{N}_{,\tau}^\nu \mathfrak{N}_{,\phi}^\epsilon + \mathfrak{N}_{,\sigma,\tau}^\nu \mathfrak{N}_{,\nu}^\epsilon \\ \Gamma_{\omega|\sigma\tau} &= \Gamma_{\phi|\nu\mu} \mathfrak{N}_{,\omega}^\phi \mathfrak{N}_{,\sigma}^\nu \mathfrak{N}_{,\tau}^\mu + \mathfrak{N}_{,\sigma,\tau}^\nu \mathfrak{G}_{\nu\phi} \mathfrak{N}_{,\omega}^\phi \end{aligned} \quad (20.10)$$

In other words, the "linear tensorial" term which depends on the up/down nature of the indices is completed by a second term containing some second order derivatives.

Proof. The formula $\Gamma_{\omega|\sigma\tau} = \mathfrak{G}_{mn} x_{,\sigma\tau}^m x_{,\omega}^n$ can be extended into:

$$\begin{aligned} \Gamma_{\omega|\sigma\tau} &= \mathfrak{G}_{mn} \frac{\partial}{\partial t^\tau} \left(\frac{\partial x^m}{\partial u^\nu} \frac{\partial u^\nu}{\partial t^\sigma} \right) \left(\frac{\partial x^n}{\partial u^\psi} \frac{\partial u^\psi}{\partial t^\omega} \right) \\ &= \frac{\partial}{\partial t^\tau} \left(\frac{\partial x^m}{\partial u^\nu} \right) \frac{\partial x^n}{\partial u^\psi} \frac{\partial u^\nu}{\partial t^\omega} \frac{\partial u^\psi}{\partial t^\sigma} + \frac{\partial}{\partial t^\tau} \left(\frac{\partial u^\nu}{\partial t^\sigma} \right) \left(\mathfrak{G}_{mn} \frac{\partial x^m}{\partial u^\nu} \frac{\partial x^n}{\partial u^\psi} \right) \frac{\partial u^\psi}{\partial t^\omega} \\ &= \mathfrak{G}_{mn} \left(\frac{\partial^2 x^m}{\partial u^\nu \partial u^\mu} \frac{\partial u^\mu}{\partial t^\tau} \right) \frac{\partial x^n}{\partial u^\psi} \frac{\partial u^\nu}{\partial t^\omega} \frac{\partial u^\psi}{\partial t^\sigma} + \left(\frac{\partial^2 u^\nu}{\partial t^\sigma \partial t^\tau} \right) \mathfrak{G}_{\nu\psi} \frac{\partial u^\psi}{\partial t^\omega} \\ &= \left(\mathfrak{G}_{mn} \frac{\partial^2 x^m}{\partial u^\nu \partial u^\mu} \frac{\partial x^n}{\partial u^\psi} \right) \frac{\partial u^\mu}{\partial t^\tau} \frac{\partial u^\psi}{\partial t^\omega} \frac{\partial u^\nu}{\partial t^\sigma} + \left(\frac{\partial^2 u^\nu}{\partial t^\sigma \partial t^\tau} \right) \mathfrak{G}_{\nu\psi} \frac{\partial u^\psi}{\partial t^\omega} \\ &= \Gamma_{\psi|\nu\mu} \mathfrak{N}_{,\omega}^\psi \mathfrak{N}_{,\sigma}^\nu \mathfrak{N}_{,\tau}^\mu + \mathfrak{N}_{,\sigma,\tau}^\nu \mathfrak{G}_{\nu\psi} \mathfrak{N}_{,\omega}^\psi \end{aligned} \quad \square$$

20.9.5 Moving

From the external point of view, the most probable result when moving, even a little bit, from a point $M \in (\text{Ext})$ is to left the surface, evading into the external world. Therefore we need a more elaborated concept of "moving".

Definition 20.9.18. We distinguish three different notions of "variation".

1. Δx denotes a non elaborated difference, according to the model $\Delta x = x_2 - x_1$;
2. δx denotes an "infinitesimal variation", obeying to the informal rules $\delta x \neq 0$ together with $(\delta x)^2 = 0 \dots$ and to the formal rules stated by Newton, Leibniz and Landau.
3. dx denotes a "long range variable", not submitted to the $(dx)^2 = 0$ rule, but bound to some specific tangent plane.

Remark 20.9.19. Let B be a covariant vector, depicted at a point M by the pair of tensor equations: $B_\mu = x_{,\mu}^m B_m$ and $B_m = u_{,m}^\mu B_\mu$. Then we move it from the map in use at point M to the map in use at point $M + \delta M$. In an ordinary cartesian frame, we simply have $\delta B_m = 0$. In another frame, we have:

$$\begin{aligned} \delta B_\mu &= \delta (x_{,\mu}^m B_m) = \delta (x_{,\mu}^m) B_m = x_{,\mu\nu}^m du^\nu B_m = (x_{,\mu\nu}^m u_{,m}^\psi) B_\psi du^\nu \\ &= \Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\psi B_\psi du^\nu \end{aligned}$$

Definition 20.9.20. The variation due to a parallel transport of quantity B_μ is defined by

$$\begin{aligned} \delta B_\mu &\doteq +B_\psi \Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\psi du^\nu \\ \delta A^\mu &\doteq -A^\psi \Gamma_{\psi\nu}^\mu du^\nu \end{aligned}$$

and this is extended to any tensor (a corrective term per index, with the right sign). Therefore this variation doesn't depend on the embedding chosen to introduce the surface, but depends only on its (intrinsic) metric \mathfrak{G} .

Proof. For a contravariant vector A^σ , the constraint $\delta (B_\sigma A^\sigma) = 0$ leads to

$$\begin{aligned} \delta (B_\mu A^\mu) &= A^\mu \delta (B_\mu) + B_\mu \delta (A^\mu) \\ &= A^\mu B_\psi \Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\psi du^\nu - A^\psi B_\mu \Gamma_{\psi\nu}^\mu du^\nu \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

Definition 20.9.21. The variation $dB_\sigma = B_{\sigma,\tau} du^\tau$ of a vector is seen as the sum of two terms. One of them is due to the parallel transport, i.e. the change of the local map due to the displacement. And the difference can be seen as "the true variation" of the vector. This term is called the **covariant derivative** of B_σ and noted with a semi-colon. In other words:

$$B_{\sigma;\tau} \doteq B_{\sigma,\tau} - \Gamma_{\sigma\tau}^\epsilon B_\epsilon ; \quad A_{;\tau}^\sigma \doteq A_{,\tau}^\sigma + \Gamma_{\sigma\tau}^\epsilon B_\epsilon$$

Proposition 20.9.22. The covariant derivative of a tensor is another tensor.

Proof. Starting from the definition, we have:

$$\begin{aligned} B_{\sigma;\tau} &= B_{\sigma,\tau} - \Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\epsilon \Gamma_{\sigma\tau}^\mu B_\epsilon = (t_{,\sigma}^\mu B_\mu)_{,\tau} - (\Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\phi t_{,\sigma}^\mu t_{,\tau}^\nu u_{,\phi}^\epsilon + t_{,\sigma\tau}^\nu u_{,\nu}^\epsilon) t_{,\epsilon}^\psi B_\psi \\ &= t_{,\sigma\tau}^\mu B_\mu + t_{,\sigma}^\mu B_{\mu,\nu} t_{,\tau}^\nu - \Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\phi t_{,\sigma}^\mu t_{,\tau}^\nu B_\psi (u_{,\phi}^\epsilon t_{,\epsilon}^\psi) - t_{,\sigma\tau}^\nu B_\psi (u_{,\nu}^\epsilon t_{,\epsilon}^\psi) \\ &= (t_{,\sigma\tau}^\mu B_\mu - t_{,\sigma\tau}^\nu B_\psi (u_{,\nu}^\epsilon t_{,\epsilon}^\psi)) + t_{,\sigma}^\mu t_{,\tau}^\nu B_{\mu,\nu} - \Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\phi t_{,\sigma}^\mu t_{,\tau}^\nu B_\psi (u_{,\phi}^\epsilon t_{,\epsilon}^\psi) \\ &= (t_{,\sigma\tau}^\mu B_\mu - t_{,\sigma\tau}^\nu B_\nu) + t_{,\sigma}^\mu t_{,\tau}^\nu (B_{\mu,\nu} - \Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\phi B_\phi) = t_{,\sigma}^\mu t_{,\tau}^\nu B_{\mu;\nu} \quad \square \end{aligned}$$

20.10 Curvature

Definition 20.10.1. Explicit coordinates. Consider the surface $(E) = \{(x, y, z) | z = F(x, y)\}$, where the $[x, y, z]$ are living in an euclidean 3D space. Then we can use $[u, v] \doteq [x, y]$ as internal coordinates.

Notation 20.10.2. Using indices $\mu, \nu, \phi, \psi, \rho$ in association with variables u, v and indices m, n, p, q, r in association with variables x, y, z , we have:

$$\mathfrak{N}_{,\mu}^k = \left[[k, \mu], [1, 0], \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \\ F_u & F_v \end{bmatrix} \right] ; \mathfrak{G}_{\mu\nu} = \left[[\mu, \nu], [0, 0], \begin{bmatrix} F_u^2 + 1 & F_u F_v \\ F_u F_v & F_v^2 + 1 \end{bmatrix} \right]$$

where the F_u, F_v are the Frenet symbols (in any case, we will never use i, j, u, v as tensorial indices).

Fact 20.10.3. Let $\vec{\mathbf{n}}$ be a normal vector to the tangent plane and N^q an associated tensor. We have:

$$N^q = [[q], [1], [-F_u, -F_v, 1]]$$

Remark 20.10.4. We have the matrix product:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 & F_{uu} \\ 0 & 0 & F_{uv} \\ 0 & 0 & F_{vv} \end{bmatrix} = \frac{1}{1 + F_u^2 + F_v^2} \begin{bmatrix} -F_u F_{uu} & -F_v F_{uu} & F_{uu} \\ -F_u F_{uv} & -F_v F_{uv} & F_{uv} \\ -F_u F_{vv} & -F_v F_{vv} & F_{vv} \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & -F_u \\ 0 & 1 & -F_v \\ F_u & F_v & 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

where the coefficients are
$$\begin{bmatrix} -\Gamma_{11}^1 & -\Gamma_{11}^2 & L \\ -\Gamma_{12}^1 & -\Gamma_{12}^2 & M \\ -\Gamma_{22}^1 & -\Gamma_{22}^2 & N \end{bmatrix}$$

Proposition 20.10.5. When cutting (E) by a moving plane P_ϑ containing \mathbf{n} , we obtain a curve γ_ϑ and we examine its curvature κ_ϑ . This quantity is obtained by dividing twice the normal increment by the squared tangential increment. When the moving point \mathbf{r} on the curve depends on a single parameter, we have the formula :

$$\kappa \doteq \left| \ddot{\mathbf{r}} \wedge \frac{\dot{\mathbf{r}}}{|\dot{\mathbf{r}}|} \right| \div |\dot{\mathbf{r}}|^2 = \frac{|\ddot{\mathbf{r}} \wedge \dot{\mathbf{r}}|}{|\dot{\mathbf{r}}|^3}$$

where the fluxions are taken wrt the parameter of the curve.

Proof. Well known formula. □

Proposition 20.10.6. The curvature is given by the quotient of two quadratic forms:

$$\kappa_\vartheta = \frac{1}{\sqrt{\det \mathfrak{G}_{\mu\nu}}} \frac{\mathcal{II}(dx, dy)}{\mathcal{I}(dx, dy)}$$

where $\mathcal{I}(dx, dy)$ is the metric form (noted $\mathfrak{G}_{\mu\nu}$ here) and gives the squared tangential increment, while the normal increment is measured using:

$$\mathcal{II}(dx, dy) = 2(\delta \mathbf{r}) \cdot \mathbf{n} = (dx, dy) \begin{pmatrix} F_{xx} & F_{xy} \\ F_{xy} & F_{yy} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} dx \\ dy \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. We have $|\mathbf{n}|^2 = 1 + F_u^2 + F_v^2 = \det \mathfrak{G}_{\mu\nu}$, while $\mathbf{x} \wedge_P \frac{\dot{\mathbf{r}}}{|\dot{\mathbf{r}}|} = \mathbf{x} \cdot \frac{\mathbf{n}}{|\mathbf{n}|}$ holds for any vector \mathbf{x} in the tangent plane. □

Exercise 20.10.7. Use $F(u, v) = \sqrt{R^2 - u^2 - v^2}$ and obtain

$$\vec{n} = \left[\frac{u}{z}, \frac{v}{z}, 1 \right] ; |\vec{n}| = \frac{R^2}{z^2} ; \mathcal{I} = \frac{1}{z^2} \begin{bmatrix} R^2 - v^2 & uv \\ uv & R^2 - u^2 \end{bmatrix} ; \mathcal{II} = -z\mathcal{I}$$

Finally, $\kappa_\vartheta = -1/R$ (\vec{n} is the outer normal... and the center is "inside").

Lemma 20.10.8. When \mathcal{II} and \mathcal{I} are two quadratic forms (and \mathcal{I} is definite), then

$$\max \left(\frac{\mathcal{II}(x, y)}{\mathcal{I}(x, y)} \right) * \min \left(\frac{\mathcal{II}(x, y)}{\mathcal{I}(x, y)} \right) = \frac{\det \mathcal{II}}{\det \mathcal{I}}$$

Proof. Let $\mathcal{I}\mathcal{L} = \begin{bmatrix} L & M \\ M & N \end{bmatrix}$ and $\mathcal{I} = \begin{bmatrix} E & F \\ F & G \end{bmatrix}$.

- (1) brute force method: differentiate $\kappa \doteq \frac{Lu^2 + 2Muv + Nv^2}{Eu^2 + 2Fuv + Gv^2}$ and solve in u and v . Then substitute and simplify $\kappa_{\min} * \kappa_{\max}$
 (2) educated method: diagonalize the matrix $\mathcal{I}\mathcal{L}/\mathcal{I}$. This allows a simultaneous reduction of the quadratic forms, so that κ_{\min} and κ_{\max} are the eigenvalues of matrix $\mathcal{I}\mathcal{L}/\mathcal{I}$. \square

Lemma 20.10.9. *The following quantity is a tensor, named the Riemann-Christoffel curvature tensor.*

$$B_{jkl}^i = \Gamma_{rk}^i \Gamma_{jl}^r - \Gamma_{rl}^i \Gamma_{jk}^r + \Gamma_{jl,k}^i - \Gamma_{jk,l}^i$$

This tensor is anti-symmetric wrt k, l , and doesn't contains any third order derivative of F .

Proof. Tensorial property comes from the Christoffel formula. Moreover, we have:

$$B_{jkl}^i = \frac{(F_{uu}F_{vv} - F_{vu}^2)}{(1 + F_u^2 + F_v^2)^2} \left(\begin{bmatrix} 1121 & -F_u F_v \\ 2221 & +F_u F_v \\ 1112 & +F_u F_v \\ 2212 & -F_u F_v \end{bmatrix} ; \begin{bmatrix} 2121 & +(F_u^2 + 1) \\ 1221 & -(F_v^2 + 1) \\ 2112 & -(F_u^2 + 1) \\ 1212 & -(F_v^2 + 1) \end{bmatrix} \right)$$

$$B_{ijkl} = \left(\frac{F_{uu}F_{vv} - F_{vu}^2}{1 + F_u^2 + F_v^2} \right) \left(\begin{bmatrix} 2121 & -1 \\ 1221 & +1 \\ 2112 & +1 \\ 1212 & -1 \end{bmatrix} \right)$$

(other components being nul). \square

Theorem 20.10.10. *The product of the extremal curvatures, i.e.*

$$K = \kappa_{\min} \kappa_{\max} = \frac{F_{uu}F_{vv} - F_{uv}^2}{(1 + F_u^2 + F_v^2)^2}$$

doesn't depends on the chosen explicit parametrization.

Proof. Contract B_{jkl}^i on i, l and obtain the Ricci tensor :

$$R_{jk} = B_{jki}^i = \left[[\mu, \nu], [0, 0], \frac{(F_{uu}F_{vv} - F_{vu}^2)}{(F_u^2 + F_v^2 + 1)^2} \begin{bmatrix} -(F_u^2 + 1) & -F_u F_v \\ -F_u F_v & -(F_v^2 + 1) \end{bmatrix} \right]$$

Contract again and obtain the scalar curvature

$$R \doteq g^{jk} R_{jk} = (-2) \frac{F_{uu}F_{vv} - F_{uv}^2}{(1 + F_u^2 + F_v^2)^2} = -2K$$

Being tensorial, this quantity is therefore an invariant of the surface (E) . \square

Remark 20.10.11. Formula B_{jkl}^i is top and formemost about general Riemann spaces, with dimensions greater then 2. When dealing with surfaces, due the skew-symmetry of B_{ijkl} wrt pairs of indices (i, j) et (k, l) , B_{1212} is the only independent component of the Riemann-Christoffel tensor. And then, the curvature formula simplifies into:

$$K = B_{1212} / \det g_{ij}$$

20.11 Back to Poincaré and Klein

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Klein}_\mu &= \left[[\mu], [1], \left[\frac{2z}{1+\zeta z}, \frac{2\zeta}{1+\zeta z} \right] \right] \\ \text{Poincaré}_\sigma &= \left[[\sigma], [1], \left[\frac{1-W}{\kappa}, \frac{1-W}{k} \right] \right] \\ W &= \frac{1-\zeta z}{1+\zeta z} = \sqrt{1-k\kappa}\end{aligned}$$

As a mnemonic, k, κ are related to Klein, while z, ζ are related to Poincaré.

Exercise 20.11.1. Compute the Jacobians and obtain:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathfrak{N}_{,\mu}^\sigma &= \left[[\sigma, \mu], [1, 0], \frac{1+z\zeta}{2(1-z\zeta)} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & z^2 \\ \zeta^2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \right] = \\ \mathfrak{N}_{,\sigma}^\mu &= \left[[\mu, \sigma], [1, 0], \frac{2}{(1+z\zeta)^2} \begin{bmatrix} 1 & -z^2 \\ -\zeta^2 & 1 \end{bmatrix} \right] = \left[[\mu, \sigma], [1, 0], \frac{1}{2} \begin{bmatrix} (1+W)^2 & -k^2 \\ -\kappa^2 & (1+W)^2 \end{bmatrix} \right]\end{aligned}$$

Check they are inverse of each other.

Exercise 20.11.2. Formulate the metrics in tensor form, and obtain:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathfrak{G}_{\sigma\tau} &= \frac{1}{z} \left[[\sigma, \tau], [0, 0], \frac{2}{(1-z\zeta)^2} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{k} \left[[\sigma, \tau], [0, 0], \frac{(1+W)^2}{2(1-k\kappa)} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \right] \\ \mathfrak{G}_{\mu\nu} &= \frac{1}{z} \left[[\mu, \nu], [0, 0], \frac{(1+z\zeta)^2}{2(1-z\zeta)^4} \begin{bmatrix} 2\zeta^2 & 1+z^2\zeta^2 \\ 1+z^2\zeta^2 & 2z^2 \end{bmatrix} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{k} \left[[\mu, \nu], [0, 0], \frac{1}{4(1-k\kappa)^2} \begin{bmatrix} \kappa^2 & 2-k\kappa \\ 2-k\kappa & k^2 \end{bmatrix} \right]\end{aligned}$$

Check the validity of the transformation formula (20.7).

Exercise 20.11.3. Compute the Christoffels and obtain:

	111	112	211	212
	121	122	221	222
$\Gamma_{\sigma\tau}^\epsilon$	$\frac{2\zeta}{1-z\zeta}$	0	0	0
	0	0	0	$\frac{2z}{1-z\zeta}$
$\Gamma_{\mu\nu}^\phi$	$\frac{\kappa}{1-k\kappa}$	$\frac{k}{2(1-k\kappa)}$	0	$\frac{\kappa}{2(1-k\kappa)}$
	$\frac{k}{2(1-k\kappa)}$	0	$\frac{\kappa}{2(1-k\kappa)}$	$\frac{k}{1-k\kappa}$

Check the validity of the transformation formula (20.10)

Exercise 20.11.4. Compute the Riemann-Christoffel tensors and obtain:

$$\frac{1}{(1-z\zeta)^2} \begin{bmatrix} 1121 & +2 \\ 2221 & -2 \\ 1112 & -2 \\ 2212 & +2 \end{bmatrix}; \quad \frac{1}{4(1-k\kappa)^2} \begin{bmatrix} 2121 & -\kappa^2 \\ 1221 & +k^2 \\ 2112 & +\kappa^2 \\ 1212 & -k^2 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} 1121 & -k\kappa+2 \\ 2221 & +k\kappa-2 \\ 1112 & +k\kappa-2 \\ 2212 & -k\kappa+2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Check the validity of the tensor transformation formula.

Proposition 20.11.5. *The Gauss curvature of both the Poincaré and the Klein hyperbolic planes is -1 .*

Proof. Obvious from the former results. □

Chapter 21

About cubics

For a catalog with sketches, visit [Gibert \(2004-2024\)](#), especially [Ehrmann and Gibert \(2005\)](#). Some notations used there :

I	G	O	H	N	K	L			
X(1)	X(2)	X(3)	X(4)	X(5)	X(6)	X(20)			

21.1 Characterisation of a cubic

Definition 21.1.1. A cubic is a curve defined by an homogeneous polynomial of degree 3. Using barycentrics, or trilinears or Morley affixes is irrelevant, the degree is the same. Notation : \mathcal{K} .

Proposition 21.1.2. *A cubic is defined by nine general points.*

Proof. There are ten coefficients, defined up to a global proportionality factor. We found them by computing

$$\det_{j=10} [x^3, x^2y, xy^2, y^3, y^2z, yz^2, z^3, z^2x, zx^2, xyz] \quad (21.1)$$

applied to the nine given points and the generic point. \square

Example 21.1.3. Pivotal isocubics. Let F, U be two points not on the sidelines. Then $p\mathcal{K}(\#F, U)$ is the cubic that goes through the nine points: ABC , $A_UB_UC_U$ (the cevians of U) and $F_AF_BF_C$ (the anticevians of F). This important class will be studied in details at Section 21.4.

Proposition 21.1.4 (Cayley Bacharach). *When two cubics $\mathcal{K}_1, \mathcal{K}_2$ haven't a line or a conic in common, they cut into exactly nine points. But, even when they are distincts, these nine points aren't "general points" with respect to the previous proposition. More precisely the family \mathcal{F} of the cubics that are going through eight of these points is exactly $\lambda\mathcal{K}_1 + \mu\mathcal{K}_2$, and all of these cubics are going through the last point.*

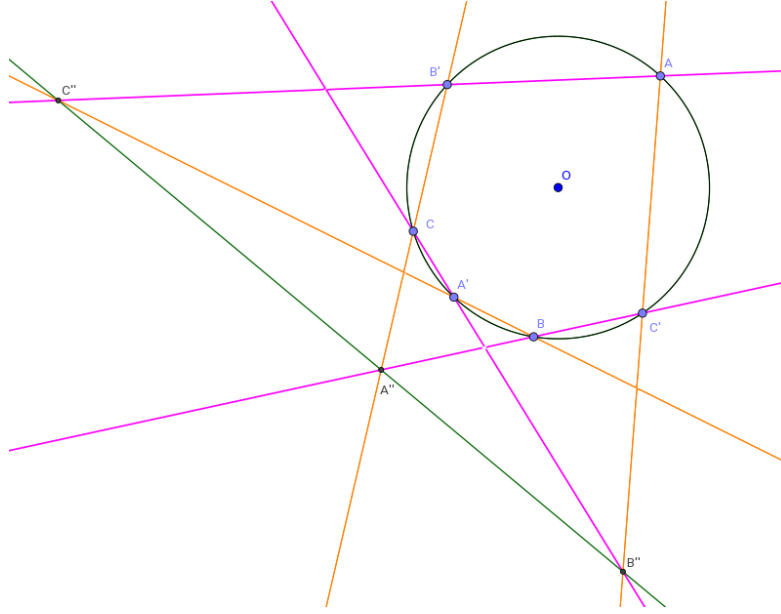
Proof. The first part is Bezout theorem. The second one is obvious: the nine points are not characterizing a cubic, since \mathcal{F} contains at least two cubics. The last part, i.e. that \mathcal{F} doesn't contain any other cubics is proven in great details in [Eisenbud et al. \(1996\)](#). \square

21.1.1 More about the folium

Some properties of the Descartes curve have already be given at Section 11.2.

Exercise 21.1.5. Using the parametrization $M_p \simeq 6p : 6p^2 : 1 + p^3$, give the condition for three points of the folium be aligned. Deduce the parameter of the tangential, i.e. the point where the tangent at M_p cuts again the curve. And then, determine the 'conjugate' of M_p , i.e. the point having the same tangential.

Exercise 21.1.6. Using the same parametrization, find the ninth point of eight distincts points on the Folium (i.e. illustrate the Cayley Bacharach property).

Figure 21.1: Pascal's theorem: A'', B'', C'' are aligned

21.1.2 Pascal's theorem

Theorem 21.1.7 (Pascal's theorem). *Let A, C', B, A', C, B' be six points on a conic. Define $A'' \doteq BC' \cap CB'$, etc. Then A'', B'', C'' are on a same line.*

Proof. Draw the magenta, orange and green cubics of Figure 21.1, i.e. the cubics by $A, B, C, A', B', C', A'', B''$ and M_j where $M_1 = (A + B')/2$, $M_2 = (A + C')/2$, $M_3 = (A'' + B'')/2$ and conclude by Cayley Bacharach. \square

21.2 Group structure of a cubic

Definition 21.2.1. Suppose that the cubic \mathcal{K} is not singular (no cusp, no nodes). When $A \neq B$ are on the cubic, notation $A @ B$ will be used to design the third point where the line (AB) cuts again the cubic. In the same vein, $A @ A$ will denote the **tangential** of A , i.e. the point where the tangent at A cuts again \mathcal{K} .

Proposition 21.2.2. *Operation $@$ is commutative, but not associative. By convention, $A @ B @ C$ is to be understood as $(A @ B) @ C$. And we have*

1. $P @ Q @ P = Q$
2. $P @ Q = R @ Q$ if and only if $P = R$
3. $P @ Q = R$ if and only if $R @ Q = P$

Definition 21.2.3. Chose a special point $O \in \mathcal{K}$ and note $+$ the operation

$$(A, B) \mapsto A + B \doteq A @ B @ O$$

Proposition 21.2.4. (1) *Operation $+$ is commutative*

(2) *O is the neutral point, i.e. $P + O = P$;*

(3) *Defining N by $N \doteq O @ O = O_t$, then $-N = N_t$;*

Proof. (1) Obvious. (2) $P + O = (P @ O) @ O = P$ since $P, O, Q \doteq P @ O$ are the three intersections of some line with the cubic, while $Q @ O$ is "not Q nor O " on this line

(3) One has $N + N_t \doteq N @ N_t @ O = N @ O = O_t @ O = O$. \square

Theorem 21.2.5. *Operation $+$ is associative, and therefore $(\mathcal{K}, +)$ is a group.*

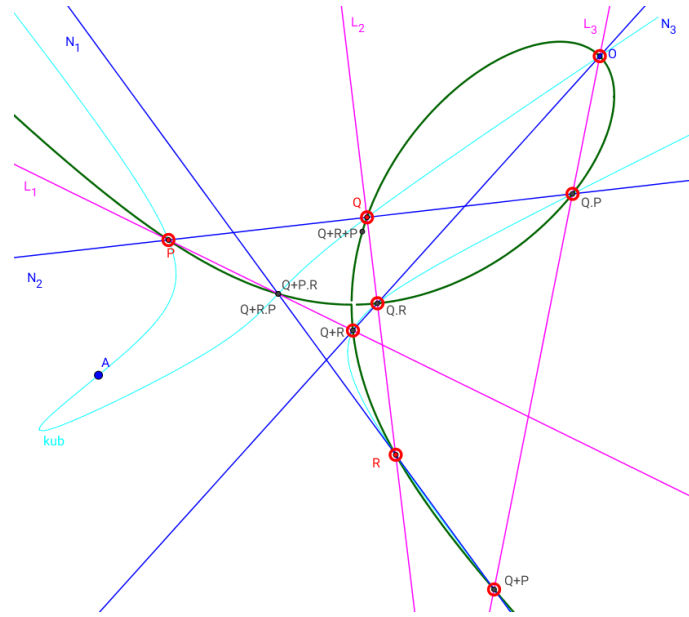


Figure 21.2: Using Cayley-Bacharach to prove the cubic associativity

Proof. See Figure 21.2 and Durège (1871, p. 135). Since the operation is commutative, what is to be proved can be written as:

$$(\forall P, Q, R \in \mathcal{K}) (E = F) \quad \text{where } E \doteq (Q + R) @ P ; F \doteq (Q + P) @ R$$

1. Let us introduce two degenerate cubics: \mathcal{K}_2 as the union of the three magenta lines

$$L_1 = [P, Q + R, E], L_2 = [Q, R, Q @ R], L_3 = [O, Q @ P, Q + P]$$

and \mathcal{K}_3 as the union of the three blue lines

$$N_1 = [R, Q + P, F], N_2 = [Q, P, Q @ P], N_3 = [O, Q @ R, Q + R]$$

2. So we see that cubic \mathcal{K} intersects the other two at

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{K} \cap \mathcal{K}_2 &= O, P, Q, R, Q @ R, Q @ P, Q + R, Q + P, E \\ \mathcal{K} \cap \mathcal{K}_3 &= O, P, Q, R, Q @ R, Q @ P, Q + R, Q + P, F \end{aligned}$$

Since \mathcal{K}_3 goes by eight of the nine $\mathcal{K} \cap \mathcal{K}_2$ points, the third cubic must go also through E .

3. Suppose that E lies on $N_3 = [O, Q @ R, Q + R]$. Since L_1 already goes through $Q + R$, this would induce $L_1 = N_3$ and therefore $P \in (O, Q + R)$. Suppose that E lies on $N_2 = [Q, P, Q @ P]$. Since L_1 already goes through P , this would induce $L_1 = N_2$ and therefore $P \in (Q, Q + R)$.
4. It remains $E \in N_1$, enforcing either $E = R$ or $E = Q + P$ or $E = F$. The first two possibilities couldn't be the general case, since $E \doteq P @ (Q + R)$ depends on the three points. It remains only $E = F$ as the general case, implying $O @ E = O @ F$ as required.
5. Remark: the cyan cubic goes through the eight points and the random point A . One can see that it goes also through the ninth point $Q + R @ P$

□

Theorem 21.2.6. $3k$ points $P_i \in \mathcal{K}$ are on a curve of order k if and only if $\sum P_i = kN$.

Proof. When $k = 1$, $P @ Q @ O @ R @ O = N = O @ O$ leads to $P @ Q @ O @ R = O$, and to $P @ Q @ O = R @ O$, implying $P @ Q = R$.

When $k = 2$, define $X \doteq P @ Q, Y \doteq R @ S, Z \doteq T @ U$ and prove the equivalence: the P_j are on a conic with XYZ aligned. The property results since $P + Q + X = N$, etc. □

Remark 21.2.7. We have to be careful to the existence of torsion points i.e points with the property $kP = O$. Indeed the equation $kX = Q$ has k^2 solutions (complex) for the point X .

Some complements are given at Subsection 21.4.2 (concerning only the $p\mathcal{K}$ cubics).

21.3 Isocubics

Proposition 21.3.1. *Define an isocubic \mathcal{K} with pole P as a cubic which is invariant wrt the P isoconjugacy. Then \mathcal{K} is either a "pivotal isocubic" (see Section 21.4 for more details) with equation:*

$$p\mathcal{K}(P, U) \doteq p\mathcal{K}(\#F, U) \doteq (h^2y^2 - g^2z^2)ux + (f^2z^2 - h^2x^2)vy + (g^2x^2 - f^2y^2)wz \quad (21.2)$$

or a "non pivotal isocubic" (see Section 21.5 for more details) with equation :

$$n\mathcal{K}(P, U, k) \doteq ux(r y^2 + qz^2) + vy(p z^2 + r x^2) + wz(q x^2 + p y^2) + kxyz \quad (21.3)$$

Proof. Direct inspection from $\mathcal{K}(X_P^*) = \lambda\mathcal{K}(X)$. It can be seen that terms like xy^2 and xz^2 are to be paired, and that terms like x^3 are to be avoided. As a corollary, such a cubic goes through the vertices A, B, C . \square

Proposition 21.3.2. *When the pole P is fixed, and X_P^* is defined by (17.5), i.e. by $x^* = pyz$, the property " \mathcal{K} is an isocubic" is characterized by the exact formula:*

$$\mathcal{K}(X_P^*)/\mathcal{K}(X) = \mp(pqrxyz)$$

Sign "-" characterizes a $p\mathcal{K}$ cubic, sign "+" characterizes a $n\mathcal{K}$ cubic. Each class form a projective space, whose dimensions are respectively 3 and 4.

Definition 21.3.3. The **triangular cubic** is the union of the three sidelines: $n\mathcal{K}_0 = (BC) \cup (CA) \cup (AB)$. The standard equations of this cubic are **defined** by :

$$\begin{aligned} n\mathcal{K}_0(X) &= \frac{xyz}{b} \\ &= \frac{(\overline{Z}\gamma\beta - \mathbf{T}\beta - \mathbf{T}\gamma + \mathbf{Z})(\overline{Z}\alpha\gamma - \mathbf{T}\alpha - \mathbf{T}\gamma + \mathbf{Z})(\overline{Z}\alpha\beta - \mathbf{T}\alpha - \mathbf{T}\beta + \mathbf{Z})}{z} \div s_3 \end{aligned} \quad (21.4)$$

Proposition 21.3.4. *When substituting the isogonal formulas (17.6) into the equation of a $\#X(1)$ pivotal cubic and using (21.4), we have the following equalities :*

$$\begin{aligned} p\mathcal{K}(\text{isog}(X)) &= -p\mathcal{K}(X) \times n\mathcal{K}_0(X) \\ n\mathcal{K}(\text{isog}(X)) &= +n\mathcal{K}(X) \times n\mathcal{K}_0(X) \end{aligned}$$

that are exact identities, not up to a proportionality factor. Once again, the set of the $X(6)$ -isocubics splits into two projective subspaces, the $p\mathcal{K}$ space (dimension 3) and the $n\mathcal{K}$ space (dimension 4).em

Example 21.3.5. The cubic "circumcircle union infinity" is a $n\mathcal{K}$ cubic, characterized by:

$$\left[n\mathcal{K}, \begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, a^2 + b^2 + c^2 \right] = \frac{(x+y+z)(a^2yz + b^2zx + c^2yx)}{b} = \mathbf{T}(\mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}} - \mathbf{T}^2)$$

21.4 Pivotal isocubics $p\mathcal{K}(P, U)$

Definition 21.4.1. Pivotal isocubics. Let F, U be two points not on the sidelines and define $p\mathcal{K}(\#F, U)$ as the cubic that goes through the nine points: ABC , $A_U B_U C_U$ (the cevians of U) and $F_A F_B F_C$ (the anticevians of F). Then U and $F_0 \doteq F$ are also on the cubic. Its equation is :

$$p\mathcal{K}(P, U) \doteq p\mathcal{K}(\#F, U) \doteq (h^2y^2 - g^2z^2)ux + (f^2z^2 - h^2x^2)vy + (g^2x^2 - f^2y^2)wz \quad (21.5)$$

Remark 21.4.2. Part of the time, isocubics are defined using the pole of the conjugacy, i.e. $P \simeq p : q : r \doteq f^2 : g^2 : h^2$.

$p\mathcal{K}$	name	F	U, U^*	E, E^*	D, D^*	some other points on the cubic
$p\mathcal{K}_A$	vertex 21.4.20	1	A			
ZU(1)	21.4.21	1	X(1)			
E_1, E_3	hidden 21.4.23	1	Ω			
K002	Thomson 21.4.29	1	2,6	3,4	9,57	223, 282, 1073, 1249
K003	McCay 21.4.24	1	3,4	1075,?	1745,3362	
K006		1	4,3	155,254	46,90	371, 372, 485, 486, 487, 488
K005		1	5,54	2120,2121	3460,3461	3, 4, 17, 18, 61, 62, 195, 627, 628
K004	Darboux 21.4.5	1	20,64	2130,2131	3182,3347	3, 4, 40, 84, 1490, 1498
K001	Neuberg 21.4.25	1	30,74	2132,2133	3464,?	3, 4, 13, 14, 15, 16, 399, 484, ...
		1	98,511	?,?	1756,?	1687, 1688, 2009, 2010
K035		1	99,512	39,83	1019,1018	1379, 1380
		1	100,513	1,1	513,100	1381, 1382
		1	110,523	5,54	?,?	1113, 1114
K020		1	384,695	?,?	?,?	3,4,32,39,76,83
K021		1	512,99	2142,2143	?,?	
K1155	shortest 21.4.28	1	523,110	39138	21381,39137	
K007	Lucas 21.4.5	2	X(69)			4, 7, 8, 20, 189, 253, 329... (15)
K170	21.4.9	2	X(4)			
K155	EAC2 21.4.55	$\sqrt{31}$	238			
K060	21.4.7	$\sqrt{1989}$	265			
$n\mathcal{K}$		F	root			
Δ	21.3.3	1				
circle	21.3.5	1				
K137		1	513	$Z^+(X_1X_6)$		1, 44, 88, 239, 241, 292, 294, 1931
???		1	649	$Z^+(X_1X_2)$		1, 238, 291, 899, 2107
K040	Pelletier	1	650	$Z^+(X_1X_3)$		1,105,243,296,518,1155,1156, 2651, 2652
K018	Brocar2 21.14	1	523	$Z^+(X_3X_6)$		2, 6, 13, 14, 15, 16, 111, 368, 524
K010	Simson 21.5.3	2		$c\mathcal{K}(\#X_2, X_{69})$		2, X(2394) upto X(2419)
K162	21.5.20	6		$c\mathcal{K}(\#X_6, X_3)$		6, X(2420) upto X(2445)

$$F = \sqrt{P} \text{ (central fixed point)}, U, U_P^*, E = \text{cevdiv}(U, U^*), E^*, D = \text{cevdiv}(U, \sqrt{P})$$

Table 21.1: Some well-known cubics

Definition 21.4.3. A Kimberling ZU cubic is a $p\mathcal{K}(X_6, U)$, giving a special place to isogonal conjugacy. Some examples are given in Table [21.1](#).

Remark 21.4.4. Only 8 ZU cubics have a reflection center : the Darboux cubic (center= X_3), the four degenerate cubics that are union of the three bisectors through an incenter, and three other (Maple length = 135712 using RootOf, [4948, 5345, 4215] using alias).

Theorem 21.4.5. pivotal isocubic property. When point X is on a sideline of triangle ABC , then $X_F^\#$ is undefined (geometrically), while the formula gives the third vertex. Otherwise, $X_F^\#$ belongs to $p\mathcal{K}(\#F, U)$ if and only if X belongs to $p\mathcal{K}(\#F, U)$. And then $U, X, X_F^\#$ are collinear. For this reason, point U is called the **pivot** of the cubic. Alternate formulation: $p\mathcal{K}(\#F, U)$ is the locus of the X such that $U, X, X_F^\#$ are collinear (to be taken 'Cremona more', i.e. allowing indeterminacies)

Proof. Compute the determinant of the 10 rows ([21.1](#)) relative to the nine points given in the definition and the variable point $X = x : y : z$. And remark that this quantity is proportional to

$\det(U, X, X_F^\#)$. □

Theorem 21.4.6. cevativ property. *When X is on the sidelines of the cevian triangle of U , then $Y = \text{cevativ}(U, X)$ is undefined geometrically, while the formula gives $0 : 0 : 0$. Otherwise, this Y belongs to $pK(\#F, U)$ if and only if X belongs to $pK(\#F, U)$. And then $U_F^\#, X, \text{cevativ}(U, X)$ are collinear. This fact is underlined by the name **isopivot** given to the point $U_F^\#$.*

Proof. Compute $pK(\#F, U)(\text{cevativ}(U, X))$ and obtain $pK(\#F, U)(X)$ times the incidence relations, i.e. the rows of $\text{Adjoint}(\text{cevian}(U)) \cdot X$. And remark that this quantity is proportional to $\det(U_F^\#, X, \text{cevativ}(U, X))$. □

Proposition 21.4.7. The 22 points property. *The $pK(\#F, U)$ cubic goes through*

1. $U, A_U B_U C_U$ and their conjugates $U_F^\#, ABC$ (8)
2. $F_0 F_A F_B F_C$ (cf Theorem 21.4.5) (4)
3. $\text{cevativ}(U, U_F^\#)$, the four $\text{cevativ}(U, F_j)$ and their isoconjugates (10)

Proof. Follows directly from the two theorems. □

Example 21.4.8. When U is one of the fixed points of the isoconjugacy (i.e. $P = U *_b U$), the $pK(P, U)$ cubic degenerates into the lines through the remaining three fixed points.

Example 21.4.9. K170 is $pK(X_2, X_4)$. Equation $\sum x(y^2 - z^2)/S_a = 0$. On Figure 21.3, one can see the following alignments (general properties, applicable to any pK) :

1. Fixed points : F_0, F_a, A are collinear, and cyclically for the other fixed points and the other vertices ;
2. From U : $U, X, X_F^\#$ are collinear (e.g. E and E^* are aligned with U). Therefore, each line from U to a fixed point is tangent to the cubic at this fixed point ; in the same vein, point $U_b = UB \cap AC$ is on the cubic and viewing B as $(U_b)_F^\#$ makes sense, but not viewing U_b as $B_F^\#$ (this object would be "quite all points on line AC ").
3. From $U_F^\#$: $U_F^\#, X, \text{cevativ}(U, X)$ are collinear (e.g. F and D are aligned with $U_F^\#$). Therefore, each line from $U_F^\#$ to a vertex or to U is tangent to the cubic at this point.

Definition 21.4.10. The $PK_F^\#(X)$ point is the intersection of the trilinear polars of points X and $X_F^\#$. Using barycentrics and $F = f : g : h$, we have :

$$PK_F^\#(X) = f^2 x (g^2 z^2 - h^2 y^2) : g^2 y (h^2 x^2 - f^2 z^2) : h^2 z (f^2 y^2 - x^2 g^2)$$

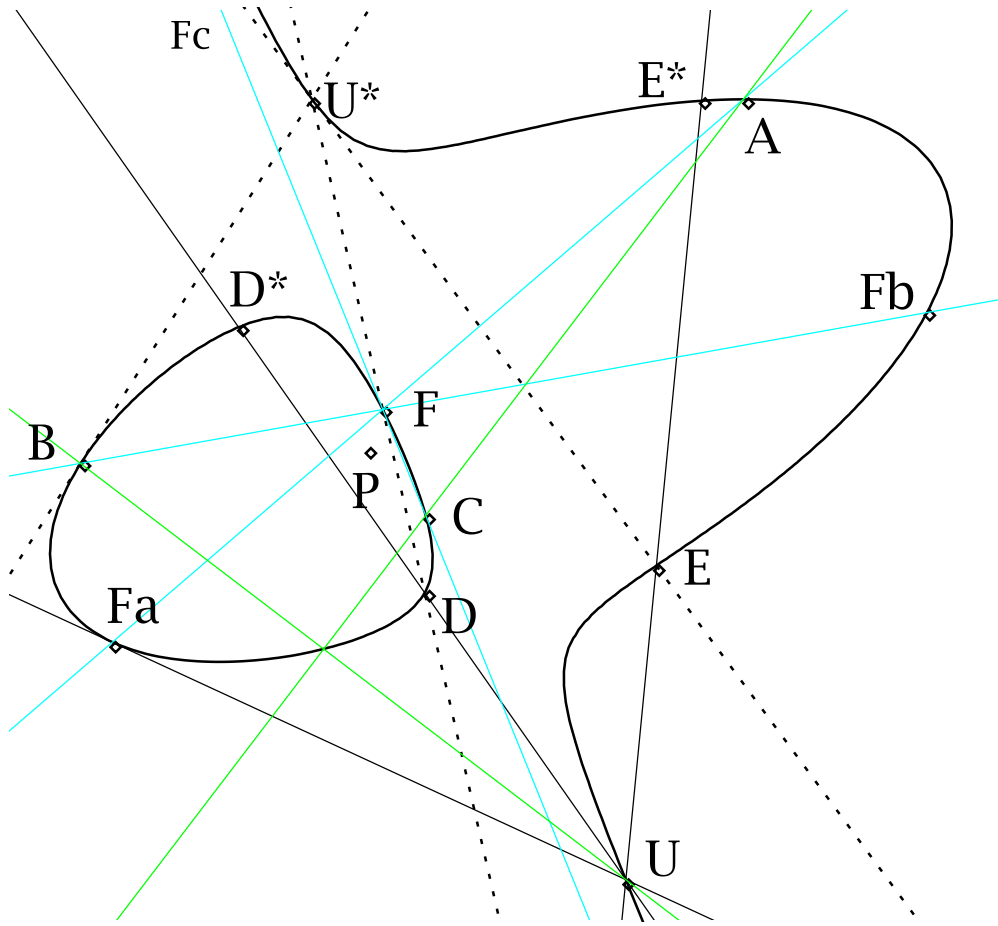
Proof. Direct computation. □

Remark 21.4.11. This transform was introduced by Ehrmann and Gibert (2005) as PK_P , i.e. putting forwards the pole of the conjugacy rather than its fixed points, and turned into Definition 24.4.1.

Example 21.4.12. Using $F=X(1)$, i.e. $P=X(6)$, we have $PK(X(I)) = X(J)$ for these (I,J):

I	2	3	4	5	6	9	19	31	44	54	57	63
J	512	647	647	2081	512	663	810	2084	3251	2081	663	810

Proposition 21.4.13. *Points of indeterminacy of $PK_F^\#$ are the fixed points F_j and their diagonal vertices i.e. A, B, C . The exceptional curves are the six lines through two of the fixed points. Otherwise, each point $P = PK_F^\#(X)$ characterizes a pair $\{X, X_F^\#\}$ (so that $PK^\#$ is not a Cremona transform !).*

Figure 21.3: $pK(2,4)$

Proof. Solving $P = 0 : 0 : 0$ gives the first result, and solving the Jacobian gives the second. Otherwise, set $P \simeq p : q : r$ and obtain :

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2h^2qf^2prg^2 \\ -rg^2(+g^2h^2p^2 - f^2g^2r^2 + f^2h^2q^2) - rg^2W \\ -qh^2(+g^2h^2p^2 + f^2g^2r^2 - f^2h^2q^2) + qh^2W \end{bmatrix}$$

where $W = 4i f^2g^2h^2 S\left(\frac{p}{f}, \frac{q}{g}, \frac{r}{h}\right)$ and S is the usual Heron formula for the area (7.8). \square

Proposition 21.4.14. *When $PK_F^\#(X)$ belongs to the tripolar line of $U_F^\#$, then point X belongs to the cubic $pK(P, U)$. This amounts to say that X is on pK if and only if the tripolars of X , $X_F^\#$, $U_F^\#$ are concurrent.*

Proof. Direct computation. In Kimberling (1998, p. 240) the corresponding cubic is noted $Z(U, Y)$ where $P = Y \underset{b}{*} X_6$. \square

Proposition 21.4.15. *When point $U = u : v : w$ is at infinity, the $pK(P, U)$ cubic can be rewritten as :*

$$\left(\frac{p}{x} + \frac{q}{y} + \frac{r}{z}\right)(x\rho + y\sigma + z\tau) - (x + y + z)\left(\frac{a^2\rho}{x} + \frac{b^2\sigma}{y} + \frac{c^2\tau}{z}\right) = 0$$

where $[\rho, \sigma, \tau]$ is any line whose direction is U . In other words $u = \sigma - \tau$, etc.

Proof. Direct examination. We can check that $pK(P, U)$ contains the intersections of both conics —vertices A, B, C and U_P^* —, the points at infinity of $\mathcal{C}_{cir}(P)$, the intersections of line $[\rho, \sigma, \tau]$ with the associated conic, and U itself ! \square

21.4.1 Another description

1. Consider $pK(\#F, P)$ and use $F_j \simeq \pm f : \pm g : \pm h$ (isoconjugacy), $P \simeq p : q : r$ (pivot). The name $U \simeq u : v : w$ will be used for the generic point of the cubic. Let $CP(F, P)$ be the diagonal conic that goes through P and the four F_j . In fact, this conic goes also through the 3 associates of P since

$$CP(F, P) \simeq \begin{bmatrix} g^2r^2 - h^2q^2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & h^2p^2 - f^2r^2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & f^2q^2 - g^2p^2 \end{bmatrix}$$

2. Cut this conic by line PU and obtain point N . Acting that way, we obtain a symmetric expression. Cut rather by line $UU_F^\#$ and say that P is the other solution.. We obtain :

$$N \simeq \begin{bmatrix} -f^2pv^2 + 2f^2quv - g^2pu^2 \\ f^2qv^2 - 2g^2puv + g^2qu^2 \\ 2w(f^2qv - g^2pu) + r(g^2u^2 - f^2v^2) \end{bmatrix}$$

Now, define $N(U)$ by this formula. Then $N(U) = N(U_F^\#)$ is equivalent to $U \in pK...$ except when P is one of the F_j .

3. Cut the tangent at N to $CF(F, P)$ with line $PP_F^\#$ and obtain the point M

$$M \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \frac{qw - rv}{r^2g^2 - q^2h^2} \\ \frac{ru - pw}{p^2h^2 - r^2f^2} \\ \frac{pv - qu}{q^2f^2 - p^2g^2} \end{bmatrix} ; t = -\frac{(pw - ru)q}{(qw - rv)p}$$

4. For all U , point M is aligned with $P, P_F^\#$. When U is on the cubic,

- $N = \text{cevdiv}(M, P)$.
- M is aligned with $N, N_F^\#$.
- $N_F^\#$ is the intersection of tangents at U and $U_F^\#$ to the cubic.
- $M_F^\#$ is the intersection of the line $P, U, U_F^\#$ and the fixed circumconic through $P, P_F^\#$.

5. Line $\text{cevdiv}(P, U) ; \text{cevdiv}(P, U_F^\#)$ goes through the fixed point $Q = \left(\text{cevdiv}(P, P_F^\#) \right)_F^\#$.
Conversely, the locus of such U is the union of $pK(\#F, P)$ et $nK(\#F, Q, -1 \div p^2q^2r^2)$.

21.4.2 Group structure (pivotal cubics)

Proposition 21.4.16. *When using the pivot U as the neutral point, then*

1. $N \doteq U_t = U^* = [f^2vw : g^2uw : h^2uv]$
2. X, Y, Z are collinear if and only if $X + Y + Z = N$. (generic property)
3. $X @ X^* = U$; $X @ U = X^*$; $X^* @ U = X$; $X + X^* = N$ (isocubic property)
4. $X + Y = (X @ Y)^*$; $X @ Y = (X + Y)^*$
5. $-X = X @ N = U/X$ (cevdiv property)
6. On the cubic, $A^* = A_U$ (the cevian of U) ; $\text{grad}(A) = [0, -h^2v, +g^2w]$; $A_t = N$

$$7. A + A = B + B = C + C = U ; A + B + C = U$$

Proof. (7) $A + A = A @ A @ U = A_t @ U = U_t @ U = U$

$$B + C = B @ C @ U = U_A @ U = A;$$

□

Proposition 21.4.17. *Four points are said to form a tangential quadruple when they have the same tangential.*

1. The four F_j form such a quadruple, the tangential being U .
2. The four A, B, C, U form such a quadruple, , the tangential being N .
3. When (X_1, X_2, X_3, X_4) is a tangential quadruple, then $(X_1^*, X_2^*, X_3^*, X_4^*)$ is such a quadruple.
4. Every tangential quadruple is of the form $(X, X + A, X + B, X + C)$.

Proof. (3) From the tangential definition, and the isocubic property

$$N = T + 2P^* = S + 2P = S + 2Q$$

$$N = P + P^* = Q + Q^* \text{ then}$$

$$\begin{aligned} T + 2Q^* &= N - 2P^* + 2Q^* = N - 2(N - P) + 2(N - Q) = N + 2P - 2Q \\ &= N + (N - S) - (N - S) = N \end{aligned}$$

so that T is the tangential of Q^* too.

$$(4)(P + A)_t = N - 2(P + A) = N - 2P - 2A = N - 2P = S.$$

□

Exercise 21.4.18. Find the tangential common to A_U, B_U, C_U, U^* .

21.4.3 ABCIJKL cubics: the Lubin(2) point of view

Notation 21.4.19. All visible curves are normalised by $\mathcal{C} \div \text{conj}(\mathcal{C}) = \pm 1$.

Proposition 21.4.20. Cubics PKA. *The set of all cubics that go through points ABCIJKL is a projective space. Its dimension is 3. A generating family is given by the three cubics $p\mathcal{K}_A = (BC) \cup (AI) \cup (KL)$, etc. Pivot of $p\mathcal{K}_A$ is A . Its fully factored equation requires Lubin(2), but Lubin(1) is sufficient to use $\det(X, X^*, A) = 0$ where X^* is given by the isogonal conjugacy formula. One has:*

$$\begin{aligned} p\mathcal{K}_A &= \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{s_{32}} (-\bar{Z} \beta^2 \gamma^2 + \mathbf{T} \beta^2 + \mathbf{T} \gamma^2 - \mathbf{Z}) (-\bar{Z} \alpha^2 \beta \gamma + \mathbf{T} \alpha^2 + \mathbf{T} \beta \gamma - \mathbf{Z}) (\bar{Z} \alpha^2 \beta \gamma + \mathbf{T} \alpha^2 - \mathbf{T} \beta \gamma - \mathbf{Z}) \\ &= \frac{1}{1} \frac{1}{s_3} (-\bar{Z} \beta \gamma + \mathbf{T} \beta + \mathbf{T} \gamma - \mathbf{Z}) \left(-\alpha^2 \beta \gamma \bar{Z}^2 + 2 \mathbf{T} \bar{Z} \alpha \beta \gamma + \mathbf{T}^2 \alpha^2 - \mathbf{T}^2 \beta \gamma - 2 \alpha \mathbf{Z} \mathbf{T} + \mathbf{Z}^2 \right) \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Equation of $p\mathcal{K}(F, U)$ is $\det(X, X_F^\#, U) = 0$, leading to dimension 3, and allowing to check that pivot of $p\mathcal{K}_A$ is the vertex A . After that, we can go back to Lubin(1) since isogonal conjugacy doesn't require to identify which is the incenter among the inexceters. □

Example 21.4.21. The Kimberling $Z(X(1))$ cubic, i.e. $(IJ) \cup (IK) \cup (IL)$, is obtained as :

$$Z(X(1)) = \frac{\alpha(\beta + \gamma)}{2(\alpha - \beta)(\alpha - \gamma)} p\mathcal{K}_A + \frac{\beta(\alpha + \gamma)}{(\beta - \gamma)(\beta - \alpha)} p\mathcal{K}_B + \frac{\gamma(\alpha + \beta)}{(\gamma - \alpha)(\gamma - \beta)} p\mathcal{K}_C$$

Proposition 21.4.22. *The Kiepert RH construction (see Proposition 12.22.2 for more details) can be summarized as follows. Let $K = \cot \phi$ be a fixed real and define circularly the points $A'B'C'$ by :*

$$\cot \left(\overbrace{BC, BA'} \right) - K = 0 ; \cot \left(\overbrace{CB, CA'} \right) + K = 0$$

These 3 points and the 7 ABCIJKL are on a same cubic, together with $X(3)$, $X(4)$ and the $A'B'C'$ points related with the other orientation. Naming this cubic $p\mathcal{K}_{(K)}$, we have:

$$\begin{aligned} p\mathcal{K}_{(K)} &= p\mathcal{K}_{\text{Darboux}} + K^2 \times p\mathcal{K}_{\text{Thomson}} \\ &= (K^2 + 1) p\mathcal{K}_{\text{Neuberg}} + (1 - 3K^2) p\mathcal{K}_{\text{McCay}} \end{aligned}$$

(See below for more details on these four cubics). The pivot of $p\mathcal{K}_{(K)}$ is $(3K^2 z X(2) - z X(20)) \div (3K^2 - 1)$.

Proof. Let us compute the points A', B', C' and obtain:

$$A' \simeq \frac{\beta + \gamma + i(\gamma - \beta)}{1} / K : 2 : (\beta + \gamma + i(\gamma - \beta)) / K \div \beta\gamma, \text{ etc}$$

Then substitute A' and B' into $\sum_3 x_j pK_j = 0$. This system has non zero solutions, proving the result. The circumcenter $X(3)$ (the \mathbf{T}^3 coefficient), the orthocenter (isogonality) and the $A'B'C'$ points related to the other orientation ($pK_{(K)}$ depends only on K^2). \square

21.4.4 Using a more handy basis

Proposition 21.4.23. The hidden IJKL cubics. Let pK_{Ω_x} and pK_{Ω_y} be the isogonal cubics whose pivots are the umbilics $\Omega_x \simeq 0 : 0 : 1$ and $\Omega_y \simeq 1 : 0 : 0$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} pK_{\Omega_x} &= \frac{1}{1} \mathbf{Z}^2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} + \mathbf{T} \left(\sigma_3 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 \right) - \mathbf{T}^2 (2 \mathbf{Z} + \sigma_2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}) + \mathbf{T}^3 \sigma_1 \\ pK_{\Omega_y} &= \frac{1}{1} \mathbf{Z} \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 + \mathbf{T} \left(\frac{1}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^2 \right) - \mathbf{T}^2 \left(\frac{\sigma_1}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z} + 2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \right) + \frac{\sigma_2}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{T}^3 \end{aligned}$$

They are conjugate of each other, but not self conjugate (hidden curves). Their nine intersections are $ABCIJKL$ (stable by isogonal conjugacy) and the two umbilics (stable as a pair).

Proof. When $M \in \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$, and $isog(M)$ is taken from (17.6), then

$$E \doteq (\mathbf{T}^2 - \mathbf{Z} \bar{\mathbf{Z}}) M - \mathbf{T} isog(M) = E_1 : 0 : E_3$$

The nine points property comes from (1) at an umbilic, column E vanishes since both multipliers are zero; (2) at a vertex, the circle vanishes and $isog(X)$ is $0 : 0 : 0$; (3) at a fixed point of the conjugacy, column E is proportional to M but E_2 is ever 0 and the M aren't at infinity. Obviously, this result can also be checked in Lubin(2) by substitution. Or even by factoring the \mathbf{T} resultant of both equations. \square

Proposition 21.4.24. K003, the McCay Cubic, $pK(6,3)$. A visible cubic is described by the expression $(\bar{\mathbf{Z}} pK_{\Omega_x} - \mathbf{Z} pK_{\Omega_y}) / \mathbf{T}$. And then, $pole=X(6)$, $pivot=X(3)$ and equation:

$$pK_{McCay} = \frac{1}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^3 + \sigma_3 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^3 + \mathbf{T} \left(\frac{\sigma_1}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^2 - \sigma_2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 \right) + \mathbf{T}^2 \left(-\frac{\sigma_2}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z} + \sigma_1 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \right)$$

$K003$ goes through $X(3)$ and $X(4)$. Its points at infinity are $\Theta : 0 : 1/\Theta$ where $\Theta^3 = \sigma_3$. These points are the directions of the Morley triangles. The asymptotes are :

$$\left[3 \frac{\Theta^2}{\sigma_3} \quad ; \quad \frac{\sigma_2}{\Theta^2} - \frac{\sigma_1 \Theta^2}{\sigma_3} \quad ; \quad -3 \frac{\sigma_3}{\Theta^2} \right]$$

where Θ ranges over the three cubic roots, using $j\Theta$ or $j^2\Theta$. They concur at $X(2)$.

Proof. Coeff of \mathbf{T}^3 is 0. Thus $X(3)$ and then $X(4)$. Asymptotes are obtained from the gradient. Pivot can be guessed as the intersection of two well chosen lines MM^* , for example for two of the points at infinity. \square

Proposition 21.4.25. K001, the Neuberg cubic, $pK(6,30)$. A visible cubic is described by expression $(\sigma_2/\sigma_3) pK_{\Omega_x} - \sigma_1 pK_{\Omega_y}$. And then $pole=X(6)$, $pivot=X(30)$ and equation:

$$pK_{Neuberg} = \frac{\sigma_2}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} - \sigma_1 \mathbf{Z} \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 + \mathbf{T} \left(-\frac{\sigma_1}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^2 + \sigma_2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 \right) + \mathbf{T}^2 \left(\frac{\sigma_1^2 - 2\sigma_2}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z} - \frac{\sigma_2^2 - 2\sigma_1\sigma_3}{\sigma_3} \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \right)$$

This is a circular curve. The third point at infinity is $\sigma_1\sigma_3 : 0 : \sigma_2$, i.e. $X(30)$, the direction of the Euler line. The asymptotes are :

$$\left[0 \quad -\sigma_1 \quad \sigma_2 \right], \left[-\sigma_1 \quad \sigma_2 \quad 0 \right], \left[\sigma_2^2\sigma_1 \quad ; \quad -\sigma_1^3\sigma_3 + \sigma_2^3 \quad ; \quad -\sigma_2\sigma_1^2\sigma_3 \right]$$

Intersecting the first two asymptotes, we obtain a singular focus at $\sigma_2^2 : \sigma_1\sigma_2 : \sigma_1^2$, i.e. point $X(110)$. Moreover, the cubic goes through $X(3)$ and therefore through $X(4)$. Visible asymptote goes through $X(74)$, the isogonal of $X(30)$.

Proof. $X(30)$ is the pivot because it is the only common point to the curve and line MM^* when M is an umbilic. An asymptote is the gradient evaluated at the corresponding point at infinity. \square

Corollary 21.4.26. *The Neuberg cubic is the locus of points X such that the isogonal line XX^* is parallel to the Euler line. See (Gibert, 2004-2024, 2005). Its (barycentric) equation is :*

$$\sum_{cyclic} x (y^2 c^2 - z^2 b^2) \left(2a^4 - (b^2 + c^2) a^2 - (b^2 - c^2)^2 \right) = 0 \quad (21.6)$$

and can be rewritten as :

$$\left(\frac{a^2}{x} + \frac{b^2}{y} + \frac{c^2}{z} \right) (x\rho + y\sigma + z\tau) - (x + y + z) \left(\frac{a^2\rho}{x} + \frac{b^2\sigma}{y} + \frac{c^2\tau}{z} \right) = 0$$

where $[\rho, \sigma, \tau]$ is the Euler line —remember: tripole = $X(648)$. In other words, $K001 = \text{circumcircle} \times \text{Euler} - \text{infinity} \times \text{Jerabek}$.

Proof. See Proposition 21.4.15. We can check that $K001$ contains the intersections of Γ and Jerabek —vertices A, B, C and $X(74)$ —, the points at infinity of the circumcircle —the umbilics—, the intersections of Euler line and Jerabek hyperbola — $X(3)$ and $X(4)$ — and $X(30)$ itself. \square

Remark 21.4.27. The name "shortest cubic" was introduced here, in v42 (2012), as the circular $p\mathcal{K}$ cubic whose expression requires the shortest number of characters. Its main property was to provide an handy basis when used together with the McCay and the Neuberg cubics.

Proposition 21.4.28. Shortest cubic, $p\mathcal{K}(6, 523)$. *The expression $(1/\sigma_1)p\mathcal{K}_{\Omega x} + (\sigma_3/\sigma_2)p\mathcal{K}_{\Omega y}$ gives a visible cubic, with pole= $X(6)$, pivot= $X(523)$ and equation:*

$$p\mathcal{K}_{\text{shortest}} = \frac{1}{\sigma_1} \mathbf{Z}^2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} + \frac{\sigma_3}{\sigma_2} \mathbf{Z} \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 + \mathbf{T} \left(\frac{1}{\sigma_2} \mathbf{Z}^2 + \frac{\sigma_3}{\sigma_1} \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 \right) - \left(\frac{\sigma_1^2 + 2\sigma_2}{\sigma_2 \sigma_1} \mathbf{Z} + \frac{\sigma_2^2 + 2\sigma_1 \sigma_3}{\sigma_2 \sigma_1} \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \right) + 2T^3$$

The third point at infinity is $-\sigma_1 \sigma_3 : 0 : \sigma_2$, i.e. $X(523)$, the orthodir of the Euler line. This is also the pivot. The three asymptotes concur at $X(110)$, giving a singular focus. Barycentric equation of this curve is ;

$$(b^2 - c^2) x (b^2 z^2 - c^2 y^2) + (c^2 - a^2) y (c^2 x^2 - a^2 z^2) + (a^2 - b^2) z (a^2 y^2 - b^2 x^2)$$

The ETC databasis provides $U = 523, U^* = 110, D = 39138, E = 21381, E^* = 39137$ and no other points. Moreover the imaginary foci of the MacBeath inconic Example 11.11.2 are here. Thus we have 3 vertices, 4 inexceters, 3 points at infinity, and 6 others, i.e. 16 points.

Proposition 21.4.29. K002, the Thomson cubic, $p\mathcal{K}(6, 2)$. *The expression*

$$((\mathbf{T}s_2/s_3 - 3\bar{\mathbf{Z}})p\mathcal{K}_{\Omega x} - (\mathbf{T}s_1 - 3\mathbf{Z})p\mathcal{K}_{\Omega y})/\mathbf{T}$$

gives a visible cubic, with pole= $X(6)$, pivot= $X(2)$ and equation:

$$p\mathcal{K}_{\text{Thomson}} = \frac{3}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^3 + \frac{\sigma_2}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} - \sigma_1 \mathbf{Z} \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 - 3\sigma_3 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^3 + \mathbf{T} \left(-\frac{4\sigma_1}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^2 + 4\sigma_2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 \right) + \mathbf{T}^2 \left(\frac{\sigma_2 + \sigma_1^2}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z} - \frac{\sigma_2^2 + \sigma_1 \sigma_3}{\sigma_3} \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \right)$$

This cubic is the locus of points X whose trilinear polar is parallel to their polar line in the circumcircle. This is the $K = \infty$ cubic of the Kieper RH construct.

Proposition 21.4.30. K004, the Darboux cubic, $p\mathcal{K}(6, 20)$. *The expression*

$$((\mathbf{T}s_2/s_3 + \bar{\mathbf{Z}})p\mathcal{K}_{\Omega x} - (\mathbf{T}s_1 + \mathbf{Z})p\mathcal{K}_{\Omega y})/T$$

gives a visible cubic, with pole= $X(6)$, pivot= $X(20)$ and equation:

$$p\mathcal{K}_{\text{Darboux}} = -\frac{\mathbf{Z}^3}{\sigma_3} + \frac{\sigma_2}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} - \sigma_1 \mathbf{Z} \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 + \sigma_3 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^3 + \mathbf{T}^2 \left(\frac{\sigma_1^2 - 3\sigma_2}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z} - \frac{\sigma_2^2 - 3\sigma_1 \sigma_3}{\sigma_3} \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \right)$$

This is the $K = 0$ cubic of the Kieper RH construct. See the next section for more details.

Proposition 21.4.31. Resulting pencils. *We have the following pencils :*

1. The pencil generated by $p\mathcal{K}_{Neuberg}$ and $p\mathcal{K}_{shortest}$ is the set of all the circular $p\mathcal{K}$ cubics. Their pivots are at infinity.
2. The pencil generated by $p\mathcal{K}_{McCay}$ et $p\mathcal{K}_{Neuberg}$ is the set of the $p\mathcal{K}$ cubics that goes through the $X(3)$, $X(4)$ pair. Their pivots are on the Euler line.
3. The pencil generated by $p\mathcal{K}_{McCay}$ et $p\mathcal{K}_{shortest}$ is the set of $p\mathcal{K}$ -cubics whose pivots are on the line $X(3)$, $X(523)$, i.e. the line through $X(3)$ and perpendicular to the Euler line. The common points of these cubics are on Δ (horrible formula, with a 24th degree radicand).

Exercise 21.4.32. Does it exist a cubic XXX such that :

1. XXX, K001, K003 provide a basis of the ZU cubics space
2. XXX contains "many" ETC points
3. Pencils (XXX,K001) and (XXX,K003) contain "many" known cubics
4. Lubin equation of XXX remains practicable

21.4.5 Darboux and Lucas cubics

In this section, $P \in \text{Darboux}$ and $U \in \text{Lucas}$ while pole and pivot are noted otherwise.

21.4.5.1 Presentation of K004 and K007

Definition 21.4.33. The Darboux cubic K004 is the locus of point P such that the pedal triangle of P is the Cevian triangle of some other point U , while the Lucas cubic K007 is the locus of point U such that the cevian triangle of U is the pedal triangle of some other point P .

Proposition 21.4.34. *Darboux cubic is a $p\mathcal{K}$ cubic, with $X(6)$ as pole and $X(20)$ as pivot. $X(20)$ is the de Longchamps point. Lucas cubic is a $p\mathcal{K}$ cubic, with $X(2)$ as pole and $X(69)$ as pivot. $X(69)$ is the anticomplement of $X(6)$. Their equations are :*

$$\det(X_{20}, P, \text{isog}(P)) = 0 \quad (21.7)$$

$$\det(X_{69}, U, \text{isot}(U)) = 0 \quad (21.8)$$

Moreover, K004 has a reflection center at $X(3)$, the circumcenter. Using Morley affixes and expanding, we have :

$$p\mathcal{K}_{Darboux} = -\frac{\mathbf{Z}^3}{\sigma_3} + \frac{\sigma_2}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} - \sigma_1 \mathbf{Z} \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 + \sigma_3 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^3 + \frac{\sigma_1^2 - 3\sigma_2}{\sigma_3} T^2 \mathbf{Z} + \frac{3\sigma_1 \sigma_3 - \sigma_2^2}{\sigma_3} T^2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}$$

$$p\mathcal{K}_{Lucas} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{3}{s_3} \mathbf{Z}^3 + \frac{s_2}{s_3} \mathbf{Z}^2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} - s_1 \mathbf{Z} \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 - 3s_3 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^3 - \left(\frac{s_1}{s_3} + \frac{s_2^2}{s_3^2} \right) \mathbf{Z}^2 \mathbf{T} + (s_1^2 + s_2) \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 \mathbf{T} \\ - \left(\frac{3s_1^2}{s_3} - \frac{s_1 s_2^2}{s_3^2} - \frac{4s_2}{s_3} \right) \mathbf{Z} \mathbf{T}^2 + \left(\frac{3s_2^2}{s_3} - \frac{s_1^2 s_2}{s_3} - 4s_1 \right) \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{T}^2 + \left(\frac{s_1^3}{s_3} - \frac{s_2^3}{s_3^2} \right) \mathbf{T}^3 \end{pmatrix}$$

Their common points are $A, B, C, X(4), X(20)$ and four other points.

Proof. Straightforward from (9.1) and (3.6). □

Fact 21.4.35. *The barycentric equations of these cubics can be rewritten as:*

$$\text{Darboux} = \sum_3 (2S^2 - S_b S_c) x (b^2 z^2 - c^2 y^2) ; \text{Lucas} = \sum_3 S_a x (y^2 - z^2)$$

while, as of 2019, the following points are known:

P	1	3	4	20	40	64	84	1490	1498	2130	2131	3182	3183
U	7	2	4	69	8	253	189	329	20	14362	?	5932	14361
P	3345	3346	3347	3348	3353	3354	3355	3472	3473	3637			
U	1034	1032	?	14365	?	?	?	?	?	?			

Asymptotes of the Darboux cubic are the perpendicular bisectors of the sidelines.

Proposition 21.4.38. *When angle in C is not a straight one, then $P \in \text{Darboux}$ is equivalent to the alignment of $P, \psi(P)$ with $X(20)$, while $U \in \text{Lucas}$ is equivalent to the alignment of $U, \psi^{-1}(U)$ with $X(20)$.*

Proof. Both determinants are the product of S_c by the equation of the corresponding cubic and the corresponding \mathcal{E} . When $S_c = 0$, then $X(20)$ comes at G_c and degeneracy is not a surprise. \square

Remark 21.4.39. When restricted to both cubics, ψ and ψ^{-1} define two reciprocal central transforms and doesn't depend on the choice of the special vertex.

Proposition 21.4.40. *Darboux, i.e. $pK(6, 20)$, is invariant by isog and by $\text{sym}3$, the reflection about $X(3)$, while Lucas, i.e. $pK(2, 69)$ is invariant by isot and cycl , the cyclopedal transform (as defined at Section 12.23). Moreover, $\psi^{-1} \circ \text{isot} \circ \psi = \text{sym}3$ holds over the whole plane, while $\psi^{-1} \circ \text{cycl} \circ \psi = \text{isog}$ holds when restricted to the cubics.*

Proof. When P is on Darboux, then $\text{isog}(P)$ is also on Darboux. By Section 9.3, they share the same pedal circle. Therefore, the corresponding $U \in \text{Lucas}$ are cyclocevian. The other formula is easily computed. \square

Corollary 21.4.41. *The known points on Lucas cubic can be used to build the following chains. They were emphasized in Kimberling (2002). When $P = X_3$, then $gP = X_4$, and the center of the cyclopedal circle is X_5 ; when $P = X_{20}$, this center is X_{5894} ; when $P = X_{40}$, this center is X_{1158} , etc.*

$$\begin{array}{cccccccccccc}
 \boxed{X_1} & \xrightarrow{\text{sym}3} & X_{40} & \xrightarrow{\text{isog}} & X_{84} & \xrightarrow{\text{sym}3} & X_{1490} & \xrightarrow{\text{isog}} & X_{3345} & \xrightarrow{\text{sym}3} & X_{3182} & \xrightarrow{\text{isog}} & X_{3347} \\
 1 \downarrow \psi & & \downarrow \psi & 1158 & \downarrow \psi & & \downarrow \psi & ?? & \downarrow \psi & & \downarrow \psi & & \downarrow \psi \\
 \boxed{X_7} & \xrightarrow{\text{isot}} & X_8 & \xrightarrow{\text{cycl}} & X_{189} & \xrightarrow{\text{isot}} & X_{329} & \xrightarrow{\text{cycl}} & X_{1034} & \xrightarrow{\text{isot}} & X_{5932} & \xrightarrow{\text{cycl}} & X_{???} \\
 \\
 \boxed{X_3} & \xrightarrow{\text{isog}} & X_4 & \xrightarrow{\text{sym}3} & X_{20} & \xrightarrow{\text{isog}} & X_{64} & \xrightarrow{\text{sym}3} & X_{1498} & \xrightarrow{\text{isog}} & X_{3346} & \xrightarrow{\text{sym}3} & X_{3183} \\
 \downarrow \psi & 5 & \downarrow \psi & & \downarrow \psi & 5894 & \downarrow \psi & & \downarrow \psi & ?? & \downarrow \psi & & \downarrow \psi \\
 \boxed{X_2} & \xrightarrow{\text{cycl}} & X_4 & \xrightarrow{\text{isot}} & X_{69} & \xrightarrow{\text{cycl}} & X_{253} & \xrightarrow{\text{isot}} & X_{20} & \xrightarrow{\text{cycl}} & X_{1032} & \xrightarrow{\text{isot}} & X_{14361}
 \end{array}$$

Since X_1 is fixed by isog and X_3 by $\text{sym}3$, these chains are unidirectional.

Claim 21.4.42. Let $Q = (\text{sym}3 \circ \text{isog} \circ \text{sym}3 \circ \text{isog} \circ \text{sym}3) P$. Then P is on darboux if and only if $\text{cevamul}(P, Q) = X(20)$. When P is on the branch of X_3 , so is Q (obvious).

When P is not on Darboux, ??? In any case, a simple division by polynomial (21.7) isn't sufficient.

21.4.5.2 The Orion bundle

Lemma 21.4.43. *The nine intersections of $K004$ and $K007$ are: $A, B, C, X(4) = H, X(20) = 2O - H$ and four other points called the Orion points. Their affixes are the solutions of:*

$$\begin{aligned}
 64 \mathbf{Z}^4 - 16 \left(s_1 + \frac{s_2^2}{s_3} \right) \mathbf{T} \mathbf{Z}^3 + \left(-4 s_1^4 + \frac{s_1^3 s_2^2}{s_3} + 18 s_1^2 s_2 - 4 \frac{s_1 s_2^3}{s_3} - 75 s_1 s_3 + 16 s_2^2 \right) \mathbf{T}^4 \\
 + \left(16 \frac{s_1 s_2^2}{s_3} + 64 s_2 - 48 s_1^2 \right) \mathbf{T}^2 \mathbf{Z}^2 + \left(28 s_1^3 - 7 \frac{s_1^2 s_2^2}{s_3} - 78 s_1 s_2 + 12 \frac{s_2^3}{s_3} + 125 s_3 \right) \mathbf{T}^3 \mathbf{Z}
 \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Direct elimination from the equations. \square

Definition 21.4.44. Reflect point $P \simeq p : q : r$ through the sidelines of its cevian triangle $A_P B_P C_P$. The obtained triangle is perspective with triangle ABC , and the perspector is called the **Orion transform** of P (Ehrmann, 2003). Notation and barycentrics are:

$$\mathfrak{O}(M) \simeq \begin{bmatrix} (b^2 r^2 + c^2 q^2 + 2 S_a r q) p^3 - a^2 q^2 r^2 p \\ (a^2 r^2 + c^2 p^2 + 2 S_b p r) q^3 - b^2 p^2 q r^2 \\ (a^2 q^2 + b^2 p^2 + 2 S_c p q) r^3 - c^2 p^2 q^2 r \end{bmatrix}$$

Remark 21.4.45. When M is on the sidelines, $\mathfrak{O}(M) = M$.

Example 21.4.46. One can identify the following pairs:

1	2	3	4	6	7	8	13	14	15	16	20
35	69	2055	24	2056	57	2057	11581	11582	2058	2059	2060
40	63	69	74	75	98	99	100	101	102	103	104
2061	2062	2063	10419	2064	2065	249	59	15378	15379	15380	15381
105	106	107	108	109	110	111	112	190	253	476	477
15382	15383	15384	15385	15386	250	15387	15388	4998	14572	15395	15396
523	651	675	1113	1114	1141	1292	1293	1294	1295	1296	1297
12064	7339	15397	15461	15460	15401	15402	15403	15404	15405	15406	15407

Definition 21.4.47. The A -Orion cubic K_A is the locus of points M such that $MM_a \perp M_bM_c$ where $M_aM_bM_c$ is the cevian triangle of M .

Proposition 21.4.48. For M not on the sidelines, $M \in K_A$ is equivalent to the alignment of $A, M, \mathfrak{O}(M)$. Equation of K_A is

$$K_A \simeq c^2xy^2 - b^2xz^2 + S_b y^2z - S_c yz^2$$

so that K_A goes once through B, C and twice through vertex A . Tangent at B, C are going through $T_a = 2O - A$ (on circumcircle and Darboux as well), while tangents at A are the bisectors of angle A . The 6th point on Γ is $a^2 : c^2 - b^2 : b^2 - c^2$, the 3rd one on BC is $0 : S_c : S_b$ (the foot of the A -altitude).

Proof. Direct computation, using the gradient (at B, C) and the hessian (at A). □

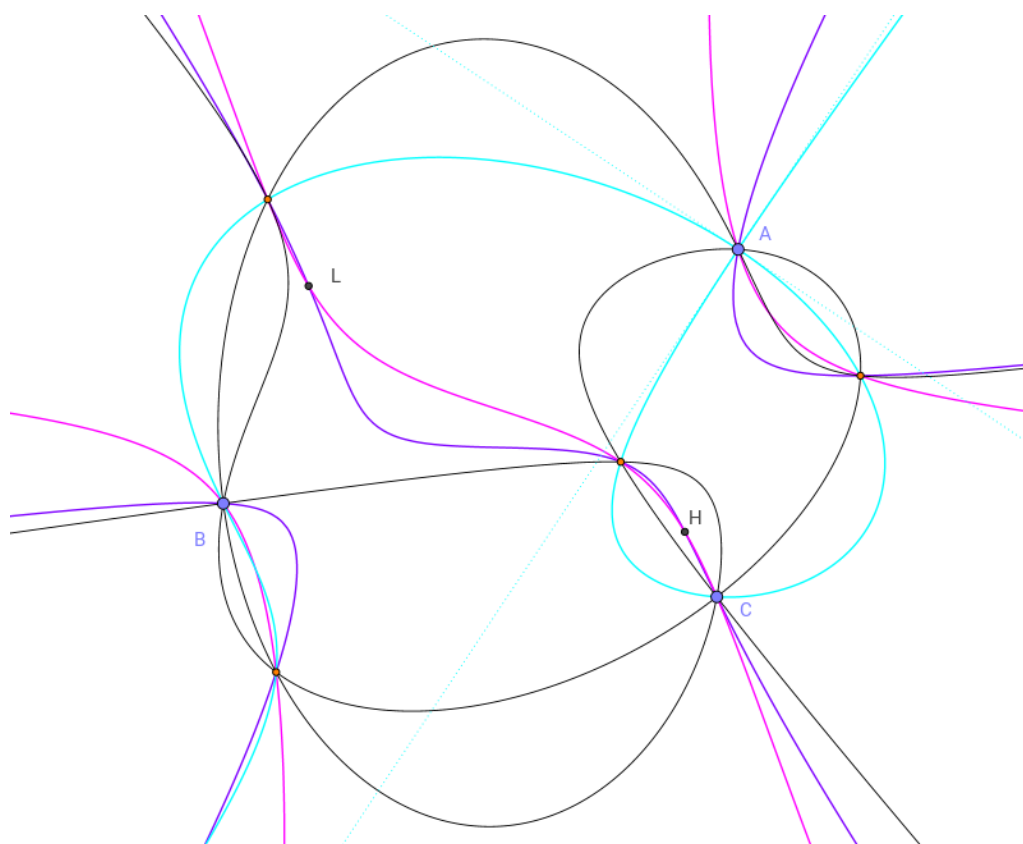


Figure 21.5: The Orion points

Proposition 21.4.49. *The four Orion points are the only ones which are the orthocenter of their cevian triangle. Moreover, the three Orion cubics K_A, K_B, K_C generate the bundle of all the cubics through the 3 vertices and the 4 Orion points.*

Proof. Since B counts twice on K_B , it counts also twice in $K_B \cap K_C$. The same with C , while A counts for one. Thus it remains four other common points. For each of them, M is on two altitudes of $M_a M_b M_c$ and therefore belongs to the third one, so that $M \in K_A$. Therefore the cevian and the pedal triangle of M are equal, and M is on both K004 and K007. Moreover, neither X(4) nor X(20) are the orthocenter of their cevian triangle. \square

Proposition 21.4.50. *Let $P \simeq p : q : r$ be a fixed point. When M is not on the sidelines, the alignment of $P, M, \mathfrak{D}(M)$ is equivalent to $M \in K_P$ where K_P is defined by $K_P \doteq p K_A + q K_B + r K_C$.*

Proof. Determinant is linear wrt any column. Moreover, one can check that

$$\begin{aligned} lucas &= K006 = K_A + K_B + K_C & i.e. P &= X(2) \\ darbox &= K004 = a^2 S_a K_A + b^2 S_b K_B + c^2 S_c K_C & i.e. P &= X(\mathfrak{J}) \end{aligned}$$

Proposition 21.4.51. *When P is on the Thomson cubic, then K_P is a $pK(F, U)$ cubic and we have*

$$F^2 \simeq \text{cevdiv}(G, P) \simeq \begin{pmatrix} (q+r-p)p \\ (r+p-q)q \\ (p+q-r)r \end{pmatrix} ; U \simeq \text{anticomplem} P^* \simeq \begin{pmatrix} b^2 r p + c^2 p q - a^2 q r \\ c^2 p q + a^2 q r - b^2 r p \\ a^2 q r + b^2 r p - c^2 p q \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. $P \in K002$ comes from elimination. Then symmetric formula for $\hat{P} = F^2$ and U can be checked modulo $K002$. \square

Example 21.4.52. Here are some of the K_p cubics.

P	F^2	U	Kxxx	name
X(1)	X(9)	X(8)	K199	
X(2)	X(2)	X(69)	K007	Lucas
X(3)	X(6)	X(20)	K004	Darboux
X(6)	X(3)	X(2)	K168	

Proposition 21.4.53. *Consider the six conics*

$$\begin{aligned} f_a(x, y, z) &= b^2 y^2 - c^2 z^2 + x(S_c y - S_b z), \text{ etc} \\ g_a(x, y, z) &= a^2(c^2 y^2 - b^2 z^2) + x(c^2 S_c y - b^2 S_b z), \text{ etc} \end{aligned}$$

Then the f_j are going through the isotomic conjugates of the Orion points while the g_j are going through their isogonal conjugates

Proof. Since A is double in K_A , then $x^2 y z$ comes in factor at both $\text{isotom} K_A$ and $\text{isogon} K_A$. \square

21.4.6 Equal areas (second) cevian cubic aka K155

Definition 21.4.54. Cubic shadow. Triangle centers on a cubic \mathcal{K} yield non-central points on the cubic; e.g., if Q_1 and Q_2 are on \mathcal{K} , then the line $Q_1 Q_2$ meets \mathcal{K} in a "third" point, $L(Q_1, Q_2)$, possibly Q_1 or Q_2 . If $A'B'C'$ is a central triangle (cf Section 2.2), R a triangle center, $A'' = L(R, A')$ and cyclically, then triangle $A''B''C''$ is a central triangle on \mathcal{K} .

Definition 21.4.55. Cubic EAC2, the equal areas (second) cevian cubic is K155 in Gibert (2004-2024). This cubic is $pK(X_{31}, X_{238})$, i.e self-isoconjugate wrt $P = X_{31} = a^3 : b^3 : c^3$ and pivotal wrt $U = X_{238} = a^3 - abc : b^3 - abc : c^3 - abc$.

Proposition 21.4.56. *It happens that $P \in EAC2$. When a point Q is on EAC2, its isoconjugate Q_P^* aka $X_{31} \div_b Q$ is on EAC2 too. In the following table, for each (I, J) , the centers $X(I)$ and $X(J)$ are on EAC2 and are an isoconjugate pair. Each pair is collinear with the pivot $X(238)$.*

R	A'	A''	B''
$a^{3/2}$	A	$-a^{3/2}$	$b^{3/2}$
$X(2)$	A	$-a^2$	bc
$X(238)$	$-a^2 : bc :$	$-abc$	b^3
$X(31)$	A	$-abc$	b^3
$X(1)$	A	$-a^2(a+b+c)$	$b(bc+ca+ab)$
$X(238)$	upright	$-a(bc+ca+ab)$	$b^2(a+b+c)$
$X(6)$	A	$-a(bc+ca+ab)$	$b^2(a+b+c)$
$X(6)$	$-a^2 : bc :$	$a^2(a+b+c)$	$b(a^2+b^2-c(a+b))$
$X(1)$	$-abc : b^3 :$	$a^2(bc+ca+ab)$	$(c-b)a^2b+b^3(c-a)$
$X(31)$	$-a^2 : bc :$	$2a^2(b^2+ca)(c^2+ab)$ $b(b^2+ca)(a^3+b^3-c^3-abc)$	
$X(1)$	$-a^2 : bc :$	$a(a+b)(c+a)(a^2+b^2+c^2+bc+ca+ab)$ $b^2(c+a)(a^2+b^2+ab-c(a+b+c))$	
$X(2)$	$-abc : b^3 :$	$2a^3bc(b^2+ca)(c^2+ab)$ $(b^2+ca)(b^4c^3+a^3bc^3-a^3b^4-b^3a^2c^2)$	
$X(6)$	$-abc : b^3 :$	$a(a+b)(c+a)((c^2+bc+b^2)a^2+bc(b+c)a+b^2c^2)$ $b^2(c+a)((c^2-bc-b^2)a^2+abc(-b+c)+b^2c^2)$	

Table 21.2: Some cubic shadows on EAC2

$$\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 2 & 105 & 238 & 365 & 1423 & 1931 \\ 6 & 31 & 672 & 292 & 365 & 2053 & 2054 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2106 & 2108 & 2110 & 2112 & 2114 & 2116 & 2118 & 2144 & 2146 \\ 2107 & 2109 & 2111 & 2113 & 2115 & 2117 & 2119 & 2145 & 2147 \end{bmatrix}$$

Table 21.2 gives some cubic shadows on EAC2. Column 1 gives the perspector $R \in \mathcal{K}$. Column 2 gives $A' \in \mathcal{K}$, the A vertex of the original triangle. Columns 3 and 4 give $A'' \in \mathcal{K}$, the A vertex of the shadow triangle. When expressions are growing, these coordinates are given in two rows. For example, in row 1, the perspector is the centroid, the original triangle is ABC itself and $A'' = -a^2 : bc : bc$, the third coordinate being obtained by swapping b and c . Points X_2 , $A' = A$ and A'' are collinear. Obviously, $(A'')^*_P$, $(B'')^*_P$, $(C'')^*_P$, is another central triangle inscribed in \mathcal{K} .

21.4.7 The cubic K060

Proposition 21.4.57. *Let A' , B' , C' be the reflections of a point M into the sidelines BC , CA , AB . When triangle $A'B'C'$ is perspective with ABC , point M lies on the Neuberg cubic K001, while the resulting perspector N lies on another cubic (K060).*

Proof. The matrix of the reflection into the sideline BC is :

$$\boxed{\sigma_A} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} -a^2 & 0 & 0 \\ a^2 + b^2 - c^2 & a^2 & 0 \\ a^2 - b^2 + c^2 & 0 & a^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Start from $M = p : q : r$. Compute $A' = \sigma_A(M)$, etc and obtain :

$$A'B'C' \simeq \begin{pmatrix} -pa^2 & (a^2 + b^2 - c^2)q + pb^2 & (a^2 - b^2 + c^2)r + pc^2 \\ (a^2 + b^2 - c^2)p + a^2q & -qb^2 & (b^2 + c^2 - a^2)r + qc^2 \\ (a^2 - b^2 + c^2)p + a^2r & (b^2 + c^2 - a^2)q + b^2r & -rc^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Then $\det(AA', BB', CC')$ is computed and identified with $K001$. Now, start from $N = u : v : w$. Compute $\delta_A = \sigma_A(AN) = (A \wedge N) \cdot [\sigma_A]^{-1}$, etc and obtain :

$$\begin{pmatrix} \delta_A \\ \delta_B \\ \delta_C \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 2vS_b - 2wS_c & -wa^2 & va^2 \\ wb^2 & 2wS_c - 2uS_a & -ub^2 \\ -vc^2 & uc^2 & 2uS_a - 2vS_b \end{pmatrix}$$

Then $\det(\delta_A, \delta_B, \delta_C)$ is computed, and we obtain yet another pK cubic, defined as K060. \square

Proposition 21.4.58. K060, the $pK(1989, 265)$ cubic. *The pole P , the pivot U and the Morley equations of this cubic are respectively :*

$$P = \frac{1}{b^2c^2 - 4S_a^2} \text{ etc} \quad ; \quad z_P = \frac{\sigma_1^3\sigma_2^2 - \sigma_1\sigma_2^3 - (4\sigma_1^4 - 9\sigma_1^2\sigma_2 + 9\sigma_2^2)\sigma_3}{3\sigma_1^2\sigma_2^2 - 6\sigma_2^3 + (9\sigma_1\sigma_2 - 6\sigma_1^3)\sigma_3}$$

$$U = \frac{S_a}{b^2c^2 - 4S_a^2} : \frac{S_b}{a^2c^2 - 4S_b^2} : \frac{S_c}{a^2b^2 - 4S_c^2} \quad ; \quad z_U = \frac{\sigma_1^2 - \sigma_2}{\sigma_1}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} \left(\frac{s_2}{s_3} \mathbf{Z}^2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} - s_1 \mathbf{Z} \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 + \left(\frac{2s_1}{s_3} - \frac{s_2^2}{s_3^2} \right) \mathbf{T} \mathbf{Z}^2 + (s_1^2 - 2s_2) \mathbf{T} \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 + \right. \\ \left. \left(\frac{s_2 - 3s_1^2}{s_3} + \frac{s_2^2 s_1}{s_3^2} \right) \mathbf{T}^2 \mathbf{Z} + \left(\frac{3s_2^2 - s_1^2 s_2}{s_3} - s_1 \right) \mathbf{T}^2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} + \left(\frac{s_1^3}{s_3} - \frac{s_2^3}{s_3^2} \right) \mathbf{T}^3 \right) \end{pmatrix}$$

Both umbilics belong to the curve. The corresponding asymptotes intersect at $X(3448)$. The real asymptote :

$$[\sigma_1\sigma_2^2, 2\sigma_3\sigma_1^3 - 2\sigma_2^3, -\sigma_1^2\sigma_2\sigma_3]$$

is parallel to the Euler line. The sixth intersection with the circumcircle is $X(1141)$.

Proof. Direct inspection. \square

D on K001, F=isogD on K001

$$\begin{aligned} Nd &= \text{antig}(D) = (\text{isg} \circ \text{inv} \circ \text{isg})(D) \\ Nf &= \text{antig}(F) = (\text{isg} \circ \text{inv})(D) \end{aligned}$$

21.4.8 Eigentransform

Definition 21.4.59. The mapping $U \mapsto \text{cevadiv}(U, U_F^\#)$ is called eigentransform of U wrt pole $P = F^2$. In ETC, $F = X(1)$, i.e. $P = X(6)$, is assumed, and notation $ET(U)$ is used. Here, the same notation is used, but isogonal conjugacy isn't assumed.

Example 21.4.60. Assuming $P = X(6)$, pairs (I,J) such that $X(J) = ET(X(I))$ include :

1	1	13	62	81	3293	174	266	664	2082	1156	1
2	3	14	61	86	3294	190	1	673	1	1492	1
3	1075	19	2128	88	1	512	2142	694	384	1821	1
4	155	20	2130	92	47	648	185	771	1	1942	1941
5	2120	30	2132	94	49	651	1	799	1		
6	194	37	2134	99	39	653	1	811	2083		
7	218	57	2136	100	1	655	1	823	1		
8	2122	63	1712	101	2140	658	1	897	1		
9	2124	69	2138	110	5	660	1	1113	3		
10	2126	75	2172	162	1	662	1	1114	3		

Proposition 21.4.61. *For any point U not on a sideline of triangle ABC , the following properties of eigentransform are easy to verify :*

1. The barycentrics of $ET(U)$ are (cyclically) :

$$vwf^2(u^2v^2h^2 + u^2w^2g^2 - v^2w^2f^2)$$

2. $ET(U)$ is the eigencenter of the cevian triangle of U as well as the eigencenter of the anticevian triangle of U_P^* .

3. $ET(U) = F \doteq f : g : h$ (fixed point of the isoconjugacy) if and only if $U = F$ or U lies on the $CC(F)$ circumellipse. When $P = X(6)$, then $F = X(1)$ and this locus is the Steiner circumellipse: $yz + zx + xy = 0$.

4. Points U , $ET(U)$ and $(ET(U))_F^\#$ are collinear points of the cubic $p\mathcal{K}(P, U)$.

5. Points F , $ET(U)$ and $(cevdiv(U, F))_F^\#$ are collinear. The last point is also on the cubic.

6. $ET(U)$ is the tangential of U_F^* .

21.5 Non pivotal isocubics $n\mathcal{K}(P, U, k)$ and $n\mathcal{K}0(P, U)$

Definition 21.5.1. The non pivotal isocubic with pole P , root U and parameter k is defined by the equation :

$$n\mathcal{K}(P, U, k) \doteq ux(y^2r + qz^2) + vy(z^2p + rx^2) + wz(qx^2 + py^2) + kxyz \quad (21.11)$$

When $k = 0$, the cubic is noted $n\mathcal{K}0(P, U)$.

Remark 21.5.2. The more efficient method for specifying k is to indicate a point that belongs to the cubic. This is noted $n\mathcal{K}(P, U, X)$.

Proposition 21.5.3. The "third intersections" of a $n\mathcal{K}(P, U, k)$ with the sidelines are the coccevians of the root U . Therefore, they are aligned. This is to be compared with the fact that, for a $p\mathcal{K}$ cubic, these points are the cevians of the pivot.

Proof. Direct inspection. □

Remark 21.5.4. In the general case, a $n\mathcal{K}0(P, U)$ contains neither P nor U nor any of the four fixed points F of the conjugacy.

Definition 21.5.5. We define the F -**crosssum** of two points $U = u : v : w$ and $X = x : y : z$ that aren't lying on a sideline of ABC as :

$$\text{crosssum}_F(U, X) = f^2(wy + vz) : g^2(uz + wx) : h^2(vx + uy)$$

Remark 21.5.6. In ETC, $F = X(1)$ is assumed. Defined as above, the operation $(F, U, X) \mapsto \text{crosssum}_F(U, X)$ is globally type-keeping and provides a point when the entries are points (F is any of the four fixed point of the conjugacy $X \mapsto X_P^*$).

Definition 21.5.7. The $NK_P(X)$ point is the pole of the line XX_P^* with respect to the circumconic that passes through X and X_P^* (Bernard Gibert, 2003/10/1). Using barycentrics and $P = p : q : r = f^2 : g^2 : h^2$, we have :

$$\begin{aligned} NK_P(X) &= px(ry^2 + qz^2) : qy(pz^2 + rx^2) : rz(qx^2 + py^2) \\ &= \text{crosssum}_F(X, X_P^*) = \text{crossmul}(X, X_P^*) = (\text{cevdiv}(X, X_P^*))_P^* \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Direct computation. □

Remark 21.5.8. Here, X_P^* is the perspecter of the cevian triangle of $NK_P(X)$ and the anticevian triangle of X .

Example 21.5.9. Using $F = X(1)$, i.e. $P = X(6)$, we have $NK(X(I)) = X(J)$ for these (I, J) :

I	1	2	3	4	6	9	19	31	57	63
J	1	39	185	185	39	2082	2083	2085	2082	2083

Proposition 21.5.10. *When $NK_P(X)$ belongs to the tripolar line of U_P^* , then point X belongs to the cubic $nK0(P, U)$.*

Proof. Direct computation. In [Kimberling \(1998, p. 240\)](#), notation $Z + (XY)$ is used to denote the $nK0(\#1, U)$ cubic where the pole U is the isogonal of the tripole of line XY . Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} Z^+(X_1X_6) &= nK0(\#1, 513) \\ Z^+(X_3X_6) &= nK0(\#1, 523) \\ Z^+(X_1X_2) &= nK0(\#1, 649) \\ Z^+(X_1X_3) &= nK0(\#1, 650) \end{aligned}$$

□

21.5.1 vanRees cubic

Remark 21.5.11. vanRees cubics are studied in detail at Section 27.11. Seen from triangle ABC , they are described by

$$\left[nkcub, \#F \simeq \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{bmatrix}, U \simeq \begin{bmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{bmatrix}, \hat{X} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} q-r \\ r-p \\ p-q \end{bmatrix} \right]$$

Remember: $\#F=X(1)$ means $P=X(6)$, while \hat{X} is a point on the cubic, only intended to define the coefficient of xyz in the equation.

21.5.2 Conicopivotal isocubics $cK(\#F, U)$

Definition 21.5.12. A conico-pivotal isocubic $cK(\#F, U)$ ([Ehrmann and Gibert, 2005](#)) is a non pivotal isocubic $nK(P, U, k)$ that contains one of the fixed points of the isoconjugacy ($F \neq U$ is assumed). When using $F = f : g : h$ instead of $P = p : q : r = f^2 : g^2 : h^2$, $k = -2(ghu + fhv + fgw)$, the equation becomes :

$$x(gz - hy)^2u + y(fz - hx)^2v + z(fy - gx)^2w = 0 \quad (21.12)$$

Proposition 21.5.13. *The pivotal conic is defined as the conic \mathcal{C} tangent to the six lines $F_B F_C$, AA'_U and cyclically where $F_A F_B F_C$ are the anticevian of F and $A'_U B'_U C'_U$ the cocevian of U . Then the dual conic of \mathcal{C} is conicev $(1/F, 1/U)$ and \mathcal{C} itself has equation :*

$$\sum_{cyclic} (gw - hv)^2 x^2 - 2(gu^2 h + 3f(gw + vh)u + f^2 vw)zy = 0$$

Proof. We have the equations :

$$\begin{aligned} (F_B F_C) &= F_B \wedge F_C = \begin{pmatrix} f \\ -g \\ h \end{pmatrix} \wedge \begin{pmatrix} f \\ g \\ -h \end{pmatrix} = [0, 2fh, 2fg] = \left[0, \frac{1}{g}, \frac{1}{h}\right] \\ AA'_U &= U_B U_C = \left[0, \frac{1}{v}, \frac{1}{w}\right] \end{aligned}$$

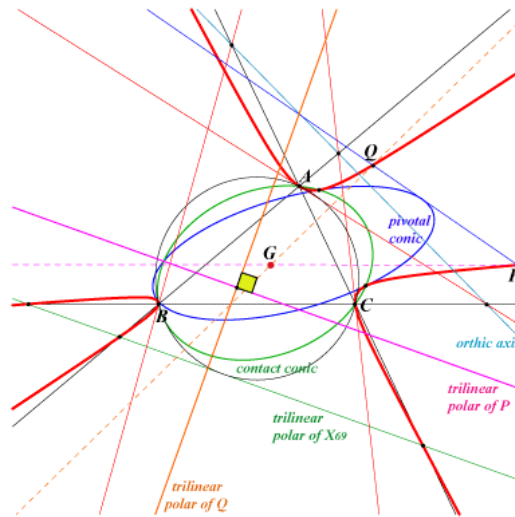
The equation of \mathcal{C} follows by duality. Barycentrics of the center are $2fu - (v+w)f - (g+h)u$, etc. □

Proposition 21.5.14. *The contact conic (K) is defined as the circumconic whose perspector is*

$$K \simeq \left(2\frac{f}{u} + \frac{g}{v} + \frac{h}{w}\right)f, \text{ etc}$$

Assuming $F \neq U$, three of the intersections of the pivotal and contact conics are the three contacts of cK with \mathcal{C} , the fourth point being :

$$T_4 \simeq \left(2\frac{f}{u} + \frac{g}{v} + \frac{h}{w}\right) \div (gw - vh), \text{ etc}$$



Centroid $G = X_2$ is isolated, but belongs nevertheless to the cubic.

Figure 21.6: The Simson cubic (as depicted in Gibert-CTP)

Proof. Eliminate z between (K) and \mathcal{C} . Obtain $P_1(x, y)$ $P_3(x, y)$, where degrees are respectively 1 and 3. Solving for P_1 gives directly T_4 . Eliminate z between cK and \mathcal{C} . This leads again to P_3 , proving that each common point is a contact and belongs also to (K) . \square

Example 21.5.15. A special case is obtained when $U = F$, i.e. when the root is a fixed point of the isoconjugacy. Then $\mathcal{C} = (K)$ is a circumconic. The Tucker cubic K015 is obtained with $F = X(2)$, while K228 is obtained with $F = X(1)$ and K229 is obtained with $F = X(6)$.

21.5.3 Simson cubic, aka K010

Notation 21.5.16. In this section, the involved pole is the centroid, so that $X^* = isot(X)$. Due to the nature of the cubic, the key point is $F = X_2$ (involved as fixed point) rather than $P = X_2$ (involved as pole). Therefore, letter P has been used not to describe the pole, but the independent moving point of various parametrization.

Definition 21.5.17. The **Simson cubic** is the locus of the tripoles of the Simson lines. Depicted as K010 (cf. Figure 21.6) in Gibert (2004-2024). Founding paper is Ehrmann and Gibert (2001).

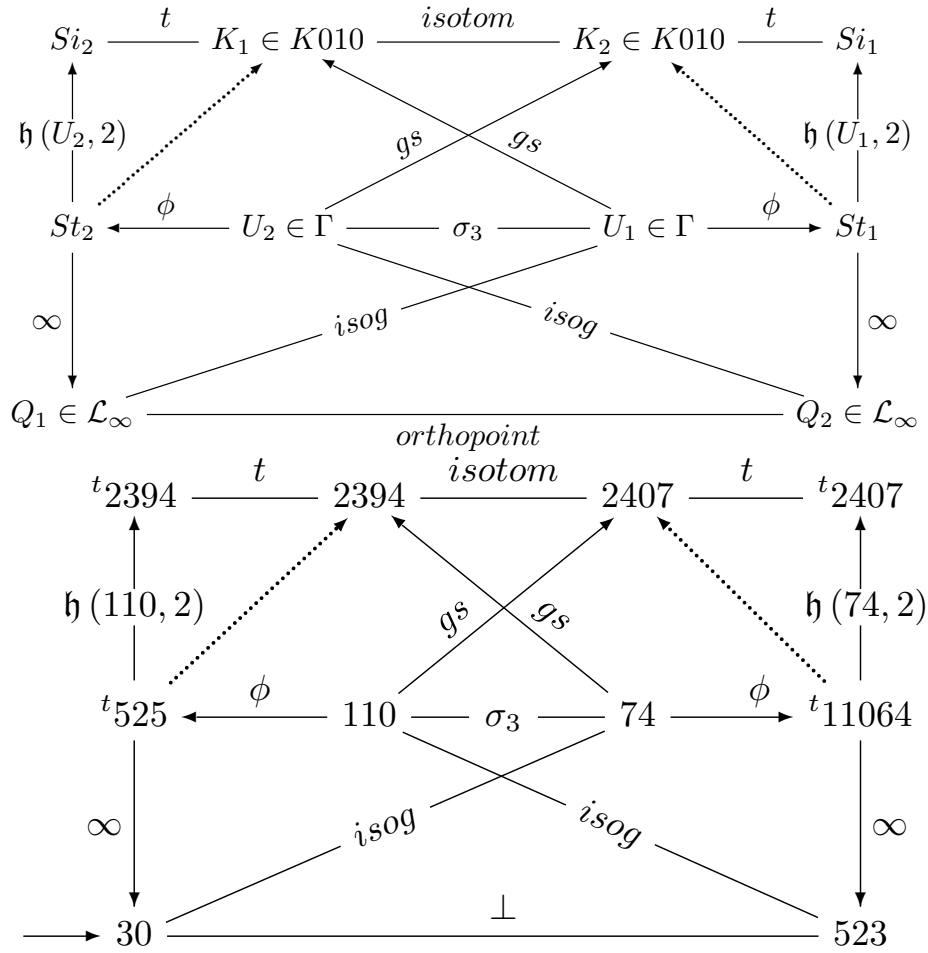
Proposition 21.5.18. The Simson cubic (K010) is $nK(\#X_2, X_{69}, X_2)$ shortened into $cK(\#X_2, X_{69})$. The Simson line of any point $Q \in \mathcal{L}_\infty$ is \mathcal{L}_∞ itself. Therefore, the centroid $G = X_2$ belongs to K010. Otherwise, we have:

$$Q_t \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ t \\ -1-t \end{pmatrix} ; U_t \simeq \begin{pmatrix} a^2 \\ b^2/t \\ -c^2 \div (1+t) \end{pmatrix} ; P_t \simeq \begin{pmatrix} a^2t + S_c \\ -(S_ct + b^2) \div t \\ (S_bt - S_a) \div (1+t) \end{pmatrix}$$

where $Q \in \mathcal{L}_\infty$, $U \in \Gamma$, $P \in K010$

Proof. Parametrization is obvious. Then intersections with the sidelines suggest $\hat{U} = 69$ while $isotom(P_t) = P_s$ where $s = -(S_ct + b^2) \div (a^2t + S_c)$. Once found, a verification is easy. \square

Example 21.5.19. Figure 21.7. Start from $Q_1 = X_{30} \in \mathcal{L}_b$ by using (7.16), then obtain $U_1 = X_{74} \in \Gamma$ by using isogonal conjugacy. The Steiner line St_1 happens to be ${}^tX_{11064}$ while the Simson line Si_1 of U_1 is ${}^tX_{2407}$. The trilinear pole of this line, i.e. $X_{2394} = K_1 \in K010$, can be obtained by $isot \circ ({}^t)$ from Si_1 or by gs from U_1 and also directly from P (the dotted line) using parametrization (27.3).



where $\phi(U) = {}^t isog(U *_b X_4)$ and $\infty(L) = L \wedge \mathcal{L}_\infty$

Figure 21.7: The Simson diagram

Definition 21.5.20. Cubic K162 is the isogonal transform of the Simson cubic (that can also be obtained by $Q \mapsto Q \div_b X_6$). Therefore, K162 is $cK(\#X_6, X_3)$.

Proposition 21.5.21. The *Gibert-Simson transform*, defined as

$$GS(u : v : w) \doteq \text{cyclic} \left[\left(\frac{b^2 (c^2 + a^2 - b^2)}{va^2} - \frac{c^2 (a^2 + b^2 - c^2)}{a^2 w} \right) u \right]$$

sends any $U \in \Gamma$ onto a point on the Simson cubic. This definition was introduced in ETC on 2003/10/19, leading to points $X(2394) - X(2419)$ on the Simson cubic and points $X(2420) - X(2445)$ –their isoconjugates– on K162.

Remark 21.5.22. Seen as a general transform of the whole plane, GS^{-1} involves the sqrt root of xyz times the tripolar of $X(69)$. Regarding triangle centers that do not lie on the circumcircle, $GS(X(I)) = X(J)$ for these (I,J): (32,669), (48,1459), (187,1649), (248,879), (485,850), (486,850). Of course, other realizations of $U \mapsto P$ give other results. Here again, only parametrization (27.3) ensures uniqueness.

Proposition 21.5.23 (Fools' Day Theorem). Direct arrows $U_1 \mapsto K_2$ and $U_2 \mapsto K_1$ have a geometrical meaning : $(gs(U))^*$ is the eigencenter of the pedal triangle of U .

Proof. Point K_2 has no other choice : he *is* the unary cofactor of the pedal triangle of U , and therefore the perspector of this triangle with anything else. \square

Proposition 21.5.24. *The barycentric equation of the Simson cubic is*

$$\sum_{cyclic} x(z^2 + y^2)(b^2 + c^2 - a^2) - 2(a^2 + b^2 + c^2)xyz \quad (21.13)$$

In other words, the Simson cubic is $n\mathcal{K}(X_2, X_{69}, \#X_{2394})$. Moreover, one of the fixed points (namely $G = X_2$) belongs to the cubic and the Simson cubic is in fact $c\mathcal{K}(\#X_2, X_{69})$.

Proof. Obtained from the parametric representation. The converse property is more easily obtained from next coming proposition. \square

Definition 21.5.25. Special points wrt K010. Points on sidelines of triangle ABC or of antimedial triangle, together with the centroid are said to be special wrt K010 (because quite every "general" formula turns wrong when dealing with these points).

Proposition 21.5.26. *Among the special points, the following are the sole and only elements of K010 :*

- (i) *then centroid itself (fixed point under isoconjugacy)*
- (ii) *the vertices of triangle ABC , the cevians of X_{69} (the root) and points $b+c : b-c : c-b$ or $b-c : b+c : -b-c$ and cyclically.*

Proof. Direct inspection. \square

Proposition 21.5.27. *When point X is on the Simson cubic but not G, A, B, C then :*

- (i) *the trilinear polars of X and X^* are perpendicular*
 - (ii) *the trilinear polars of X and X^* are concurrent on the nine-point circle*
- Conversely, when X is not special and either property holds, then X is on the cubic.*

Proof. When X is on the Simson cubic, $\text{tripolar}(X)$ is a Simson line and conclusion follows from $\text{tripolar} = {}^t\text{isot}$. Conversely, if (i) then points ${}^tX^* \wedge \mathcal{L}_b$ and ${}^tX \wedge \mathcal{L}_b$ are the infinity points of both tripolars. They have to be the orthopoint of each other, and (21.13) is re-obtained by elimination. If (ii) then dividing $\text{nineq}(X \wedge X^*)$ by (21.13), leads to $\prod (y+z)/x^2$. When X is on a sideline of ABC , conjugacy is no more defined, and when $y+z=0$ (implying X on the sidelines of the antimedial triangle) then $X \wedge X^*$ is ever $0 : 1 : 1$. Outside of these six lines, both conditions are equivalent. \square

21.5.4 Brocard second cubic aka K018

Definition 21.5.28. The Brocard second cubic is inventoried as K018 in (Gibert, 2004-2024). This cubic is $n\mathcal{K}0(X_6, X_{523})$. It is a circular isogonal focal nK cubic with root $X(523)$ and singular focus $X(111)$. The real asymptote is parallel to GK. It is also the orthopivotal cubic $O(X_6)$ and $Z+(L)$ with $L = X(3)X(6)$ in TCCT p.241. See also $Z+(O) = \text{CL025}$ and CL034 .

Proposition 21.5.29. *The barycentric equation of K018 is :*

$$\sum_{cyclic} x(b^2z^2 + y^2c^2)(b^2 - c^2) = 0 \quad (21.14)$$

Chapter 22

Tripolar curves

Definition 22.0.1. Given three fixed distinct points E, F, G , and three real numbers u, v, w , "this branch of a tripolar curve" $\mathcal{W}(u, v, w)$ is the locus of points M such that :

$$u |EM| + v |FM| + w |GM| = 0$$

On the contrary, the corresponding algebraic tripolar curve is the locus of points M such that

$$\pm u |EM| \pm v |FM| \pm w |GM| = 0 \quad (22.1)$$

Remark 22.0.2. When one of the u, v, w vanishes, a tripolar curve degenerates into an ordinary conic (this is excluded in what follows).

Notation 22.0.3. In this chapter, quantities $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta$ are related to points E, F, G, H , while u, v, w are some multipliers. Quantities S, S_u, S_v, S_w are related to these multipliers u, v, w . They mimic the usual area and Conway symbols. In other words,

$$S_Q^2 = \frac{1}{16} (u + v + w) (-u + v + w) (u - v + w) (u + v - w), \quad S_u = \frac{1}{2} (v^2 + w^2 - u^2)$$

On the contrary, symmetric functions are related to $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta$. In other words,

$$q_1 \doteq \sum_4 \alpha; \quad q_2 = \sum_6 \alpha\beta; \quad q_3 = \sum_4 \alpha\beta\gamma; \quad q_4 = \alpha\beta\gamma\delta \quad (22.2)$$

Remark 22.0.4. Section Section 22.1 provides some background by studying the whole space of the bicircular quartics. Then a section describes how to use Maple and Geogebra to draw the tripolar curves. A later section gives some further properties of these curves.

22.1 The bicircular space

Definition 22.1.1. A general quartic q requires $5+4+3+2+1=15$ coefficients. When q is singular at each umbilic, its gradient has to vanish there, so that

$$q_{40} = q_{31} = q_{30} = q_{03} = q_{13} = q_{04} = 0$$

The set of all bicircular quartics is therefore a copy of $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^9)$. In this chapter, "quartic" is assumed everywhere, and this space will simply be depicted as "the bicircular space $\mathbb{P}(\mathcal{Q})$ " (see [Werner, 2012](#), p.86)).

Proposition 22.1.2. The equation of any curve $q \in \mathbb{P}(\mathcal{Q})$ can be written in the following matrix form:

$$q(M) \doteq \begin{pmatrix} \overline{\mathbf{Z}}^2 \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}}\mathbf{T} \\ \mathbf{T}^2 \end{pmatrix}^t \cdot \begin{bmatrix} q_{22} & q_{21} & q_{20} \\ q_{12} & q_{11} & q_{10} \\ q_{02} & q_{01} & q_{00} \end{bmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z}^2 \\ \mathbf{Z}\mathbf{T} \\ \mathbf{T}^2 \end{pmatrix} = 0$$

Therefore, any homography H acting over the points of $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$ according to

$$(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) \mapsto \left(\frac{\mathbf{a}\mathbf{Z} + \mathbf{b}\mathbf{T}}{\mathbf{c}\mathbf{Z} + \mathbf{d}\mathbf{T}} : 1 : \frac{\mathbf{a}'\overline{\mathbf{Z}} + \mathbf{b}'\mathbf{T}}{\mathbf{c}'\overline{\mathbf{Z}} + \mathbf{d}'\mathbf{T}} \right)$$

induces an action which is linear over the bicircular space $\mathbb{P}(\mathcal{Q})$ according to

$$[q] \mapsto \begin{bmatrix} d'^2 & -c'd' & c'^2 \\ -2b'd' & a'd' + b'c' & -2a'c' \\ b'^2 & -a'b' & a'^2 \end{bmatrix} \cdot [q] \cdot \begin{bmatrix} d^2 & -2bd & b^2 \\ -cd & ad + bc & -ab \\ c^2 & -2ac & a^2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Proof. Obvious from the definitions. \square

Proposition 22.1.3. *The bicircular quartic q admit four singular foci, namely*

$$\frac{-q_{21} \pm \sqrt{q_{21}^2 - 4q_{22}q_{20}}}{2q_{22}} : 1 : \frac{-q_{12} \pm \sqrt{q_{12}^2 - 4q_{22}q_{02}}}{2q_{22}}$$

Proof. Direct computation: cut by $M\Omega_x$, factor, substitute $\mathbf{T} = 0, \mathbf{Z} = 1$ and equate to 0. \square

Proposition 22.1.4. *Among the elements of $\mathbb{P}(\mathcal{Q})$, we have (1) the union (=product) of two cycles ; (2) the image of any conic by an homography.*

Proof. Direct computation \square

Proposition 22.1.5. *Whatever could be meaning of \sqrt{ux} , etc, then the three terms relation (TTR)*

$$\sqrt{ux} + \sqrt{vy} + \sqrt{wz} = 0 \quad (22.3)$$

can be rewritten as:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{TTR} &\iff u^2x^2 + v^2y^2 + w^2z^2 - 2(uvxy + vwyz + wuzx) = 0 \\ &\iff [x, y, z] \cdot \begin{bmatrix} u^2 & -uv & -uw \\ -uv & v^2 & -vw \\ -uw & -vw & w^2 \end{bmatrix} \cdot {}^t[x, y, z] = 0 \end{aligned}$$

1. When x, y, z are the coordinates of a line wrt the reference trigone, the TTR describes a tangential conic \mathfrak{C}^* . The associated punctual conic is the circumscribed conic

$$\mathfrak{C} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & w & v \\ w & 0 & u \\ v & u & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

2. When x, y, z are circles' equations, one obtains the equation of a quartic $[Q]$. And this quartic is bitangent to each of these circles.

Proof. Direct computation. \square

Proposition 22.1.6. *Assume that u, v, w be three coefficients and $C_j, j = 1..3$ be three circles, with centers z_j and radiuses r_j . This defines a common orthogonal cycle C_0 , and a z_j -circumscribed conic \mathfrak{C} . A moving point $P \in \mathfrak{C}$ defines a circle C_P orthogonal to C_0 . Then, the envelope of the circles C_P is the bicircular quartic $[Q]$ of the just above proposition.*

Proof. The usual property of the envelopes !(Casey, 1871, §5, p.459) \square

Example 22.1.7. All the three sub-figures of Figure 22.1 have been drawn with $z_1 = -2 - 3i$, $z_2 = 2 + 3i$, $z_3 = 3 - i$ and $u = 5, v = 6, w = 11$ Thus, they share the same focal conic. But using 1, 2, 1, resp 3, 2, 1 and 3, 2, 3 as radiuses lead to different orthogonal circles. As a result, there are resp. four, none and two visible intersections of \mathfrak{C} with C_0 . are visible on the top. A not visible point is alluded with its $\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T}$ part, noted F'_j . Then a "true" intersection is $F_{34} \simeq F'_3 : 1 : \overline{F'_4}$, etc (on the C_0 circle), while F'_3 and F'_4 are inverse in the focal circle.

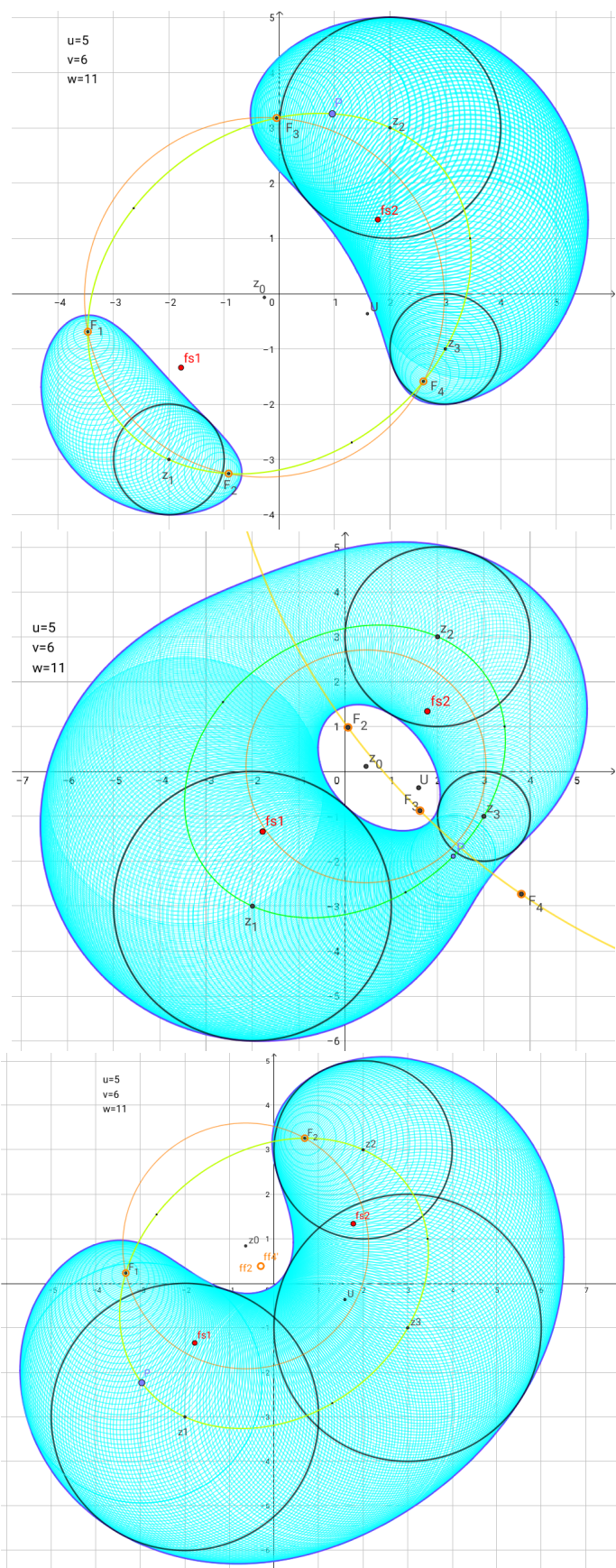


Figure 22.1: Does the focal conic intersect the orthogonal circle?

Proposition 22.1.8. *The four intersections of the focal conic and the orthogonal cycle, visible or not, are four of the 16 foci of the quartic. (Casey, 1871, §16, p.464) On the other hand, the foci of the focal conic are the singular foci of the quartic.*

Proof. (1) Each of these intersections define a null circle which is bitangent to the curve. But a null circle is the product of the isotropic lines through its center. (2) Direct computation. \square

22.2 Define and draw

Maple 22.2.1. The Maple library `tcurv.m` deals with the following objects:

`zptE1;zptF1;zptG1;zptH1` the four focuses
`zptDe_1;zptDf_1;zptDg_1;les3dia_1` the diagonal triangle
`VALdelta1` value of δ from $a, b, c, \alpha, \beta, \gamma$
`VALeq11` raw $\mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{T}, \overline{\mathbf{Z}}$ equation from $a, \alpha, b, \beta, c, \gamma$
`VALmeth2` new values of a, b, c when changing the poles
`ledeb` vector $a : b : c$
`valabc_1;valabc_2` values of a, b, c from $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \nu$
`zptK0_2;zptKa_2;zptKb_2;zptKc_2;les4cir_2;VALnu` the four points on the focal circle.
`zptX60_1;zptX6e_1;zptX6f_1;zptX6g_1`
`rotEFG;rotEFG3;les4moines` rotate the variables

Maple 22.2.2. contains the procedures

`geotcurv`

and `buildmeth`.

The procedure receives $u, v, w \in \mathbb{R}$ together with $E, F, G \in \mathbb{C}$ and produces $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta \in \Gamma$ (the reduced coordinates of the four focuses). The seventh argument $\nu \in \Gamma$ is used to select a connected piece of the curve. When given, the procedure checks that ν is in one of the four acceptable values. Otherwise, one of the four possibilities is returned.

The result is two Maple sequences (to be used in Lubin1 or Lubin2 context), together with a set of commands to be transmitted to geogebra.

Maple 22.2.3. The curve, already depicted using a set of three focuses, is depicted using the other triples of focuses. And then, one can check that all the four descriptions are leading to the same cartesian equation `eqq1`.

22.3 The generic case

Proposition 22.3.1. *The tripolar curve is globally invariant under the reflection μ into the EFG cycle.*

Proof. This is obvious if EFG are aligned. Otherwise, let U be the center of the reflection circle. Then, for generic P, Q , the triangles (U, P, Q) and $(U, \mu(Q), \mu(P))$ are similar, leading to

$$|\mu(P)\mu(Q)| = |PQ| \times \frac{R^2}{|UP||UQ|} \text{ therefore } |E\mu(P)| = |EP| \times \frac{R}{|UP|}$$

\square

Require: *VALeq11* (22.4), *VALnu* (22.5), *VALdelta1* (22.6) are already stored somewhere

```

1: GEOTCURV := proc  $u\_ , v\_ , w\_ , E\_ , F\_ , G\_ , nu\_$ 
2: global icidou1, icidou2, eqq1, cen_, rad2, rad1, VALeq11, VALnu, VALdelta1
3: local msg, H_, z0_, icinu
4: (op@map)(z2mor, [E_, F_, G_]) ; cen_, rad2 := (colu2mor@zcircle3)(%)
5: rad1 := sqrt(rad2) ; z0_ := mor2z(cen_)
6: icidou1 :=  $\alpha = (E\_ - z0\_)/rad1$ ,  $\beta = (F\_ - z0\_)/rad1$ ,  $\gamma = (G\_ - z0\_)/rad1$ 
7: icidou1 :=  $u = u\_ , v = v\_ , w = w\_ , icidou1$ 
8: H_ := (factor@subs)(icidou1, VALdelta1)
9: icidou2 :=  $\alpha = \sqrt{(E\_ - z0\_)/rad1}$ ,  $\beta = \sqrt{(F\_ - z0\_)/rad1}$ ,  $\gamma = \sqrt{(G\_ - z0\_)/rad1}$ 
10: icidou2 :=  $u = u\_ , v = v\_ , w = w\_ , icidou2$ 
11: if nargs = 7 then
12:   icinu := nu_ ;
13:   {seq}((factor@subs)( $j = -j$ , icidou2, VALnu),  $j = \{u, v, w, qxq\}$ )
14:   print(%) ; ASSERT(member(icinu, %))
15: else
16:   icinu := (factor@subs)(icidou2, valnu)
17: end if
18: icidou1 := icidou1, delta = H_, nu = icinu
19: icidou2 := icidou2, delta = sqrt(H_), nu = icinu
20: eqq1 := collect  $\left( \begin{array}{c} \text{subs}(\text{icidou1}, Z = x + I y, ZZ = x - I y, T = 1, VALeq11), \\ [x, y], \text{real}, \text{factor}, \text{distributed} \end{array} \right)$ 
21: 
$$\left[ \begin{array}{l} \text{convert}(' \backslash n \backslash n \text{Execute} \\ \left\{ \begin{array}{l} "I = ToComplex[(0, 1)]", "O = (0, 0)", "cir = Circle[O, 1]", \\ "u = AAA", "v = BBB", "w = CCC", \\ " \alpha = EEE", "E = O + \alpha", " \beta = FFF", "F = O + \beta", " \gamma = GGG", "G = O + \gamma", \\ " \delta = HHH", "H = O + \delta", "tcur = ImplicitCurve(TTCCUR)", "nu = NUU" \end{array} \right\} \end{array} \right]$$

22: SubstituteRec  $\left( \begin{array}{l} \%, \\ AAA, \text{convert}(u\_ , string), EEE, \text{convert}(\text{subs}(\text{icidou1}, \alpha), string), \\ BBB, \text{convert}(v\_ , string), FFF, \text{convert}(\text{subs}(\text{icidou1}, \beta), string), \\ CCC, \text{convert}(w\_ , string), GGG, \text{convert}(\text{subs}(\text{icidou1}, \gamma), string), \\ HHH, \text{convert}(\text{subs}(\text{icidou1}, \delta), string), \\ TTCCUR, \text{convert}(\text{eqq1}, string), NUU, \text{convert}(\text{icinu}, string) \end{array} \right)$ 
23: return convert(%, symbol)

```

LISTING 22.1: The geotcurv procedure

```

Require: geotcurv has already been executed
1: BUILDMETH := proc; global icimeth, VALmeth2, icidou2
2: local mynu, ddist, rr, test, k, mymeth
3: map(evalc, subs(icidou2, VALmeth2))
4: (combine@redurow@SubMatrix)(%, 1..4, 4..6)
5: icimeth := <SubMatrix(%%, 1..4, 1..3), %, SubMatrix(%%, 1..4, 7..9)>
6: mynu := subs(icidou2, nu)
7: ddist := (α, β) ↦ √abs((α - β)² / α / β)
8: for rr to 4 do
9:   test := add(icimeth[rr, j] * ddist(mynu, icimeth[rr, j + 3]), j = 4..6)
10:  if factor(test) = 0 then
11:    print(rr, OK, 0)
12:  else
13:    for k to 3 do
14:      mymeth := Copy(icimeth)
15:      mymeth[rr, 3 + k] := -mymeth[rr, 3 + k]
16:      test := add(mymeth[rr, j] * ddist(mynu, mymeth[rr, j + 3]), j = 4..6)
17:      if factor(test) = 0 then
18:        print(rr, OK, k) ; icimeth := Copy(mymeth) ; Break()
19:      end if
20:    end for
21:  end if
22: end for
23: return icimeth

```

LISTING 22.2: The buildmeth procedure

Notation 22.3.2. For this reason, we will use turns $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta$ to represent the points E, F, G (and the next coming point H). Part of the time, Lubin-1 will be used, and results are written as $z_E = \alpha$, etc. Part of the time Lubin-2 will be used and results are written as $z_E = \alpha^2$. Increasing the degree allows to split some algebraic equations at the price of lengthening the expressions. Coexistence of both systems requires to tag any equal sign. This third option is the one we have chosen.

Proposition 22.3.3. *When $S_Q \neq 0$, the equation of the tripolar curve can be written as*

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathcal{W}(M) &= \frac{1}{2} \left(\mathbf{Z}^2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 + \mathbf{T}^4 \right) + (\mathbf{Z} \bar{\mathbf{Z}} + \mathbf{T}^2) (W_{21} \mathbf{Z} + W_{12} \bar{\mathbf{Z}}) \mathbf{T} + \mathbf{T}^2 (W_{20} \mathbf{Z}^2 + W_{11} \mathbf{Z} \bar{\mathbf{Z}} + W_{02} \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2) \\
 &= \begin{pmatrix} \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 \\ \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{T} \\ \mathbf{T}^2 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} 1 & W_{12} & W_{02} \\ W_{21} & W_{11} & W_{12} \\ W_{20} & W_{21} & 1 \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z}^2 \\ \mathbf{Z} \mathbf{T} \\ \mathbf{T}^2 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{where} \quad (22.4)
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 W_{21} &= -2 \sum_3 \frac{S_u u^2}{8 S_Q^2} \frac{1}{\alpha^2} ; \quad W_{12} = -2 \sum_3 \frac{S_u u^2}{8 S_Q^2} \alpha^2 ; \quad W_{20} = \frac{1}{16 S_Q^2} \prod_4 \left(\frac{u}{\alpha^2} \pm \frac{v}{\beta^2} \pm \frac{w}{\gamma^2} \right) \\
 W_{11} &= \frac{-1}{4 S_Q^2} \sum u^4 + \frac{1}{8 S_Q^2} \sum_3 v^2 w^2 \left(\frac{\beta}{\gamma} + \frac{\gamma}{\beta} \right)^2 ; \quad W_{02} = \prod_4 \left(\frac{u \alpha \pm v \beta \pm w \gamma}{u \pm v \pm w} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

and the curve is a bicircular quartic. Coefficients in H_{21}, H_{12} are the usual normalized barycentrics of the circumcenter (as of now, no interpretation has been given). When $u \pm v \pm w = 0$, the curve degenerates into a simply-circular cubic. Otherwise, the visible part of \mathcal{W} is bounded.

Proof. This equation can be rationalized into :

$$\sum_3 \left(u^4 |EM|^4 \right) - 2 \sum_3 \left(v^2 w^2 |FM|^2 |GM|^2 \right) = 0$$

leading to a not so huge expression and, when making $\mathbf{T} = 0$, it only remains :

$$(u + v + w) (-u + v + w) (+u - v + w) (+u + v - w) \times \alpha^2 \beta^2 \gamma^2 \mathbf{Z}^2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 \quad \square$$

Proposition 22.3.4. *There are four intersections with the circumcircle. One has:*

$$K_0 \doteq \begin{pmatrix} \nu \\ 1 \\ 1/\nu \end{pmatrix} \underset{2}{\approx} \begin{bmatrix} \frac{u\alpha + v\beta + w\gamma}{u/\alpha + v/\beta + w/\gamma} \\ 1 \\ \frac{u/\alpha + v/\beta + w/\gamma}{u\alpha + v\beta + w\gamma} \end{bmatrix} \quad (22.5)$$

together with $K_\alpha K_\beta K_\gamma$ obtained by replacing the corresponding α by its opposite.

Proof. The main occasion to use Lubin-2 here. It must be noted that the α, β, γ used in this Lubin-2 formula are only defined up to a change of sign, so that none of the four is the "true $u\alpha + v\beta + w\gamma$ " \square

Proposition 22.3.5. *The tripolar curve has four focuses, the already involved $E, F, G \stackrel{1}{=} \alpha, \beta, \gamma$ and a fourth point, H , also on the unit circle and given by:*

$$\delta \stackrel{1}{=} \frac{1}{\alpha\beta\gamma} \frac{\text{id}}{\text{conj}} \left(\sum_3 u^2 (\alpha^2 - \alpha\beta - \alpha\gamma + \beta\gamma) \right) \quad (22.6)$$

Proof. We cut by a line $P\Omega_y$. Since the curve is bi-circular, the degree falls and we only have to nullify the discriminant of a second degree equation. One can notice that:

$$\delta^2 \stackrel{2}{=} \frac{\text{id}}{\text{conj}} \left(\frac{1}{\alpha\beta\gamma} [\alpha^2, \beta^2, \gamma^2] \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t[\alpha^2, \beta^2, \gamma^2] \right) \quad (22.7)$$

where $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b}$ is the usual matrix (7.20) build on (u, v, w) . \square

Definition 22.3.6. There are three bi-transpositions of the set $\{E, F, G, H\}$. We note them σ_j by using who is paired with H . Thus σ_β notes $\alpha \leftrightarrow \gamma, \beta \leftrightarrow \delta$. This convention will also be used to describe the Cremona homography of the whole plane (see Definition 17.1.4) specified by $\alpha \leftrightarrow \gamma, \beta \mapsto \delta$. We have

$$\sigma_\beta : \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \end{pmatrix} \mapsto_1 \begin{pmatrix} \frac{(\delta\beta - \alpha\gamma)\mathbf{Z} + ((\beta + \delta)\alpha\gamma - (\alpha + \gamma)\beta\delta)\mathbf{T}}{(\beta + \delta - \alpha - \gamma)\mathbf{Z} - (\delta\beta - \alpha\gamma)\mathbf{T}} \\ 1 \\ \frac{(\delta\beta - \alpha\gamma)\overline{\mathbf{Z}} + (\alpha + \gamma - \beta - \delta)\mathbf{T}}{((\beta + \delta)\alpha\gamma - (\alpha + \gamma)\beta\delta)\overline{\mathbf{Z}} - (\delta\beta - \alpha\gamma)\mathbf{T}} \end{pmatrix}$$

Theorem 22.3.7. *The tripolar curve remains globally unchanged by the $2 \times 2 \times 2$ group \mathfrak{Q} generated by μ and the σ_j .*

Proof. Invariance by μ has been proven at Proposition 22.3.1. Invariance by σ_α is direct computation. The type $2 \times 2 \times 2$ of the group \mathfrak{Q} comes from the underlying action on $\{E, F, G, H\}$. \square

Definition 22.3.8. Transformation $\pi_\beta \doteq \mu \circ \sigma_\beta$ is involutory and is necessarily a reflection into a circle \mathcal{C}_β .

$$\pi_\beta : \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \end{pmatrix} \mapsto_1 \begin{pmatrix} \frac{((\beta + \delta)\alpha\gamma - (\alpha + \gamma)\beta\delta)\overline{\mathbf{Z}} - (\delta\beta - \alpha\gamma)\mathbf{T}}{(\delta\beta - \alpha\gamma)\overline{\mathbf{Z}} + (\alpha + \gamma - \beta - \delta)\mathbf{T}} \\ 1 \\ \frac{(\beta + \delta - \alpha - \gamma)\mathbf{Z} - (\delta\beta - \alpha\gamma)\mathbf{T}}{(\delta\beta - \alpha\gamma)\mathbf{Z} + ((\beta + \delta)\alpha\gamma - (\alpha + \gamma)\beta\delta)\mathbf{T}} \end{pmatrix}$$

Let D_β and ρ_β be the center and radius of \mathcal{C}_β .

Proposition 22.3.9. *Triangle $D_\alpha D_\beta D_\gamma$ is the common diagonal triangle to both the quadrangle D, E, F, G and the quadrangle of the K_j , while the four circles Γ and \mathcal{C}_j are orthogonal to each other.*

Proof. By construction, the set $\{E, F, G, H\}$ is invariant by σ_β . Since Γ and \mathcal{W} are globally invariant, so is their intersection, the set of the four K_j . And the first conclusion follows, since object and image of a reflection in a circle are aligned with the center. Moreover, orthogonality is required for a given circle be invariant by reflection into another circle.

We can also take the representatives of all these circles

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \beta + \gamma - \alpha - \delta \\ 2(\delta\alpha - \beta\gamma) \\ (\alpha + \delta)\beta\gamma - (\beta + \gamma)\alpha\delta \\ \delta\alpha - \beta\gamma \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \gamma + \alpha - \beta - \delta \\ 2(\delta\beta - \gamma\alpha) \\ (\beta + \delta)\gamma\alpha - (\gamma + \alpha)\beta\delta \\ \delta\beta - \gamma\alpha \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} \alpha + \beta - \delta - \gamma \\ 2(\delta\gamma - \alpha\beta) \\ (\gamma + \delta)\alpha\beta - (\alpha + \beta)\gamma\delta \\ \delta\gamma - \alpha\beta \end{bmatrix}$$

then use the generic formulas to obtain center and power

$$D_\beta \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \beta\delta(\alpha + \gamma) - \alpha\gamma(\beta + \delta) \\ \beta\delta - \alpha\gamma \\ \beta + \delta - \alpha - \gamma \end{pmatrix}; \quad \rho_\beta^2 = -\frac{(\delta - \alpha)(\delta - \gamma)(\beta - \alpha)(\beta - \gamma)}{(\delta\beta - \alpha\gamma)^2} \quad (22.8)$$

and finally conclude by taking the Gramm matrix of the four circles. \square

Exercise 22.3.10. Prove that product $\rho_\alpha\rho_\beta\rho_\gamma$ is imaginary, so that one of the circles is imaginary.

Exercise 22.3.11. The 12 fixed points of the three homographies σ_j are the intersections of the four circles Γ and \mathcal{C}_j . To obtain the visible points among them, we have to discard the imaginary circle (see previous exercise).

Exercise 22.3.12. The action of π_A on the four intersections with the circumcircle amounts to change the sign of a in the formulas (22.5). Hint: use Lubin2, and substitute δ^2 from (22.7).

22.4 Cross-ratios

Lemma 22.4.1. Equation (22.1) can be rewritten using cross-ratio, transforming $M \in \mathcal{W}$ into:

$$\mathcal{W}(M) \stackrel{=}{=} \left(\frac{u}{(\gamma - \beta)\sqrt{\alpha}} \right) + \left(\frac{v}{(\alpha - \gamma)\sqrt{\beta}} \right) \left| \frac{(M - F)(G - E)}{(M - E)(G - F)} \right| + \left(\frac{w}{(\beta - \alpha)\sqrt{\gamma}} \right) \left| \frac{(M - G)(F - E)}{(M - E)(F - G)} \right| \quad (22.9)$$

Proof. One has $|GF| = |G - F| = \pm i(\beta - \gamma) \div \sqrt{\beta\gamma}$, etc. \square

Proposition 22.4.2. The defining equation (22.1) can be rewritten for each triple of focuses. And we have

$$\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \\ w \end{pmatrix}_{E,F,G} \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} d \\ e \\ f \end{pmatrix}_{E,H,G} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} +w\sqrt{\frac{\alpha}{\gamma}}(\gamma - \beta)(\gamma - \delta) \\ -v\sqrt{\frac{\delta}{\beta}}(\beta - \alpha)(\beta - \gamma) \\ +u\sqrt{\frac{\gamma}{\alpha}}(\alpha - \delta)(\alpha - \beta) \end{bmatrix}$$

Iterating the process, we get the final table:

$E \quad F \quad G$	u	v	w	$\alpha \quad \beta \quad \gamma$
$F \quad G \quad H$	$w K_e$	$v K_e \frac{\gamma(\beta - \delta)(\beta - \alpha)}{\beta(\alpha - \gamma)(\delta - \gamma)}$	$u K_e \frac{(\beta - \alpha)\sqrt{\delta}\sqrt{\gamma}}{(\delta - \gamma)\sqrt{\alpha}\sqrt{\beta}}$	$\beta \quad \gamma \quad \delta$
$E \quad G \quad H$	$w K_f$	$u K_f \frac{\gamma(\alpha - \delta)(\alpha - \beta)}{\alpha(\beta - \gamma)(\delta - \gamma)}$	$v K_f \frac{(\alpha - \beta)\sqrt{\delta}\sqrt{\gamma}}{(\delta - \gamma)\sqrt{\alpha}\sqrt{\beta}}$	$\alpha \quad \gamma \quad \delta$
$E \quad F \quad H$	$v K_g$	$u K_g \frac{\beta(\alpha - \delta)(\alpha - \gamma)}{\alpha(\gamma - \beta)(\delta - \beta)}$	$w K_g \frac{(\alpha - \gamma)\sqrt{\delta}\sqrt{\beta}}{(\delta - \beta)\sqrt{\alpha}\sqrt{\gamma}}$	$\alpha \quad \beta \quad \delta$

Proof. On the one hand, substitute $[E = H, F = G, G = F]$ (and nothing else) into formula (22.9). On the other hand, substitute not only $[E = H, F = G, G = F]$ but also $[\alpha = \delta, \beta = \gamma, \gamma = \beta]$ and $[u = k_h, v = k_g, w = k_f]$. And equate both results. The second move is only a flat application of the formula, the first one is using the invariance of the curve under the cross-ratio preserving homography σ_α . \square

22.5 Introducing the cut parameter

Definition 22.5.1. Choosing one of the four intersections of \mathcal{W} with Γ as $K_0 \simeq \nu : 1 : 1/\nu$ breaks the symmetry of the problem. But this provides what is required to split the action of μ, σ, π .

Proposition 22.5.2. Using the cut parameter, we obtain: ${}^t(u, v, w) = \frac{1}{\alpha\beta\gamma\sqrt{\delta}}$

$$\frac{1}{\alpha\beta\gamma\sqrt{\delta}} \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{\alpha}(\beta - \gamma) \left((\alpha + \delta - \beta - \gamma)\nu - 2(\delta\alpha - \beta\gamma) + \frac{\delta\alpha(\beta + \gamma) - \beta\gamma(\delta + \alpha)}{\nu} \right) \\ \sqrt{\beta}(\gamma - \alpha) \left((\beta + \delta - \gamma - \alpha)\nu - 2(\delta\beta - \gamma\alpha) + \frac{\delta\beta(\gamma + \alpha) - \alpha\beta(\delta + \beta)}{\nu} \right) \\ \sqrt{\gamma}(\alpha - \beta) \left((\gamma + \delta - \alpha - \beta)\nu - 2(\delta\gamma - \alpha\beta) + \frac{\delta\gamma(\alpha + \beta) - \alpha\beta(\delta + \gamma)}{\nu} \right) \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^3$$

Proof. Compute the D_j from the K_0, K_j and compare with those obtained at (22.8). Then the simultaneous reality of the multipliers is proven by their invariance under conjugacy. \square

Corollary 22.5.3. Equation of \mathcal{W} can be rewritten using the symmetric functions (22.2) The $\mathbf{Z}^2\overline{\mathbf{Z}}\mathbf{T}$ coefficients are a sum of terms like

$$\frac{-2q_1^4 - 32q_1q_3 + 32q_2^2 - 128q_4}{q_4^2} \nu^4$$

i.e. a power ν^k (where $-4 \leq k \leq 4$) times a $\mathbb{Z}[q_1, q_2, q_3, q_4]$ polynomial divided by a power of q_4 , leading to a zero global degree in $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta, \nu$. It remains to say that the resulting expressions have a rather huge length:

$$\begin{array}{cccc} H_{22} & H_{12} & H_{02} & H_{11} \\ 705 & 800 & 773 & 876 \end{array}$$

Fact 22.5.4. We can use a varying ν as in Figure 22.2 to see that focuses cut the circle into arcs that contains either 2 or 0 intersections with the curve. Starting from violet arcs \widehat{EG} and \widehat{FH} , we get something like two bananas surrounding both pairs of focuses. Then they cross each other at circle cinvG and reduce back to the original arcs. Then we get arcs \widehat{EF} and \widehat{HG} , etc.

Example 22.5.5. Figure 22.2 has been constructed by choosing

$$u = 11\sqrt{5}, v = 5\sqrt{5}, w = 26, \alpha = -4/5 + 3/5i, \beta = 4/5 + 3/5i, \gamma = -i$$

Then the fourth focus is $\delta = 1$. The multipliers are given by columns 4,5,6 to obtain the branch containing $\nu = (-28 - 45i)/53$ and are given by columns 7,8,9 to obtain the branch containing $\nu' = (80 + 39i)/89$.

			ν			ν'		
E	F	G	$11\sqrt{5}$	$-5\sqrt{5}$	-26	$11\sqrt{5}$	$5\sqrt{5}$	-26
F	G	H	$13\sqrt{5}$	-5	$-22\sqrt{2}$	$13\sqrt{5}$	5	$-22\sqrt{2}$
E	G	H	$13\sqrt{5}$	-33	$-10\sqrt{2}$	$13\sqrt{5}$	-33	$+10\sqrt{2}$
E	F	H	$5\sqrt{5}$	$33\sqrt{5}$	$-52\sqrt{2}$	$5\sqrt{5}$	$33\sqrt{5}$	$-52\sqrt{2}$

22.6 Barycentrics wrt the diagonal triangle

Proposition 22.6.1. When using the diagonal triangle $D_\alpha D_\beta D_\gamma$ as barycentric basis, we obtain:

$$H_0 \doteq (f : g : h) \underset{b,1}{\simeq} \left(\frac{(\alpha\delta - \gamma\beta)(\alpha - \delta)}{2\delta(\alpha - \gamma)(\alpha - \beta)} : \frac{(\beta\delta - \alpha\gamma)(\beta - \delta)}{2\delta(\beta - \gamma)(\beta - \alpha)} : \frac{(\gamma\delta - \alpha\beta)(\gamma - \delta)}{2\delta(\gamma - \beta)(\gamma - \alpha)} \right)$$

where the f, g, h are real with $f + g + h = 1$, while the other three focuses $H_e H_f H_g$ are given by $\pm f : \pm g : \pm h$, leading to an anticevian configuration.

Proof. Direct computation. \square

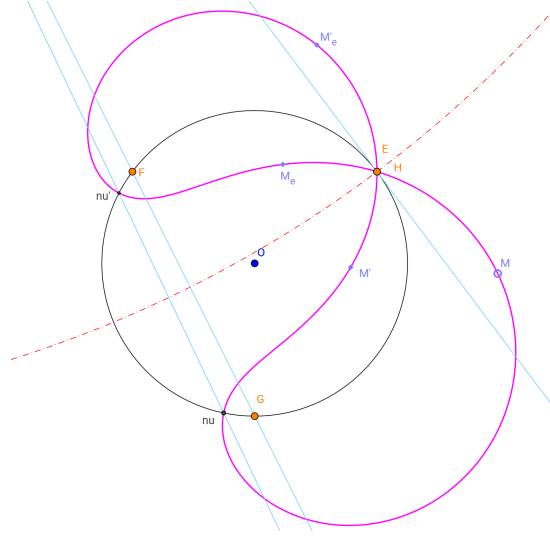


Figure 22.3: Tripolar curve, after the meltdown of two focuses

Proof. Everything remains in the Lubin1 domain, since we are using $K_0 \simeq \nu : 1 : \nu^{-1}$. A direct computation is easy. One can also use the fact that:

$$K_0 \simeq H_0 *_b \begin{pmatrix} u/FG \\ v/GE \\ w/EF \end{pmatrix} ; L_0 \simeq H_0 *_b \begin{pmatrix} HEFG \\ HFGE \\ HGEF \end{pmatrix} ; M_0 \simeq H_0 *_b \begin{bmatrix} u^2 HE/FG \\ v^2 HF/GE \\ w^2 HG/EF \end{bmatrix} \quad \square$$

22.7 When E is on the curve

$u|EE| + v|EF| + w|EG| = 0$ implies $v : w \simeq |EG| : |EF|$.

Proposition 22.7.1. *** pompous *** Point D_e is on the curve when either $S = 0$ (this case will be studied in detail at Section 22.8) or one of the F, G is on the curve (focuses are supposed to be different).

Proof. When substituting (22.8) into (22.4), we get:

$$S^2 \frac{\alpha^4 \gamma^4 \beta^4 |EF|^4 |GE|^4 \left(v^2 |FG|^2 - u^2 |GE|^2 \right)^2 (u^2 |EF| - w^2 |FG|)^2}{(\sqrt{\beta} \sqrt{\gamma} |GE| |EF| u^2 + \sqrt{\gamma} \sqrt{\alpha} |EF| |FG| v^2 + \sqrt{\alpha} \sqrt{\beta} |FG| |GE| w^2)^4}$$

□

22.8 The tripolar circular cubics

Definition 22.8.1. In this section $\pm u \pm v \pm w = 0$ is assumed. Parametrization $u : v : w \simeq 1 : s : -1 - s$ will be overused. And notation \mathcal{K} will be used when asserting properties that doesn't apply to the whole family of tripolar curves \mathcal{W} .

Example 22.8.2. Figure 22.5 has been drawn using the following data:

$$u = 1, v = 2, w = 3, E_0 = 12i, F_0 = 5, G_0 = 0$$

This results into

$$\alpha \underset{1}{=} \frac{-5 + 12i}{13}, \beta \underset{1}{=} \frac{5 - 12i}{13}, \gamma \underset{1}{=} \frac{-5 - 12i}{13}, \nu = \frac{12 - 35i}{37}$$

$$\delta \underset{1}{=} \frac{-1555 - 48348i}{48373} ; \delta \underset{2}{=} \frac{153 - 158i}{793} \sqrt{13}$$

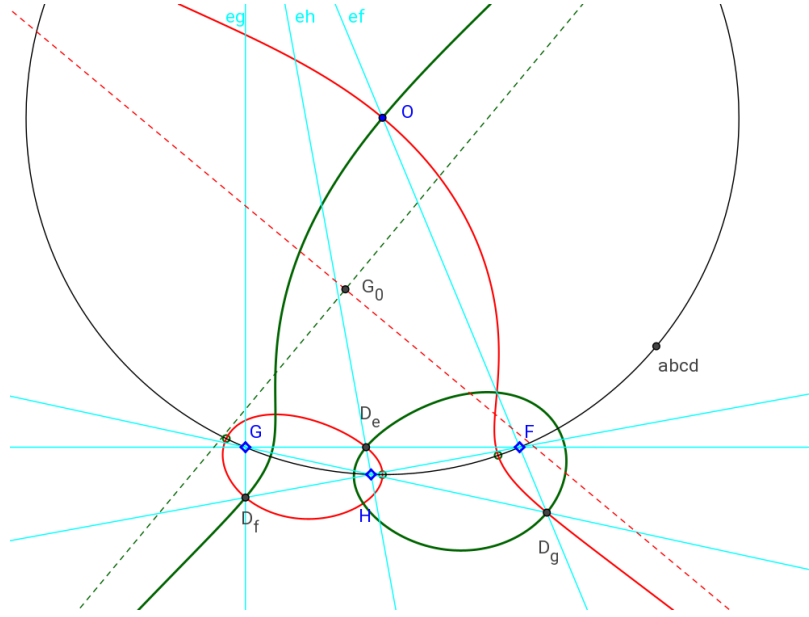


Figure 22.4: Tripolar cubic

while the coefficients describing the connected piece containing ν are

E	F	G	1	2	-3
F	G	H	33	28	-61
E	G	H	33	-155	122
E	F	H	28	155	-183

Exercise 22.8.3. Values $a = 1$, $b = 2$, $c = -3$, $\alpha = \frac{-12 + 5i}{13}$, $\beta = \frac{12 - 5i}{13}$, $\gamma = \frac{5 - 12i}{13}$ are given. Apply everything.

Proposition 22.8.4. Coefficients from focuses. When $\pm u \pm v \pm w = 0$, but $uvw \neq 0$, the resulting curve is a circular cubic. It admits four concyclic focuses as any other \mathcal{W} . When parametrizing $u : v : w$ by $1 : s : -1 - s$, formula (22.6) can be reverted into:

$$s^{\parallel} = -\frac{\beta (\alpha^2 - \gamma^2) (\alpha \gamma - \delta \beta)}{\alpha (\beta^2 - \gamma^2) (\beta \gamma - \alpha \delta)} ; s^{\perp} = -\frac{\beta (\alpha^2 - \gamma^2) (\alpha \gamma + \beta \delta)}{\alpha (\beta^2 - \gamma^2) (\beta \gamma + \alpha \delta)}$$

And then the coefficients can be re-obtained as:

$$\begin{pmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{pmatrix}^{\parallel} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ s \\ -1 - s \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \alpha (\beta^2 - \gamma^2) (\alpha \delta - \beta \gamma) \\ \beta (\gamma^2 - \alpha^2) (\delta \beta - \alpha \gamma) \\ \gamma (\alpha^2 - \beta^2) (\delta \gamma - \beta \alpha) \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} FG (\alpha \delta - \beta \gamma) \\ GE (\beta \delta - \gamma \alpha) \\ EF (\gamma \delta - \alpha \beta) \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. Obvious computation. Naming both values of s as "parallel" and "perpendicular" will be explained later. When s is known, the sign of δ is supposed to be chosen so that $s = s^{\parallel}(\delta)$, rather than the contrary. \square

Proposition 22.8.5. Asymptotes. Using $q_1 = \alpha + \beta + \gamma + \delta$, etc (the so called symmetric functions), the equation of the tripolar cubic becomes:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{K}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta) = & \frac{1}{2} (\mathbf{T}^2 + \mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}}) (q_4 \overline{\mathbf{Z}} - \mathbf{Z}) (q_1^2 q_4 - q_3^2) + \\ & \mathbf{T} \left((8 q_1 q_3 q_4^2 - 4 q_2 q_3^2 q_4 + q_3^4) \overline{\mathbf{Z}}^2 + (q_1^4 - 4 q_1^2 q_2 + 8 q_1 q_3) \mathbf{Z}^2 \right) \\ & + (4 q_1^2 q_2 q_4 - 2 q_1^2 q_3^2 - 16 q_1 q_3 q_4 + 4 q_2 q_3^2) \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{Z} \end{aligned}$$

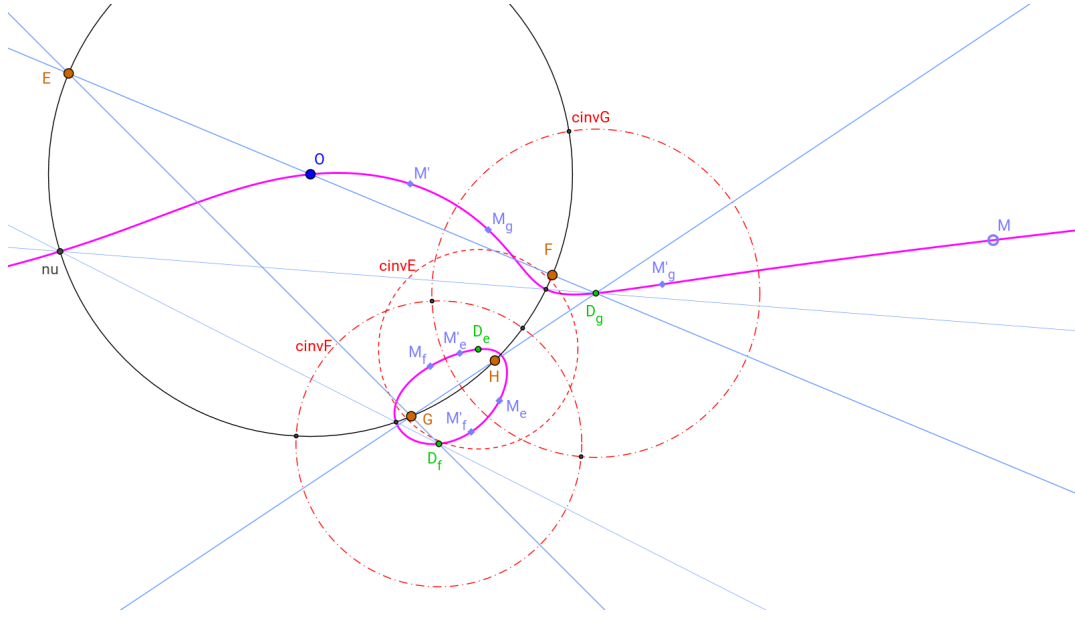


Figure 22.5: Tripolar cubic

The third point at infinity is $U(\delta) \doteq \alpha\beta\gamma\delta : 0 : 1$. Thus the asymptotes Δ^{\parallel} and Δ^{\perp} are orthogonal. Their intersection is the gravity center of $EFGH$. When s is known, sign of δ is supposed to be chosen so that $\mathcal{K} = \mathcal{K}^{\parallel}(\delta)$, rather than the contrary.

Proof. When substituting, one can see the symmetry of the expression, allowing to use the q_j . Then straightforward computations. Equations found for both asymptotes are:

$$\Delta^{\parallel} \simeq [4, -q_1^2 + q_3^2/q_4, -4q_4] ; \Delta^{\perp} \simeq [4, -q_1^2 + q_2 - q_3^2/q_4, +4q_4]$$

□

Corollary 22.8.6. The leading factor $(q_1^2 q_4 - q_3^2) = \prod_3 (\alpha\delta - \beta\gamma)$ forbids a possible degeneracy into a conic and the line at infinity.

Proposition 22.8.7. Tangentials. Each of the \mathcal{K}^{\parallel} and \mathcal{K}^{\perp} curves are invariant under the Ω group. Their $9 = 3 \times 3$ common points are Ω_x, Ω_y, O , the D_e and their inverses D'_e , etc in the unit circle. They form an orbit under the Ω group... when taking into account the indeterminacy at O for the inversion into Γ . Moreover:

1. U^{\parallel} is the tangential of O, D_e, D_f, D_g wrt \mathcal{K}^{\parallel} .
2. The tangentials of U^{\parallel} and U^{\perp} wrt their own curve are :

$$U_t^{\parallel} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 4q_2q_3q_4 - 8q_1q_3q_4^2 - q_3^4 + 16q_4^3 \\ 4q_4(q_1^2q_4 - 4q_2q + q_3^2) \\ q_4(4q_1^2q_2 - 8q_1q_3 - q_1^4 + 16q_4) \end{pmatrix} ; U_t^{\perp} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} -q_3(8q_1q_4^2 - 4q_2q_3q_4 + q_3^3) \\ 4q_4(q_1^2q_4 - q_3^2) \\ q_1q_4(q_1^3 - 4q_1q_2 + 8q_3) \end{bmatrix}$$

Point U_t is also the tangential of D'_e, D'_f, D'_g . And it happens that $U_t(-\delta)$ is the singular focus of $\mathcal{K}(\delta)$.

3. Apart from Ω^{\pm} , the 8 intersections of both \mathcal{K} and the unit circle are obtained from $-\sigma_3 \div \sigma_1$ by changing the signs of $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \tau$ (odd changes move to \mathcal{K}^{\perp} , even ones remain on \mathcal{K}^{\parallel}). Each group of 4 forms an orbit under Ω . Point O is the common tangential of all these points.
4. Both curves are orthogonal at each of their intersections.

Proof. Due to the choice $z_A = \alpha^2$, everything factors and computations are easy. The six D_j, D'_j depend only on the squares α^2 , etc: that is the reason why they can belong to both curves. □

Exercise 22.8.8. Consider the straight lines which are the bisectors of the angles $(\overrightarrow{OE}, \overrightarrow{OH})$ and $(\overrightarrow{OF}, \overrightarrow{OG})$. And then consider the gudule which bisects these two lines. How to help some constructions with this object ?

22.8.1 When the fourth focus is moving

Exercise 22.8.9. The locus of U_t, F_s is a circular quintic, and the directions of sidelines are the other points at infinity. The corresponding asymptotes are going through $(2A + B + C)/4$, etc while it exists a singular focus at X(143).

Exercise 22.8.10. The envelope of Δ is the deltoid :

$$M(\tau) = \left(\frac{1}{4} s_1^2 - \frac{1}{2} s_2 \right) - \frac{1}{4} \tau^2 - \frac{s_3}{2\tau}$$

whose center is $X(140) = (A + B + C + O)/4$, its internal and external radiuses being $1/4$ and $3/4$. Cups are given by $\tau^3 = s_3$, i.e. the Morley's directions. Moreover $\Delta^{\parallel} \cap \Delta^{\perp-}$ describes the inner circle. Hint: use $d\tau = ik\tau$ where k is evanescent.

Exercise 22.8.11. The reflection of \mathcal{K} wrt a circle centered at a focus leads to Cartesian ovals whose focuses are the images of the remaining three original focuses (see Figure 22.7). Choosing $\rho = 1$ is a great choice, which leads to $O \mapsto O$.

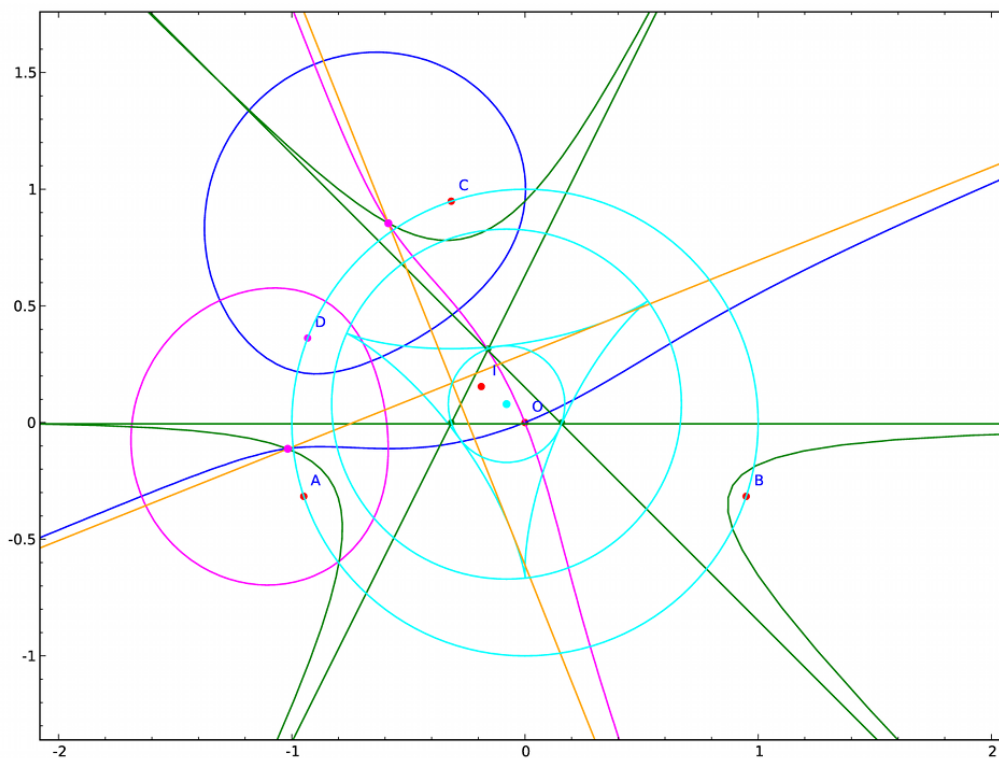


Figure 22.6: Angels

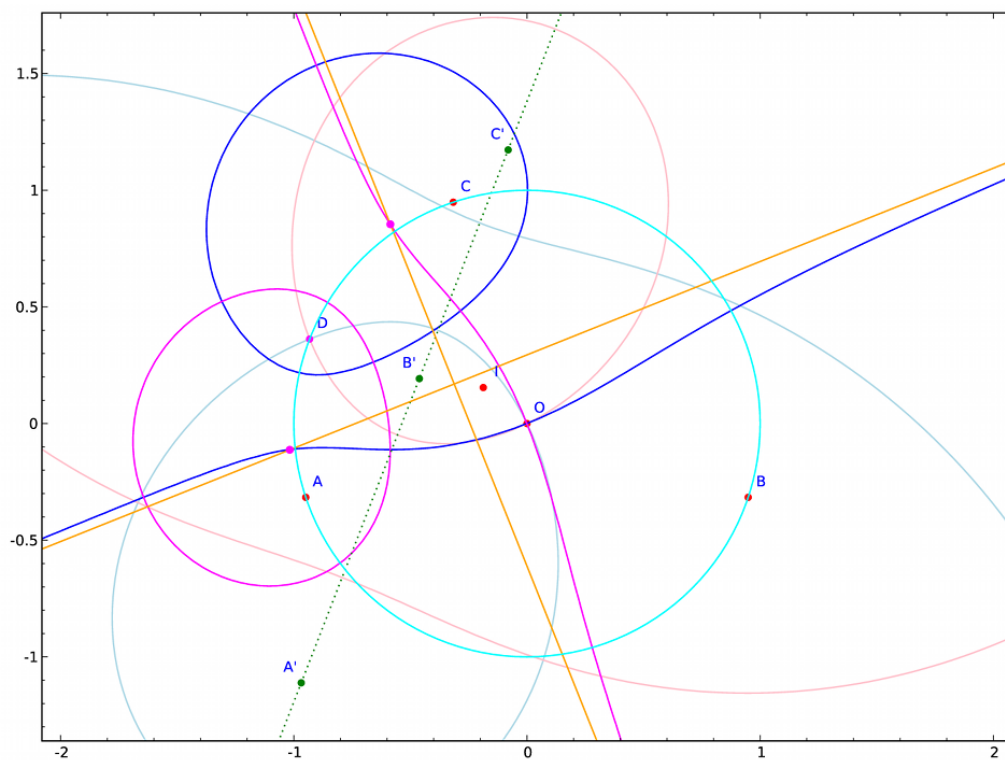


Figure 22.7: Cartesian ovals by inversion

Chapter 23

Special Triangles

Central triangles have been defined in Section 2.2.

23.1 Changing coordinates, functions and equations

Proposition 23.1.1. *Any triangle \mathcal{T} can be used as a barycentric basis instead of triangle ABC . When columns of triangle \mathcal{T} are synchronized, the old barycentrics $x : y : z$ (relative to ABC) can be obtained from the new ones $\xi : \eta : \zeta$ (relative to \mathcal{T}) by :*

$$\begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} = \boxed{\mathcal{T}} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} \xi \\ \eta \\ \zeta \end{pmatrix}$$

while the converse transformation can be done using the adjoint matrix.

Proof. A column of synchronized barycentrics acts on the matrix of rows containing the projective coordinates of the vertices of the reference triangle by the usual matrix multiplication. \square

Remark 23.1.2. By definition of synchronized barycentrics, $\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{T}} \simeq \mathcal{L}_b$ and the line at infinity is (globally) invariant.

Proposition 23.1.3. *Let α, β, γ the side lengths of triangle \mathcal{T} (computed using Theorem 7.4.4). Consider a central punctual transformation Φ that can be written as :*

$$p : q : r \mapsto u : v : w = \phi(a, b, c, p, q, r)$$

with all the required properties of symmetry and homogeneity. Consider now the corresponding punctual transformation Φ' with respect to triangle \mathcal{T} (written in its normalized form) and define $\phi_{\mathcal{T}}$ as the action of Φ' on the old barycentrics (the ones related to ABC). Then :

$$\phi_{\mathcal{T}} \left(a, b, c, \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix} \right) = \mathcal{T} \cdot \phi \left(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \mathcal{T}^{-1} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix} \right)$$

Example 23.1.4. Applied to the isogonal transform and some usual triangle, this leads to formulas given in Figure 23.1. The term "complementary conjugate" is a synonym for "medial isogonal conjugate", as is "anticomplementary conjugate" for "anticomplementary isogonal conjugate". Also, "excentral isogonal conjugate" is "X(188)-aleph conjugate" and "orthic isogonal conjugate" is "X(4)-Ceva conjugate".

Proposition 23.1.5. *Let α, β, γ the side lengths of triangle \mathcal{T} . Consider a conic Φ whose matrix can be written as $M(a, b, c)$ with the required properties of symmetry and homogeneity. Consider now the corresponding conic Φ' with respect to triangle \mathcal{T} (written in its normalized form) and define $M_{\mathcal{T}}$ as the matrix defining Φ' wrt the old barycentrics. Then :*

$$M_{\mathcal{T}}(a, b, c) = {}^t\mathcal{T}^{-1} \cdot M(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) \cdot \mathcal{T}^{-1}$$

Example 23.1.6. Applied to the circumcircle and some usual triangles, this leads to formulas given in Figure 23.1.

23.2 Residual triangles

Definition 23.2.1. The residual triangles of a triangle $A'B'C'$ inscribed in a bigger one ABC are the triangles $AB'C'$, $A'BC'$, $A'B'C$. Mind the fact that the residuals are oriented counterclockwise wrt triangles ABC and $A'B'C'$.

Proposition 23.2.2. Suppose that $A'B'C'$ is inside the convex hull ABC and note $\mathcal{A}, \mathcal{A}_0, \mathcal{A}_a, \mathcal{A}_b, \mathcal{A}_c$ the absolute values of the areas of the five triangles. Then $\mathcal{A} = \mathcal{A}_a + \mathcal{A}_b + \mathcal{A}_c + \mathcal{A}_0$. Moreover, $\mathcal{A}_0 \geq \min(\mathcal{A}_a, \mathcal{A}_b, \mathcal{A}_c)$. More precisely (Bottema et al., 1969), $\mathcal{A}_0 \geq \min(\sqrt{\mathcal{A}_a \mathcal{A}_b}, \sqrt{\mathcal{A}_b \mathcal{A}_c}, \sqrt{\mathcal{A}_c \mathcal{A}_a})$. And equality occurs only when $A'B'C'$ are the mid-points.

Proof. Write $A' \simeq 0 : x : x'$, $B' \simeq y' : 0 : y$, $C' \simeq z : z' : 0$ where $x' = 1 - x$, etc. Then

$$\mathcal{A}_0 = xyz + x'y'z' \geq 2\sqrt{xyzx'y'z'} = 2\sqrt{\mathcal{A}_a \mathcal{A}_b \mathcal{A}_c}$$

Suppose $\mathcal{A}_a \geq \mathcal{A}_b \geq \mathcal{A}_c$. If $\mathcal{A}_a \leq 1/4$, then $\mathcal{A}_0 \geq 1/4 \geq \sqrt{\mathcal{A}_j \mathcal{A}_k}$. If $\mathcal{A}_a \geq 1/4$ then $2\sqrt{\mathcal{A}_a} \geq 1$.

Equality occurs only if $xyz = x'y'z'$ and $\mathcal{A}_a = 1/4$. \square

Definition 23.2.3. The residual cevian triangles associated with point P are the triangles AP_bP_c , P_aBP_c , P_aP_bC where $P_aP_bP_c$ is the cevian triangle of P (mind the order...).

Proposition 23.2.4. The A -residual of the orthic (i.e. wrt $X(4)$) and the intouch (i.e. wrt $X(7)$) triangles have the following sidelengths :

$$\begin{aligned} [\alpha, \beta, \gamma]_{\text{orthic}} &= \frac{S_a}{bc} [a, b, c] \\ [\alpha^2, \beta^2, \gamma^2]_{\text{intouch}} &= \frac{(b+c-a)^2}{4bc} [(a+b-c)(a-b+c), bc, bc] \end{aligned}$$

The incenters of the orthic residuals are the orthocenters of the intouch residuals.

23.3 Incentral triangle

definition cevian triangle of the incenter $X(1)$

pythagoras (strong values)

$$\alpha^2 = \frac{abc(a^3 + a^2b + a^2c - ab^2 - ac^2 + 3abc - b^3 + b^2c + bc^2 - c^3)}{(a+b)^2(a+c)^2}$$

barycentrics (normalized)

$$[\mathcal{C}_1] = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \frac{a}{a+c} & \frac{a}{a+b} \\ \frac{b}{b+c} & 0 & \frac{b}{a+b} \\ \frac{b+c}{b+c} & \frac{c}{a+c} & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

(f, g) $(0; b)$

23.4 Excentral triangle

definition triangle of the excenters. And thus, anticevian triangle of the incenter $X(1)$

pythagoras (strong values)

$$[\alpha^2, \beta^2, \gamma^2] = \frac{2R}{\rho} [a(b+c-a), b(c+a-b), c(a+b-c)]$$

thus similar with the intouch triangle (center $X(57)$, ratio $2R/\rho$)

barycentrics (normalized)

$$\boxed{\mathcal{A}_1} = \begin{pmatrix} \frac{-a}{b+c-a} & \frac{a}{c+a-b} & \frac{a}{a+b-c} \\ \frac{b}{b+c-a} & \frac{-b}{c+a-b} & \frac{b}{a+b-c} \\ \frac{c}{b+c-a} & \frac{c}{c+a-b} & \frac{-c}{a+b-c} \end{pmatrix}$$

(f, g) $(-a; b)$

23.5 Medial triangle

definition cevian triangle of the centroid X(2)

side_length (strong values)

$$[\alpha, \beta, \gamma] = \frac{1}{2} [a, b, c]$$

barycentrics (normalized)

$$\boxed{\mathcal{C}_2} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

23.6 Antimedial triangle

definition anticevian triangle of the centroid X(2)

side_length (strong values)

$$[\alpha, \beta, \gamma] = 2 [a, b, c]$$

barycentrics (normalized)

$$\boxed{\mathcal{A}_2} = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -1 & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

23.7 Orthic triangle

definition cevian triangle of the orthocenter X(4)

side_length (strong values)

$$[\alpha, \beta, \gamma] = \frac{1}{abc} [a^2 S_a, b^2 S_b, c^2 S_c]$$

circumcircle center=X(5), $R_{orthic} = \frac{1}{2} R_{ABC}$

incircle center=X(4), $r_{orthic} = \frac{S_a S_b S_c}{2abc S}$

barycentrics (synchronized)

$$\boxed{\mathcal{C}_4} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & S_c/b^2 & S_b/c^2 \\ S_c/a^2 & 0 & S_a/c^2 \\ S_b/a^2 & S_a/b^2 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

angles $\pi - 2A, \pi - 2B, \pi - 2C$

23.8 Tangential triangle

definition The sidelines are the tangents to the ABC -circumcircle at the vertices.

key_property Anticevian triangle of $X(6)$.

side_length (strong values)

$$[\alpha, \beta, \gamma] = \frac{abc}{2 S_a S_b S_c} [a^2 S_a, b^2 S_b, c^2 S_c]$$

Therefore, this triangle is similar to the orthic triangle.

barycentrics (synchronized)

$$\boxed{\mathcal{A}_6} = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{a^2}{S_a} & \frac{a^2}{S_b} & \frac{a^2}{S_c} \\ \frac{S_a}{b^2} & -\frac{S_b}{c^2} & \frac{S_c}{c^2} \\ \frac{S_a}{c^2} & \frac{S_b}{S_b} & -\frac{S_c}{S_c} \end{pmatrix}$$

23.9 Brocard triangle (first)

Remember that Brocard points are defined by $\text{Br}_1 = a^2 b^2 : b^2 c^2 : c^2 a^2$ and $\text{Br}_2 = c^2 a^2 : a^2 b^2 : b^2 c^2$ (see Proposition 7.12.1).

definition $A_1 \doteq B\text{Br}_2 \cap C\text{Br}_1 \simeq a^2 : c^2 : b^2$ etc. This triangle is inscribed in the Brocard 3-6 circle, see , diameter $X(3)X(6)$.

side_length (strong values)

$$[\alpha, \beta, \gamma] = \frac{W_2}{2 S_w} [a, b, c]$$

and therefore Bro_1 is (anti-)homothetic to ABC . Perspector $X(76)$, the third Brocard point. Moreover, anti-similar to ABC with center $X(2)$.

barycentrics (synchronized)

$$\boxed{\text{Bro}_1} = \begin{pmatrix} a^2 & c^2 & b^2 \\ c^2 & b^2 & a^2 \\ b^2 & a^2 & c^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

23.10 Brocard triangle (second)

definition $U_a \simeq b^2 + c^2 - a^2 : b^2 : c^2$ is the projection of $X(3)$ on the A -symmedian, etc. (and therefore belongs to the 3-6 Brocard circle).

key_property Triangle ABC and triangle $\boxed{\text{Bro}_2}$ share the same isodynamic centers $X(15)$, $X(16)$.

Exercise 23.10.1. The center E_a of circle $A, X(15), X(16)$ is the inverse in circumcircle of U_a , etc.

23.11 Brocard triangle (third)

definition $A_3 \doteq C\text{Br}_2 \cap A\text{Br}_1 \simeq b^2 c^2 : b^4 : c^4 = \text{isog}(A_1)$.

perspector with ABC : $X(32)$

23.12 Intouch triangle (contact triangle)

definition Cevian triangle of the Gergonne point $X(7)$.

key_property contacts of the incircle and the sidelines.

pythagoras (strong equality)

$$[\alpha^2, \beta^2, \gamma^2] = \frac{\rho}{2R} [a(b+c-a), b(c+a-b), c(a+b-c)]$$

thus similar with the excentral triangle (ratio $\rho/2R$)

barycentrics (normalized)

$$[\mathcal{C}_7] = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \frac{a+b-c}{b} & \frac{c+a-b}{c} \\ \frac{a+b-c}{c} & 0 & \frac{b-a+c}{a} \\ \frac{c+a-b}{a} & \frac{b-a+c}{b} & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

23.13 Extouch triangle

definition cevian triangle of the Nagel point $X(8)$.

side_length easy to compute, but nothing great !

barycentrics (normalized)

$$[\mathcal{C}_8] = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \frac{b-a+c}{b} & \frac{b-a+c}{c} \\ \frac{c+a-b}{c} & 0 & \frac{c+a-b}{a} \\ \frac{a+b-c}{a} & \frac{a+b-c}{b} & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

23.14 Hexyl triangle

definition symmetric of the excentral triangle $J_a J_b J_c$ wrt the circumcircle. Thus $H_a J_b H_c J_a H_b J_c$ is an hexagon whose opposite sides are parallel.

key_property Vertex H_a is the point in which the perpendicular to AB through the excenter J_b meets the perpendicular to AC through the excenter J_c .

pythagoras (strong values)

$$[\alpha^2, \beta^2, \gamma^2] = \frac{2R}{\rho} [a(b+c-a), b(c+a-b), c(a+b-c)]$$

thus similar with the intouch triangle (center I , ratio $2R/\rho$).

barycentrics (normalized) $H_a \simeq a(aS_a + bS_b + cS_c + abc) : b(aS_a + bS_b - cS_c - abc) : c(aS_a - bS_b + cS_c - abc)$

circumcircle centered at $X(1)$, radius $2R$.

23.15 Fuhrmann triangle

Definition 23.15.1. Fuhrmann triangle is $A''B''C''$ where $A'B'C'$ is the circumcevian triangle of X_1 and A'' is the reflection of A' in sideline BC (and cyclically for B'' and C'').

Proposition 23.15.2. Side length of Fuhrmann triangle are :

$$W_4 \times \left(\sqrt{\frac{a}{(a+b-c)(a-b+c)}}, \sqrt{\frac{b}{(b-c+a)(b+c-a)}}, \sqrt{\frac{c}{(c+a-b)(c-a+b)}} \right)$$

$$\text{where } W_4 = \sqrt{a^3 + b^3 + c^3 - (a^2b + a^2c + ab^2 + ac^2 + b^2c + bc^2) + 3abc}$$

Quantity W_4 is the Fuhrmann square root (12.14). Circumcircle of the Fuhrmann triangle is the Fuhrmann circle of ABC (whose diameter is $[X_4, X_8]$)

Remark 23.15.3. As noticed in (Dekov, 2007), $OIFuNa$ and $OIHFu$ are parallelograms, whose respective centroids are the Spieker center and nine-point center, respectively, where $IFu = 2NI$ or $IFu = R - 2r$.

23.16 Star triangle

Definition 23.16.1. Star triangle. Consider the midpoints $A'B'C'$ of the sidelines of triangle ABC . Draw from each midpoint the perpendicular line to the corresponding bisector. These three lines determine a triangle $A^*B^*C^*$. This is our star.

Proposition 23.16.2. *The synchronized barycentrics and the sidelengths of the star triangle are :*

$$\boxed{\mathcal{T}_*} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} b+c & c-b & b-c \\ c-a & c+a & a-c \\ b-a & a-b & b+a \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} b+c-a & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & c+a-b & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & a+b-c \end{pmatrix}^{-1}$$

$$[\alpha^2, \beta^2, \gamma^2] = \left(\frac{R}{2\rho}\right)^2 \times [a(b+c-a), b(c+a-b), c(a+b-c)]$$

Similar to the intouch triangle ($k^2 = R^3 \div 2\rho^3$) and to the excentral triangle ($k^2 = R \div 8\rho$). We have the following central correspondences :

\mathcal{T}_*	\mathcal{T}	\mathcal{T}_*	\mathcal{T}	\mathcal{T}_*	\mathcal{T}	\mathcal{T}_*	\mathcal{T}
2	3817	133	121	542	2801	2393	527
3	946	134	122	647	3835	2501	4885
4	10	135	123	690	3887	2574	3308
5	5	136	124	804	926	2575	3307
6	142	137	125	924	522	2679	1566
20	4301	138	126	974	1387	2777	2802
25	3452	139	127	1112	3035	2781	528
30	517	143	140	1154	30	2782	2808
39	2140	184	226	1205	3254	2790	2810
51	2	185	1	1495	908	2794	2809
52	3	235	1329	1503	518	2797	2821
53	141	389	1125	1510	523	2799	2820
65	178	403	3814	1531	1512	2848	2832
113	119	418	2051	1562	4904	3258	3259
114	118	427	2886	1568	1532	3564	971
115	116	428	3740	1596	3820	3566	3900
125	11	511	516	1637	4928	3574	442
128	113	512	514	1824	2090	3575	960
129	114	520	3667	1843	9	3917	1699
130	115	523	513	1986	214		
131	117	525	3309	1990	3834		
132	120	526	900	2052	3840		

For example, orthocenter $X(4, \mathcal{T}_*)$ is Spieker center $X(10, \mathcal{T})$.

Proof. Straightforward computations. In fact, $A'A^*$ and B^*C^* are orthogonal and the orthic triangle of \mathcal{T}_* is the medial triangle of \mathcal{T} . □

		$\phi_{\mathcal{T}}$ when ϕ is the isogonal conjugacy
medial	\mathcal{C}_2	$(v+w-u)((u+v-w)b^2 + (u-v+w)c^2)$
antimedial	\mathcal{A}_2	$\frac{-a^2}{v+w} + \frac{b^2}{u+w} + \frac{c^2}{u+v}$
orthic	\mathcal{C}_4	$u(-S_a u + S_b v + S_c w)$
tangential	\mathcal{A}_6	$a^2 \left(\frac{-a^2}{c^2 v + w b^2} + \frac{b^2}{u c^2 + w a^2} + \frac{c^2}{u b^2 + a^2 v} \right)$
excentral	\mathcal{A}_1	$a \left(\frac{-1}{(b+c-a)(cv+bw)} + \frac{1}{(a-b+c)(cu+aw)} + \frac{1}{(b+a-c)(bu+av)} \right)$

		circumcircle of \mathcal{T}
medial	\mathcal{C}_2	$\sum (b^2 + c^2 - a^2) x^2 - 2 \sum a^2 yz$
antimedial	\mathcal{A}_2	$\sum a^2 x^2 + (a^2 + b^2 + c^2) \sum yz$
orthic	\mathcal{C}_4	$\sum (b^2 + c^2 - a^2) x^2 - 2 \sum a^2 yz$
tangential	\mathcal{A}_6	$a^2 b^2 c^2 \sum (b^2 + c^2 - a^2) x^2 + (\sum_6 a^4 b^2 - \sum_3 a^6) \sum a^2 yz$
excentral	\mathcal{A}_1	$\sum bcx^2 + (a+b+c) \sum ayz$

Figure 23.1: Special Triangles

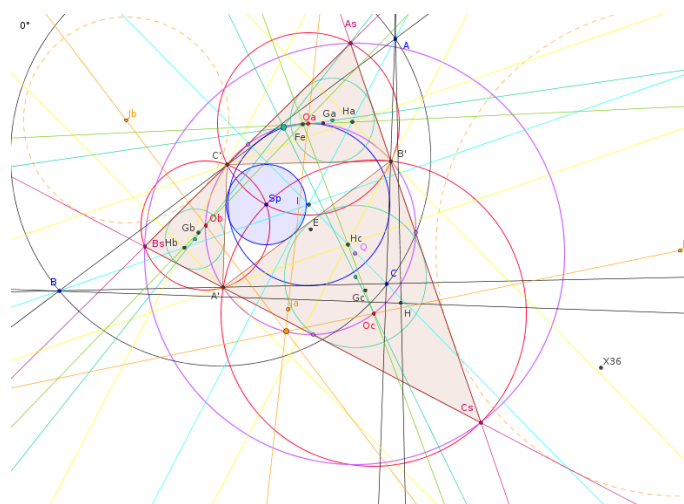


Figure 23.2: The star triangle

Chapter 24

Formal operations

Let us examine again some already defined operations, and consider in more details their formal properties

24.1 Unary operators

1. DP1, see 3.13

$$\text{DP}_1(U) = u^2(v + w) : v^2(w + u) : w^2(u + v)$$

2. DP2, see 3.14

$$\text{DP}_2(U) = u(v - w)^2 : v(w - u)^2 : w(u - v)^2$$

24.2 cevamul, cevativ, crossmul, crossdiv

These operations were considered in Kimberling to formalize various properties related to cevian nests.

Remark 24.2.1. **cevativ** has been defined in Section 3.11 by :

$$\begin{aligned} \text{cevativ}(P ; U) &\doteq \text{persp}(\text{Cevian}(\text{dividend}, ABC), \text{Anticevian}(\text{divisor}, ABC)) \\ &\simeq u(-qru + rpv + pqw) : v(qru - rpv + pqw) : w(qru + rpv - pqw) \end{aligned}$$

Property $X = \text{cevativ}(P, U)$ is sometimes stated as "X is the P-ceva conjugate of U". This operation is clearly a type-keeping (P, U) -map and an involutory U -map (when P is fixed).

Remark 24.2.2. The **cevamul** operation is the converse of the previous one, and is sometimes called cevapoint.

$$\text{cevativ}(u : v : w, x : y : z) = (uz + wx)(uy + vx) : (vz + wy)(uy + vx) : (vz + wy)(uz + wx)$$

This operation is clearly commutative and type-keeping.

Remark 24.2.3. The **crossdiv** has been defined in Section 3.10 by :

$$\begin{aligned} \text{crossdiv}(P ; U) &\doteq \text{persp}(ABC, \text{Cevian}(\text{dividend}, \text{Cevian}(\text{divisor}, ABC))) \\ &\simeq \frac{u}{quw + ruv - pvw} : \frac{v}{pvw + ruv - quw} : \frac{w}{pvw + quw - ruv} \end{aligned}$$

Property $X = \text{crossdiv}(P, U)$ is sometimes stated as "X is the P-crossconjugate of U". This operation is clearly a type-keeping (P, U) -map and an involutory U -map (when P is fixed).

Remark 24.2.4. The **crossmul** operation is the converse of the previous one, and is sometimes called crosspoint.

$$\text{crossmul}(u : v : w, x : y : z) = (vz + wy)ux : (uz + wx)vy : (uy + vx)wz$$

This operation is clearly commutative and type-keeping.

Proposition 24.2.5. 'div' formula. *The isoconjugacy that exchanges P, U also exchanges*

$$P \leftrightarrow U ; \text{crossdiv}(P, U) \leftrightarrow \text{cevdiv}(U, P) ; \text{crossdiv}(U, P) \leftrightarrow \text{cevdiv}(P, U)$$

Proof. We have $\text{crossdiv}(P, U) *_{\text{b}} \text{cevdiv}(U, P) = P *_{\text{b}} U$. □

Proposition 24.2.6. 'mul' formula. *For any isoconjugacy, we have :*

$$\begin{aligned} \text{cevdiv}(U, X) &= \text{crossmul}\left(U_F^{\#}, X_F^{\#}\right)_F^{\#} \\ \text{crossmul}(U, X) &= \text{cevdiv}\left(U_F^{\#}, X_F^{\#}\right)_F^{\#} \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Direct examination is shorter, using the "div" formula just above is more stratospheric. □

24.3 Formal operators and conics

Since they are all Cremona transforms of second degree, operators wrt a triangle can be transformed into operators wrt a well chosen conic.

Proposition 24.3.1. barymul. *Let ψ be the ABC-isoconjugacy that swaps points P, U (not on the sidelines). Then ψ swaps $\mathcal{C}_{PU} \doteq \text{conic}(A, B, C, P, U)$ and $\mathcal{L}_{PU} \doteq \text{line}(P, U)$. The pole F^2 of the conjugacy is the barymul of P, U and therefore the "barysquare" of the four fixed points of ψ :*

$$F^2 \simeq P *_{\text{b}} U ; f^2 = kp \ u, \ g^2 = kq \ v, \ h^2 = kr \ w, \ k \neq 0$$

Proposition 24.3.2. *We have the various 'cross' formulas*

formula	name	usefulness	inverse
$\frac{1}{qw} - \frac{1}{rv}$	crossmul	intersections of the tripolars, perspector of \mathcal{C}_{PU}	$X \in \mathcal{C}_{PU}$
$\frac{1}{rv} + \frac{1}{qw}$		conipole of \mathcal{L}_{PU} wrt \mathcal{C}_{PU}	crossdiv
$\frac{1}{qw - rv}$		tripole of \mathcal{L}_{PU}	$X \in \mathcal{L}_{PU}$
$\frac{1}{qw + rv}$	cevamul	$U = \text{persp}(\text{Acev}(P), \text{cev}(X))$	cevdiv

Thus the 'odd ones'¹ aren't Cremona transforms.

24.4 crossdiff, crosssum, polarmul, polardiv

Definition 24.4.1. The F -crossdiff of two points $U = u : v : w$ and $X = x : y : z$ that aren't lying on a sideline of ABC is defined by :

$$\text{crossdiff}_F(U, X) = f^2(wy - vz) : g^2(uz - wx) : h^2(vx - uy)$$

Remark 24.4.2. In ETC, $F = X(1)$ is assumed. Defined as above, the operation $(F, U, X) \mapsto \text{crossdiff}_F(U, X)$ is globally type-keeping and provides a point when the entries are points (F is any of the four fixed point of the conjugacy $X \mapsto X^*$).

Proposition 24.4.3. *The F -crosssum of U, X that was defined at Definition 21.5.5 is constructible using crossmul, cevdiv and isoconjugacies. Therefore a better definition is the globally type-keeping function :*

$$\begin{aligned} \text{crosssum}_F(U, X) &= f^2(wy + vz) : g^2(uz + wx) : h^2(vx + uy) \\ &= (\text{cevdiv}(U, X))_F^{\#} = \text{crossmul}\left(U_F^{\#}, X_F^{\#}\right) \end{aligned}$$

where $F = f : g : h$ is any of the fixed points of the conjugacy.

¹English joke. Can not be translated.

Remark 24.4.4. Defined that way, $\text{crosssum}_F(U, X)$ is really different from the polar line of X wrt the circumconic $CC(U) : uyz + vzx + wxy = 0$ since this line is the next coming polarmul.

Proposition 24.4.5. *Given U and $P \doteq \text{crosssum}_F(U, X)$ one can find X using*

$$X \simeq \text{cevdiv}(P_F^\#, U)$$

Proof. Direct inspection (here P is generic, not the "square" of the fixed point F). \square

Proposition 24.4.6. *The **polarmul of two points** U, X is a line Δ . When $U = u : v : w$ and $X = x : y : z$ are not on the sidelines, then line Δ is defined as the conipolar of the point X wrt the circumconic $CC(U)$. We have $\text{polarmul}(U, U) = \text{tripolar}(U)$ and*

$$\begin{aligned} \text{polarmul}(U, X) &= \text{complem}\left(X \div_b U\right) \div_b U \\ &= \text{crossmul}(\text{tripolar}(U), \text{tripolar}(X)) = \text{tripolar}(\text{cevdiv}(U, X)) \\ &= [wy + vz ; uz + wx ; vx + uy] \end{aligned}$$

Operation polarmul is commutative and type-crossing (i.e output is a line when entries are points).

Proposition 24.4.7. *The **polarmul of two lines** D, Δ is the point P obtained by applying "the same rules" as above, i.e.*

$$\text{polarmul}([u, v, w], [x, y, z]) \doteq wy + vz : uz + wx : vx + uy$$

Then $\text{polarmul}(\Delta, \Delta)$ is $\text{tripolar}(\Delta)$ and $\text{polarmul}(D, \Delta)$ is the conipolar of line Δ wrt the inconic whose perspector is $\text{tripolar}(D)$.

Proof. Direct inspection. Remember that the dual of an inconic "goes through" the sidelines. \square

Definition 24.4.8. The **polardiv** of a line $\Delta \simeq [\rho; \sigma; \tau]$ and a point $U \simeq u : v : w$ is the reverse operation of the previous one. One has the formula :

$$\begin{aligned} \text{polardiv}(\Delta, U) &= \text{cevdiv}(\text{tripolar}(\Delta), U) \\ &= (\sigma v + \tau w - \rho u)u : (\tau w + \rho u - \sigma v)v : (\rho u + \sigma v - \tau w)w \end{aligned}$$

that correctly defines a point when P is a line and U is a point.

24.5 Complementary and anticomplementary conjugates

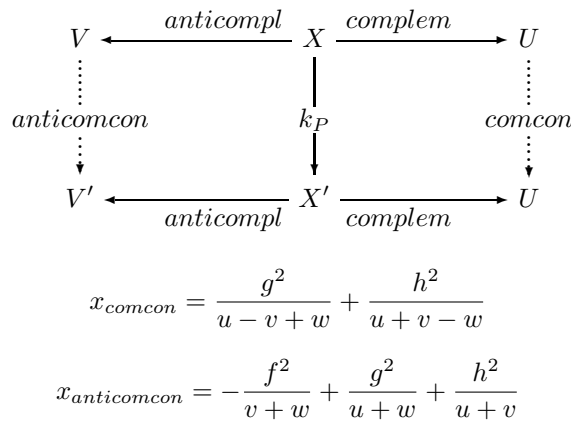


Figure 24.1: The complementary and anticomplementary conjugates

Definition 24.5.1. comcon, anticomcon. For points $P = f^2 : g^2 : rh^2$ and $U = u : v : w$, neither lying on a sideline of ABC , the P -complementary and P -anticomplementary conjugates of U are defined as in Figure 24.1, where k is the P -isoconjugacy. Most of the time, $P = X_1$ and the conjugacy reduces to isogonal conjugacy.

24.6 Hirstpoint aka Hirst inverse

Definition 24.6.1. Hirstpoint. Suppose $P = p : q : r$ and $U = u : v : w$ are distinct points, neither lying on a sideline of ABC . The hirstpoint X is the point of intersection of the line PU and the polar of U with respect to the circumconic $CC(P)$ conic :

$$p y z + q z x + r x y = 0.$$

Proposition 24.6.2. We have the following properties :

(i) H is a type-keeping operation as a "ramified product" of type-crossing transforms and :

$$\begin{aligned} \text{hirstpoint}(P, U) &= (P \wedge U) \wedge \text{polarmul}(P, U) \\ &= u^2 q r - p^2 v w : p v^2 r - u q^2 w : p q w^2 - u v r^2 \end{aligned} \quad (24.1)$$

(ii) H is commutative from the duality properties of polarization.

(iii) $H(P, U) = 0 : 0 : 0$ occurs only when $U = P$

(iv) $H(P, U) = P$ if and only if U lies on the polar line of P

(v) $H(P, H(P, U))$ is either $0 : 0 : 0$ or U . Indeterminate form is obtained (a) on the polar line of P and (b) on a conic containing P and having P as perspector ... i.e. a conic whose only real point is P .

Proof. Direct inspection for all properties. To be precise, these properties are valid only on the real part of the world. For example, (i) gives $U = p : jq : j^2 r$ where $j^3 = 1$, i.e. $U = P$ and two other "imagined" solutions. \square

All these properties show that "Hirst inverse" is a poorly chosen term, since we aren't dividing, but multiplying. Concerning the designation "Hirst inverse," see the contribution Gunter Weiss: <http://mathforum.org/kb/message.jspa?messageID=1178474>.

24.7 Line conjugate

Suppose $P = p : q : r$ and $U = u : v : w$ are distinct points, neither equal to A , B , or C . The P -line conjugate of U is the point whose trilinears are given by :

$$p(v^2 + w^2) - u(qv + rw) : q(w^2 + u^2) - v(rw + pu) : r(u^2 + v^2) - w(pu + qv)$$

This is the point of intersection of line PU and the tripolar of the isogonal conjugate of U .

Using the same formula with barycentrics, another point is obtained, that is the intersection of PU and the dual of U . So what ?

24.8 Collings transform

Lemma 24.8.1. Let M_i , $1 \leq i \leq 5$, be five (different) points, not four of them on the same line, such that $\text{midpoint}(M_1, M_2) = \text{midpoint}(M_3, M_4) = P$. They determine uniquely a conic whose center is P and contains $\text{reflection}(P, M_5)$.

Proof. Take P as origin of the euclidian coordinate system and consider determinant γ whose lines are $[x_i^2, x_i y_i, y_i^2, x_i, y_i, 1]$, the last line ($i = 6$) referring to the generic point of the plane. Since $x_2 = -x_1, \dots$ γ can be factored into $(x_1 y_3 - x_3 y_1)$ times an expression without terms of first degree in x_6, y_6 . \square

Lemma 24.8.2. Let M_i , $1 \leq i \leq 4$, be four different points, not on the same line. The locus :

$$\Theta = \{\text{center}(\gamma) \mid \gamma \text{ is a conic and } M_1, M_2, M_3, M_4 \in \gamma\}$$

is a conic. It contains the six $\text{midpoint}(M_i, M_j)$ and its center is $K = \sum M_i / 4$.

Proof. Θ is a conic since degree is two. When $P = \text{midpoint}(M_1, M_2)$, the preceding lemma can be applied to $M_1, M_2, M_3, \text{reflection}(P, M_3), M_4$, defining a conic whose center is P , so that $P \in \Theta$. Now, the lemma can be applied to Θ itself, since $K = \text{midpoint}(\text{midpoint}(M_1, M_2), \text{midpoint}(M_3, M_4))$ –and cyclically. \square

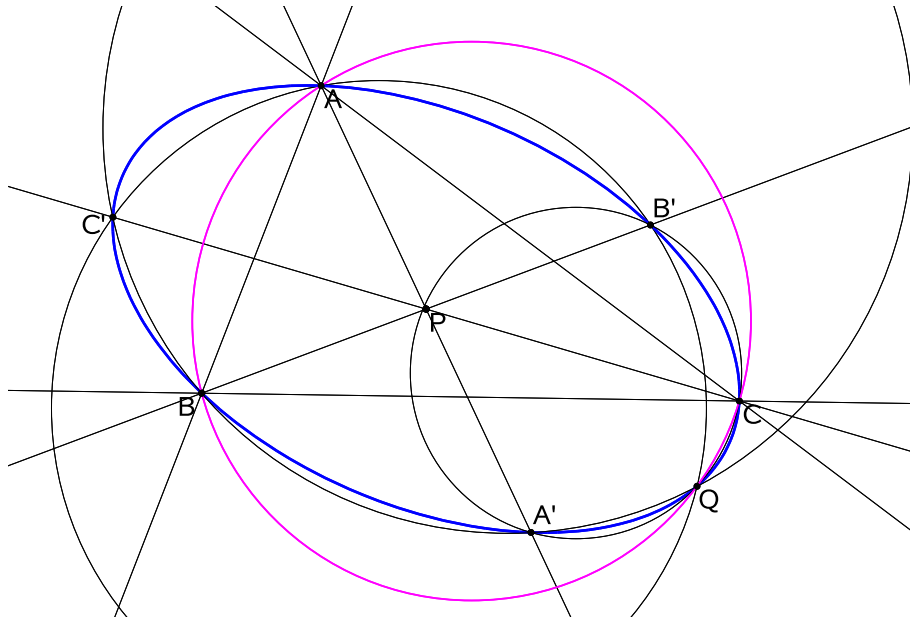


Figure 24.2: Collings configuration

Proposition 24.8.3. *Let P be a point not on a sideline of ABC , and A', B', C' the reflections of A, B, C in P .*

*(i) It exists a conic γ through the six points A, B, C, A', B', C' , its center is P and its perspector is $U = P *_b \text{anticomplement}(P)$, so that $\gamma = CC(U)$. This conic intersects the circumcircle at point $Q = \text{isotom}(X_6 \wedge U)$, i.e. the tripole of line UX_6 . Moreover, the circumcircles of triangles $AB'C'$, $A'BC'$ and $A'B'C$ are also passing through point Q .*

(ii) Conversely, when Q is given on the circumcircle, the locus of P is conic $\text{cev}(X_2, Q)$. This conic goes through the three $AB \cap CQ$ points, the three midpoint (A, Q) and through four fixed points : the vertices of medial triangle and through the circumcenter X_3 . Moreover, this conic is a rectangular hyperbola, its center is $K = (A + B + C + Q)/4$ and belongs to the nine points circle of the medial triangle.

(iii) The anticomplement of this RH is the rectangular ABC -circumhyperbola whose center is the complement of Q .

Proof. For (i), only Q belongs to circumcircle of $AB'C'$ has to be proved. Barycentric computation. For (ii), point $AB \cap CQ$ lead to the degenerate conic $AB \cup CQ$ (and cyclically) while the six midpoints come from the lemma. When $P = X_3$, conic γ is the circumcircle... and passes through A, B, C, Q and $X_3 \in \Theta$. But X_3 of ABC is X_4 of the medial triangle, and Θ contains an orthic configuration, characteristic property of a rectangular hyperbola. \square

For the sake of exhaustivity, if barycentrics of P are $p : q : r$ then barycentrics of Q are

$$Q_x : Q_y : Q_z \quad \text{where} \quad Q_x = \frac{1}{r(p+q-r)b^2 - q(p-q+r)c^2}$$

(and cyclically in a, b, c and p, q, r too). The transformation $P \mapsto Q$ was described by Collings (1974) and was further discussed by (Grinberg, 2003c).

Example 24.8.4. Examples are as follows :

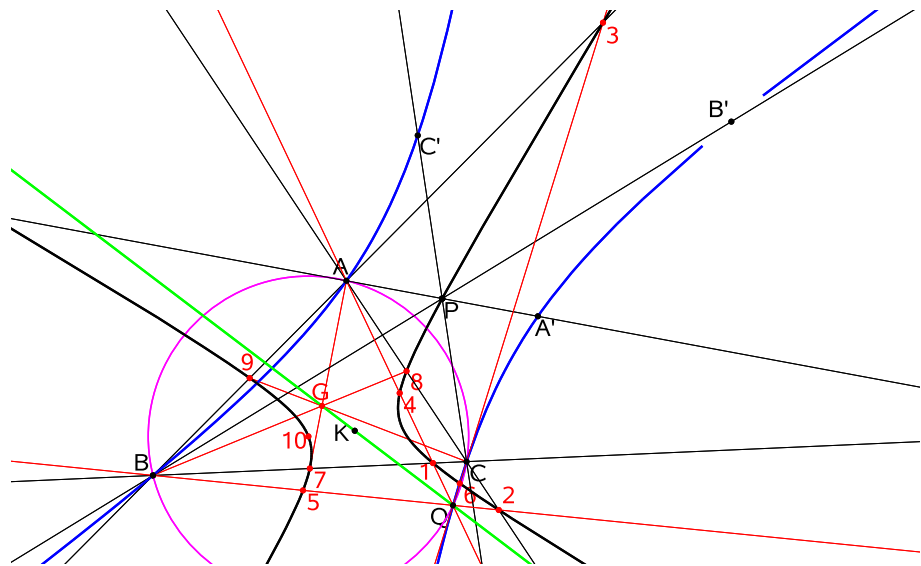


Figure 24.3: Collings locus is a ten points rectangular hyperbola

Q	points on the conic	wrt medial triangle
X_{74}	125	
X_{98}	115, 868	
X_{99}	2, 39, 114, 618, 619, 629, 630, 641, 642, 1125	Kiepert hyperbola
X_{100}	1, 9, 10, 119, 142, 214, 442, 1145	Feuerbach hyperbola
X_{107}	4, 133, 800, 1249	
X_{110}	5, 6, 113, 141, 206, 942, 960, 1147, 1209	Jerabek hyperbola
X_{476}	30	

Chapter 25

Sondat theorems

25.1 Perspective and directly similar

Remark 25.1.1. When triangle ABC is translated into $A'B'C'$, these triangles are in perspective and the perspector is the direction of the translation. The converse situation is not clear, so that translations will be excluded from what follows, implying the existence of a center. When using composition, we have to examine if nevertheless translations are reappearing.

Lemma 25.1.2. *When σ is a direct similarity (but not a translation) with center $S = z : 0 : \zeta$ and ratio $k\kappa$ (k is real while κ is unimodular, and $k\kappa \neq \pm 1$) then its matrix in the Morley space is :*

$$[\sigma] = \begin{pmatrix} k\kappa & \frac{z}{t} (1 - k\kappa) & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{\zeta}{t} \left(1 - \frac{k}{\kappa}\right) & \frac{k}{\kappa} \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. One can check that umbilics are fixed points of this transform. The characteristic polynomial of matrix $[\sigma]$ is $\chi(\mu) = (\mu - 1)(\mu - k\kappa)(\mu - k/\kappa)$. Excluding $k\kappa = \pm 1$ ensures the existence of a center. \square

Proposition 25.1.3. *When a direct central similarity $\sigma(S, k\kappa)$ and a perspector $P \neq S$ are given, the locus \mathcal{C} of points M such that $P, M, M' = \sigma(M)$ are collinear is the circle through $S, P, \sigma^{-1}P$.*

Proof. The locus contains certainly the five points such that $M = P$ or $M' = P$ or $M = M'$ i.e. S and both umbilics. The general case results from the fact that $\det[P, M, M']$ is a second degree polynomial in $\mathbf{Z}, \overline{\mathbf{Z}}, \mathbf{T}$ so that \mathcal{C} is a conic. \square

Proposition 25.1.4. *Suppose that triangles \mathcal{T}_1 and \mathcal{T}_2 are together in perspective (center P) and strictly similar (center S , ratio $k\kappa$, $\kappa \neq \pm 1$). Then P and S are the two intersections of their circumcircles ($P = S$ cannot occur).*

Proof. Use Lubin coordinates relative to $\mathcal{T}_1 = ABC$, and note $S \simeq z : t : \zeta$. Then $A'B'C'$ is obtained as :

$$[A'B'C'] \simeq [\sigma] \cdot [ABC]$$

The determinant of lines AA', BB', CC' factors as :

$$\frac{\sigma_4}{\sigma_3} \frac{k}{\kappa} (1 - \kappa^2) \left(1 - \frac{k}{\kappa}\right) (1 - k\kappa) \times \left(\frac{z\zeta - t^2}{t^2}\right)$$

proving $S \in \Gamma$. Then perspector is also on this circle (from preceding proposition). We even have the more precise result :

$$P = \begin{pmatrix} \omega & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \omega^{-1} \end{pmatrix} \cdot S \quad \text{where} \quad \omega = \frac{1 - k\kappa}{1 - \frac{k}{\kappa}}$$

\square

Proposition 25.1.5. Consider a fixed triangle ABC , and describe the plane using the Lubin frame. Consider points $P = \Phi : 1 : 1/\Phi$ and $S = \Theta : 1 : 1/\Theta$ on the unit circle (P as Φ , and S as Σ . But Σ is sum, use the next Greek letter). Assume $P \neq S$. Then all triangles $A'B'C'$ that are P -perspective and S -similar to triangle ABC are obtained as follows. Let point O' on the perpendicular bisector of (P, S) be defined by property $(SO, SO') = \kappa$ where κ^2 is a given turn. Draw circle γ centered at O' and going through P and S . Then $A' = \gamma \cap SA$, etc.

Proof. Point O' can be written as $P + S + x(\Theta\Phi : 0 : 1)$. This point is the $\sigma(S, k\kappa)$ image of O if and only if :

$$k = \kappa \frac{\Phi - \Theta}{\Phi - \kappa^2 \Theta}, [\sigma] = \begin{pmatrix} \kappa^2(\Phi - \Theta) & (1 - \kappa^2)\Theta\Phi & 0 \\ 0 & \Phi - \kappa^2\Theta & 0 \\ 0 & 1 - \kappa^2 & \Phi - \Theta \end{pmatrix}$$

As it should be, σ depends only on κ^2 , while the sign of k depends on the choice of κ among the square roots of κ^2 . The matrix of circle γ is :

$$[\gamma] = {}^t[\sigma]^{-1} \cdot [\Gamma] \cdot [\sigma]^{-1} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 - \kappa^2 & \kappa^2\Theta - \Phi \\ 1 - \kappa^2 & 2(\kappa^2\Phi - \Theta) & (1 - \kappa^2)\Theta\Phi \\ \kappa^2\Theta - \Phi & (1 - \kappa^2)\Theta\Phi & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

And it can be checked that $P, A, A' = \sigma(A)$ are collinear. \square

Proposition 25.1.6. With same hypotheses, the perspectrix of triangles ABC and $A'B'C'$ is the line :

$$XYZ = [(\Phi - \kappa^2\Theta)\Phi, -\Phi\Theta(\Phi - \kappa^2\sigma_1) + \kappa^2(\kappa^2\sigma_3 - \sigma_2\Phi), \kappa^2(\Phi - \kappa^2\Theta)\sigma_3]$$

Points S, C, C', X, Y are concyclic (and circularly). When κ^2 reaches Φ/α , then A' moves to P and XYZ becomes the sideline BC . When S is not a vertex A, B, C , the envelope of line XYZ is the Steiner parabola of point S (focus at S , directrix the Steiner line of S). The tangential equation of this parabola is given by matrix :

$$[\mathcal{P}^*] \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 2\Theta\sigma_3 & \sigma_3 & \sigma_2 - \sigma_1\Theta \\ \sigma_3 & 0 & -\Theta \\ \sigma_2 - \sigma_1\Theta & -\Theta & -2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. Since XYZ is given by second degree polynomials, the envelope is a conic. It can be obtained by diff and wedge, then eliminate. Parabola comes from the central 0. Focus is obtained in the usual way, and one recognizes S . Directrix Δ is the locus of the reflections of the focus in the tangents. From the special cases, this is the Steiner line of S .

Last point, compute circle (S, X, Y) . Special cases $\Theta = \alpha$, etc, and $\Phi = \kappa^2\Theta$ (O' at infinity) are appearing in factor. Otherwise, the equation is :

$$\alpha(\Phi - \kappa^2\Theta)\mathbf{Z}\bar{\mathbf{Z}} + (\kappa^2\alpha - \Phi)(\mathbf{Z} + \alpha\Theta\bar{\mathbf{Z}})\mathbf{T} + (\Phi\Theta - \alpha^2\kappa^2)\mathbf{T}^2$$

and this circle goes through A and A' . \square

Proposition 25.1.7. When A, B, C, S, P are according the former hypotheses, let H, H' be the respective orthocenters of ABC and $A'B'C'$. Then midpoint of H, H' belongs to XYZ if and only if $\kappa^2 = -1$ (so that κ is a quarter turn) or :

$$\kappa^2 = -\Phi^2 \frac{(\Theta - \sigma_1)}{\sigma_2\Theta - \sigma_3}, \quad \text{i.e. } \kappa = (BC, OP) + (SA, SH)$$

In the second case, XYZ is the perpendicular bisector of (H, H') .

Proof. We have $H' = \sigma(H)$ and equation in κ^2 is straightforward. Then we have :

$$\omega^2(BC) = -\beta\gamma, \omega^2(OP) = \Phi^2, \omega^2(SA) = -\Theta\alpha, \omega^2(SH) = -\sigma_3\Theta \frac{\Theta - \sigma_1}{\sigma_2\Theta - \sigma_3} \quad \square$$

Corollary 25.1.8. *Start from triangle ABC , and assume that $XYZ = [\rho, \sigma, \tau]$ while κ is a quarter turn. Then X, Y, Z are $X = 0 : \tau : -\sigma$, etc. Lines $X\delta_A = [S_c\sigma + S_b\tau, a^2\sigma, a^2\tau]$, etc are the perpendicular at X to BC , etc. Finally, point A' is $Y\delta_B \cap Z\delta_C$, etc. In other words :*

$$A' \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \rho(\rho S_b S_c + \sigma S_c S_a + \tau S_a S_b) - 4S^2\sigma\tau \\ b^2\rho(\tau c^2 - \sigma S_a - \rho S_b) \\ c^2\rho(\sigma b^2 - \tau S_a - \rho S_c) \end{pmatrix}, \text{ etc}$$

The perspector and the similitude center are :

$$P = \text{isogon}(\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t\Delta) ; S = \text{isogon}((\sigma - \tau)\rho : \sigma(\tau - \rho) : \tau(\rho - \sigma))$$

while the ratio of the similarity is :

$$k = \frac{(a^2 + b^2 + c^2)\rho\sigma\tau - S_a\rho(\sigma^2 + \tau^2) - S_b\sigma(\rho^2 + \tau^2) - S_c\tau(\rho^2 + \sigma^2)}{2S(\sigma - \tau)(\rho - \tau)(\rho - \sigma)}$$

Proof. Straightforward computation. □

25.2 Perspective and inversely similar

Lemma 25.2.1. *A circumscribed rectangular hyperbola goes through A, B, C, H, Gu where H is the orthocenter and Gu is the gudulic point, the intersection of the RH and the circumcircle. Directions of axes are given by the bisectors of, for example, AGu and BC . Then directions of asymptotes are obtained by a 45° rotation (or taking again the bisectors).*

Lemma 25.2.2. *When a rectangular hyperbola \mathcal{H} is known by its implicit equation*

$$\kappa^2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 - \frac{1}{\kappa^2} \mathbf{Z}^2 + (W \bar{\mathbf{Z}} + V \mathbf{Z}) \mathbf{T} + Q \mathbf{T}^2$$

then points $M \in \mathcal{H}$ can be parametrized as :

$$M = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} +V\kappa^2 \\ 1 \\ -W\frac{1}{\kappa^2} \end{pmatrix} + X \begin{pmatrix} \kappa \\ 0 \\ \frac{1}{\kappa} \end{pmatrix} + Y \begin{pmatrix} +i\kappa \\ 0 \\ -i\frac{1}{\kappa} \end{pmatrix} \quad (25.1)$$

where X, Y are real quantities linked by :

$$YX = \frac{-i}{16} \left(\kappa^2 V^2 + 4Q - \frac{W^2}{\kappa^2} \right)$$

Proof. This way of writing may look weird but, most of the time, hyperbola equations are appearing that way. □

Lemma 25.2.3. *Consider four points M_j on a rectangular hyperbola, parametrized by (25.1). These points form an orthocentric quadrangle if and only if :*

$$256 x_1 x_2 x_3 x_4 = \left(\kappa^2 V^2 + 4Q - \frac{W^2}{\kappa^2} \right)^2$$

Proof. We write that $(M_1 \wedge M_2) \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_z} \cdot {}^t(M_3 \wedge M_4) = 0$, and obtain this condition. The conclusion follows from the symmetry of the the result. □

Lemma 25.2.4. *When ψ is a central inverse similarity (reflections in a line are allowed, but not the other isometries), then its matrix in the Morley space can be written as :*

$$\boxed{\psi} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & \frac{z}{t} - k\kappa^2 \frac{\zeta}{t} & k\kappa^2 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \frac{k}{\kappa^2} & \frac{\zeta}{t} - \frac{k}{\kappa^2} \frac{z}{t} & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Point $S = z : 0 : \zeta$ is the center, axes are directed by $\pm\kappa^2$ and ratio is k (κ is unimodular while k is real and $k = \pm 1$ is a dubious case). One can check that umbilics are exchanged by this transform.

Proof. Let $z_2 : t_2 : \zeta_2$ be the image of the origin $0 : 1 : 0$. The characteristic polynomial of matrix :

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & z_2/t_2 & k\kappa^2 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \frac{k}{\kappa^2} & \zeta_2/t_2 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

is $\chi(\mu) = (\mu - 1)(\mu - k)(\mu + k)$. Excluding $k = \pm 1$ ensures the existence of a center. Consider the reflection δ about line through S and $\kappa^2 : 0 : 1$. We have :

$$\boxed{\delta} = \text{subs} \left(k = \pm 1, \boxed{\psi} \right) \quad ; \quad \boxed{\psi} \cdot \boxed{\delta} = \boxed{\delta} \cdot \boxed{\psi} = \begin{pmatrix} k & (1-k)\frac{z}{t} & 0 \\ 0 & & 0 \\ 0 & (1-k)\frac{\zeta}{t} & k \end{pmatrix}$$

□

Remark 25.2.5. The unimodular κ was an intrinsic quantity when we were dealing with direct similarities. Now, κ^2 measure the angle between the real axis and one of the axes of the skew similarity.

Proposition 25.2.6. *When a central skew similarity $\psi(S, k\kappa)$ and a perspector $P \neq S$ are given, the locus \mathcal{H} of points M such that $P, M, M' = \psi(M)$ are collinear is the conic through $S, P, \psi^{-1}P$ and directions of the ψ -axes (and this conic is a rectangular hyperbola).*

Proof. The locus contains certainly the five points such that $M = P$ or $M' = P$ or $M = M'$ i.e. S and both directions $\pm\kappa^2 : 0 : 1$. The general case results from the fact that $\det[P, M, M']$ is a second degree polynomial in $\mathbf{Z}, \overline{\mathbf{Z}}, \mathbf{T}$ so that \mathcal{C} is a conic. □

Proposition 25.2.7. *Suppose that triangles \mathcal{T}_1 and \mathcal{T}_2 are together in perspective (center P) and strictly antisimilar (center S , ratio $k \neq \pm 1$, direction of axes $\pm\kappa^2 : 0 : 1$). Let X be one of the points $S, P, \pm\kappa^2 : 0 : 1$. Then the other three are obtained as the remaining intersections between conic \mathcal{H} through A, B, C, H, X and conic \mathcal{H}' through A', B', C', H', X .*

Proof. Use Lubin coordinates relative to $\mathcal{T}_1 = ABC$, and note $S \simeq z : t : \zeta$. Then $A'B'C'$ is obtained as :

$$\boxed{A'B'C'} \simeq \boxed{\psi} \cdot \boxed{ABC}$$

The determinant of lines AA', BB', CC' factors as :

$$\frac{\sigma_4}{t^2\sigma_3} k(k^2 - 1) \times \text{conic}$$

proving that S belongs to the rectangular hyperbola whose implicit and parametric equations are :

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{-1}{\kappa^2} \mathbf{Z}^2 + \kappa^2 \overline{\mathbf{Z}}^2 + \left(\frac{\sigma_1}{\kappa^2} - \frac{\kappa^2}{\sigma_3} \right) \mathbf{T}\mathbf{Z} + \left(\frac{\sigma_2\kappa^2}{\sigma_3} - \frac{\sigma_3}{\kappa^2} \right) \mathbf{T}\overline{\mathbf{Z}} + \left(\frac{\sigma_1\kappa^2}{\sigma_3} - \frac{\sigma_2}{\kappa^2} \right) \mathbf{T}^2 \\ M(x) \simeq & \begin{bmatrix} x\kappa - \frac{\kappa^4 - \sigma_1\sigma_3}{2\sigma_3} + \frac{1}{16x}\kappa \left(\kappa^2 \left(\frac{\kappa^2}{\sigma_3} + \frac{\sigma_1}{\kappa^2} \right)^2 - \frac{1}{\kappa^2} \left(\frac{\sigma_3}{\kappa^2} + \frac{\sigma_2\kappa^2}{\sigma_3} \right)^2 \right) \\ 1 \\ \frac{1}{\kappa}x + \frac{\sigma_2\kappa^4 - \sigma_3^2}{2\kappa^4\sigma_3} - \frac{1}{16x}\frac{1}{\kappa} \left(\kappa^2 \left(\frac{\kappa^2}{\sigma_3} + \frac{\sigma_1}{\kappa^2} \right)^2 - \frac{1}{\kappa^2} \left(\frac{\sigma_3}{\kappa^2} + \frac{\sigma_2\kappa^2}{\sigma_3} \right)^2 \right) \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

Then perspector is also on this hyperbola (from preceding proposition). We even have the more precise result :

$$k = \frac{x_S - x_P}{x_S + x_P}$$

□

Proposition 25.2.8. Consider a triangle A, B, C , its orthocenter H and two points S, P such that the six points A, B, C, H, P, S are on the same conic \mathcal{H} . Then it exists exactly one triangle $A'B'C'$ that is together S -antisimilar and P perspective with ABC . Moreover A', B', C', H', P, S are on the same conic \mathcal{H}' , both conics are rectangular hyperbolas and share the same asymptotic directions. Finally, the gudulic point G_u of conic \mathcal{H} sees triangle ABC at right angles with trigone $A'B'C'$, and the fourth intersection of conic \mathcal{H}' with circle Γ' sees triangle $A'B'C'$ at right angles with trigone ABC .

Proof. A conic through A, B, C, D is a rectangular hyperbola. Consider one of its asymptotes and draw a parallel Δ to this line through point S . Let A'', B'', C'', H'' be the reflections of A, B, C, H into Δ . Then we have $A' = SA'' \cap PA$, etc. Final result comes from \square

Proposition 25.2.9. When A, B, C, H, P are fixed, the direction of the perspectrix XYZ is also fixed.

Proposition 25.2.10. When A, B, C, H, S are fixed and P moves onto the A, B, C, H, S hyperbola, the envelope of the perspectrix XYZ is the parabola inscribed in triangle ABC whose directrix is line HS .

25.3 Parallelogy

Definition 25.3.1. Two triangles \mathcal{T}_1 and \mathcal{T}_2 are **parallelogic** when a point M_1 exists that sees triangle \mathcal{T}_1 with rays parallel to the sidelines of \mathcal{T}_2 . In other words, the lines drawn from the vertices of \mathcal{T}_1 and parallel to the corresponding sides of \mathcal{T}_2 are concurrent at a point M_1 (the ray source).

Proposition 25.3.2. Parallelogy is a symmetric relation between triangles (defining a ray source M_1 that sees \mathcal{T}_1 and a ray source M_2 that sees \mathcal{T}_2).

Proof. Using computer, symmetry is straightforward : condition of concurrence is the product of $\det \mathcal{T}_2$ by a polynomial that is invariant by exchange of the two triangles. \square

Proposition 25.3.3. When $\mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_2$ are parallelogic, the formula $\boxed{\phi} \doteq \boxed{\mathcal{T}_2} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{T}_1}^{-1}$ (columns are supposed to be synchronized !) defines a collineation ϕ such that $\mathcal{L}_b \mapsto \mathcal{L}_b$ together with $A_1 \mapsto A_2$, etc. Then $\phi(M_1) = M_2$. Moreover, any other triangle is parallelogic with its image by ϕ (so that ϕ itself can be called a **parallelogy**).

Conversely, a collineation ϕ is a parallelogy when (1) $\mathcal{L}_b \mapsto \mathcal{L}_b$ and (2) $\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \boxed{\phi} = \text{trace}(\phi) \mathcal{L}_b$.

Proof. Direct computation, assuming that $\mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_2$ are parallelogic. \square

Exercise 25.3.4. (spoiler). **Parallelogy in $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$.** Morley spaces: conditions are $\phi_{21} = \phi_{23} = 0$ to enforce $\mathcal{L}_z \mapsto \mathcal{L}_z$ and $\phi_{11} + \phi_{33} = 0$ to have the right trace.

25.4 Orthology

Definition 25.4.1. We say that point P sees triangle $A'B'C'$ at right angles to trigone ABC when P is different from A', B', C' and verifies $PA' \perp BC$ etc.

Remark 25.4.2. Should point P be at infinity, all sidelines of ABC would have the same direction, and triangle ABC would be degenerate (flat). Some problems are to be expected...

Lemma 25.4.3. The orthodir of the BC sideline is $\delta_A \doteq a^2 : -S_c : -S_b$. This is also the direction of line HA , where H is the orthocenter of the triangle.

Proposition 25.4.4. Consider two non degenerate finite triangles $ABC, A'B'C'$ and suppose that it exists a finite point P , different from A', B', C' , that sees triangle $A'B'C'$ at right angles to trigone ABC . Then it exist a point U that sees triangle ABC at right angles to trigone $A'B'C'$.

Proof. From hypothesis, A' belongs to line $P\delta_A$. Then it exists a real number $k_A \neq \infty$ such that $A' = k_AP + \delta_A$. And the same for B', C' . Now compute :

$$A'' \doteq \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot (B' \wedge C') = -2S(p+q+r) \begin{pmatrix} -k_B - k_C \\ k_B \\ k_C \end{pmatrix}$$

This comes from $P \wedge P = 0$, together with $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t(\delta_B \wedge \delta_C) = \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t\mathcal{L}_b = 0$. Since $p+q+r \neq 0$ and $k_j \neq 0$ is assumed, column A'' really defines a direction. We can therefore simplify and obtain :

$$A''B''C'' = \begin{pmatrix} -k_B - k_C & k_A & k_A \\ k_B & -k_A - k_C & k_B \\ k_C & k_C & -k_A - k_B \end{pmatrix}$$

This triangle is perspective to ABC , with perspector $U = k_A : k_B : k_C$. Therefore point U sees triangle ABC at right angles to trigone $A'B'C'$. \square

Definition 25.4.5. We say that two triangles are **orthologic** to each other when it exists a point M_1 that sees triangle \mathcal{T}_1 with rays orthogonal to the sidelines of trigone \mathcal{T}_2 and a point M_2 that sees triangle \mathcal{T}_2 at right angles to the sidelines of trigone \mathcal{T}_1 .

In other words, the lines drawn from the vertices of \mathcal{T}_1 and orthogonal to the corresponding sidelines of \mathcal{T}_2 are concurrent at a point M_1 (the ray source) , etc. In this definition, flat triangles and centers at infinity are allowed.

Remark 25.4.6. This property cannot be reworded in a shorter form (the so-called symmetry), since $P \notin \mathcal{L}_b$ is required to be sure of the existence of U , but this is not sufficient to be sure of $U \notin \mathcal{L}_b$.

Example 25.4.7. Cevian triangles of $X(2)$ and $X(7)$ are orthologic. Orthology centers are $X(10)$ and $X(1)$.

Proposition 25.4.8. Let ABC be the reference triangle, P a point not on the sidelines, Q its isogonal conjugate and $P_AP_BP_C$, $Q_AQ_BQ_C$ their respective pedal triangles. Then ABC and $P_AP_BP_C$ are orthologic. The center which looks at $P_AP_BP_C$ is obviously P , while the center which looks at A, B, C is Q . Let EF be the line through A and parallel to Q_BQ_C , etc. Then ABC is the pedal triangle of P wrt DEF , and ABC is orthologic with DEF . The center which looks at D, E, F is $K = 2O - P$, whose barycentrics wrt DEF are $p : q : r$. The triangle DEF is called the **anti-pedal triangle** of P and we have: $DEF \simeq$

$$\begin{pmatrix} +qr(a^2q + S_cp)(a^2r + S_bp) & -pr(a^2q + S_cp)(b^2r + S_aq) & -pq(a^2r + S_bp)(c^2q + S_ar) \\ -qr(b^2p + S_cq)(a^2r + S_bp) & +pr(b^2p + S_cq)(b^2r + S_aq) & -pq(c^2p + S_br)(b^2r + S_aq) \\ -qr(a^2q + S_cp)(c^2p + S_br) & -pr(b^2p + S_cq)(c^2q + S_ar) & +pq(c^2p + S_br)(c^2q + S_ar) \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. Using the mkortho routine, one obtains the coordinates of Q , and $Q_AQ_BQ_C$. Then one computes the lines EF , etc and obtain the points D, E, F . Using again the mkortho routine, one obtains K . See Figure 25.1. The cyan circles are illustrating the cyclopedal property (Section 9.3). \square

Proposition 25.4.9. When $\mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_2$ are orthologic, the formula $\boxed{\phi} \doteq \boxed{\mathcal{T}_2} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{T}_1}^{-1}$ defines a collineation ϕ such that $\mathcal{L}_b \mapsto \mathcal{L}_b$ together with $A_1 \mapsto A_2$, etc. Then $\phi(M_1) = M_2$. Moreover, any other triangle is orthologic with its image by ϕ (so that ϕ itself can be called an orthology).

Conversely, a collineation ϕ is an orthology when (1) $\mathcal{L}_b \mapsto \mathcal{L}_b$ and (2) $\text{trace}(\boxed{\phi} \cdot \boxed{\text{OrtO}}) = 0$.

Proof. Direct computation, assuming that $\mathcal{T}_1, \mathcal{T}_2$ are orthologic. \square

Exercise 25.4.10. (spoiler). **Orthology in $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$.** Morley spaces:. Conditions are $\phi_{21} = \phi_{23} = 0$ to enforce $\mathcal{L}_z \mapsto \mathcal{L}_z$ and $\phi_{11} = \phi_{33}$ to have the right trace.

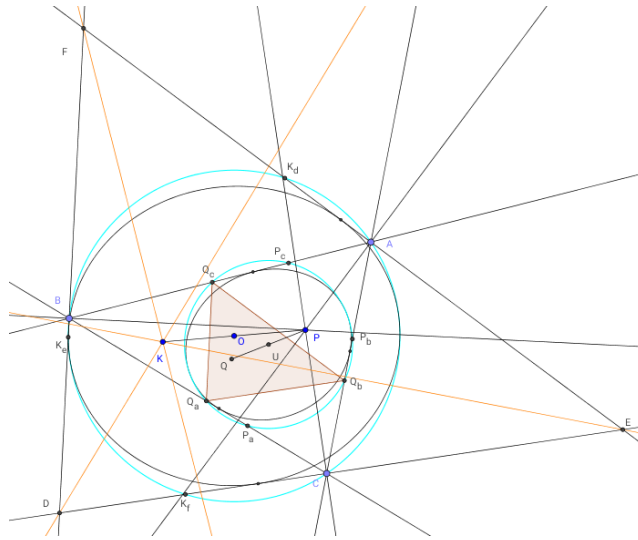


Figure 25.1: Antipedal triangle

Proposition 25.4.11. Assume that triangle ABC is not degenerate and let the finite points P, U be described by their barycentrics $P = p : q : r$ and $U = u : v : w$ (here $P = U$ is allowed). Moreover, assume that U is not on the sidelines of ABC . Then all triangles $A'B'C'$ such that point P sees triangle $A'B'C'$ at right angles to trigone ABC and point U sees triangle ABC at right angles to trigone $A'B'C'$ are given by formula :

$$\boxed{A'B'C'} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} pu + a^2\vartheta & pv - S_c\vartheta & pw - S_b\vartheta \\ qu - S_c\vartheta & qv + b^2\vartheta & qw - S_a\vartheta \\ ru - S_b\vartheta & rv - S_a\vartheta & rw + c^2\vartheta \end{pmatrix} = (P \cdot {}^tU) + 2S\vartheta \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \quad (25.2)$$

where ϑ parametrizes an homothety centered at P .

Proof. Since $u \neq 0$, relation $A' \in P\delta_A$ can be written as $A' \simeq uP + \vartheta_A\delta_A$ for some coefficient ϑ_A , and the same holds for the two other points. Now, compute :

$$\det \left[uP + \vartheta_A\delta_A, vP + \vartheta_B\delta_B, \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b}^t(C \wedge U) \right] = 4uvS(p + q + r)(\vartheta_A - \vartheta_B)$$

Due to the hypotheses, all the ϑ must have the same value, leading to the formula. Converse is obvious, when a triangle is as described by the formulas, both orthologies are verified. \square

Remark 25.4.12. When using inclusive coordinates ($P \mapsto M_1$, $U \mapsto M_2$), one obtains $\boxed{A'B'C'} \underset{z}{\simeq} \boxed{\mathcal{T}_K} \doteq$

$$\begin{bmatrix} z_1 + \frac{K\beta\gamma}{z_2 - (\beta + \gamma)t_2 + \beta\gamma\zeta_2} & z_1 + \frac{\alpha\gamma K}{z_2 - (\gamma + \alpha)t_2 + \alpha\gamma\zeta_2} & z_1 + \frac{\alpha\beta K}{z_2 - (\alpha + \beta)t_2 + \alpha\beta\zeta_2} \\ t_1 & t_1 & t_1 \\ \zeta_1 + \frac{K}{z_2 - (\beta + \gamma)t_2 + \beta\gamma\zeta_2} & \zeta_1 + \frac{K}{z_2 - (\gamma + \alpha)t_2 + \alpha\gamma\zeta_2} & \zeta_1 + \frac{K}{z_2 - (\alpha + \beta)t_2 + \alpha\beta\zeta_2} \end{bmatrix}$$

And it becomes obvious that $\boxed{\mathcal{T}_K} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{T}_K}^{-1} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \frac{K}{Q} & \left(1 - \frac{K}{Q}\right) \frac{z_1}{t_1} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \left(1 - \frac{K}{Q}\right) \frac{\zeta_1}{t_1} & \frac{K}{Q} \end{bmatrix}$ is an homothety centered

at M_1 .

Remark 25.4.13. If P were at infinity, PA' , PB' , PC' would have the same direction, and also the sidelines of ABC . In the formula, this would lead to A', B', C' at infinity. If coordinate u was 0 then $UB \parallel UC$ so that $A'B' \parallel A'C'$. In the formula, this would lead to A' at infinity.

25.5 Simply orthologic and perspective triangles

Definition 25.5.1. When triangles are orthologic with $P \neq U$, we say they are simply orthologic. When $P = U$, we say they are bilogic.

Notation 25.5.2. In this chapter, when triangles ABC and $A'B'C'$ are in perspective, their perspector will be noted Ω (and never P , nor U), while the perspectrix will be noted XYZ with $X = BC \cap B'C'$, etc.

Theorem 25.5.3 (First Sondat Theorem). *Assume that triangle ABC is finite and non degenerate ; P is at finite distance ; U is different from P and is not on the sidelines. Then it exists exactly one triangle $A'B'C'$ such that (1) P sees $A'B'C'$ at right angles to trigone ABC (2) U sees ABC at right angle to trigone $A'B'C'$ (3) $A'B'C'$ is perspective to ABC . When $A'B'C'$ is chosen that way, the corresponding perspector Ω is collinear with points P, U and the perspectrix XYZ is orthogonal to PU .*

Proof. We have assumed that $P = p : q : w$ is different from $U = u : v : w$. Then ϑ is fixed by the condition of being perspective and we have :

$$\begin{aligned}\vartheta &= -\frac{u(vS_b - wS_c)qr + v(wS_c - uS_a)pr + w(uS_a - vS_b)pq}{(vS_b - wS_c)pS_a + (wS_c - uS_a)qS_b + (uS_a - vS_b)rS_c} \\ \Omega &= \frac{S_cw - S_bv}{qw - rv} : \frac{S_cw - S_au}{pw - ru} : \frac{S_bv - S_au}{pv - qu} \\ \text{tripolar}(\Delta) &= \left(\begin{array}{c} \frac{(S_cw - S_bv)p + (S_bu + a^2w)q - (S_cu + a^2v)r}{S_bq - S_cr} \\ \frac{(S_au - S_cw)q + (b^2u + S_cv)r - (S_av + b^2w)p}{S_cr - S_ap} \\ \frac{(S_bv - S_au)r + (c^2v + S_aw)p - (S_bw + c^2u)q}{S_ap - S_bq} \end{array} \right)\end{aligned}$$

First assertion is proved by $\Omega \simeq \alpha U - \beta P$ where :

$$\left(\begin{array}{c} \alpha \\ \beta \end{array} \right) \simeq \left[\begin{array}{c} (qw - rv)puS_a + (ru - pw)vqS_b + rw(pv - qu)rwS_c \\ (qw - rv)u^2S_a + (ru - pw)v^2S_b + (pv - qu)w^2S_c \end{array} \right]$$

Second assertion is proved by checking that

$$\Delta \cdot \boxed{\text{OrtO}} \cdot (\text{normalized}(P) - \text{normalized}(U)) = 0$$

□

25.6 Bilogic triangles

Proposition 25.6.1. *Bilogic triangles are ever in perspective. When orthology center is $U = u : v : w$ is finite and not on the sidelines, formula (25.2) becomes*

$$\boxed{A'B'C'} \simeq \left(\begin{array}{ccc} u^2 + a^2\vartheta & uv - S_c\vartheta & uw - S_b\vartheta \\ uv - S_c\vartheta & v^2 + b^2\vartheta & vw - S_a\vartheta \\ uw - S_b\vartheta & vw - S_a\vartheta & r^2 + c^2\vartheta \end{array} \right) = (U \cdot {}^tU) + 2S\vartheta \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \quad (25.3)$$

while the perspector and the tripole of the perspectrix are respectively :

$$\begin{aligned}\Omega &\simeq (\vartheta vw - S_a)^{-1} : (\vartheta wu - S_b)^{-1} : (\vartheta uv - S_c)^{-1} \\ \text{tripolar}(XYZ) &\simeq \left(\begin{array}{c} (vwa^2 + u(vS_b + wS_c - uS_a))\vartheta - 4S^2 \\ (uwv^2 + v(wS_c + uS_a - vS_b))\vartheta - 4S^2 \\ (uvc^2 + w(uS_a + vS_b - wS_c))\vartheta - 4S^2 \end{array} \right)\end{aligned}$$

Proof. Straightforward computation. □

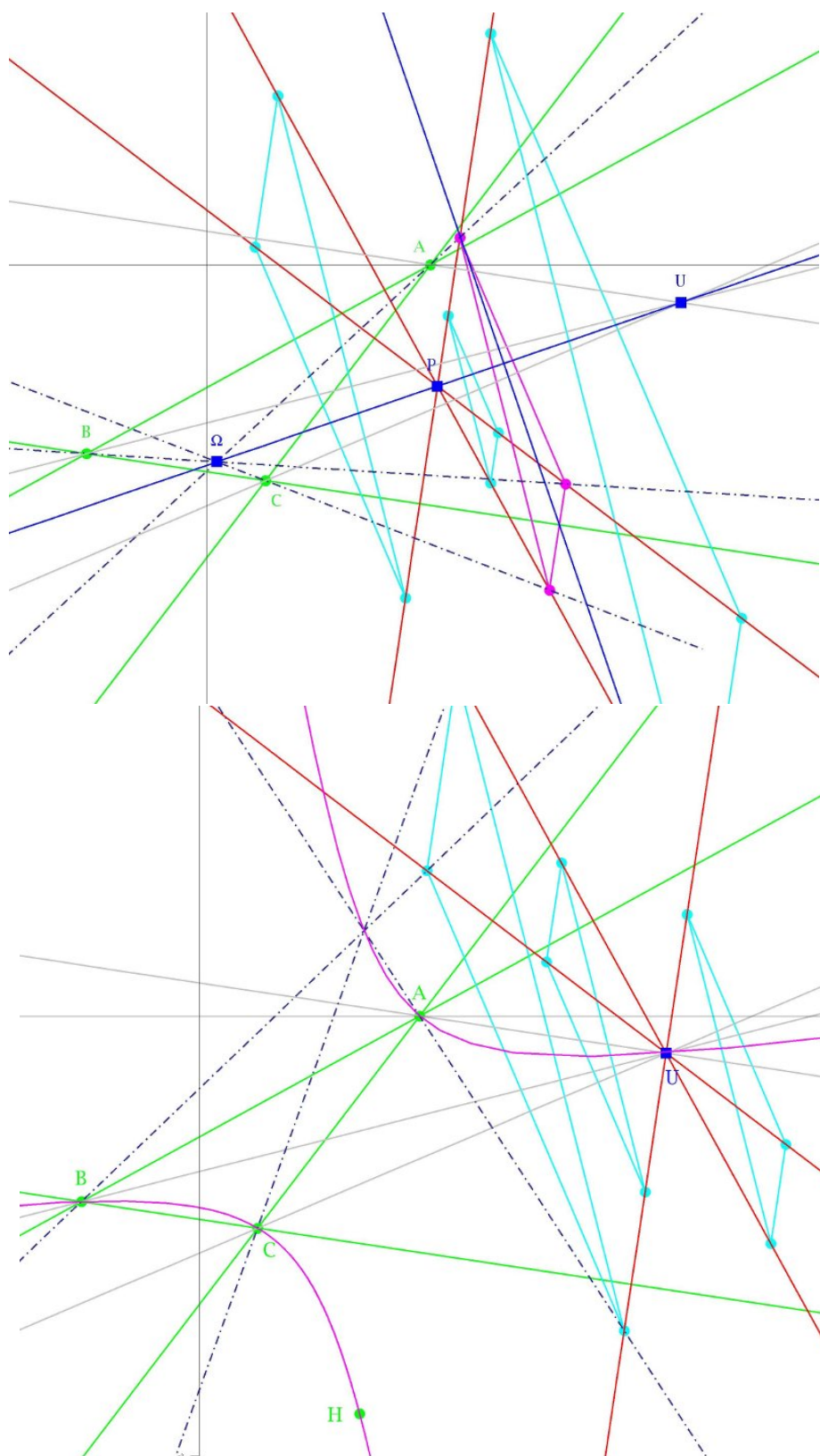


Figure 25.2: Orthology and perspective.

Proposition 25.6.2. *When triangle ABC is fixed and the bilogic center U is given, the locus of the perspector Ω of the bilogic triangles $A'B'C'$ is the rectangular hyperbola that goes through $A, B, C, U, H=X(4)$. The perspector of this circumconic is :*

$$u(vS_b - wS_c) : v(wS_c - uS_a) : w(uS_a - vS_b)$$

while the envelope of the perspectrix is the inconic whose perspector is :

$$(vS_b - wS_c)^{-1} : (wS_c - uS_a)^{-1}, (uS_a - vS_b)^{-1}$$

Proof. Eliminate ϑ from Ω . Then eliminate ϑ from XYZ and take the adjoint matrix. □

Proposition 25.6.3. *Let $ABC, A'B'C'$ be two bilogic triangles, with orthology center U , perspector Ω and perspectrix (XYZ) where $X = BC \cap B'C'$, etc. Then lines $U\Omega$ and XYZ are orthogonal. Moreover we have $(UX) \perp (AA'\Omega)$, etc.*

Proof. We compute the orthodir δ of line XYZ and find that :

$$\delta = \begin{bmatrix} (u^2(w+v)S_a - S_cuw^2 - S_bv^2u)\theta + S_bS_c(v+w) - a^2S_a u \\ (v^2(w+u)S_b - S_avu^2 - S_cvw^2)\theta + S_cS_a(w+u) - b^2S_b v \\ (w^2(v+u)S_c - S_awu^2 - S_bwv^2)\theta + S_aS_b(u+v) - c^2S_c w \end{bmatrix}$$

It remains to check that $normalized(\Omega) - normalized(U)$ is proportional to δ . □

Chapter 26

Linear Families of Inscribed Triangles

This chapter is an extended version of Douillet (2014c) and summarises discussions with pappus, Poulbot and others at <http://www.les-mathematiques.net>

Notation 26.0.1. In all parts of this chapter, the relations

$$f + g + h = u + v + w = \rho + \sigma + \tau$$

will ever be assumed. These rules are related to the asymmetric parametrization described at Definition 26.2.18.

26.1 General linear families of triangles

Definition 26.1.1. Suppose that a_0, b_0, c_0 and a_1, b_1, c_1 are six points at finite distance, together with $a_0 \neq a_1, b_0 \neq b_1, c_0 \neq c_1$. Then we say that

$$\boxed{\mathcal{T}_t} = t \boxed{\mathcal{T}_1} + (1 - t) \boxed{\mathcal{T}_0}$$

defines a (general) linear family of triangles.

Remark 26.1.2. Property $a_0 \notin \mathcal{L}_b$, etc is required to allow the projective definition:

$$a_t \doteq t \frac{a_1}{\mathcal{L}_b \cdot a_1} + (1 - t) \frac{a_0}{\mathcal{L}_b \cdot a_0}$$

while property $a_0 \neq a_1$, etc is required to ensure the existence of $\mathcal{L}_a \doteq a_0 \wedge a_1$, etc.

Remark 26.1.3. Such a family can also be defined as

$$\boxed{\mathcal{T}_t} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 1 - t(v_{12} + v_{13}) - p_{12} - p_{13} & tv_{21} + p_{21} & tv_{31} + p_{31} \\ tv_{12} + p_{12} & 1 - t(v_{21} + v_{23}) - p_{21} - p_{23} & tv_{32} + p_{32} \\ tv_{13} + p_{13} & tv_{23} + p_{23} & 1 - t(v_{31} + v_{32}) - p_{31} - p_{32} \end{bmatrix}$$

where triangles $\boxed{\mathcal{T}_t}$ are in a normalized form, while $(\boxed{\mathcal{T}_t} - \boxed{\mathcal{T}_s}) / (t - s)$ is a set of three non-zero constant vectors.

Definition 26.1.4. An **equicenter** \mathcal{E} is a fixed point which has the same barycentrics wrt all the triangles \mathcal{T}_t of the family. The column $F = f_a : f_b : f_c$ of these barycentrics is called the Neuberg column of the family (and doesn't depends on the barycentric frame used to compute them).

Definition 26.1.5. An **areal center** \mathcal{S} is a fixed point which verifies:

$$\forall s, t : \text{area}(\mathcal{S}, a_t, a_s) = \text{area}(\mathcal{S}, b_t, b_s) = \text{area}(\mathcal{S}, c_t, c_s)$$

For reasons given later, this point is also called the **slowness center** of the family.

Construction 26.1.6. The *Neuberg's (1921)* construction of \mathcal{E}, \mathcal{S} is as follows (see Figure 26.1). From an auxiliary point O , draw points $O_a \doteq O + a_1 - a_0$, etc and compute $f_a = \text{area}(O, O_b, O_c)$, etc. Then O is the barycenter of the O_j with coefficients f_j , and this implies that $\boxed{\mathcal{T}_t} \cdot F$ is ever equal to $f_a a_0 + f_b b_0 + f_c c_0$.

And now, draw the lines $\mathcal{L}_A \doteq a_0 \wedge a_1$, etc, obtain the points $A \doteq \mathcal{L}_b \wedge \mathcal{L}_c$, etc. and take their barycenter, i.e. compute $\mathcal{S} \doteq \boxed{ABC} \cdot F$.

Discussion. If O is chosen as $1 - y - z : y : z$ then

$$f_a = \det \begin{bmatrix} 1 - y - z & 1 - y - z - v_{21} & -y - z - v_{31} \\ y & y + v_{21} + v_{23} & y - v_{32} \\ z & z - v_{23} & z + v_{31} + v_{32} \end{bmatrix}$$

and, therefore:

$$F = \begin{pmatrix} v_{21}v_{31} + v_{21}v_{32} + v_{23}v_{31} \\ v_{31}v_{12} + v_{12}v_{32} + v_{32}v_{13} \\ v_{12}v_{23} + v_{21}v_{13} + v_{23}v_{13} \end{pmatrix}$$

When $f_a + f_b + f_c = 0$, the magenta triangle of Figure 26.1 is flat and point \mathcal{E} is at infinity. When $f_a = f_b = f_c = 0$, we have the special-special case, discussed at Proposition 26.13.3

The trigone (\mathcal{L}_j) degenerates when quantity $\det(\mathcal{L}_a, \mathcal{L}_b, \mathcal{L}_c) =$

$$(p_{12}v_{13} - p_{13}v_{12})f_a + (-p_{21}v_{23} + p_{23}v_{21})f_b + (p_{31}v_{32} - p_{32}v_{31})f_c + v_{12}v_{23}v_{31} - v_{13}v_{21}v_{32}$$

vanishes. Otherwise... everything becomes simpler when seen from ABC , the fixed circumscribed triangle. See next coming section for a discussion of what happens when \mathcal{S} is at infinity. \square

26.2 Slowness- and equi-center of a LFIT

26.2.1 Slowness center

Definition 26.2.1. We say that triangle abc is **inscribed** in triangle ABC when $a \in BC$, etc. Conversely, we say that ABC is **circumscribed** to triangle abc .

Definition 26.2.2. LFIT. When the triangles \mathcal{T}_t of the former section are all inscribed into a fixed (non degenerate) triangle ABC , this situation is described as a Linear Family of Inscribed Triangles. Using the values relative to $t = 0$ and $t = 1$, this can be written as:

$$\begin{aligned} \boxed{\mathcal{T}_t} &\doteq \boxed{a_t b_t c_t} \doteq (1-t) \boxed{a_0 b_0 c_0} + (t) \boxed{a_1 b_1 c_1} \\ \boxed{\mathcal{T}_t} &= (1-t) \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1-q_0 & r_0 \\ p_0 & 0 & 1-r_0 \\ 1-p_0 & q_0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} + (t) \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1-q_1 & r_1 \\ p_1 & 0 & 1-r_1 \\ 1-p_1 & q_1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (26.1)$$

Construction 26.2.3. *Geogebra:* given $a_t \in BC$, the temporal parameter t is obtained as

```
t= real ( (a_t - a_0)/(a_1 - a_0) ) ; real is required
b_t= (t)*b_1+(1-t)*b_0 + 0*I ; not a vector
```

Definition 26.2.4. As in Figure 26.2, the velocities \vec{v}_a , etc are defined by $\vec{v}_a \doteq a_1 - a_0 = [0, p_1 - p_0, p_0 - p_1]$, while the so called "speed vector" is defined by $\vec{V} \doteq [p_1 - p_0, q_1 - q_0, r_1 - r_0]$.

Remark 26.2.5. Many things are to be computed from the speed vector, with the following strange property: everything becomes simpler when introducing the reciprocal of these quantities (remember that $t \mapsto a$, etc are non constant). This leads to the following:

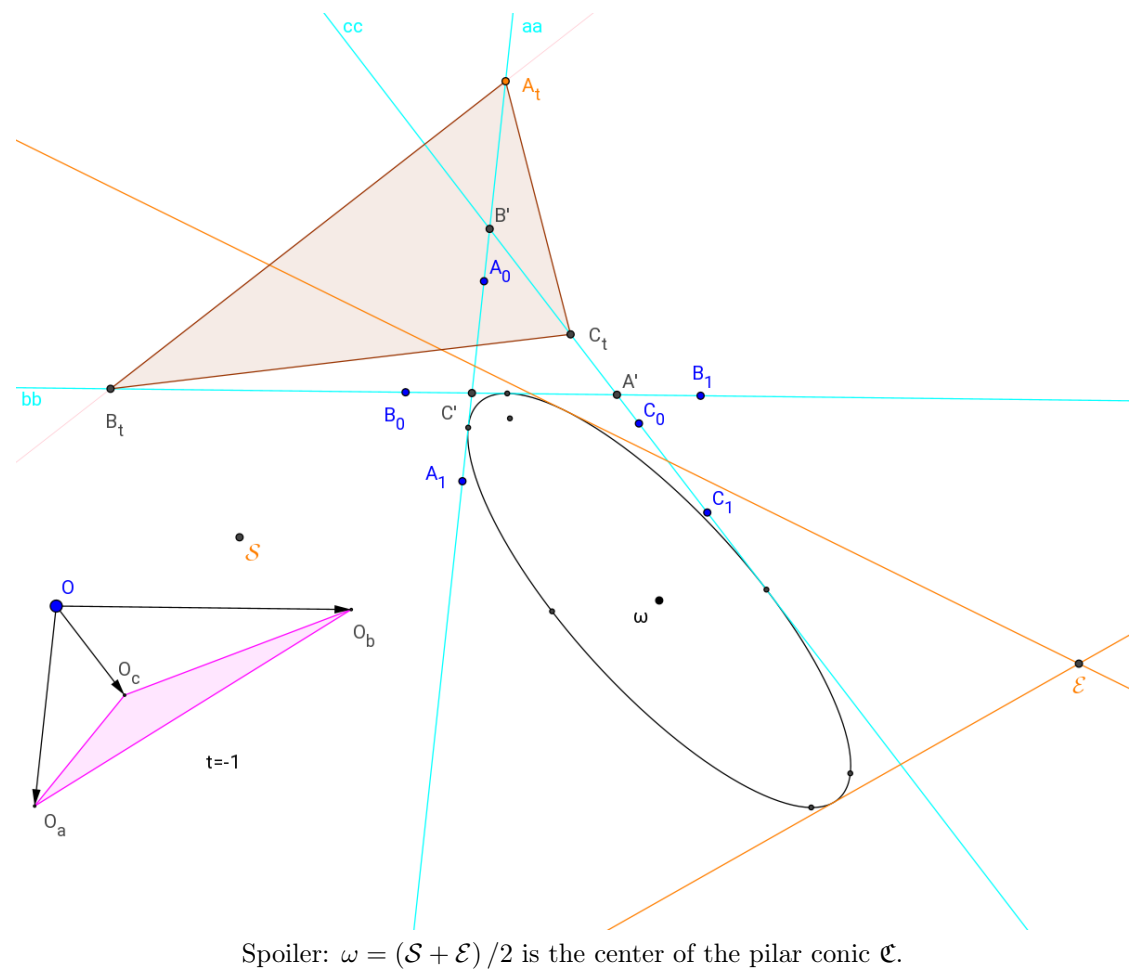
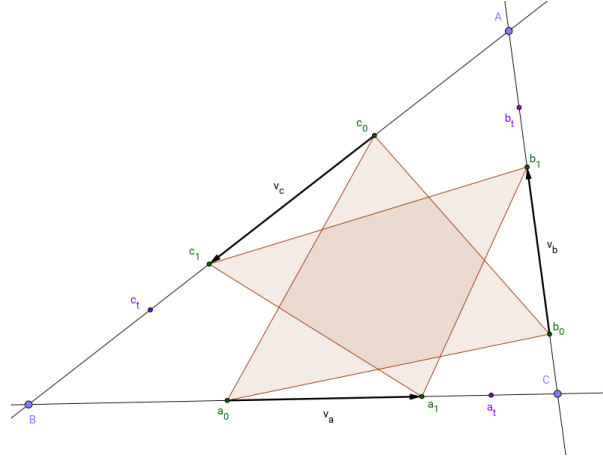


Figure 26.1: The Neuberg construction

Figure 26.2: Variable triangle abc is inscribed into fixed triangle ABC

Definition 26.2.6. The **slowness center** of a linear family of triangles is:

$$\mathcal{S} \doteq f : g : h \simeq \frac{1}{p_1 - p_0} : \frac{1}{q_1 - q_0} : \frac{1}{r_1 - r_0}$$

leading to the following description (where indices 0 have been omitted) :

$$\boxed{abc}(t) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 - q - \frac{t}{g} & r + \frac{t}{h} \\ p + \frac{t}{f} & 0 & 1 - r - \frac{t}{h} \\ 1 - p - \frac{t}{f} & q + \frac{t}{g} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (26.2)$$

Remark 26.2.7. Considering \mathcal{S} as a projective quantity is only recognizing that choosing a time unit or another is unessential. Caveat: when used together with the later introduced $\mathcal{E} \simeq u : v : w$, the projective object is $f : g : h : u : v : w$, so that neither $f : g : h$ nor $u : v : w$ can be changed "at will", i.e. independently of the other.

Theorem 26.2.8 (Main result). *The slowness center is the **areal center** of the family. In other words, the areas swept out from \mathcal{S} by the \mathcal{T} -vertices are equivalent for any pair t_1, t_2 .*

Proof. Suppose that \mathcal{S} is at finite distance, compute the area, obtain:

$$\text{area}(\mathcal{S}, a(t_1), a(t_2)) = (t_2 - t_1) \mathcal{S} \div (f + g + h)$$

and conclude from symmetry. Suppose now that \mathcal{S} is at infinity (i.e. $h = -f - g$), compute the width of the strip created by the parallel lines $\Delta_1 \doteq \mathcal{S} \wedge a(t_1)$ and $\Delta_2 \doteq \mathcal{S} \wedge a(t_2)$, obtain:

$$\Delta_2 - \Delta_1 = [t_1 - t_2 : t_1 - t_2 : t_1 - t_2]$$

and here again conclude from symmetry. □

26.2.2 Equicenter

Theorem 26.2.9 (Neuberg). *If we apply to abc the barycentrics of \mathcal{S} wrt ABC , we obtain a fixed point, the so called equicenter \mathcal{E} (except in the special-special case where \mathcal{E} degenerates into $0 : 0 : 0$, see Proposition 26.13.3)*

Proof. From equation (26.2), it is obvious that $\mathcal{E} \doteq \boxed{abc} \cdot \mathcal{S}$ doesn't depend on t . And we have:

$$\mathcal{E} \simeq u : v : w = (1 - q)g + rh : (1 - r)h + pf : (1 - p)f + qg$$

This formula complies with the later requirement that: $u + v + w = f + g + h$. □

Remark 26.2.10. When one of the centers \mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E} is at infinity, the other is also at infinity.

26.2.3 Pilar point

Definition 26.2.11. The pilar point $\Omega \simeq \rho : \sigma : \tau$ is defined by the hard equalities:

$$\begin{aligned} f + g + h &= u + v + w = \rho + \sigma + \tau \\ \mathcal{S} + \mathcal{E} + \Omega &= (f + g + h)(A + B + C) \end{aligned} \quad (26.3)$$

26.2.4 Parametrization of a LFIT

Parametrization (26.2) has many interesting properties, among them its genericity and its symmetry. Nevertheless, there are many situations where this parametrization induces too burdensome computations. There are several other choices, each of them depending on some assumption about the areas of the variable triangles.

Proposition 26.2.12. The area of triangle $a_t b_t c_t$ equals the area of ABC times the quantity:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{A} &= \left(\frac{(f + g + h)}{fgh} t^2 + \frac{fg(p + q - 1) + gh(q + r - 1) + hf(r + p - 1)}{fgh} t \right) \\ &= \frac{(f + g + h)t^2}{fgh} - \frac{(fu + 2fv + gv - hw)t}{fgh} + \frac{v(f + g - w)}{gh} \end{aligned}$$

Proof. First formula is the characteristic property of the determinant. The second one doesn't apply when $\mathcal{S} \simeq \mathcal{E} \in \mathcal{L}_b$: in this case, the area is constant, but has to be evaluated using $\mathcal{E} = K\mathcal{S}$, and the area is $-K(K + 1)$. More details at Section 26.13. \square

Theorem 26.2.13. When \mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E} are at finite distance, the area is a second degree quantity and therefore presents an extremum, characterizing the so-called critical triangle. Taking this event as the origin of a shifted time T , we obtain: $abc(T) =$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 0 & -\frac{T}{g} + \frac{gv + 2gu - hw + fu}{2(u + v + w)g} & +\frac{T}{h} + \frac{hw + 2hu + fu - gv}{2(u + v + w)h} \\ +\frac{T}{f} + \frac{fu + 2fv + gv - hw}{2(u + v + w)f} & 0 & -\frac{T}{h} + \frac{hw + 2hv - fu + gv}{2(u + v + w)h} \\ -\frac{T}{f} + \frac{fu + 2fw - gv + hw}{2(u + v + w)f} & +\frac{T}{g} + \frac{gv + 2gw + hw - fu}{2(u + v + w)g} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (26.4)$$

And then we have:

$$\frac{\text{area}(T)}{\mathcal{S}} = \frac{(f + g + h)}{fgh} T^2 - \frac{f + h + h}{(u + v + w)^2} \frac{f^2 u^2 + g^2 v^2 + h^2 w^2 - 2fguv - 2ghvw - 2hfwu}{4fgh}$$

Proof. Only the apparent denominators were used to obtain this formula. The \mathcal{A} formula becomes indeterminate if one tries to use it when $\mathcal{S} \in \mathcal{L}_b$. \square

Remark 26.2.14. This parametrization is hard to use, due to its too huge coefficients. Except when the critical triangle is already given. See for more details at Proposition 26.10.14

Theorem 26.2.15. When \mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E} are at infinity but aren't equal, the area is a first degree quantity. We can choose the origin of time at $\mathcal{A} = 0$, leading to:

$$\boxed{abc} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -\frac{T}{g} + \frac{u(h + w)}{gw - vh} & \frac{T}{h} - \frac{u(g + v)}{gw - vh} \\ \frac{T}{f} - \frac{(h + w)v}{gw - vh} & 0 & -\frac{T}{h} + \frac{v(f + u)}{gw - vh} \\ -\frac{T}{f} + \frac{(g + v)w}{gw - vh} & \frac{T}{g} - \frac{w(f + u)}{gw - vh} & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

Here, we have $gw - hv = hu - fw = fv - gu$ and the area is $T(hv - gw) \div fgh$ (caveat: replacing $\mathcal{E} \mapsto k\mathcal{E}$ changes the family and multiplies the area by k !)

Proof. $\mathcal{S} \wedge \mathcal{E} \simeq \mathcal{L}_b$, hence the equality. No hidden denominators are implied. \square

Remark 26.2.16. CAVEAT. The remaining case, i.e. $\mathcal{S} \simeq \mathcal{E} \in \mathcal{L}_b$, is really special, worth of a specific section (see Section 26.13).

26.2.5 Asymetric parametrization

Remark 26.2.17. As a matter of experiment, the following parametrization is more computation-friendly as any other one, largely enough to justify a lack of symmetry, and the burden of enforcing a binding rule.

Definition 26.2.18. The asymmetric parametrization of a LFIT is defined as:

$$\boxed{\mathcal{T}_t} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 - \frac{t}{g} - \frac{w-f}{g} & \frac{t}{h} + \frac{h-v}{h} \\ \frac{t}{f} & 0 & 1 - \frac{t}{h} + \frac{v-h}{h} \\ 1 - \frac{t}{f} & \frac{t}{g} + \frac{w-f}{g} & 0 \end{bmatrix} \quad (26.5)$$

where $f : g : h$ is the slowness center \mathcal{S} and $u : v : w$ is the equicenter \mathcal{E} . This amounts to enforce $a_0 = C$ together with the rule

$$\boxed{f + g + h = u + v + w = \rho + \sigma + \tau = 0} \quad (26.6)$$

Remark 26.2.19. In fact, we have to consider $\mathcal{S} : \mathcal{E} : \Omega$ or $f : g : h : u : v : w : \rho : \sigma : \tau$ as an unique projective object. When $\mathcal{S} \notin \mathcal{L}_b$, the binding relation suffices to synchronize the three columns $\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E}, \Omega$. But when $\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E} \in \mathcal{L}_b$, we already have $f + g + h = u + v + w = 0$ and this relation is no more sufficient for the purpose of synchronization. Caveat: when $\mathcal{S} \in \mathcal{L}_b$, replacing \mathcal{E} by $k\mathcal{E}$ changes the family (and changes the area of the inscribed triangles).

26.2.6 Gravity centers

Proposition 26.2.20. The locus of the gravity centers of the moving triangles of a given LFIT is a straight line, parallel to the tripolar of \mathcal{S} .

Proof. The alignment property is obvious from $g_t = (1-t)g_0 + (t)g_1$, while premultiplying g_t by tripolar \mathcal{S} leads obviously to a constant. One can also check directly that

$$\text{locus}(g) = (3)[gh, hf, fg] - (f\rho + \sigma g + h\tau)\mathcal{L}_b$$

□

26.3 Hexagonal graphs

26.3.1 Constructions

Definition 26.3.1. The hexagonal points $\alpha_t, \beta_t, \gamma_t$ are defined by $\alpha_t = b_t + c_t - A$, etc, so that:

$$\boxed{abc} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1-q & r \\ p & 0 & 1-r \\ 1-p & q & 0 \end{pmatrix} \implies \boxed{\alpha\beta\gamma} = \begin{pmatrix} r-q & r & 1-q \\ 1-r & p-r & p \\ q & 1-p & q-p \end{pmatrix} \quad (26.7)$$

The locus of α_t is obviously a straight line, noted \mathcal{G}_a and called "the A hexagonal graph". And circularly for the other two.

Remark 26.3.2. Since β_t is at intersection of lines $(a_t, \overrightarrow{AB})$ and $(c_t, \overrightarrow{CB})$, the locus of β_t is nothing but the graph of the correspondence $BC \rightleftharpoons AB : a(t) \longleftrightarrow c(t)$, drawn using the directions of the sidelines.

Construction 26.3.3. When the LFIT is known by triangles \mathcal{T}_1 and \mathcal{T}_0 , then \mathcal{G}_b is defined by β_1 and β_0 . We draw $(a_t, \overrightarrow{AB})$ which cuts \mathcal{G}_b at β_t . And then draw $(\beta_t, \overrightarrow{BC})$ which cuts AB at c_t . Similarly, b_t is constructed. And we can check the figure by closing the hexagon and going back to a_t . See Figure 26.3 When \mathcal{T}_0 and \mathcal{S} are known, draw the graphs using Proposition 26.3.5. When \mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E} , etc are known, draw the graphs using 26.8.

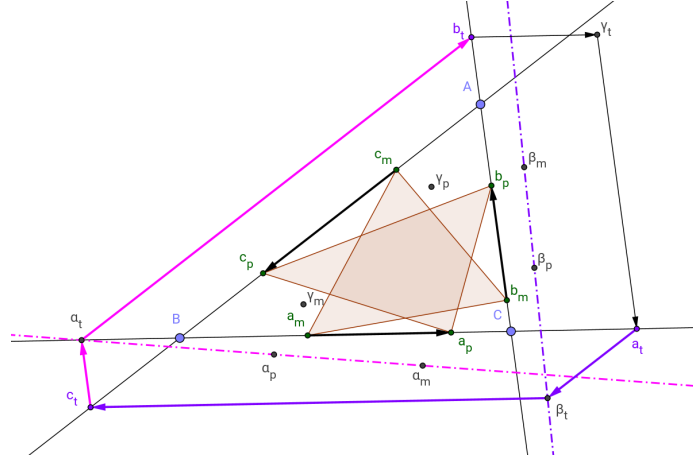


Figure 26.3: Hexagonal construction of the inscribed triangle

Proposition 26.3.4. When $\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E}, \Omega$ are known then, assuming the synchronization rule (26.6), the hexagonal graphs, locus of the $\alpha_t = b_t + c_t - A$, etc, are (by rows)

$$\begin{pmatrix} \mathcal{G}_a \\ \mathcal{G}_b \\ \mathcal{G}_c \end{pmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} g + h - u & g - u & h - u \\ f - v & h + f - v & h - v \\ f - w & g - w & f + g - w \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} -\rho & h - \rho & g - \rho \\ h - \sigma & -\sigma & f - \sigma \\ g - \tau & f - \tau & -\tau \end{bmatrix} \quad (26.8)$$

Proof. Direct computation. \square

Proposition 26.3.5. Directions of the hexagonal graphs are those of the sidelines of the anticevian triangle of the slowness center \mathcal{S} .

Proof. Obvious from the preceding proposition. One can also remark that:

$$\alpha\beta\gamma = \begin{bmatrix} r - q & r & 1 - q \\ 1 - r & p - r & p \\ q & 1 - p & q - p \end{bmatrix} + t \begin{bmatrix} h^{-1} - g^{-1} & h^{-1} & -g^{-1} \\ -h^{-1} & f^{-1} - h^{-1} & f^{-1} \\ g^{-1} & -f^{-1} & g^{-1} - f^{-1} \end{bmatrix} \quad \square$$

26.3.2 Hexagonal conics

Proposition 26.3.6. Hexagonal conic. A conic \mathcal{H}_t goes through the six points $a_t\gamma b_t\alpha c_t\beta$ of (26.7). Moreover the matrix

$$\boxed{\mathcal{H}_t^H} \doteq {}^t\boxed{\mathcal{T}_t} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{H}_t} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{T}_t} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 0 & p + q - 1 & p + r - 1 \\ p + q - 1 & 0 & q + r - 1 \\ p + r - 1 & q + r - 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

can be seen as a description of \mathcal{H}_t from the abc frame, or as the description, from the ABC frame, of another conic, \mathcal{H}_t^H , image of \mathcal{H}_t by the collineation $\phi_t : a, b, c \mapsto A, B, C$, $\mathcal{L}_b \mapsto \mathcal{L}_b$. In any case, the \mathcal{H}_t^H conics form a linear family.

Proof. Computations are obvious, with huge simplifications. Linearity follows from the linearity of the p_t . One can also argue that opposite sides of the hexagon are parallel. \square

Corollary 26.3.7. The hexagonal conic is a parabola when $\text{area}(a, b, c) = \text{area}(A, B, C) \div 4$, an ellipse when $\text{area}(abc)$ is greater and an hyperbola otherwise.

Proof. Since ϕ_t is an affinity, conics \mathcal{H}_t and \mathcal{H}_t^H have the same number of points at infinity. \square

Proposition 26.3.8. The \mathcal{H}_t^H have a fourth fixed point in common, X , whose isotomic is given by:

$$\text{isotom}X \simeq \begin{pmatrix} (q - r)gh + (p + q - 1)fg - (r + p - 1)fh \\ (r - p)hf + (q + r - 1)gh - (p + q - 1)gf \\ (p - q)fg + (r + p - 1)hf - (q + r - 1)hg \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} gh + fu - gv - hw \\ hf - fu + gv - hw \\ fg - fu - gv + hw \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. Consequence of the linearity of the family. \square

Corollary 26.3.9. *The hexagonal conic degenerates five times: (1) when $a_t b_t c_t$ is flat, two occurrences, visible or not and (2) when one of the $p+q+1$ vanishes, three occurrences. In the second case, $\beta_t \gamma_t = b_t c_t \parallel BC$ while \mathcal{H}_t^H degenerates into $AX \cup BC$, etc.*

Proof. After simplification, one has $\det \boxed{\mathcal{H}_t} = \det \mathcal{T}_t \det \boxed{\mathcal{H}_t^H}$. \square

Fact 26.3.10. *(spoiler) At area's peak, \mathcal{H}_t goes through \mathcal{E} , while \mathcal{H}_t^H goes through \mathcal{S} .*

Remark 26.3.11. Both triangles abc and $\alpha\beta\gamma$ have the same area, equal to $s \times S$ where

$$s \doteq pqr + (1-p)(1-q)(1-r) = \det \boxed{abc} = \det \boxed{\alpha\beta\gamma}$$

26.3.3 Some collineations

Executive summary: use some collineation to transform \mathcal{H}_t^H into \mathcal{H}_t , and then go back using some other collineation.

Exercise 26.3.12. Let ϕ_a be the collineation defined by $A, B, C \mapsto a, b, c$, $\mathcal{L}_b \mapsto \mathcal{L}_b$. Using ABC as basis, the matrix of ϕ_a is \boxed{abc} and its characteristic polynomial is:

$$(\mu - 1)(\mu^2 + \mu + s) = (\mu - 1) \left(\mu - \frac{-1+W}{2} \right) \left(\mu - \frac{-1-W}{2} \right)$$

where W is defined by: $s = (1 - W^2)/4$. With respect to ABC , the coordinates of the fixed point at finite distance are:

$$K_a \simeq \begin{pmatrix} qr - q + 1 \\ rp - r + 1 \\ pq - p + 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (26.9)$$

Exercise 26.3.13. Let ϕ_α be the collineation: $ABC \mapsto \alpha\beta\gamma$, $\mathcal{L}_b \mapsto \mathcal{L}_b$. Using again ABC as basis, the matrix of ϕ_α is $\boxed{\alpha\beta\gamma}$, the characteristic polynomial is the same and, wrt ABC , the coordinates of the fixed point at finite distance are:

$$K_\alpha \simeq \begin{pmatrix} -qr + rp + pq - p - q + r + 1 \\ +qr - rp + pq + p - q - r + 1 \\ +qr + rp - pq - p + q - r + 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Exercise 26.3.14. Let ψ be defined by $\boxed{\psi} \doteq \boxed{abc}^{-1} \cdot \boxed{\alpha\beta\gamma}$... and not by $\boxed{\alpha\beta\gamma} \cdot \boxed{abc}^{-1}$. The normalized matrix of ψ is:

$$\boxed{\psi} = \frac{1}{s} \begin{pmatrix} (1-r)q & (p-1)(q+r-1) & (q+r-1)p \\ (p+r-1)q & (1-p)r & (q-1)(p+r-1) \\ (r-1)(p+q-1) & (p+q-1)r & (1-q)p \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\chi_\psi(X) = (\mu - 1) \left(\mu - \frac{1+W}{1-W} \right) \left(\mu - \frac{1-W}{1+W} \right) \quad \text{where } s = \frac{1}{4}(1 - W^2)$$

and its fixed points are:

$$K_1 = \frac{-1}{W^2} \begin{pmatrix} (2p-1)(q+r-1) \\ (2q-1)(r+p-1) \\ (2r-1)(p+q-1) \end{pmatrix}; K_2, K_3 \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 2q+2r-2 \\ -2r+1-W \\ -2q+1+W \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} 2q+2r-2 \\ -2r+1+W \\ -2q+1-W \end{pmatrix} \quad (26.10)$$

So what ?

26.3.4 Graphs, the general case

Definition 26.3.15. A "delta -triple" is what is obtained by choosing three directions

$$\delta \doteq \begin{bmatrix} p & -1-q & 1 \\ 1 & q & -1-r \\ -1-p & 1 & r \end{bmatrix}$$

and using them to draw the graph of $b_t \mapsto c_t$, etc, i.e. the locus Δ_a of the $\alpha_t = b_t \delta_c \cap c_t \delta_b$, etc. Quite obviously, these graphs are straight lines.

Proposition 26.3.16. *The directions of these graphs (coded the same way as the original ones) are:*

$$[p', q', r'] = \left[\frac{(r+1)(q+1)h-g}{(r+1)(g-qh)}, \frac{(r+1)(p+1)f-h}{(p+1)(h-fr)}, \frac{g(q+1)(p+1)-f}{(q+1)(f-pg)} \right]$$

Only the directions of cevian (\mathcal{S}) lead to a 1-sized orbit. The 2-sized orbits are characterized by

$$(uvw + uw + u)gh + (uvw + uv + v)fh + (uvw + vw + w)fg = 0$$

For a given triple $[u', v', w']$ there are at most two triples $[u, v, w]$.

Proof. Computations are straightforward. Nevertheless, the general formula giving the other antecedent is rather huge. \square

Example. Starting from $[0, 0, 0]$ (hexagonal conics), we obtain the directions of *anticev* (\mathcal{S}), and conversely. The other antecedent of $[0, 0, 0]$ is given by the directions of SA, SB, SC (Catalan conics).

Exercise 26.3.17. Study the cevian and anticevian conics.

26.4 Temporal graphs

26.4.1 Pilar point, pilar conic

In the previous section, we have constructed the hexagonal graphs $\mathcal{G}_a, \mathcal{G}_b, \mathcal{G}_c$ by drawing lines ba through b , parallel to AB together with drawing lines ca through c , parallel to AC . As a result, triangle $\alpha\beta\gamma(t)$ is the crosstri (see 4.6) of triangles $abc(t)$ and triangle dir_A, dir_B, dir_C . This method can be repeated, using other auxiliary directions than those of the sidelines BC, CA, AB and obtaining other graphs than the \mathcal{G}_j .

Definition 26.4.1. The **pilar point** $\Omega \simeq \rho : \sigma : \tau$ of a LFIT is defined by the hard equality

$$\Omega + \mathcal{S} + \mathcal{E} = (f + g + h) \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}, \quad \text{i.e. } \rho \doteq g + h - u, \text{ etc}$$

Therefore $\rho + \sigma + \tau = f + g + h$, so that $f : g : h : u : v : w : \rho : \sigma : \tau$ is a projective object involving only one factor of proportionality. When $\mathcal{S} \notin \mathcal{L}_b$, $G = X(2)$ is the ordinary barycenter of points $\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E}, \Omega$. Moreover, the **pilar conic** \mathfrak{C} is defined as the inscribed conic whose perspector is the isotomic conjugate of Ω , and the center is

$$\omega \doteq \frac{1}{2}(\mathcal{S} + \mathcal{E}) = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} \sigma + \tau \\ \tau + \rho \\ \rho + \sigma \end{pmatrix} = \frac{1}{2} \begin{pmatrix} f + u \\ g + v \\ h + w \end{pmatrix}$$

Once again the same caveat: $\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E}, \Omega$ have to be synchronized by (26.6).

Remark 26.4.2. The name can be tracked back to a joke describing a temporal conic \mathcal{C}_t^s as a major general (conique divisionnaire), distinguished among all the hexagonal conics (conique brigadière). In this context, the pilar conic would be something like a lieutenant general in command.

Exercise 26.4.3. Consider a LFIT. The lines drawn by A and parallel to $b_t c_t$, etc determine a triangle $A'B'C'$.

1. Determine the locus of A', B', C' ;
2. Compare area $(A'B'C')$ and area $(a_t b_t c_t)$;
3. Consider the collineation $f : \mathcal{L}_b \mapsto \mathcal{L}_b$, $ABC \mapsto A'B'C'$ and determine a point X such that $f(X)$ is constant ;

26.4.2 Temporal graphs

Definition 26.4.4. The graphs Δ_A^s , etc obtained when using the directions of trigone $a_s b_s c_s$ as auxiliary directions, are called the temporal graphs of the LFIT. Obviously, they are straight lines, while the conics through $a_t \beta_t^s c_t \alpha_t^s b_t \gamma_t^s$ are called the temporal conics \mathcal{C}_t^s . This process amounts to observe the LFIT from the fixed triangle that coincides with abc at time $t = s$.

Proposition 26.4.5. *The temporal graph Δ_A^s is the tangent to the pilar conic \mathfrak{C} issued from a_s (other than the obvious BC).*

Proof. The auxiliary directions are given by the directions of the sidelines of $\boxed{abc}(s)$, i.e.

$$\mathcal{D}_s \simeq \begin{bmatrix} (g+h)s + (hw - fh - gv) & -fs + (fv - fh) & fs - (f+g-w)f \\ -gs + (gv) & (f+h)s + (-fv) & gs \\ -hs + (fh - hw) & -hs + fh & (-f-g)s + (f+g-w)f \end{bmatrix}$$

Thus points $\alpha(t), \beta(t), \gamma(t)$ are obtained as crosstri of $\boxed{abc}(t)$, given at (26.2), and \mathcal{D}_s . Eliminating t , we obtain the ABC -equation of the A -temporal graph:

$$\Delta_A^s \simeq [+ \rho s^2 - f \rho s ; -(\sigma + \tau) s^2 + f(\sigma + 2\tau)s - f^2 \tau ; -(\sigma + \tau) s^2 + f \tau s]$$

Property $a_s \in \Delta_A^s$ was obvious... and is easy to check.

For the contact: points α, β, γ are obtained as crosstri of $\boxed{abc}(t)$ which gives the auxiliary directions. Use locusconi, and obtain a line-conic circumscribed to trigone ABC , and see that its perspector is ${}^t\Omega$. \square

Proposition 26.4.6. *Consider the temporal graph Δ_A^s . When point α_t^s moves along Δ_A^s , then line $\alpha_t^s a_t$ keeps a constant direction (depending on s , but not on t).*

Proof. For any kind of graphs, directions of $\alpha_t^s b_t$ and $\alpha_t^s c_t$ are constant by the very definition. The $\alpha_t^s a_t$ property is special even if easily checked. \square

Exercise 26.4.7. Determine the graphs that share this property with the temporal graphs.

26.4.3 Temporal conics

Theorem 26.4.8. *The temporal conic \mathcal{C}_t^s related to $a_t b_t c_t$ doesn't depends on the s chosen to construct the graphs (and now will be noted by \mathcal{C}_t). The centers of the \mathcal{C}_t belong to line*

$$[(gh - vw)\rho ; (fh - uw)\sigma ; (fg - uv)\tau]$$

that goes through $\omega = \mathcal{S} + \mathcal{E}$. Moreover, the matrix

$$\boxed{\mathcal{C}^H} \doteq {}^t\boxed{\mathcal{T}_t} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{C}_t} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{T}_t} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 0 & h\tau & g\sigma \\ h\tau & 0 & f\rho \\ g\sigma & f\rho & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad (26.11)$$

can be seen as a description of \mathcal{C}_t from the abc frame, or as the description, from the ABC frame, of another conic, \mathcal{C}^H , image of \mathcal{C}_t by the collineation $\phi_t : a, b, c \mapsto A, B, C$, $\mathcal{L}_b \mapsto \mathcal{L}_b$. Using the second point of view, we have a fixed circumconic, with perspector the point $\mathcal{S} \underset{b}{*} \Omega$.

Proof. Use the first point of view. Compute $\boxed{a_t b_t c_t}^{-1} \cdot \boxed{\alpha_t^s \beta_t^s \gamma_t^s}$ and then, according to Proposition 11.7.9, take the wedge of the tripolars of two columns. The result doesn't contain s . Moreover, being equal to $\mathcal{S} * \Omega$, this result doesn't depend on t either. Now use the formula giving center from perspector, go back to ABC -barycentrics and conclude. \square

Theorem 26.4.9. *The temporal conic \mathcal{C}_t is bi-tangent to the pilar conic \mathfrak{C} and the chord through the contact points (that are not necessarily visible) is parallel to line \mathcal{SE} .*

Proof. A point on \mathfrak{C} is $P(s) \simeq 1 \div \rho : s^2 \div \sigma : (1+s)^2 \div \tau$. Thus, using $SS = s_1 + s_2$, $PP = s_1 s_2$, an equation of the chord $P(s_1)P(s_2)$ is

$$\text{chord} \simeq [(g+h-u)(2PP+SS), (h+f-v)(SS+2), -(f+g-w)SS]$$

Then compute ${}^tP \cdot \boxed{a_t b_t c_t}^{-1} \cdot \text{conicir} \left(\mathcal{S} * \Omega \right) \cdot \boxed{a_t b_t c_t}^{-1} \cdot P$, and substitute $u = f+g+h-v-w$.

The result factorizes into $\det \boxed{\mathcal{T}_t}$ times a perfect square. Use the usual formulas for sum and product, and conclude by obtaining:

$$\text{chord}(t) = [f+v-w, f-h+v, f+g-w] - 2t\mathcal{L}_b$$

\square

Proposition 26.4.10. *When $\mathcal{S} \notin \mathcal{L}_b$, the area of $a_t b_t c_t$ is extremal exactly when the center of \mathcal{C}_t is ω (and the chord of contacts is \mathcal{SE}).*

Proof. Substitute $t = \frac{fu + 2fv + gv - hw + T}{2(f+g+h)}$ in the previous results. \square

Definition 26.4.11. When using the directions of SA, SB, SC as auxiliary directions, the results are called Catalan conics and Catalan graphs (when doing that, we assume that point \mathcal{S} is at finite distance). Directions $\boxed{\mathcal{D}}$ and point α are:

$$\boxed{\mathcal{D}} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} -g-h & f & f \\ g & -h-f & g \\ h & h & -f-g \end{pmatrix}; \alpha \simeq \begin{pmatrix} f+u \\ g-u-v + \frac{hw-gv}{f} + t \frac{f+g+h}{f} \\ h+v + \frac{gv-hw}{f} - t \frac{f+g+h}{f} \end{pmatrix}$$

Proposition 26.4.12. *The Catalan graphs Δ_a , etc are the symmetric of the sidelines wrt ω , the midpoint of \mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E} . In fact, the Catalan graphs are nothing else than the temporal graphs related to $s = \infty$. When area of abc is extremal, the Catalan conic is centered at ω .*

Proof. Make $s \rightarrow \infty$ in \mathcal{D}_s . \square

26.4.4 Tucker associate LFIT

Definition 26.4.13. Brocard LFIT. Starting from $K = X(6) \simeq a^2 : b^2 : c^2$ and $t \in \mathbb{R}$, we define $A' = K + t \overrightarrow{KA}$, etc. And then define the 6 points: A_b, A_c on BC (intersections with $A'B'$ and $A'C'$), B_c, B_a on CA (intersections with $B'C'$ and $B'A'$) and C_a, C_b on AB (intersections with $C'A'$ and $C'B'$). Then

1. The polygon $A_b A_c B_c B_a C_a B_b$ is called the Lemoine's hexagon.
2. $[A_b, B_c, C_a]$ and $[A_c, B_a, C_b]$ are called the first and the second Brocard LFIT's.

Proposition 26.4.14. *The Lemoine's hexagon is inscribed in the so called Tucker circle. Its center lies on line OK . Equicentre and Slowness center of both LFIT are the Brocard's points, and the common pilar conic is the Brocard inconic (i.e. the K -inconic) Section 11.20.*

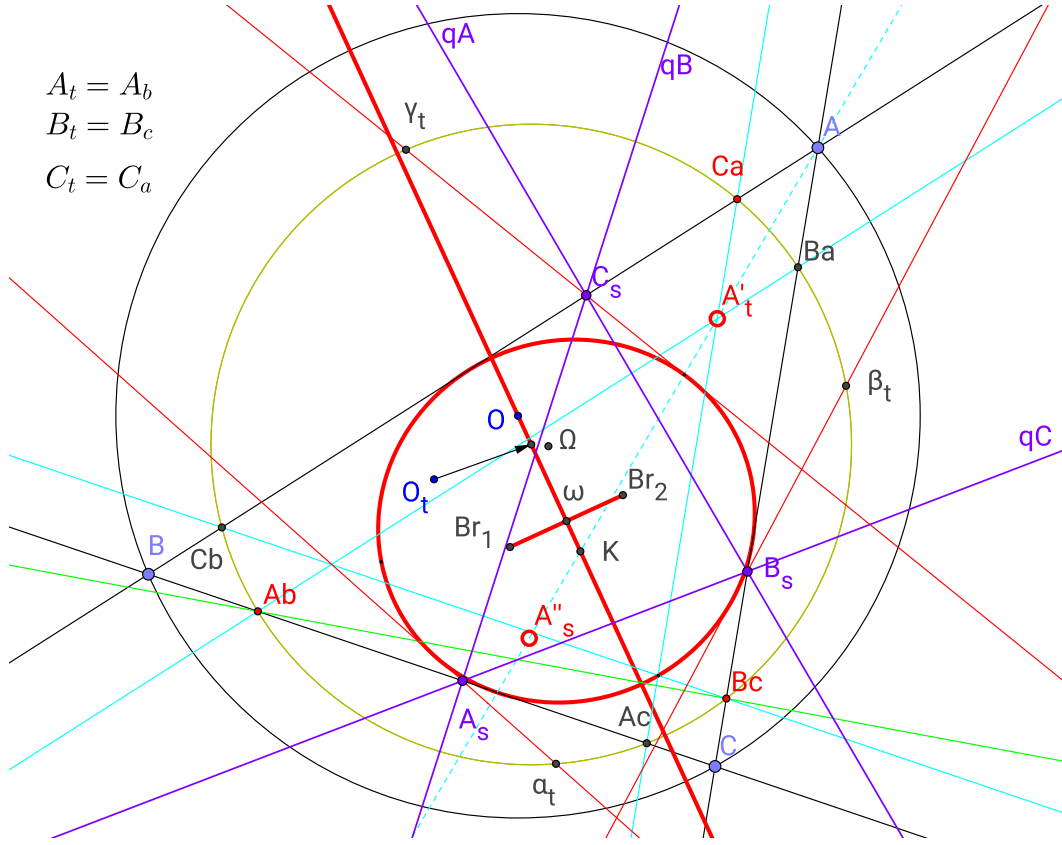


Figure 26.4: Brocard LFIT

Proof. We have the following coordinates: $\text{LFIT}_1, \text{LFIT}_2 =$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & -ta^2 + a^2 & tb^2 + a^2 + c^2 \\ tc^2 + a^2 + b^2 & 0 & -tb^2 + b^2 \\ -tc^2 + c^2 & ta^2 + b^2 + c^2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 & tc^2 + a^2 + b^2 & -ta^2 + a^2 \\ -tb^2 + b^2 & 0 & ta^2 + b^2 + c^2 \\ tb^2 + a^2 + c^2 & -tc^2 + c^2 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

So that $\mathcal{S}_1 \simeq a^2b^2 : b^2c^2 : c^2a^2 = \text{Br}_1$, $\mathcal{E}_1 = \text{LFIT}_1 \cdot \mathcal{S}_1 = \text{Br}_2$, etc. \square

Fact 26.4.15. *The flat triangles which belong to the Brocard LFIT's are the isotropes of the Brocard points.*

And now, a generalisation.

Definition 26.4.16. In a general LFIT, the points $\hat{a}_t, \hat{b}_t, \hat{c}_t$ where the temporal conic \mathcal{C}_t cuts again the sidelines of ABC form themselves a LFIT, called the **Tucker associate** of the original one.

Proposition 26.4.17. *The slowness center and the equicenter are exchanged when passing from the original LFIT to its Tucker associate. Therefore both LFITs have the same pilar conic.*

Proof. The coordinates of the Tucker associate LFITs are:

$$\boxed{\mathcal{T}_t} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 - \frac{t}{g} - \frac{w-f}{g} & 1 + \frac{t}{h} - \frac{v}{h} \\ \frac{t}{f} & 0 & -\frac{t}{h} + \frac{v}{h} \\ 1 - \frac{t}{f} & \frac{t}{g} + \frac{w-f}{g} & 0 \end{bmatrix}; \widehat{\boxed{\mathcal{T}_t}} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \frac{t}{v} & -\frac{t}{w} + \frac{f}{w} \\ 1 - \frac{t}{u} - \frac{h-v}{u} & 0 & 1 + \frac{t}{w} - \frac{f}{w} \\ \frac{t}{u} + \frac{h-v}{u} & 1 - \frac{t}{v} & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

so that $\widehat{\mathcal{S}} = \mathcal{E}$ is obvious. This implies $\widehat{\mathcal{E}} = \mathcal{S}$. \square

Corollary 26.4.18. *When all temporal conics are circles, then \mathcal{S} and \mathcal{E} are isogonal conjugates.*

Proof. Use the parametrization given just above and write that \widehat{a}_t , etc belong to circle $a_t b_t c_t$. Take the t leading term (4th degree) of these equations, solve in u, v, w (don't forget $f+g+h = u+v+w$) and obtain

$$\mathcal{E} = \frac{f+g+h}{a^2gh + b^2hf + c^2fg} (a^2gh : b^2hf : c^2fg)$$

proving the necessity. Sufficiency is straightforward. \square

26.5 HH and temporal point of view

26.5.1 Temporal embedding

Definition 26.5.1. Since we are dealing with moving points M_t , it makes sense to define a *temporal embedding* of such points by the following projective map:

$$\mathfrak{G} \left(\begin{pmatrix} x(t) \\ y(t) \\ z(t) \end{pmatrix}, t \right) \mapsto \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \\ t(x+y+z) \end{pmatrix}$$

Proposition 26.5.2. *Given a LFIT, the temporal embeddings of the variable vertices belong to a quadric Ω , whose matrix is:*

$$\boxed{\Omega} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 2v(f-w) & -fh+2fv+hw-vw & v\tau & -f-v+w \\ -fh+2fv+hw-vw & 2f(v-h) & f\tau & -f-v+h \\ v\tau & f\tau & 0 & -\tau \\ -f-v+w & -f+h-v & -\tau & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\boxed{\Omega^*} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \tau & \sigma & \tau f \\ \tau & 0 & \rho & \tau v \\ \sigma & \rho & 0 & fh-hw+vw \\ \tau f & \tau v & fh-hw+vw & 2f\tau v \end{bmatrix}$$

And, for these instanciations, we have $\det \boxed{\Omega} = \det \boxed{\Omega^*} = (\rho\sigma\tau)^2$ (squared coordinates of Ω in the triangle plane).

Proof. Well known property of hyperbolic paraboloids. \square

Signature is +2;-2. Using the completesquare algorithm, one obtains

$$\frac{(t_{yz})^2}{(fh-hw+vw)^2} - (t_{xyz})^2 + \left(1 - \frac{(t_z)^2}{(fh-hw+vw)^2}\right) K$$

where t_{xyz}, t_{yz}, t_z are linear expressions and K a constant.

Remark 26.5.3. Matrix $\boxed{\Omega^*}$ is symmetric, while matrix $\boxed{\Omega}$ is not. One could enforce symmetry by choosing $t = 0$ when the area is extremal. But the price to pay would be a huge size for the coefficients.

Remark 26.5.4. The directions of sidelines of ABC are embedded at

$$0 : 1 : -1 : f ; -1 : 0 : 1 : g ; 1 : -1 : 0 : h$$

Proposition 26.5.5. *The temporal embeddings of the s -temporal graphs, i.e. the lines*

$$\mathfrak{G}(\Delta_A^s) \doteq \{ \mathfrak{G}(\alpha_t^s, t) \mid t \in \overline{\mathbb{R}} \}, \text{ etc}$$

are drawn on the Ω quartic. Moreover, $\mathfrak{G}(\alpha_t^s, t)_{t=s} = \mathfrak{G}(a_s, s)$. Therefore $\mathfrak{G}(\Delta_A^s)$ is nothing but the other line drawn on Ω through $\mathfrak{G}(a_s, s)$.

Proof. The first assertion is easily computed. The second is Proposition 26.4.5. And the conclusion follows. \square

Proposition 26.5.6. *A point $x : y : z$ on the triangle plane has two temporal embeddings on the quartic \mathfrak{Q} (counting multiplicity and complex values). The critical points of this double coating of the plane are the points of the pilar conic (and the points at infinity).*

Proof. First assertion is about the degree in t . Second assertion is about the discriminant, which is $(x + y + z)^2$ times the equation of the key conic.

Proposition 26.5.7. *The embedding $\mathfrak{G}(\mathfrak{C})$ of the pilar conic lies in the plane :*

$$[w - f - v ; h - f - v ; -\tau ; 2]$$

The horizontal plane $[s, s, s, -1]$ cuts this curve in two points that are the embeddings of the contact points of the pilar conic with the temporal conic $\mathcal{C}(s)$. One of the horizontal lines of the polar plane is drawn through points $\mathfrak{G}(\mathcal{S}, t^*)$ and $\mathfrak{G}(\mathcal{E}, t^*)$ where t^* is the parameter related to the extremal area of triangle $a_t b_t c_t$.

Using a parameter k , a point on the pilar conic can be described as: $1 \div \rho : k^2 \div \sigma : (1 + k)^2 \div \tau$. It's only date of embedding is

$$t = \tau \frac{f \rho k^2 + \sigma \rho k + v \sigma}{(f + u) \rho k^2 + 2 \sigma \rho k + (g + v) \sigma}$$

and the conclusion follows. One should remark that the plane equation is the last line of \mathfrak{Q} . \square

Definition 26.5.8. A linear motion $M(t)$ on a given line Δ is said to be an **incident motion** to a given LFIT when the temporal parameters at cutting points are the same on the sidelines and on the transversal.

Proposition 26.5.9. *A given line $\Delta \simeq [l, m, n]$ is the support of an incident motion if and only if the line is tangent to the pilar conic. And then, the incident motion is embedded along a line drawn on \mathfrak{Q} .*

Proof. Solving in t the equation $[l, m, n] \cdot {}^t[0, p + t/f, (1 - p) - t/f] = 0$ tells us when point $\Delta \cap BC$ is reached. Substituting into a_t and doing the same for the other two sidelines leads to the three embeddings:

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & -n & -m \\ -n & 0 & l \\ m & l & 0 \\ -nf & (l - n)(f - w) + lg & (l - m)v - lh \end{bmatrix}$$

Asking for the degeneracy of the plane drawn by these three points gives four equations whose gcd is the tangential equation of \mathfrak{C} . \square

26.5.2 Menelaüs HH (parallelogy)

Caveat: in this subsection, vectors $P = {}^t[p, q, r, 1]$, etc aren't projective vectors, and $P[4] \doteq 1$ is a hard coded quantity.

Definition 26.5.10. The Menelaüs encoding of the inscribed triangle a, b, c is defined by:

$$\mathcal{T} \doteq (abc) \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 - q & r \\ p & 0 & 1 - r \\ 1 - p & q & 0 \end{pmatrix} \mapsto P \doteq \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

while the Menelaüs quadric is defined by the symmetric matrix:

$$\mathfrak{H} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 & 1 & -1 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 & -1 \\ -1 & -1 & -1 & 2 \end{bmatrix}$$

Proposition 26.5.11. (1) the area of an inscribed triangle is given by: $\text{area}(\mathcal{T}) = S \times {}^tP \cdot \boxed{\mathfrak{H}} \cdot P$;
 (2) two non flat inscribed triangles are parallelogic if and only if ${}^tQ \cdot \boxed{\mathfrak{H}} \cdot P = 0$.

Proof. Direct examination. \square

Proposition 26.5.12. When $\mathcal{S} \notin \mathcal{L}_b$, the triangles \mathcal{T} of a LFIT are parallelogic by pairs. This relation is involutive and is described by the homography:

$$s = \frac{(fu + 2fv + gv - hw)t - 2f\tau v}{2(h + g + f)t - (fu + 2fv + gv - hw)}$$

Proof. Immediate consequence of ${}^tP_t \cdot \boxed{\mathfrak{H}} \cdot P_s = 0$. \square

Proposition 26.5.13. Any flat inscribed triangle verifies $(p + q - 1)(p + r - 1) = p(p - 1)$ and determines two LFIT of flat triangles:

1. Defining $\mu \doteq \frac{p + q - 1}{p} = \frac{p - 1}{p + r - 1}$ leads to

$$\boxed{\mathcal{T}_1}(p) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & (1 - \mu)p & (\mu^{-1} - 1)p + 1 - \mu^{-1} \\ p & 0 & (1 - \mu^{-1})p + \mu^{-1} \\ 1 - p & (\mu - 1)p + 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Then we have $\mathcal{S} = \mu - 1 : 1 : -\mu$; $\mathcal{E} = -\mathcal{S}$; $\Omega = \vec{0}$. All the lines are parallel and directed by \mathcal{S}

2. Defining $\lambda \doteq \frac{p + q - 1}{p - 1} = \frac{p}{p + r - 1}$ leads to

$$\boxed{\mathcal{T}_2}(p) = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \lambda + (1 - \lambda)p & 1 + (\lambda^{-1} - 1)p \\ p & 0 & (1 - \lambda^{-1})p \\ 1 - p & 1 - \lambda + (\lambda - 1)p & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Then we have $\mathcal{S} = \lambda - 1 : 1 : -\lambda$; $\mathcal{E} = \vec{0}$; $\Omega = -\mathcal{S}$. All the lines are tangent to the inscribed parabola through \mathcal{S} —whose focus is isogon (S) :

$$\boxed{\mathcal{C}^*} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -\lambda & 1 \\ -\lambda & 0 & \lambda - 1 \\ 1 & \lambda - 1 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Proof. When $\mathcal{E} = K\mathcal{S}$ then $\text{area}(\mathcal{T}_t) = -K(K + 1)S$. And so we have either $K = -1$ or $K = 0$. The fact that the \mathfrak{H} contains two lines throught $P \in \mathfrak{H}$ is a general property of a HH. \square

26.6 Miquel circles

Proposition 26.6.1. When triangle A', B', C' is inscribed into trigone ABC (and none of the A', B', C' is a vertex), then circles $\text{miq}_A \doteq AB'C'$, $\text{miq}_B \doteq A'BC'$, $\text{miq}_C \doteq A'B'C'$ concur into some point M_q .

Proof. Let $A' \simeq pB + (1 - p)C$, etc. Then $\text{miq}_A \simeq [0, c^2r, -b^2(q - 1), 1]$. And one can see that the radius of $\bigwedge_3(\text{miq}_j)$ vanishes. Obviously, using directed angles is another possibility (Johnson, 1929, p. 131). \square

Proposition 26.6.2 (Miquel LFIT). Conversely, we can fix $M_q \simeq P$ and move $A' \in BC$. This leads to the LFIT

$$\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1 + \frac{a^2qt}{b^2p} - \frac{\text{pow}P}{b^2p} & 1 + \frac{(1 - t)a^2r}{c^2p} - \frac{\text{pow}P}{c^2p} \\ 1 - t & 0 & -\frac{(1 - t)a^2r}{c^2p} + \frac{\text{pow}P}{c^2p} \\ t & -\frac{a^2qt}{b^2p} + \frac{\text{pow}P}{b^2p} & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

where $\text{pow}P(p+q+r) \doteq a^2qr + b^2rp + c^2qp$. The Neuberg center \mathcal{E} is P itself, while the slowness center \mathcal{S} is isogon(P).

Proof. Direct computation. \square

Corollary 26.6.3. *In the context of a LFIT, circles (A, b_t, c_t) , etc are called the Miquel circles of the family. Their Veronese columns are:*

$$\text{miq}_A, \text{miq}_B, \text{miq}_C \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ c^2 g(h-v+t) \\ b^2 h(u+v-h-t) \\ gh \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} c^2 f(v-t) \\ 0 \\ a^2 ht \\ fh \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} b^2 f(w-f+t) \\ a^2 g(f-t) \\ 0 \\ fg \end{bmatrix}$$

The μ_t coordinates themselves are not really handy, except from the second degree terms:

$$\mu_t \simeq \begin{pmatrix} a^2 gh \\ b^2 hf \\ c^2 fg \end{pmatrix} t^2 + \mathbf{O}(t)$$

Proposition 26.6.4. *The A -Miquel circles of a LFIT are going through A and another fixed point O_A , etc. And we have $O_A, O_B, O_C \simeq$*

$$\begin{bmatrix} a^2 gh - b^2 hu - c^2 gu \\ b^2 h(u-g-h) \\ c^2 g(u-g-h) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a^2 h(v-h-f) \\ -a^2 hv + b^2 fh - c^2 fv \\ c^2 f(-h-f+v) \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a^2 g(w-f-g) \\ b^2 f(w-f-g) \\ -a^2 gw - b^2 fw + c^2 fg \end{bmatrix} \quad (26.12)$$

Proof. The existence is obvious from the linear nature of the Veronese's (and the computation is straightforward). \square

Proposition 26.6.5. Circle of similarity. *For a given t , the three Miquel circles concur at a point μ_t , called the **Miquel point** of \mathcal{T}_t . The locus of this point is the circle Γ_σ through O_A, O_B, O_C . Moreover, $\mu_{(t=\infty)}$ is the isogonal conjugate of \mathcal{S} , i.e. $\mu_{(t=\infty)} = \mathcal{S}^* \doteq a^2 gh : b^2 hf : c^2 fg$. Therefore, \mathcal{S}^* is the perspector of triangles ABC and $O_A O_B O_C$.*

Proof. Compute μ_t as above, and then use locusconi to obtain Γ_σ . Check that we have a circle, and obtain its Veronese, namely

$$\Gamma_\sigma \simeq \begin{pmatrix} b^2 c^2 (g+h-u) f \\ c^2 a^2 (h+f-v) g \\ a^2 b^2 (f+g-w) h \\ a^2 gh + b^2 fh + c^2 fg \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} b^2 c^2 f \rho \\ c^2 a^2 g \sigma \\ a^2 b^2 h \tau \\ a^2 gh + b^2 fh + c^2 fg \end{pmatrix}$$

What remains is straightforward. The name "circle of similarity" is explained at Section 26.9. \square

Proposition 26.6.6. Miquel of a flat triangle. *When $\mathcal{T}_t = a_t b_t c_t$ is flat, then μ_t belongs to the circumcircle Γ and conversely*

Proof. When \mathcal{T}_t is a single line, circles miq_A , etc are three of the ordinary Miquel circles of the quadrilateral ABC, \mathcal{T}_t . So that μ_t belongs also to the fourth one, the circumscribed circle of ABC . \square

Proposition 26.6.7. Fixed point. *All the lines $a_t M_t$ are going through a fixed point P_a whose barycentrics are:*

$$P_a, P_b, P_c \simeq \begin{bmatrix} a^2 gh \\ b^2 fh - b^2 hw + c^2 gv \\ b^2 hw + c^2 fg - c^2 gv \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a^2 gh - a^2 hw + c^2 fu \\ b^2 fh \\ a^2 hw + c^2 fg - c^2 fu \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} a^2 gh - a^2 gv + b^2 fu \\ a^2 gv + b^2 fh - b^2 fu \\ c^2 fg \end{bmatrix} \quad (26.13)$$

Points \mathcal{E}, O_a, P_a are aligned and O_a, P_a belong to the circle of similarity. Moreover $\mathcal{S}^* P_A \parallel BC$.

Proof. Equation of line $a_t M_t$ is

$$[(b^2 h + c^2 g) ft - f(b^2 fh - b^2 hw + c^2 gv), a^2 ghf - a^2 ght, -a^2 ght]$$

This leads to P_a . One can see directly that $P_a = fgh\mathcal{S}^* + (b^2 hw - c^2 gv) \delta_{BC}$ and that $O_a - P_a$ (as written here) is $\simeq \mathcal{E}$. \square

is defined up a counter-wise rotation, so that only quantities like $\alpha\delta$ are well-defined.

Remark 26.8.3. Among the figures, we will take later $\Phi_a = BC$, $\Phi_b = CA$, $\Phi_c = AB$, so that σ_a sends CA onto AB and the angle of σ_a is $(AC, AB) = -\hat{A}$. And one can check that $(id/conj)((\beta - \alpha)/(\gamma - \alpha)) = \beta/\gamma$.

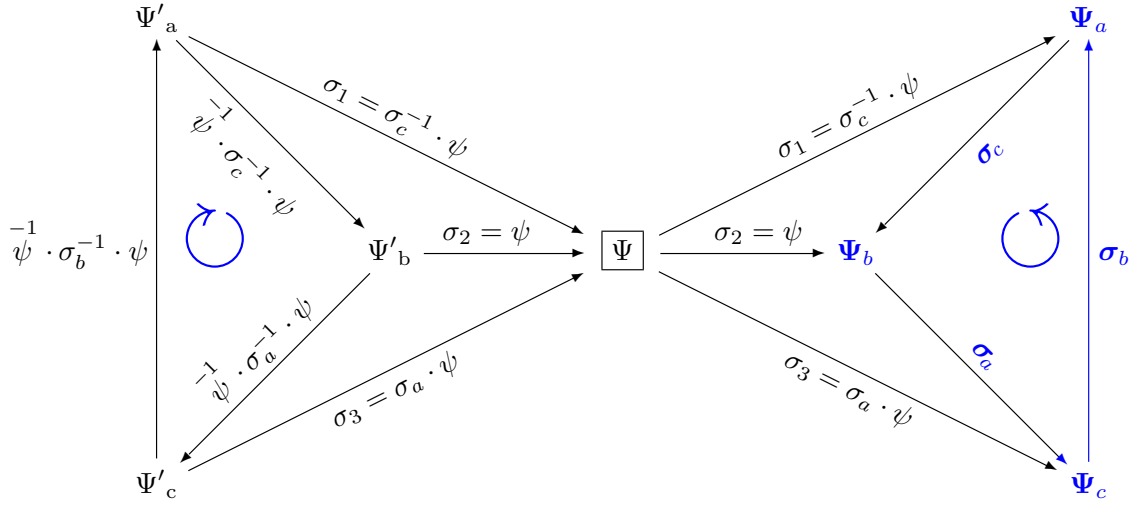


Figure 26.6: The "three" similarities configuration

Proposition 26.8.4. *The matrices of the three similarities are:*

$$\boxed{\sigma_a} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\beta(\alpha\tau - \gamma\rho)(\rho - \sigma)}{\gamma(\alpha\sigma - \beta\rho)(\rho - \tau)} & \rho - \rho \frac{\beta(\alpha\tau - \gamma\rho)(\rho - \sigma)}{\gamma(\alpha\sigma - \beta\rho)(\rho - \tau)} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{\rho} - \frac{1}{\rho} \frac{(\alpha\tau - \gamma\rho)(\rho - \sigma)}{(\alpha\sigma - \beta\rho)(\rho - \tau)} & \frac{(\alpha\tau - \gamma\rho)(\rho - \sigma)}{(\alpha\sigma - \beta\rho)(\rho - \tau)} \end{bmatrix}, \text{ etc}$$

so that equalities $\alpha/\beta = \rho/\sigma$, etc are to be excluded. The Neuberg relation:

$$\forall M \in \Phi : (f\sigma_1 + g\sigma_2 + h\sigma_3)(M) \simeq \mathcal{E}$$

defining the equicenter \mathcal{E} is satisfied by:

$$\begin{pmatrix} f \\ g \\ h \end{pmatrix} \simeq i \begin{bmatrix} \frac{(\beta\tau - \gamma\sigma)(\beta - \gamma)}{\beta\gamma(\sigma - \tau)} \\ \frac{(\gamma\rho - \alpha\tau)(\gamma - \alpha)}{\gamma\alpha(\tau - \rho)} \\ \frac{(\alpha\sigma - \beta\rho)(\alpha - \beta)}{\alpha\beta(\rho - \sigma)} \end{bmatrix} \in \mathbb{R}^3 ; \mathcal{E} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\rho(\sigma - \tau)\alpha + \sigma(\tau - \rho)\beta + \tau(\rho - \sigma)\gamma}{(\sigma - \tau)\alpha + (\tau - \rho)\beta + (\rho - \sigma)\gamma} \\ 1 \\ \frac{(\sigma - \tau)\beta\gamma + (\tau - \rho)\gamma\alpha + (\rho - \sigma)\alpha\beta}{\rho(\sigma - \tau)\beta\gamma + \sigma(\tau - \rho)\gamma\alpha + \tau(\rho - \sigma)\alpha\beta} \end{bmatrix}$$

Proof. Write $\sigma_a = \text{simil}(O_a, k, \mu)$, $\sigma_b = \text{simil}(O_b, K, \lambda)$, $\mu^2 = \beta/\gamma$, $\lambda^2 = \gamma/\alpha$ and assume that O_c is the fixed point of σ_c . This gives the matrices. For the Neuberg relation, one can check that $(f\boxed{\sigma_c^{-1}} + g + h\boxed{\sigma_a}) = \mathcal{E} \cdot \mathcal{L}_z$. \square

Proposition 26.8.5. *Exceptional cases are of two kinds*

1. Except 1: $\rho : \sigma : \tau \simeq \alpha : \beta : \gamma$ occurs when $\mathcal{E} \in \mathcal{L}_z$ (and δ is undetermined)
2. Except 2: $\rho = \sigma = \tau$ occurs when centers O_a, O_b, O_c are collinear

Proof. Equation $f + g + h = 0$ is equivalent to $\text{numer}(\delta) \times \text{denom}(\delta)$ (see (26.14)). These two quantities are conjugate of each other, so they vanish together. Solving gives the property: ABC equal to $O_a O_b O_c$, up to a rotation. \square

Proposition 26.8.6. *The R-C hodograph. Choose a point E in the plane (the handle of the hodograph) and M, N in figure Φ . The first modular triangle E_j is defined by $E_a = E + \phi_1 \overrightarrow{MN}$, $E_b = E + \phi_2 \overrightarrow{MN}$, $E_c = E + \phi_3 \overrightarrow{MN}$. And the second modular triangle F_j is defined by $EE_a \perp F_b F_c$, etc. Then:*

1. When E is translated to E' , the whole R-C hodograph is translated by $\overrightarrow{EE'}$.
2. We have $f : g : h \simeq \det(E, E_b, E_c) : \det(E_a, E, E_c) : \det(E_a, E_b, E)$ while the ω^2 of $E_a E_b E_c$ are $\sigma\tau\alpha : \tau\rho\beta : \rho\sigma\gamma$. When $\mathcal{E} \in \mathcal{L}_b$, triangle $E_a E_b E_c$ is flat.
3. Triangle $F_a F_b F_c$ is similar to triangle ABC . Their common ω^2 are $\beta\gamma : \gamma\alpha : \alpha\beta$. When the O_j are collinear, then $F_a = F_b = F_c$.
4. From E , you see the F_j at $\omega^2 = \rho : \sigma : \tau$, i.e. we have: $\angle(EF_b, EF_c) = \angle(O_a O_b, O_a O_c)$

Proof. (1) is obvious ; (2) is easy to compute, and more powerful than only $(f + g + h)E = fE_a + gE_b + hE_c$; (3) describes why triangle $F_a F_b F_c$ is useful. Incantation for computing the ω^2 :
 $U \rightarrow \text{reduce}(\text{norztri}(U.\text{mWW})[1])$; \square

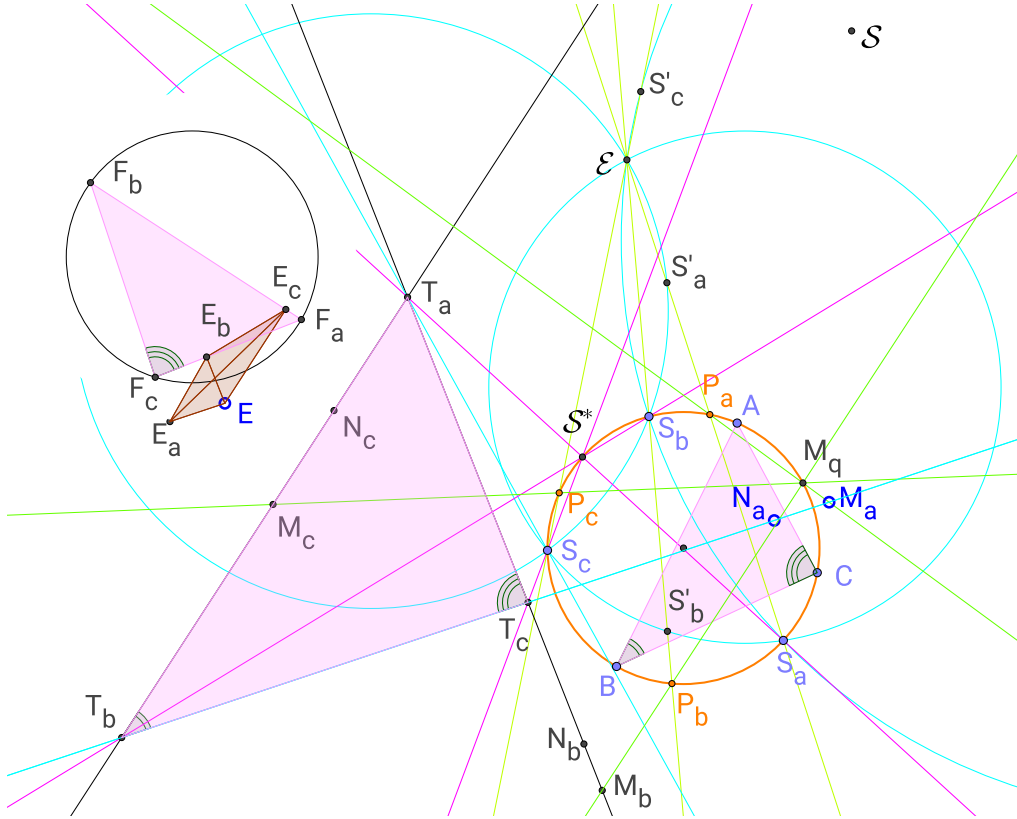


Figure 26.7: The RC hodograph

Proposition 26.8.7. *Consider the triples $\sigma_1(M), \sigma_2(M), \sigma_3(M)$ where two elements are equal. We have three cases (in column):*

	to_next_point				fixed	adjunct
A	σ_c	O'_a	O_b	O_c	P_a	η_a
B	σ_a	O_a	O'_b	O_c	P_b	η_b
C	σ_b	O_a	O_b	O'_c	P_c	η_c

Pairs $O_j O'_j$ are aligned with \mathcal{E} due to the Neuberg relation. Triangles $O'_a O_b O_c$ are similar with each other and with triangle $O_a O_b O_c$.

$$O'_a = \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\tau \sigma (\beta - \gamma)}{\tau \beta - \sigma \gamma} - \frac{(\sigma - \tau) \beta \gamma}{(\tau \beta - \sigma \gamma) \alpha} \rho & 1 \\ \frac{\beta - \gamma}{\tau \beta - \sigma \gamma} - \frac{(\sigma - \tau) \alpha}{(\tau \beta - \sigma \gamma)} \frac{1}{\rho} & \end{bmatrix}$$

Proof. Straightforward computation. R-C are using angles not so clearly defined, remarking that σ_c maps $[O_c, O'_a]$ onto $[O_c, O_a]$, so that triangle $[O_c, O'_a, O_a]$ is similar to triangle $[E, E_a, E_b]$. \square

Definition 26.8.8. Points O'_j are called the adjunct points. The circle $\gamma_a \doteq (O'_a, O_b, O_c)$ is called the adjunct circle. It goes through the equicenter \mathcal{E} . Its center is called η_a and we have $\sigma_c(\eta_a) = \eta_b$ where

$$\gamma_a \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \gamma - \beta \\ (\sigma + \tau)(\beta - \gamma) \\ (\gamma - \beta)\sigma\tau \\ \beta\tau - \gamma\sigma \end{bmatrix}; \quad \eta_a \simeq \begin{bmatrix} (\beta - \gamma)\sigma\tau \\ \beta\tau - \gamma\sigma \\ \beta - \gamma \end{bmatrix} \quad (26.15)$$

Corollary 26.8.9. Circle (\mathcal{E}, O_b, O_c) is the A-adjunct circle, while its second intersection with line $\mathcal{E}O_a$ is O'_a , the A-adjunct point.

Proposition 26.8.10. The trigone formed by three corresponding lines L_j is ever perspective with triangle $O_a O_b O_c$ and their perspector L_q (to be celebrated as \mathcal{S}^*) belongs to circle Γ .

Proof. Writing $L_a \simeq [f; g; h]$, we obtain $z(L_q) = \alpha\delta(h/f)$, see (26.14). \square

Proposition 26.8.11. When three corresponding lines L_a, L_b, L_c are concurrent, their common point L_q lies on the circle Γ , while each line L_j goes through the second intersection P_j of $\mathcal{E}O_j$ and Γ . And we have: $z(P_a) = \frac{1}{\alpha\delta}$ (see (26.14)) so that triangle $P_a P_b P_c$ is skew similar with ABC .

Proof. Obviously, $z(L_q) = \alpha\delta(h/f)$. \square

Proposition 26.8.12. The triangle formed by three corresponding points M_j is ever perspective with the fixed triangle $P_a P_b P_c$, and the perspector μ (Miquel) belongs to circle Γ .

Proof. One obtains: $z(M_q) = (\alpha\delta z_1 - t_1) \div (\alpha\delta t_1 - \zeta_1)$. \square

Proposition 26.8.13. When three corresponding points M_j are aligned then M_a belongs to adjunct circle $\gamma_a = (O'_a O_b O_c)$, etc. And conversely. Moreover, the M_j are aligned with \mathcal{E} (Neuberg property).

Proof. Consider $\det(M_a M_b M_c)$ and obtain the locus. Then identification is easy from (26.15). \square

26.9 Similarities and Cremona transforms

Now, we describe points A, B, C using the Lubin's parametrization, i.e. $A \simeq \alpha : 1 : 1/\alpha$ in the $\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \mathbf{Z}$ complex projective plane. We are giving both equations using f, g, h, p, q, r and using f, g, h, u, v, w (the equicenter).

Proposition 26.9.1. Three similarities theorem. Let O_a, O_b, O_c be three generic points, not on the sidelines. Define the similarity σ_A by its center O_a together with $CA \mapsto AB$, etc. Note $\mu = \sigma_C \cdot \sigma_B \cdot \sigma_A$. Then

1. μ is an homothety translation that maps CA onto CA .
2. μ is a translation if and only if lines AO_A, BO_B, CO_C concur at some point \mathcal{S}^* .
3. μ is the identity if and only if, moreover, \mathcal{S}^* belongs to circle $O_a O_b O_c$ (the so-called circle of similarity).

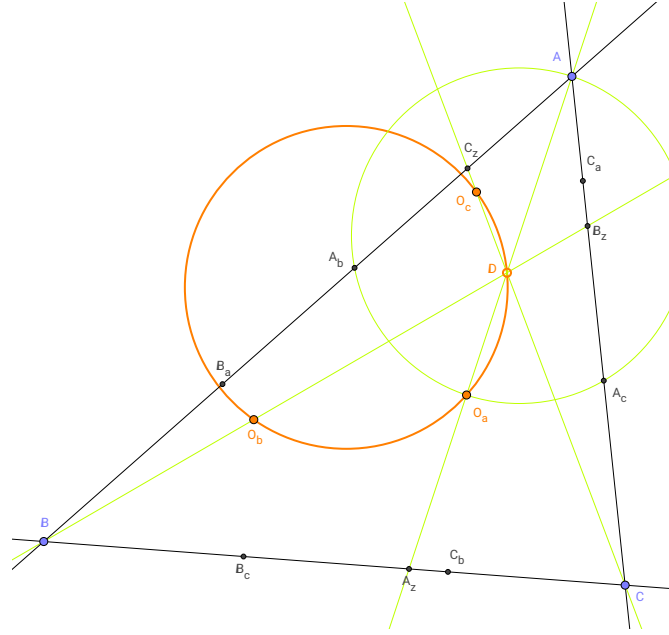


Figure 26.8: Circle of similarity

Proof. Let A_b, A_c be the orthogonal projections of O_a on AB and AC . We compute σ_A as the pointwise collineation $\Omega_x \mapsto \Omega_x, \Omega_y \mapsto \Omega_y, O_A \mapsto O_A, A_c \mapsto A_b$. Or as the inverse of the linewise collineation $\mathcal{L}_z \mapsto \mathcal{L}_z, \Omega_x O_a \mapsto \Omega_x O_a, \Omega_y O_a \mapsto \Omega_y O_a, AC \mapsto AB$. We get:

$$[\sigma_A] \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \frac{\alpha\beta\zeta_1 - (\alpha+\beta)t_1 + z_1}{\alpha\gamma\zeta_1 - (\alpha+\gamma)t_1 + z_1} & \frac{z_1(\gamma-\beta)(\alpha\zeta_1 - t_1)}{t_1(\alpha\gamma\zeta_1 - (\alpha+\gamma)t_1 + z_1)} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{\zeta_1(\gamma-\beta)(\alpha t_1 - z_1)}{t_1(\alpha\gamma\zeta_1 - (\alpha+\gamma)t_1 + z_1)\beta} & \frac{\gamma(\alpha\beta\zeta_1 - (\alpha-\beta)t_1 + z_1)}{(\alpha\gamma\zeta_1 - (\alpha+\gamma)t_1 + z_1)\beta} \end{bmatrix}$$

1. Obvious since μ fixes Ω_x, Ω_y and $\delta(AC)$. The factor of homothety is given by λ , the product of the three (1,1) elements or by the product of the three (3,3) elements of the matrices.
2. Let $A_z = BC \cap AO_A$. Then $\overline{A_z B} \div \overline{A_z C} = \text{birap}(B, C, A_z, \infty) = \text{birap}(\delta CA, \delta AB, \delta BC, \delta AO_a) =$

$$\frac{\gamma(\alpha-\beta)(\alpha\beta\zeta_1 - (\alpha+\beta)t_1 + z_1)}{\beta(\alpha-\gamma)(\alpha\gamma\zeta_1 - (\alpha+\gamma)t_1 + z_1)}$$

Clearly, $-\lambda$ is the product of these three quantities. And we conclude by the Ceva theorem.

3. Define $\mathcal{S}^* \doteq AO_A \cap BO_B, O_C = x\mathcal{S}^* + (1-x)C$, obtain $\mu = 1$ as a first degree equation in x and conclude. \square

Proposition 26.9.2. LFIT Similarities. *Given a LFIT, the correspondence $CA \mapsto AB : b \mapsto c$ induces a similarity σ_A of the whole plane. Center is O_A , the fixed point of the Miquel circles (26.12), while angle and ratio are, respectively, $-A$ and $-cg/bh$. In the Morley frame, the matrix of σ_A is:*

$$[\sigma_A] = \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{g(\alpha-\beta)}{h(\alpha-\gamma)} & \alpha r + (1-r)\beta + \frac{(\alpha-\beta)(q\gamma + (1-q)\alpha)g}{h(\alpha-\gamma)} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{r}{\alpha} + \frac{1-r}{\beta} + \frac{(\alpha-\beta)(q\alpha + (1-q)\gamma)g}{(\alpha-\gamma)\alpha\beta h} & -\frac{(\alpha-\beta)\gamma g}{(\alpha-\gamma)\beta h} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} -\frac{g(\alpha-\beta)}{h(\alpha-\gamma)} & \beta + \frac{(u(\alpha-\gamma) + g\gamma)(\alpha-\beta)}{h(\alpha-\gamma)} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{1}{\beta} + \frac{(u(\gamma-\alpha) + g\alpha)(\alpha-\beta)}{h(\alpha-\gamma)\alpha\beta} & -\frac{g(\alpha-\beta)\gamma}{h(\alpha-\gamma)\beta} \end{pmatrix}$$

The equicentric property holds for the whole plane, since:

$$f \boxed{1} + g \boxed{\sigma_C} + h \boxed{\sigma_B^{-1}} = \mathcal{E}_z \cdot \mathcal{L}_z$$

Proof. The quicker is to describe σ_A as the collineation: $\Omega_x \mapsto \Omega_x, \Omega_y \mapsto \Omega_y, b_0 \mapsto c_0, b \mapsto c$ and apply the general formulas. The obvious result $\boxed{\sigma_C} \boxed{\sigma_B} \boxed{\sigma_A} = 1$ can be used to check the obtained matrices. Remember $O_A \simeq a^2gh - b^2hu - c^2gu : b^2h\rho : c^2g\rho$ \square

Proposition 26.9.3. *Skew-similarities. The correspondence $CA \mapsto AB : b \mapsto c$ induces a skew similarity σ_A^- of the whole plane. Center is*

$$Q_a \simeq \begin{bmatrix} h(qg - hr)b^2 - g(qg - hr - g + h)c^2 \\ -(qg - hr + h)hb^2 \\ (qg - hr + h)gc^2 \end{bmatrix} \quad (26.16)$$

while $\boxed{\sigma_C^-} \boxed{\sigma_B^-} \boxed{\sigma_A^-}$ is the involutory affinity that fixes AC and reverts the direction of BH .

Proposition 26.9.4. Miquel homography. Assume that $\mathcal{S} \notin \mathcal{L}_b$ and define σ as the homography: $A \mapsto O_A, B \mapsto O_B, C \mapsto O_C$. The matrix of σ in the upper spherical map (\mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{T}) is:

$$\boxed{\sigma} = \begin{pmatrix} z_{\mathcal{E}} & \sigma_3 \overline{z_{\mathcal{S}} + z_{\mathcal{E}} - z_H} \\ 1 & -z_{\mathcal{S}} \end{pmatrix}; \quad \boxed{\sigma^{-1}} = \begin{pmatrix} z_{\mathcal{S}} & \sigma_3 \overline{z_{\mathcal{S}} + z_{\mathcal{E}} - z_H} \\ 1 & -z_{\mathcal{E}} \end{pmatrix}$$

where $z_{\mathcal{E}} = \frac{u\alpha + v\beta + w\gamma}{u + v + w}, z_{\mathcal{S}} = \frac{f\alpha + g\beta + h\gamma}{f + g + h}, z_H = \sigma_1$

This defines a Cremona transform $\hat{\sigma}$ of the whole projective plane, whose indeterminacy points are the umbilics and \mathcal{S} while exceptional lines are \mathcal{L}_b and the isotropic lines of \mathcal{S} . By σ^{-1} , the center ω of circle $O_A O_B O_C$ is mapped to $1/\zeta_{\mathcal{S}}$ (symmetric of \mathcal{S} in the circumcircle).

The four fixed points of $\hat{\sigma}$ are the foci of the pilar conic and therefore verify:

$$\frac{\tau}{\mathbf{Z} - \mathbf{T}\gamma} + \frac{\sigma}{\mathbf{Z} - \mathbf{T}\beta} + \frac{\rho}{\mathbf{Z} - \mathbf{T}\alpha} = 0$$

Proof. Direct computation. \square

Proposition 26.9.5. Homography σ degenerates when \mathcal{S} and \mathcal{E} are isoconjugates (thus none of them at infinity). In this case, the Miquel circle is reduced to point $\mathcal{E} = \mathcal{S}^* = O_a = O_b = O_c$.

Proof. Obvious from (17.8) (when assuming $\mathcal{S} \notin \mathcal{L}_b$). Assuming $\mathcal{S} \in \mathcal{L}_b$, this would require $(u\alpha + v\beta + w\gamma)(f\alpha + g\beta + h\gamma) = 0$, i.e. \mathcal{E} at origin, instead of $\mathcal{E} \in \mathcal{L}_b$. \square

26.10 Describing a LFIT from its degenerate triangles

26.10.1 General results

Fact 26.10.1. In the general case, a LFIT contains two degenerate triangles \mathcal{T}_j defining two lines $\Delta_j \simeq [p_j, q_j, r_j]$. Using an adapted timeline, we can enforce $t = \pm 1$ for these triangles and then:

$$\mathcal{T}_t = \frac{1+t}{2} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \frac{r_1}{r_1 - p_1} & \frac{-q_1}{p_1 - q_1} \\ \frac{-r_1}{q_1 - r_1} & 0 & \frac{p_1}{p_1 - q_1} \\ \frac{q_1}{q_1 - r_1} & \frac{-p_1}{r_1 - p_1} & 0 \end{bmatrix} + \frac{1-t}{2} \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \frac{r_0}{r_0 - p_0} & \frac{-q_0}{p_0 - q_0} \\ \frac{-r_0}{q_0 - r_0} & 0 & \frac{p_0}{p_0 - q_0} \\ \frac{q_0}{q_0 - r_0} & \frac{-p_0}{r_0 - p_0} & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Using (26.1), we obtain the following synchronized values:

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{S} &= \begin{pmatrix} (p_0 q_1 - q_0 p_1) (r_0 p_1 - p_0 r_1) (q_1 - r_1) (q_0 - r_0) \\ (q_0 r_1 - r_0 q_1) (p_0 q_1 - q_0 p_1) (r_1 - p_1) (r_0 - p_0) \\ (r_0 p_1 - p_0 r_1) (q_0 r_1 - r_0 q_1) (p_1 - q_1) (p_0 - q_0) \end{pmatrix} \\ \mathcal{E} &= \Theta_2 \begin{pmatrix} q_0 r_1 - r_0 q_1 \\ r_0 p_1 - p_0 r_1 \\ p_0 q_1 - q_0 p_1 \end{pmatrix} ; \Omega = \Theta_1 \begin{pmatrix} p_0 p_1 (q_0 r_1 - r_0 q_1) \\ q_0 q_1 (r_0 p_1 - p_0 r_1) \\ r_0 r_1 (p_0 q_1 - q_0 p_1) \end{pmatrix} \\ \boxed{\mathfrak{C}^*} &\simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & r_0 r_1 (p_0 q_1 - p_1 q_0) & q_0 q_1 (r_0 p_1 - r_1 p_0) \\ r_0 r_1 (p_0 q_1 - p_1 q_0) & 0 & p_0 p_1 (q_0 r_1 - q_1 r_0) \\ q_0 q_1 (r_0 p_1 - r_1 p_0) & p_0 p_1 (q_0 r_1 - q_1 r_0) & 0 \end{bmatrix}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{where } \Theta_1 &\doteq (p_0 (q_1 - r_1) + q_0 (r_1 - p_1) + r_0 (p_1 - q_1)) \\ \Theta_2 &\doteq (p_0 q_0 r_1 (p_1 - q_1) + q_0 r_0 p_1 (q_1 - r_1) + r_0 p_0 q_1 (r_1 - p_1))\end{aligned}$$

Remark 26.10.2. One has $\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \mathcal{S} = \mathcal{L}_b \cdot \mathcal{E} = \mathcal{L}_b \cdot \Omega = \Theta_1 \times \Theta_2$. Then Θ_1 vanishes when the lines are parallel, while Θ_2 vanishes when the reciprocal of the lines are parallel.

Exercise 26.10.3. Point $\omega = (\mathcal{S} + \mathcal{E})/2$ is the intersection of lines *cevadi* $(\mathcal{T}_j, \mathcal{L}_b)$. Spoiler: these lines are the Newton axes of quadrilaterals (ABC, \mathcal{T}_j) .

Proposition 26.10.4. *The temporal conic relative to a flat triangle \mathcal{T}_j is the reunion of two parallels, each of them tangent to the pilar conic \mathfrak{C} : the line \mathcal{T}_j itself (which goes through \mathcal{E}) and its symmetric wrt $\omega = (\mathcal{S} + \mathcal{E})/2$ (which goes through \mathcal{S}).*

Proof. The only safe proof is a direct computation, which is not difficult. Formula (26.11) cannot be used since $\det \mathcal{T}_j = 0$. While describing what happens when $t \rightarrow 0$ is enlightening... but doesn't prove anything. \square

Theorem 26.10.5. *The two flat triangles (visible or not) that belongs to a LFIT are the tangents from equicenter \mathcal{E} to the pilar conic \mathfrak{C} .*

Proof. This is only a paraphrase of the former proposition. Nevertheless, this is a key result. One can also note that \mathcal{E} satisfies $(u + v + w)\mathcal{E} = f a_j + g b_j + h c_j$ so that $\mathcal{E} \in \mathcal{T}_j$ is an obvious requirement. \square

Proposition 26.10.6. *About temporal conics. Applying (26.11), we have*

$$\begin{aligned}\boxed{\mathcal{C}^H} &\simeq \begin{pmatrix} 0 & h\tau & g\sigma \\ h\tau & 0 & f\rho \\ g\sigma & f\rho & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \\ &\begin{bmatrix} 0 & (p_1 - q_1)(p_0 - q_0)r_0 r_1 & (p_1 - r_1)(p_0 - r_0)q_0 q_1 \\ (p_1 - q_1)(p_0 - q_0)r_0 r_1 & 0 & p_0 p_1 (q_1 - r_1)(q_0 - r_0) \\ (p_1 - r_1)(p_0 - r_0)q_0 q_1 & p_0 p_1 (q_1 - r_1)(q_0 - r_0) & 0 \end{bmatrix}\end{aligned}$$

whose points at infinity are

$$\delta_0^H, \delta_1^H \doteq \begin{pmatrix} p_0 (q_0 - r_0) \\ q_0 (r_0 - p_0) \\ r_0 (p_0 - q_0) \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} p_1 (q_1 - r_1) \\ q_1 (r_1 - p_1) \\ r_1 (p_1 - q_1) \end{pmatrix}$$

Except from the two flat triangles (where, in fact, $\boxed{\mathcal{C}_j^H} = 0$), these points generate the points at infinity of the temporal conic $\boxed{\mathcal{C}_t}$ itself:

$$\delta_0 = \boxed{\mathcal{T}_t} \cdot \delta_1^H = \text{dir} \mathcal{T}_0 = \begin{pmatrix} q_0 - r_0 \\ r_0 - p_0 \\ p_0 - q_0 \end{pmatrix} ; \delta_1 = \boxed{\mathcal{T}_t} \cdot \delta_0^H = \text{dir} \mathcal{T}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} q_1 - r_1 \\ r_1 - p_1 \\ p_1 - q_1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. Line at infinity is invariant by the collineation described by matrix $\boxed{\mathcal{T}_t}$. And thus we can avoid the direct computation of the points at infinity of the temporal conics. Once again: this doesn't apply to the flat triangles. \square

Proposition 26.10.7. *Assume that \mathcal{E} (and thus \mathcal{S}) remains at finite distance. Then all the following assertions are equivalent:*

1. the LFIT contains only one degenerate triangle (and it happens that line \mathcal{T}_0 is tangent to \mathfrak{C} at \mathcal{E}) ;
2. circumscribed Γ and similarity Γ_σ circles are tangent (the contact occurs at μ_0) ;
3. relation $f^2u^2 + g^2v^2 + h^2w^2 - 2fguv - 2ghvw - 2hfwu = 0$ holds ;
4. point \mathcal{E} belongs to \mathfrak{C} (and therefore $\mathcal{S} \in \mathfrak{C}$ also) ;
5. point \mathcal{S} belongs to the ABC-inconic centered at $(A + B + C - \mathcal{E})/2$ (and conversely).

Proof. (1-2) is from Proposition 26.6.6; (3) is from the discriminant of $\det \mathcal{T}_t$; (4-5) are straightforward. \square

26.10.2 Miscellany

Exercise 26.10.8. All the previous results were obtained "without circles". But we can identify the adjunct circle γ_a as the circle through \mathcal{E}, a_0, a_1 , etc, point O_a as the other intersection of γ_b and γ_c , etc, point O'_a as the other intersection of line $\mathcal{E}O_a$ and circle γ_a . The similarity circle Γ_σ is the circle $O_aO_bO_c$, while fixed points P_a , etc are the other intersection of line $\mathcal{E}O_a$ and circle Γ_σ . And now, the moving part of the system: Miquel circles $\text{miq}_A = (A, b_t, c_t)$, etc concur at $\mu_t \in \Gamma_\sigma$, as well as lines P_aa_t , etc.

26.10.3 Critical triangle

Definition 26.10.9. When \mathcal{S} is not at infinity, $\text{area}(\mathcal{T}_t)$ is second degree in t , and presents an extremum. The corresponding triangle is called the critical triangle of the LFIT, and noted \mathcal{T}_c .

Proposition 26.10.10. *Consider $\mathcal{T}_0, \mathcal{T}_1$ the tangents issued from $\mathcal{E} \notin \mathcal{L}_b$ to the pilar conic \mathfrak{C} (see Figure 26.9). Let a_0, a_1 , etc be the intersections (visible or not) of these tangents with the sideline BC . Then critical triangle \mathcal{T}_c is given by $a_c \doteq (a_0 + a_1)/2$, etc.*

Proof. In the real domain, a second degree polynomial attains its extremum at the middle of its roots. \square

Corollary 26.10.11. *Applied to the pedal triangles of the points P_t of a line Δ , the critical triangle is obtained at the projection P_0 of the circumcenter O onto the given line.*

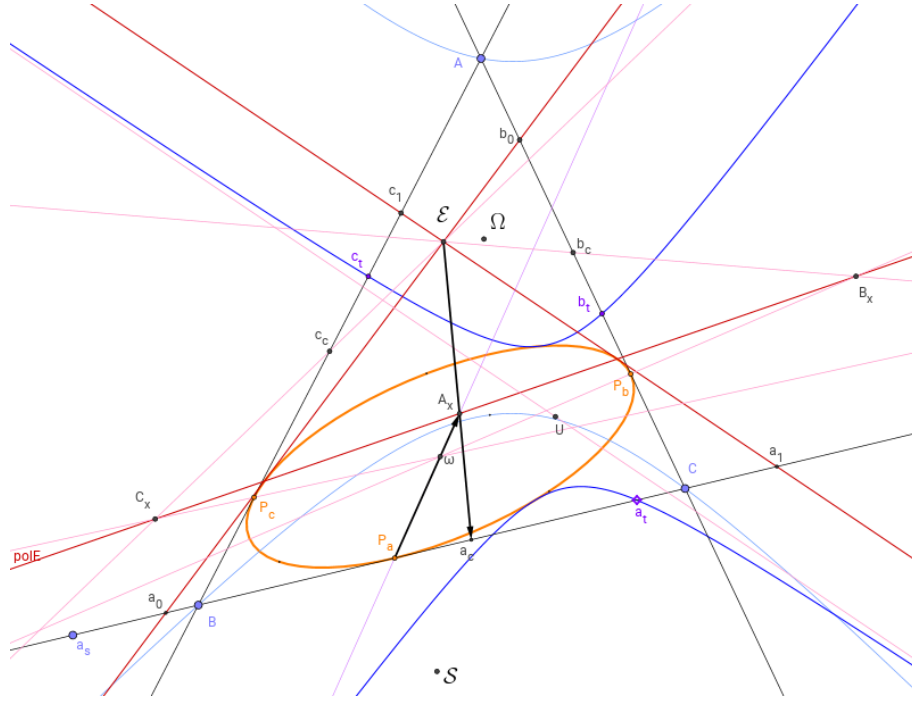
Proof. Line OP_0 is the axis of symmetry of the figure formed by Γ and Δ . \square

Construction 26.10.12. *Construct \mathcal{T}_{crit} when \mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E} are known, but not at infinity. It suffices to construct the middle of a subtangent as described at Construction 17.1.3. Obtain the contacts P_a , etc of the pilar conic from its perspector which is isotom Ω . Draw also Δ , the conipolar of \mathcal{E} (see Figure 26.9). Cut this line by line ωP_a and obtain A_x , etc. Then we have $a_c = \mathcal{E}A_x \cap BC$, etc.*

Proof. This works even if \mathcal{E} is inside \mathfrak{C} , i.e. when the flat triangles of the family are not visible. We have the following coordinates:

$$P_a \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ (f+u)(u\rho - (v+w)\tau) - (g+v)u(\sigma+\tau) \\ (f+u)(u\rho - (v+w)\sigma) - (h+w)u(\sigma+\tau) \end{pmatrix}$$

$$A_x \simeq \begin{pmatrix} u(\sigma+\tau) \\ u\rho - (v+w)\tau \\ u\rho - (v+w)\sigma \end{pmatrix} ; a_c \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ u\rho - (v+w)\tau - v(\sigma+\tau) \\ u\rho - (v+w)\sigma - w(\sigma+\tau) \end{pmatrix}$$



From P_a to A_x through ω . And then from A_x to a_c through \mathcal{E} .

Figure 26.9: Constructing the critical triangle

Moreover, a detailed proof has already been given at Construction 17.1.3. Obviously, we re-obtain (26.4). \square

Remark 26.10.13. The point A_x is the conipole of the line $(\mathcal{E}, \overrightarrow{BC})$.

Proposition 26.10.14. When the critical triangle is known as

$$\mathcal{T}_{crit} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & 1-q & r \\ p & 0 & 1-r \\ 1-p & q & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

then the slowness center is constrained to the circumconic \mathfrak{K}_S whose perspector and center are:

$$persp \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 1-q-r \\ 1-r-p \\ 1-p-q \end{pmatrix} ; cent \simeq \begin{pmatrix} (1-q-r)(1-2p) \\ (1-r-p)(1-2q) \\ (1-p-q)(1-2r) \end{pmatrix}$$

One can parametrize \mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E} as

$$\mathcal{S} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} K(1+K)(1-q-r) \\ (1+K)(1-r-p) \\ -K(1-p-q) \end{pmatrix} ; \mathcal{E} = \mathcal{T}_{crit} \cdot \mathcal{S}$$

and \mathcal{E} is constrained to $\mathfrak{K}_S = {}^t\mathcal{T}_{crit}^{-1} \cdot \mathfrak{K}_S \cdot \mathcal{T}_{crit}^{-1}$. This conic is nothing else than the hexagonal conic of \mathcal{T}_{crit} that goes through the a_m , etc and the $\alpha_m \doteq b_m + c_m - A$, etc.

Proof. One must ensure that the area is a polynomial whose first degree coefficient is null.

Caveat: the list $[p, q, r]$ is not to be treated up to a projective multiplier. \square

26.10.4 Orthologic families

Proposition 26.10.15. The lines that support the flat triangles are orthogonal if and only if \mathcal{S} and \mathcal{E} are conjugate with respect to the polar circle. In such a case, all temporal conics are rectangular hyperbolas... except from the degenerate ones

Proof. Use parametrization (26.1) where $\mathcal{T}_0, \mathcal{T}_1$ are the flat triangles. Then we have

$${}^tS \cdot \text{cir}_H \cdot \mathcal{E} = \mathcal{L}_0 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t\mathcal{L}_1 \times \Theta_2 \times \prod_3 (p_0q_1 - q_0p_1)$$

where Θ_2 was defined at Remark 26.10.2. □

Proposition 26.10.16. *When two non flat triangles of a LFIT are orthologic, then all triangles of the LFIT are orthologic with each other. Moreover, \mathcal{S} and \mathcal{E} are conjugate wrt the polar circle (and the flat triangles orthogonal to each other).*

Proof. By Proposition 25.4.9, orthology between non degenerate triangles is characterized by trace $\left(\boxed{\mathcal{T}_s} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{T}_t}^{-1} \cdot \boxed{\text{OrtO}}\right) = 0$. When using the asymmetric parametrization, this gives:

$$\frac{t-s}{fghS} \left(\mathcal{S} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} S_a & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & S_b & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & S_c \end{pmatrix} \cdot \mathcal{E} \right) = 0 \quad \square$$

Proposition 26.10.17. *Assume that preceding condition is fulfilled and note $P(t, s)$ the point which sees triangle \mathcal{T}_t at right angle to trigone \mathcal{T}_s . The barycentrics of $P(t, s)$ have degrees in t and s that are, respectively, 1 and 2. The locus $t \mapsto P(t, s)$ is one of the two lines tangent to the pilar conic through the orthocenter of $a_sb_sc_s$, while the locus $s \mapsto P(t, s)$ is the temporal conic \mathcal{C}_t .*

Proof. The linear motion $t \mapsto P(t, s)$ is incident to the linear motions of $a_tb_tc_t$ (see Proposition 26.5.9). And therefore the locus is a line tangent to the pilar conic, while $P(s, s)$ is obviously the orthocenter of $a_sb_sc_s$. On the other hand, $P(t, t) \in \mathcal{C}_t$ was granted since this conic is a RH. □

26.11 Envelopes of the sidelines (parabolas)

Proposition 26.11.1. *The envelope of the line b_tc_t is a parabola \mathfrak{P}_A . Its point at infinity is $g+h:-g:-h$, i.e. the direction of line SA . Its tangential equation is*

$$\begin{aligned} \boxed{\mathfrak{P}_A^*} &= \begin{pmatrix} 2(q-1)g-2hr & (1-q)g-(1-r)h & hr-gq \\ (1-q)g-(1-r)h & 0 & (1-r)h+gq \\ hr-gq & (1-r)h+gq & 0 \end{pmatrix} \\ &\simeq \begin{pmatrix} 2u & h-u & g-u \\ h-u & 0 & -g-h+u \\ g-u & -g-h+u & 0 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

This parabola is tangent to AB and AC at their intersections with locus (α) . When using metric properties, the focus is the already encountered point O_A , while its directrix is

$$\Delta_A \simeq [S_a(g+h), -S_bg, -S_ch] - uS_a\mathcal{L}_b \quad \text{where } u = \mathcal{E}_1 = hr - gq + g$$

Proof. The coefficients of line bc have degree 2 in t . Therefore, the envelope is a conic. Matrix $\boxed{\mathfrak{P}_A^*}$ is obtained by locusconi. Then $\mathcal{L}_b \cdot \boxed{\mathfrak{P}_A^*} = -g-h:g:h$ and we have a parabola. The focus comes from the Plucker method, and the directrix is the polar line of the focus. □

And circularly for the other two parabolas.

Proposition 26.11.2. *Tangents from \mathcal{E} to the three parabolas are the same.*

Proof. The contact points themselves have a terrific expression, involving

$$W = \sqrt{f^2u^2 + g^2v^2 + h^2w^2 - 2fguv - 2ghvw - 2fhw}$$

Nevertheless, one can see that the three expressions

$$(\mathcal{E} \cdot \mathfrak{P}_j \cdot \mathcal{E})(X \cdot \mathfrak{P}_j \cdot X) - (\mathcal{E} \cdot \mathfrak{P}_j \cdot X)^2$$

giving the pair of tangents issued from \mathcal{E} are the same. □

26.12 Special shapes of the inscribed triangles

26.12.1 LFIT of equilateral triangles

Proposition 26.12.1. *For a given triangle ABC , there are two LFIT of equilateral triangles. They are described by: $a, b, c \simeq$*

$$(S_a + 2\Sigma) \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ x \\ 1-x \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} +4\Sigma - (S_b + 2\Sigma)x \\ 0 \\ S_a - 2\Sigma + (S_b + 2\Sigma)x \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} S_a - b^2 + 2\Sigma + (S_c + 2\Sigma)x \\ +b^2 - (S_c + 2\Sigma)x \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

where Σ stands for $\Sigma = S/\sqrt{3}$.

Proof. Chose $a \simeq 0 : x : 1-x$ on BC and consider the rotation $\rho(a, +60^\circ)$, so that:

$$[\rho] = \begin{pmatrix} -a^2x + S_c + 2\Sigma & -a^2x + a^2 & -a^2x \\ (S_c + 2\Sigma)x - b^2 & (S_c + 2\Sigma)x - S_c + 2\Sigma & (S_c + 2\Sigma)x \\ (S_b - 2\Sigma)x + S_a + 2\Sigma & (S_b - 2\Sigma)x - S_b + 2\Sigma & (S_b - 2\Sigma)x + 4\Sigma \end{pmatrix}$$

Define c as $AB \cap \rho(CA)$ and b as $\rho^{-1}(c)$. Then abc is equilateral direct. It remains to synchronize the normalization of the three columns. \square

Proposition 26.12.2. *For these two families, the pair $(\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E})$ is either $X(13)$, $X(15)$ or $X(14), X(16)$, i.e. a Fermat center and the corresponding isodynamic center.*

Proof. From the values of a_t, b_t, c_t , one can read the values of f, g, h . And then apply these masses to the variable triangle. This leads to:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{S} &\simeq \frac{1}{S_a + 2\Sigma} : \frac{1}{S_b + 2\Sigma} : \frac{1}{S_c + 2\Sigma} \\ \mathcal{E} &\simeq (S_a + 2\Sigma)a^2 : (S_b + 2\Sigma)b^2 : (S_c + 2\Sigma)c^2 \end{aligned}$$

Caveat: these two sets of coordinates are to be synchronized in order to enforce $f+g+h = u+v+w$ (leading to huge expressions !). \square

Proposition 26.12.3. *The pedal triangle of $X(15)$ is equilateral and belongs to the corresponding family.*

Proof. Since triangles abc are "turning around" point \mathcal{E} , the triangle of minimal area is obtained by orthogonal projection. The center of this triangle is the middle of $[\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E}]$. Moreover, the locus of $g = (a+b+c)/3$ is directed by:

$$S_c - S_b : S_a - S_c : S_b - S_a \simeq b^2 - c^2 : c^2 - a^2 : a^2 - b^2$$

One recognizes $X(531)$, the orthopoint of $X(30)$: the locus of g is the perpendicular bisector of segment $[\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E}]$, and therefore orthogonal to the Euler line. \square

26.12.2 LFIT of similar triangles

Proposition 26.12.4. *The triangles of a linear family are similar to each other if and only if \mathcal{S} and \mathcal{E} form an isogonal pair. And then \mathcal{E} is the center of similitude. Moreover, $O_A = O_B = O_C = \mathcal{E}$.*

Proof. We already know that \mathcal{E} is a fixed point of $[\mathcal{T}_t] \cdot [\mathcal{T}_s]^{-1}$. In order to have a similitude, the other two must be the umbilics of the plane. This leads to:

$$\begin{pmatrix} u \\ v \\ w \end{pmatrix} = \frac{h+g+f}{a^2gh + b^2fh + c^2fg} \begin{pmatrix} a^2gh \\ b^2fh \\ c^2fg \end{pmatrix}$$

\square

Proposition 26.12.5. *The pedal triangle of \mathcal{E} belongs to the LFIT, and provides the extremal area of the family*

$$\frac{4fgh S^3 (f + g + h)}{(a^2gh + b^2fh + c^2fg)^2} = \frac{4S^3 (a^2vw + b^2uw + c^2uv)}{a^2b^2c^2 (u + v + w)^2}$$

Proof. Direct computation. \square

26.12.3 LFIT of pedal triangles

Proposition 26.12.6. *When a LFIT contains the pedal triangles of two different points P_0, P_1 (not at infinity), then each of the other inscribed triangles can be written as $\mathcal{T}_t \doteq (1 - t) \mathcal{T}_0 + t \mathcal{T}_1$ and is the pedal triangle of $P_t = (1 - t) P_0 + t P_1$.*

Spoiler: for such a LFIT, the slowness center \mathcal{S} is on the circumcenter, its isogonal \mathcal{S}^* is the orthopoint of $\overrightarrow{P_0 P_1}$, while \mathcal{E} belongs to the Simson line of $2O - \mathcal{S}$. This configuration is the core of the theory of the orthopoles, which is explored in detail at Section 27.8.

Proof of the first part. Consider the LFIT generated by $\mathcal{T}_0, \mathcal{T}_1$ and apply (9.3). Then check that P_t is the pedal center of \mathcal{T}_t . The slownesses are easy to obtain, and $\mathcal{S} \in \Gamma$ follows. \square

Proposition 26.12.7. *Any LFIT whose slowness center \mathcal{S} is not on the circumcircle contains exactly one pedal triangle.*

Proof. Apply (9.3) to the LFIT. This gives a first degree polynomial in t whose leading coefficient is $a^2gh + b^2hf + c^2fg$. \square

Construction 26.12.8. Embedded pedal triangle ($\mathcal{S} \notin \Gamma$). Start from a triangle \mathcal{T}_t and cut the perpendicular to AB issued from c_t by the perpendicular to AC issued from b_t . This gives a point BC_t . The locus Δ_a of these points BC_t is a straight line. Obtain another point by using another triangle \mathcal{T}_s . When $\mathcal{S} \notin \Gamma$, the three lines Δ_a , etc are concurrent, as proven in the previous proposition. This gives the central point of the embedded pedal triangle.

26.12.4 Cevian triangles in a LFIT

Proposition 26.12.9. *A LFIT contains exactly three cevian triangles (up to visibility and multiplicity).*

Proof. The determinant of lines a_tA, b_tB, c_tC is a polynomial of degree 3 in t (its leading coefficient doesn't vanish). \square

Construction 26.12.10. Embedded cevian triangles. Draw the conic \mathcal{C}_A through $B, C, G_a = B + C - A$ and the two intersections of the hexagonal graph \mathcal{G}_a with lines AB and AC . Draw the other two. The three conics concur at the three required centers (in the complex plane). Maybe only one of them is visible.

Proof. Determine point BC_t as the intersection of lines b_tB, c_tC . The result is in t^2 . Thus the locus of BC_t is a conic. Use locuscon to obtain its equation, and check for the five given points. Existence is given by the previous proposition. \square

Exercise 26.12.11. Consider the LFIT generated by the cevians of the two points P_0 (fixed) and P_2 (mobile). Let P_3 be the center of the third cevian triangle of this family. Then, for quite all P_0 , the transformation $P_2 \mapsto P_3$ is a Cremona involution. Determine the exceptional locus and the points of indetermination. Study how these points are blown out.

26.13 Families with constant area

26.13.1 Three non concurrent lines (rewritten)

Proposition 26.13.1. *Assume that $\text{area}(\mathcal{T}_t)$ remains constant when t changes. Then \mathcal{S} is at infinity while $\mathcal{E} \simeq \mathcal{S}$, so that we can use the hard equalities $\mathcal{S} = [\tau - 1 : 1 : -\tau]$ and $\mathcal{E} = K \mathcal{S}$ for*

some values τ and K . The converse holds and leads to:

$$\boxed{\mathcal{T}_t} = \begin{bmatrix} 0 & K\tau + \tau - \frac{t}{1} & 1 + \frac{K}{\tau} - \frac{t}{\tau} \\ \frac{t}{\tau - 1} & 0 & -\frac{K}{\tau} + \frac{t}{\tau} \\ 1 - \frac{t}{\tau - 1} & 1 - K\tau - \tau + \frac{t}{1} & 0 \end{bmatrix}; \text{area}(\mathcal{T}_t) = -K(K+1)S$$

Proof. The coefficient of t^2 in $\text{area}(\mathcal{T}_t)$ contains $f + g + h$, so that $S \in \mathcal{L}_b$. And then we have $u + v + w = f + g + h = 0$, together with $\tau v + w = 0$ from the coefficient of t . \square

Corollary 26.13.2. *Special case: when $S \in \mathcal{L}_b$ and $K = -1$, the LFIT is the set of flat inscribed triangles whose "sideline" is $[1, -\tau + 1, 0] + t\mathcal{L}_b$ i.e. is directed by S .*

Corollary 26.13.3. *Special-special case: when $S \in \mathcal{L}_b$ and $K = 0$, the LFIT is the set of flat inscribed triangles whose "sideline" is tangent to the inscribed parabola having S as point at infinity. In this case, $\boxed{\mathcal{T}_t} \cdot S = 0 : 0 : 0$ and the equicenter \mathcal{E} is not defined.*

Proof. Apply locusconi to line $[t(-\tau + 1 + t), (t - \tau)(-\tau + 1 + t), (t - \tau)t]$. \square

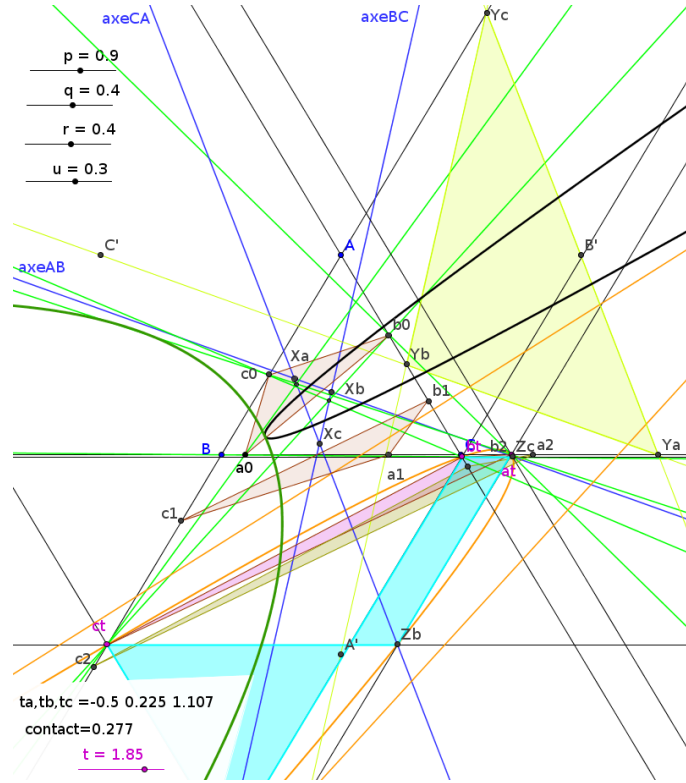


Figure 26.10: Two parabola

Let us assume that $S = K_2$ (choosing the sign of W). One obtains:

$$K_3 \simeq W \begin{pmatrix} g - h \\ h - f \\ f - g \end{pmatrix} - \frac{2(fg + gh + hf)}{fgh} \begin{pmatrix} f \\ g \\ h \end{pmatrix} t$$

while the locus \mathcal{P} of the K_1 becomes a conic since the t -degrees of the barycentrics of that point are now 2, due to $f + g + h = 0$. After computing \mathcal{P} using the procedure *locusconi*, one can check that $K_2 \in \mathcal{P}$ together with $\mathcal{L}_b \in \mathcal{P}^*$: the conic is a parabola.

Moreover, the envelope of line K_1K_3 is also a conic, since the t -degree of $K_1 \wedge K_3$ is two. Using again *locusconi*, we obtain the matrix of the tangential equation:

$$\boxed{Q^*} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} (1-W)f & -Wh & -Wg \\ -Wh & (1-W)g & -Wf \\ -Wg & -Wf & (1-W)h \end{bmatrix}$$

When searching for the common points of Q and \mathcal{P} , one obtains that these curves are bitangent. A first contact occurs in K_2 , so that Q is a parabola with the same direction as \mathcal{P} . The second contact is the center of the hexagonal conic relative to

$$t_0 = \frac{(g-h)(f-h)(f-g)}{6(fg+fh+gh)} W$$

when using the former given parametrization. This value is the arithmetical mean of the dates of the degeneracies.

26.13.2 Three concurrent lines

Suppose now that points a, b, c are moving on concurrent lines. We only have to consider this case as the limit of what happens when $K \rightarrow 0$ to the figure obtained by applying an homothety of center G and ratio K to the previous results (and replacing X by X/K for $X = p, q, r, W, t$, while slownesses f, g, h are unchanged).

Then the inscribed triangle and the equicenter become:

$$\boxed{abc} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{3} - q - \frac{t}{g} & \frac{1}{3} + r + \frac{t}{h} \\ \frac{1}{3} + p + \frac{t}{f} & \frac{1}{3} & \frac{1}{3} - r - \frac{t}{h} \\ \frac{1}{3} - p - \frac{t}{f} & \frac{1}{3} + q + \frac{t}{g} & \frac{1}{3} \end{pmatrix}, \mathcal{E} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} hr - gq + \frac{1}{3}(f+g+h) \\ fp - hr + \frac{1}{3}(f+g+h) \\ gq - fp + \frac{1}{3}(f+g+h) \end{pmatrix}$$

while the areal center is the limit of:

$$\begin{pmatrix} (2f - g - h)K + (f + g + h) \\ (2g - f - h)K + (f + g + h) \\ (2h - f - g)K + (f + g + h) \end{pmatrix}$$

and thus is G when $\mathcal{S} \notin \mathcal{L}_b$, but is \mathcal{S} when $\mathcal{S} \in \mathcal{L}_b$.

The hexagonal conic goes through a, b, c and $a' = b + c - G$, etc. When $t = 0$, its points at infinity are:

$$2q + 2r : -W - 2r : W - 2q$$

where $W^2 = -4(pq + qr + rp)$ is the limiting value of the relative area. Therefore:

Proposition 26.13.4. *Given three lines that are concurrent at G and an inscribed triangle abc it exists two families of inscribed triangles that share the same area. Their areal center is one of the points at infinity of the hexagonal conic defined by a, b, c, G . Point \mathcal{S} is real if $W^2 \geq 0$. Then, the family is obtained by constructing strips of equal width (in the \mathcal{S} direction).*

26.14 Concurrent hexagonal graphs

In this section, we assume that the three hexagonal graphs intersect each other at the same point $K \simeq p : q : r$.

26.14.1 Assuming that \mathcal{S} is known

Lemma 26.14.1. *In any case, the line through A parallel to G_a cuts BC at $P' \simeq 0 : g : -h$, etc. These points P', Q', R' belong to line $[1/f, 1/g, 1/h]$ (the tripolar of \mathcal{S}). Moreover, the points $P = B + C - P'$, etc belong to line $[f, g, h]$ (isotomic of the tripolar).*

Proof. Quite obvious from 26.8. \square

Proposition 26.14.2. *When the graphs are concurrent and $\mathcal{S} \simeq f : g : h$ is known, then K belongs to line $[f, g, h] = (\text{tripolar} \circ \text{isotom})(\mathcal{S}) = (\text{recip} \circ \text{tripolar})(\text{isotomic conjugate of the tripolar of } \mathcal{S})$, while $\mathcal{E} \simeq K \underset{b}{*} (2\mathcal{S} - G)$, the barycentric product of K and the anticomplement of \mathcal{S} . As a result, \mathcal{E} belongs to the line:*

$$\Delta_{\mathcal{S}} \simeq \left[\frac{f}{g+h-f}, \frac{g}{h+f-g}, \frac{h}{f+g-h} \right]$$

which is the image of $\text{tripolar}(\mathcal{S})$ by $\text{recip} \circ \text{homot}(\mathcal{S}, 1/3)$.

Proof. Using 26.8, the concurrence gives an equation, and the normalization gives another. This results into a parametrization of \mathcal{E} and K by a coordinate of \mathcal{E} (say w). And the results follow. \square

26.14.2 Assuming that K is known

Proposition 26.14.3. *When the graphs are concurrent at a known point $K \simeq p : q : r$, then \mathcal{S} belongs to line $[p, q, r]$ while \mathcal{E} belongs to line*

$$\Delta_K \simeq [qr(q+r), pr(p+r), p(p+q)q]$$

which is the image of $\text{tripolar}(K)$ by $\text{homot}(K, 2/3)$. Moreover, a parametrization of $[\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E}]$ by a point at infinity is:

$$[\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E}] \simeq \left[(p+q+r) \begin{pmatrix} qr \\ rp \\ pq \end{pmatrix} \underset{b}{*} \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ \mu \\ -1-\mu \end{pmatrix}, \begin{pmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{pmatrix} \underset{b}{*} \begin{pmatrix} -pq(\mu+1) + \mu pr - qr \\ -pq(\mu+1) - \mu pr + qr \\ +pq(\mu+1) + \mu pr + pq + qr \end{pmatrix} \right]$$

Proof. From previous proposition, $f p + g q + h r = 0$. Thus the parametrization $1 : \mu : -1 - \mu$ of \mathcal{L}_b induces $\mathcal{S} \simeq qr : \mu rp : -(1 + \mu)pq$. Added to $G_a \cdot K = 0$, etc and the normalization rule, this leads to the remaining results. \square

26.14.3 Assuming that K is the center of gravity

Fact 26.14.4. *When $K = X(2)$, then $\mathcal{S} \in \mathcal{L}_b$ while $\mathcal{E} = (-2/3)\mathcal{S}$. Moreover, the areas of all the inscribed triangles abc , and of all the $\alpha\beta\gamma$, are equal to $(2/9)S$.*

Fact 26.14.5. *Then $M_\infty = \mathcal{S}^*$ belongs to the circumcircle, while $O_a = (2A + M_\infty)/3$, etc. This provides the circle of similarity. And everything flows from this result.*

26.15 When the graphs are given

In the previous sections, the graphs were the result of the pre-existing mappings $a \longleftrightarrow b \longleftrightarrow c \longleftrightarrow a$. Let us now examine what happens when these graphs are chosen from the beginning.

26.15.1 Catalan graphs

Proposition 26.15.1. *When three lines Δ_j are parallel to the sidelines, they are the Catalan graphs of a LFIT if and only if the bisectors of strips (Δ_a, BC) , etc are concurrent. And then \mathcal{S} can be chosen at will (outside of \mathcal{L}_b).*

Proof. The necessity comes from the required symmetry wrt $\omega = (\mathcal{S} + \mathcal{E})/2$. Since ω is at finite distance, \mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E} cannot be chosen at infinity. \square

Proposition 26.15.2. *Define the collineation μ^* by $\mathcal{L}_b \mapsto \mathcal{L}_b$, $BC \mapsto \Delta_A = [p_0 q_0, q_0]$, $CA \mapsto \Delta_B = [r_1, q_1, r_1]$, $AB \mapsto \Delta_C = [p_2, p_2, r_2]$. Then its matrix (acting over the lines !) is*

$$\boxed{\mu^*} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \frac{p_0}{q_0 - p_0} & \frac{q_0}{q_0 - p_0} & \frac{q_0}{q_0 - p_0} \\ \frac{r_1 - q_1}{p_2} & \frac{r_1 - q_1}{p_2} & \frac{r_1 - q_1}{p_2} \\ \frac{p_2}{p_2 - r_2} & \frac{p_2}{p_2 - r_2} & \frac{p_2}{p_2 - r_2} \end{pmatrix}$$

We have $\chi(X) = (X+1)^2(X-\lambda)$ Then $\lambda = 1$, i.e. μ is a central symmetry, when

$$2p_0q_1r_2 + q_0r_1p_2 - p_0q_1p_2 - p_0r_1r_2 - q_0q_1r_2 = 0$$

In any case, $\omega \doteq \ker(\mu - 1) \simeq \frac{q_0}{p_0 - q_0} : \frac{r_1}{q_1 - r_1} : \frac{p_2}{r_2 - p_2}$. When ω is the center, we have:

$$\mathcal{E} = \mu(\mathcal{S}) \simeq \frac{fp_0 + gq_0 + hq_0}{p_0 - q_0} : \frac{fr_1 + gq_1 + hr_1}{q_1 - r_1} : \frac{fp_2 + gp_2 + hr_2}{r_2 - p_2}$$

Proof. Computations are straightforward. \square

26.15.2 Hexagonal graphs

Lemma 26.15.3. When \mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E} are known, the hexagonal graphs have the following equations:

$$\begin{pmatrix} G_a \\ G_b \\ G_c \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} g+h-u & g-u & h-u \\ f-v & h+f-v & h-v \\ f-w & g-w & f+g-w \end{bmatrix} \quad (26.17)$$

Proof. From the very definition, we have $\alpha_t \doteq B + C - a_t$, etc. And then, we use the asymmetric parametrization. \square

Lemma 26.15.4. When $G_c \simeq [p_3, q_3, r_3]$ is given, then both relations hold:

$$g = f \frac{r_3 - p_3}{r_3 - q_3} ; \quad w = f \frac{r_3 - p_3 - q_3}{r_3 - q_3}$$

Proof. Graph G_c describes $a_t \mapsto b_t$. Start from $a_t \simeq 0 : t/f, 1-t/f$. Compute $\gamma_t \simeq G_c \wedge (a_t \wedge \overrightarrow{AC})$. Then identify $C + \gamma_t$ with the $a_t + b_t$ from the usual parametrization. \square

Proposition 26.15.5. Let be given three lines $\Delta_j \simeq [p_j, q_j, r_j]$ in general position and define

$$\begin{pmatrix} f \\ g \\ h \\ u \\ v \\ w \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} p_1 - r_1 \\ p_1 - r_1 \\ p_1 - q_1 \\ p_1 - q_1 - r_1 \\ p_1 - q_1 \\ p_1 - r_1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{matrix} \\ \\ * \\ b \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} q_2 - p_2 \\ q_2 - p_2 \\ q_2 - p_2 \\ q_2 - p_2 \\ q_2 - p_2 - r_2 \\ q_2 - p_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{matrix} \\ \\ * \\ b \end{matrix} \begin{pmatrix} r_3 - q_3 \\ r_3 - p_3 \\ r_3 - p_3 \\ r_3 - p_3 \\ r_3 - p_3 \\ r_3 - q_3 - p_3 \end{pmatrix}$$

Then the three lines are the hexagonal graphs (in that order) of a LFIT if and only if

$$\frac{(p_1 - r_1)(q_2 - p_2)(r_3 - q_3)}{(p_1 - q_1)(q_2 - r_2)(r_3 - p_3)} = +1 \quad \text{and} \quad f + g + h = u + v + w$$

In such a case, f, g, h, u, v, w are the synchronized barycentrics of the centers \mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E} of this LFIT.

Proof. Caveat: this formula is not symmetric but is nevertheless the right one. The first condition is required by Lemma 26.15.4 if we want that $x = f$ in the chain $f \mapsto_3 g \mapsto_1 h \mapsto_2 x$. The second is the required synchronization. The converse is left as an exercise. \square

Exercise 26.15.6. Use sagemath. Use the nine coefficients of matrix :

$$\begin{pmatrix} g+h-u & g-u & h-u \\ f-v & h+f-v & h-v \\ f-w & g-w & f+g-w \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} x & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & y & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & z \end{pmatrix} \cdot \begin{pmatrix} p_1 & q_1 & r_1 \\ p_2 & q_2 & r_2 \\ p_3 & q_3 & r_3 \end{pmatrix}$$

together with $f + g + h - u - v - w$ and $f - 1$. Use these 11 polynomials to generate an ideal \mathcal{I} over \mathbb{Q} . Eliminate $f, g, h, u, v, w, x, y, z$. This gives an ideal \mathcal{J} . Build the ideal \mathcal{K} generated by the two conditions of the proposition. Divide \mathcal{J} by \mathcal{K} , and obtain 1 (condition was necessary). Divide \mathcal{K} by \mathcal{J} . The result is generated by three polynomials. And now, be more precise about the "in general position" used in the above proposition.

Proposition 26.15.7. *Let us now suppose that \mathcal{S} is given. This determines the direction of the graphs, and therefore requires the existence of three numbers ρ, σ, τ such that :*

$$(G) \simeq \begin{bmatrix} -\rho & h - \rho & g - \rho \\ h - \sigma & -\sigma & f - \sigma \\ g - \tau & f - \tau & -\tau \end{bmatrix} \quad (26.18)$$

The condition for these three lines to be the hexagonal graphs of a LFIT is $f + g + h = \rho + \sigma + \tau$, i.e. the synchronization rule (26.6). And then, the equicenter \mathcal{E} and the pilar point Ω are given by

$$\mathcal{E} = \begin{pmatrix} h + g - \rho \\ h + f - \sigma \\ g + f - \tau \end{pmatrix} ; \quad \Omega = \begin{pmatrix} \rho \\ \sigma \\ \tau \end{pmatrix}$$

so that $\mathcal{S} + \mathcal{E} + \Omega = (f + g + h)(A + B + C)$ as required at (26.3).

Proof. The directions of the three hexagonal graphs are those of the anti-cevian triangle of \mathcal{S} . Let $\mathcal{T}_{\mathcal{S}}^*$ be the corresponding trigone, i.e. the three sidelines of this triangle. We have:

$$\mathcal{T}_{\mathcal{S}}^* \doteq \begin{pmatrix} -f & f & f \\ g & -g & g \\ h & h & -h \end{pmatrix}^* \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 0 & h & g \\ h & 0 & f \\ g & f & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

The remaining computations are straightforward. □

Remark 26.15.8. This can be written as $\mathcal{S} \in \mathfrak{D}$ where

$$\mathfrak{D} \simeq \left[\frac{f - \rho}{f}, \frac{g - \sigma}{g}, \frac{h - \tau}{h} \right] \quad (26.19)$$

but the geometric interpretation of this line is not so clear.

26.15.3 The marvelous formula

Lemma 26.15.9. *When the homologue sidelines of two trigones are parallel, then the two triangles are perspective.*

Proof. The sidelines are perspective from \mathcal{L}_b . Another proof. The triangle $\boxed{G^*}$, obtained as the dual of trigone 26.18, is ever perspective with its model, the anticevian triangle of \mathcal{S} , and the perspector is

$$Q \doteq \begin{pmatrix} -\rho f + g\sigma + h\tau \\ +\rho f - g\sigma + h\tau \\ +\rho f + g\sigma - h\tau \end{pmatrix} \begin{matrix} * \\ * \\ * \end{matrix} \begin{matrix} f \\ g \\ h \end{matrix}$$

□

Proposition 26.15.10. *Let G be a trigone whose sidelines are respectively parallel to the sidelines of the \mathcal{S} -anticevian triangle and consider the collineation μ defined by $\mathcal{L}_b \mapsto \mathcal{L}_b, \mathcal{T}_{\mathcal{S}}^* \mapsto (G)$. This is ever an homothety. And then G describes the graphs of LFIT if and only if $\text{stein}_{\mathcal{S}} \cdot \boxed{\mu^*} \simeq \text{dual}_{\mathcal{S}}$ where*

$$\text{dual}_{\mathcal{S}} \simeq [f, g, h] ; \quad \text{stein}_{\mathcal{S}} \doteq \text{anticomplem}(\text{dual}_{\mathcal{S}}) \simeq [g + h, h + f, f + g]$$

Proof. Describing μ by its action over the lines, we obtain the matrix :

$$\boxed{\mu^*} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} - \frac{1}{2fgh} Q \cdot \mathcal{L}_b$$

where Q is the perspector defined just above. Therefore, μ is an homothety centered at Q , whose line-ratio is: $1/k \doteq 1 - (\mathcal{L}_b \cdot Q)/(2fgh) \dots$ while $\boxed{\mu} \doteq \text{Adjoint}[\mu^*]$, when acting on columns, describes the point-homothety $\text{homot}(Q, k)$ (see (7.29), which uses k as point-ratio).

Line $\text{dual}_{\mathcal{S}} \simeq [f, g, h]$ is the tripolar of the isotomic of this point. Its image by the anticomplement transform is $\text{stein}_{\mathcal{S}} \doteq [g+h, h+f, f+g]$ (using ratio -2 on points, but ratio $-1/2$ on lines). We call this line $\text{stein}_{\mathcal{S}}$ since this is the conipolar of \mathcal{S} w.r.t. the Steiner out-ellipse. And then one can see that $\text{stein}_{\mathcal{S}} \cdot \boxed{\mu^*} = \text{dual}_{\mathcal{S}}$ if and only if $f+g+h = \rho+\sigma+\tau$ is satisfied. \square

Corollary 26.15.11. *Consider $\mu_G \doteq \mu \circ \text{anticomplement}$. This is another homothety (with point-ratio $-2k$), and we have:*

$$\boxed{\mu_G^*} = \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix} - \frac{1}{2fgh} Q_G \cdot \mathcal{L}_b \quad \text{where } Q_G \doteq \begin{bmatrix} 2fgh + (g-h)(g\sigma - h\tau) - (h+g)f\rho \\ 2fgh + (h-f)(h\tau - f\rho) - (h+f)g\sigma \\ 2fgh + (f-g)(f\rho - g\sigma) - (f+g)h\tau \end{bmatrix}$$

And now the requirement is the global invariance of $\text{dual}_{\mathcal{S}}$ by μ_G , i.e. $Q_G \in \text{dual}_{\mathcal{S}}$. We are back with the same question: a geometric interpretation would be great.

26.16 Observers (about perspectivities)

Definition 26.16.1. We say that a (fixed) triangle $T_a T_b T_c$ **observes** the LFIT when the fixed triangle is in perspective with all of the triangles of the LFIT.

Proposition 26.16.2. *An observer \mathcal{O} is necessarily parallelogic with the ABC triangle. This implies the existence of a point M_o (the ray source) that sees ABC with rays parallel to the sidelines of \mathcal{O} .*

Proof. The observer must be in perspective with \mathcal{T}_{∞} , i.e. with $(\delta_{BC}, \delta_{CA}, \delta_{AB})$. This asserts the existence of the other center of parallelism and, due to the symmetry of the relation, this implies the existence of M_o . \square

Our intent is to specify some notations and prove the following theorem:

Theorem 26.16.3. *There are three kinds of observers, each family being parametrized by a generic point M in the triangle plane.*

1. *The metric observers, are using a generic point as \mathcal{S}_H^* in order to obtain the P_a^H, P_b^H, P_c^H of Proposition 26.6.7. And then the locus of the perspectors is the conic through the seven M, P_j^H, O_j^H (here \mathcal{S}_H^* is the other parallelism center, not the ray source).*
2. *The Poulbot's observers, are using M as ray source in order to obtain a trigone that is tangent to each of the parabolas \mathfrak{P}_j described at Proposition 26.11.1. And then, the locus of the perspectors is a straight line.*
3. *The three families of singular observers, using M as ray source in order to obtain a triangle with one side tangent to one of the parabolas, and the opposite vertex on the related sideline of ABC .*

Conversely, assume that T_a is generic, i.e. T_a is not on BC while AT_a is not tangent to \mathfrak{P}_b or \mathfrak{P}_c . Then there are five observers that share T_a as first vertex: one metric and four Poulbot. The B -vertices of the Poulbot triangles (say $B_j, j=1..4$) are the common points of the tangents to \mathfrak{P}_B from P_a^H and to \mathfrak{P}_A from P_b^H , etc. for the vertices C_k . And then the B_j and the C_k are paired by the fact that $B_j C_j$ is tangent to \mathfrak{P}_A .

In what follows, we are using the asymmetric parametrization (26.5), discarding the case $\mathcal{S} = \mathcal{E} \in \mathcal{L}_b$ (constant area) and assuming $f+g+h-u-v-w=0$. Proceeding that way, the case $\mathcal{S} \neq \mathcal{E}$; $\mathcal{S}, \mathcal{E} \in \mathcal{L}_b$ can be treated like the other cases. Let us recall that $\Omega = g+h-u : h+f-v : f+g-w$.

26.16.1 Metric observer

By itself, the theory of the LFIT is a projective one, and doesn't necessitate to use a metric or another. Nevertheless, we have encountered interesting properties when using a metric (circle of similarity). In order to reuse these properties, we are now investigating what happens when the metric is taken as a parameter.

26.16.1.1 Forcing the orthocenter

Definition 26.16.4. When an euclidian structure is given on the ABC plane, then triangle ABC receives an orthocenter $H \simeq 1/S_a : 1/S_b : 1/S_c$. Reverting the process, i.e. saying that a given point $H \simeq \rho : \sigma : \tau$ is the orthocenter of ABC , determines a metric structure on the ABC plane. This process is called "forcing the orthocenter". The resulting objects will be super-scripted with a " H ", like in X^H (except from the isogonal conjugacy, noted \mathcal{S}_H^* , in order to avoid a tower of superscripts \mathcal{S}^{*H}).

Proposition 26.16.5. Define O^H as the complement of H , and Γ^H (the forced circumcircle) as the circumconic whose perspector is $K^H \doteq H * O^H$. Then

$$O^H \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \sigma + \tau \\ \tau + \rho \\ \rho + \sigma \end{pmatrix}, K^H \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \rho(\sigma + \tau) \\ \sigma(\tau + \rho) \\ \tau(\rho + \sigma) \end{pmatrix}; \Gamma^H \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \tau(\rho + \sigma) & \sigma(\tau + \rho) \\ \tau(\rho + \sigma) & 0 & \rho(\sigma + \tau) \\ \sigma(\tau + \rho) & \rho(\sigma + \tau) & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Moreover Γ^H is the center of the conic, which goes through $2H_A - H$, etc where $H_A \doteq AH \cap BC$, etc.

Proof. Direct application of Theorem 11.7.4. \square

Definition 26.16.6. The forced isogonal transform is defined as the ABC -isoconjugacy that exchanges H and O_H . In other words, $(x : y : z)_H^* \simeq \rho(\sigma + \tau)yz : \sigma(\tau + \rho)zx : \tau(\rho + \sigma)xy$.

26.16.1.2 Forcing the isogonal center

Definition 26.16.7. Forcing the isogonal center of a LFIT is making an arbitrary choice $M \simeq x : y : z$ for the point \mathcal{S}_H^* . This amounts to force the metric to $a^2 : b^2 : c^2 \simeq xf : yg : zh$. The values a, b, c are not intended to be real, only different from 0.

Proposition 26.16.8. The "fixed points" P_a , etc (see Proposition 26.6.7) are obtained from \mathcal{S}^* by collineations that doesn't depend from a choice of metric. Indeed, we have $P_a = \boxed{\phi_a} \cdot \mathcal{S}^*$ where:

$$\boxed{\phi_a} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 - \frac{w}{f} & \frac{v}{f} \\ 0 & \frac{w}{f} & 1 - \frac{v}{f} \end{bmatrix}$$

This is an affinity whose charpoly is $(X - 1)^2(X - k)$ where $k = \frac{u - g - h}{f}$. Proper point associated to k is the direction δ_{BC} , while the proper line is $[0, -w, v]$ i.e. the line AE .

Proof. Obvious from (26.13) \square

Proposition 26.16.9. For any point M , the triangle $\phi_a M, \phi_b M, \phi_c M$ is an observer of the LFIT. The locus (on t) of the perspector K_t^H is a conic, that goes through $M = \mathcal{S}_H^*$, the three P_j^H and the three O_j^H .

Proof. This is only reformulating some already proven properties (see Proposition 26.6.5) \square

Proposition 26.16.10. The $\mathcal{O} \mapsto ABC$ para-center of a metric observer is $M \simeq x : y : z$ itself. The $ABC \mapsto \mathcal{O}$ para-center (i.e. the ray center) is

$$\varphi(M) \simeq \begin{bmatrix} f(uz - wx)(uy - vx) \\ g(vx - uy)(vz - wy) \\ h(wy - vz)(wx - uz) \end{bmatrix}$$

We have $\varphi(\mathcal{E}) = 0 : 0 : 0$. Two M that share the same $\varphi(M)$ are aligned with \mathcal{E} , while all the $\varphi(M)$ belong to the circumconic γ with perspector $\mathcal{S}_b^* \mathcal{E}$. Moreover $\varphi(M)$ belongs to Γ^H , the forced circumcircle. Therefore $\varphi(M)$ is the forced gudulic center of conic γ .

Proof. Existence is Proposition 26.16.2. Computing the value is easy. The result clearly depends on $M \wedge \mathcal{E}$, hence the alignment. \square

26.16.2 Cevenol graphs

Definition 26.16.11. Let α'_t be the point where the parallel to BH through b_t cuts the parallel to CH through c_t . As time t flows, the point α'_t draws a straight line cev_a^H . We call it the A -Cevenol graph (related to the forced orthocenter $H \simeq \rho : \sigma : \tau$).

Proof. Straight line cev_a^H is obtained as:

$$\left[u - g - h, \frac{(u - g)\rho + u\tau}{\tau + \rho}, \frac{(u - h)\rho + u\sigma}{\rho + \sigma} \right] \quad \square$$

Proposition 26.16.12. The line cev_a^H is nothing but the line that joins O_a^H and Q_a^H , the centers of the direct and reverse H -similarities that generalizes the correspondence $CA \mapsto AB : b \mapsto c$.

Proof. Obvious from (26.12) and (26.16). \square

Proposition 26.16.13. The three H -Cevenol graphs concur at a point G_c that belongs to the H -conic of similarity.

$$\left[\begin{array}{l} (\sigma + \tau)((gv + hw - fu - gh)\rho^2 + (gv - fu - gh)\rho\sigma + (hw - fu - gh)\rho\tau - f\sigma\tau u) \\ (\tau + \rho)((hw + fu - gv - hf)\sigma^2 + (hw - gv - hf)\sigma\tau + (fu - gv - hf)\rho\sigma - g\rho\tau v) \\ (\rho + \sigma)((fu + gv - hw - fg)\tau^2 + (fu - hw - fg)\tau\rho + (gv - hw - fg)\tau\sigma - hwp\rho\sigma) \end{array} \right]$$

Proof. Properties of G_c are easily computed. \square

26.16.3 Poulbot observers

Definition 26.16.14. The Poulbot observer related to a ray source $M \simeq p : q : r$ is the only triangle P_j such that P_bP_c is together parallel to MA and tangent to \mathfrak{P}_A and circ. for B and C .

Proof. There is one and only one tangent to a parabola that contains a given direction. \square

Proposition 26.16.15. The "Poulbot observer" observes the LFIT. The equations of this observing trigone are:

$$\mathcal{O}^* \simeq \left[\begin{array}{ccc} qr(f - v - w) & r(u - g)q - gr^2 & (u - h)rq - hq^2 \\ r(v - f)p - r^2f & rp(g - w - u) & (v - h)rp - hp^2 \\ q(w - f)p - q^2f & (w - g)qp - gp^2 & pq(h - u - v) \end{array} \right]$$

while the locus of the perspectors is the straight line:

$$loc_K \simeq \left[\begin{array}{l} ghp^2 - fuqr + (h - v)gpr + (g - w)hpq \\ hfq^2 - gvpr + (f - w)hpq + (h - u)fqr \\ fgr^2 - hwpq + (g - u)fqr + (f - v)gpr \end{array} \right] \quad (26.20)$$

Proof. Write that $M \wedge A + \lambda\mathcal{L}_b$ is tangent to \mathfrak{P}_A . Since \mathcal{L}_b itself is a tangent, we obtain a first degree equation, leading to \mathcal{O}^* . Then we take the adjoint and the perspectivity, for all t , is easy to check. \square

Proposition 26.16.16. Assume that triangle $P_aP_bP_c$ is a Poulbot observer and use $P_a = P_a^H$ to force the metric, determining P_b^H and P_c^H . Then lines $P_bP_b^H$ and $P_cP_c^H$ are tangent to \mathfrak{P}_A (or degenerate !)

Proof. Note $p_1 : q_1 : r_1$ the coordinates of P_a and $\delta_b \doteq t_b : -1 - t_b : 1$ and $\delta_c \doteq 1 : t_c : -1 - t_c$ the directions of $P_a P_b$ and $P_a P_c$. Write the conditions h_b and h_c for lines $P_a \delta_b$ and $P_a \delta_c$ to be tangent to the required parabolas. On the other hand, the parallelogy center is $t_b : t_b t_c : 1$, and the direction of the third tangent is $-1 - t_b t_c : t_b t_c : 1$. Draw this tangent, say Δ and obtain the expressions in p_1, q_1, r_1, t_b, t_c of P_b, P_c . Obtaining those of P_b^H, P_c^H is obvious. It only remains to write the contact condition (length ≈ 120000) and take the Euclidean remainder modulo h_1 and then modulo h_2 . This gives 0. \square

26.16.4 Singular observers

Definition 26.16.17. When the A -vertex of an observer \mathcal{O} belongs to the sideline BC , we say that \mathcal{O} is an A -singular observer, etc (observers with two vertices on ABC sidelines are to be discarded).

Proposition 26.16.18. Let line Δ_a be tangent to \mathfrak{P}_A . Note P_b the intersection of Δ_a and ϑ_B the second tangent to \mathfrak{P}_A from B , etc for P_c . Then $P_a P_b P_c$ is an observer for any $P_a \in BC$. Conversely, any degenerate observer is obtained that way.

Proof. Substitute $p_1 = 0$ in the perspectivity equation and assume that all the four coefficients of t are 0. Solving the system leads to triangles with two vertices on the sidelines of ABC and to:

$$\mathcal{O} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & u & u \\ q_1 & gh s & h - u \\ r_1 & g - u & 1/s \end{bmatrix}$$

where s is a parameter. One can check $P_b \in \vartheta_B$, $P_c \in \vartheta_C$ and $P_b P_c$ tangent to \mathfrak{P}_a . \square

26.16.5 Proof of the theorem

The ray center is $M \simeq p : q : r$ and the LFIT is described using the asymmetric parametrization (26.5). The parallelogy condition is described by the existence of α, β, γ such that:

$$P_c - P_b = \alpha(M - A), P_a - P_c = \beta(M - B), P_b - P_a = \gamma(M - C)$$

Adding member to member, one concludes that $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) = k(p, q, r)$, where $k \neq 0$. Thus the observer can be written as:

$$\mathcal{O} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 1 - r_1 - q_1 & 1 - r_1 - q_1 + r p k & 1 - r_1 - q_1 - q p k \\ q_1 & q_1 + q r k & q_1 + q(p + r) k \\ r_1 & -r(p + q) k + r_1 & r_1 - q r k \end{bmatrix}$$

The perspectivity, for all t , with \mathcal{T}_t leads to three equations, whose sizes are:

	<i>length</i>	<i>fgh</i>	<i>vw</i>	<i>k</i>	<i>pqr</i>	$q_1 r_1$
t^0	1155	3	2	1	4	2
t^1	1141	2	1	1	4	2
t^2	149	1	0	1	4	1

The elimination of q_1, r_1 leads to a 30837-sized compatibility condition, that splits into a number of factors:

<i>length</i>	<i>fgh</i>	<i>vw</i>	<i>pqr</i>	<i>k</i>
5	3	0	2	0
45	1	1	2	1
45	1	1	2	1
61	1	1	2	1
1101	3	1	4	1
137	2	1	2	0

- factors (f, g, h, p, q) are only mirroring implicit hypotheses.

- the three small factors, being of first degree in k , are giving three values for k and lead to the following three *singular observers*:

$$X_a X_b X_c, Y_a Y_b Y_c, Z_a Z_b Z_c \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & -ur & uq \\ \frac{uqr}{p} + hq & hq & hq - uq \\ -\frac{uqr}{p} - gr & ur - gr & -gr \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -hp & -hp - \frac{prv}{q} & vp - hp \\ vr & 0 & -pv \\ fr - vr & fr + \frac{prv}{q} & fr \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -gp & (w - g)p & -gp - \frac{wqp}{r} \\ (f - w)q & fq & fq + \frac{wqp}{r} \\ wq & -pw & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

- the biggest factor gives another value for k , and lead to the triangle $U_a U_b U_c$ dual of the trigone $X_b X_c, Y_c Y_a, Z_a Z_b$. This triangle is nothing but the Poulbot observer directed by M .
- the last factor describes the condition $fuqr + gvrp + hwpq = 0$, i.e. $M \in \gamma$ where γ is the circumconic whose perspector is $\mathcal{S}_b^* \mathcal{E}$.

Proposition 26.16.19. Assume that $M \in \gamma$ and consider the line Δ_M through \mathcal{E} whose tripole is $M \div_b \mathcal{S}$. Then Δ_M is the locus of the perspectors of \mathcal{T}_t with the Poulbot observer $U_a U_b U_c$. Moreover, this line is the locus of all the S_v^* whose associated metric observer \mathcal{O}_v admits M as ray center. And we have

$$S_v^* \simeq (u : v : w) + \mu(p(gr - hq) : q(hp - fr) : r(fq - gp))$$

$$\mathcal{O}_v \simeq \begin{pmatrix} u & u & u \\ v & v & v \\ w & w & w \end{pmatrix} + \mu \begin{pmatrix} p(gr - hq) & -p(fr + hq + hr) & p(fq + gq + gr) \\ q(gr + hr + hp) & q(hp - fr) & -q(fp + fr + gp) \\ -r(gq + hq + gp) & r(fp + fq + hp) & r(fq - gp) \end{pmatrix}$$

Proof. Parametrize with $p : q : r \simeq fu : gv : s : -hw/(1+s)$, and substitute into (26.20) and obtain

$$\Delta_M \simeq [vw, suw, -uv(1+s)]$$

From Proposition 26.16.10, we know that the all metrics observers whose S_H^* belongs to Δ_M share the same ray center M_Δ . The new fact is that $M_\Delta = M$ (direct computation). \square

26.16.6 Reciprocal

1. *Four equations.* We start from $P_a \simeq p_1 : q_1 : r_1$, $P_b \simeq p_2 : q_2 : r_2$, $P_c \simeq p_3 : q_3 : r_3$ (not on the sidelines) and we write that $\mathcal{O} \doteq P_a P_b P_c$ observes the LFIT family. The corresponding determinant is a 3 degree polynomial in t . This gives four equations with the following degrees:

	<i>length</i>	p_1, q_1, r_1	p_2, q_2, r_2	p_3, q_3, r_3	f, g, h	v, w
t^0	823	1	1	1	0	2
t^1	2075	1	1	1	2	2
t^2	1404	1	1	1	1	1
t^3	286	1	1	1	0	0

2. The t^3 equation is nothing but the condition of parallelogy:

$$\text{trace}(\mathcal{O}) = \frac{p_1}{p_1 + q_1 + r_1} + \frac{q_2}{p_2 + q_2 + r_2} + \frac{r_3}{p_3 + q_3 + r_3} = 1$$

3. Three cubics. Then we solve two of these first degree equations in $p_3 q_3 r_3$, and substitute in the other two. This leads to the following three cubics:

<i>name</i>	<i>solving</i>	<i>length</i>	f, g, h	p, q, r	p_1, q_1, r_1	p_2, q_2, r_2
K_1	t^2, t^3	6398	2	1	3	3
K_2	t^2, t^3	7865	2	2	3	3
K_3	t^0, t^3	12382	3	3	3	3

4. Excluding. Line AC is asymptote to K_1 and K_2 , but not to K_3 : one occurrence of δ_{AC} must be excluded. Moreover, point $p_1 (gq_1 + (g - f) r_1) : g (q_1 + r_1)^2 : fp_1q_1$ is on K_1 and K_2 but not on K_3 .
5. It remains 7 common points to the first two cubics. Eliminating q_2 , the equation in p_2, r_2 splits into four factors whose degrees are: 1,1,1,4 . This allows to identify:
 - (a) Point P_1 itself is a possibility for P_2 .
 - (b) Point at infinity δ_B of AC belongs to the three cubics.
 - (c) Point P_b^H . Indeed, once $P_1 \simeq p_1 : q_1 : r_1$ is known, it exists exactly one metric such that $P_1 = P_a^H$. This leads to:

$$\begin{pmatrix} a^2 \\ b^2 \\ c^2 \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} f(v + w - f)p_1 \\ g(v - f)q_1 + gv r_1 \\ hwq_1 + h(w - f)r_1 \end{pmatrix}$$

Substituting into P_b , we obtain P_b^H . This point belongs to all three cubics.

- (d) It remains a group of four points that belongs to the three cubics. Since we already know these points, they are the Poulbot observers associated with the metric observer.

26.17 Orthojoin

orthopole of the tripolar of the isogonal conjugate. It is not clear if this concept is really useful.

Chapter 27

Quadrilaterals

27.1 Immortal glory of our ancestors

Many things were summarized in [Ripert \(1901\)](#). A generation later, a founding overview was given by [Clawson \(1919\)](#), with other notations.

Here, the transversal \mathcal{L}_0 is described as the tripolar of a point $P \simeq \frac{p}{b} : q : r$. In other words, $\mathcal{L}_0 = l_4 \simeq [qr, rp, pq]$.

Here	Ripert	Clawson	name
$\mathcal{L}_A, \mathcal{L}_0$	a, b, c, d	l_1, l_2, l_3, l_4	lines
ABC	ABC	$A_{23}A_{13}A_{12}$	vertices
$A'B'C'$	$A'B'C'$	A_{14}, A_{24}, A_{34}	vertices
O_j, Γ_j	O_j	C_j, \mathcal{C}_j	circumcirc
AA', BB', CC'	$AA' \dots$	$n_j = A_{j4}A_{kn}$	diagonal lines
was D_A		$D_{12} = n_1 \cap n_2$	diagonal vertices
	G_n	U_n	X(2) of $l_i l_j l_k$
N_a, N_b, N_c	m_j	$B_1 B_2 B_3$	mid diagonal points
		G_j	proj of F on l_j
		F_j	$2O_j - F \in \Gamma_j$

refs: (#)	Clawson's v. here	name here		Rip	Clawson's name	
1	Proposition 27.4.2	M_q	Miquel center	F	F	focal point
2	Exercice 27.4.8					
3	Exercice 27.4.9					
4	Proposition 27.4.2	Γ_M	Miquel circle	O	\mathcal{C}	circumcentric circle
5a	Corollary 27.4.3	S_n	slowness			$\mathcal{S}_n = \Gamma_M \cap \Gamma_n \setminus M_q$
5b	Corollary 27.4.4	S'_n				$\mathcal{S}'_n = 2O_j - \mathcal{S}_j$
6	Exercice 27.4.10	?				
7	ohlala					
8	Proposition 27.2.7	δ	Newton axis	δ	m	mid-diagonal line
9	gravity center					
10	Exercice 27.4.11					
11	Proposition 27.4.5		pedal line		p	pedal line
12	diametrical circles					$FG_j \perp l_j$
13	ohlala					
14	?					
15	Proposition 27.2.9	h	Steiner axis	h	o	orthocentric line
16	Proposition 27.3.2	ν_a, ν_b, ν_c	Newton circles			
17	Proposition 27.4.6		Miquel parabola			
18	Construction 27.8.8	\mathcal{E}_j	orthopole		V_j	
19	Proposition 27.4.7	\mathcal{D}	diagonal circle			\mathcal{D}
20			$Z'_1 Z'_2 Z'_3$???

27.2 Lines only

Definition 27.2.1. A transversal is a moving line \mathcal{L}_0 that cuts the sidelines of a fixed triangle ABC in three other points. When the four lines $\mathcal{L}_0, \mathcal{L}_A = BC, \mathcal{L}_B = CA, \mathcal{L}_C = AB$ are assumed to play the same role, this situation is called a **quadrilateral**.

Notation 27.2.2. Descriptions are easier when using the symmetry of the situation. Therefore, we will often use the [Clawson \(1919\)](#) notations, where the 4 lines are $\mathcal{L}_0, \mathcal{L}_1, \mathcal{L}_2, \mathcal{L}_3$ and the 6 vertices are $A_{jk} \doteq \mathcal{L}_j \cap \mathcal{L}_k$. When using indices $ijkn$, property $\{i, j, k, n\} = \{0, 1, 2, 3\}$ is ever assumed. When an 3-fold object depends on how indices are paired, as in $(ij)(k0)$, the result will be indexed by k (the one paired with 0).

Notation 27.2.3. Without any other notice, computations (barycentrics, etc.) are relative to triangle ABC , using $\mathcal{L}_0 \simeq \text{tripolar}(P) \simeq_b [qr, rp, pq]$, and therefore breaking the symmetry. It will be convenient to introduce the quantities

$$\begin{aligned} k^3 &\doteq (p-q)(q-r)(r-p) \\ \Phi_p &\doteq a^2qr - (S_bq + S_cr)p, \text{ etc} \end{aligned}$$

with the following properties:

$$\sum \Phi_p = 0 ; \quad \sum qr\Phi_p = 2S\mathcal{L}_0 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t\mathcal{L}_0$$

Definition 27.2.4. A quadrilateral induces four **embedded triangles** and we denote \mathcal{T}_j the triangle which is associated with the trigone "all the four lines except from \mathcal{L}_j ".

Proposition 27.2.5. The diagonals AA', BB', CC' define a trigone. It's dual D_a, D_b, D_c is called the diagonal triangle. Seen from \mathcal{T}_0 , this triangle is the anticevian of P . Then $(A, A', D_b, D_c) = -1$ so that each diagonal is harmonically divided by the other two.

Proof. One has $A' \simeq 0 : q : -r$ and $D_b \simeq -p : q : r$. And the result follows. \square

Proposition 27.2.6. *Let G_d , etc be the barycenter of triangle \mathcal{T}_d , etc. Then*

$$G_d [1 : 1 : 1] ; G_a [-3p^2 + 2p(q+r) - qr : q(p-r) : r(p-q)]$$

The barycenter G of these four points is also the barycenter of the three m_j or the barycenter of the six A_{jk} . And we have:

$$G \simeq [(q-r)(3p^2 - 2p(q+r) + qr) ::]$$

Proof. Obvious from the coordinates. □

Proposition 27.2.7. Newton axis (lowbrow version). *Consider the traces of the transversal \mathcal{L}_0 on the other three lines, i.e. $A' = \mathcal{L}_0 \cap \mathcal{L}_A$, etc. Lines AA' , etc are the so-called diagonals, while points $N_a \doteq (A + A')/2$, etc are the so-called mid-diagonal points. These three N_j are aligned on what is called the Newton axis of the quadrilateral. Its barycentrics are:*

$$\delta \simeq \text{cevadiv}(\mathcal{L}_0, \mathcal{L}_b) \simeq [rq - p(q+r), pr - q(r+p), pq - r(p+q)]$$

Proof. One has $m_a \simeq q - r : +q : -r$, etc and the result follows. □

Proposition 27.2.8. Reciprocal lines. *Let \mathcal{R}_j be the reciprocal of line \mathcal{L}_j wrt triangle \mathcal{T}_j . They are parallel to each other. Moreover, their equibarycenter is the Newton axis.*

Proof. Remember that \mathcal{R}_0 is the line through $B + C - A'$, etc. The barycentrics of these lines are:

$$\begin{array}{llll} \mathcal{R}_0 & \simeq & p & , \quad q & , \quad r \\ \mathcal{R}_A & \simeq & -p & , \quad q - 2p & , \quad r - 2p \\ \mathcal{R}_B & \simeq & p - 2q & , \quad -q & , \quad r - 2q \\ \mathcal{R}_C & \simeq & p - 2r & , \quad q - 2r & , \quad -r \\ \delta & \simeq & p - q - r & , \quad q - r - p & , \quad r - p - q \end{array}$$

The first one comes from the very definition. The other three are obtained by the usual conjugacy methods, and adjusted so that all the $\mathcal{R}_j \wedge \mathcal{L}_b$ are equal (and not simply proportional), so that computing $\mathcal{R}_0 + \mathcal{R}_A + \mathcal{R}_B + \mathcal{R}_C$ makes sense. □

Proposition 27.2.9. Steiner axis (lowbrow version). *The orthocenters of the four embedded triangles belong to a same line, called the Steiner axis of the quadrilateral. Its barycentrics are:*

$$h \doteq \text{Steiner_axis} \simeq [(q-r)S_a, (r-p)S_b, (p-q)S_c]$$

Proof. Direct computation using

$$H_0 \simeq \begin{bmatrix} S_b S_c \\ S_a S_c \\ S_a S_b \end{bmatrix} ; H_a \simeq \begin{bmatrix} S_b b^2 r p + S_c c^2 p q - 4 S^2 p^2 - S_b S_c r q \\ S_a \Phi_q \\ S_a \Phi_r \end{bmatrix}$$

A more stratospherical proof will be given at Section 27.4, using the fact that the polar circle of a triangle is centered at the orthocenter (see Section 12.7). □

27.3 Newton stuff

Remark 27.3.1. The centers of the Newton pencil \mathfrak{N} belong to the Newton line δ . The centers of the Steiner pencil \mathfrak{N}^\perp belong to the Steiner line h . That is the reason why, as a cycle, h belongs to \mathfrak{N} while, as a cycle δ belongs to \mathfrak{N}^\perp . As a rule of thumb, ever consider such a line as a line of centers and never as a radical axis (i.e. as an ordinary member of their pencil). Another method: stop being dyslexic.

Proposition 27.3.2. *The conics which are tangent to the four lines \mathcal{L}_j form a linear pencil. Their orthoptic cycles (see Section 11.25) belong to a linear pencil of cycles, called the **Newton pencil** of the quadrilateral. In the $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^4)$ barycentric space of cycles, the matrix of this pencil is*

$$\boxed{\mathfrak{N}_b} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & (p-q)S_c & (p-r)S_b & -pS_bS_c \\ (q-p)S_c & 0 & (q-r)S_a & -qS_aS_c \\ (r-p)S_b & (r-q)S_a & 0 & -rS_aS_b \\ pS_bS_c & qS_aS_c & rS_aS_b & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Proof. Consider one of the other tangents to such a conic, say tripolar $(u : v : w)$. Then we have:

$$\boxed{\mathcal{C}^*} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & pv-qu & ru-pw \\ pv-qu & 0 & qw-rv \\ ru-pw & qw-rv & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

From (11.19) we have

$$\mathfrak{D} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} fS_a \\ gS_b \\ hS_c \\ f+g+h \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} (qw-rv)S_a \\ (ru-pw)S_b \\ (pv-qu)S_c \\ (qw-rv) + (ru-pw) + (pv-qu) \end{pmatrix}$$

Using tripolar $(u' : v' : w')$ leads to \mathfrak{D}' . And we can see that $\boxed{\mathfrak{N}_b} \simeq (\mathfrak{D} \wedge_6 \mathfrak{D}')$ doesn't depend on the auxiliary tangents. \square

Definition 27.3.3. Once again, the line of centers of the Newton pencil is the already defined **Newton axis** δ (see Proposition 27.4.6 for the parabolic case). On the other hand, the radical axis h of this pencil ($h \in \mathfrak{N}!$) is the already defined **Steiner axis** of the quadrilateral.

Corollary 27.3.4. *The diametral circles ν_a, ν_b, ν_c , i.e. the circles having the $[AA']$, etc as diameters belong to the Newton pencil.*

Proof. The set C_a^* of all the lines through A or through A' is one of the involved tangential conics. And the diametral circle is obviously its orthoptic circle.

Nevertheless, a direct proof is possible, using

$$\nu_a, \nu_b, \nu_c \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ +qS_b \\ -rS_c \\ q-r \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} -pS_a \\ 0 \\ +rS_c \\ r-p \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} +pS_a \\ -qS_b \\ 0 \\ p-q \end{bmatrix} \quad (27.1) \quad \square$$

Exercise 27.3.5. Determine the 4-tangent conic such that $\Omega_{\mathcal{C}} = G$.

Exercise 27.3.6. Determine the locus of the ABC perspector of the conics tangent to the four lines

27.4 Steiner stuff

Proposition 27.4.1. *The four polar circles γ_j relative to the four embedded triangles belong to a same pencil, called the **Steiner pencil**. This pencil is orthogonal to the Newton pencil, and contains the Newton line as radical axis. The barycentrics of these cycles are:*

$$\gamma_0 = \begin{bmatrix} S_a \\ S_b \\ S_c \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}; \quad \gamma_A = \gamma_0 - \frac{pS_a}{(p-q)(p-r)}\delta, \text{ etc}; \quad \delta = \begin{bmatrix} p-q-r \\ q-r-p \\ r-p-q \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

In the $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^4)$ barycentric space of cycles, the matrix of this pencil is

$$\boxed{\mathfrak{N}_b^\perp} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & r-p-q & p-q+r & a^2(q-r) + (c^2-b^2)p \\ * & 0 & p-q-r & b^2(r-p) + (a^2-c^2)q \\ * & * & 0 & c^2(p-q) + (b^2-a^2)r \\ * & * & * & 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

Proof. From Section 11.25, each orthoptic circle $\mathfrak{O} \in \mathfrak{N}$ is orthogonal to the polar circle of any of the embedded triangles. For γ_0 , see Section 12.7. For γ_A , make a change of algebraic basis. Another method: compute η_A , the NPC of triangle \mathcal{T}_A and use $\gamma_A = 2\eta_A - \Gamma_A$. Finally, the simplest method to obtain $\boxed{\mathfrak{N}_b^\perp}$ is the general formula $\boxed{\mathcal{Q}_b} \cdot \text{dual}(\boxed{\mathfrak{N}_b}) \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{Q}_b}$, but a direct computation is also possible. \square

Proposition 27.4.2. *The four circumcenters of the four embedded triangles \mathcal{T}_j are on a same circle that is called their **Miquel circle**. The four circumcircles have a common point, called their **Miquel point**. Wrt any of the four triangles, this point is the isogonal conjugate of δ_∞ . Moreover, the Miquel point belongs to the Miquel circle. The ABC-barycentrics of these objects are:*

$$\Gamma_M \simeq \begin{bmatrix} b^2c^2(q-r)\Phi_p \\ c^2a^2(r-p)\Phi_q \\ a^2b^2(p-q)\Phi_r \\ -8S^2k^3 \end{bmatrix} ; M_q \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \frac{a^2}{(q-r)} \\ \frac{b^2}{(r-p)} \\ \frac{c^2}{(p-q)} \end{bmatrix}$$

Proof. Using wedge, Veronese and wedge3, one obtains the ABC-barycentrics of the four circumcircles and the four centers:

$$\Gamma_0 \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} ; \Gamma_A \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \frac{pc^2}{p-q} \\ \frac{pb^2}{p-r} \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} ; \Gamma_B \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \frac{qc^2}{q-p} \\ 0 \\ \frac{qa^2}{q-r} \\ 1 \end{bmatrix} ; \Gamma_C \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \frac{rb^2}{r-p} \\ \frac{ra^2}{r-q} \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$O_0 \simeq \begin{bmatrix} a^2S_a \\ b^2S_b \\ c^2S_c \end{bmatrix} ; O_A \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 8p(q-p)S^2 - a^2\Phi_r - c^2\Phi_p \\ b^2\Phi_r \\ c^2\Phi_q \end{bmatrix}, \text{ etc}$$

And, some wedge, Veronese and wedge3 later, the result is obtained. Other proofs are possible (Ehrmann, 2004, Morley, 1900, p. 99). \square

Corollary 27.4.3. *Point \mathcal{S}_n , the other intersection of Γ_n and Γ_M , belongs to the three lines O_iA_{jk} (remember the convention $\{n, i, j, k\} = \{0, 1, 2, 3\}$).*

$$\mathcal{S}_0 \simeq \frac{a^2}{\Phi_p} : \frac{b^2}{\Phi_q} : \frac{c^2}{\Phi_r}$$

Proof. Compute \mathcal{S}_0 as the intersection of O_1A_{23} and O_2A_{13} . By symmetry, $\mathcal{S}_0 \in O_3A_{12}$. Its isogonal conjugate wrt ABC is at infinity. Conclude by checking that $Ver(\mathcal{S}_0) \cdot \Gamma_M = 0$. \square

Corollary 27.4.4. *Define $\mathcal{S}'_n = 2O_n - \mathcal{S}_n$ (on Γ_n). Then \mathcal{S}'_nA_{jk} is tangent to Γ_i at A_{jk} . As an example, \mathcal{S}'_aA is tangent to Γ_0 , \mathcal{S}'_aB' is tangent to $\Gamma_c = (A'B'C)$ at B' and \mathcal{S}'_aC' is tangent to $\Gamma_b = (A'BC')$ at C' .*

$$\mathcal{S}'_0 \simeq \frac{a^2}{p(q-r)} : \frac{b^2}{q(r-p)} : \frac{c^2}{r(p-q)} ; \mathcal{S}'_a \simeq \frac{-a^2(p^2+qr) + 2S_bpq + 2S_cpr}{q-r} : pb^2 : -pc^2$$

Proposition 27.4.5. *The Miquel point has the same Simson line with respect to all four embedded triangles \mathcal{T}_j . This line is also called the **Wallace line**. or the **pedal line** of the quadrilateral. By Proposition 9.4.1, the image of this line by the homothety $\mathfrak{h}(M_q, 2)$ contains the orthocenters H_j of the triangles \mathcal{T}_j and is, therefore, the Steiner axis h of the quadrilateral.*

Proof. A line is defined by two points, and three projections are on each Simson line. \square

Proposition 27.4.6. *The **parabola** tangent to the four \mathcal{L}_j has the Miquel point M_q as focus and the Steiner axis has directrix. The pedal line is a tangent.*

Proof. Well known property ! \square

Proposition 27.4.7. Diagonal triangle. *The diagonal triangle \mathcal{T}_{dia} is the dual of the diagonal trigone AA', BB', CC' . This triangle is the anticevian wrt \mathcal{T}_0 of $P = \text{tripolar}(\mathcal{L}_0)$ and is also the diagonal triangle of the quadrangle of the four contact points with the inscribed parabola.*

Its circumcircle \mathcal{D} belongs to the Steiner pencil and one has

$$\mathcal{D} = \gamma_0 - \frac{S_a p^2 + S_b q^2 + S_c r^2}{(q+r-p)(r+p-q)(p+q-r)} \delta$$

Proof. Straightforward computation. \square

Exercise 27.4.8. [Clawson \(1919, prop. 2\)](#) Consider the 3 circles $\vartheta_A \doteq (AA'M_q)$. Call $\vartheta_{K;j}$ the point where ϑ_K cuts again line \mathcal{L}_j . There are 12 of such points. Each of them characterizes a tangent to one circle Γ_j at one of its eponymous points. More precisely, when $M \in \Gamma_j$, line $M\vartheta_{M,j}$ is tangent to circle Γ_j at M . Otherwise, line $M'\vartheta_{M',j}$ is tangent to circle Γ_j at M' .

Exercise 27.4.9. [Clawson \(1919, prop. 3\)](#) Each of the 6 circles through A_{ij} , $(A_{ik} + A_{in})/2$, $(A_{jk} + A_{jn})/2$ goes through M_q .

Exercise 27.4.10. Each of the 6 points $Q_{ij} = \text{med}[A_{ik}, A_{jk}] \cap \text{med}[A_{in}, A_{jn}]$ belongs to Γ_M . Examples: $Q_{bc} = \text{med}[A_{ba}, A_{ca}] \cap \text{med}[A_{b0}, A_{c0}] = \text{med}[B, C] \cap \text{med}[B', C']$, $Q_{0a} = \text{med}[BC'] \cap \text{med}[B'C]$.

Exercise 27.4.11. The line joining $(B + A')/2$ and $(B' + A)/2$ cuts the line joining $(B + A)/2$ and $(B' + A')/2$ on the Newton axis.

27.5 Lubin cookbook for quadrilaterals

Remark 27.5.1. This section collects all the quadrilateral formulas of the Chapter. Some of them will only be proven later. Here, they are organized according to the status given to the fourth line, that is, transversal treatment versus symmetric treatment.

Remark 27.5.2. How to describe the transversal $\mathcal{L}_0 \simeq_b [qr, rp, pq]$ when using the Lubin-1 formalism?

1. Choice 1. Using the turns κ, ν where \mathcal{L}_0 cuts Γ . These turns are visible... or not, so that $|\kappa| = 1 = |\nu|$ is not assumed.
2. Choice 2. Using $\mathcal{L}_0 \simeq_z [1, m, n]$, i.e. $\kappa\nu = n$, $\kappa + \nu = -m$. With the rules: $\text{conjugate}(n) = 1/n$; $\text{conjugate}(m) = m/n$
This was the package `quadlat`. Not so convincing
3. Using $\mathcal{L}_0 \simeq_z [\eta, t, y]$. At least, this doesn't break the informal rules about degrees ! This is package `quadlat2`

27.5.1 Separate treatment of the transversal

Fact 27.5.3. *Barycentrics v/s Lubin and conversely*

$$1. \mathcal{L}_0 \simeq_b \left[p = \frac{1}{\eta\alpha + t + \frac{y}{\alpha}}, q = \frac{1}{\eta\beta + t + \frac{y}{\beta}}, r = \frac{1}{\eta\gamma + t + \frac{y}{\gamma}} \right]$$

$$2. \begin{cases} \eta = & qr \alpha (\beta - \gamma) + rp \beta (\gamma - \alpha) + pq \gamma (\alpha - \beta) \\ t = & qr \alpha (\gamma^2 - \beta^2) + rp \beta (\alpha^2 - \gamma^2) + pq \gamma (\beta^2 - \alpha^2) \\ y = & \alpha \beta \gamma (qr (\beta - \gamma) + rp (\gamma - \alpha) + pq (\alpha - \beta)) \end{cases}$$

Fact 27.5.4. *Basic objects*

1. $A \simeq \alpha : 1 : 1/\alpha$, etc, together with $A' \simeq \mathcal{L}_0 \wedge \mathcal{L}_a$, etc

$$2. \text{ Newton } \delta \underset{1}{\simeq} \begin{pmatrix} 2n^2 - 2ns_2 - 2ms_3 \\ -n^2s_1 + ns_1s_2 - (m^2 - n)s_3 - s_2s_3 \\ -2mns_3 - 2ns_1s_3 + 2s_3^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$3. \text{ Steiner } h \underset{1}{\simeq} \begin{pmatrix} n^2 - ns_2 - ms_3 \\ -n^2s_1 - mns_2 + ms_1s_3 + s_2s_3 \\ mns_3 + ns_1s_3 - s_3^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$4. \text{ Miquel } M_q \underset{1}{\simeq} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{s_2y\eta + s_3t\eta - y^2}{-s_3\eta^2 + (s_1\eta + t)y} \\ 1 \\ \frac{-s_3\eta^2 + (s_1\eta + t)y}{s_2y\eta + s_3t\eta - y^2} \end{pmatrix}; \quad \Gamma_q \underset{1}{\simeq} \begin{pmatrix} (s_1y\eta - s_3\eta^2 + ty)y \\ 0 \\ -s_3\eta(s_2y\eta + s_3t\eta - y^2) \\ y^3 + s_1s_3y\eta^2 - s_3^2\eta^3 - s_2y^2\eta \end{pmatrix}$$

$$5. \text{ Centers of circumcircles: } O_0 \simeq \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}; \quad O_a \underset{1}{\simeq} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha y^2 - \alpha s_2y\eta - \alpha s_3t\eta \\ y^2 + \alpha^2y\eta - \alpha s_1y\eta + s_3\alpha\eta^2 \\ -yt - s_1y\eta + s_3\eta^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$6. \text{ Orthocenters: } H_0 \underset{1}{\simeq} \begin{pmatrix} s_1s_3 \\ s_3 \\ s_2 \end{pmatrix}; \quad H_a \underset{1}{\simeq} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha s_1y^2 + (\alpha s_2 - s_3)yt + \alpha^3s_3\eta^2 \\ \alpha(y - \alpha\gamma\eta)(y - \alpha\beta\eta) \\ y^2 + (\alpha s_2 - s_3)t\eta + \alpha^2s_2\eta^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

7. Mean orthocenter $H_m = \frac{1}{4} \sum H_j \underset{1}{\simeq}$

$$\begin{bmatrix} 2s_1y^3 - s_2(s_1\eta - t)y^2 + s_3\eta(s_1^2\eta - s_1t - s_2\eta)y - s_1s_3^2\eta^3 \\ 2(y - \eta\beta\gamma)(y - \alpha\gamma\eta)(y - \alpha\beta\eta) \\ s_2/s_3y^3 - 2s_2s_3\eta^3 + s_1(s_2y - s_3t)\eta^2 + (s_1y^2 - s_2^2/s_3y^2 + s_2ty)\eta \end{bmatrix}$$

Fact 27.5.5. *In the $\mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^4)$ space of cycles, the Newton pencil is described by the anti-symmetric matrix: $\boxed{\mathfrak{N}} = \boxed{E_{jk}}$ while the Steiner pencil is described by $\boxed{\mathfrak{N}^\perp} \doteq \boxed{\frac{Q}{z}} \cdot \text{dual}(\boxed{\mathfrak{N}}) \cdot \boxed{\frac{Q}{z}} = \boxed{S_{jk}}$.*

$$\begin{bmatrix} S_{12} & -E_{12} & -2s_3(-s_3\eta^2 + (s_1\eta + t)y) \\ S_{13} & +E_{24} & (s_2\eta^2 + t^2 - y\eta)s_3 - s_1y(s_2\eta - y) \\ S_{14} & +E_{14} & s_1s_3t^2 + y(s_1s_2 + s_3)t + s_1^2y^2 - \eta^2s_3^2 \\ S_{23} & +E_{23} & (-2s_2y - 2s_3t)\eta + 2y^2 \\ S_{24} & +E_{13} & (-2s_1s_3\eta + 2s_2y)t - 2s_2s_3\eta^2 + 2s_1y^2 \\ S_{34} & -E_{34} & -s_2^2\eta^2 - t(s_1\eta + t)s_2 - s_3t\eta + y^2 \end{bmatrix} \quad (27.2)$$

Proposition 27.5.6. *When using the Lubin-1 representation, the orthopole transform is:*

$$\Delta = [1, m, n] \mapsto \mathcal{E}_\Delta \underset{1}{\simeq} \frac{1}{2} \left(\begin{pmatrix} \frac{s_3}{n} \\ 1 \\ \frac{n}{s_3} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} -m \\ 1 \\ -\frac{m}{n} \end{pmatrix} + \begin{pmatrix} s_1 \\ 1 \\ \frac{s_2}{s_3} \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \right) = \frac{1}{2} (\mathcal{S}' + \sigma_\Delta(O)) + \overrightarrow{ON}$$

Here $\mathcal{S}' \doteq \frac{s_3}{n} : 1 : \frac{n}{s_3}$ is the isogonal conjugate of the direction of Δ (and the antipode of \mathcal{S} in the circumcenter) while σ_Δ is the symmetry wrt line Δ . Finally, N is $X(5)$, the Euler center.

Proof. Direct computation is easy. One can prefer a change of basis applied to (27.5). \square

$$\begin{aligned} \text{conjugates } s_1 \mapsto s_2/s_3, s_2 \mapsto \frac{s_1}{s_3}, s_3 \mapsto \frac{1}{s_3}, vdm \mapsto -\frac{vdm}{s_3^2}, s_4 \mapsto \frac{s_4}{s_3^2} \\ \pi_3 \mapsto -\pi_3 \div \tau_1\tau_2\tau_3; \pi_4 \mapsto +\pi_4 \div \tau_1\tau_2\tau_3\tau_4 \end{aligned}$$

birap When dealing with the four pedal LFIT of quadrilateral, many objects are appearing in packs of four, most of the time being inscribed in a cycle, so their cross-ratio is real.

Fact 27.5.12. *Basic objects (same order as 27.5.4)*

1. vertices $A_{jk} \simeq 2 : (\tau_j - 1) : (\tau_k - 1) : 2\tau_j\tau_k$ ($j \neq k$ is ever assumed)
2. Newton $\delta \simeq \left[1, \frac{2q_4 - q_3 + q_1 - 2}{\pi_4}, -1 \right]$
3. Steiner $h \simeq [1, -2, 1]$, directrix of the parabola (by definition !)
4. Miquel $M_q \simeq 0 : 1 : 0$, focus of the parabola (by definition !)
Miq circle $\Gamma_q \simeq -2q_4 : 0 : -2 : \pi_4$; circle center $O_q \simeq 2 : \pi_4 : 2q_4$
5. Circumcircles and centers Γ_j, O_j
 $\Gamma_4 \simeq 2s_3 : 0 : -2 : \pi_3$; $O_4 \simeq 2 : \pi_3 : -2s_3$; birap $[O_j] = \text{birap}[\tau_j]$
6. Orthocenters H_j
 $H_4 \simeq 2(1 - s_1) : \pi_3 : 2(s_2 - s_3)$; birap $[H_j] = \text{birap}[\tau_j^2]$
7. Mean orthocenter $H_m = \frac{1}{4} \sum H_j \simeq \begin{bmatrix} q_2 - 2q_1 + 2 \\ \pi_4 \\ 2q_4 - 2q_3 + q_2 \end{bmatrix}$

Fact 27.5.13. *Newton and Steiner pencils ; other properties (See Musselman, 1937)*

$$\begin{aligned} 1. \text{ Newton } \boxed{\mathfrak{N}} &\simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \pi_4 & 2\pi_4 & 4 - 2q_1 \\ -\pi_4 & 0 & \pi_4 \int & 2 - q_1 + q_3 - 2q_4 \\ -2\pi_4 & -\pi_4 & 0 & 2q_3 - 4q_4 \\ 2q_1 - 4 & q_1 - q_3 + 2q_4 - 2 & 4q_4 - 2q_3 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \\ \text{Steiner } \boxed{\mathfrak{N}^\perp} &\simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 & \pi_4 & q_1 - q_3 + 2q_4 - 2 & 2q_3 - 4q_4 \\ -\pi_4 & 0 & -\pi_4 & 2\pi_4 \\ 2 - q_1 + q_3 - 2q_4 & \pi_4 & 0 & 2q_1 - 4 \\ -2q_3 + 4q_4 & -2\pi_4 & 4 - 2q_1 & 0 \end{bmatrix} \end{aligned}$$

2. Polar circles: member of SteinerPen, center H_j

$$\text{cirpol}_4 \simeq 2(s_3 - s_2) : -2(s_2s_1 - 2s_3s_1 - 2s_2 + 3s_3) / \pi_3 : 2(s_1 - 1) : \pi_3$$

3. NPC $\text{npc}_4 \simeq \pi_3(2s_3 - s_2) : (2s_3 - s_2)s_1 + 2s_2 - 3s_3 : \pi_3(s_1 - 2) : \pi_3^2$.
4. h_j $h_4 \simeq 2(1 - s_1) : \pi_4 : 2\tau_4(s_3 - s_2)$ is the orthocenter of $O_1O_2O_3$. birap $[h_j] = \text{birap}[\tau_j]$.
5. pt52 $2 - q_1 : \pi_4 : 2q_4 - q_3$. "Clawson center", midpoint of $[O_j, h_j]$, and of $[O_q, \text{Hervey}]$
6. Hervey $2(1 - q_1) : \pi_4 : 2(q_4 - q_3)$. Perpendicular bisectors of the $[O_jH_j]$ are crossing here. This is also the center of the circle through the h_j ($\rho^2 = 4q_4/\pi_4^2$)
7. yptR $2 + q_2 - 2q_1 : \pi_4 : 2q_4 + q_2 - 2q_3$. "Morley center". Perpendiculars from $(O_j + H_j)/2$ to \mathcal{L}_j are crossing there. Isobarycenter of the H_j . On the Steiner line.
8. Slowness centers $\mathcal{S}_4 \simeq 2(1 + \tau_4) : \pi_3 : -2(1 + \tau_4)s_3 \div \tau_4$.
Each of them on Γ_j while all of them on Γ_q ; birap $[\mathcal{S}_j] = \text{birap}[\tau_j^2]$.
9. Orthopoles (on the Steiner line) $\mathcal{E}_4 \simeq \tau_4^3 + (s_1 - 2)\tau_4^2 + (s_2 + 2 - 2s_1)\tau_4 - s_3 : \tau_4\pi_4 : -\tau_4^3 + (s_1 - 2s_2 + 2s_3)\tau_4^2 + (s_2 - 2s_3)\tau_4 + s_3$
And we have birap $[\mathcal{E}_j] = \text{birap}[\tau_j^2] \times (\tau_1\tau_3 + \tau_2\tau_4)^2 \div (\tau_1\tau_4 + \tau_2\tau_3)^2$.

$$10. \text{ vanRees } \pi_4 \left(\mathbf{Z}^2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} - \mathbf{Z} \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 \right) + 4 \left(\bar{\mathbf{Z}} - q_4 \mathbf{Z} \right) \mathbf{T}^2 + (2q_1 - 2q_3 + 4q_4 - 4) \mathbf{Z} \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{T}$$

Exercise 27.5.14. Prove the following assertions – source= [Musselman \(1937\)](#)

1. Line \mathcal{L}_j is the locus of $2 \div (\tau_1 - 1) (\hat{\tau} - 1)$ where $\hat{\tau}$ is a turn.
2. Circle Γ_4 is the locus of $2(1 - \hat{\tau}) \div \pi_3 = 2(1 - \hat{\tau})(1 - \tau_4) \div \pi_4$
3. Circle Γ_q is the locus of $2(1 - \hat{\tau}) \div \pi_4$

27.6 Simson lines (using barycentrics)

Proposition 27.6.1. *Simson line.* The pedal vertices of a point U are collinear if and only if the point is on the circumcircle or on the line at infinity. When it exists, this line is called the *Simson line* of U . When $U \in \mathcal{L}_b$, $\text{Simson}(U) = \mathcal{L}_b$. When U belongs to the circumcircle of ABC , the barycentrics of it's Simson line are:

$$U_t \simeq a^2 : \frac{b^2}{t} : \frac{-c^2}{1+t} \mapsto \text{Simson}(U) \simeq \left[\frac{1}{a^2 t + S_c}, \frac{-t}{S_c t + b^2}, \frac{1+t}{S_b t - S_a} \right] \quad (27.3)$$

Proof. Collinearity condition is the same as for the Steiner line. Everything else is either the result of straightforward computations, or obtained from the Steiner line equation (9.6), right multiplied by $\mathfrak{h}(U, 2)$ of (7.29). \square

Proposition 27.6.2. When U is on the circumcircle, the two intersections of $\text{Simson}(U)$ and the nine points circle γ are (i) the midpoint M of $[U, X_4]$ (ii) the intersection L of $\text{Simson}(U)$ and $\text{Simson}(U')$ where U' is the Γ -antipode of U .

Proof. By definition, $\text{Simson}(U)$ is obtained from $\text{Steiner}(U)$ by the point-transformation $\mathfrak{h}(U, 1/2)$. Since $X_4 \in \text{Steiner}(U)$, point M is on $\text{Simson}(U)$. Using now $\mathfrak{h}(X_4, 1/2)$, $U \in \Gamma$ becomes $M \in \gamma$ and (i) is proved. Therefore midpoint M' of $U'X_4$ is the γ -antipode of M , while $LM \perp LM'$. \square

Proposition 27.6.3. When $\Delta \simeq [p, q, r]$ is a Simson line, then we have:

$$p(q^2 + r^2)S_a + q(p^2 + r^2)S_b + r(p^2 + q^2)S_c - 2S_\omega pqr = 0 \quad (27.4)$$

In other words, $\text{tripole}(\Delta)$ belongs to the Simson cubic $K010$.

Proof. See Section 21.5.3. \square

27.7 The Steiner deltoid (using Lubin-1)

Proposition 27.7.1. When τ is a turn, its Simson line wrt triangle ABC is

$$\Delta(\tau) \simeq [2\tau^2, s_3 + \tau s_2 - \tau^2 s_1 - \tau^3, -2s_3 \tau]$$

The envelope of all these lines is the so-called Steiner's deltoid while the contact point of $\Delta(\tau)$ with its envelope is $\delta(\tau) = \frac{1}{2}s_1 + \tau + \frac{s_3}{2} \frac{1}{\tau^2}$. This deltoid is a bicircular quartic, whose implicit equation (using coordinates $\mathbf{Z} = \frac{1}{2}s_1 + z$, etc) is:

$$16\mathbf{Z}^2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 - 32 \left(\frac{1}{s_3} \mathbf{Z}^3 + s_3 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^3 \right) \mathbf{T} + 72\mathbf{Z} \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{T}^2 - 27\mathbf{T}^4 = 0$$

Proof. The contact point comes from $\delta(\tau) = \Delta(\tau) \wedge \frac{\partial}{\partial \tau} \Delta(\tau)$. \square

Proposition 27.7.2. This deltoid is the roulette created by a point on the circumference of a circle $\rho = 1/2$ as it rolls without slipping along the inside of the fixed circle $\rho = 3/2$ centered at $X(5)$, the Euler's point. Cups are at $\rho = 3/2$, innermost points are at $\rho = 1/2$.

Proof. Let Θ be the fixed circle and E_x its center, while θ is the moving circle and X its center. The locus of contact is point $Y = (3X - E_x)/2$. Let Y_Θ and Y_θ the material points of both circles that are at place Y at the moment of contact. As ever, speed of Y_Θ is zero. But, by composition of movements, speed of Y_θ vanishes at the moment of contact, proving the "without slipping" assertion. \square

Proposition 27.7.3. *Any line $\Delta(\tau)$ tangent to the deltoid contains the following points:*

$$\delta_\tau \doteq \frac{1}{2} s_1 + \tau + \frac{1}{2} \frac{s_3}{\tau^2} ; m_\tau, n_\tau \doteq \frac{1}{2} s_1 \pm \sqrt{\frac{s_3}{\tau}} + \frac{1}{2} \tau ; h_\tau \doteq \frac{1}{2} s_1 + \frac{1}{2} \tau ; k_\tau \doteq \frac{1}{2} s_1 - \frac{1}{2} \frac{s_3}{\tau^2}$$

Points δ, δ, m, n are the four points in common with the curve (δ is the contact point, m, n are the so called extremities of the tangent). Point h_τ, k_τ are the two points in common with the inscribed circle. Moreover h_τ is both the middle of $[m_\tau, n_\tau]$ and of $[\delta_\tau, k_\tau]$.

Proof. Obvious computations. \square

Proposition 27.7.4. *Use index $j = 9$ to save the original triangle as $A_9B_9C_9$. Consider four turns τ_j ($j = 0, a, b, c$) and the corresponding Simson lines Δ_j . Note $A \cdots C'$ their six intersections and use*

$$q_1 = \sum_4 \tau_a, q_2 = \sum_6 \tau_a \tau_b, q_3 = \sum_4 \tau_a \tau_b \tau_c, q_4 = \tau_a \tau_b \tau_c \tau_0$$

Let O_j, H_j, E_j be the circumcenters, orthocenters and NPC of triangles \mathcal{T}_j . One has:

$$O_j = \frac{1}{2} (s_1 + q_1) - \frac{1}{2} \tau_j ; H_j = \frac{1}{2} s_1 + s_3 (q_1 - \tau_j) \tau_j \div (2q_4)$$

while the perpendicular bisector of $[O_j H_j]$ and the perpendicular from $E_j = (O_j + H_j)/2$ to Δ_j are:

$$\begin{aligned} med_j &\simeq [2\tau_j^2 - 2\tau_j q_1 + 2q_2, -\tau_j^2 s_1 + (q_1 s_1 - s_2) \tau_j + s_2 q_1 - s_1 q_2, 2\tau_j s_3 - 2s_3 q_1] \\ perp_j &\simeq [4q_4 \tau_j, -(s_3 q_2 + 2s_1 q_4) \tau_j - (q_2 + 2s_2) q_4, 4s_3 q_4] \end{aligned}$$

Proof. Use the cookbook, or write down the six intersections $A = \frac{1}{2} \left(s_1 + \tau_b + \tau_c + \frac{s_3}{\tau_b \tau_c} \right)$, etc and compute directly. \square

Theorem 27.7.5. *Morley (1903) The four lines med_j concur at $E_9 = \frac{1}{2} s_1$, i.e. at the center of the deltoid, while the four lines $perp_j$ concur at $H_m = \frac{1}{2} s_1 + s_3 q_2 / (4q_4) = \frac{1}{4} \sum H_j$, on the Steiner axis.*

Proof. As ever, a theorem is a key result, not necessarily something difficult to prove. Indeed, computations are easy ! \square

Construction 27.7.6. *Construct the deltoid tangent to four given lines. Obtain the O_j and H_j and then E_x, H_m from the Morley theorem. Let ω be the center of the Miquel circle and ρ its radius. Consider the points $h_j \doteq E_x + \omega - O_j$. For each j , h_j belongs to \mathcal{L}_j , while the four h_j are on the circle (E_x, ρ) . Define the turns $\tau_j = (\omega - O_j) / \rho = (h_j - E_x) / \rho$ and compute the q_k . Then*

$$\alpha \mapsto \delta_\alpha \doteq E_x + 2\rho\alpha + \psi \frac{\rho}{\alpha^2} \quad \text{where } \psi = \frac{1}{\rho} \overrightarrow{E_x H_m} \frac{2q_4}{q_2}$$

is the parametric equation of the deltoid tangent to the four lines. The contact points are obtained at $\alpha = \tau_j$

Proof. One obtains the following values

$$\begin{aligned} W &= \sqrt{\frac{(mn + ns_1 - s_3)(ms_3 + ns_2 - n^2)}{n^2 s_3}} \\ \rho &= \frac{i\sqrt{n} s_3 W}{n^3 - n^2 s_2 + ns_1 s_3 - s_3^2} ; \psi = i \frac{ms_3 + ns_2 - n^2}{\sqrt{n} W} \end{aligned}$$

\square

Remark 27.7.7. Points h_j are also the orthocenters of the four triangles $O_i O_k O_n$, with affixes:

$$h_0 = \frac{(ns_1 - s_3)(ms_3 - n^2 + ns_2)}{(\alpha\gamma - n)(\alpha\beta - n)(\beta\gamma - n)}; \quad h_a = \frac{n(s_1 - \alpha)(ms_3 - n^2 + ns_2)}{(\alpha\gamma - n)(\alpha\beta - n)(\beta\gamma - n)}$$

Following Proposition 27.7.3, we can also obtain k_j as the second intersection of \mathcal{L}_j with the circle, and then the δ_j as $2h_j - k_j$.

27.8 Orthopole and pedal LFIT

Remark 27.8.1. In this section, line $\mathcal{L}_0 = \Delta$ is perceived as a special line, while the sidelines $\mathcal{L}_a = BC$, etc are perceived as ordinary lines. In a later section, we will discuss how the four LFIT behave with respect to each other.

27.8.1 Trigone and transversal

Definition 27.8.2. The **orthopole** of a line $\mathcal{L}_0 = \Delta \neq \mathcal{L}_b$, is the Neuberg center of the LFIT provided by the pedal triangles of its points. Some orthopoles are given in Table 1.1.

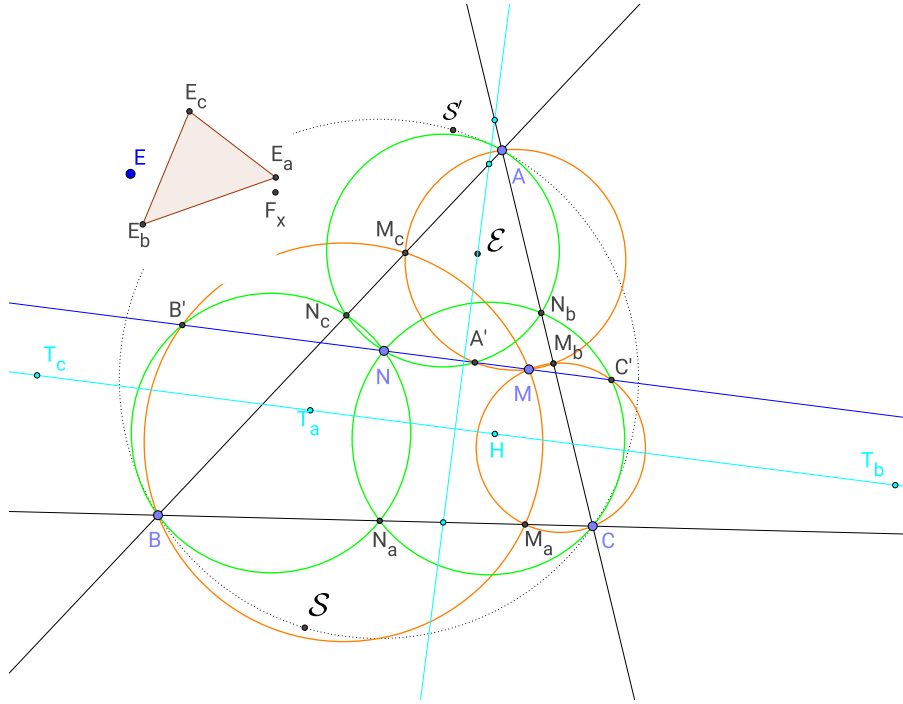


Figure 27.1: Point \mathcal{E} is the orthopole of line $A'B'C'$

Proposition 27.8.3. Given a pedal LFIT, the slowness center \mathcal{S} lies on the circumcircle, while the orthopole \mathcal{E} lies on the Simson line of $2O - \mathcal{S}$. More precisely, synchronized coordinates of the three centers associated to this LFIT are given by:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{S}(\Delta) &= \frac{-1}{2\mathcal{S}} \times \text{isogon} \left(\left[\mathcal{M}_b \right] \cdot {}^t \Delta \right) \\ \mathcal{E}(\Delta) &= {}^t \left(\Delta \cdot \left[\mathcal{M}_b \right] \right) * {}^t \left(\Delta \cdot \left[\mathcal{N} \right] \right) \\ \Omega(\Delta) &= {}^t \left(\Delta \cdot \left[\mathcal{M}_b \right] \right) * {}^t (\Delta) \\ f + g + h &= \left(\Delta \cdot \left[\mathcal{M}_b \right] \cdot {}^t \Delta \right) \quad \text{the usual norm} \end{aligned} \tag{27.5}$$

where isogon is understood as $\text{isogon}(f : g : h) = a^2gh : b^2hf : c^2fg$ while matrix $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b}$ is defined by (7.20) and matrix $\boxed{\mathcal{N}}$ is defined by :

$$\boxed{\mathcal{N}} = 1 - \frac{2}{\mathcal{L}_b \cdot O} O \cdot \mathcal{L}_b = \frac{1}{4S^2} \begin{pmatrix} S_b S_c & -a^2 S_a & -a^2 S_a \\ -b^2 S_b & S_c S_a & -b^2 S_b \\ -c^2 S_c & -c^2 S_c & S_a S_b \end{pmatrix} \quad (27.6)$$

The corresponding complex coordinates will be given at Subsection 27.10.1.

Proof. We have the normalized coordinates

$$M_a^t \simeq 0 : \frac{+q}{q-r} + (a^2 qr - S_b pq - S_c rp) \frac{\theta}{a^2} : \frac{-r}{q-r} - (a^2 qr - S_b pq - S_c rp) \frac{\theta}{a^2}$$

A straightforward computation leads to the Neuberg coefficients where $f : g : h$ can be identified as the isogonal conjugate of orthodir (Δ). The \mathcal{E} formula follows. \square

Remark 27.8.4. The normalization of $\boxed{\mathcal{N}}$ is comes from $\boxed{\mathcal{N}} \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{N}} = \boxed{1_4}$, while the normalization of $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b}$ comes from (7.22). Therefore, they cannot be changed. Since a precise definition of matrices $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b}$, $\boxed{\mathcal{N}}$ is required to provide synchronized values for \mathcal{S} and \mathcal{E} , the common factor $32S^3$ which appears when computing the quantities of formula (27.5) cannot be avoided. Afterwards, one can only proceed to a global simplification, in order to provide better looking formula.

Remark 27.8.5. Quantity $f + g + h = u + v + w = \rho + \sigma + \tau$ vanishes for isotropic lines, i.e. lines through an umbilic. Aren't they special lines ?

Exercise 27.8.6. Let α, β, γ be the orthogonal projections of A, B, C onto Δ . Then \mathcal{S} and \mathcal{E} are, respectively, the pole and the elop of the homography $A \mapsto \alpha$, etc.

Exercise 27.8.7. Consider the Euler line, using for example $P_1 = X(2)$ and $P_2 = X(4)$. Obtain $\mathcal{S} = 110$, $\mathcal{E} = \Omega = 125$, $\omega = 5972$. Intersections with circumcircle: $X(1113)$, $X(1114)$. Check the three cevians:

pedal	3	4	20
cevian	2	4	69

Construction 27.8.8. Construct the orthopole \mathcal{E} of Δ wrt triangle ABC . Project A, B, C onto Δ and obtain Q_a, Q_b, Q_c . Draw Δ_a by Q_a orthogonally to BC , etc. Then the three lines $\Delta_a, \Delta_b, \Delta_c$ concur at \mathcal{E} . This property was at the origin of the name "orthopole".

Proof. Straightforward computation. \square

27.8.2 Using the flat pedal triangles

It has been already stated that a LFIT is best characterized by its degenerate triangles. And we know that a pedal triangle is flat if and only if its center is on the circumcircle. Thus we introduce points P_3, P_4 that are the intersections (visible or not) of line $\Delta = P_0P_1$ and the circumcircle Γ .

Proposition 27.8.9. Let $\mathcal{T}_3 = (a_3b_3c_3)$, $\mathcal{T}_4 = (a_4b_4c_4)$ be the pedal (flat) triangles of P_3, P_4 . Then \mathcal{E} is the intersection of the Simson lines \mathcal{T}_3 and \mathcal{T}_4 , while $\omega = (\mathcal{S} + \mathcal{E})/2$ is the intersection of the Newton lines \mathcal{N}_3 and \mathcal{N}_4 where \mathcal{N}_3 goes through the aligned points $a_3 + A$; $b_3 + B$; $c_3 + C$, etc.

Proof. General property of the degenerate triangles of an LFIT, see Section 26.10. \square

Proposition 27.8.10. As already said, point \mathcal{S} lies on the circumcircle. Its Simson line is parallel to Δ . Point $S' = 2O - \mathcal{S}$ is the isogonal conjugate of the direction of Δ . The Simson line of S' is perpendicular to Δ and, moreover, this line goes through \mathcal{E} , the orthopole of Δ .

Proof. Everything is obvious, except the last point. And every computation is straightforward. One can also follow the Steiner movie, given at Corollary 9.4.4. \square

Proposition 27.8.11. *The equicenter (orthopole) \mathcal{E} lies on the reciprocal to the image of Δ in the circumcenter O .*

Proof. Matrix $\boxed{\mathcal{N}}$ takes that image. And then, point $pu : qv : rw$ belongs to line $[1/u, 1/v, 1/w]$ when $p + q + r = 1$. And, here, $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t\Delta \in \mathcal{L}_b$. \square

Exercise 27.8.12. Vertex-Miquel circles. In the pedal-LFIT relative to Δ , the circles (A, b_t, c_t) are the circles having $[A, M_t]$ as diameter. Therefore the Q_A , etc points of Proposition 26.6.1 are the projection of the vertices on Δ . The Vertex-Miquel point is simply M_t ... whose locus is nothing than line $(Q_A, Q_B, Q_C) = \Delta$, whose direction is the orthopoint of \mathcal{S}^* . This doesn't contradict the former assumption $\mathcal{S}^* \in \text{cycle}(Q_A, Q_B, Q_C)$ since this cycle is $\mathcal{L}_b \cup \Delta$! And \mathcal{S}^* remains the perspector of triangles ABC and $Q_A Q_B Q_C$. See Figure 27.1.

Exercise 27.8.13. The fixed points (as characterized by concurrent corresponding lines) are $P_a = \text{dir}(AH) \in \mathcal{L}_z$, etc, and $P_a, \mathcal{E}, O_a, O'_a$ are aligned as ever.

Proposition 27.8.14. *The area of the P -pedal triangle is $\frac{S}{4} \left(1 - \frac{|OP|^2}{R^2} \right)$.*

Proof. This is obviously true for $P = O$. Otherwise, draw the line $\Delta \doteq OP$: It cuts Γ at P_3, P_4 . Then we parametrize the line Δ by $2P = (1+t)P_3 + (1-t)P_4$, so that $|t| = |OP|/R$. The family of all the pedal triangles \mathcal{T}_t of the $P \in \Delta$ forms a LFIT since formula (9.3) is of first degree in t . As a result, $\text{area}(\mathcal{T}_t)$ is a t -polynomial of degree 2, while our formula is already true for three points (pedal triangles $\mathcal{T}_{\pm 1}$ are flat). \square

27.9 Sister Marie Cordia Karl

Proposition 27.9.1. *Let $\mathcal{L} = [u, v, w]$ and $\Delta = [p, q, r]$ be two lines. The condition for the orthopole of \mathcal{L} belongs to Δ can be written as*

$$\Delta \cdot \boxed{\mathfrak{H}} \cdot \mathfrak{V}(\mathcal{L}) = 0 \quad \text{where } \boxed{\mathfrak{H}} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 2a^2 S_b S_c & 2b^2 S_b S_c & 2c^2 S_b S_c & b^2 S_b^2 + c^2 S_c^2 & -S_c(a^2 c^2 + S_b^2) & -S_b(a^2 b^2 + S_c^2) \\ 2a^2 S_c S_a & 2b^2 S_c S_a & 2c^2 S_c S_a & -S_c(b^2 c^2 + S_a^2) & a^2 S_a^2 + c^2 S_c^2 & -S_a(a^2 b^2 + S_c^2) \\ 2a^2 S_a S_b & 2b^2 S_a S_b & 2c^2 S_a S_b & -S_b(b^2 c^2 + S_a^2) & -S_a(a^2 c^2 + S_b^2) & a^2 S_a^2 + b^2 S_b^2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\text{and } \mathfrak{V}([u, v, w]) \simeq {}^t[u^2, v^2, w^2, 2vw, 2wu, 2uv]$$

Proof. Obvious from (27.5). \square

Definition 27.9.2. Map $\mathcal{L} \mapsto \mathfrak{V}(\mathcal{L})$ is the full-Veronese map (whose signature is: row(3) \mapsto column(6)), we are building conics here, not circles). For a given Δ , equation $\Delta \cdot \boxed{\mathfrak{H}} \cdot \mathfrak{V}(\mathcal{L}) = 0$ is the equation of a tangential conic. We call it the associated parabola of Δ and note it: $\mathfrak{H}(\Delta)$, while we call $\boxed{\mathfrak{H}}$ the Sister Mary Cordia Karl's matrix, due to Karl, E. (Sister Mary Cordia), 1932.

Proposition 27.9.3. *Conic $\mathfrak{H}(\Delta)$ is a parabola. Its point at infinity is $\mathfrak{H}_\infty \doteq \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t\Delta$, while its focus \mathfrak{H}_ω is the isogonal conjugate of \mathfrak{H}_∞ . Moreover, its directrix (polar of the focus) is homothetic to Δ from $X(4)$ (ratio=2).*

Proof. Compute $\mathfrak{H}(\Delta) \cdot {}^t\mathcal{L}_b$ and recognize the orthodir $\boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t\Delta$, proving the contact. Then write that the isotropic lines of the focus belongs to the conic, and obtain the given result. For the last point, you find it by computing the directrix, obtaining a linear formula, extracting its matrix and recognizing $\text{homot}(H, 2)$... but you prove it simpler by $\mathfrak{H}(\Delta) \cdot {}^t(\Delta \cdot h(H, 1/2)) \simeq \mathfrak{H}_\omega$, using (7.29) (and 1/2, we are acting on lines, not on points). \square

Example 27.9.4. Taking the sidelines and \mathcal{L}_b as examples, one obtains:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathfrak{H}(BC)(u, v, w) &= (-a^2 u + S_c v + S_b w) (S_b S_c u - b^2 S_b v - c^2 S_c w) \\ \mathfrak{H}(CA)(u, v, w) &= (-b^2 v + S_a w + S_c u) (S_c S_a v - c^2 S_c w - a^2 S_a u) \\ \mathfrak{H}(AC)(u, v, w) &= (-c^2 w + S_b u + S_a v) (S_a S_b w - a^2 S_a u - b^2 S_b v) \\ \mathfrak{H}(\mathcal{L}_b)(u, v, w) &\simeq (u(S_b - 2iS) + v(S_a + 2iS) - c^2 w) (u(S_b + 2iS) + v(S_a - 2iS) - c^2 w) \end{aligned}$$

the last one being the conic of isotropic lines.

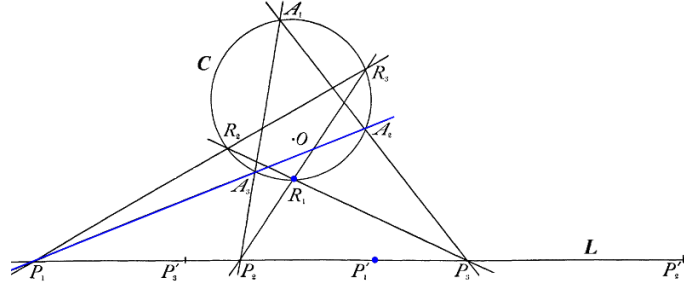


Figure 27.2: Revisiting the Sister Mary Cordia Karl's correspondence

Proposition 27.9.5. *The $\mathfrak{H}(\Delta)$ conic is degenerate if and only if Δ is the Simson line of some point M (on Γ , the circumcircle). In such a case, the pivots are M and its isogonal conjugate (the orthodir of Δ , on \mathcal{L}_b).*

Proof. Compute the determinant and obtain (27.4). Since this equation is invariant by isotomic conjugacy, this tells us that $\text{tripolar}(\Delta)$ is on K010, so that Δ is a Simson line. Conversely, computing the conic from parametrization (27.3) of $\text{Simson}(M_t)$, leads to M_t and $M_t^* \in \mathcal{L}_b$. \square

Remark 27.9.6. When points are opposite on Γ , Simson lines are orthogonal and also reciprocate (characteristic property).

Proposition 27.9.7. *Three Simson lines (visible or not) are going through any generic point. By the orthopole of a known line \mathcal{L} , we have the Simson line orthogonal to \mathcal{L} , given by:*

$$\Delta_1 \simeq \left[\frac{q-r}{S_b r + S_c q - a^2 p}, \frac{r-p}{S_a r + S_c p - qb^2}, \frac{p-q}{S_a q + S_b p - c^2 r} \right]; \quad t = -\frac{p-r}{q-r}$$

and the Simson lines of the points of $\Gamma \cap \mathcal{L}$.

Proof. Degree of equation is 3. For an orthopole, the equation splits. The first degree factor leads to Δ_1 . The other part is exactly the condition for $M_t \in \mathcal{L}$. \square

Construction 27.9.8. *Construct the three Simson lines through a given point P . Let $Q = A+B+C-2P$. Draw the hyperbola \mathcal{H}_A having $[A, Q]$ as diameter and $I_0 I_a, I_b I_c$ as asymptotic directions. The three hyperbolas $\mathcal{H}_A, \mathcal{H}_B, \mathcal{H}_C$ have four points in common, Q itself and three others R_j , which are on the circumcircle. Then the Simson lines of the $R'_j \doteq 2O - R_j$ are going through P . Moreover the three R_j are visible when P is inside of the Steiner deltoid, while only one is visible when P is outside of the deltoid.*

Proof. Let $P = z : t : \zeta$ be a generic point in the plane, and M a point on the unit circle (turn τ). Then P belongs to the Simson line of $2O - M$ when

$$\Theta \doteq (2\tau^2)z + (\tau^3 - \tau^2 s_1 - \tau s_2 + s_3)t + (2\tau s_3)\zeta = 0$$

On the other hand, asymptotes δ_1, δ_2 of \mathcal{H}_A are the parallels to the bisectors of (AB, AC) drawn through $(A+Q)/2$. Let $Q_a = 2A+B+C-2P$ and $\delta_1 = Q_a \wedge (+\omega : 0 : 1)$, $\delta_2 = Q_a \wedge (-\omega : 0 : 1)$. Then

$$\mathcal{H}_A \simeq ({}^t\delta_1 \cdot \delta_2 + {}^t\delta_2 \cdot \delta_1) - K ({}^t\mathcal{L}_z \cdot \mathcal{L}_z)$$

where $\omega^2 = \alpha^2 \beta \gamma$ while K is determined by $A \in \mathcal{H}_A$. This results into:

$$\mathcal{H}_A \simeq \begin{bmatrix} -2t & -2z + (s_1 + \alpha)t & 0 \\ -2z + (s_1 + \alpha)t & 4\alpha z + 2(\beta\gamma - \alpha^2)t - 4s_3\zeta & -(s_3 + \alpha s_2)t + 2\alpha s_3\zeta \\ 0 & -(s_3 + \alpha s_2)t + 2\alpha s_3\zeta & 2\alpha s_3 t \end{bmatrix}$$

And we can check that $M \in \mathcal{H}_A$ is either $\tau = \alpha$ or $\Theta = 0$. As a result, the three hyperbolas belong to the same pencil. This can be checked by $\sum (\beta - \gamma) \mathcal{H}_A = 0$. The deltoid appears when one computes the discriminant of Θ . \square

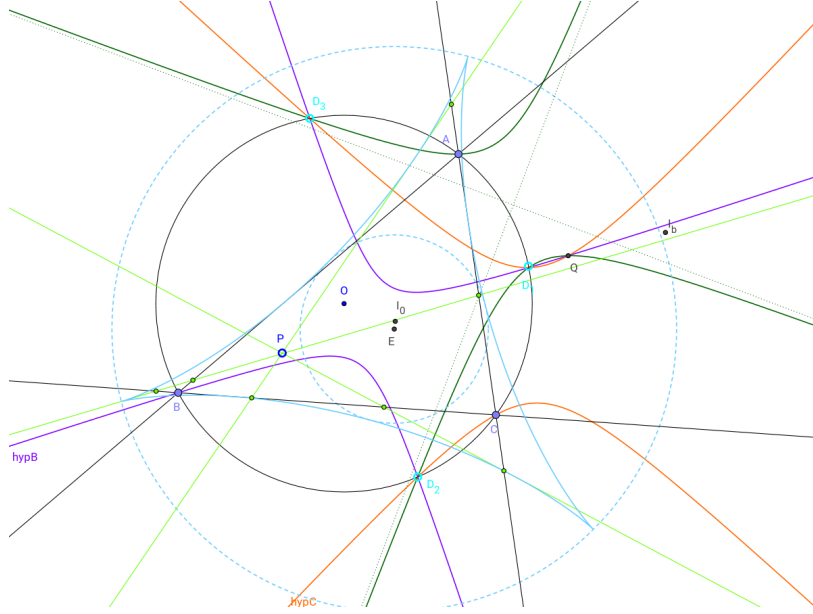


Figure 27.3: Construct the 3 Simson lines through a given point

27.10 The four pedal LFIT of a quadrilateral

Proposition 27.10.1. *Consider the four LFIT created by the pedal triangles of points on line \mathcal{L}_j wrt the trigone \mathcal{T}_j of the other three lines. The four slowness centers \mathcal{S}_j are on the common Miquel circle, while the four Neuberg centers \mathcal{E}_j are on the Steiner axis.*

Proof. We already know that $\mathcal{S}_0 \in \text{Miquel}$ and $\mathcal{E}_0 \in \text{Steiner}$. The obvious symmetry of the configuration proves the rest. One can also use the fact that \mathcal{S}_0 is the perspector of ABC and $O_aO_bO_c$. \square

Corollary 27.10.2. *Point \mathcal{S}_j is therefore the second intersection of the Miquel circle (O_0, O_a, O_b, O_c) and the circumscribed circle (O_j) , while \mathcal{E}_j is the intersection of the Simson line of $2O_j - \mathcal{S}_j$ with the line (H_0, H_a, H_b, H_c) .*

Fact 27.10.3. *The coordinates of the four slowness/Neuberg centers are*

$$\mathcal{S}_0 \underset{1}{\cong} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{-s_3}{n} \\ 1 \\ \frac{-n}{s_3} \end{pmatrix} ; \mathcal{S}_a \underset{1}{\cong} \begin{pmatrix} (m(s_3 + n\alpha) + n(\alpha^2 + s_2))\alpha \\ -(\alpha\gamma - n)(\alpha\beta - n) \\ (m(s_3 + n\alpha) + n(\alpha^2 + s_2))\frac{1}{\alpha} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\mathcal{E}_0 \underset{1}{\cong} \begin{pmatrix} s_3(s_1y\eta + s_3\eta^2 - y\tau) \\ 2s_3y\eta \\ y^2 + s_2y\eta - s_3\tau\eta \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\mathcal{E}_a \underset{1}{\cong} \begin{pmatrix} 2s_1s_3y^2 + s_3(\alpha^2 + s_2)y\tau + s_3s_1(3\alpha^2 - 2\alpha s_1 + s_2)y\eta - s_3^2(\alpha^2 - 2\alpha s_1 + s_2)\eta^2 \\ 2s_3y^2 + 2s_3\alpha(-s_1 + \alpha)y\eta + 2s_3^2\alpha\eta^2 \\ (s_2 - \alpha^2)y^2 + s_2(3\alpha^2 - 2\alpha s_1 + s_2)y\eta + s_3(\alpha^2 + s_2)\tau\eta + 2\alpha s_2s_3\eta^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

Proposition 27.10.4. *When point M moves along the line \mathcal{L}_0 , the orthopole \mathcal{E}_0 has a constant power ρ^2 with respect to the pedal circle of M wrt $\mathcal{T}_0 = ABC$. The value of ρ^2 is ((Gulasekharam, 1941))*

$$\rho^2 = \frac{\left(\mathcal{L}_0 \cdot \begin{bmatrix} a^2 S_a \\ b^2 S_b \\ c^2 S_c \end{bmatrix} \right) \left(\mathcal{L}_0 \cdot \begin{bmatrix} -a^2 \\ S_c \\ S_b \end{bmatrix} \right) \left(\mathcal{L}_0 \cdot \begin{bmatrix} S_c \\ -b^2 \\ S_a \end{bmatrix} \right) \left(\mathcal{L}_0 \cdot \begin{bmatrix} S_b \\ S_a \\ -c^2 \end{bmatrix} \right)}{16 S^4 \left(\mathcal{L}_0 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t \mathcal{L}_0 \right)^2} \quad (27.7)$$

Moreover ρ^2 is (-2) times the algebraic product of $\text{dist}(O_0, \mathcal{L}_0)$ and $\text{dist}(\mathcal{E}_0, \mathcal{L}_0)$.

Rem: first column is $X(3)$, the other 3 are the directions of the altitudes.

Proof. Start from triangle $\boxed{\mathcal{T}(t)}$, then compute its circumcircle and apply the definition of ρ^2 . It happens that all the t cancel. Moreover, we have the formulas:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{dist}(\mathcal{L}_0, O_0) &= \sqrt{2S} \frac{(S_a a^2 q r + b^2 S_b r p + c^2 S_c p q)}{8 S^2 \sqrt{\mathcal{L}_0 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t \mathcal{L}_0}} \\ \text{dist}(\mathcal{L}_0, \mathcal{E}_0) &= \sqrt{2S} \frac{\prod (a^2 q r - S_c r p - S_b p q)}{8 S^3 \left(\sqrt{\mathcal{L}_0 \cdot \boxed{\mathcal{M}_b} \cdot {}^t \mathcal{L}_0} \right)^3} \end{aligned}$$

And we can check the homogeneous degrees: in a : $(4 + 2 + 2 + 2) - 8 = 2$ (since ρ is a length); in p : $8 - 8$ (as required since \mathcal{L}_0 is projectively defined). \square

Remark 27.10.5. This result can be restated using some trigonometry, leading to (Goormaghtigh, 1926, p. 81)

$$\text{dist}(\mathcal{L}_0, \mathcal{E}_0) = 2R_0 \cos(\mathcal{L}_0, \mathcal{L}_a) \cos(\mathcal{L}_0, \mathcal{L}_b) \cos(\mathcal{L}_0, \mathcal{L}_c)$$

Corollary 27.10.6. Concerning the other LFIT, when point M moves along line \mathcal{L}_A , the orthopole \mathcal{E}_A has a constant power ρ_A^2 with respect to the pedal circle of M wrt trigone \mathcal{T}_A .

$$\rho_A^2 = \frac{a^2 (pq + rp - qr) S_a + S_b b^2 pq + S_c c^2 pr - 8S^2 p^2}{4a S (p - r) (p - q)} \times \frac{S_b S_c (-a^2 qr + S_c pr + S_b pq)}{2a^3 S (p - r) (p - q)}$$

Proof. Simply using the product of distances. One can also recompute everything, and/or using an algebraic change of parameters, followed by a collineation. \square

Proposition 27.10.7 (Lemoine's theorem). When point M moves along \mathcal{L}_j , its pedal circumcircle wrt triangle \mathcal{T}_j remains orthogonal to a fixed circle centered at \mathcal{E}_j and whose radius is $\sqrt{\rho_j^2}$. Let us call it the j -**orthopedal circle**, noted \mathcal{G}_j . This circle is virtual when O_j, \mathcal{E}_j are on the same side of \mathcal{L}_j .

Proof. Immediate from the invariance of ρ_j^2 . See also Thebault, 1946. \square

Proposition 27.10.8. The four orthopedal circles belong to the Steiner pencil (generated by the polar circles).

Proof. When T_0 , the generic point on \mathcal{L}_0 , comes at C' , we have $C'T_a \perp T_a C$ and $C'T_b \perp T_b C$. Thus T_a, T_b are on the circle with diameter $[T_c C]$ and the circle $(T_a T_b T_c)$ is the circle with diameter $[C'C]$. This occurs also with the other two circles defining the Newton pencil. One can also use (27.2). \square

27.10.1 Lubin coordinates

Fact 27.10.9. Specific to the pedal LFIT (ABC, \mathcal{L}_0)

1. Synchronized barycentrics for $(\mathcal{S}_0, \mathcal{E}_0)$

$$\begin{pmatrix} f \\ g \\ h \\ u \\ v \\ w \end{pmatrix} \underset{\sim}{\overset{*}{\underset{b}{}}} 2 \begin{pmatrix} \gamma - \beta \\ \alpha - \gamma \\ \beta - \alpha \end{pmatrix} \underset{*}{\underset{b}{}} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha\beta + n \\ \beta\gamma + n \\ \gamma\alpha + n \end{pmatrix} \underset{*}{\underset{b}{}} \begin{pmatrix} \gamma\alpha + n \\ \alpha\beta + n \\ \beta\gamma + n \end{pmatrix} \\ \begin{pmatrix} \gamma - \beta \\ \alpha - \gamma \\ \beta - \alpha \end{pmatrix} \underset{*}{\underset{b}{}} \begin{pmatrix} \beta\gamma + n \\ \gamma\alpha + n \\ \alpha\beta + n \end{pmatrix} \underset{*}{\underset{b}{}} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha m - n - \alpha^2 \\ \beta m - n - \beta^2 \\ \gamma m - n - \gamma^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

2. Similarities $\sigma_a \simeq \frac{1}{1} \begin{pmatrix} \frac{\alpha\beta + \kappa\nu}{\alpha\gamma + \kappa\nu} & \frac{(\alpha^2 + \alpha\kappa + \alpha\nu - \kappa\nu)(\gamma - \beta)}{2(\alpha\gamma + \kappa\nu)} & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & \frac{(\alpha^2 - \alpha\kappa - \alpha\nu - \kappa\nu)(\gamma - \beta)}{2\alpha\beta(\alpha\gamma + \kappa\nu)} & \frac{\gamma(\alpha\beta + \kappa\nu)}{\beta(\alpha\gamma + \kappa\nu)} \end{pmatrix}$
3. Centers are the projections of ABC on \mathcal{L}_0 . $Q_a \simeq \frac{1}{1} \begin{pmatrix} (\alpha^2 + \alpha(\kappa + \nu) - \kappa\nu)\kappa\nu & \\ & 2\alpha\kappa\nu \\ & & -\alpha^2 + \alpha(\kappa + \nu) + \kappa\nu \end{pmatrix}$
4. Power of \mathcal{E}_0 wrt each of the pedal circles related to some $M_t \in \mathcal{L}_0$:

$$\begin{aligned} \rho_0^2 &= \frac{-m(n^3 + n^2s_2 + ns_1s_3 + s_3^2)}{4n^2s_3} \\ &= \frac{-m(\beta\gamma + n)(\gamma\alpha + n)(\alpha\beta + n)}{4n^2s_3} R^2 \end{aligned}$$

27.10.2 The so-called paralogic triangles

Definition 27.10.10. Line Δ_{jk} is defined as the line through $\mathcal{L}_j \cap \mathcal{L}_k$ and perpendicular to \mathcal{L}_k . Point Q_{jk} is defined as $\Delta_{jm} \cap \Delta_{jn}$. For a given j , there are 3 Q_{jk} defining a triangle \mathfrak{W}_j , called paralogic in [Johnson, 1929](#), p. 258. Obviously, the 3 Δ_{jk} are the sidelines of the \mathfrak{W}_j^* trigon.

Proposition 27.10.11. *We have the following properties:*

1. Triangles \mathcal{T}_j and \mathfrak{W}_j are parallelogic. Orthocenter H_j sees \mathcal{T}_j along the sidelines of \mathfrak{W}_j , while the orthocenter H'_j of \mathfrak{W}_j sees \mathfrak{W}_j along the sidelines of \mathcal{T}_j . Moreover $(H_j + H'_j)/2$ belongs to \mathcal{L}_j (Sondat's theorem, see [Goormaghtigh, 1946a](#)).
2. Triangles \mathcal{T}_j and \mathfrak{W}_j are directly similar, with center M_q and angle $+90^\circ$.
3. Triangles \mathcal{T}_j and \mathfrak{W}_j are in perspective from \mathcal{S}_j (the slowness center).
4. Circle γ_j circumscribed to \mathfrak{W}_j , is centered at $D_j = 2\Omega - O_j$ (the circum-antipode of O_j), goes through M_q and \mathcal{S}_j and is orthogonal to Γ_j .
5. Point Q_{jk} belongs to Γ_k .

Proof. Due to symmetry, only the case $j = 0$ is to be proven. Some properties are self evident. Existence of a similitude comes from the orthogonality of the respective sidelines of \mathcal{T}_j and \mathfrak{W}_j . Parallelogy is also evident. The other properties are straightforward computations. \square

27.11 Van Rees cubic

Definition 27.11.1. As defined in ([Van Rees, 1829](#)), the **Van Rees cubic** vRK associated to points $M_1N_2M_3N_4$ is the locus of the points P such that

$$\begin{aligned} (PM_1, PM_3) + (PN_2, PN_4) &= 0 \\ (PM_1, PN_4) + (PN_2, PM_3) &= 0 \end{aligned} \tag{27.8}$$

Remark 27.11.2. Spoiler: more than often, such a cubic will be seen from a triangle ABC and described as

$$\left[nkub, \#F \simeq \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{bmatrix}, U \simeq \begin{bmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{bmatrix}, \hat{X} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} q - r \\ r - p \\ p - q \end{bmatrix} \right]$$

where U is the ABC tripole of a line $A'B'C'$, while vertices are renamed into $M_1 \doteq A, N_2 \doteq A', M_3 \doteq B, N_4 \doteq B'$.

Remark 27.11.3. This cubic also appears as the locus of the focuses of a LLLL pencil of conics. See [Section 11.27](#).

27.11.1 Ordered quadrangle (complex coordinates)

Definition 27.11.4. An **ordered quadrangle** is an (ordered) list of four points M_j . Then use $M_5 = M_1M_4 \cap M_2M_3$, $M_6 = M_1M_3 \cap M_2M_4$, and note Ψ the correspondence $1 \leftrightarrow 2$, $3 \leftrightarrow 4$, $5 \leftrightarrow 6$. By definition, the diagonals of the associated quadrilateral are M_1M_2 , M_3M_4 and M_5M_6 (while the four remaining lines form a quadrilateral).

Thus $M_1M_3M_5$, is a triangle –and a circle– (odd number of odd indices, like 146, 236, 245), while $M_2M_4M_6$ is a line (odd number of even indices, like 235, 145, 136).

Proposition 27.11.5. *The Miquel point and the direction of the Newton line of the induced quadrilateral are :*

$$\begin{aligned} M_q &\simeq \begin{pmatrix} \frac{t_1 t_2 z_3 z_4 - t_3 t_4 z_1 z_2}{t_1 t_2 t_3 z_4 + t_1 t_2 t_4 z_3 - t_1 t_3 t_4 z_2 - t_2 t_3 t_4 z_1} \\ 1 \\ \frac{t_1 t_2 \zeta_3 \zeta_4 - t_3 t_4 \zeta_1 \zeta_2}{t_1 t_2 t_3 \zeta_4 + t_1 t_2 t_4 \zeta_3 - t_1 t_3 t_4 \zeta_2 - t_2 t_3 t_4 \zeta_1} \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \frac{z_3 z_4 - z_1 z_2}{z_3 + z_4 - z_1 - z_2} \\ 1 \\ \frac{\zeta_3 \zeta_4 - \zeta_1 \zeta_2}{\zeta_3 + \zeta_4 - \zeta_1 - \zeta_2} \end{pmatrix} \\ \Delta_\infty &\simeq \begin{pmatrix} \frac{t_1 t_2 t_3 z_4 + t_1 t_2 t_4 z_3 - t_1 t_3 t_4 z_2 - t_2 t_3 t_4 z_1}{0} \\ 0 \\ \frac{t_1 t_2 t_3 \zeta_4 + t_1 t_2 t_4 \zeta_3 - t_1 t_3 t_4 \zeta_2 - t_2 t_3 t_4 \zeta_1}{\zeta_3 + \zeta_4 - \zeta_1 - \zeta_2} \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} z_3 + z_4 - z_1 - z_2 \\ 0 \\ \zeta_3 + \zeta_4 - \zeta_1 - \zeta_2 \end{pmatrix} \end{aligned} \quad (27.9)$$

Proof. Δ_∞ is obvious, while computing circles $M_1M_3M_5, M_1M_4M_6$, etc leads directly to M_q . \square

Proposition 27.11.6. *The **isoptic** definition (27.8) given by Van Rees (1829) leads to the not so huge equation (length = 574)*

$$\begin{aligned} \text{vRK}_1 &\doteq \mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}} \times ((\zeta_1 + \zeta_2 - \zeta_3 - \zeta_4)\mathbf{Z} - (z_1 + z_2 - z_3 - z_4)\overline{\mathbf{Z}}) \\ &+ \left((\zeta_3 \zeta_4 - \zeta_1 \zeta_2)\mathbf{Z}^2 + ((z_1 + z_2)(\zeta_3 + \zeta_4) - (z_3 + z_4)(\zeta_1 + \zeta_2))\overline{\mathbf{Z}}\mathbf{Z} + (z_1 z_2 - z_3 z_4)\overline{\mathbf{Z}}^2 \right) \mathbf{T} \\ &+ ((z_3 + z_4)\zeta_1 \zeta_2 - (z_1 + z_2)\zeta_3 \zeta_4)\mathbf{Z}\mathbf{T}^2 + (z_3 z_4(\zeta_1 + \zeta_2) - z_1 z_2(\zeta_3 + \zeta_4))\overline{\mathbf{Z}}\mathbf{T}^2 \\ &+ (z_1 z_2 \zeta_3 \zeta_4 - \zeta_1 \zeta_2 z_3 z_4)\mathbf{T}^3 = 0 \end{aligned} \quad (27.10)$$

One can check that this vanRees cubic goes through the six points M_j . Points at infinity are both umbilics and Δ_∞ . Moreover, point M_q is a singular focus (and belongs to the curve). Additionally, the cubic goes through the six U_j , where $U_j = M_jM_q \cap \Psi(M_j)\Delta_\infty$ (remember: $\Psi(M_j)$ is the formal notation of M'_j).

Proof. Direct substitutions are easy... even when a direct examination is equally easy ! \square

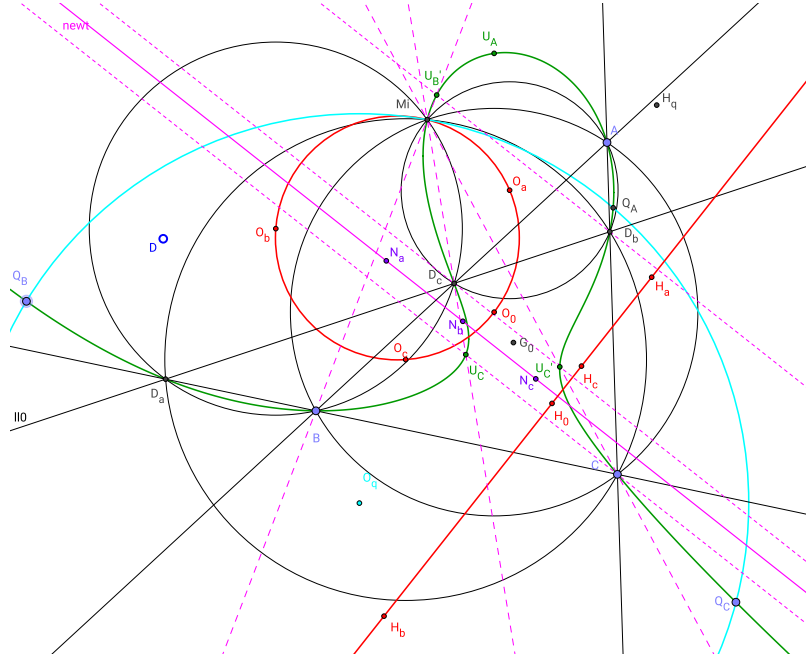
Proposition 27.11.7. *Let M_j be four generic points in the plane, and define*

$$\begin{aligned} s_1 &= \frac{(z_1 + z_2)\zeta_3 \zeta_4 - (z_3 + z_4)\zeta_1 \zeta_2}{\zeta_3 \zeta_4 - \zeta_1 \zeta_2} \\ s_2 &= \frac{z_1 z_2 (\zeta_3 + \zeta_4) - z_3 z_4 (\zeta_1 + \zeta_2)}{\zeta_3 + \zeta_4 - \zeta_1 - \zeta_2} \\ s_3 &= \frac{z_1 z_2 - z_3 z_4}{(\zeta_3 + \zeta_4) - (\zeta_1 + \zeta_2)} ; s'_3 = \frac{(z_3 + z_4) - (z_1 + z_2)}{\zeta_1 \zeta_2 - \zeta_3 \zeta_4} \end{aligned} \quad (27.11)$$

Then $s_3 = s'_3$ if and only if M_q belongs to the unit circle Γ . And then it exist a triangle α, β, γ inscribed in Γ such that the three pairs (M_{2j+1}, M_{2j+2}) are isogonal wrt $\alpha\beta\gamma$. Moreover, the Van Rees cubic $\text{vRK}(M_1 \cdots M_4)$ goes also through the points α, β, γ .

Proof. A simple elimination gives the condition and the values of the s_j . This doesn't imply that all these three points are visible points. Concerning the last assertion, convert $n\mathcal{K}(\alpha) n\mathcal{K}(\beta) n\mathcal{K}(\gamma)$ using the symmetric functions s_j , substitute (27.11) and check the appearance of the cube of the condition $M_q \in \Gamma$.

\square

Figure 27.4: Starting from the four M_j .

27.11.2 Cartesian centered equation

Proposition 27.11.8. *In a cartesian frame $X : Y : \mathbf{T}$ where $M_q \simeq 0 : 0 : 1$ and $\Delta_\infty \simeq 1 : 0 : 0$, the equation of the cubic can be written as:*

$$\text{vRK}_c(X, Y, \mathbf{T}) \doteq (X^2 + Y^2)(Y - A\mathbf{T}) + \mathbf{T}^2XB + \mathbf{T}^2YC = 0$$

where $A, B, C \in \mathbb{R}$ and a parametrization is:

$$x = \frac{B + \sqrt{B^2 + 4y(A - y)C - 4y^2(A - y)^2}}{2(A - y)}$$

A first proof. Substitute $\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \bar{\mathbf{Z}}$ by $\mathbf{Z} + \frac{\mathbf{T}(z_1z_2 - z_4z_3)}{-z_3 - z_4 + z_1 + z_2} : \mathbf{T} : \bar{\mathbf{Z}} + \frac{\mathbf{T}(zz_1zz_2 - zz_3zz_4)}{-zz_3 - zz_4 + zz_1 + zz_2}$ and obtain

$$\bar{\mathbf{Z}}\mathbf{Z}^2c_{210} + \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2\mathbf{Z}c_{120} + \mathbf{T}\bar{\mathbf{Z}}\mathbf{Z}c_{111} + \mathbf{T}^2\bar{\mathbf{Z}}c_{012} + \mathbf{T}^2\mathbf{Z}c_{102}$$

Substitute $\mathbf{Z} = \kappa(X + iY)$, etc and identify. This gives

$$\kappa^2 = -\frac{c_{120}}{c_{210}}, A = \frac{-ic_{111}\kappa}{2c_{120}}, B = \frac{i(c_{210}c_{012} - c_{102}c_{120})}{2c_{120}c_{210}}, C = \frac{c_{102}c_{120} + c_{210}c_{012}}{2c_{120}c_{210}}$$

And then, one can check that A, B, C are real. \square

Another proof. Substitute the values of M_q, Δ_∞ into 27.9 and solve for $z_2, \zeta_2, z_4, \zeta_4$. Substitute the result, together with $\mathbf{Z} = X + iY$, $\bar{\mathbf{Z}} = X - iY$ into 27.10, and obtain the required $\text{vRK}_c(X, Y, \mathbf{T})$ formula with real values for coefficients A, B, C . \square

Theorem 27.11.9 (Van Rees, 1829). *When one of these points is on the cubic, so are the other three:*

$$M \doteq \begin{pmatrix} X \\ Y \\ \mathbf{T} \end{pmatrix}; \mathfrak{d}(M) \doteq \begin{pmatrix} \frac{B\mathbf{T}^2}{A\mathbf{T} - Y} - X \\ Y \\ \mathbf{T} \end{pmatrix}; \mathfrak{f}(M) \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \frac{X(A\mathbf{T} - Y)}{Y} \\ A\mathbf{T} - Y \\ \mathbf{T} \end{pmatrix}; (\mathfrak{d}\mathfrak{f})(M) = (\mathfrak{f}\mathfrak{d})(M)$$

Moreover, we have the equivalence:

$$(\mathfrak{d}\mathfrak{f}) \begin{pmatrix} x_1 \\ y_1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} x_2 \\ y_2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \in n\mathcal{K} \iff \begin{cases} y_1 + y_2 &= A \\ x_1 y_2 + x_2 y_1 &= B \\ y_1 y_2 - x_1 x_2 &= C \end{cases} \quad (27.12)$$

Proof. Direct substitution. These formulas were derived by [Van Rees \(1829\)](#) from the fact that $y_1 + y_2 = A$ leads to the same radical W . One can check that eliminating x_2, y_2 in [27.12](#) leads precisely to $M_1 \in n\mathcal{K}$. \square

Definition 27.11.10. Transformation $\mathfrak{d}\mathfrak{f}$ is called **intrinsic conjugacy**. Points $M, \mathfrak{d}(M)$ are aligned with Δ_∞ while points $M, \mathfrak{f}(M)$ are aligned with M_q . In other words: start from M , towards Δ_∞ and cut the curve at $\mathfrak{d}(M)$. Then start towards M_q and cut the curve at $\mathfrak{d}\mathfrak{f}(M)$. But the other road is fine either.

Theorem 27.11.11. *Intrinsic conjugates are isogonal conjugates wrt any triangle inscribed in the vanRees cubic.*

Proof. This is the right place to state this theorem, while the proof will come later, at Remark [27.11.15](#). \square

Proposition 27.11.12. *When P, Q are intrinsic conjugates, then*

1. Points P, Q have the same tangential
2. $|M_q P| \times |M_q Q| = \sqrt{B^2 + C^2}$
3. The bisectors of $(M_q P, M_q Q)$ have constant slopes wrt the x-axis, namely $(C \pm \sqrt{B^2 + C^2}) / B$.

Proof. Direct computation is easy from [\(27.12\)](#). \square

Proposition 27.11.13. *When assuming $P \in \text{vRK}$, the defining property [\(27.8\)](#), i.e. the equivalent assertions:*

$$\begin{aligned} (PM_1, PM_3) + (PN_2, PN_4) &= 0 \\ (PM_1, PN_4) + (PN_2, PM_3) &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

hold for any pairs of conjugates $M_1 \longleftrightarrow N_2$ and $M_3 \longleftrightarrow N_4$.

Proof. Write down $\tan(PM_1, PM_3) + \tan(PN_2, PN_4)$ using $P \simeq X : Y : \mathbf{T}$, $M_j \simeq x_j : y_j$ and simplify using the [Van Rees](#) method [\(27.12\)](#) i.e. $y_1 + y_2 = A$, etc. This gives the required equation times $x_1 + x_2 - x_3 - x_4$. \square

Theorem 27.11.14. *When three points are on a vanRees cubic, their conjugates are colinear if and only if the given points are cocyclic with the Miquel point.*

Proof. First part. Use $N_j \simeq x_j : y_j : 1$ ($j = 2, 4, 6$) and cut the curve by the line $uX + vY + w$. Then $X = -(vY + w)/u$ while

$$-(u^2 + v^2)Y^3 + (Au^2 + Av^2 - 2vw)Y^2 + (2Avw + Buw - Cu^2 - w^2)Y + Aw^2 + Buw = 0$$

Substitute X in [\(27.12\)](#) and obtain

$$\Psi(N_j) \simeq v(A - y_j) - w + (Aw + Bu)/y_j : , u(A - y_j) : u$$

Write down the cocyclicity condition, substitute the y_j symmetric functions obtained from the Y equation, and obtain 0 as asserted.

Second part. Use $M_j \simeq x_j : y_j : 1$ ($j = 1, 3, 5$) and cut the curve by the circle $uX + vY + (X^2 + Y^2)w$. Then $X = Y(Av + Cw - vY) \div (u(Y - A) - Bw)$ while

$$-(u^2 + v^2)Y^3 + (2(u^2 + v^2)A + 2w(Bu + Cv))Y^2 + \text{osotros} = 0$$

Substitute X in (27.12) and obtain

$$\Psi(M_j) \simeq \begin{bmatrix} vy_j^3 + (-2Av - Cw)y_j^2 + (A^2v + ACw - Bu)y_j + ABu + B^2w \\ y_j(uA + Bw - uy_j)(-y_j + A) \\ y_j(uA + Bw - uy_j) \end{bmatrix}$$

Write down the colinearity condition, substitute the y_j symmetric functions obtained from the Y equation, and obtain 0 as asserted.

Remark: don't be surprised by the appearance of $\text{vdM}(y_j)$! □

Remark 27.11.15. This finalizes the proof of the theorem about isogonal conjugacy.

27.11.3 Barycentric version

Proposition 27.11.16. Consider the quadrilateral \mathcal{L}_j where $\mathcal{L}_0 = A'B'C' \simeq [qr, rp, pq]$. Let δ, F be resulting Newton line and focus, i.e.

$$\delta \simeq [-p + q + r, \text{etc}] ; F^* \simeq \delta_\infty \simeq (q - r) ::$$

Use $M_1 = A, M_2 = A', M_3 = B, M_4 = B', M_5 = C', M_6 = C$ (mind the order !) and apply the construction of the former section. Define

$$U_A \doteq (A \wedge F) \wedge (A' \wedge \delta_\infty), \text{ etc} ; U'_A \doteq (A' \wedge F) \wedge (A \wedge \delta_\infty), \text{ etc.}$$

Then the 12 points $A, A', \text{etc}, U_A, U'_A, \text{etc}$ are on the vRK whose barycentric equation wrt ABC is:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{vRK}_b &= \left[\text{nkub}, \#F \simeq \begin{bmatrix} a \\ b \\ c \end{bmatrix}, U \simeq \begin{bmatrix} p \\ q \\ r \end{bmatrix}, \hat{X} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} q - r \\ r - p \\ p - q \end{bmatrix} \right] \\ &\simeq \sum px (b^2 z^2 + c^2 y^2) + 2 \left(\sum S_a p \right) xyz \end{aligned}$$

Moreover, points $F, \delta_\infty = F^*$ and both umbilics are also on this curve.

Proof. Direct computation. □

Exercise 27.11.17. Prove that $A, \text{etc}, A', \text{etc}, \Omega_x \Omega_y, F$ are con-cubic with any tenth point in the plane (see Proposition 21.1.4) and are not sufficient to define the vRK . Prove also that, when A is restricted to the cubic, then $A^* = A'$.

Exercise 27.11.18. Consider two pairs $M_1 = P, M_2 = P^*, M_3 = Q, M_4 = Q^*$ of isogonal conjugates wrt triangle ABC . Define $M_5 = M_1 M_4 \cap M_2 M_3$, $M_6 = M_1 M_3 \cap M_2 M_4$. Then

1. Miquel: circles $\mathcal{C}_{135}, \mathcal{C}_{146}, \mathcal{C}_{236}, \mathcal{C}_{245}$ concur at some F ;
2. Newton: midpoints $m_{12} = (M_1 + M_2)/2$, etc are aligned on some δ ;
3. F, δ_∞ are isogonal conjugates, and so are M_5, M_6 ;
4. Let $K_a K_b K_c$ be the re-intersections of the sidelines with the cubic vRK through A, B, C, F, M_j . The K_j belong to the ABC tripolar of U , the root of the cubic, while their reciprocals $L_a = B + C - K_a$, etc are aligned on the line $\mathfrak{h}(G, -2)(\delta)$.

Exercise 27.11.19. Let ABC be the reference triangle, R_a the foot of the A-altitude and $A' = 2O - A$. Compute the locus of points P such that $(PB, PR_a) = (PA', PC)$ (1) wrt ABC (and obtain a $p\mathcal{K}$ cubic) ; (2) wrt $A'BC$ (and obtain a $n\mathcal{K}$ cubic) ; (3) compare the pivot and the root.

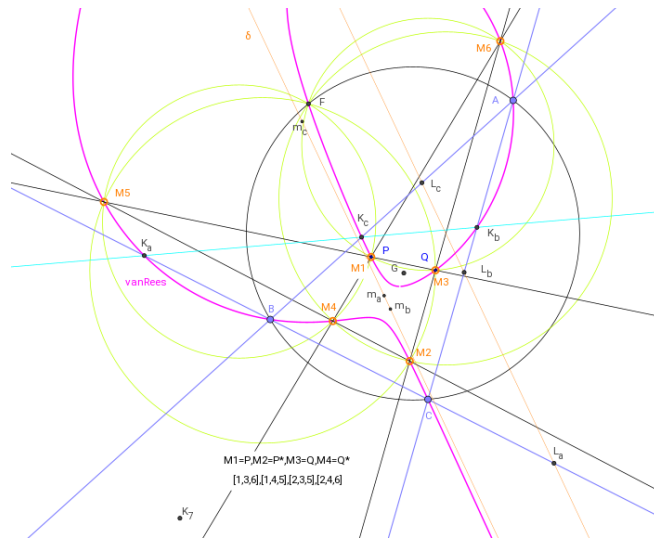


Figure 27.5: van Rees cubic defined by two isogonal pairs Section 11.27

27.12 Exercises

Exercise 27.12.1. Use the Lubin-1 representation, and write the transversal as the t -locus of

$$ik\tau + t\tau : 1 : \frac{-ik}{\tau} + \frac{t}{\tau}$$

where k is real and τ is a turn. Recompute everything, especially $\text{dist}(\Delta, \mathcal{E})$... that only depends on τ (see [Goormaghtigh, 1939](#)).

Exercise 27.12.2. Point O_0 is the perspector of $\mathcal{S}_A, \mathcal{S}_B, \mathcal{S}_C$ with ABC .

Exercise 27.12.3. Let P_0, P_a, P_b, P_c be the projections of M_q on the sidelines. There is a similarity $P_a \mapsto A', P_b \mapsto B', P_c \mapsto C'$. Elaborate further.

Exercise 27.12.4. Let be Q_0, Q_a, Q_b, Q_c the reflections of M_q about the sidelines. The similarity σ defined by $Q_a \mapsto A', Q_b \mapsto B'$ is centered at M_q , maps the Steiner line onto \mathcal{L}_0 , sends Q_c to C' , the circle ABC onto the Miquel circle and $A \mapsto \mathcal{S}_A$, etc.

Exercise 27.12.5. When points U_1 and U_2 are antipodes on the circumcircle, the orthopole of $\text{Simson}(U_1)$ is the intersection of $\text{Simson}(U_2)$ with $\text{Steiner}(U_1)$.

Exercise 27.12.6. When a line goes through the circumcenter, its orthopole belongs to the nine points circle.

Exercise 27.12.7. When a line goes through a fixed point P , its orthopole belongs to the conic centered at $(P + H)/2$ and passing through the projections of P on the sidelines.

Proposition 27.12.8. When X moves on a line through the centroid X_2 , then orthopole of $\text{trilipo}(X)$ moves on a line through the orthocenter X_4 . For example :

X on line	orthopole ($\text{trilipo}(X)$) on line
$L(2,1)$	$L(4,9)$
$L(2,3)$	$L(4,6)$
$L(2,6)$	$L(4,3)=L(2,3)$
$L(2,7)$	$L(1,4)$

Proof. Suppose X is not X_2 and does not lie on a sideline of triangle ABC . Then, using barycentrics, we have :

$$\text{orthopole}(\text{trilipo}(X)) \wedge X_4 =$$

$$S_a(y-z) : S_b(z-x) : S_c(x-z) = (S_a : S_b : S_c) \underset{b}{*} (X \wedge X_2)$$

□

27.13 Diagonal triangle

Notation 27.13.1. In this section, A, B, C is the diagonal triangle of the quadrilateral, with its a, b, c, S_a, S_b, S_c . The four lines are

$$\mathcal{L}_0, \mathcal{L}_a, \mathcal{L}_b, \mathcal{L}_c \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \rho & \sigma & \tau \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -\rho & \sigma & \tau \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} \rho & -\sigma & \tau \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} \rho & \sigma & -\tau \end{bmatrix}$$

while the six vertices are noted by:

$$A'', B'', C'', A', B', C' \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ \tau \\ \sigma \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} \tau \\ 0 \\ \rho \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} \sigma \\ \rho \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} 0 \\ -\tau \\ \sigma \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -\tau \\ 0 \\ \rho \end{bmatrix}, \begin{bmatrix} -\sigma \\ \rho \\ 0 \end{bmatrix}$$

so that relation $A', B', C' \in \mathcal{L}_0$ remains valid.

Fact 27.13.2. *Basic objects*

1. *Newton* $\simeq_d [\rho^2, \sigma^2, \tau^2]$, while $(A'' + A')/2 \simeq 0 : -\tau^2 : \sigma^2$
2. *Newton pencil* $B_x = b^2(\rho^2 - \sigma^2) + c^2(\tau^2 - \rho^2)$; $E_x = a^2(a^2\rho^2 - \sigma^2b^2 - \tau^2c^2)$
3. *Steiner pencil* $B_x = \rho^2$; $E_x = 0$
4. *Steiner line* $[b^2(\rho^2 - \sigma^2) + c^2(\tau^2 - \rho^2), \text{ etc}]$
5. *Miquel* $M_q \simeq_d \begin{bmatrix} (\sigma^2 - \tau^2)(b^2(\rho^2 - \sigma^2) + c^2(\tau^2 - \rho^2)) \\ (\tau^2 - \rho^2)(c^2(\sigma^2 - \tau^2) + a^2(\rho^2 - \sigma^2)) \\ (\rho^2 - \sigma^2)(a^2(\tau^2 - \rho^2) + b^2(\sigma^2 - \tau^2)) \end{bmatrix}$; $\text{length}(\Gamma_M) \approx 4000$
6. *Centers of circumcircles*: $\text{length} \approx 1500$
7. *Orthocenters*:
 $H_0 \simeq_d ((\sigma - \tau)(b^2 - c^2) + (2\rho + \sigma + \tau)a^2)((\rho^2 + \sigma\tau)a^2 - (\sigma + \tau)(\sigma b^2 + \tau c^2)), \text{ etc}$
8. *vanRees cubic*: $\sum_3 x(-\rho^2x^2 + \sigma^2y^2 + \tau^2z^2)S_a + xyz \sum_3 \rho^2a^2 = 0$

27.14 Inscribed (ordered) quadrangle

Definition 27.14.1. An inscribed ordered quadrangle is an (ordered) list of four points A, B, C, D inscribed in a same circle. By definition, the diagonals of the associated quadrilateral are AB, CD (and EF) where $E = AD \cap BC$ and $F = AC \cap BD$. Triangles are $\mathcal{T}_0 = ACE$, $\mathcal{T}_a = ADF$, $\mathcal{T}_c = BCF$, $\mathcal{T}_e = BDE$.

Proposition 27.14.2. *Properties of the general quadrangle obviously apply. As a result:*

1. $M_1 \doteq (A + B)/2$, $M_3 \doteq (C + D)/2$, $M_5 \doteq (E + F)/2$ are aligned along the Newton axis

$$\delta \simeq \left[\frac{1}{\alpha} + \frac{1}{\beta} - \frac{1}{\gamma} - \frac{1}{\delta}, \frac{(\alpha + \beta)(\gamma + \delta)(\alpha\beta - \gamma\delta)}{2\alpha\beta\gamma\delta}, -\alpha - \beta + \gamma + \delta \right]$$

2. Triangles \mathcal{T}_j are defining 4 circles \mathcal{C}_j which concur at the Miquel point:

$$M_q \simeq \frac{\alpha\beta - \gamma\delta}{\alpha + \beta - \gamma - \delta} : 1 : \frac{\alpha\beta - \gamma\delta}{\alpha\beta\delta + \alpha\beta\gamma - \delta\alpha\gamma - \gamma\delta\beta}$$

3. Orthocenters $H_0 =_z \frac{\alpha^2\delta + \alpha\beta\delta - \gamma\delta\beta - \gamma^2\beta}{\alpha\delta - \beta\gamma}$ are aligned on the Steiner axis:

$$h \simeq \left[\frac{1}{\gamma} + \frac{1}{\delta} - \frac{1}{\alpha} - \frac{1}{\beta}, \frac{(\alpha\gamma - \beta\delta)(\alpha\delta - \beta\gamma)}{\gamma\alpha\beta\delta}, -\alpha - \beta + \gamma + \delta \right]$$

4. The four centers of the \mathcal{C}_j , the Miquel point M_q and the quadrilateral center O are on the same Miquel circle

$$O_0 \simeq \frac{\alpha\gamma(\delta-\beta)}{\alpha\delta-\beta\gamma}; \mathcal{C}_{Mq} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \alpha\beta\delta + \beta\gamma\alpha - \delta\alpha\gamma - \gamma\delta\beta \\ 0 \\ -\alpha\gamma\delta\beta(\alpha + \beta - \gamma - \delta) \\ (\alpha\delta - \beta\gamma)(\alpha\gamma - \delta\beta) \end{pmatrix}$$

5. The vRK cubic, defined by $(PA, PC) + (PB, PD) = 0$ goes through the 6 vertices, δ^∞ , M_q , Ω_x , Ω_y and can be geogebra-drawn using some of the six $V_a = AM_q \cap B\delta^\infty$. Caveat: V_e, V_f are nothing but vertices F, E .
6. When restricted to vRK, the Clawson-Schmidt involution Ψ is nothing but the isogonal conjugacy wrt any of the four imbedded triangles

Proposition 27.14.3. *When E, F are at finite distance, $M_q \in EF$ characterizes the inscribed $ABCD$ quadrilaterals.*

Proof. Use general formulas where $A, A', B, B', C, C' = E, F, A, B, C, D$. □

Proposition 27.14.4. *The following properties are specific to the inscribed quadrangles:*

1. M_q belongs to diagonal EF
2. Let $Q_j = \delta \cap \mathcal{L}_j$. Then assuming $jk = 0e, ac$ then

$$\left| \frac{(\delta - \gamma)(\alpha - \beta)(\alpha + \beta - \gamma - \delta)}{2(\alpha\delta - \beta\gamma)(\alpha\gamma - \delta\beta)} \right|^2 = \overline{M_e M_a} \cdot \overline{M_e M_c} = \overline{M_e Q_j} \cdot \overline{M_e Q_k}$$

27.15 Bicentric quadrilaterals

Definition 27.15.1. A quadrilateral (Josefsson, 2023) is said **bicentric** when it has an inscribed circle (\mathcal{I}) and a circumscribed circle (O) as well.

Notation 27.15.2. In what follows, (\mathcal{I}) is the unit circle (thus $\mathcal{I} \simeq 0 : 1 : 0$). Sidelines $\mathcal{L}_1 \cdots \mathcal{L}_4$ are the tangents at the contact points $E_1 \cdots E_4$, parametrized by $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \delta$. Everything else is indexed using the Clawson scheme. The vertices are $A_{jk} = \mathcal{L}_j \wedge \mathcal{L}_k$. For example: $A_{12} = \frac{2\alpha\beta}{\alpha + \beta} : 1 : \frac{2}{\alpha + \beta}$.

Fact 27.15.3. *Since cocyclicity of $A_{12}, A_{23}, A_{34}, A_{41}$ is assumed, we have $\alpha\gamma + \beta\delta = 0$. And then*

$$O \simeq \begin{bmatrix} 2\beta\gamma\alpha(\alpha\beta - \alpha\gamma + \beta^2 + \beta\gamma) \\ (\alpha - \beta)(\alpha + \beta)(\beta + \gamma)(\beta - \gamma) \\ 2\beta(\alpha\beta + \alpha\gamma - \beta^2 + \beta\gamma) \end{bmatrix}; \Delta \doteq O\mathcal{I} \simeq {}^t \begin{pmatrix} \alpha\beta + \alpha\gamma - \beta^2 + \beta\gamma \\ 0 \\ -\alpha\gamma(\alpha\beta - \alpha\gamma + \beta^2 + \beta\gamma) \end{pmatrix}$$

The rotation operator is $\text{rotq} : \alpha \mapsto \beta \mapsto \gamma \mapsto -\alpha\gamma/\beta$.

Fact 27.15.4. Diagonals. *The contact diagonals E_1E_3, E_2E_4 are orthogonal at*

$$P \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \alpha\gamma(\alpha\beta - \alpha\gamma + \beta^2 + \beta\gamma) \\ 2\alpha\beta\gamma \\ \alpha\beta + \alpha\gamma - \beta^2 + \beta\gamma \end{bmatrix}; P \in \Delta$$

The main diagonals $A_{12}A_{34}, A_{23}A_{41}$ are also going through P , while the "third diagonal" is common to both quadrilaterals and goes through A_{13} and A_{24} together with $E_5 = E_1E_4 \cap E_2E_3$ and $E_6 = E_1E_2 \cap E_3E_4$.

Fact 27.15.5. Miquel circles. *Trigone \mathcal{T}_1^* is "all lines except \mathcal{L}_1 ". We have: $\text{kir}_1 \doteq (A_{23}, A_{34}, A_{42}) \simeq$*

$$2\beta(\alpha\beta + \alpha\gamma - \beta^2) : -4\alpha\beta^2\gamma : 2\beta\gamma\alpha(\beta^2 + \beta\gamma - \alpha\gamma) : (\alpha - \beta)(\beta + \gamma)(\alpha\gamma - \beta^2)$$

Therefore their common point is $M_q \simeq \frac{2\alpha\beta\gamma}{\alpha\beta + \alpha\gamma - \beta^2 + \beta\gamma} : 1 : \frac{2\beta}{\alpha\beta - \alpha\gamma + \beta^2 + \beta\gamma} \in \Delta$

Fact 27.15.6. AEF circles. These circles are defined by: $\text{cir}_{12} = (E_1, A_{12}, E_2)$. Their centers are $O_{12} \simeq \alpha\beta : \alpha + \beta : 1$.

$$\text{As a result, we have } T \doteq O_{12}O_{34} \wedge O_{23}O_{41} \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \alpha\gamma(\alpha\beta - \alpha\gamma + \beta^2 + \beta\gamma) \\ 4\alpha\beta\gamma \\ \alpha\beta + \alpha\gamma - \beta^2 + \beta\gamma \end{bmatrix} \in \Delta$$

Fact 27.15.7. PEF Lemoines. L_{12} is the Lemoine point of triangle PE_1E_2 . We have:

$$L_{12} = |PE_1|^2 E_2 + |PE_2|^2 E_1 + |E_1E_2|^2 P \simeq \begin{bmatrix} -\alpha\beta(\alpha\beta^2 - 4\alpha\beta\gamma + 3\alpha\gamma^2 - \beta^3 - 4\beta^2\gamma - 3\gamma^2\beta) \\ 8\alpha\gamma\beta^2 \\ 3\alpha\beta^2 + 4\alpha\beta\gamma + \alpha\gamma^2 - 3\beta^3 + 4\beta^2\gamma - \gamma^2\beta \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\text{These four points are on a same circle centered at } \Omega_L \doteq \begin{bmatrix} 3\alpha\gamma(\alpha\beta + \gamma\beta - \alpha\gamma + \beta^2) \\ 8\alpha\beta\gamma \\ 3(\alpha\beta + \gamma\beta + \alpha\gamma - \beta^2) \end{bmatrix} \in \Delta$$

Fact 27.15.8. PAB circles. These circles are defined by $\text{cir}_2 = (P, A_{12}, A_{23})$. Their centers are:

$$O_2 \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \beta^6 + 2\beta^3(\alpha + \gamma)(\beta^2 + \alpha\gamma) + (\alpha^2 + 4\alpha\gamma + \gamma^2)\beta^4 + 5\alpha^2\gamma^2\beta^2 \\ 2\beta^5 + 2\beta^2(\alpha + \gamma)(\beta^2 + \alpha\gamma) + 4\alpha\beta^3\gamma + 2\alpha^2\beta\gamma^2 \\ 5\beta^4 + 2\beta(\alpha + \gamma)(\beta^2 + \alpha\gamma) + (\alpha^2 + 4\alpha\gamma + \gamma^2)\beta^2 + \alpha^2\gamma^2 \end{bmatrix}$$

$$\text{As a result, we have } S \doteq O_1O_3 \wedge O_2O_4 \simeq \begin{bmatrix} \alpha\gamma(\alpha\beta + \alpha\gamma - \beta^2 + \beta\gamma)(\alpha\beta - \alpha\gamma + \beta^2 + \beta\gamma)^2 \\ 4\alpha\gamma\beta(\beta - \gamma)(\beta + \gamma)(\alpha + \beta)(\alpha - \beta) \\ (\alpha\beta + \alpha\gamma - \beta^2 + \beta\gamma)^2(\alpha\beta - \alpha\gamma + \beta^2 + \beta\gamma) \end{bmatrix} \in \Delta$$

Fact 27.15.9. PAB incenters. Let I_2 be the incenter of triangle $A_{12}PA_{23}$. Thus I_2 is one of the points Z verifying:

$$\tan(PA_{12}, PZ) + \tan(PA_{23}, PZ) = 0$$

This amounts to the product of two lines, one of them going through E_2 . Writing Z as $kP + E_2$ and solving

$$\tan(A_{12}P, A_{12}Z) + \tan(A_{12}A_{23}, A_{12}Z) = 0$$

leads to $k^2 = (\beta^4 - (\alpha^2 - 4\alpha\gamma + \gamma^2)\beta^2 + \alpha^2\gamma^2) \div 4\alpha\beta^2\gamma$. This quantity is invariant by rotq . Therefore, the I_j are P -homothetic with the E_j and the center of the (I_j) circle is on Δ . The other value of k leads to the excenters $J_k \in PE_j$.

Fact 27.15.10. Shadows. The shadow A'_{jk} of vertex $A_{jk} \in \Gamma$ is the other intersection between (O) and line $\mathcal{I}A_{jk}$. Then $A'_{12}A'_{34}$ and $A'_{23}A'_{41}$ are orthogonal diameters of (O) . Moreover,

$$W_1 \doteq (A_{12} \wedge A'_{23}) \wedge (A'_{34} \wedge A_{41}) \in \Delta, \text{ etc}$$

Fact 27.15.11. Points G_j . They are the intersections of each line $\mathfrak{L}_j \doteq A_{jk}A'_{lm}$ with the next one. So that:

$$G_2 \simeq 4\alpha\beta\gamma : (\alpha + \beta)(\beta + \gamma) : 4\beta, \text{ etc}$$

The four lines E_jG_j are concurrent at

$$Q \doteq \begin{bmatrix} 4\beta\gamma\alpha(\alpha\beta - \alpha\gamma + \beta^2 + \beta\gamma) \\ \alpha^2\beta^2 - \alpha^2\gamma^2 + 8\alpha\beta^2\gamma - \beta^4 + \beta^2\gamma^2 \\ 4\beta(\alpha\beta + \alpha\gamma - \beta^2 + \beta\gamma) \end{bmatrix} \in \Delta$$

while the G_j are concyclic around $V \doteq 2O - \mathcal{I} \in \Delta$.

Fact 27.15.12. Pencil. Cycles $(P; 0)$, (\mathcal{I}) , (O) and $(M_q; 0)$ belong to the same pencil. None of the other circles.

Fact 27.15.13. vanRees cubic goes through the 6 vertices, and the six $V_{12} = A_{12}M_q \cap A_{34}\delta^\infty$. Caveat: $V_{13} = A_{24}$, $V_{24} = A_{13}$. Moreover the cubic goes through δ^∞ , M_q , Ω_x , Ω_y . And \mathcal{I} is the node of the cubic.

27.16 Rigby points

Proposition 27.16.1. *Given three distinct points U_j on the circumcircle, the following conditions are equivalent:*

1. *The three Simson lines are concurrent in a point K .*
2. *Simson line of U_j is orthogonal with line $U_{j+1}U_{j-1}$*
3. *Two sidelines of $U_1U_2U_3$ have the same orthopole K (and therefore the third too).*

In such a case, the three points U_j are said to form a "Rigby triangle", and K is their Rigby result. When using Lubin-1 representation, the condition is $\tau_1\tau_2\tau_3 = \alpha\beta\gamma$, and $z(K) = \frac{1}{2}(\alpha + \beta + \gamma + \tau_1 + \tau_2 + \tau_3)$.

Proof. All three properties lead to the same condition, and the same value of $z(K)$. \square

Exercise 27.16.2. Prove that K is the midpoint of $[\alpha + \beta + \gamma ; \tau_1 + \tau_2 + \tau_3]$ and conclude (Honsberger, 1995, p. 136).

Remark 27.16.3. In ETC, the third of a Rigby triangle is called the **Simson-Rigby** point of the first two, and noted $U_3 = SR(U_1, U_2)$, while their common result is called the **Rigby-Simson** point and noted $K = RS(U_1, U_2)$.

Corollary 27.16.4. *When using barycentrics, and $U_1 \simeq p : q : r$, $U_2 \simeq u : v : w \in \Gamma$, we have:*

$$SR(P, U) = isog((P \wedge U) \wedge \mathcal{L}_b) \\ = \frac{a^2}{(q+r)u - (v+w)p} : \frac{b^2}{(p+r)v - (u+w)q} : \frac{c^2}{(p+q)w - (u+v)r} \quad (27.13)$$

One can also use the Peter Moses (2004/10) expression :

$$U_3 \simeq \frac{qw - rv}{rwb^2 - qvc^2} : \frac{ru - pw}{c^2up - a^2wr} : \frac{pv - uq}{a^2qv - b^2pu}$$

Example 27.16.5. Centers X(2677) to X(2770) are examples of SR and RS points. In the following table, the first three of a quadruple is a (sorted) triangle $U_1U_2U_3$ and its Rigby point.

74	98	691	?	99	1380	1380	?	102	104	2222	?
74	99	842	?	99	2378	2379	?	103	104	1308	?
74	110	477	3258	100	101	1308	?	104	840	1292	?
74	1113	1114	125	100	104	953	3259	104	1381	1382	11
74	1294	1304	?	100	105	840	?	107	110	1304	?
98	110	842	2682	100	109	2222	?	110	110	476	1553
98	843	1296	?	100	110	1290	?	110	112	935	1554
98	1379	1380	115	100	1381	1381	?	110	827	1287	?
99	110	691	?	100	1382	1382	?	110	930	1291	?
99	111	843	?	101	109	929	1521	110	1113	1113	?
99	1379	1379	?	102	103	929	?	110	1114	1114	?

Proposition 27.16.6. Third point. *For each point U on the circumcircle, it exists exactly one other point U_2 such that $SR(U, U_3) = U$. This point is the isogonal conjugate of the orthopoint of line $U, X(3)$, belongs to line UU^* and is given by :*

$$\begin{aligned} \text{third}(U) &= \frac{a^2}{u^2(bw + cv)(bw - cv)} : \frac{b^2}{v^2(cu + aw)(cu - aw)} : \frac{c^2}{w^2(av + bu)(av - bu)} \\ &= \frac{a^2}{(b^2 - c^2)u + (v - w)a^2} : \frac{b^2}{(c^2 - a^2)v + (w - u)b^2} : \frac{c^2}{(a^2 - b^2)w + (u - v)c^2} \end{aligned}$$

Proof. The limit of line U_1U_2 is orthogonal to line $U, X(3)$. Everything else follows. Remark: relation $SR(U, \text{third}(U)) = U$ is not granted for a random point U in the triangle plane. But this relation obviously holds when restricting U to the circumcircle. \square

Proposition 27.16.7. *Simson-Moses point.* If points U_1, U_2 are on the circumcircle then, using isoconjugacy wrt pole $P = X_6$ (isogonal conjugacy), the intersection of lines $U_1(U_2)_P^*$ and $U_2(U_1)_P^*$ is point $SR(U_1, U_2)$. When another isoconjugacy is used, the intersection remains on the circumcircle. Its barycentrics are :

$$S_P^*(U_1, U_2) = \frac{-w_1v_2 + v_1w_2}{qw_1w_2 - rv_1v_2} : \frac{-w_1u_2 + u_1w_2}{pw_1w_2 - ru_1u_2} : \frac{-v_1u_2 + u_1v_2}{pv_1v_2 - qu_1u_2}$$

Proof. The barycentrics are straightforward, while parametrization (7.17) leads to the other properties. \square

Definition 27.16.8. In ETC, the Simson-Moses point is computed using $P = X_2$ (isotomic conjugacy) in $S_P^*(U_1, U_2)$, and noted $SM(U_1, U_2)$. Centers X(2855) to X(2868) are examples of Simson-Moses points.

Chapter 28

Morley: LyX macros, to be moved
atop

Chapter 29

Curves connecting the Morley centers

29.1 Introduction

29.1.1 The Morley theorem

In its simplest version, the Morley theorem can be described as in (Coxeter, 1961, p. 24): given a triangle ABC , we use a protractor to divide each angle in three equal parts. Then the intersections of the adjacent angle trisectors form an equilateral triangle (Figure 29.1a).

But a trisector is only defined up to a 120° rotation, and a line like Ab (Figure 29.1b) is yet another trisector... and triangle abc is equilateral again. Such a triangle is perspective with the reference triangle (i.e. lines Aa , Bb , Cc are concurring to the so-called perspector of first kind P Figure 29.1b), and is also in perspective with the excentral triangle, defining the so-called perspector of second kind Q .

In this context, it is interesting to obtain an exhaustive list of all the objects that shares a given set of properties. Concerning the Morley triangles, one can find many statements in the literature, that involves one, three (Kimberling, 1998-2024), five (Wikipedia: Gene Ward Smith, 2004), eighteen (Connes, 1998) and even extending them to 27 –Taylor and Marr (1913) or, differently, Viricel and Bouteloup (1993).

This variety of opinions was created by Frank Morley himself. The property he discovered circa 1899 was, in his opinion, a "simple" byproduct of more deeper geometrical results (Tecosky-Feldman, 1996). So that Morley waited a long period before publishing a separate, formal statement of his theorem : 1924 in a Japanese journal, 1929 in the US. Nevertheless, the topic became quickly a broad research topic. In 1978, Oakley and Baker published a list of 150 references on the subject. As a result of this large activity, quite each author on the topic has coined his own version of the theorem !

In order not to depart from this well-established tradition, let us state "our own version" of the Morley theorem.

Theorem 0 (Former results, Morley). *Given a reference triangle ABC , it exists exactly 18 triangles \mathcal{T} that verify*

1. each vertex of \mathcal{T} is the intersection of two trisectors of triangle ABC ;
2. triangle \mathcal{T} is equilateral;
3. triangle \mathcal{T} is perspective with ABC and also with the in-excentral triangles.

29.1.2 Aim of this chapter

Our aim is to investigate the Morley configuration in the context of the complex projective geometry, with a special focus towards curves that contains various classes of points. We will collect and connect some already known results, but also present and prove the following new results :

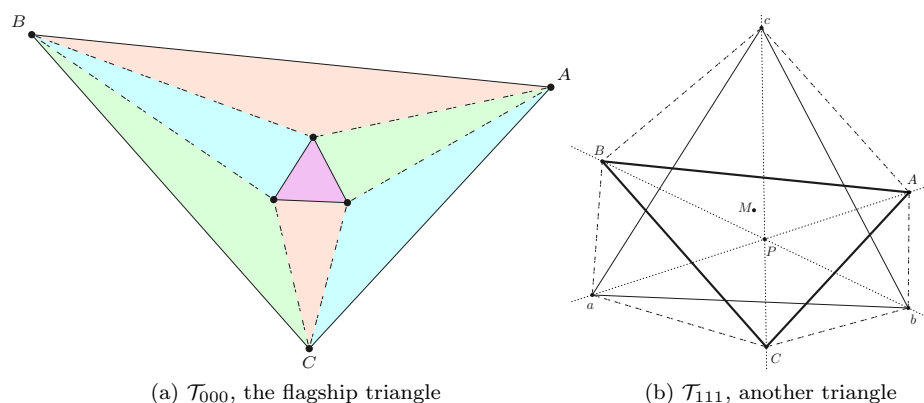


Figure 29.1: How many are the Morley triangles ?

Theorem 1 (New result). *It exists a circular quintic that contains the 18 Morley centers and the 3 Morley directions of axes (see Figure 29.7). This quintic \mathfrak{L}_M contains also the points inventoried as $X(549)$ and $X(3534)$ in the Kimberling (1998-2024). When the vertices belong to the unit circle, the equation of \mathfrak{L}_M only depends from the symmetric functions of z_A , etc.*

Theorem 2 (New result). *It exists a circular quintic that contains the 27 secondary perspectors of the Morley configuration. This quintic \mathfrak{L}_Q contains also the vertices ABC , the inexcetors, the centroid of $I_a I_b I_c$ and the Bevan points. When $z_A = \alpha^2$, etc belong to the unit circle, the equation of \mathfrak{L}_Q only depends from the symmetric functions of α, β, γ .*

Theorem 3 (New result). *Suppose that the isocubic pivoting around point U contains an equilateral triangle centered at U . Then: (1) the triangle is homothetic to the Morley triangles; (2) the locus of U is an 8th degree algebraic curve \mathfrak{L}_U whose equation depends only from the symmetric functions of z_A , etc. The curve contains 39 identified points, the Morley centers among them.*

29.1.3 Organization of this chapter

The starting point of this chapter is Douillet (2010), that was written to explain why Morley centers must be "skew" in some manner, since they are 18 and not 9. In order to allow a more systematic use of computing tools, it has been required to develop a precise and formal frame.

In Section 29.2, we describe the theoretical tools we are using: the Lubin parameterizations and the complex projective geometry. They will be presented in a way that facilitates their utilization inside a formal computing tool like SAGE. It should be noticed that writing $z_A = \alpha^2$, etc is of standard practice when dealing with the inexcetors. Writing $z_A = \alpha^3$, etc was the choice of Lubin (1955) in his founding paper about the Morley configuration.

Using $z_A = \alpha^6$, etc. in order to cover both the 18 Morley centers and the 4 inexcetors appears to be new.

In Section 29.3, we describe the basic objects of the Morley configuration: trisectors, intersections and centers. The Taylor and Marr (1913) indices are presented. They are a triple $\mathbf{k} = k_a k_b k_c$ of integers modulo 3. It will be seen that $\sum \mathbf{k} \doteq (k_a + k_b + k_c \bmod 3)$ determines three families. $\sum \mathbf{k} \equiv 0$ characterize the nine direct Morley triangles and $\sum \mathbf{k} \equiv 2$ the nine retrograde ones. The *strange* case $\sum \mathbf{k} \equiv 1$ will be studied either (these triangles are no more equilateral).

In Section 29.4 we will present the perspectors of these triangles with the reference triangle (first kind, $P_{\mathbf{k}}$) and the in-excentral triangles (second kind, $Q_{\mathbf{k}}$). Results about the algebraic curve that contains the $P_{\mathbf{k}}$ are recalled.

In Section 29.5 we prove our Theorem 1 about the circular curve that contains the 18 Morley centers, and our Theorem 2 about the 27 perspectors Q .

The next Section 29.6 examines two problematics. Firstly, we recall some properties of the pivotal isocubics, and then investigate the intersections of two Morley cubics (having a Morley center as pivot). Secondly, we examine the equilateral triangles inscribed in such cubics and prove our Theorem 3.

At the end of the chapter, we examine what remains of all these properties when the base triangle degenerates into an equilateral one.

The chapter ends by a summary section. The bibliography is integrated into the bibliography of the whole book.

29.2 Some methods

Some of the definitions and properties given here have been stated in detail in previous chapters, but they are stated again here to facilitate an independent access to this chapter.

29.2.1 The complex projective triangle plane

An efficient way to compute the various geometrical objects we are dealing with is to describe the points M by a projective column

$$M \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{P}_{\mathbb{C}}(\mathbb{C}^3)$$

equivalently written inline using the "colon notation" : $M \simeq \mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}$. In the simplest situations, we have either :

- $\mathbf{T} = 1$ and $\mathbf{Z} = x + iy$, $\overline{\mathbf{Z}} = x - iy$ (x, y real). In this case, M is an ordinary point, $z \doteq \mathbf{Z}/\mathbf{T}$ is the ordinary complex number describing M when the plane is seen from above and $\zeta \doteq \overline{\mathbf{Z}}/\mathbf{T}$ is the ordinary complex number describing M when the plane is seen from below.
- $\mathbf{T} = 0$ and $\mathbf{Z} = x + iy$, $\overline{\mathbf{Z}} = x - iy$ (x, y real). In this case, M is at infinity and represents the direction of a line, while the complex number $\omega^2 = \mathbf{Z}/\overline{\mathbf{Z}}$ belongs to the unit circle. The fact that ω is only known by its square is a remainder of the fact angles between straight lines are characterized by their tangent and are measured up to $\pi\mathbb{Z}$ and not up to $2\pi\mathbb{Z}$.

29.2.2 Unavoidable constants and base field

Using complex numbers in plane geometry requires a number i to describe how a quarter turn appears when seen from above the plane. Dividing the angles in three introduces a number ϕ such that $1 + \phi + \phi^2 = 0$ and therefore introducing $\omega_{12} = \phi/i$ is unavoidable. Perceiving ω_{12} as the number usually noted $\exp(2i\pi/12)$ is a facility, but is not required, as soon as we use $i = \omega_{12}^3$, $\phi = \omega_{12}^4$ and $\omega_{12}^4 - \omega_{12}^2 + 1 = 0$.

Beside these unavoidable constants, some parameters α, β, γ are required to describe the base triangle ABC . When explaining the rest of the Morley configuration to a formal computing tool like [SAGE](#), we define $\mathbb{K} \doteq \mathbb{Q}(\omega_{12})(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$ and use the following definitions:

Definition 29.2.1. A **point** P is a column $z : t : \zeta$ that belongs to \mathbb{K}^3 and is dealt projectively (when a common factor is detected, the expression is simplified), while a **n-curve** \mathcal{C} is an homogenous polynomial of degree n , i.e. $\mathcal{C} \in \mathbb{K}_n[\mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{T}, \overline{\mathbf{Z}}]$. And, as usual $P \in \mathcal{C}$ means: substitute $\mathbf{Z} \rightarrow z$, etc in \mathcal{C} , then simplify and obtain 0.

Definition 29.2.2. A **line** is defined as a first degree polynomial. The line that goes through $z_1 : t_1 : \zeta_1$ and $z_2 : t_2 : \zeta_2$ is given by

$$\det \begin{vmatrix} z_1 & z_2 & \mathbf{Z} \\ t_1 & t_2 & \mathbf{T} \\ \zeta_1 & \zeta_2 & \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \end{vmatrix} \quad (29.1)$$

and the row of its coefficients can be computed using the \wedge operator (the so-called wedge of the columns).

Definition 29.2.3. In the same vein, cocyclicity is described by :

$$\det_{j=1}^4 ([z_j \overline{z_j}, z_j, \overline{z_j}, 1]) = 0 \quad (29.2)$$

29.2.3 Morley method to avoid conjugacy

But the full power of complex geometry is obtained by forgetting any notion of conjugacy. Indeed, this transformation is not a rational operation, while everything goes better when remaining within a fractional field.

The Morley solution to this dilemma is to restrain all of the parameters to the real line, where $\bar{z} = z$, or to the unit circle, where $\bar{z} = 1/z$. And now, we have to consider \bar{Z} as another independent variable, called "big zeta" and having the same status as the variable Z , called "big Z".

This leads to a larger class of points, the former being only "the *visible* points". Among the useful "non-visible" objects are the umbilics of the plane, defined as :

$$\Omega_x \simeq 1 : 0 : 0, \Omega_y \simeq 0 : 0 : 1$$

They are also called the circular points at infinity since... they are at infinity ($\mathbf{T} = 0$) and are used to characterize the circles as the conics that goes through both Ω_x and Ω_y .

29.2.4 The Lubin parameterization

The method proposed by [Lubin](#) in his founding paper (1955) uses rational fractions $\mathbb{C}(\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$ to describe geometric objects. To obtain the representation of a barycentric point $P \stackrel{\text{bar}}{\simeq} u : v : w$, we need to transcribe its barycentrics u, v, w that are functions of sidelengths a, b, c and angles A, B, C into *rational* functions of the algebraic basis α, β, γ . In the simplest case where these barycentrics only depends on a^2, b^2, c^2 , the choice $z_A = \alpha$, etc is clearly sufficient. For example, this happens with the gravity center, or the orthocenter.

For more complicated situations, a more powerful choice must be done, leading to the Lubin parameterizations :

$$z_A = \alpha^n, z_B = \beta^n, z_C = \gamma^n$$

When dealing with the inexceters, n must be even. The choice $n = 2$ is of common practice (and is equivalent with the Poncelet parameterization, using the incircle as unit circle).

When dividing angles in three, n must be a multiple of 3. Indeed, this was the choice of [Lubin](#) in his founding paper (1955). In order to study together the both sort of objects, the choice $n = 6$ is unavoidable. Since the literature uses mostly $n = 2$ and $n = 3$, some confusions can occur when comparing the provided formulas. Surely, a careful reader could recognize which is which by taking into account the total degree of homogeneity. But a better practice is to use symbols $\stackrel{\simeq}{L1}, \stackrel{\simeq}{L2}, \stackrel{\simeq}{L3}$ and $\stackrel{\simeq}{L6}$ to emphasize which Lubin representation used in a given projective formula, or $\stackrel{=}{L1}$, etc for exact formulas (e.g. affixes).

In some occasions, it is more efficient to use A, B, C as basis, instead of Ω_x, O, Ω_y , i.e. to use the so called barycentric coordinates. This will be specified using the $\stackrel{\simeq}{\text{bar}}$ notation.

29.2.5 Lubin parameterization using sixth degree formulas

As said in Subsection 29.1.3, the founding paper written [Lubin](#) in 1955 was taking into account the Morley centers, but not the inexceters. In the present context, arcs like \widehat{BC} on the unit circle must be divided into six equal parts instead of three, and the Lubin theorem must be modified accordingly.

Proposition 29.2.4. ([Lubin, 1955](#)) *Given $z_0 = \alpha^6, z_6 = \beta^6, z_{12} = \gamma^6$ on the unit circle, the numbers α, β, γ are determined up to a power of $\psi \doteq \exp(2i\pi/6) = \omega_{12}^2$, and so are the affixes $z_j, 0 \leq j \leq 17$ (see Figure 29.2). There is no choice for α, β, γ that gives symmetric expressions for the 18 affixes. On the contrary, α, β, γ can be chosen in order to provide the values written on Figure 29.2 (where $\phi = \psi^2 = \omega_{12}^4$).*

Proof. Consider indices as given modulo $18 = 6 \times 3$. A ratio like

$$\rho_j \doteq (z_j z_{j+6} z_{j+12}) \div (z_0 z_6 z_{12})$$

varies continuously when vertices A, B, C are displaced along the unit circle without crossing each other. But, obviously, ρ_j is a power of ψ and therefore a constant that can be computed in the equilateral case. This gives $\rho_j = \psi^j$.

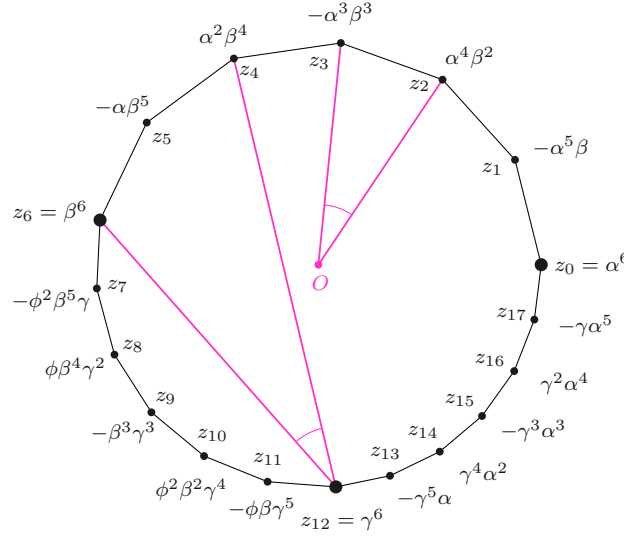


Figure 29.2: The Lubin choices of orientation

(a) Coefficients involved for z_2 and z_{16} are powers of $\phi = \psi^2$. Using transformations $\beta \rightarrow \psi\beta$ and $\gamma \rightarrow \psi\gamma$ allows to enforce coefficients $+1, +1$ (cosmetic choice).

(b) Coefficients involved for z_3, z_9, z_{15} are ± 1 . Transformation $\beta \rightarrow -\beta$ and $\alpha \rightarrow \psi\alpha$ allows respectively to enforce $z_9 = -\beta^3\gamma^3$ and $z_3 = -\alpha^3\beta^3$ (cosmetic choices). Then $\rho_3 = -1$ ensures the value of z_{15} .

(c) And now all coefficients are fixed: z_1, z_4, z_5 are deduced from z_3/z_2 while z_{17}, z_{15}, z_{14} are deduced from z_{16}/z_{15} and all the others from the ρ_j . \square

As a summary, when $A = z_0 = \alpha^6$, $B = z_6 = \beta^6$, $C = z_{12} = \gamma^6$ are given, we can chose α, β, γ in order that mid-arc points z_3, z_9, z_{15} have symmetric expressions $-\alpha^3\beta^3, -\beta^3\gamma^3, -\gamma^3\alpha^3$. This will lead to a symmetric expression for the coordinates of the incenter. On the contrary, no symmetrical expression can be found for the Morley centers.

29.2.6 Symmetric expressions

When possible, we will use the symmetric functions of α, β, γ to obtain shorter and better looking expressions. The usual notations, s_1, s_2, s_3 will have a meaning that depends of the degree of the used representation. In other words, we note:

$$s_1 \underset{Lk}{=} \alpha + \beta + \gamma; \quad s_2 \underset{Lk}{=} \alpha\beta + \beta\gamma + \gamma\alpha; \quad s_3 \underset{Lk}{=} \alpha\beta\gamma$$

On the contrary, the σ_j will be reserved for the symmetric expressions of the first degree, i.e. relative to the vertices themselves :

$$\sigma_1 \doteq z_A + z_B + z_C \underset{L6}{=} \alpha^6 + \beta^6 + \gamma^6; \quad \sigma_2 \underset{L6}{=} \alpha^6\beta^6 + \beta^6\gamma^6 + \gamma^6\alpha^6; \quad \sigma_3 \underset{L6}{=} s_3^6$$

29.3 The basic objects

29.3.1 The trisectors

When dealing with numerous objects, the choice of the naming convention is crucial. The following are taken from [Taylor and Marr \(1913\)](#).

Definition 29.3.1. Let $u : A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \rightarrow A$ be the upwards permutation, and $d = u^{-1}$ the downwards permutation. Trisectors are named D_k^x where $D \in \{A, B, C\}$, $x \in \{u, d\}$ and $k \in \{0, 1, 2\} \in \mathbb{Z}/3\mathbb{Z}$. Value $k = 0$ is used for trisectors obtained by joining points of Figure 29.2, while trisector D_0^u and D_0^d are, respectively "near $u(D)$ " and "near $d(D)$ ". Trisectors D_k^u are k -indexed clockwise, while trisectors D_k^d are k -indexed with the other orientation. When necessary, index k relative to vertex A will be named k_a , etc.

For example, trisector B_0^u is the line E_6E_{14} , while B_0^d is the line E_6E_{16} (see Figure 29.2). Let us compute their equations. We have:

$$E_6 \underset{L6}{\simeq} \begin{pmatrix} \beta^6 \\ 1 \\ \beta^{-6} \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \beta^{12} \\ \beta^6 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}; \quad E_{14} \underset{L6}{\simeq} \begin{pmatrix} \gamma^4 \alpha^2 \\ 1 \\ \gamma^{-4} \alpha^{-2} \end{pmatrix} \simeq \begin{pmatrix} \gamma^8 \alpha^4 \\ \gamma^4 \alpha^2 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

We have chosen to write the variables $\mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{T}, \overline{\mathbf{Z}}$ in that order to facilitate the control the homogeneous degrees appearing in vector and matrices: a difference of six units should remain constant between two adjacent places. And we have :

$$B_q^u \simeq E_6 \wedge E_{14} \underset{L6}{\simeq} [\phi^q \beta^6 - \alpha^2 \gamma^4; -\phi^q \beta^{12} + \alpha^4 \gamma^8 \phi^{2q}; -\alpha^4 \beta^6 \gamma^8 \phi^{2q} + \alpha^2 \beta^{12} \gamma^4]$$

The B_q^d trisectors are obtained in the same way. After simplifications, we have :

$$\begin{aligned} B_q^u &\underset{L6}{\simeq} [1; -\alpha^2 \gamma^4 \phi^{2q} - \beta^6; \alpha^2 \beta^6 \gamma^4 \phi^{2q}] \\ B_q^d &\underset{L6}{\simeq} [1; -\alpha^4 \gamma^2 \phi^q - \beta^6; \alpha^4 \beta^6 \gamma^2 \phi^q] \end{aligned} \quad (29.3)$$

When rotating α, β, γ and indices p, q, r we obtain the other trisectors, with the following restriction. Indices k described in Definition 29.3.1 are independent of the cosmetic choices of Figure 29.2. But these choices have created powers of ϕ in expressions of z_8, z_{10} , and the following correspondence must be used:

$$k_a = p + 1, k_b = q, k_c = r$$

29.3.2 The 27 Morley vertices

By intersecting two trisectors issued from two different vertices of ABC , we obtain $(18 \times 12)/2 = 108$ points. Among them, 27 play a special role and provide remarkable patterns when drawn¹ altogether (Figure 29.3). This depends on the following lemma:

Proposition 29.3.2. *Define the Morley vertices by $A_{jk} \doteq B_j^u \cap C_k^d$, etc: i.e. given a vertex, take an **up** trisector from the following vertex and a **down** trisector from the preceding vertex. Then affixes of all these points are polynomials in $\alpha, \beta, \gamma, \phi$:*

$$A_{qr} \underset{L6}{\simeq} \alpha^2 \beta^4 \phi^r + \alpha^2 \beta^2 \gamma^2 \phi^{q+2r} + \alpha^2 \gamma^4 \phi^{2q} - \beta^4 \gamma^2 \phi^{q+r} - \beta^2 \gamma^4 \phi^{2q+2r}$$

Proof. The computation is straightforward from $A_{qr} \doteq B_q^u \wedge C_r^d$ and (29.3). □

29.3.3 The Lubin proof of the Morley theorem

On Figure 29.3, we can see triangles like $A_{22}A_{10}A_{31}$ that are equilateral but are obtained from only two beams of trisectors. They are called the lighthouse triangles, and are not what we are interested with. Taylor and Marr (1913) have also proposed the following:

Definition 29.3.3. Given the triple of indexes $\mathbf{k} = k_a k_b k_c$, the corresponding Taylor-Marr triangle $\mathcal{T}_{\mathbf{k}}$ is defined as $(A_{k_b k_c}, B_{k_c k_a}, C_{k_a k_b}) = (A_{q;r}, B_{r;p+1}, C_{p+1;q})$.

The Morley theorem can now be stated as:

Theorem 29.3.4. (Morley) *When $\sum \mathbf{k} \doteq k_a + k_b + k_c \equiv 0 \pmod{3}$, triangle $\mathcal{T}_{\mathbf{k}}$ is equilateral direct. When $\sum \mathbf{k} \equiv 2$, triangle $\mathcal{T}_{\mathbf{k}}$ is equilateral retrograde. When $\sum \mathbf{k} \equiv 1$, the triangle is not equilateral.*

¹All our figures are drawn using :

$$\alpha = -1, \beta = (15 + 8i)/17, \gamma = (63 - 16i)/65, \phi = (-1 + i\sqrt{3})/2$$

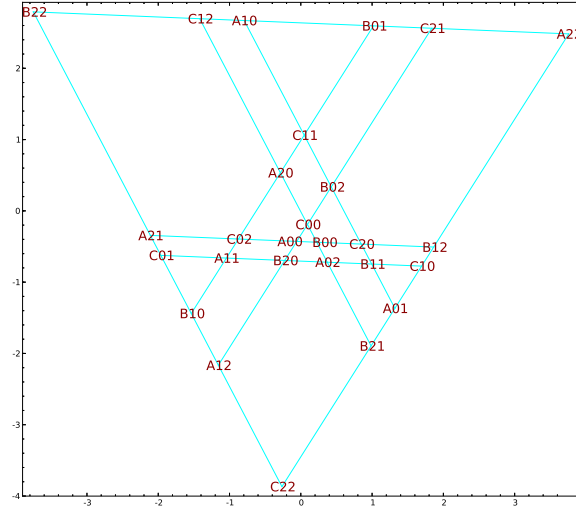


Figure 29.3: Morley equilateral triangles

Proof. (Lubin) Collecting $A_{qr} + \phi B_{r;p+1} + \phi^2 C_{p+1;q}$ one obtains:

$$(\phi^{2S+2} + \phi^{S+1} + 1) \alpha^2 \beta^2 \gamma^2 \phi^{r-p-2} - (\phi^S - 1) \left(\frac{\alpha^4 \beta^2}{\phi^{r+2}} - \frac{\alpha^4 \gamma^2}{\phi^{p+r+2}} - \frac{\alpha^2 \beta^4}{\phi^{p+q+1}} + \frac{\alpha^2 \gamma^4}{\phi^q} + \frac{\beta^4 \gamma^2}{\phi^{p+1}} - \frac{\beta^2 \gamma^4}{\phi^{q+r}} \right)$$

where $S = \sum \mathbf{k} = p + q + r + 1$. The other orientation is treated using $A_{qr} + \phi^2 B_{r;p+1} + \phi C_{p+1;q}$ \square

Remark 29.3.5. When working on triangles $M_{\mathbf{k}}$ where $\mathbf{k} = k_a k_b k_c$ one can adopt two different strategies. Here, we have chosen to use formulas parametrized by the k_j . One other strategy would have been to treat only the indices $\mathbf{k} = 000$ (Morley) and $\mathbf{k} = 100$ (strange) and then propagate the results using the action of some group acting transitively on the corresponding orbit :

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \begin{array}{c} \rightarrow r \\ \downarrow 000 \ 120 \ 102 \\ m \ 222 \ 012 \ 021 \\ 111 \ 201 \ 210 \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \rightarrow r \\ \downarrow 200 \ 110 \ 101 \\ m \ 122 \ 002 \ 020 \\ 011 \ 221 \ 212 \end{array} & \begin{array}{c} \rightarrow f \\ \downarrow 100 \ 010 \ 001 \\ m \ 022 \ 202 \ 220 \\ 211 \ 121 \ 112 \end{array} \end{array}$$

This other strategy is described in Section 30.4

Proposition 29.3.6. *The Morley center $M_{\mathbf{k}}$, defined as the center of the corresponding Morley triangle $\mathcal{T}_{\mathbf{k}}$, is described by :*

$$M_{\mathbf{k}} \stackrel{L6}{=} \frac{1}{3} \sum_3 ((\phi^r - \phi^{-p-q}) \alpha^2 \beta^4 - (\phi^{p+q} - \phi^{-r}) \alpha^4 \beta^2) \text{ assuming } \sum \mathbf{k} \not\equiv 1 \quad (29.4)$$

The centers of the strange triangles collapse by three and are described by the strange formula :

$$\text{center}(\mathcal{T}_{\mathbf{k}}) \stackrel{L6}{=} \frac{1}{3} \left(\sum_3 \phi^{p-q} \right) \alpha^2 \beta^2 \gamma^2 = \phi^{k_b - k_c} \alpha^2 \beta^2 \gamma^2 \text{ assuming } \sum \mathbf{k} \equiv 1$$

Proof. In the general case, writing $(A_{qr} + \phi B_{r;p+1} + \phi^2 C_{p+1;q}) / 3$ gives the sum of these two terms. And it ever happens that one of them vanishes, depending of the value of $\sum \mathbf{k}$. When $p + q + r \equiv 0$, we have $p - q \equiv q - r$, etc. Therefore, a less strange naming for these points is :

$$G_a \stackrel{L6}{=} \alpha^2 \beta^2 \gamma^2 ; G_b \stackrel{L6}{=} \phi G_a ; G_c \stackrel{L6}{=} \phi^2 G_a \quad (29.5) \quad \square$$

29.3.4 The barycentric formula

When considering the 18 genuine Morley centers, [Taylor and Marr](#) have obtained the following barycentric formula :

$$M_{\mathbf{k}} \underset{\text{bar}}{\simeq} \sin A \left(\cos \frac{A + 2k_a\pi}{3} + 2 \cos \frac{B + 2k_b\pi}{3} \cos \frac{C + 2k_c\pi}{3} \right) : \text{etc} : \text{etc}$$

When trying to express the involved trigonometric quantities in function of α, β, γ , the inscribed angle theorem leads to :

$$\exp i \frac{A + 2k_a}{3} \underset{L6}{=} -\frac{\gamma}{\beta} \phi^p, \text{ etc} \quad (29.6)$$

masking the lack of symmetry by using $p \equiv k_a - 1, q = k_b, r = k_c$. After some substitutions, we obtain the "symmetrical looking" formula :

$$M_{\mathbf{k}} \underset{\text{bar}}{\simeq} \underset{L6}{L6} \left(\frac{\beta^3}{\gamma^3} - \frac{\gamma^3}{\beta^3} \right) \left(\left(\frac{\alpha\phi^q}{\gamma} + \frac{\gamma}{\alpha\phi^q} \right) \left(\frac{\beta\phi^r}{\alpha} + \frac{\alpha}{\beta\phi^r} \right) - \frac{\gamma\phi^p}{\beta} - \frac{\beta}{\gamma\phi^p} \right) : \text{etc} : \text{etc} \quad (29.7)$$

This formula shows what is left in the background when points like $M_{000}, M_{111}, M_{222}$ are described as "the first, second and third Morley centers", and inventoried as X(356), X(3277) and X(3276) in the [Kimberling \(1998-2024\)](#): an expression like $\cos(A/3)$ is not rational in the coordinates of the vertices (nor in the sidelengths of triangle ABC). Therefore a given choice of an algebraical branch cannot be preserved when points are dragged-and-dropped by a dynamical drawing tool, or when a rational parameterization is used.

One can check the equivalence with (29.4) except from the strange case. In the later case, we obtain three points at infinity verifying :

$$\omega^2(M_{\mathbf{k}}) = \alpha^4 \beta^4 \gamma^4 \phi^{p-q} \quad (29.8)$$

Definition 29.3.7. In order to restrict the notation $M_{\mathbf{k}}$ to the sole and only 18 Morley centers, we define $\delta_a, \delta_b, \delta_c$ (where δ stays for direction) as the points at infinity such that :

$$\omega^2(\delta_a) \underset{L6}{=} +\alpha^4 \beta^4 \gamma^4 ; \omega^2(\delta_b) \underset{L6}{=} \phi^2 \omega(\delta_a) ; \omega^2(\delta_c) \underset{L6}{=} \phi^4 \omega(\delta_a)$$

Remark 29.3.8. One can see that $\text{isogon} G_a \underset{L6}{\simeq} -\alpha^4 \beta^4 \gamma^4 : 0 : 1$ is the direction of the sideline $B_{00}C_{00}$. Therefore, $\text{isogon}(-G_a) = \delta_a$ and the δ_x are the directions of the axes common to the Morley triangles.

Contrary to the incenter X(1), there is no cosmetic arrangements that can gives a symmetrical formula for z_{000} . Let us insist once again on this negative result. When dealing with the inexceters, we can use the Lemoine transforms that replace α by $-\alpha$, etc. If we start from a symmetrical formula, this will generate four distinct points (4, not 8 due to projective properties) and four is exactly the required number of the inexceters. Concerning the Morley centers, we can replace α by $\alpha\phi$ or $\alpha\phi^2$, etc. Starting from a symmetrical formula, this will generate nine points (9, not 27, due to projective properties) and this is what happens with the strange objects. In order to generate 18 points, the initial formula must be skew.

29.4 Curves connecting the Taylor-Marr perspectors

In this section, we will see that all the 27 [Taylor-Marr](#) triangles behave the same way when perspectivity is involved. In other worlds, Morley and *strange* triangles have not to be separated according to $\sum \mathbf{k}$ when only alignments are taken into account. This comes from the linearity of the alignments: the powers of ϕ are linearly independent numbers (over the rationals) and the $1 + \phi + \phi^2 = 0$ property is not involved here.

On the contrary, we will see in Subsection 29.5.2 that the family of the Morley centers behaves another way and cannot be enlarged by encompassing the centers G_x of the strange triangles. The enlargement will come from the directions δ_x .

29.4.1 The primary perspectors

Any Taylor-Marr triangle \mathcal{T}_k is perspective with the reference triangle ABC . The corresponding perspector is noted P_k . Three of them are inventoried in the [Kimberling](#) database, where $P_{000} = X(357)$, $P_{111} = X(1134)$ and $P_{222} = X(1136)$. Their barycentrics are given by :

$$P_k \underset{\text{bar}}{\simeq}^{L6} \frac{(\gamma^6 - \beta^6)}{\beta^2 \gamma^4 \phi^p + \beta^4 \gamma^2 \phi^{-p}} : \text{etc} : \text{etc} \quad (29.9)$$

Figure 29.4 shows the numerous alignments with the vertices ABC . For example, on each line issued from A , there are three P_k : an even (circle), an odd (box) and a strange (cross) one. It can be seen that all these 27 points belong to a same quintic \mathfrak{L}_P . This is not a new result, this circular quintic is described by its barycentric equation :

$$\mathfrak{L}_P : (b^2 r^2 - c^2 q^2) p^3 S_a + (c^2 p^2 - a^2 r^2) S_b q^3 + (a^2 q^2 - b^2 p^2) r^3 S_c = 0$$

as Q003 in ([Gibert, 2004-2024](#)), where 95 points have been identified.

From Figure 29.4, we can see that vertices A, B, C are singular points, so that all alignments described above contains in fact five points of the quintic. The complex equation of \mathfrak{L}_P is given Figure 29.4, where $\Im(E) = (E - \text{conj}(E))/2$ is the "imaginary part" operator, producing an object F such that $F/\text{conj}(F) = -1$.

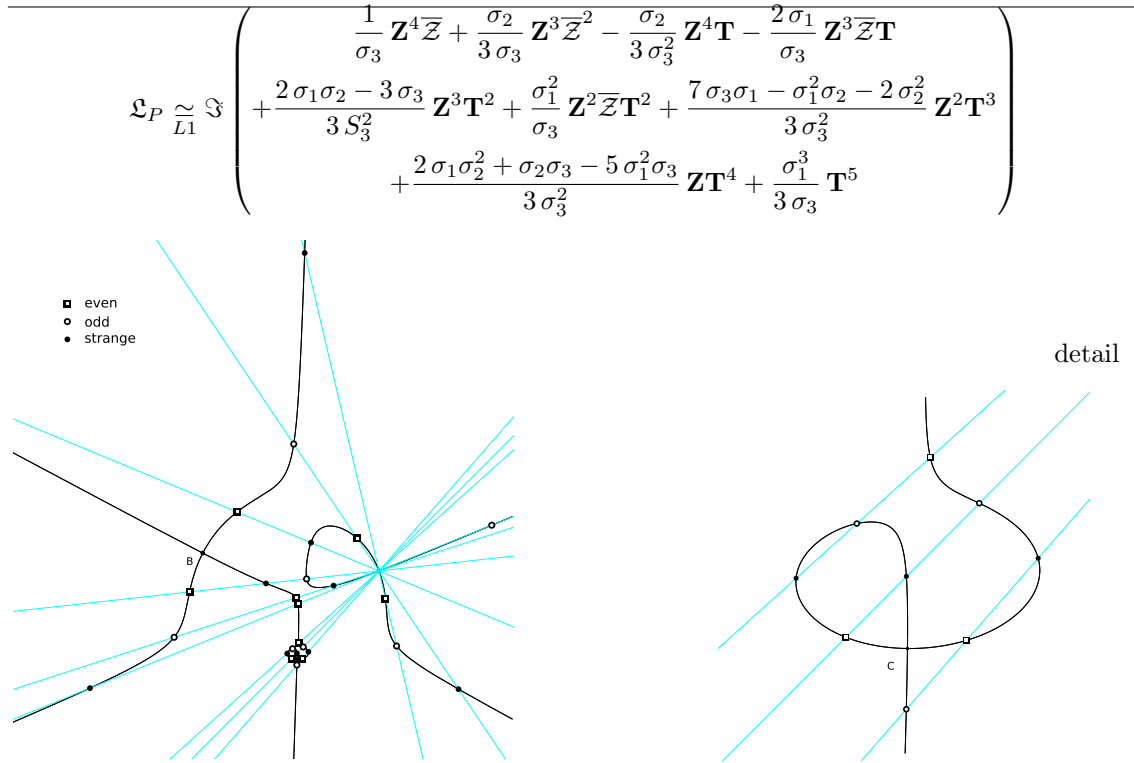


Figure 29.4: Family of X(357) : the 27 P_k belong to a same quintic

29.4.2 The adjunct primary perspectors

Due to obvious angle properties, the 108 Morley vertices are isogonal conjugates by pairs. For each Taylor-Marr triangle \mathcal{T}_k , it exist an adjunct triangle \mathcal{T}_k^* , isogonal conjugate of \mathcal{T}_k , whose vertices are "du" intersections. This triangle \mathcal{T}_k^* is, in turn, perspective with ABC , and the perspector is nothing but the conjugate P_k^* of the initial perspector P_k (this is a general property of perspectivities wrt the reference triangle). For example $P_{000}^* = X(358)$ is the perspector of \mathcal{T}_{000}^* with ABC . In the same vein, we have $P_{111}^* = X(1135)$ and $P_{222}^* = X(1137)$.

Since $BC^2 = (\beta^6 - \gamma^6)(\beta^{-6} - \gamma^{-6})$, we have obviously the barycentrics :

$$P_{\mathbf{k}}^* \underset{\text{bar}}{\simeq}^{L6} \left(\frac{\gamma^6 - \beta^6}{\beta^4 \gamma^4} \right) (\gamma^2 \phi^p + \beta^2 \phi^{-p}) : \text{etc} : \text{etc} \quad (29.10)$$

As it can be seen by computing the corresponding determinant, the points $M_{\mathbf{k}}$, $P_{\mathbf{k}}$ and $P_{\mathbf{k}}^*$ with the same index are aligned (the centroid of the adjunct triangle is not on that line).

The 27 $P_{\mathbf{k}}^*$ are aligned by triples with each vertex A, B, C . Moreover, they all belong to the isogonal conjugate of \mathfrak{L}_P , the quartic \mathfrak{L}_P^* whose barycentric equation is :

$$\mathfrak{L}_P^* : (b^2 r^2 - c^2 q^2) S_a a^4 q r - (a^2 r^2 - c^2 p^2) S_b b^4 p r + (a^2 q^2 - b^2 p^2) S_c c^4 p q = 0$$

This quartic is described as Q002 in (Gibert, 2004-2024). Its complex equation is :

$$\Im \left(\begin{aligned} & \frac{\sigma_1}{2\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^3 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} - \frac{\sigma_2}{6} \mathbf{Z} \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^3 - \frac{1}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^3 \mathbf{T} - \frac{\sigma_2}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{T} \\ & + \frac{\sigma_1}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^2 \mathbf{T}^2 + \frac{\sigma_2 - \sigma_1^2}{3\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z} \mathbf{T}^3 \end{aligned} \right) = 0$$

while its rectangular asymptotes are crossing at $3(\sigma_2^2 - \sigma_1 \sigma_3) \div 2\sigma_1 \sigma_2 = X(3292)$.

Let us recall that the degree of the isogonal conjugate of a curve is twice the degree of the original curve. In the case of an isogonal cubic (like the $p\mathcal{K}_{\mathbf{k}}^{\mathcal{M}}$ that will be presented later), the three sidelines appear in factor and the degree reduces to $6 - 3 = 3$ (curve $p\mathcal{K}_{\mathbf{k}}^{\mathcal{M}}$ is invariant). Concerning \mathfrak{L}_P , the vertices count twice: when taking the isogonal conjugate of this curve, the sidelines appear twice in factor, and the degree reduces to $2 \times 5 - 2 \times 3 = 4$. This is the reason why the curve \mathfrak{L}_P^* is a quartic and not a curve of higher degree.

29.4.3 The secondary perspectors and their adjuncts

Any Morley triangle $\mathcal{T}_{\mathbf{k}}$ is also perspective with the excenter triangle $I_a I_b I_c$. The corresponding perspector is noted $Q_{\mathbf{k}}$. Point Q_{000} is inventoried in the Kimberling database as X(1507). For the general case, we have the following barycentrics :

$$Q_{\mathbf{k}} \underset{\text{bar}}{\simeq}^{L6} \left(\frac{\gamma^3}{\beta^3} - \frac{\beta^3}{\gamma^3} \right) \left(1 + \frac{\phi^p \gamma}{\beta} + \frac{\beta}{\phi^p \gamma} - \frac{\phi^q \alpha}{\gamma} - \frac{\gamma}{\phi^q \alpha} - \frac{\phi^r \beta}{\alpha} - \frac{\alpha}{\phi^r \beta} \right) : \text{etc} : \text{etc} \quad (29.11)$$

Figure 29.5 shows the numerous alignments with the excenters $I_a I_b I_c$. For example, on each line issued from I_a , there are three $Q_{\mathbf{k}}$: an even (circle), an odd (box) and a strange one (cross). It can be seen that all these 27 points belong to a same circular quintic \mathfrak{L}_Q . This is a new result, and will be expanded in Subsection 29.5.4. On this quintic, points I_a, I_b, I_c are singular points, so that all alignments of the former paragraph contains in fact five points of the quintic.

29.4.4 The adjunct secondary perspectors

It happens that any adjunct Morley triangle $\mathcal{T}_{\mathbf{k}}^*$ is also perspective with the excenter triangle $I_a I_b I_c$. The corresponding perspector is noted $R_{\mathbf{k}}$. Point R_{000} is inventoried as X(1508) in Kimberling database. For the general case, we have the following barycentrics :

$$R_{\mathbf{k}} \underset{\text{bar}}{\simeq}^{L6} \left(\frac{\gamma^3}{\beta^3} - \frac{\beta^3}{\gamma^3} \right) \left(1 + \frac{\beta \gamma}{\phi^p \gamma^2 + \beta^2 \phi^{-p}} - \frac{\gamma \alpha}{\phi^q \alpha^2 + \gamma^2 \phi^{-q}} - \frac{\alpha \beta}{\phi^r \beta^2 + \alpha^2 \phi^{-r}} \right) : \text{etc} : \text{etc}$$

These points are aligned by triples (even, odd, fake) with the excenters. Moreover, $I_0, P_{\mathbf{k}}, R_{\mathbf{k}}$ are aligned for each \mathbf{k} . Nevertheless, there is no quintic that contains all the 27 $R_{\mathbf{k}}$, while the circular quintic that contains the 18 Morley perspectors contains no other named centers.

$\mathcal{L}_Q \underset{L^2}{\simeq} \mathcal{Q}_1 + \mathcal{Q}_2$ where :

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{Q}_1 &\underset{L^2}{=} \Im \left(\begin{aligned} &\frac{3}{s_3^2} \mathbf{Z}^4 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} - \frac{s_1}{s_3^3} \mathbf{Z}^4 \mathbf{T} - \frac{12}{s_3^2} \mathbf{Z}^3 \mathbf{T}^2 - \frac{4s_1 s_3 + 6\sigma_2}{s_3^2} \mathbf{Z}^2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{T}^2 \\ &+ \frac{12\sigma_1 s_3 + 2\sigma_2 s_1 + 4s_2 s_3}{s_3^3} \mathbf{Z}^2 \mathbf{T}^3 - \frac{(3\sigma_1 + 4s_2)\sigma_1}{s_3^2} \mathbf{Z} \mathbf{T}^4 + \frac{\sigma_1^2 s_2}{s_3^2} \mathbf{T}^5 \end{aligned} \right) \\ \mathcal{Q}_2 &\underset{L^2}{=} \left(-\frac{s_1}{s_3} \mathbf{Z} + s_2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \right) \left(\mathbf{Z} \bar{\mathbf{Z}} - \frac{s_1}{s_3} \mathbf{Z} \mathbf{T} - s_2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{T} + \left(\frac{s_1 s_2}{s_3} - 4 \right) \mathbf{T}^2 \right)^2 \end{aligned}$$

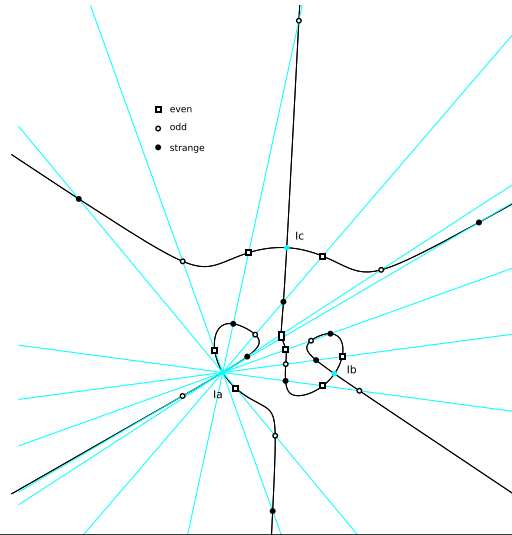


Figure 29.5: Family of X(1507) : the 27 Q_k belong to a same quintic

29.5 Two new orbital curves

29.5.1 How to discover a curve that contains a set of points

Definition 29.5.1. A N -sized set of points is said to be "co- n -curve" if it exists an algebraic n -th degree curve that contains the set, and verifies $(n+1)(n+2) < 2N$.

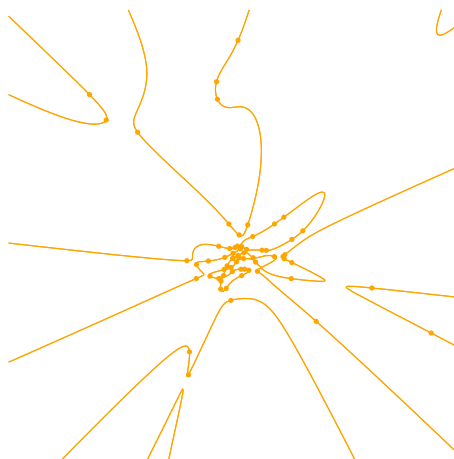


Figure 29.6: A 10th degree that doesn't go through the 72 R perspectors

Without the condition related to the degree, such property would be trivial. On the contrary, discovering (and then proving) that a given set is co- n -curve is rather difficult when the set is large. Numerical investigations can be carried in order to suggest the existence of such a curve (or to

prove the lack of existence). Given an set K and a degree n , we choose a proper subset K' such $(n+1)(n+2)/2 < |K'|$ and we minimize

$$\chi^2 \doteq \frac{1}{|K'|} \sum_{m \in K'} f^2(x_m, y_m) \quad \text{where} \quad f(x, y) = \sum_{j+k \leq n} c_{jk} x^j y^k$$

The quantity χ^2 is a quadratic function of the c_{jk} , and the minimization has to be conducted under a condition of normalization. Condition $\sum c_{jk}^2 = 1$ would be the best theoretical one, but we better guess and check for a non vanishing coefficient, and force it to 1.

These computations are repeated with increasing numerical precision, say $\epsilon = 1/2^{\text{digits}}$. When χ^2 decreases with ϵ , and remains of the same relative order, this is a good omen. It remains to check if $f^2(m) \approx \chi^2$ when m is chosen in $K \setminus K'$.

When, for any single numerical attempt, χ^2 remains quite equal to a non-zero constant as $\epsilon \rightarrow 0$, this prove that the requested algebraic curve does not exists. For example, the 18-sized set $\{R_{\mathbf{k}}, \sum \mathbf{k} \neq 1\}$ is not co-4-curve, while sets $K \cup ABC$ or $K \cup I_a I_b I_c$ are not co-5-curve. . In Figure 29.6, we give the result of an attempt to include $\mathcal{PG}_{72}(R_0)$ in a tenth degree curve. When using the already given values, we obtain a curve that looks nice, but χ^2 remains around $6E-8$ even if when we increase the precision and use $\epsilon = 1E-200$.

29.5.2 The quintic of the Morley centers

As stated in our Theorem 1, the 18 Morley centers belongs to a circular quintic \mathfrak{L}_M . Its equation can be obtained "in brute force" by solving a formal system of 20 equations in 20 unknowns whose coefficients are polynomials in α, β, γ (with degrees up to 15).

$$\mathfrak{L}_M \underset{L_1}{\simeq} \mathfrak{S} \left(\begin{aligned} & \frac{1}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^4 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} + \frac{\sigma_2}{2\sigma_3^2} \mathbf{Z}^4 \mathbf{T} - \frac{\sigma_1 \sigma_2 + 27\sigma_3}{9\sigma_3^2} \mathbf{Z}^3 \mathbf{T}^2 + \frac{\sigma_2}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{T}^2 \\ & + \frac{3\sigma_3 \sigma_1 - 5\sigma_2}{6\sigma_3^2} \mathbf{Z}^2 \mathbf{T}^3 + \frac{8\sigma_3 \sigma_1^2 - 9\sigma_2 \sigma_3 + \sigma_1 \sigma_2^2}{6\sigma_3^2} \mathbf{Z} \mathbf{T}^4 - \frac{2\sigma_1^3}{9\sigma_3} \mathbf{T}^5 \end{aligned} \right)$$

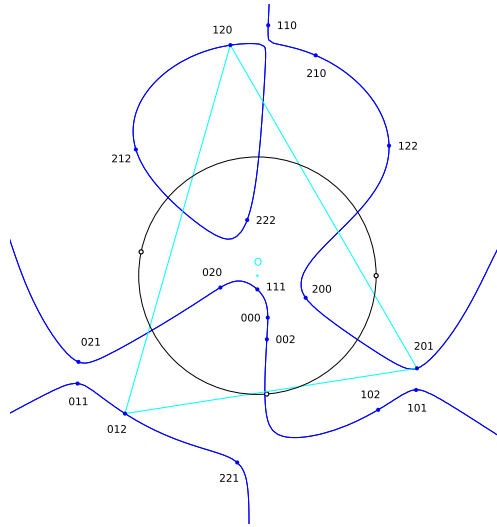


Figure 29.7: The Quintic of the Morley's centers

The computation is not so easy to conduct since intermediate expressions are really huge, but the result is quite simple when expressed in terms of the z_A , etc themselves. One obtains Figure 29.7. The five points at infinity are the umbilics together with the directions of the Morley axes. The circular asymptotes concur at $z = -\sigma_1/2 = X(550)$ while the ordinary ones concur at $z = +\sigma_1/6 = X(549)$. The later is on the curve, the former is not. Moreover point $z = -2\sigma_1/3 = X(3534)$ also belongs to \mathfrak{L}_M .

The barycentric equation of this quintic is antisymmetric (when a, b, c and x, y, z are rotated in the same manner). One obtains Figure 29.8 (top).

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{L}_M \simeq & \sum_3 \frac{b^2 - c^2}{a^2} \left(\begin{aligned} & 56 S^2 S_a x^5 - S_a (8 S_b S_c + 62 S_a (S_b + S_c)) x^3 y z \\ & + a^2 (21 S_b S_c + 102 S_a (S_b + S_c)) x y^2 z^2 \end{aligned} \right) \\ & + \mathfrak{S}_6 \frac{1}{a^2} \left(\begin{aligned} & 34 S_a^2 S_b^2 + 6 S_a^2 S_b S_c - 28 S_a^2 S_c^2 + 48 S_a S_b^3 + 103 S_a S_b^2 S_c \\ & + 47 S_a S_b S_c^2 + 75 S_b^3 S_c + 75 S_b^2 S_c^2 \end{aligned} \right) x^3 y^2 \\ & + \mathfrak{S}_6 (25 S_a^2 S_c^2 - 4 S_a^2 S_b^2 + 21 S_a^2 S_b S_c + 5 S_a S_b^2 S_c + 61 S_a S_b S_c^2 + 36 S_b^2 S_c^2) \frac{x^4 y}{a^2}\end{aligned}$$

where \mathfrak{S}_6 denotes a sum of six terms taking the signatures into account, and \sum_3 denotes an ordinary cyclic sum of three terms. Moreover, S is the area of ABC and $S_a = (b^2 + c^2 - a^2)/2$, etc. are the Conway symbols.

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{L}_Q \simeq & - (a + b + c) x y z \sum_3 a b (a - b) (a + b - c) (2 a b z^2 - 3 c^2 x y) \\ & + \mathfrak{S}_6 b^2 c^3 (a + b - c) (a - b + c) x^4 y \\ & + \mathfrak{S}_6 b c^3 (2 a^3 + a^2 b - a^2 c - 2 a b^2 + 4 a b c - 2 a c^2 - b^3 - b^2 c + b c^2 + c^3) x^3 y^2\end{aligned}$$

Figure 29.8: Barycentric equations of \mathfrak{L}_M and \mathfrak{L}_Q

29.5.3 A lemma about the Bevan centers

The circle through the excenters is called the Bevan circle. Using determinant (29.2), its equation is easy to compute, leading to :

$$B_{circle} \underset{L2}{\simeq} \mathbf{Z}\overline{\mathbf{Z}} - \frac{s_1}{s_3} \mathbf{Z}\mathbf{T} - s_2 \overline{\mathbf{Z}}\mathbf{T} + \left(\frac{s_1 s_2}{s_3} - 4 \right) \mathbf{T}^2 = 0$$

This can be rewritten as $(\mathbf{Z} - s_2) \text{conj}(\mathbf{Z} - s_2) = 4$. Therefore, the center of this circle, known as X(40) in Kimberling, is the reflection of I_0 in O while the radius of the circle is twice those of the circumcircle.

The line $I_0 O$ is called the Bevan axis. It is a diameter of the Bevan circle and its equation is $s_1 \mathbf{Z} - s_2 s_3 \overline{\mathbf{Z}} = 0$. The Bevan points are the intersection of the axis and the circle and listed as X(2448), X(2449). We obtain :

$$z(B_{\pm}) \underset{L2}{=} s_2 \pm 2 \frac{s_3}{s_1} \sqrt{\frac{s_1 s_2}{s_3}} = s_2 \pm 2 \frac{s_3}{s_1} \div \left| \frac{s_3}{s_1} \right|$$

where the radicand is $s_1 \overline{s_1} \geq 0$. Written using the first expression, both points cannot be distinguished in the Lubin(2) representation. When using the second one, we are describing the Bevan points as the center plus or minus the oriented radius, at the cost of leaving the algebraical domain.

29.5.4 The quintic of the secondary perspectors

A numerical study shows that all the 27 secondary perspectors $Q_{\mathbf{k}}$ belongs to a same quintic \mathfrak{L}_Q (see Figure 29.5). This time, it would be foolish to proceed in brute force. The Maple length of $z(Q_{000})$ is 1583, while the Maple length of $z(M_{000})$ was only 197. Moreover, since the incenter

don't play the same role as the excenters, the equation of \mathfrak{L}_Q cannot be expressed as a Lubin(3) expression, and computations have to be done using Lubin(6).

But there is another way of attack. We can obtain a numerical equation of \mathfrak{L}_Q using $a, b, c = 6, 9, 13$ (the standard Kimberling triangle) and then use the [Kimberling](#) inventory to detect which simpler triangle centers belong to \mathfrak{L}_Q . We obtain X(1)=incenter, X(164), X(165), X(2448), X(2449). X(165) is the centroid of $I_a I_b I_c$ and its affix is $-z(1)/3 = s_2/3$, while X(2448) and X(2449) are the Bevan points described in the former section. Point X(164), which is the incenter of $I_a I_b I_c$ must be discarded since its affix does not belongs to Lubin(6).

Let us resume what can be guessed, and count the resulting equations. We have $A, B, C \in \mathfrak{L}_Q$ (3), $I_0 \in \mathfrak{L}_Q$ (1), each excenter is singular (3×3), \mathfrak{L}_Q is circular (2), X(165) is the singular focus and belongs to the curve ($2+1$), the Bevan pair X(2444), X(2445) belongs to \mathfrak{L}_Q (but counts only for 1) : this amounts to 19, exactly one minus the number of independent equations required to determine a quintic.

Therefore we can conduct the computations using $z_A = \alpha^2$ (i.e. the 2nd degree Lubin parameterization), leaving one coefficient undetermined. After what, it remains to change to 6th Lubin and fix the remaining coefficient so that Q_{100} belongs to the curve. It remains to check, by an explicite computation, that Q_{000} belongs also to the curve. But one can check also that curve \mathfrak{L}_Q remains rational over 2nd degree Lubin, and can be rewritten as such. By algebraic symmetry, this prove the result for the 7+17 remaining perspectors, so that 47 points of the curve have been identified.

In the equation given Figure 29.5, quintic Q_1 is circular, and admits X(165), $z \stackrel{L2}{=} s_2/3$, as singular focus. The real points at infinity are the directions of the Morley axes, and the corresponding asymptotes concur at $z \stackrel{L2}{=} -s_2/9$, not on the curve (and not in ETC). All the inexceneters are singular points for this curve. On the other hand, quintic Q_2 is the product of the Bevan line and the Bevan circle (counted twice).

The barycentric equation of this quintic is antisymmetric (when a, b, c and x, y, z are rotated in the same manner). This leads to the new result given Figure 29.8.

29.6 Two properties concerning the Morley cubics

29.6.1 Description of a pivotal cubic

Let us consider a fixed point $U \simeq z : t : \zeta$. The set of all the points $P \simeq \mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}$ that are aligned with U and their isogonal conjugate isogon (P) is a cubic (called the iso-cubic related to the pivot U and noted $p\mathcal{K}_U$). Its equation is easy to obtain from the corresponding determinant, leading to :

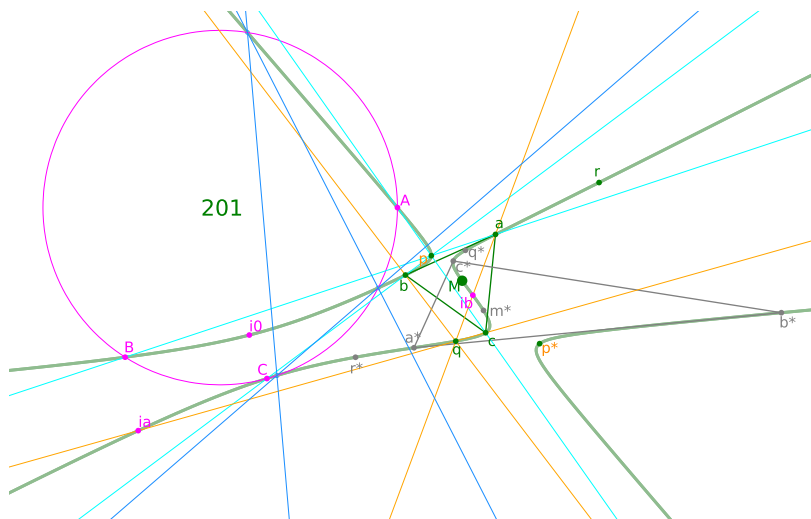
$$p\mathcal{K}_U(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) \stackrel{L1}{\simeq} \Im \left(\zeta \mathbf{Z}^2 \overline{\mathbf{Z}} - \frac{z}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^2 \mathbf{T} + \left(\frac{\sigma_1}{\sigma_3} z - 2\zeta \right) \mathbf{Z} \mathbf{T}^2 + \sigma_1 \zeta \mathbf{T}^3 \right) + t \Im \left(\frac{1}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^3 - \frac{\sigma_1}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^2 \mathbf{T} + \frac{\sigma_2}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z} \mathbf{T}^2 \right) \quad (29.12)$$

When obtained along this curve, the point isogon (A) is together on BC and on AU , so that $BC \cap AU$, etc (the so-called vertices of the U-Cevian triangle) belong to $p\mathcal{K}_U$. From isogon (I_0) = I_0 , points U, I_0 , isogon (I_0) are aligned, and the four inexceneters belong to the cubic. When making $\mathbf{T} = 0$, one sees that the three points at infinity $z_j : 0 : \zeta_j$ ($j=1,2,3$) must verify: $\sigma_3^2 \zeta_1 \zeta_2 \zeta_3 = z_1 z_2 z_3$. Conversely, three such points can be used to characterize a $p\mathcal{K}$.

When U is the circumcenter ($0 : 1 : 0$), only the second term of (29.12) remains. One obtains the $p\mathcal{K}_O$ cubic, inventoried as K003 in [Gibert \(2004-2024\)](#). This cubic has three asymptotes in the directions δ of the Morley axes since the $\omega_j^2 : 0 : 1$ where $\omega_j^2 \stackrel{L6}{=} \phi^j \alpha^4 \beta^4 \gamma^4$ are clearly the roots of the leading part. When U is at infinity, the two others are the umbilics and $p\mathcal{K}$ is circular (the McCay cubics).

General properties of such cubics are well known. For example, $p\mathcal{K}_U$ cuts the circumcenter, apart from A, B, C in three points Γ_n ($n=1,2,3$) such that the U is the orthocenter of triangle $(\Gamma_1, \Gamma_2, \Gamma_3)$ and lines $U\Gamma_n$ are parallel to the asymptotes [Gibert \(2007\)](#). Beside that, when $U \neq V$, the remaining common points of $p\mathcal{K}_U$ and $p\mathcal{K}_V$ are isogonal conjugates and belong to the line UV .

Let us now consider the Morley cubics $p\mathcal{K}_k^M$, obtained by taking the corresponding Morley center M_k as pivot. Many points are known to be long to these cubics. For example:

Figure 29.9: The Morley isocubic KM201 ($j = 03$), viewed as an ordinary isocubic

Proposition 29.6.1. *Each cubic $p\mathcal{K}_{\mathbf{k}}^{\mathcal{M}}$ is circumscribed to the corresponding Morley triangle $\mathcal{T}_{\mathbf{k}}$.*

Proof. One can conduct the 18×3 computations... or check that $A_{00} \in p\mathcal{K}_{000}^{\mathcal{M}}$ and propagate this property to the other objects (more details in [Douillet, 2014b](#)). \square

29.6.2 Intersections between Morley cubics

It can be seen that operator $\mathbf{s} : \alpha \rightarrow \beta; \beta \rightarrow \phi^2\gamma; \gamma \rightarrow \alpha$ (the so called "strange" operator) fixes the points M_{000} and I_0 , and rotates the triples (A, B, C) and (I_a, I_b, I_c) . Therefore, the cubic $p\mathcal{K}_{000}^{\mathcal{M}}$ is globally invariant by \mathbf{s} .

Let us now consider the intersections $W_{\mathbf{k}\kappa}$ between two Morley cubics. From the degree of both curves, nine points are required. Points $A, B, C, I_0, I_a, I_b, I_c$ are obvious, and it remains two other points. They are isogonal conjugates, and therefore belong to the line $M_{\mathbf{k}}M_{\kappa}$.

\mathbf{k}	#	point	discriminant
222,111	18	P_{000}^*, P_{111}^*	square
120,102	18		Δ
012,210	18		$\Delta \cdot \mathbf{s}$
201,021	18		$\Delta \cdot \mathbf{s}^2$
200,020,002	9×3	A_{00}, B_{00}, C_{00}	square
011	9		δ
101	9		$\delta \cdot \mathbf{s}$
110	9		$\delta \cdot \mathbf{s}^2$
122,212,221	9×3	$\tilde{S}, \tilde{S}\mathbf{s}, \tilde{S}\mathbf{s}^2$	square

Table 29.1: Intersection of the \mathbf{k} cubic with the $\kappa = 000$ cubic

The equation (E) for the two points W is obtained by intersecting $p\mathcal{K}_{\mathbf{k}}^{\mathcal{M}}$ by the line $M_{\mathbf{k}}M_{\kappa}$ and discarding the factor relative to $W = M_{\mathbf{k}}$. Part of the time, it happens that this equation splits totally (and the discriminant of (E) is a perfect square). Otherwise, Table 29.1 show that the discriminant takes only two essentially different values, according to the parity.

Here again, the strange operator appears as the operator that allows to jump from an orbit to some others (but not to all of them). Each of the discriminants δ and Δ can be written as the product of the four Lemoine replicas of a polynomial. For example :

$$\delta_{12} = \prod_{j=0}^{j=3} L_j (\alpha\beta\gamma + (\alpha^2\gamma - 2\alpha\beta^2 - \beta\gamma^2)\phi + (\beta^2\gamma - 2\alpha\gamma^2 - \alpha^2\beta)\phi^2)$$

The existence of exact solutions is correlated with the fact that triangles \mathcal{T}_k and $\varphi(\mathcal{T}_k)$ are homothetic for each $\varphi \in \mathcal{PG}_{18}$, and therefore are in perspective. Their common perspector $S_{k\kappa}$ can ever been obtained without radicals, and belongs necessarily to line $M_k M_\kappa$. When this point belongs to one of the cubics, so does also isogon($S_{k\kappa}$) and line $M_k M_\kappa$ cannot have any other intersections with $p\mathcal{K}_k^M$.

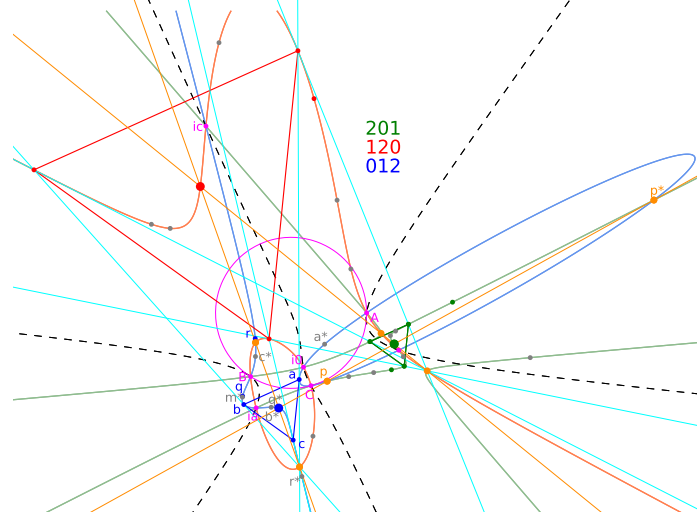


Figure 29.10: Three cubics from the same m -orbit

The first case is the most striking. We consider a m orbit. It contains a Morley center M_j , and its relatives: M_{j+} defined as $m(M_j)$ and M_{j++} defined as $m^2(M_j)$. For example, using $j = 0$, the orbit is $M_{000} = X(356)$, $M_{000+} = M_{222} = X(3277)$ and $M_{000++} = M_{111} = X(3276)$. The orbit M_{201} , $M_{201+} = M_{120}$ and M_{012} was used to draw Figure 29.10. The first specificity of such a orbit comes from $M_j + M_{j+} + M_{j++} = 0$: the centroid of the three centers is the circumcenter. Therefore, the sum of the equations of the three Morley cubics is the McCay cubic $p\mathcal{K}_O$ (dotted line).

The common points of two cubics of the m -orbit are two Morley perspectors. More precisely, $p\mathcal{K}_{201}^M \cap p\mathcal{K}_{120}^M$ contains P_{201} which is the perspector of triangle \mathcal{T}_{201} wrt ABC and P_{201}^* which is the perspector of \mathcal{T}_{201}^* wrt ABC but also the perspector of \mathcal{T}_{201} with \mathcal{T}_{120} .

29.6.3 Inscribed pivotal equilateral triangles

Let us now prove our Theorem 3 (stated on page 458) and show that the equation of the locus \mathfrak{L}_U is as given in Figure 29.11.

Proof. Consider the line $\Delta_\tau = \{z_U + \mu\tau, \mu \in \mathbb{R}\}$ issued from point U and directed by the unimodular complex τ (known up to a ± 1 factor). This line cuts the isocubic $p\mathcal{K}_U$ pivoting around U in three points. One of them is U itself, and the other two are the root of a second degree equation in μ : call it $E(\tau)$.

If U is the center of an inscribed equilateral triangle admitting Δ_τ as one of its axes, the equations $E(\tau), E(\tau\phi), E(\tau\phi^2)$ share a common root μ . But, from (29.12), we have :

$$E(\tau) + E(\tau\phi) + E(\tau\phi^2) = 3(\tau^6 - \sigma_3^2)\mu^2\mathbf{T}^3 \quad (29.13)$$

Obtaining a condition on τ^6 is natural: a direction is only known by its τ^2 , and the condition must be symmetric on $\tau, \phi\tau, \phi^2\tau$. This gives $\tau^2 = \sqrt[3]{s_3^{12}} = \phi^k s_3^4$, i.e. the Morley directions of axes, proving the first part. The equation of the locus \mathfrak{L}_U is obtained by eliminating μ between $E(\tau\phi), E(\tau\phi^2)$. Due to (29.13), $E(\tau)$ is automatically fulfilled. The last part comes Proposition 29.6.1. \square

$\mathfrak{L}_U = \Re(\Phi)$ where

$$\begin{aligned} \Phi_1 \simeq & \frac{1}{L_1} \frac{1}{\sigma_3^2} \mathbf{Z}^7 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} - \mathbf{Z}^4 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^4 + 3 \left(-\frac{1}{\sigma_3^2} \mathbf{Z}^6 - \frac{\sigma_2}{\sigma_3^2} \mathbf{Z}^5 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} + \frac{\sigma_1}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^4 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 + \mathbf{Z}^3 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^3 \right) \mathbf{T}^2 \\ & + \left(\frac{2\sigma_1}{\sigma_3^2} \mathbf{Z}^5 - \frac{2\sigma_2}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^3 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 \right) \mathbf{T}^3 + 3 \left(\frac{2\sigma_2}{\sigma_3^2} \mathbf{Z}^4 + \frac{\sigma_2^2 - 2\sigma_1\sigma_3}{\sigma_3^2} \mathbf{Z}^3 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} - \frac{\sigma_1\sigma_2}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^2 \right) \mathbf{T}^4 \\ & + 6 \left(-\frac{\sigma_1\sigma_2}{\sigma_3^2} \mathbf{Z}^3 + \frac{\sigma_1^2}{\sigma_3} \mathbf{Z}^2 \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \right) \mathbf{T}^5 + \left(\frac{\sigma_1^2\sigma_2 + \sigma_2^2}{\sigma_3^2} \mathbf{Z}^2 - \frac{\sigma_1^3\sigma_3 + 2\sigma_1\sigma_2\sigma_3 + \sigma_2^3}{2\sigma_3^2} \mathbf{Z} \bar{\mathbf{Z}} \right) \mathbf{T}^6 \end{aligned}$$

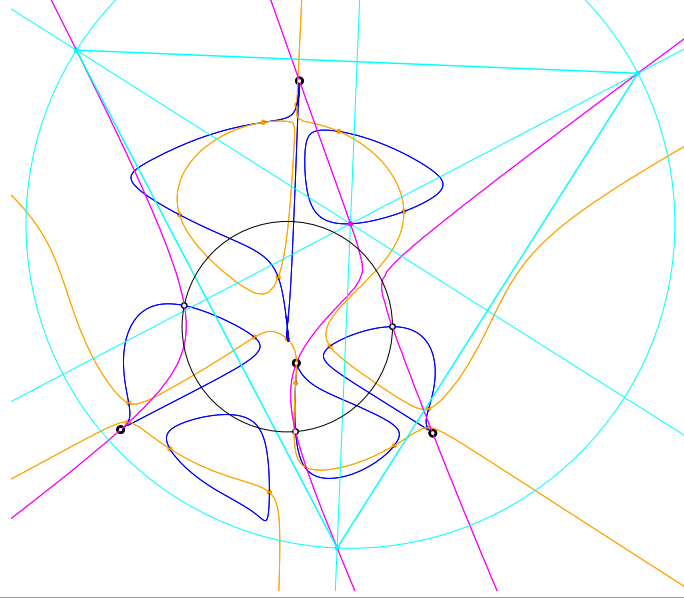


Figure 29.11: A random point on \mathfrak{L}_U , its pivotal isocubic and the associated triangle

To characterize a 8th degree curve, $8 \times 9/2 - 1 = 35$ points are required. We can identify 39 points on \mathfrak{L}_U , i.e. 4 more than this minimal number. We have:

- 18 the Morley centers $M_{\mathbf{k}}$ (where \mathcal{T} is the associated Morley triangle $\mathcal{T}_{\mathbf{k}}$).
- 3 the vertices ABC . When the pivot is A , the cubic is the union of sideline BC and bisectors I_bI_c , I_0I_a . The common root for μ is 0 and the triangle is reduced to the pivot.
- 8 the inexceneters $I_0I_aI_bI_c$. Each of them counts twice being a cusp (the cuspidal tangent goes through the circumcenter). When the pivot is I_j , the cubic is the union of the three bisectors that concur in I_j . Here again, $\mu = 0$ is the common root.
- 2 the umbilics. The circular asymptotes concur at O .
- 6 the Morley directions. Each counts twice (cusps again)
- 2 the circumcenter counts twice. One tangent is the Euler line, the other goes through $\sigma_1\sigma_3 + \sigma_2^2 : 0 : \sigma_1^2 + \sigma_2$. One of the triangle is on the circumcircle, the other is made of the Morley directions.

The curve has an equation that depends only from the full symmetric functions (the σ_j). This comes from the fact that all the 4 inexceneters are symmetrically involved and the 18 Morley centers are also symmetrically involved, so that none of them need to be distinguished from the rest of its class.

When we examine the common points between this curve and the quintic of the Morley centers, we obtain $8 \times 5 = 40$ points. The resultant in $\bar{\mathbf{Z}}$ of the corresponding polynomials splits in four parts. A 18th degree polynomial, describing the Morley centers. A factor \mathbf{T}^7 describes the 8 points at infinity (only one \mathbf{T} for both umbilics). And there are two other irreducible polynomials, whose respective degrees are 3 and 11.

But this results only into one and five visible common points on Figure 29.11. Let us describe what happens to the 3rd degree factor $\mathbf{Z}^3\sigma_2 - 3\mathbf{Z}\sigma_1\sigma_3 + 2\sigma_1^2\sigma_3$. It gives three solutions z_0, z_1, z_2 . But, in our example, the points that belong to both curves are $z_0 : 1 : \bar{z}_0, z_1 : 1 : \bar{z}_2, z_2 : 1 : \bar{z}_1$: the first point is visible, the other two aren't. After extraction of the suitable squared factors, the discriminant of the 3rd polynomial can be written as :

$$\Delta = 1 - \frac{\sigma_1\sigma_2}{\sigma_3} = 1 - |\sigma_1|^2 \in \mathbb{R}$$

Therefore, we will have different behaviors for acute and obtuse triangles (σ_1 is the affix of the orthocenter, so that $\Delta > 0$ forces the orthocenter to be inside the circumcircle).

29.7 Some concluding remarks

29.7.1 Degeneracies in the equilateral triangle

Degenerate cases are often useful to fully understand the general case. It is interesting to see what happens when triangle ABC is near to become equilateral $\alpha = -1, \beta = \exp(2i\pi/18), \gamma = \exp(-2i\pi/18)$. All the points that are "triangle centers" as defined in Kimberling (1998) are collapsing to the origin, and so are doing I_0 and the Morley centers $M_{000}, M_{222}, M_{111}$. But the other centers continue to live a separate life, the excenters $I_a = -2A$, etc among them.

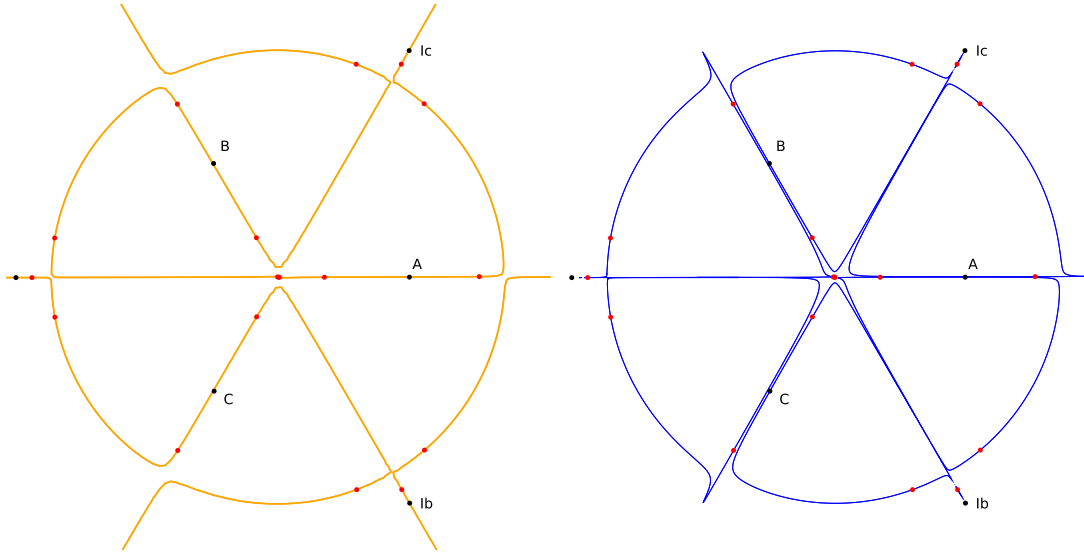


Figure 29.12: A quasi-equilateral triangle

In Figure 29.12, points are quite at the exact place they will occupy when ABC will be exactly equilateral. Points $M_{120}, M_{012}, M_{201}$ form an equilateral triangle and $M_{102}, M_{021}, M_{210}$ also, while the odd M_k belongs by triple to the bisectors of ABC .

Concerning the curves (left the quintic \mathcal{L}_M , right the octic \mathcal{L}_U), we have a greater sensibility near the special points while the curves are degenerating into the bisectors union a circle:

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}_M &\mapsto (\mathbf{Z}^3 - \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^3)(\mathbf{Z}\bar{\mathbf{Z}} - 3\mathbf{T}^2) & \mathcal{L}_P &\mapsto (\mathbf{Z}^3 - \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^3)(\mathbf{Z}\bar{\mathbf{Z}} - \mathbf{T}^2) \\ \mathcal{L}_U &\mapsto (\mathbf{Z}^3 - \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^3)^2(\mathbf{Z}\bar{\mathbf{Z}} - 3\mathbf{T}^2) & \mathcal{L}_P^* &\mapsto (\mathbf{Z}^3 - \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^3)\mathbf{T} \\ & & \mathcal{L}_Q &\mapsto (\mathbf{Z}^3 - \bar{\mathbf{Z}}^3)(\mathbf{Z}\bar{\mathbf{Z}} - 4\mathbf{T}^2) \end{aligned}$$

29.7.2 Summarizing our results

The present chapter is about the Morley configuration, that occurs when drawing the trisectors of the angles of a triangle. In this configuration, a family of 18 triangles can be identified that are together equilateral and perspective with the original triangle.

This configuration has been studied using the formalism of the complex projective geometry, combined with the parameterization that was originally developed by [Lubin \(1955\)](#). Numerical investigations have been conducted to detect if an algebraic curve exists that contains various classes of points. This property was already known and proven concerning the perspectors $P_{\mathbf{k}}$ of the Morley triangles with the base triangle.

We have discovered that the 18 Morley centers themselves, as well as the 3 Morley directions belong to a same circular quintic \mathfrak{L}_M . This result is a new one. Using a formal computing tool, we have explicitated the complex projective equation of this curve (i.e. relative to Ω_x, O, Ω_y : the umbilics and the circumcircle). When converting this equation into a barycentric one (i.e. relative to the vertices A, B, C), one obtains an expression whose complexity is the probable explanation of the novelty of our Theorem 1. A comparable result has been obtained concerning the secondary perspectors (Theorem 2).

Thereafter, we have classified the intersections of two Morley isocubics and described the situations where these intersections can or cannot be rationally generated from α, β, γ . We have also determined the condition for an isogonal cubic to contain an inscribed equilateral triangle having prescribed directions. We have proven that the solutions are discrete except when Morley directions are chosen. In this latter case, the locus of the pivots is an algebraic 8th-degree curve containing the Morley centers (Theorem 3).

As ever, combining numerical investigations with formal computing tools has proven to be efficient.

Chapter 30

Groups acting over the Morley configuration

30.1 Introduction

30.1.1 Aim of this chapter

Our aim now is to investigate the Morley configuration in the context of the group theory, with a special focus on how properties relative to the flagship triangle (pictured in Figure 29.1a) can be propagated to the other replicas under the action of a well suited group. Moreover, broader classes of objects have been introduced by relaxing some of the required properties. For example, the strange triangles, introduced by [Taylor and Marr \(1913\)](#), and the lighthouse triangles introduced by [Viricel and Bouteloup \(1993\)](#).

We will prove following results:

Theorem 1 (New result). *The Morley objects involving also the inexceters are connected by the projective group identified as \mathcal{G} [72.43]¹ (thereafter named \mathcal{PG}_{72}), while its projective subgroup \mathcal{G} [18.4] (thereafter named \mathcal{PG}_{18}) is sufficient when the inexceters are not involved. On the contrary, the **strange** objects are connected by the projective group \mathcal{G} [9.2] (thereafter named \mathcal{PG}_9^\bullet , where the bullet stays as a remainder of strangeness).*

Theorem 2 (New result). *Under the action of a group that is 1-transitive, the orbit of a pair $\{\kappa_1, \kappa_2\}$ contains at least a pair $\{0, 0 \cdot \varphi\}$ and depends only on φ . Under the action of \mathcal{PG}_{18} , the orbits of Morley pairs are 18-sized when φ is even ($1, m, r, mr, mr^2$) or 9-sized when φ is odd (control: $5 \times 18 + 9 \times 9 = 171$).*

Under the action of \mathcal{G}_{54} , most of these orbits collapse by three, and we have O_1, O_m : 18-sized, O_r : 54-sized while O_t, O_{tm}, O_{tm^2} are 27-sized (control: $18 \times 2 + 54 + 27 \times 3 = 171$). Therefore any property that involves Morley centers by pairs, has essentially to be proven on five special cases.

30.1.2 Morley centers as an intricate family

In order to show why the Morley centers must be considered as a family connected by the action of some group, we will consider what happens to the flagship of the family (the center of the small triangle in Figure 29.1a) when A, B, C are moving freely along a fixed circumcircle. Its barycentric coordinates are obtained by using $\mathbf{k} = 000$ (i.e. $k_a = 0$, etc) in the [Taylor and Marr](#) formula :

$$M_{\mathbf{k}} = \sin A \left(\cos \frac{A + 2k_a\pi}{3} + 2 \cos \frac{B + 2k_b\pi}{3} \cos \frac{C + 2k_c\pi}{3} \right) : \text{etc} : \text{etc} \quad (30.1)$$

Written that way, the point M_{000} looks like a well defined object. It is described as X(356) in the [Kimberling](#) database of triangle centers. When written using the Lubin parameterization (α, β, γ are on the unit circle, more details will be given in Subsection 30.2.1), one obtains :

¹The first number is the cardinal, followed by an index in the [SAGE \(2005-2025\)](#) database.

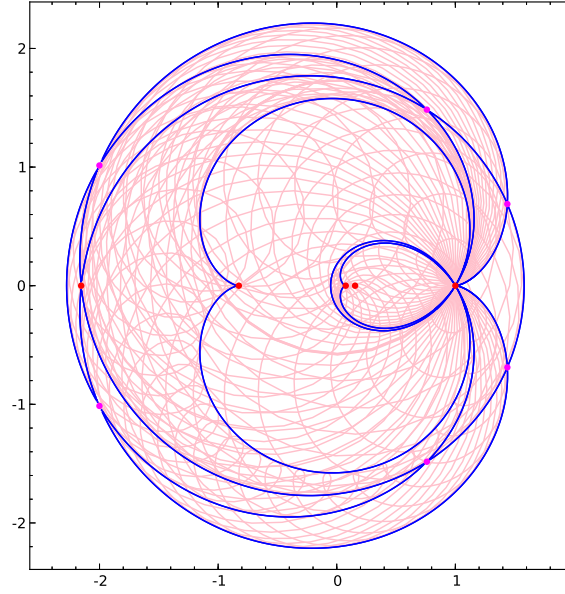


Figure 30.1: Locus of the Morley center M_{000} when A remains fixed (here, $z_A = 1$)

$$z_{000} \underset{L3}{=} \left(\frac{1-\phi^2}{3} \right) (\alpha^2\beta + \alpha\gamma^2 - \beta\gamma^2) + \left(\frac{1-\phi}{3} \right) (\alpha^2\gamma + \alpha\beta^2 - \beta^2\gamma)$$

where $\phi = \exp(2i\pi/3)$. This formula is rather not symmetrical. If we fix α, β and move γ all along the unit circle, the point z describes a closed curve. If $\alpha = -1$ is fixed and β takes 60 values regularly disposed along the circle, we obtain the pink lines of Figure 30.1.

It can be shown that the boundary curve (in dark gray) is a ten fold circular curve of degree 20. But all the grayed area is globally connected and the same picture is obtained if one uses another value of $\mathbf{k} = k_a k_b k_c$ (see Subsection 30.4.6 for the condition $\sum \mathbf{k} \neq 1!$). This shows that the Morley centers form an intricate family, that is interconnected by the transitive action of some group.

30.1.3 Organization of this chapter

This chapter is a continuation of Douillet (2010, in English) and Douillet (2014d, in French). In Section 30.2, we describe how to teach the Morley configuration to a computer. In this context, the key question is using objects that have an unique normal form, since incantations like "the computer will easily see that..." would be useless. In Section 30.3, we make some numerical explorations. Among the $108 \times 107 \times 106 \div 6$ triangles that can be formed from the 108 intersections, one can find 54 equilateral triangles. Among them, there are the 18 Morley triangles, while the remaining ones can be described as lighthouse triangles. One can also see that each intersection belongs to nine perspective triangles.

In Section 30.4, we are back to formal results and we prove our Theorem 1 concerning the groups acting over the Morley configuration. In Section 30.5 we use these results to explain why the regular Morley objects are shadowed by *strange* objects that have only reduced properties. We will show that, in fact, these objects are "not sufficiently skew".

Finally, Section 30.6 shows the efficiency of this group theoretical approach on two examples. The first is the family of Martini circles. The second is based on the fact that two equilateral triangles having the same directions and the same orientation are perspective. The classification of these equilateral perspectors is facilitated by our Theorem 2 that classifies the orbits of the pairs of centers.

The chapter ends by a summary section. The bibliography is integrated into the bibliography of the whole book.

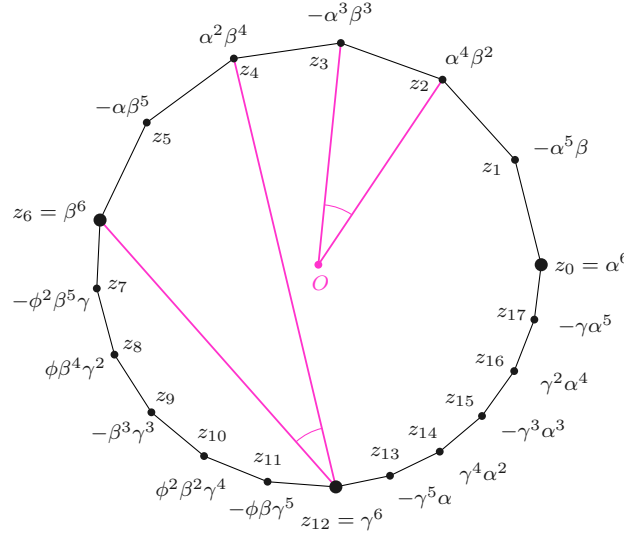


Figure 30.2: The Lubin choices of orientation

30.2 Morley configuration for computers

30.2.1 The Lubin parameterization

In this context, conjugacy is the operation that transforms what is seen from above the plane by what is seen from below. This implies $\text{conj}(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}}) = \overline{\mathbf{Z}} : \mathbf{T} : \mathbf{Z}$. Applied to the ordinary points, this generates two important subclasses:

- visible finite points, that can be written $z : 1 : \bar{z}$ where \bar{z} is the \mathbb{C} conjugate of z .
- visible infinite points, that can be written $\omega^2 : 0 : 1$ where $\omega \in \mathbb{C}$ is unimodular.

But, in the general case, variable $\overline{\mathbf{Z}}$ is an independent variable, with the same status as \mathbf{Z} and \mathbf{T} . This allows to use points like the circular points at infinity (the so called-umbilics), i.e. $\Omega_x \simeq 1 : 0 : 0$, $\Omega_y \simeq 0 : 0 : 1$. These points are crucial to characterize the circles among the projective conics.

But the non-algebraic nature of the complex conjugacy impose to avoid this transformation as much as possible. This exigence can be fulfilled by identifying the circumcircle of ABC with the unit circle. This leads to **define** conjugacy as the action of the substitutions:

$$\mathbf{Z} \leftrightarrow \overline{\mathbf{Z}}, \omega_{12} \rightarrow 1/\omega_{12}, \alpha \rightarrow 1/\alpha, \beta \rightarrow 1/\beta, \gamma \rightarrow 1/\gamma$$

It only remains to explain how to algebraically divide angles into six equal parts (dividing in three is required for Morley theorem and dividing in two is required for the inexceters). This can be done by using α^6 as the complex affix of vertex A , etc. This leads to Figure 30.2.

More details are given in Lubin (1955) for the choice $z_A = \alpha^3$, etc and in Douillet (2014a) for the choice $z_A = \alpha^6$, etc. In any cases, we must have some -1 and ϕ due to the obvious relations $z_0 z_6 z_{12} = -z_3 z_9 z_{15} = \phi^2 z_2 z_8 z_{14}$.

30.2.2 Symmetric expressions

From the preceding choices, it results that:

Proposition 30.2.1. *The coordinates of the points generated from Figure 30.2 are homogeneous rational fractions in α, β, γ and their degrees are in progression: $dg(z) = 6 + dg(t)$; $dg(t) = 6 + dg(\zeta)$. Curves, that are homogeneous polynomials in $\mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{T}, \overline{\mathbf{Z}}$, are also globally homogeneous fractions when pondering variables as $\mathbf{Z} = 6$, $\mathbf{T} = 0$, $\overline{\mathbf{Z}} = -6$, $\alpha = 1$, etc.*

In some situations, these expressions can be rewritten using the symmetric functions of α, β, γ . We define the s_j by :

$$s_1 \stackrel{L_6}{=} \alpha + \beta + \gamma, s_2 \stackrel{L_6}{=} \alpha\beta + \beta\gamma + \gamma\alpha, s_3 \stackrel{L_6}{=} \alpha\beta\gamma$$

where $\stackrel{L6}{=}$ is a reminder of the dependence² from the choice $z_A = \alpha^6$, etc. On the contrary, the σ_j are the symmetric functions of the vertices themselves :

$$\sigma_1 \stackrel{L6}{=} z_A + z_B + z_C, \sigma_2 \stackrel{L6}{=} z_A z_B + z_B z_C + z_C z_A, \sigma_3 \stackrel{L6}{=} z_A z_B z_C \stackrel{L6}{=} s_3^6$$

When trying to explain this concept to a **SAGE** computer, and also the concept of an "auxiliary point", we have to introduce $\widehat{\mathbb{K}} \doteq \mathbb{Q}(\omega_{12})(\alpha, \beta, \gamma, s_1, s_2, s_3)$, then $\widehat{\mathbb{K}}[\mathbf{Z}, \mathbf{T}, \overline{\mathbf{Z}}, z, t, \zeta]$ and thereafter trans-type everything. The usual algorithm can now be used onto the *coefficients* of the polynomials.

30.2.3 Isogonal duality

We need to introduce the involution known as the "isogonal transformation" of the plane, thereafter named *isog* and shortened as $P \rightarrow P_g^*$. Connoisseurs are knowing that only the associated Cremona map is effectively involutive (Déserti, 2009b). A simplified presentation is as follows:

Proposition 30.2.2. *Given a triangle ABC and a finite, visible point P not on a sideline, we define line Aa by the equal inclination property $(AB, AP) = (Aa, AC)$, etc. Then lines Aa, Bb, Cc are concurring in a finite, visible point not on a sideline. This point is called P_g^* , the isogonal image of P . We have :*

$$\text{isogon} \begin{pmatrix} \mathbf{Z} \\ \mathbf{T} \\ \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \end{pmatrix} \stackrel{L1}{\simeq} \begin{pmatrix} \sigma_3^2 \overline{\mathbf{Z}}^2 - \sigma_3 \mathbf{Z} \mathbf{T} - \sigma_3 \sigma_2 \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{T} + \sigma_3 \sigma_1 \mathbf{T}^2 \\ -\sigma_3 \mathbf{Z} \overline{\mathbf{Z}} + \sigma_3 \mathbf{T}^2 \\ \mathbf{Z}^2 - \sigma_1 \mathbf{Z} \mathbf{T} - \sigma_3 \overline{\mathbf{Z}} \mathbf{T} + \sigma_2 \mathbf{T}^2 \end{pmatrix} \quad (30.2)$$

Extending this formula can be used to define P_g^* "quite" everywhere.

Computing isogon (isogon $(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}})$) gives (algebraically) $(\mathbf{Z} : \mathbf{T} : \overline{\mathbf{Z}})$ times the common factor : $-\prod_3 \alpha^{12} \cdot (\beta^6 \gamma^6 \overline{\mathbf{Z}} - \beta^6 \mathbf{T} - \gamma^6 \mathbf{T} + \mathbf{Z})$, which is the product of the three sidelines. Thus isogon exchanges (in the Cremona sense) line BC with vertex A , etc while outside of the three sidelines, we have as a pointwise involution.

The four inexciters are clearly the fixed points of this Cremona transform. The circumcircle is exchanged with the line at infinity (and, therefore, the umbilical points are swapped). This is confirmed by remarking that $:(u : v : w)_g^* \simeq (a^2/u : b^2/v : c^2/w)$ where a, b, c are the length of the side lines.

The appearance of this transform is unavoidable since, for example, the trisectors issued from A are equally inclined by pairs with AB and BC . Therefore the isogonal image of any intersection of trisectors is another intersection.

30.3 Numerical explorations

30.3.1 Taylor-Marr naming conventions

When dealing with numerous objects, the choice of the naming convention is crucial. The following three were chosen by Taylor and Marr in their 1913 article. The first convention applies to all the 18 trisectors, the second to 27 vertices among all the $(18 \times 12)/2 = 108$ vertices generated and the third to 27 triangles among the $(27 \times 26 \times 25)/6 = 2925$ triangles generated by this reduced set of vertices. Obviously, these objects will appear to be the most interesting ones.

Definition 30.3.1. For $D \in \{A, B, C\}$, $x \in \{u, d\}$ and $k \in \mathbb{Z}/3\mathbb{Z}$, the *trisector* D_k^x is defined as follows. (1) the trisector is issued from D . (2) u is the upwards permutation $A \rightarrow B \rightarrow C \rightarrow A$, while $d = u^{-1}$ is the downwards one. (3) Value $k = 0$ is used for trisectors obtained by joining points of Figure 30.2. Trisectors D_0^u and D_0^d are, respectively "near $u(D)$ " and "near $d(D)$ " (4) Then D_0^u is rotated by ϕ^{2k} to give D_k^u while D_0^d is rotated by ϕ^k to give D_k^d , leading to opposite orientations for the two beams.

²The usual incenter formula $z(I_0) \stackrel{L2}{=} -s_2$ becomes $z(I_0) \stackrel{L6}{=} -\alpha^3 \beta^3 - \beta^3 \gamma^3 - \gamma^3 \alpha^3$

Definition 30.3.2. For $D \in \{A, B, C\}$ and $j, k \in \mathbb{Z}/3\mathbb{Z}$, the Morley *vertex* D_{jk} is the intersection of the trisectors $u(D)_j^{\mathbf{u}}$ and $d(D)_k^{\mathbf{d}}$. By Proposition 30.2.2, the isogonal conjugate D_{jk}^* of the Morley vertex D_{jk} is the intersection of trisectors $u(D)_j^{\mathbf{d}}$ and $d(D)_k^{\mathbf{u}}$.

Definition 30.3.3. For $\mathbf{k} = k_a k_b k_c$, where $k_a, k_b, k_c \in \mathbb{Z}/3\mathbb{Z}$, the Taylor-Marr *triangle* $\mathcal{T}_{\mathbf{k}}$ is the triangle whose vertices are $A_{k_b k_c}$, $B_{k_c k_b}$, $C_{k_a k_b}$.

30.3.2 Two examples

The coefficients of a given trisector are easy to compute when using (29.1). For example, using $E_6 \wedge E_{14}$ and $E_{12} \wedge E_4$ respectively, one obtains :

$$B_0^{\mathbf{u}} \underset{L_6}{\simeq} [1; -\alpha^2 \gamma^4 - \beta^6; \alpha^2 \beta^6 \gamma^4] \quad C_0^{\mathbf{d}} \underset{L_6}{\simeq} [1; -\alpha^2 \beta^4 - \gamma^6; \alpha^2 \beta^4 \gamma^6] \quad (30.3)$$

And now, we can compute the intersections of two of these trisectors. For example, $A_{00} \doteq B_0^{\mathbf{u}} \cap C_0^{\mathbf{d}}$ is :

$$A_{00} \underset{L_6}{\simeq} B_0^{\mathbf{u}} \wedge C_0^{\mathbf{d}} \underset{L_6}{\simeq} \begin{pmatrix} (\alpha^2 \beta^4 + \gamma^6) \alpha^2 \beta^6 \gamma^4 - (\alpha^2 \gamma^4 + \beta^6) \alpha^2 \beta^4 \gamma^6 \\ \alpha^2 \beta^6 \gamma^4 - \alpha^2 \beta^4 \gamma^6 \\ \alpha^2 \gamma^4 - \alpha^2 \beta^4 + \beta^6 - \gamma^6 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$z(A_{00}) \underset{L_6}{=} \alpha^2 \beta^4 + \alpha^2 \gamma^4 - \beta^4 \gamma^2 - \beta^2 \gamma^4 + \alpha^2 \beta^2 \gamma^2 \quad (30.4)$$

It should be noticed that not all of the 108 affixes $z = \mathbf{Z}/\mathbf{T}$ are polynomial and that, most of the time, powers of ϕ are not canceling.

30.3.3 Hunting the equilateral triangles

When plotting altogether the 108 intersections, as in Figure 30.3a, the result does not seem remarkable. On the contrary, plotting only the 27 Morley vertices leads to Figure 30.3b.

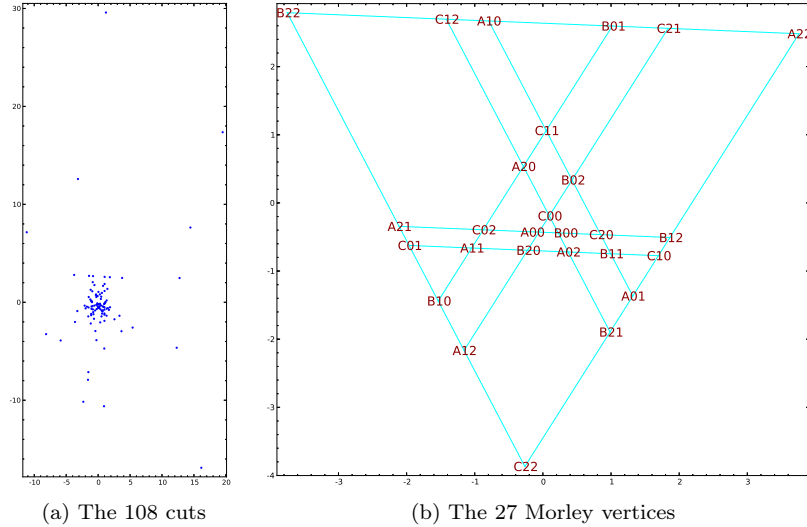


Figure 30.3: Morley equilateral triangles

In order to detect the equilateral triangles $z_1 z_2 z_3$ that are hidden in Figure 30.3a, it would be tedious to apply the criterion $(z_1 + \phi z_2 + \phi^2 z_3)(z_1 + \phi^2 z_2 + \phi z_3) = 0$ using the 108 quantities like (30.4)! We better start by screening what happens when numerical values are assigned to α, β, γ . This requires only to compute the squared length of the $107 \times 108/2 = 5778$ segments joining the 108 vertices and to sort the list obtained. This gives small sub-lists of isometric segments, that can

be searched for segments that actually form triangles. The hunt gives two kinds of possibilities:

- 36 triangles like $(A_0^u B_0^u, A_1^u B_2^u, A_2^u B_1^u)$, each of them involving only two families of trisectors.
- 18 triangles among the 27 Taylor-Marr triangles \mathcal{T}_k . These are the Morley triangles.

30.3.4 The lighthouse triangles

The lighthouse triangles were called "étoiles" (stars) when described for the first time by [Viricel and Bouteloup \(1993\)](#). Since they involve only lines issued from two fixed points, the result doesn't really involve any triangle and its general form is:

Proposition 30.3.4 (Lighthouse theorem ([Guy, 2007](#))). *Let n be an integer, $n \geq 3$, and define a n -lighthouse as n lines E_0, E_1, \dots, E_{n-1} issued at $+180^\circ/n$ from each other from a given point E . Let F_0, F_1, \dots, F_{n-1} be another lighthouse. Define points $P(j, k) = E_j \cap F_k$ and consider indices modulo n . Then, starting from any $P(x, y)$, the n -gone $[P(x+k, y+k), k=1 \dots n]$ is regular and its circumcircle contains E and F (See Figure 30.4).*

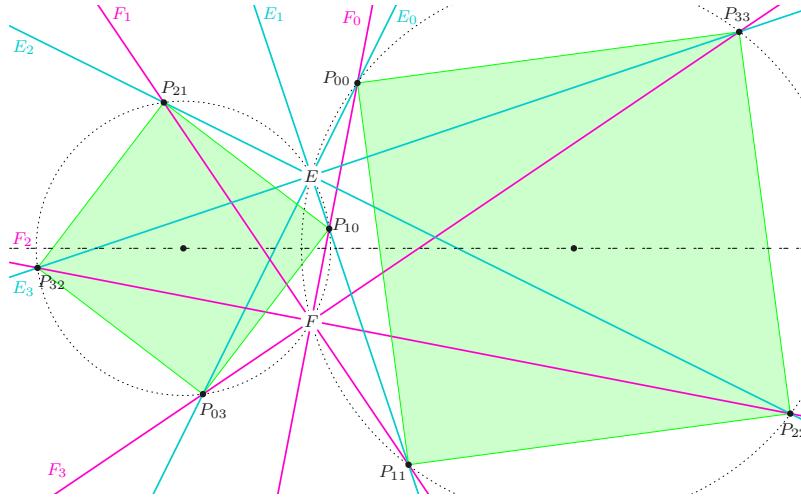


Figure 30.4: The twin lighthouses theorem

When E, F are the two vertices B, C , we have two choices of lighthouses per vertex (up and down), leading to four sets of three triangles. The sidelines of the corresponding families of triangles have the following directions :

$$\begin{aligned} \omega^2(\text{du}) &= -\phi^k \alpha^8 \beta^2 \gamma^2 ; \quad \omega^2(\text{dd}) = -\phi^k \alpha^6 \beta^4 \gamma^2 ; \quad \omega^2(\text{uu}) = -\phi^k \alpha^6 \beta^2 \gamma^4 \\ \omega^2(\text{ud}) &= -\phi^k \alpha^4 \beta^4 \gamma^4 \end{aligned} \quad (30.5)$$

The nine lighthouse triangles that belong to the ud families can be seen on Figure 30.3b. Triangle (A_{22}, A_{10}, A_{01}) is one of them. Here indices j, k are running contrariwise, since the beams have been oriented in that manner.

30.3.5 Hunting the perspective triangles

Another possibility for detecting triangles that share some properties with the Morley triangles is to require some perspectivities. Numeric exploration proves (at least for the triangle ABC we have chosen !) that if P is one of the 108 intersections, there are 9 among all the ordered triples of intersections XYZ such that (1) P is among X, Y, Z ; (2) XYZ is perspective with ABC and with $I_a I_b I_c$. For example, when $P = A_{21} = B_2^u C_1^d$, we have the triangles:

$$\begin{aligned}
& B_2^u C_1^d, B_2^u C_1^u, B_2^d C_1^d ; \quad B_2^u C_1^d, C_1^u A_0^u, A_0^d B_2^d ; \quad * B_2^u C_1^d, C_1^u A_1^d, A_1^u B_2^d \\
& B_2^u C_1^u, B_2^d C_1^d, B_2^d C_1^u ; \quad * B_2^u C_1^d, C_1^u A_0^d, A_0^u B_2^d ; \quad B_2^u C_1^d, C_1^u A_1^u, A_1^d B_2^d \\
& B_2^d C_1^d, B_2^d C_1^u, B_2^u C_1^d ; \quad B_2^u C_1^d, C_1^u A_2^u, A_2^d B_2^d ; \quad * B_2^u C_1^d, C_1^u A_2^d, A_2^u B_2^d
\end{aligned}$$

Among them, 3 uses trisectors issued from only two ABC vertices. For the other six, P occupies the place of the ABC vertex it doesn't involve. When we restrain ourselves to only the 27 Morley vertices, it remains 3 possibilities par vertex, and they are the Taylor-Marr triangles allowed by the indices of P . In our example, $P = A_{21}$ and the triangles are the ones tagged by a $*$ in the above list, namely \mathcal{T}_{021} , \mathcal{T}_{121} , \mathcal{T}_{221} .

30.4 Groups acting over the Morley configuration

30.4.1 Motivation: the Lubin proof

Proving that the flagship triangle \mathcal{T}_{000} is equilateral and oriented like ABC is easy when all the preparing work is already done. One computes also $z(B_{00})$ and $z(C_{00})$ and obtains (Lubin, 1955) :

$$\begin{aligned}
z(A_{00}) & \underset{L6}{=} \alpha^2 \beta^2 \gamma^2 & -\beta^4 (\gamma^2 - \alpha^2) & -\gamma^4 (\beta^2 - \alpha^2) \\
z(B_{00}) & \underset{L6}{=} \alpha^2 \beta^2 \gamma^2 \phi & +\gamma^4 (\beta^2 - \alpha^2) \phi^2 & -\alpha^4 (\phi \gamma^2 - \beta^2) \\
z(C_{00}) & \underset{L6}{=} \alpha^2 \beta^2 \gamma^2 \phi^2 + \beta^4 (\gamma^2 - \alpha^2) \phi & +\alpha^4 (\phi \gamma^2 - \beta^2) \phi^2
\end{aligned} \tag{30.6}$$

showing that $z(A_{00}) + \phi z(B_{00}) + \phi^2 z(C_{00}) = 0$ and proving the property. It remains to see how to propagate this property to the other triangles. Let us detail this problematic, that occurs for any object that belongs to the Morley configuration.

30.4.2 The general abstract group \mathcal{PG}_{216}

When dealing with the Morley configuration, one uses repetitively permutations of α, β, γ and transformations like $\alpha \mapsto \phi\alpha$. In many articles, e.g. in Taylor and Marr (1913), this aspect of the problem is hidden or limited to an heuristic role. Let us adopt the opposite behavior and bring this problematic to the foreground.

Since $z_A = \alpha^6$ only defines α up to a power of $(-\phi)$ it is natural to introduce the operator $(\alpha, \beta, \gamma) \mapsto (-\phi\alpha, \beta, \gamma)$. Mixed with the symmetric group \mathfrak{S}_3 acting on the parameters α, β, γ , this generates a 1296-sized group, whose center is 6-sized. Since all the objects of interest are projective, multiplying all of the α, β, γ by the same numeric quantity doesn't change anything and we better consider the associated projective group. Let us call it \mathcal{PG}_{216} from its order $1296/6 = 216$.

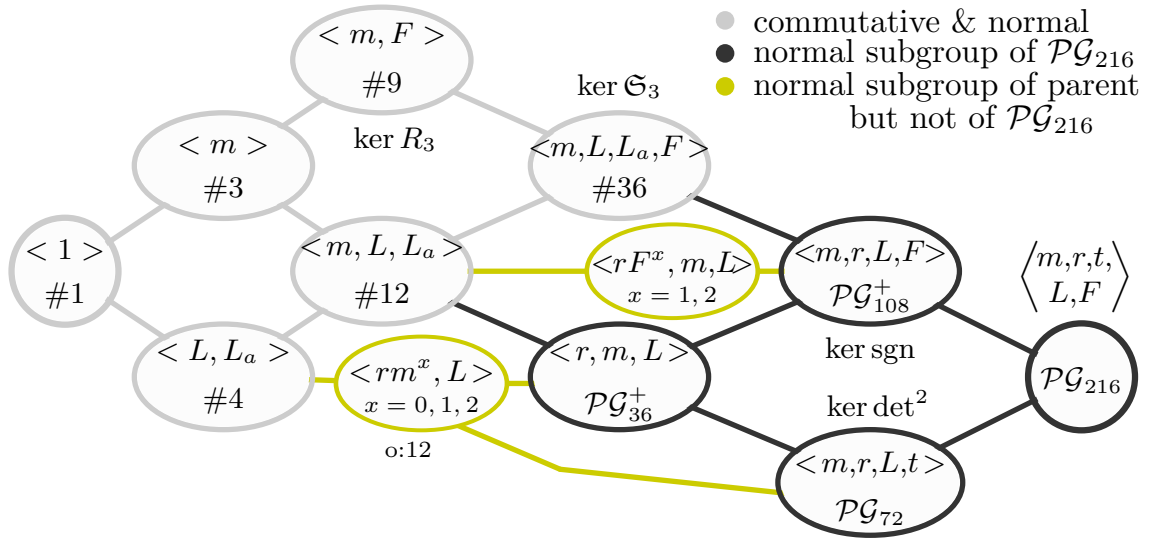
The first thing to do is obtaining the graph of the normal subgroups (see Figure 30.5) and the table of the independent characters (Table 30.1). To obtain both figures, we can represent the bigger group by matrices acting onto rows, and generate them from :

$$g_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad g_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, \quad g_3 = \begin{pmatrix} -\phi & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta & \gamma \end{pmatrix} g_1 = \begin{pmatrix} \beta & \gamma & \alpha \end{pmatrix}, \quad \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta & \gamma \end{pmatrix} g_2 = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \gamma & \beta \end{pmatrix}, \quad \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & \beta & \gamma \end{pmatrix} g_3 = \begin{pmatrix} -\phi\alpha & \beta & \gamma \end{pmatrix}$$

With this convention, we have $(X.g_j).g_k = X.(g_j g_k)$: in a product, the first written (on the left) represents the first acting.

When using SAGE, a brute force method is as follows. Write down the generating matrices. Generate the group and transcribe it as a permutation group. Divide by the center and obtain \mathcal{PG}_{216} . Obtain the character table \mathfrak{C} (spell it fraktur-C) . Use ${}^t\overline{\mathfrak{C}} \cdot \mathfrak{C}$ to discover the number of conjugacy classes and their sizes. Ask for the normal subgroups and their orders. This gives :

Figure 30.5: The normal subgroups of \mathcal{PG}_{216}

name	\mathcal{PG}_{216}	\mathcal{PG}_{108}^+	\mathcal{PG}_{72}	\mathcal{PG}_{36}^+	\mathcal{N}_Δ	\mathcal{N}_{12}	\mathcal{N}_9	\mathcal{N}_4	\mathcal{N}_3	\mathcal{N}_1
#	216.92	108.22	72.43	36.11	36.14	12.5	9.2	4.2	3.1	1.1
gens	$tmrYF$	$mrYF$	$trmY$	rmY	mYY_aF	mYY_a	mF	YY_a	m	1
# quo	1.1	2.1	3.1	6.2	6.1	18.3	24.12	54.5	72.42	216.92
ident		$\mathbb{Z}/2$	$\mathbb{Z}/3$	σ	\mathfrak{S}_3	---	\mathfrak{S}_4	rtF	---	\mathcal{PG}_{216}

In this table, the first line gives the name used in this article. The biggest groups have specific names while the commutative ones are named \mathcal{N}_n . At the boundary, \mathcal{N}_Δ is commutative, and 36-sized (Δ stands for diagonal). Then comes the index order/item in the [SAGE](#) database. The next line gives the generators involved. The 4th line gives the index order/item of the quotient group $\mathcal{PG}_{216}/\mathcal{N}$. As it should be we have relations like $36 \times 6 = 216$ for the orders of subgroup and quotient. What remains now is to interpret all this information.

One generator is required for \mathcal{N}_3 , the smallest normal subgroup, say m (order 3). And a second generator for \mathcal{N}_9 , say F (order 3). Subgroup \mathcal{N}_4 is the Klein group and requires two generators, say Y, Y_a (order 2). Altogether, m, F, Y, Y_a generates the maximal commutative subgroup \mathcal{N}_Δ (size 36). As a set, \mathcal{N}_Δ encompasses all the small classes $\mathcal{C}(1), \mathcal{C}(m)$ #1 + 2, $\mathcal{C}(F), \mathcal{C}(F^2), \mathcal{C}(y), \mathcal{C}(yFm), \mathcal{C}(yF^2m^2)$ #3 \times 5 and $\mathcal{C}(ym), \mathcal{C}(yF), \mathcal{C}(yF^2)$ #6 \times 3. From commutativity, orders are obvious.

To generate subgroup \mathcal{PG}_{108}^+ , another generator is required, say r (order 3). As a set, \mathcal{PG}_{108}^+ contains \mathcal{N}_Δ together with three 24-sized classes that are: $\mathcal{C}(r), \mathcal{C}(rF), \mathcal{C}(rF^2)$. All the orders are 3. To generate the whole \mathcal{PG}_{216} , a last generator is required, say t (order 2). As a set, \mathcal{PG}_{216} has to be completed by six other classes: $\mathcal{C}(t), \mathcal{C}(tF), \mathcal{C}(tF^2), \mathcal{C}(tY), \mathcal{C}(tYF), \mathcal{C}(tYF^2)$. All are 18-sized, while orders are respectively 2, 6, 6, 4, 12, 12.

From the nature of the problem, an efficient choice of generators is as follows :

$$\begin{aligned}
 r &= \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, t = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}, m = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \phi^2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \phi \end{pmatrix}, F = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & \phi^2 \end{pmatrix} \\
 Y &= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, Y_a = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix}, Y_c = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}
 \end{aligned} \tag{30.7}$$

where the names r, t, m, F, Y have been chosen as rotate, transpose, Morley, fake and Lemoine. In fact Y is the B -Lemoine transform $\beta \rightarrow -\beta$ and $Y_a = r^{-1} \cdot Y \cdot r$ is the A -Lemoine transform $\alpha \rightarrow -\alpha$. The first six will be used as generators of the projective group, and they are normalized

to have a 1 in the first line. The last two will be used as generators of irreducible representations: they will be used "as is" and must have the right trace (here -1).

Elements Y_a, Y_c are not required to generate \mathcal{PG}_{216} itself, but one of them must be used to generate a subgroup that do not contain r . In fact, **SAGE** also considers six generators and not only five. This can be related with the following "unique factorization property": each element x of \mathcal{PG}_{216} can be written *exactly in this order* as :

$$x = t^\tau \cdot r^\rho \cdot m^\mu \cdot F^\psi \cdot Y^\lambda \cdot Y_a^\eta \quad (30.8)$$

where the exponents range over the multiplicative order of the generator. For example, $\eta \in \mathbb{Z}/2\mathbb{Z}$ while $\psi \in \mathbb{Z}/3\mathbb{Z}$.

30.4.3 Three scalar class-invariants

Let us now consider the characters of \mathcal{PG}_{216} . The quotient of this group by $\mathcal{PG}_{36}^+ = \langle r, m, Y \rangle$ is cyclic. This generates six linear characters χ_j , $j = 0, 1, \dots, 5$, that can be written:

$$\chi_j = (-1)^{j \times \tau(x)} \times (\phi)^{j \times \psi(x)}$$

where $\tau(x)$, $\psi(x)$ are the exponents appearing in (30.8). Character χ_3 can be obtained directly from the matrix of x by reducing to 1 each non zero element and taking the determinant (projective quantity). Let us call it the parity of x , notation $\text{sgn}x$. Character χ_2 can be obtained directly from the matrix of x as is squared determinant (projective quantity), noted $\det^2 x$.

Finally, let us consider the odd matrices. They have exactly one diagonal non-zero element, that can be used to normalize the matrix. Proceeding that way, the determinant is now well defined and ranges over all the sixth roots of the unity. Quantity $\det^2 x$ is the already described character χ_2 , but $\det^3 x$ defines another characteristic of an odd class. Let us call it the twist. It can be seen that a non twisted element is such that the two transposed variables have encountered the same parity of Lemoine sign changes, while these parities are different for twisted transforms.

30.4.4 Character table of \mathcal{PG}_{216}

These results allows us to organize the character table of \mathcal{PG}_{216} . Obtained using the methods described in [Tinkham \(1964\)](#) or using **SAGE** as a black box, the character table \mathfrak{C} is a 19×19 matrix. Let us recall that $\Delta \doteq 216 (\bar{\mathfrak{C}} \cdot \mathfrak{C})^{-1}$ is a diagonal matrix whose elements are the sizes of the corresponding classes, while $\mathfrak{C} \cdot \Delta \cdot \bar{\mathfrak{C}}$ is the scalar matrix 216 (the order of the group).

In Table 30.1, a class of conjugacy is described by a column (header: order o and cardinal $\#$) and a character by a row (header: name). We have collected columns (except from the first) and rows (except from the last) into blocks of three.

Bloc $R_{1;j}$ contains the even linear characters, i.e. describes $\mathcal{PG}_{216}/\mathcal{PG}_{72}$. These characters are duplicated by the parity s to generate the odd linear characters sR_1 .

Character $R_{2;1}$ correspond to the irreducible non scalar representation of the group $\mathcal{PG}_{216}/\mathcal{N}_\Delta = \mathfrak{S}_3(A, B, C)$ and is replicated by \det^2 (and not by sgn since $R_{2;1}$ vanishes on the odd elements). The three characters $R_{2;j}$ can be obtained directly by considering the quotient $\mathcal{PG}_{216}/\mathcal{N}_{12}$.

Character $R_{3;1}$ is generated by the quotient $\mathcal{PG}_{216}/\mathcal{N}_9$. We have $\mathcal{PG}_{216}/\mathcal{N}_9 = \mathfrak{S}_4(I_0, I_a, I_b, I_c) \simeq \langle r, t, Y \rangle$ and a representation is obtained by the morphism : $t \mapsto t, r \mapsto r, Y \mapsto Y_c$ together with $g \mapsto 1, F \mapsto 1$. This character is replicated six times by the six linear characters.

The last four representations involve 6×6 matrices. Let us define :

$$m_6 = \begin{pmatrix} \phi 1_3 & 0 \\ 0 & \phi^2 1_3 \end{pmatrix}, F_6 = \begin{pmatrix} \phi m^2 & 0 \\ 0 & m^2 \end{pmatrix}, Y_6 = \begin{pmatrix} Y_c & 0 \\ 0 & Y_a \end{pmatrix}, r_6 = \begin{pmatrix} r & 0 \\ 0 & r^2 \end{pmatrix}, t_6 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1_3 \\ 1_3 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

The first four matrices are obtained by replicating matrices from $R_{3;1}$ and the last one is chosen to mix these two copies into an irreducible representation. Using exactly these five matrices leads to representation $R_{6;1}$. The other two replicates are obtained by using ϕF_6 or $\phi^2 F_6$ instead of F_6 . The last representation is generated by the quotient $\mathcal{PG}_{216}/\mathcal{N}_4$. It happens that $\mathcal{PG}_{216}/\mathcal{N}_4 \simeq \langle r, t, F \rangle$. Therefore R'_6 is obtained by replacing Y_6 by the unit matrix. Since character R'_6 vanishes outside $\langle m, r, t \rangle$, there is no replications all.

o	1	3	2, 6, 6	6	3	2, 6, 6	4, 12, 12
#	1	2+3+3	3 × 3	6 × 3	24 × 3	18 × 3	18 × 3
R_{1j}	1						
	1	$\boxed{\Phi}$	$\boxed{\Phi}$	$\boxed{\Phi}$	$\boxed{\Phi}$	$+\boxed{\Phi}$	$+\boxed{\Phi}$
sR_{1j}	1						
	1	$\boxed{\Phi}$	$\boxed{\Phi}$	$\boxed{\Phi}$	$\boxed{\Phi}$	$-\boxed{\Phi}$	$-\boxed{\Phi}$
R_{2j}	2						
	2	$2\boxed{\Phi}$	$2\boxed{\Phi}$	$2\boxed{\Phi}$	$-\boxed{\Phi}$	$\boxed{0}$	$\boxed{0}$
R_{3j}	3						
	3	$3\boxed{\Phi}$	$-\boxed{\Phi}$	$-\boxed{\Phi}$	$\boxed{0}$	$\boxed{\Phi}$	$-\boxed{\Phi}$
sR_{3j}	3						
	3	$3\boxed{\Phi}$	$-\boxed{\Phi}$	$-\boxed{\Phi}$	$\boxed{0}$	$-\boxed{\Phi}$	$\boxed{\Phi}$
R_{6j}	6	-3 0 0					
	6	-3 0 0	$-2\boxed{\Psi}$	$\boxed{\Psi}$	$\boxed{0}$	$\boxed{0}$	$\boxed{0}$
R'_6	6	-3 0 0					
	6	-3 0 0	6 0 0	-3 0 0	0 0 0	0 0 0	0 0 0

where $\boxed{\Phi} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & \phi & \phi^2 \\ 1 & \phi^2 & \phi \end{pmatrix}$, $\boxed{0} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$, $\boxed{\Psi} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -2 & -2 \\ 1 & -2\phi & -2\phi^2 \\ 1 & -2\phi^2 & -2\phi \end{pmatrix}$

Table 30.1: Character table of \mathcal{PG}_{216}

30.4.5 Subgroups \mathcal{PG}_{72} , \mathcal{PG}_{18} , \mathcal{PG}_9^\bullet

Lets now examine what happen to objects that are fixed by some of the former transforms. The groups of interest are the Morley group \mathcal{PG}_{18} obtained from $\langle t, r, m \rangle$, its extension the Lemoine group \mathcal{PG}_{72} obtained from $\langle t, r, m, Y \rangle$ and the strange group \mathcal{PG}_9^\bullet obtained from $\langle m, s \rangle$ where $s \doteq \text{Fr}$ is the **strange** operator (relation $rF \simeq m^2\text{Fr}$ shows that the other choice would have been equivalent). The [SAGE](#) index of these groups are \mathcal{G} [18.4], \mathcal{G} [72.43] and \mathcal{G} [9.2]. We will see later that \mathcal{PG}_{18} connects the Morley centers, \mathcal{PG}_{72} connects the secondary Morley perspectors and \mathcal{PG}_9^\bullet connects the **strange** objects.

o	1	3	2	6	3	3	3	2	4	$representation$			
#	1	2	3	6	8	8	8	18	18				
x	1	m	L	mL	r	rm	rm^2	t	tL	m	L	r	t
id	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
sgn	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	-1	-1	1	1	1	1
R_2	2	2	2	2	-1	-1	-1	0	0	i_2	i_2	r_2	t_2
S_1	2	-1	2	-1	2	-1	-1	0	0	r_2	i_2	i_2	t_2
S_2	2	-1	2	-1	-1	2	-1	0	0	r_2	i_2	r_2	t_2
S_3	2	-1	2	-1	-1	-1	2	0	0	r_2	i_2	r_2^2	t_2
R_3	3	3	-1	-1	0	0	0	+1	-1	i_3	L_c	r	$+t$
sR_3	3	3	-1	-1	0	0	0	-1	+1	i_3	L_c	r	$-t$
R_6	6	-3	-2	1	0	0	0	0	0	m_6	L_6	r_6	t_6

where $i_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$, $r_2 = \begin{pmatrix} \phi & 0 \\ 0 & \phi^2 \end{pmatrix}$, $t_2 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$, and the others as above

Table 30.2: Character table of \mathcal{PG}_{72}

The Lemoine group is what is obtained by mapping $F \mapsto 1$. This implies $\det^2 \mapsto 1$ so that classes and characters are (roughly) collapsing by triples. This leads to the 9×9 character table given in Table 30.2

Concerning the characters, the former block R_1 lead to the identity, the former block sR_1 to the

signature while each of the former blocks R_2, R_3, sR_3, R_6 leads to the single character with the same name. On the contrary, representations R'_6 splits into the three 2×2 representations S_1, S_2, S_3 . One can see that representation R_6 is faithful: $\mathcal{PG}_{72} = \langle m_6, Y_6, r_6, t_6 \rangle$, due to $(m_6 r_6)(r_6 m_6)^{-1} = 1$, to compare with $(mr)(rm)^{-1} = \phi$ that generates a 3-sized center in $\langle m, Y, r, t \rangle$ requiring a projective quotient.

Concerning the conjugacy classes, all the classes of \mathcal{PG}_{216} that were generated using F have disappeared. The former even classes $\mathcal{C}(1), \mathcal{C}(m), \mathcal{C}(Y), \mathcal{C}(mY)$ and odd classes $\mathcal{C}(t), \mathcal{C}(tY)$ remain unchanged. On the contrary, the former class $\mathcal{C}(r)$ doesn't remain connected and splits into $\mathcal{C}(r), \mathcal{C}(rm), \mathcal{C}(rm^2)$. We will see later that \mathcal{PG}_{72} is the group connecting the secondary perspectors.

o	1	3	3	3	3	2
$\#$	1	2	2	2	2	9
x	1	m	r	rm	rm^2	t
id	1	1	1	1	1	+1
sgn	1	1	1	1	1	-1
R_2	2	2	-1	-1	-1	0
S_1	2	-1	2	-1	-1	0
S_2	2	-1	-1	2	-1	0
S_3	2	-1	-1	-1	2	0

Table 30.3: Character table of \mathcal{PG}_{18}

When the Lemoine transforms are discarded either, it remains the projective group $\mathcal{PG}_{18} = \langle r, t, m \rangle$. Its character table is the 6×6 matrix given in Table 30.3. Here again, we have a reduction of both the classes and the characters. Classes $\mathcal{C}(1), \mathcal{C}(m)$ are kept, while $\mathcal{C}(Y), \mathcal{C}(mY)$ are now perceived as replicas of $1+m$ and disappear. Classes $\mathcal{C}(r), \mathcal{C}(rm), \mathcal{C}(rm^2)$ are kept, but reduced in size. Finally, $\mathcal{C}(tY)$ disappear while $\mathcal{C}(t)$ is reduced by half. This results into the disappearance of characters R_3, sR_3, R_6 . It should be noticed that all 2×2 irreducible representations use only the six matrices used for the 2×2 representation of \mathfrak{S}_3 .

When all transforms are discarded except from the m Morley and the s strange operators, it remains the strange group $\mathcal{PG}_9^* = \langle m, Fr \rangle$, which is a 9-sized commutative product group.

30.4.6 Action of the generators on the indices

In the previous sections many transforms have been introduced. In order to see how they connect (or separate) the various Morley objects into classes, we will examine how they act on the three digits indexes. This will complete the remarks made by [Taylor and Marr \(1913\)](#) or by [Gambier \(1954\)](#).

Theorem 30.4.1. *The image of any Taylor-Marr triangle \mathcal{T}_k by an element of \mathcal{PG}_{216} is a Taylor-Marr triangle. Indices are transformed according to:*

$$\begin{array}{c|ccc||c|ccc}
 & k_a & k_b & k_c & & k_a & k_b & k_c \\
 \hline
 L & k_a & k_b & k_c & t & 2 - k_a & -k_c & -k_b \\
 m & k_a + 2 & k_b + 2 & k_c + 2 & F & k_a + 2 & k_b + 1 & k_c \\
 r & k_c + 1 & k_a + 2 & k_b & s & k_c & k_a & k_b
 \end{array} \quad (30.9)$$

Proof. Computations are easier when using $p \doteq k_a - 1, q = k_b, r = k_c$. Using these indices is underlined by using adding a $'$ to the names of the objects. The action of $r : \alpha \rightarrow \beta, \beta \rightarrow \gamma, \gamma \rightarrow \alpha$ on a Taylor-Marr triangle is described on the following table.

<i>points</i>	<i>trisect</i>	<i>Lubin</i>		<i>Lubin</i>	<i>trisect</i>	<i>points</i>
A'_{qr}	$B' \quad u \quad q$	β^6	$\alpha^2 \gamma^4 \phi^{(2q)}$	γ^6	$\alpha^4 \beta^2 \phi^{(2q)}$	B'_{zx}
	$C' \quad d \quad r$	γ^6	$\phi^r \alpha^2 \beta^4$	α^6	$\phi^r \beta^2 \gamma^4$	
B'_{rp}	$C' \quad u \quad r$	γ^6	$\alpha^4 \beta^2 \phi^{(2r)}$	α^6	$\beta^4 \gamma^2 \phi^{(2r)}$	C'_{xy}
	$A' \quad d \quad p$	α^6	$\phi^p \beta^2 \gamma^4$	β^6	$\phi^p \alpha^4 \gamma^2$	
C'_{pq}	$A' \quad u \quad p$	α^6	$\beta^4 \gamma^2 \phi^{(2p)}$	β^6	$\alpha^2 \gamma^4 \phi^{(2p)}$	A'_{yz}
	$B' \quad d \quad q$	β^6	$\phi^q \alpha^4 \gamma^2$	γ^6	$\phi^q \alpha^2 \beta^4$	

Each vertex of $\mathcal{T}_{\mathbf{k}}$ (col. 1) is the intersection of two trisectors, that are named (col. 2) and then described (col. 3) as passing by two points obtained from 30.2. Then transformation is applied (col. 4) and the result is processed back (col. 5 and 6). One obtains $x = q, y = r, z = p$, leading to (30.9). \square

Therefore *strange* remains ever *strange*, while *even* and *odd* ($\sum \mathbf{k} \equiv 1$) are only permuted by *odd* ($\text{sgn} = -1$) elements of \mathcal{PG}_{216} .

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 \rightarrow r & \rightarrow r & \rightarrow \text{Fr} \\
 \downarrow 000 \ 120 \ 102 & \downarrow 200 \ 110 \ 101 & \downarrow 100 \ 010 \ 001 \\
 \text{even} = m \ 222 \ 012 \ 021, & \text{odd} = m \ 122 \ 002 \ 020, & \text{strange} = m \ 022 \ 202 \ 220 \\
 111 \ 201 \ 210 & 011 \ 221 \ 212 & 211 \ 121 \ 112
 \end{array} \quad (30.10)$$

When canceling all details, "*r* rotates the vertices, *m* rotates the trisectors while *t* swaps the orientation and therefore the **up** and the **down** trisectors".

Moreover it is obvious from (30.2) that each element of \mathcal{PG}_{216} commutes with the isogonal conjugacy.

30.4.7 The Cones proof about the strange triangles

In an illuminating paper, Connes (1998) has considered the rotations g_a with center A and angle $2(A + k_a\pi)/3$, etc. Their associated turns are respectively: $\omega = \phi^p\beta/\gamma$, $\omega = \phi^q\gamma/\alpha$, $\omega = \phi^r\alpha$. Products g_cg_b , g_bg_a , g_ag_c are proper rotations and their centers are the intersections of the corresponding trisectors. The product $g_c^3g_b^3g_a^3$ is the identity since g_a^3 is the product of the reflections with respect to AB and AC , etc. Then Connes has proven that :

Theorem 30.4.2. *Let g_c, g_b, g_a be affine transforms such that g_cg_b , g_bg_a , g_ag_c , $g_cg_bg_a$ are not translations and then let $\delta = \omega(g_cg_bg_a)$. Then we have equivalence between (1) $g_c^3g_b^3g_a^3 = 1$ and (2) $\delta^3 = 1$ and $U + V\delta + W\delta^2 = 0$ where U, V, W are, respectively, the fixed points of g_cg_b , g_bg_a , g_ag_c .*

In our problem, $\omega(g_c, g_b, g_a) = \phi^{p+q+r}$, so $\mathcal{T}_{\mathbf{k}}$ is equilateral if and only if $k_a + k_b + k_c \not\equiv 1 \pmod{3}$. This explains why strange triangles are nor equilateral.

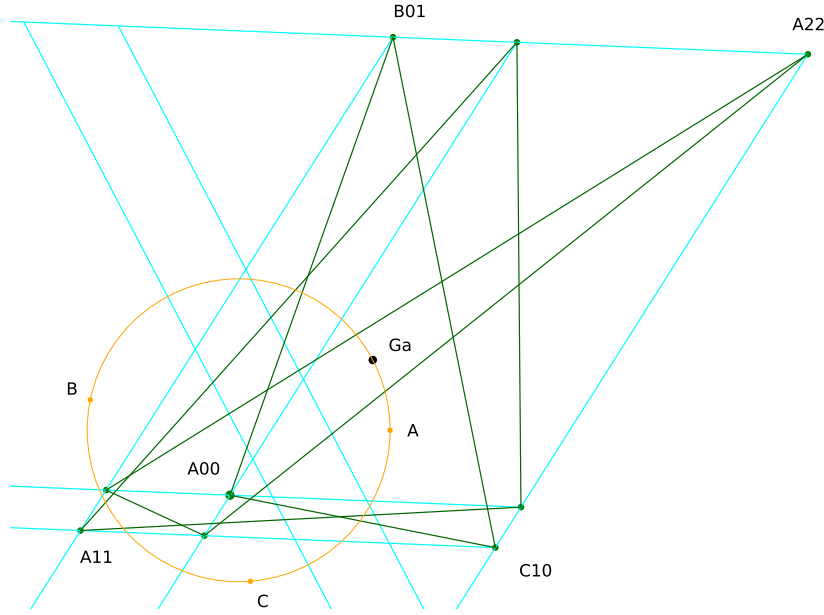
30.5 Orbits

30.5.1 Orbit of a vertex

Theorem 30.4.1 has shown that Morley centers $M_{\mathbf{k}}$ form a single orbit under the action of \mathcal{PG}_{18} . Consider now the orbit of a Morley vertex. It exists a transposition that fixes this point. Therefore, its orbit under group \mathcal{PG}_{18} is 9-sized. For example, the orbit $\mathcal{PG}_{18}(A_{00})$, described in the $\langle r, m \rangle$ order, contains :

$$A_{00}, B_{01}, C_{10} ; A_{22}, B_{20}, C_{02} ; A_{11}, B_{12}, C_{21}$$

These are the vertices of the first column of the *strange* family of triangles, see (30.10) and Figure 30.6.

Figure 30.6: The vertex A_{00} and its 9-sized orbit

One can check that these three triangles share the same centroid $G_a \stackrel{L6}{=} \alpha^2 \beta^2 \gamma^2$, a point on the unit circle. Noting G_{ag}^* the isogonal conjugate of this point, one can check that $\omega^2(G_{ag}^*) = -\alpha^4 \beta^4 \gamma^4$ and that G_{ag}^* is the direction of the line $B_{00}C_{00}$. Therefore, the direction of the axes of the Morley triangles are given by : $\delta_a \doteq (-G_a)_g^*$, etc.

From (30.9), we can see that the **strange** operator $s \doteq \text{Fr}$ rotates the vertices of the flagship triangle \mathcal{T}_{000} according to: $A_{00} \rightarrow B_{00} \rightarrow C_{00} \rightarrow A_{00}$. For the other Morley triangles, s has to be transformed by \mathcal{PG}_{18} -conjugacy, leading to $r^{\{1,2\}} F^{\{0,1,2\}}$. As barycenter of an orbit, G_A is invariant by \mathcal{PG}_{18} and so are the three δ , while they are rotated by s .

Since the circumcenter (origin) is the barycenter of the three G_A , it is also the barycenter of the nine M_{even} and the barycenter of the nine M_{odd} .

30.5.2 Orbits of the Morley and the Taylor-Marr centers

When using barycentric coordinates, $U \stackrel{bar}{\simeq} u : v : w$ has to be interpreted as $U = (uA + vB + wC) / (u + v + w)$. Taylor and Marr have proven that :

$$M_{\mathbf{k}} \stackrel{bar}{\simeq} \sin A \left(\cos \frac{A + 2k_a\pi}{3} + 2 \cos \frac{B + 2k_b\pi}{3} \cos \frac{C + 2k_c\pi}{3} \right) : \text{etc} : \text{etc} \quad (30.11)$$

But this should not give the impression of a 27-sized family. When replacing sin and cos using $\exp i(A + 2k_a)/3 \stackrel{L6}{=} -\phi^p \gamma / \beta$, etc from Figure 30.2 and the inscribed angle theorem, one re-obtains the Connes (1998) dichotomy. The Morley case is:

$$M_{\mathbf{k}} \stackrel{L6}{=} \frac{1}{3} \sum_3 ((\phi^r - \phi^{-p-q}) \alpha^2 \beta^4 - (\phi^{p+q} - \phi^{-r}) \alpha^4 \beta^2) \quad \text{when } p + q + r \not\equiv 0$$

(remember: $q = k_b$, but $p = k_a - 1$), while the M_{100} obtained from (30.11) is not the center G_A of the strange triangle \mathcal{T}_{100} , but the point at infinity δ_a , i.e. the direction of the perpendicular bisector of segment $[B_{00}C_{00}]$. This strange behavior is due to cancellation of ϕ -powers according to $1 + \phi + \phi^2 = 0$. The barycentric formula looks symmetric, but an effective symmetry would only allow a 9-sized \mathcal{PG}_{18} -orbit for M_{000} , not to a 18-sized one.

Let us consider the polynomial $\Phi(\mathbf{Z})$ enumerating the Morley affixes. We have :

$$\Phi(\mathbf{Z}) \doteq \prod_{g \in \mathcal{PG}_{18}} (\mathbf{Z} - g(z_{000}))$$

This polynomial is obviously invariant under the action of \mathcal{PG}_{18} and therefore can be expressed using only the symmetric functions σ_j . One obtains :

$$\Phi(\mathbf{Z}) = \mathbf{Z}^{18} - 6\mathbf{Z}^{16}\sigma_2 + 12\mathbf{Z}^{15}\sigma_3 + 15\mathbf{Z}^{14}\sigma_2^2 - 60\mathbf{Z}^{13}\sigma_2\sigma_3 + (\text{rather large expression})$$

This expression cannot be factored in $\mathbb{Q}[z_A, z_B, z_C]$ and therefore the 18 Morley centers form an indiscernible family, that must be considered as a whole.

30.5.3 Orbits of the primary perspectors

As already said, each of the 27 triangles $\mathcal{T}_{\mathbf{k}}$ is perspective with ABC : lines $AA_{\mathbf{k}}, BB_{\mathbf{k}}, CC_{\mathbf{k}}$ are concurring at a same point, the perspector $P_{\mathbf{k}}$. A "good looking formula" is [Kimberling, 1998-2024](#) : $P_{\mathbf{k}} \simeq \sin A \div \cos((A + 2k_a\pi)/3) : \text{etc} : \text{etc}$. But the Cones dichotomy is ever present.

Using again Figure 30.2, one obtains $P_{100} \stackrel{L6}{=} S_3 - S_1S_2 + S_1^2S_3/S_2$ where $S_1 = \alpha^2 + \beta^2 + \gamma^2$, etc, result that can be propagated to all the P_{strange} via the strange group \mathcal{PG}_9^\bullet . On the contrary, P_{000} has a rather tedious affix (SAGE-length 761), and its \mathcal{PG}_{18} -orbit is 18-sized.

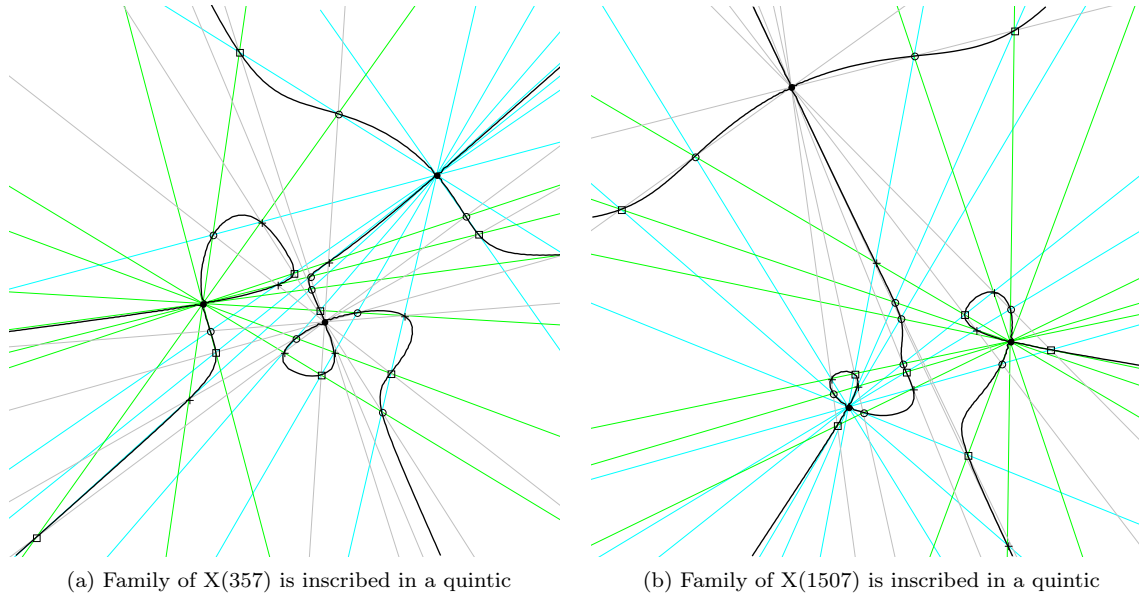


Figure 30.7: Perspectors of first and second kind

The barycentric formula explains nevertheless why all the 27 $P_{\mathbf{k}}$ share the same alignment properties. For example, on each line issued from A , there are three $P_{\mathbf{k}}$: an even one (circle), an odd one (box) and a strange one (cross). Moreover, all the 27 $P_{\mathbf{k}}$ are on a same circular quintic (the curve on Figure 30.7a). Due to the invariance under \mathcal{PG}_{18} , the equation of this curve can be written using only the full symmetric functions σ_j . See [Gibert \(2004-2024, reference Q003\)](#) or [Douillet \(2014a\)](#) for more details.

In Subsection 30.2.3, we have already introduced the adjunct triangles $\mathcal{T}_{\mathbf{k}}^*$ obtained by considering **down-up** intersections, instead of the **up-down** ones. These triangles are not equilateral, but are nevertheless perspective with ABC with respect to $(P_{\mathbf{k}})_g^*$ (general property of the isogonal duality). Points P_{000}^*, P_{111}^* and P_{222}^* are X(358), X(1135) and X(1137) in the [Kimberling](#) database. Obviously, $P_j^* \simeq \sin A \times \cos((A + 2k_a\pi)/3) : \text{etc} : \text{etc}$

By isogonal conjugacy, curve Q003 transforms into an algebraic curve of degree 10. But A is a double point of Q003, so that $(BC)^2$ is a factor of $Q003_g^*$ and it remains an algebraic curve of degree 4, which contains all the 27 $P_{\mathbf{k}}^*$. See [Gibert \(2004-2024, reference Q002\)](#) or [Douillet \(2014a\)](#) for more details. Here again, the coefficients only depends of the σ_j .

As it can be seen, by computing the corresponding determinant or otherwise, the points $M_{\mathbf{k}}$, $P_{\mathbf{k}}$ and $P_{\mathbf{k}}^*$ that belong to the same index are aligned.

30.5.4 Orbits of the secondary perspectors

The parameterization $z_A = \alpha^6$, etc was tailored in order to access individually each of the inexceners. The group \mathcal{PG}_{18} leaves invariant the incenter I_0 , and induces \mathfrak{S}_3 on the excenters $I_a I_b I_c$. The full \mathfrak{S}_4 group is obtained by introducing the Lemoine transforms, leading to the group \mathcal{PG}_{72} . Called "transformation continue" by [Lemoine \(1900\)](#), the B-Lemoine transform moves these inexceners according to $I_0 \longleftrightarrow I_b$, $I_a \longleftrightarrow I_c$ while its action on the barycentrics is $a : b : c \mapsto -a : b : c$ and its action on α, β, γ has already been described using the Y matrix given in (30.7).

It happens that triangles $\mathcal{T}_{\mathbf{k}}$ are perspective with $I_a I_b I_c$: lines $I_a A_{\mathbf{k}}$, $I_b B_{\mathbf{k}}$, $I_c C_{\mathbf{k}}$ are concurring at a same point, the secondary perspector $Q_{\mathbf{k}}$. A direct computation gives $Q_{100} \stackrel{L6}{=} -s_1 s_2 s_3 + s_2^3 + s_3^2 - 2 s_2^2 s_3 / s_1$ for the strange perspector, while the affix of Q_{000} is skew enough ((length 1042) to generate a 18-size orbit.

In fact, triangles $\mathcal{T}_{\mathbf{k}}$ are not only perspective with $I_a I_b I_c$, as carried by respectively by groups \mathcal{PG}_9^\bullet and \mathcal{PG}_{18} . They are also perspective with triangles $I_0 I_c I_b$, etc as carried by groups \mathcal{PG}_{72} and \mathcal{PG}_{36}^+ .

These 27 $Q_{\mathbf{k}}$ are involved in alignments with $I_a I_b I_c$ as shown in Figure 30.7b. For example, on each line issued from I_a , there are three $Q_{\mathbf{k}}$: an even one (circle), an odd one (box) and a strange one (cross). Moreover, all the 27 $Q_{\mathbf{k}}$ are on a same circular quintic (the curve on Figure 30.7a). This is a new result, more details in [Douillet \(2014a\)](#). Due to the alignments, the 3 excenters are singular points while the incenter is ordinary: the curve is not invariant under the Lemoine transforms and its equation must be written in Lubin(2), using the symmetric functions S_j where $S_1 \stackrel{L6}{=} \alpha^3 + \beta^3 + \gamma^3$, etc instead of the $\sigma_1 \stackrel{L6}{=} \alpha^6 + \beta^6 + \gamma^6$, etc.

The equation of a 5-curve \mathcal{Q} involves 21 coefficients and can be written as a 21×21 determinant. But the expression of Q_{000} is large (8 times larger than M_{000}) while the simplification $z_A = \alpha^3$, etc can no more be used. But numerical investigations allow to identify some points on \mathcal{Q} :

3	the vertices A, B, C
1	I_0
9	the excenters (being singular, they count as 3×3)
2	the umbilics
3	the singular focus $(I_a + I_b + I_c) / 3$, which belongs to the curve (2+1)
1	while the Bevan pair (X(2444) are indiscernible X(2445) only counts one.
Σ	this amounts to 19 points

Therefore we can conduct the computations using Lubin(2), leaving only one coefficient undetermined. Thereafter, one can go back to Lubin(6) and use the simpler Q_{100} to determine the only possible equation. The proof comes from testing that (1) $Q_{000} \in \mathcal{Q}$ and (2) the equation can be send back to Lubin(2). Then \mathcal{PG}_{72} extends the property to all the 27 $Q_{\mathbf{k}}$.

The adjunct triangles $\mathcal{T}_{\mathbf{k}}^*$ are themselves perspective with $I_a I_b I_c$, defining a family of perspectors $R_{\mathbf{k}}$ (they are not the the conjugates of the $Q_{\mathbf{k}}$). These points are aligned by triples (even, odd, strange) with the excenters. Moreover, I_0 , $P_{\mathbf{k}}$, $R_{\mathbf{k}}$ are aligned for each \mathbf{k} . But, contrary to the other families, there is no quintic that contains all the 27 $R_{\mathbf{k}}$, while the circular quintic that contains the 18 "true" perspectors contains no [Kimberling](#) centers. Even the $\mathbf{k} = 100$ affix is not so simple, since one has :

$$R_{100} \stackrel{L6}{=} (s_1^3 s_2 s_3 - s_1^2 s_2^3 - s_1^2 s_3^2 + s_1 s_2^2 s_3 + s_2^4 - s_2 s_3^2) \div (s_1^2 - s_2)$$

30.6 Some applications

30.6.1 Martiny circles

Let us choose a Morley vertex, say $V = A_{00}$. It belongs to exactly an even and an odd Morley triangle (here \mathcal{T}_{000} and \mathcal{T}_{200}). The four other vertices of these two triangles are cocyclic together with the ABC vertex used to name V (here A , B_{00} , B_{02} , C_{00} , C_{20}). According to [Gambier \(1954\)](#), this unpublished result was obtained by H. Martiny (1882-1963). This can be checked directly, and the

center of the circle is easy to find. Let us call it D_{A00} . Its images under $\langle m \rangle$ are D_{A00} , D_{A22} , D_{A11} and we have :

$$m^k(D_{A22}) \underset{L6}{=} -\alpha^2\beta^2\gamma_1^2 + \left(\frac{\beta}{\gamma} \phi^k + \frac{\gamma}{\beta} \phi^{-k} \right) \beta\gamma\alpha^4$$

Over the $\langle m \rangle$ orbit, the parentheses sum to 0 and the centroid of these points is antipodal with the already obtained point $G_A \underset{L6}{=} \alpha^2\beta^2\gamma^2$. Moreover, these parentheses are real, and this also applies to the obvious :

$$A \underset{L6}{=} -\alpha^2\beta^2\gamma_1^2 + \left(\frac{\alpha^2}{\beta\gamma} + \frac{\beta\gamma}{\alpha^2} \right) \beta\gamma\alpha^4$$

Therefore A , D_{A00} , D_{A22} , D_{A11} are aligned and the three circles are tangent in A . Triplicating this result by the operator F , we can generate the nine A-Martiny circles: they all go through A and the angles they form with each other are multiples of 60° (since the $-\phi^k\alpha^2\beta^2\gamma^2$ are at 120° from each other).

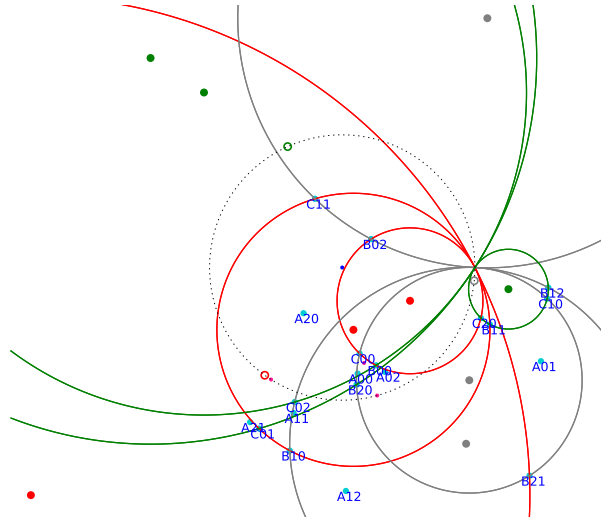


Figure 30.8: The nine A-Martiny circles and their centers

30.6.2 Equilateral perspectors

Specific properties appear when several Morley centers are involved at the same time. In order to illustrate the problematic, we will study two problems of this kind: the perspectivity of two Morley triangles, and the intersection of two Morley cubics. The set of all the pairs $\{\vartheta, \kappa\}$ where $\vartheta \neq \kappa$ contains $(18 \times 17)/2 = 153$ elements. Let us say that a pair is *even* or *odd* according to $\text{sgn} g$ where $\kappa = g \cdot \vartheta$ and $g \in \mathcal{PG}_{18}$. Then, under the action of \mathcal{PG}_{18} , the *even* pairs form four 18-sized orbits, while the *odd* pairs form nine 9-sized ones (as it should be, we have $18 \times 4 + 9 \times 9 = 153$).

Let us see why. Since \mathcal{PG}_{18} is faithful over the M_ϑ , $g(\{x, y\}) = \{x, y\}$ implies either $xg = x$, $yg = y$ (and then $g = 1$) or $xg = y$, $yg = x$ (and then $xg^2 = x$, so that g is odd). Conversely, the order of any $g \in \mathcal{PG}_{18}$ is 2.

The action of $\langle s, m \rangle$ over the 27 Taylor-Marr indices is summarized by the following table :

	\mathcal{T}_{000}	<i>even</i>						<i>odd</i>			<i>strange</i>	
		\rightarrow	m		\rightarrow	?		\rightarrow	m		\rightarrow	m
<i>id</i>	A_{00}	000	222	111	120	102	200	122	011	100	022	211
s	B_{00}	000	222	111	012	210	020	212	101	010	202	121
s ²	C_{00}	000	222	111	201	021	002	221	110	001	220	112

We will now consider the perspectivity between two Morley triangles, written as $\mathcal{T}_{000} \cdot g_\vartheta$ and $\mathcal{T}_{000} \cdot g_{\kappa'}$: vertices are ordered according to the order transmitted by \mathcal{PG}_{18} from the ordering A_{00}, B_{00}, C_{00} . Oriented that way, these triangles are homothetic and therefore in perspective. Their perspector $S_{\vartheta\kappa}$ is obviously on the line $M_\vartheta M_\kappa$ joining the centers. These perspectors can therefore be characterized by the real numbers μ_ϑ such that :

$$S_{\vartheta;000} = \mu M_{000} + (1 - \mu) M_\vartheta$$

After some computations, one obtains the following table :

\mathcal{T}_ϑ , the other triangle		\mathcal{PG}_{18}	perspector
m, m^2	222,111	18	P_{000}^*, P_{111}^*
r, r^2	120,102	18	$S, S r^2$
$mr, m^2 r^2$	012,210	18	$S s, S s r^2$
$m^2 r, m r^2$	201,021	18	$S s^2, S s^2 r^2$
$tm^3, tm^1 r^2, tm^1 r$	200,020,002	9×3	A_{00}, B_{00}, C_{00}
$tm^1, tm^2 r^2, tm^2 r$	122,212,221	9×3	$\widehat{S}, \widehat{S} s, \widehat{S} s^2$
$tm^2, tm^3 r^2, tm^3 r$	011,101,110	9×3	$\widetilde{S}, \widetilde{S} s, \widetilde{S} s^2$

Here again, except from the first one, the orbits are grouped into triples under the action of the strange operator s , so that we have essentially 3 new points to introduce :

$$\begin{aligned} \mu &\stackrel{\text{L6}}{=} \frac{(\phi + 2)(\alpha^2 \beta^2 - \gamma^4)}{(\beta^2 - \gamma^2)(\gamma^2 \phi^2 - \alpha^2)} & \tilde{\mu} &\stackrel{\text{L6}}{=} \frac{\alpha^2 \gamma^2 \phi^2 + \alpha^2 \beta^2 \phi + 2\alpha^4 + 2\beta^2 \gamma^2}{\alpha^2 \beta^2 \phi^2 + \alpha^2 \gamma^2 \phi - \alpha^4 - \beta^2 \gamma^2} \\ & & \widehat{\mu} &\stackrel{\text{L6}}{=} \frac{(\alpha^4 \beta^2 - 2\alpha^2 \gamma^4 + \beta^4 \gamma^2) \phi^2 - (\alpha^4 \gamma^2 - 2\alpha^2 \beta^4 + \beta^2 \gamma^4) \phi}{\alpha^2 \gamma^4 \phi^2 - \alpha^2 \beta^4 \phi + (2\phi + 1) \alpha^2 \beta^2 \gamma^2 + \alpha^4 \beta^2 - \alpha^4 \gamma^2 + \beta^4 \gamma^2 - \beta^2 \gamma^4} \end{aligned}$$

30.7 Summary of this chapter

When drawing the configuration formed by the bisectors of a triangle, one obtains the four points known as the inexcenrs. One can see that their affixes are the roots of the polynomial :

$$\Phi_{inex}(\mathbf{Z}) = \mathbf{Z}^4 - 2\mathbf{Z}^2 \sigma_2 + 8\mathbf{Z} \sigma_3 - 4\sigma_1 \sigma_3 + \sigma_2^2$$

where the σ_j are the symmetric functions in z_A , etc. Since this polynomial doesn't factor naturally, the four inexcenrs form an indiscernible family, that must be considered as a whole. These four points are connected by the Lemoine transforms, that were called "transformations continues" in the original paper (Lemoine, 1900).

The present chapter is about the Morley configuration, that occurs when drawing the trisectors of the angles of a triangle. In this configuration, a family of 18 triangles can be identified that are together equilateral and in perspective with the original triangle. Their centers are called the Morley centers and form a 18-sized algebraically indiscernible family .

We have investigated the operators acting over the Morley configuration. The usual approach is to only consider these operators as simple heuristics. On the contrary, we have put these operators in the foreground, and shown how they can be naturally introduced from the parameterization given by Lubin (1955)

We have elicited the structure of the groups formed by the various subsets of these operators. The reference group is \mathcal{PG}_{216} , inventoried as $\mathcal{G}[216.92]$ in the SAGE database. The group \mathcal{PG}_{18} (inventoried as $\mathcal{G}[18.4]$) is the one that connects the Morley centers in a single orbit. When enlarged with the Lemoine transforms, we obtain the group \mathcal{PG}_{72} (inventoried as $\mathcal{G}[72.43]$) that connects the perspectors between the Morley triangles and the in-excentral triangles.

We have also examined the various attempts made to enlarge the Morley family, using equilateral triangles that are not in perspective or perspective triangles that are not equilateral. In both cases, the new objects are not connected by the Morley group, but by a smaller group that explains why these attempts are behaving strangely. In fact, they appear as too symmetric to fulfill their requirements.

Chapter 31

Using Kimberling's database into Maple

In this chapter, we give the specifications of our implementation of the [Kimberling](#) ETC. At the present moment, this implementation is restricted to a private use. The intent was to participate to a distributed maintenance of the database, together with providing "random search keys", specific to each local copy, in order to allow a distributed method of proof.

The pillar of everything is the tandem `~/etc/bar_igcta.csv` (formal data) and `sk` (numerical data). The first one is written once for ever using `mysql/phpMyAdmin`, and cured until it becomes `Maple`-compliant. In any case, both databases are read and parsed at request, when a session begins.

31.1 Sparse version (2019 and after)

The old procedure `relire` has been split. The new procedure `relire` deals with the formal values, stored in the file `~/ipse/public_html/etc/bar_igtca.csv`. On the other hand, procedure `reliresk` reads the maple archive stored as `cat(encyfile[1 .. -9], "relire_sk/pas-toujours/relire_sk.m")`.

31.1.1 How-to update

1. copy `~/ipse/docs/Cherche/Geometry/ETC_2018` towards `.../ETC_2023`. Suppress everything, except from `download.sh` and the various links (the `*.gif` are used by the etc files, the other are probably useless).

2. update the number of pages to load, update `http://` into `https://` and run the batch `download.sh`.

3. Run the builders for the search keys. They are in `relire_sk.mw`. See ALG. 6.3, ALG. 6.4

`new_build_sk(non destructive)`. Uses `Geometry/ETC_2023`

`newbuild_enc_sort(non destructive)`.

Uses `~/ipse/public_html/etc/sk_plex.csv` Each item is `1=jj ; 2,3,4= sk[jj] ; 5=xk[jj]`

exec `save (in relire_sk.m)`
`fac47, smax, siz_enc, list_collisions`
`enc_sort, fk, sk`

4. Then the formal values of the coordinates can be loaded.

31.1.2 Duplicates

From now on (2023), it will be assumed that `reliresk` contains the authoritative values, while their counterparts in `relire` are no more maintained. Shouldn't be loaded.

gerdat list of lines going through the point. Skip it!

hc hc[j]=sk[j][1]*_facency. Skip it !

enc_sort saved in **relire_sk.m**. Removed from **relire**.

gg,tt,cc,acisogon, isotom, complem, anticomplem. No more used

31.1.3 la table barita

<i>j</i>	ff	<i>sk</i>			<i>xyz</i>		
6800	0	−1.498509	−2.971024	5.469533	−1.498509	−2.971024	5.469533
6801	0	0.3093201	0.7440262	−0.05334631	0.3093201	0.7440262	−0.05334631
6802	0	−0.6812215	0.09831283	1.582909	−0.6812215	0.09831283	1.582909
6803	0	0.4724080	0.5413951	−0.01380309	0.0	0.0	0.0
6804	0	0.2233194	0.1687478	0.6079328	0.0	0.0	0.0
6805	0	0.2628773	0.2279281	0.5091946	0.0	0.0	0.0
6806	0	0.4146746	0.4550234	0.1303019	0.0	0.0	0.0
6807	0	−0.3066239	−0.6240702	1.930694	0.0	0.0	0.0
6808	0	−2.636019	−4.108946	7.744965	0.0	0.0	0.0
6809	0	1.581039	2.199954	−2.780993	0.0	0.0	0.0
6810	na	−0.03692055	−0.2205824	1.257503	6810	0	0
6811	na	−0.1950282	−0.4571182	1.652146	6811	0	0
6812	na	−0.3790703	−0.7324531	2.111523	6812	0	0
6813	na	−148.1508	−221.8054	370.9562	6813	0	0
6814	na	−1.684099	−2.684833	5.368932	6814	0	0

31.1.4 Description

When searching for points satisfying some property, we want to use a procedure like

```
localize:= proc(expr, px := vx) global myfun; local lediv;
myfun := unapply(evalf(subs(iciK, expr)), op(convert(px, list)))@OP;
lediv:= evalf(sqrt(add(myfun(sk[j])^2, j=1..10)/10));
seq('if'(abs(myfun(sk[j]))/lediv < 1/1000000000000, j, NULL), j = 1 .. smax);
end proc;
```

where the index ranges through the $smax = 15639$ points. Thus we need a full list of numerical barycentrics (named **sk** in our code), even where we don't have created the corresponding formal values. This is done using two tables.

fk in $\{0, 1, 2\}$. Generalizes the flag **ff**, by introducing **fk=2** when the barycentrics of $X(n)$ have complex values when using $a = 6, b = 9, c = 13$.

sk generalizes **xyz**, i.e. contains the numerical values of the barycentrics of $X(n)$ for $n \leq 15639$. For the sake of efficiency, this table is mostly stored in **\$ipse/public_html/etc/t6913.csv** (the real values), while the complex values are stored in **\$ipse/public_html/etc/sk_plex.csv** (and also corrections, when required).

31.1.5 Rationales

This paradigm shift has been allowed by the fact that, nowadays, the [Kimberling \(1998-2024\)](#) database provides the searchkeys for the three systems (6, 9, 13), (9, 13, 6) and (13, 6, 9), and not only for the (6, 9, 13). They are buried in the http://faculty.evansville.edu/ck6/encyclopedia/Search_6_9_13.html, etc. tables. Put together, these three numbers are, *quite all of the time*, the normalized trilinear coordinates of the given point, and we can use

$$[x, y, z] = [6t_A, 9t_B, 13t_C]$$

To be more specific, the table **fk** is filled according to the following criteria (where $=_\epsilon$ is defined by "less different than $1E - 16$ "), we have three kinds of points

fk=0 where $x + y + z =_\epsilon 8\sqrt{35}$: ordinary points at finite distance, then normalized so that $x + y + z = 1$

- fk=1 where $x + y + z =_\epsilon 0$: points at infinity, then normalized so that $1/x + 1/y + 1/z = 1$.
- fk=2 for the other cases (complex points... or errors) 5000, 5001, 5002, 5003, 5374, 8072, 8073, 11065, 11066, 14091

We can check that (for $n \leq jmax = 6802$) all the corresponding normalized values (see Section 6.3) are equal with the tabulated xyz except from the complex points (expected behavior).

Remark 31.1.1. This gives a better method to exclude the points that are perceived as having a "bad behavior":

1. Eight points non algebraic points, tagged by `fdat[n]="special"`, namely $X(n)$ where $n=368, 369, 370, 1144, 3232, 5373, 5394, 5626$.
2. Eight points with "too long" barycentric formulas (> 735), tagged by `fdat[n]="len=..."`, namely $X(n)$ where $X(n)=5676, 5677, 5678, 5679, 5680, 5681, 5682, 5973$.

31.1.6 Usage: the new ency procedure

1. We start from $[-288, 1701, -2197]$ or from $[3538, 5293, -8831]$. The NORMALIZE algorithm ALG. 6.1 uses the value of

$$\frac{|x + y + z|}{|x| + |y| + |z|}$$

to decide if $x + y + z \not\approx 0$ (i.e. $M \notin \mathcal{L}_b$) or $x + y + z \approx 0$ (i.e. $M \in \mathcal{L}_b$). And then the column is standardized according its type. In the first case, we divide x by $-288 + 1701 - 2197 = -784$. In the second case, we multiply x by the sum of inverses $(1/3538 + 1/5293 - 1/8831) \approx 0.00036$. This gives the searchkeys 0.3673469 and 1.2677958.

2. The key is compared with the existing ones. The answer is either fail (and provide an interval for the keys) or a line from `enc_sort`. First element is a true key, second element is a sequence of integers, i.e. a single integer (best case) or a sequence of several integers
3. In the second case, a subsequent test is made using the three coordinates. More details at ALG. 6.6.

31.2 Older versions (2017 and before)

this section has been cancelled (was 31.2)

31.3 Synchronizing formal barycentrics and the search keys

this section has been cancelled (was 31.3)

31.4 Requirements (all versions)

this section has been cancelled (was 31.4)

31.5 Building the database

this section has been cancelled (was 31.5)

—

—

Bibliography

- Al-Khwarizmi M.i.M. *The Compendious Book on Calculation by Completion and Balancing (i.e., Algebra)* (London) (825), xvi, English=208, Arabic=124 pp. Pages 58/59 are missing, http://www.wilbourhall.org/pdfs/The_Algebra_of_Mohammed_Ben_Musa2.pdf.
 ▷ 2 citations located at sections 1 and 1.
- Alberich-Carramiñana M. *Geometry of the Plane Cremona Maps*. No. 1769 in Lecture Notes in Mathematics (Springer) (2002). ISBN 9783540428169. <http://books.google.fr/books?id=RHNKPhKyYIUC>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 17.2.
- Alberti L.B. *de Pictura; Sinisgalli, Rocco ed., English Trans.* (Cambridge University Press, 2011) (1435a). ISBN 9780511782190, xvi+214 pp. <https://dokumen.pub/qdownload/leon-battista-alberti-on-painting-new-translation-and-critical-ed-9781107000629-1107000629.html>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 7a.
- Alberti L.B. *de Pictura, Schefer ed.* (Macula, 1992) (1435b). ISBN 9782865890354, 269 pp.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 7b.
- Alberti L.B. *de la Statue, de la Peinture, Popelin ed., French* (Levy, Paris, 1869) (1435c), lxiv+30+94 pp.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 7c.
- Alexander J.W. *On the factorization of Cremona plane transformations*. *Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.*, vol. 17, no. 3, 295–300 (1916).
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 17.3.
- Arlan Ramsay R.D.R. *Introduction to Hyperbolic Geometry* (Springer Science and Business Media) (1995). ISBN 9780387943398, 289 pp.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 20.
- Artin E. *Geometric Algebra* (Interscience Publishers, New York) (1957), viii, 216 pp. <https://archive.org/details/geometricalgebra033556mbp>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 1.2.2.
- Audin M. *Geometrie-L3M1* (Edp Sciences) (2006). ISBN 9782868838834, 420 pp.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Ayme J.L. *Nouvelle approche du cercle de Fuhrmann* (2009). <http://pagesperso-orange.fr/jl.ayme/Docs/Le%20cercle%20de%20Fuhrmann.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 12.20.1.
- Ayme J.L. et al. *Cercles coaxiaux* (2014). In French, <http://www.les-mathematiques.net/phorum/read.php?8,1033053,1033763#msg-1033763>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 8.
- Baragar A. *A Survey of Classical and Modern Geometries with Computer Activities* (Prentice Hall, New Jersey) (2001), 370 pp.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .

- Basset A.B. *An elementary treatise on cubic and quartic curves* (Deighton, Bell and Co., Cambridge) (1901), 1–255 pp. <https://archive.org/download/elementarytreati00bassuoft/elementarytreati00bassuoft.pdf>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Bataille M. *On the Foci of Circumparabolas*. *Forum Geometricorum*, vol. 11, 57–63 (2011). ISSN 1534-1178. <http://forumgeom.fau.edu/FG2011volume11/FG201107.pdf>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Berger M. *Geométrie* (Fernand Nathan, Paris) (1987). ISBN 2-09-191730-3, 430 pp. English translation : Springer.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Bernès M. *A propos des coordonnées angulaires*. *Journal de Mathématiques Élémentaires*, vol. III-5, 109–112 (1891). <https://archive.org/details/s3journaldemathm05pari/page/108/mode/2up>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 17.5.1.
- Bessot D. and Le Goff J.P. *Histoires de problèmes*, Barbin, Evelyne ed., chap. Mais où est donc passée la troisième dimension?, pp. 199–248 (1993). ISBN 2-7298-9368-7. <https://www.scribd.com/document/717461337/Histoire-de-Problemes-Histoire-Des-Mathematiques-PDFDrive>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Bezout É. *Recherches sur le degré des équations résultantes*. *Mémoires de l'Académie Royale des Sciences*, pp. 288–338 (1764). <http://www.bibnum.education.fr/sites/default/files/Bezout-texte.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 14.1.1.
- Bezout É. *Théorie générale des équations algébriques* (Ph.-D. Pierres, Paris) (1779), XXVIII-471 pp. Bibliothèque nationale de France, <http://catalogue.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/cb301023167>, [shitty-Frenchie numerization](#).
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Bogomolny A. *Apollonius problem: A mathematical doodle*. Cut The Knot! (2009). <http://www.cut-the-knot.org/pythagoras/Apollonius.shtml>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 13.11.
- Bogomolny A. *A possibly first proof of the concurrence of altitudes*. Cut The Knot! (2015). <https://www.cut-the-knot.org/triangle/Chapple.shtml>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 7.14.
- Bortolossi H.J., Custodio L.I.R.L. and Dias S.M.M. *Triangle Centers with C.a.R.* [accessed 2012/11/26] (2008). <http://www.uff.br/trianglecenters>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Bos H.J.M. *Lectures in the History of Mathematics* (American Mathematical Society) (1993). ISBN 978-0821809204, 197 pp.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Bottema O., Djordjevic R.Z., Janic R.R., Mitrovic D.S. and Vasic P.M. *Geometric inequalities* (Wolters-Noordhoff, Groningen, The Netherlands) (1969).
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 23.2.2.
- Boyce M. *Focal cubics associated with four points in a plane*. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, vol. 49, no. 4, 226–234 (1942). <https://www.jstor.org/stable/2303230>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Boyer C.B. *A history of Mathematics* (John Wiley & Sons, New York), 1st ed. (1968). ISBN 0-471-09373-4, xv, 717 pp. <https://www.hlevkin.com/hlevkin/90MathPhysBioBooks/mathHistory/Boyer-AHistoryOfMathematics.pdf>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .

- Brise E. *Perspective poristic triangles*. *Forum Geometricorum*, vol. 1, 9–16 (2001). <http://forumgeom.fau.edu/FG2001volume1/FG200103.pdf>.
 ▷ 2 citations located at sections 11.9.4 and 11.9.4.
- Cajori F. *A History of Mathematics* (Chelsea Publishing Company, New York) (1980).
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Cannon J.W., Floyd W.J., Kenyon R. and Parry W.R. *Flavors of Geometry*, Levy, Silvio Ed., vol. 31 of *MSRI Publications*, chap. Hyperbolic Geometry, pp. 59–115 (1997). <http://library.msri.org/books/Book31/files/cannon.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 20.
- Carathéodory C. *The most general transformations of plane regions which transform circles into circles*. *Bull. Amer. Math. Soc.*, vol. 43, no. 8, 573–579 (1937). <https://projecteuclid.org/euclid.bams/1183499927>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Caratheodory C. *Conformal Representation* (Dover) (1998). ISBN 9780486400280, 128 pp.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Caratheodory C. *Theory of Functions of a Complex Variable* (AMS Bookstore), 2nd ed. (2001). ISBN 9780821828311.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Carver W.B. *The conjugate coordinate system for plane euclidean geometry*. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, vol. 63, no. 9, 1–87 (1956). <https://www.jstor.org/action/doBasicSearch?Query=au%3A%22Walter+B.+Carver%22&so=rel>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 14.1.3.
- Casey J. *On bicircular quartics*. *Transactions of the Royal Irish Academy, Science*, vol. 24, 457–569 (1871). <http://www.jstor.com/stable/30079296>.
 ▷ 2 citations located at sections 22.1 and 22.1.8.
- Castellsaguer Q. *TTW, The Triangles Web*. [accessed 2012-11-26] (2002-2012). <http://www.xtec.cat/~qcastell/ttw/ttweng/portada.html>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Cayley A. *On the Bicircular Quartic. Addition to Professor Casey's Memoir "On a New Form of Tangential Equation"*. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London*, vol. 167, 441–460 (1877). <https://www.jstor.org/stable/109176>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Clawson J.W. *The complete quadrilateral*. *Annals of Mathematics, Second Series*, vol. 20, no. 4, 232–261 (1919). <http://www.jstor.org/stable/1967118>.
 ▷ 4 citations located at sections 27.1, 27.2.2, 27.4.8, and 27.4.9.
- Clawson J.W. *More theorems on the complete quadrilateral*. *Annals of Mathematics, Second Series*, vol. 23, no. 1, 40–44 (1921). <https://www.jstor.org/stable/1967780>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Clebsch A. *Tome 1 - Traité des sections coniques*. Leçons sur la géométrie (Gauthier-Villars, Paris) (1879), 420 pp. <https://archive.org/details/leonssurlago01clebuoft>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Clebsch A. *Tome 2 - Courbes du troisième ordre*. Leçons sur la géométrie (Gauthier-Villars, Paris) (1880), 460 pp. <http://books.google.com/books?id=AqMLAAAYAAJ&oe=UTF-8>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Clebsch A. *Tome 3 - Intégrales abéliennes et connexes*. Leçons sur la géométrie (Gauthier-Villars, Paris) (1883), 486 pp. <https://archive.org/details/leonssurlago03clebuoft>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .

- Coble A. *Cremona transformations and applications*. *Bulletin of the A.M.S.*, vol. 28, no. 7 (1922). <https://projecteuclid.org/journals/bulletin-of-the-american-mathematical-society/volume-28/issue-7/Cremona-transformations-and-applications-to-algebra-geometry-and-modular-functions/bams/1183485167.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 17.3.
- Collings N. *Reflections on reflections 2*. *Mathematical Gazette* (1974).
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 24.8.
- Connes A. *A new proof of Morley's theorem*. *Publications Mathématiques de l'IHES*, vol. 88, 43–46 (1998). http://www.numdam.org/item?id=PMIHES_1998__S88__43_0.
 ▷ 4 citations located at sections 29.1.1, 30.4.7, 30.4.7, and 30.5.2.
- Conway J. *Trilinear vs Barycentric Coordinates* (1997). <https://groups.google.com/g/geometry.research/c/ItbsZgvaAvo/m/Y1eolDgK-0gJ>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 1.4.3.
- Coolidge J.L. *A History of Geometrical Methods* (Clarendon Press, Oxford), 2003 Dover ed. (1940), xviii, 452 pp.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 1.
- Court N.A. *College Geometry* (Barnes & Noble) (1952).
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Court N.A. *Historically Speaking - The Problem of Apollonius*. *The Mathematics Teacher*, pp. 444–452 (1961).
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Coxeter H.S.M. *Introduction to Geometry* (Wiley), (1989), 2nd ed. (1961). ISBN 978-0471504580, 496 pp.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 29.1.1.
- Coxeter H.S.M. *The problem of Apollonius*. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, vol. 75, no. 1, 5–15 (1968). <http://www.jstor.org/stable/2315097>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Cremona L. *Elements of projective geometry*, tr. Leudesdorf, Charles (Clarendon Press, Oxford) (1885), xxiv, 310 pp. <https://name.umdl.umich.edu/acv3398.0001.001>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- cyril@ERE. *Einstein relatively easy* (2016). <http://einsteinrelativelyeasy.com/index.php/general-relativity/29-christoffel-symbol-use-case-calculation-in-polar-coordinates>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 20.9.15.
- Danneels E. *A simple perspectivity*. *Forum Geometricorum*, vol. 6, 199–203 (2006). <http://forumgeom.fau.edu/FG2006volume6/FG200622.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 3.13.7.
- Davis R. *A note on the focal relations of a bicircular quartic*. *Proceedings of the Edinburgh Mathematical Society*, vol. 19 (1900). doi:10.1017/S0013091500032648.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- de Villiers M. *The nine-point conic: a rediscovery and proof by computer*. *International Journal of Mathematical Education in Science and Technology*, vol. 37, no. 1, 7–14 (2006). <http://mysite.mweb.co.za/residents/profmd/ninepoint.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 11.12.5.
- Dean K. and van Lamoen F. *Geometric construction of reciprocal conjugations*. *Forum Geometricorum*, vol. 1, 115–120 (2001). <http://forumgeom.fau.edu/FG2001volume1/FG200116.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 17.4.1.

- Dekov D. *Fuhrmann center. Journal of Computer Generated Euclidean Geometry*, vol. 39 (2007). <http://www.dekovsoft.com/j/2007/39/JCGEG200739.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 23.15.3.
- Descartes R. *La Géométrie* (Hermann, Paris), 1886 ed. (1637), 70 pp. <http://www.gutenberg.org/files/26400/26400-pdf.pdf>.
 ▷ 2 citations located at sections 1 and 1.
- Déserti J. *Quelques propriétés des transformations birationnelles du plan projectif complexe. Actes du Séminaire de Théorie Spectrale et Géométrie*, vol. 27, 45–100 (2008–2009). <http://front.math.ucdavis.edu/0904.1395>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 17.3.2.
- Déserti J. *Odyssée dans le groupe de Cremona. SMF Gazette*, vol. 122, 31–44 (2009a). http://smf.emath.fr/Publications/Gazette/2009/122/smf_gazette_122_31-44.pdf.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 17.2.
- Déserti J. *Some properties of the Cremona group* (2009b). <http://www.math.jussieu.fr/~deserti/articles/survey.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 30.2.3.
- Déserti J. *Collected sources about the Cremona transforms* (2021). <http://deserti.perso.math.cnrs.fr/cremona.html>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section (document).
- Dieudonné J.A. *Algèbre linéaire et géométrie élémentaire* (Herman, Paris) (1964). <https://archive.org/details/algebrelineairee0000dieu>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Diller J. *Cremona transformations, surface automorphisms, and plain cubics. Michigan Math. J.*, vol. 60, no. 2, 409–440 (2011). <http://arxiv.org/pdf/0811.3038>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 17.2.2.
- Dobbs W.J. *Morley's triangle. Math. Gaz.*, vol. 22, 50–57 (1938).
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Douillet P.L. *Viewing and touching the pencils of cycles* (2009). <http://www.douillet.info/~douillet/triangle/Complex-pencils.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 13.5.
- Douillet P.L. *Morley and Fuhrmann revisited* (2010). <http://tech.groups.yahoo.com/group/Hyacinthos/message/18547>.
 ▷ 2 citations located at sections 29.1.3 and 30.1.3.
- Douillet P.L. *Géométrie projective pour agrégatifs* (2012). In French, <http://www.les-mathematiques.net/phorum/read.php?8,727099,727099,page=1>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 4.
- Douillet P.L. *Curves connecting the Morley centers* (2014a).
 ▷ 4 citations located at sections 30.2.1, 30.5.3, 30.5.3, and 30.5.4.
- Douillet P.L. *Groups acting over the Morley configuration* (2014b).
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 29.6.1.
- Douillet P.L. *Linear Families of Inscribed Triangles* (2014c). <http://www.les-mathematiques.net/phorum/read.php?8,994245>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 26.
- Douillet P.L. *Morley and Fuhrmann revisited* (2014d). In French, <http://www.les-mathematiques.net/phorum/read.php?8,562009,566006,page=3#msg-566006>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 30.1.3.
- Durège H. *Die ebenen Curven dritter Ordnung* (B. G. Teubner, Leipzig) (1871), 343 pp.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 21.2.

- Eduardo B.C. and Gonzalez-Aguirre D. *Human like vision using conformal geometric algebra*. In *Proc. 2006 IEEE Internat. Conf on Robotics and Automation, Orlando, Florida*, pp. 1299–1304 (2006). <http://ieeexplore.ieee.org/stamp/stamp.jsp?arnumber=01641888>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Ehrmann J.P. *Orion transform and perspector* (2003). <http://tech.groups.yahoo.com/group/Hyacinthos/message/8039>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 21.4.44.
- Ehrmann J.P. *Steiner's theorems on the complete quadrilateral*. *Forum Geometricorum*, vol. 4, 35–52 (2004). <http://forumgeom.fau.edu/FG2004volume4/FG200405.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 27.4.
- Ehrmann J.P. and Gibert B. *The Simson cubic*. *Forum Geometricorum*, vol. 1, 107–114 (2001). <http://forumgeom.fau.edu/FG2001volume1/FG200115.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 21.5.17.
- Ehrmann J.P. and Gibert B. *Special isocubics in the triangle plane*. [accessed 2009/07/31] (2005). <https://bernard-gibert.fr/files/Resources/SITP.pdf>.
 ▷ 4 citations located at sections 1.4.11, 21, 21.4.11, and 21.5.12.
- Eisenbud D., Green M. and Joe H. *Cayley-Bacharach theorems and conjectures*. *Bulletin of the American Mathematical Society*, vol. 33, no. 3 (1996). <https://www.msri.org/~de/papers/pdfs/1996-001.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 21.1.
- Eppstein D. *Tangencies: Apollonian circles* (2000). <http://www.ics.uci.edu/~eppstein/junkyard/tangencies/apollonian.html>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Eppstein D. *Tangent spheres and triangle centers*. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, vol. 108, no. 1, 63–66 (2001). <http://arxiv.org/pdf/math/9909152v1>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Euclid. *Elements* (Joyce, David E. ed., 1998) (fl. 300BC). <http://aleph0.clarku.edu/~djoyce/java/elements/elements.html>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 1.
- Evans L.S. *A conic through six triangle centers*. *Forum Geometricorum*, vol. 2, 89–92 (2002). <http://forumgeom.fau.edu/FG2002volume2/FG200211index.html>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 11.3.22.
- Fourrey E. *Curiosités géométriques* (Vuibert et Nony, Paris) (1907), viii+431 pp. <https://ia800905.us.archive.org/4/items/curiositesgeomet00fouriala/curiositesgeomet00fouriala.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 1.
- Francis R.L. *Modern mathematical milestones: Morley's mystery*. *Missouri Journal of Mathematical Sciences*, vol. 14, no. 1 (2002).
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Franklin F. *On confocal bicircular quartics*. *American Journal of Mathematics*, vol. 12, no. 4, 323–336 (1890). <https://www.jstor.org/stable/2369848>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Frère Gabriel-Marie. *Exercices de géométrie et 2000 questions résolues* (A. Mame et fils, Tours) (1912). <https://name.umd.umich.edu/acv3924.0001.001>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Fuhrmann W. *Synthetische Beweise Planimetrischer Sätze* (Leonhard Simion, Berlin) (1890), xxiv, 190 pp. <https://ia700404.us.archive.org/19/items/synthetischebew00fuhrgoog/synthetischebew00fuhrgoog.pdf>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .

- Funck O. *Geometrische Untersuchungen mit Computerunterstützung*. [accessed 2012/11/26] (2003). <http://www.matheraetsel.de/texte/exeterpunkt.doc>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 10.2.2.
- Gallatly W. *The modern geometry of the triangle* (F. Hodgson, London), second ed. (1910), viii, 126 pp. <http://www.archive.org/details/moderngeometryof00gallrich>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Gambier B. *Trisectrices des angles d'un triangle*. *Mathesis*, vol. 58, 174–215 (1949).
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Gambier B. *Trisectrices des angles d'un triangle*. *Ann. Sci. Ecole Norm. Sup. (3)*, vol. 71, 191–212 (1954). http://www.numdam.org/article/ASENS_1954_3_71_2_191_0.pdf.
 ▷ 2 citations located at sections 30.4.6 and 30.6.1.
- Gheorghe L.G. *Apollonius problem: in pursuit of a natural solution*. *International Journal Of Geometry*, vol. 9, no. 2, 39–51 (2020). <https://ijgeometry.com/wp-content/uploads/2020/09/3.-39-51.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 13.11.1.
- Gibert B. *Orthocorrespondence and orthopivotal cubics*. *Forum Geometricorum*, vol. 3, 1–27 (2003).
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 9.9.1.
- Gibert B. *CTP, Cubics in the Triangle Plane*. [accessed 2012/11/26] (2004–2024). <https://bernard-gibert.fr/index.html>.
 ▷ 11 citations located at sections (document), 21, 21.4.26, 21.4.55, 21.5.17, 21.5.28, 29.4.1, 29.4.2, 29.6.1, 30.5.3, and 30.5.3.
- Gibert B. *On two remarkable pencils of cubics of the triangle plane (rev.)*. [accessed 2012/11/27] (2005). <https://bernard-gibert.fr/files/Resources/cubNeubergSoddy.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 21.4.26.
- Gibert B. *How pivotal isocubics intersect the circumcircle*. *Forum Geometricorum*, vol. 7, 211–229 (2007). <http://forumgeom.fau.edu/FG2007volume7/FG200729.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 29.6.1.
- Gisch D. and Ribando J.M. *Apollonius' problem: A study of solutions and their connections*. *American Journal of Undergraduate Research*, vol. 3, no. 1, 15–25 (2004). <http://www.ajur.uni.edu/v3n1/Gisch%20and%20Ribando.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 13.11.
- Goodman-Strauss C. *Compass and straightedge in the Poincare disk*. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, vol. 108, no. 1, 38–49 (2001).
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 20.1.6.
- Goormaghtigh R. *The orthopole*. *The Tôhoku Mathematical Journal*, pp. 77–125 (1926). https://www.jstage.jst.go.jp/article/tmj1911/27/0/27_0_77/_pdf.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 27.10.5.
- Goormaghtigh R. *Analytic treatment of some orthopole theorems*. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, vol. 46, no. 5, 265–269 (1939). <http://www.jstor.org/stable/2303891>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 27.12.1.
- Goormaghtigh R. *items 1936 and 1937: The orthopole*. *The Mathematical Gazette*, , no. 292 (1946a). <https://www.jstor.org/stable/3610738>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 1.
- Goormaghtigh R. *Pairs of triangles inscribed in a circle*. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, vol. 53, 200–204 (1946b).
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Goormaghtigh R. *The Hervey point of the general n-line*. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, vol. 54, no. 6, 327–331 (1947). <https://www.jstor.org/stable/2305206>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .

- Grinberg D. *Generalisation of the Feuerbach point*. [Last-Modified: Tue, 12 Jul 2005] (2003a). <https://www.cip.ifi.lmu.de/~grinberg/GenFeuerPDF.zip>.
▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Grinberg D. *Isotomcomplement theory* (2003b). <http://tech.groups.yahoo.com/group/Hyacinthos/message/6423>.
▷ 1 citation located at section 12.23.2.
- Grinberg D. *Reflected circles concur* (2003c). <http://tech.groups.yahoo.com/group/Hyacinthos/message/6469>.
▷ 1 citation located at section 24.8.
- Grinberg D. *Umeceveian points, 3 new transformations* (2003d). <http://tech.groups.yahoo.com/group/Hyacinthos/message/6531>.
▷ 1 citation located at section 10.5.1.
- Grinberg D. *Variations of the Steinbart theorem*. [accessed 2009/07/24] (2003e). <https://www.cip.ifi.lmu.de/~grinberg/SteinbartVarPDF.zip>.
▷ 1 citation located at section 10.2.4.
- Grinberg D. *Website for euclidean and triangle geometry* (2006-2024). <https://www.cip.ifi.lmu.de/~grinberg/>.
▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Grinberg D. and Yiu P. *The Apollonius circle as a Tucker circle*. *Forum Geometricorum*, vol. 2, 175–182 (2002). <http://forumgeom.fau.edu/FG2002volume2/FG200222.pdf>.
▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Guinand A.P. *Euler lines, tritangent centers, and their triangles*. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, vol. 91, no. 5, 290–300 (1984). <http://www.jstor.org/stable/2322671>.
▷ 2 citations located at sections 12.19 and 12.19.
- Gulasekharan F.H.V. *The orthopolar circle*. *The Mathematical Gazette*, vol. 25, no. 267, 288–297 (1941). <http://www.jstor.org/stable/3606560>.
▷ 1 citation located at section 27.10.4.
- Guy R.K. *The Lighthouse Theorem, Morley & Malfatti: a budget of paradoxes*. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, vol. 114, no. 2, 97–141 (2007).
▷ 1 citation located at section 30.3.4.
- Hecquet J.C. *A propos des relations de Durrande dans le tétraèdre*. *Bulletin de l'APMEP*, vol. 59, no. 325, 645–651 (1980). <http://numerisation.univ-irem.fr/AAA/AAA80002/AAA80002.pdf>.
▷ 1 citation located at section 8.4.7.
- Heinich N. *La perspective académique*. *Actes de la Recherche en Sciences Sociales*, vol. 49, no. 1, 47–70 (1983). doi:10.3406/arss.1983.2198. Included in a thematic issue : La peinture et son public, https://www.persee.fr/doc/arss_0335-5322_1983_num_49_1_2198.
▷ 1 citation located at section 9.
- Hogendijk J.B. *Greek and Arabic Constructions of the Regular Heptagon*. *Archive for History of Exact Sciences*, vol. 30, no. 3/4, 197–330 (1984). <https://www.jstor.org/stable/41133724>.
▷ 1 citation located at section 11.15.
- Hogendijk J.B. *Al-Mu'taman ibn Hud, 11th century king of Saragossa and brilliant mathematician*. *Historia Mathematica*, vol. 22, 1–18 (1995).
▷ 1 citation located at section 10.5.1.
- Honsberger R. *Episodes in Nineteenth and Twentieth Century Euclidean Geometry* (Mathematical Association of America) (1995), 1–xvi, 1–174 pp.
▷ 1 citation located at section 27.16.2.
- Humenberger H. *On six collinear points in bicentric quadrilaterals*. *Mathematics Magazine*, vol. 96, no. 3, 285–95 (2023). <https://www.tandfonline.com/doi/full/10.1080/0025570X.2023.2204789>.
▷ 0 citations located at sections .

- Jackiw N. *The Geometer's Sketchpad(R): Dynamic Geometry(R) Software for Exploring Mathematics*. \$70.00 (2001). <https://geometer-s-sketchpad.software.informer.com/download>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Jodogne P. *La figure et l'oeuvre de Leon Battista Alberti dans le regard français. Bulletin de la Classe des lettres et des sciences morales et politiques*, vol. 6, no. 1, 247–266 (1995). https://www.persee.fr/doc/barb_0001-4133_1995_num_6_1_22972.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 7e.
- Johnson R.A. *Advanced Euclidean Geometry*. Dover Books on Mathematics Series (Houghton Mifflin, Boston), 3rd, dover 2007 ed. (1929), 319 pp. [https://www.isinj.com/mt-usamo/Advanced Euclidean Geometry - Roger Johnson \(Dover, 1960\).pdf](https://www.isinj.com/mt-usamo/Advanced%20Euclidean%20Geometry%20-%20Roger%20Johnson%20(Dover,%201960).pdf).
 ▷ 3 citations located at sections 13.8.12, 26.6, and 27.10.10.
- Josefsson M. *Fifteen collinear points in bicentric quadrilaterals. International Journal of Geometry*, vol. 12, no. 4, 13–27 (2023). <https://ijgeometry.com/wp-content/uploads/2023/09/2.-13-27.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 27.15.1.
- Juel C. *Ueber die Parameterbestimmung von Punkten auf Curven zweiter und dritter Ordnung. Mathematische Annalen, Leipzig*, vol. 47, 71–104 (1896). <http://eudml.org/doc/157783>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Karl, E. (Sister Mary Cordia). *The projective theory of orthopoles. The American Mathematical Monthly*, vol. 39, no. 6, 327–338 (1932). <http://www.jstor.org/stable/2300757>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 27.9.2.
- Kimberling C. *Functional equations associated with triangle geometry. Aequationes Mathematicae*, vol. 45, 127–152 (1993).
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 2.1.12.
- Kimberling C. *Major centers of triangles. The American Mathematical Monthly*, vol. 104, no. 5 (1997). <https://www.jstor.org/stable/2974736>.
 ▷ 2 citations located at sections 2.1.12 and 2.1.2.
- Kimberling C. *Triangle centers and central triangles*, vol. 129 of *Congressus numerantium* (Utilitas Mathematica Publishing, Winnipeg, Manitoba) (1998), xxv, 295 pp.
 ▷ 8 citations located at sections 1, 2, 3.10.4, 3.11.5, 17.4.4, 21.4, 21.5, and 29.7.1.
- Kimberling C. *ETC, Encyclopedia of Triangle Centers* (1998–2024). <http://faculty.evansville.edu/ck6/encyclopedia/>.
 ▷ 25 citations located at sections (document), 1, 6.1.1, 6.1.1, 6.2.1, 6.3.1, 13.1.3, 13.2.8, 13.5.4, 13.8.5, 24.2, 29.1.1, 1, 29.3.4, 29.4.1, 29.4.3, 29.4.4, 29.5.3, 29.5.4, 30.1.2, 30.5.3, 30.5.3, 30.5.4, 31, and 31.1.5.
- Kimberling C. *Conics associated with a cevian nest. Forum Geometricorum*, vol. 1, 141–150 (2001). <http://forumgeom.fau.edu/FG2001volume1/FG200121.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 11.5.
- Kimberling C. *Collineations, conjugacies and cubics. Forum Geometricorum*, vol. 2, 21–32 (2002). <http://forumgeom.fau.edu/FG2002volume2/FG200204.pdf>.
 ▷ 2 citations located at sections 15.7 and 21.4.41.
- Kimberling C. *Symbolic substitutions in the transfigured plane of a triangle. Aequationes Mathematicae*, vol. 73, no. 1–2, 156–171 (2007).
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 2.3.
- Koehler J. *Exercices de géométrie analytique et de géométrie supérieure, T1+T2* (Gauthier-Villars, Paris) (1886–1888), 350+372 pp.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 11.29.4.
- KSEG. *A free interactive geometry software* (1999–2006). <http://www.mit.edu/~ibaran/kseg.html>, URL http://download.opensuse.org/distribution/11.0/repo/oss/suse/x86_64/kseg-0.403-18.1.x86_64.rpm.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 1.3.1.

- Kunkel P. *The tangency problem of Apollonius: three looks*. *BHSM Bulletin, Journal of the British Society for the History of Mathematics*, vol. 22, no. 1, 34–46 (2007). <http://whistleralley.com/tangents/tangents.htm>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 13.11.
- Kunle H. and Fladt K. *Erlangen program and higher geometry*. In H. Behnke, F. Bachmann, K. Fladt, F. Hohenberg, G. Pickert and S.H. Gould (eds.), *Fundamentals of Mathematics, II: Geometry*, pp. 460–515 (MIT Press) (1974). ISBN 9780262020695.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Labourie F. *Géométrie affine et projective* (Paris-Sud University, France) (2010), 38 pp. <http://www.math.u-psud.fr/~labourie/preprints/pdf/geomproj.pdf>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Lang F. *Geometry and group structures of some cubics*. *Forum Geometricorum*, vol. 2, 135–146 (2002). <https://forumgeom.fau.edu/FG2002volume2/FG200217.pdf>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Lang F. *The orthopole transform* (2006). <http://home.citycable.ch/langfamille/PagesWEB/OrthopoleTransformation.pdf>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Lebesgue H. *Sur les n -sectrices d'un triangle*. *L'Enseignement Mathématique*, vol. 38, 39–58 (1939-1940).
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Lelong-Ferrand J. *Les Fondements de la géométrie* (PUF, Paris) (1986). ISBN 978-2130388517, 288 pp. https://agreg-maths.univ-rennes1.fr/journal/2020/Lelong_Ferrand_geometrie_affine.pdf.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 4.
- Lemoine E. *Sur la transformation continue*. *Bulletin de la Société Mathématique de France*, vol. 19, 136–141 (1891). http://archive.numdam.org/ARCHIVE/BSMF/BSMF_1891__19_/BSMF_1891__19__136_0/BSMF_1891__19__136_0.pdf.
 ▷ 2 citations located at sections 2.1.7 and 2.1.9.
- Lemoine E. *Suite de théorèmes et de résultats concernant la géométrie du triangle*. In *Congrès de Paris*, pp. 79–111 (Association française pour l'avancement des sciences) (1900). <http://quod.lib.umich.edu/cgi/t/text/text-idx?c=umhistmath;idno=ACA0898>.
 ▷ 3 citations located at sections 11.13.3, 30.5.4, and 30.7.
- Li Weiping. *Perspective drawing and projective geometry* (2016). <https://www.math.hkust.edu.hk/~yangwang/Course/2016FSMath4999/Weiping%20Li/perspective.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 1.
- Longo S. *Voir et savoirs dans la théorie de l'art de Daniel Arasse*. Phd thesis, Université Panthéon-Sorbonne - Paris I (2014). URL <https://theses.hal.science/tel-02172151>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 6a.
- Loomis E.S. *The Pythagorean Proposition*. Classics in Mathematics, Education Series, p. 310 (National Council of Teachers of Mathematics, Inc., Washington, D.C.), 3rd, 1968 ed. (1940). https://www.lapasserelle.com/documents/Pythagorean_Proposition_Elisha_S_Loomis.pdf.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Lormeau M. *Des coordonnées angulaires*. *Journal de Mathématiques Élémentaires*, vol. III-5, 35–44 (1891). <https://archive.org/details/s3journaldemathm05pari/page/34/mode/2up>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 17.5.1.
- Lubin C. *A proof of Morley's theorem*. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, vol. 62, no. 2, 110–112 (1955). <http://www.jstor.org/stable/2308146>.
 ▷ 13 citations located at sections 29.1.3, 29.2.4, 29.2.4, 29.2.4, 29.2.4, 29.2.5, 29.2.5, 29.2.4, 29.3.3, 29.7.2, 30.2.1, 30.4.1, and 30.7.

Lyness R.C. *Angles, circles and Morley's theorem*. In Association of Teachers of Mathematics (ed.), *Mathematical Reflections, in memory of A. G. Sillitto*, pp. 177–188 (Cambridge University Press, London) (1970).

▷ 0 citations located at sections .

Macary-Garipuy P. and Vannesson B. *Le réel est plus fort que le vrai: perspectives paradoxales*. vol. 81, 111–124 (2010). <https://www.cairn.info/revue-cliniques-mediterraneennes-2010-1-page-111.htm>.

▷ 1 citation located at section 5.

Macbeath A.M. *The deltoid -ii. Eureka, Cambridge Univ. Undergraduate Mathematical Journal*, vol. 11, 26–29 (1949).

▷ 1 citation located at section 11.11.2.

Mackenzie D.N. *What is the shape of a triangle? Note di Matematica*, vol. 13, no. 2, 237–250 (1993).

▷ 0 citations located at sections .

Marchand J. *Sur une méthode projective dans certaines recherches de géométrie élémentaire. L'Enseignement Mathématique*, vol. 29, 289–293 (1930). <https://www.e-periodica.ch/digbib/view?pid=ens-001%3A1930%3A29#458>.

▷ 0 citations located at sections .

Marden M. *A note on the zeros of the sections of a partial fraction. Bull. Amer. Math. Soc.*, vol. 51, 935–940 (1945). doi:<https://doi.org/10.1090/S0002-9904-1945-08470-5>. <https://www.ams.org/journals/bull/1945-51-12/S0002-9904-1945-08470-5/S0002-9904-1945-08470-5.pdf>.

▷ 1 citation located at section 11.19.8.

Marr W.L. *Morley's Trisection Theorem: An Extension and Its Relation to the Circles of Apollonius. Proc. Edinburgh Math. Soc.*, vol. 32, 136–150 (1913).

▷ 1 citation located at section 29.4.

Martin Y. *Théorème de Morley*. [last modif. 2008-09-04] (1998a). <http://www-cabri.imag.fr/abracadabri/GeoPlane/Classiques/Morley/Morley1.htm>.

▷ 0 citations located at sections .

Martin Y. *Théorème de Morley*. [last modif. 2008-09-04] (1998b). <http://www-cabri.imag.fr/abracadabri/GeoPlane/Classiques/Morley/Morley1.htm>.

▷ 0 citations located at sections .

Moebius A.F. *Der barycentrische Calcul, ein neues Hilfsmittel zur analytischen Behandlung der Geometrie*. In *Gesammelte Werke, Erster Band*, pp. 1–388 (Leipzig, 1885) (1827). <http://gallica.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/bpt6k99419h.image.f25.pagination>.

▷ 2 citations located at sections 1 and 1.

Moon T.A. *The Apollonian circles and isodynamic points. Mathematical Reflections*, , no. 6 (2010). <https://drive.google.com/file/d/1krfjWa5WoGzvfngiuqc7JPm-iAAOZbGj/view?usp=sharing>.

▷ 0 citations located at sections .

Morley F. *Metric geometry of the plane n -line. Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.*, vol. 1, 97–115 (1900).

▷ 1 citation located at section 27.4.

Morley F. *Orthocentric properties of the plane n -line. Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.*, vol. 4, no. 1, 1–12 (1903). <https://www.jstor.org/stable/1986445>.

▷ 1 citation located at section 27.7.5.

Morley F. *Reflexive geometry. Trans. Amer. Math. Soc.*, vol. 8, 14–24 (1907).

▷ 0 citations located at sections .

Morley F. *On the intersections of trisectors of the angles of a triangle. Math. Assoc. of Japan for Secondary Mathematics*, vol. 6, 260–262 (1924).

▷ 2 citations located at sections 29.1.1 and 29.3.4.

- Morley F. *Extensions of Clifford's chain theorem*. *Amer. J. Math.*, vol. 51, 465–472 (1929).
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 29.1.1.
- Morley F. and Morley F.V. *Inversive Geometry* (Ginn and Company, New-York) (1933), 272 pp.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 14.2.1.
- Moses P.J.C. *Circles and Triangle Centers Associated with the Lucas Circles*. *Forum Geometricorum*, vol. 5, 97–106 (2005). <https://forumgeom.fau.edu/FG2005volume5/FG200513.pdf>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Musselman J.R. *On four lines and their associated parabola*. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, vol. 44, no. 8, 513–521 (1937). <https://www.jstor.org/stable/2301227>.
 ▷ 3 citations located at sections 27.5.10, 27.5.13, and 27.5.14.
- Nekovar J. *Géométrie affine et projective - m1-2007* (2007). <https://webusers.imj-prg.fr/~jan.nekovar/co/ag/a1.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 4.6.8.
- Neuberg J. *Mémoire sur le tétraèdre* (F. Hayez, Bruxelles) (1884), 72 pp. <http://resolver.sub.uni-goettingen.de/purl?PPN578424835>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Neuberg J. *Sur les tétraèdres podaires*. In *Annales de la Société Scientifique de Bruxelles*, pp. 198–199 (Société Scientifique de Bruxelles, Louvain) (1921). <https://archive.org/details/mobot31753002553540/page/n1/mode/2up>.
 ▷ 2 citations located at sections 26.1.6 and 26.1.6.
- Neuberg J. *Sur les trisectrices des angles d'un triangle*. *Mathesis*, vol. 37, 356–367 (1923).
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Nguyen T.N.G. *On plane Cremona maps of small degree and their quadratic lengths*. Ph.D. thesis, U.Modena, Reggio Emilia, Italia (2020). [https://www.iris.unimore.it/retrieve/e31e124e-9cc7-987f-e053-3705fe0a095a/Nguyen Thi Ngoc Giao - PhD Thesis.pdf](https://www.iris.unimore.it/retrieve/e31e124e-9cc7-987f-e053-3705fe0a095a/Nguyen%20Thi%20Ngoc%20Giao%20-%20PhD%20Thesis.pdf).
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Oakley C.O. and Baker J.C. *The Morley trisector theorem*. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, vol. 85, no. 9, 737–745 (1978). <http://www.jstor.org/stable/2321680>.
 ▷ 2 citations located at sections 29.1.1 and 29.1.1.
- O'Connor J.J. and Robertson E.F. *Mathematics and art - perspective* (2003). <https://mathshistory.st-andrews.ac.uk/HistTopics/Art/>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 2.
- Oldknow A. *The Euler-Gergonne-Soddy triangle of a triangle*. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, vol. 103, 319–329 (1996).
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 13.11.8.
- pappus. *Construction du triangle critique* (2017). <http://www.les-mathematiques.net/phorum/read.php?8,1420510,1420604#msg-1420604>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 17.1.3.
- Pascal B. *Pensées* (Ed. Havet, Ernest (1852), Pub. Dezobry et E. Magdeleine) (1670), 547 pp. <https://archive.org/details/pensespublie00pascuoft>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 9.1.3.
- Pedoe D. *On a theorem in geometry*. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, vol. 74, no. 6, 627–640 (1967). <http://www.jstor.org/stable/2314247>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 13.11.3.
- Pedoe D. *Geometry: A Comprehensive Course* (Cambridge University Press), 1989 Dover ed. (1970). ISBN 978-0486658124, 464 pp.
 ▷ 4 citations located at sections 3.2.4, 13.5, 18, and 18.4.1.

- Petkovsek M., Wilf H.S. and Zeilberger D. *A=B* (AK Peters, Ltd.) (1996). ISBN 978-1568810638, 212 pp. <http://www.math.upenn.edu/~wilf/AeqB.html>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 1.
- Polo P. *Géométrie affine et projective 2015-16* (2015). <https://webusers.imj-prg.fr/~patrick.polo/4M001/15ch3-9oct.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 4.6.10.
- Polo P. *Géométrie affine et projective 2016-17* (2016). <https://webusers.imj-prg.fr/~patrick.polo/4M001/>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Poncelet J.V. *Traité des propriétés projectives des figures, tome 1* (Bachelier, Paris) (1822), xlvii, 426 pp. <http://books.google.com/books?id=82ISAAAAIAAJ>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 13.1.1.
- Poncelet J.V. *Traité des propriétés projectives des figures, tome 2* (Gauthier-Villars, Paris) (1865), viii, 452 pp. <http://books.google.fr/books?id=UpIKAAAAAYAAJ>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 13.1.1.
- Postnikov M. *Lectures in Geometry* (Mir, Moscow), 2 vols ed. (1982, 1986).
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 13.1.2.
- Ramler O.J. *The orthopole loci of some one-parameter systems of lines referred to a fixed triangle. The American Mathematical Monthly*, vol. 37, no. 3, 130–136 (1930). <http://www.jstor.org/stable/2299415>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Ripert L. *Notes sur le Quadrilatère*. In *Congrès d'Ajaccio*, pp. 106–118 (Association française pour l'avancement des sciences) (1901). <https://gallica.bnf.fr/ark:/12148/bpt6k5735205t/f14.item>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 27.1.
- Rouché E. and de Comberousse C.J.F. *Traité de géométrie, Tome 1: Géométrie plane* (Gauthier-Villars), nouvelle ed. (1922a), xlii+546 pp. <https://ia902604.us.archive.org/16/items/traitdegom01roucuoft/traitdegom01roucuoft.pdf>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Rouché E. and de Comberousse C.J.F. *Traité de Géométrie, Tome 2: Géométrie dans l'espace* (Gauthier-Villars), nouvelle ed. (1922b), xviii+668 pp. <https://archive.org/download/traitdegom02roucuoft/traitdegom02roucuoft.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 26.8.
- Rowley N. *Daniel Arasse en perspective: une apostille à l'Annonciation italienne. Revista De Historia Da Arte E Arqueologia*, , no. 6, 15–30 (2006). [https://unicamp.br/chaa/rhaa/downloads/Revista 6 - artigo 02.pdf](https://unicamp.br/chaa/rhaa/downloads/Revista%206%20-%20artigo%2002.pdf).
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 6b.
- SAGE. *A System for Algebra and Geometry Experimentation* (2005-2025). <http://www.sagemath.org/index.html>.
 ▷ 10 citations located at sections 29.1.3, 29.2.2, 1, 30.2.2, 30.4.2, 30.4.2, 30.4.2, 30.4.4, 30.4.5, and 30.7.
- Salmon G. *A treatise on the higher plane curves* (Hodges & Smith, Dublin) (1852), 316 pp. <http://name.umd.umich.edu/ABQ9497.0001.001>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Samuel P. *Géométrie Projective* (PUF, Paris) (1986). ISBN 978-2130393672, 176 pp. <https://www.devoir.tn/superieur/Doc/Livres/Math%C3%A9matiques/Maths-references-179-livres/G%C3%A9ometrie/G%C3%A9om%C3%A9trie-1/samuel-p-geometrie-projective-puf-1986.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 13.1.7.

- Samuel P. *Projective Geometry* (Springer, New York, NY) (1988). ISBN 978-0-387-96752-3, x+156 pp. <https://archive.org/details/projectivegeomet0000samu>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 13.2.5.
- Schoute P. *Deux cas particuliers de la transformation birationnelle, i & ii. Bulletin des sciences mathématiques et astronomiques 2e série*, vol. 6, no. 1, 152–168, 174–188 (1882). http://www.numdam.org/item?id=BSMA_1882_2_6_1_152_1, http://www.numdam.org/item?id=BSMA_1882_2_6_1_174_1.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 17.5.8.
- Schultz R. *Essential concepts of projective geometry* (2007). <http://math.ucr.edu/~res/progeom/pg-all.pdf>.
 ▷ 0 citations located at sections .
- Schultz R. *History of mathematics* (2019). <https://math.ucr.edu/~res/math153>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 3.
- Schwerdtfeger H. *Geometry of Complex Numbers* (2nd ed., Dover) (1962). ISBN 9780486135861, 224 pp.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 3.2.4.
- Searby D.G. *On three circles. Forum Geometricorum*, vol. 9, 181–193 (2009). <http://forumgeom.fau.edu/FG2009volume9/FG200918.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 19.1.12.
- Soddy F. *The kiss precise. Nature*, vol. 137 (1936).
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 13.11.3.
- Soland. *Porisme de Soland* (2018). <https://les-mathematiques.net/vanilla/index.php?p=discussion/1678946>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 20.6.1.
- Stevanovic M.R. *The Apollonius circle and related triangle centers. Forum Geometricorum*, vol. 3, 187–195 (2003). <http://forumgeom.fau.edu/FG2003volume3/FG200320.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 13.11.5.
- Stillwell J. *Mathematics and Its History*. Undergraduate Texts in Mathematics (Springer New York, NY) (2010). ISBN 978-1-4614-2632-5, xxii, 662 pp. doi:<https://doi.org/10.1007/978-1-4419-6053-5>. [http://eridanus.cz/id32402/ve\(2da/pr\(2i\(1rodni\(1_ve\(2dy/matematika/_Knihy/_Mathematics+and+Its+History+-+\[Mei+\]john+Stillwell_937.pdf](http://eridanus.cz/id32402/ve(2da/pr(2i(1rodni(1_ve(2dy/matematika/_Knihy/_Mathematics+and+Its+History+-+[Mei+]john+Stillwell_937.pdf).
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 1.2.2.
- Stothers W. *The Klein view of geometry* (1998-2009). <http://www.maths.gla.ac.uk/wws/cabripages/klein/klein0.html>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 20.1.2.
- Stothers W. *Asymptotes of conics* (2003a). <http://tech.groups.yahoo.com/group/Hyacinthos/message/8476>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 11.22.3.
- Stothers W. *Tripolar centroid* (2003b). <http://tech.groups.yahoo.com/group/Hyacinthos/message/8811>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 3.6.1.
- Taylor F.G. *The relation of Morley's theorem to the Hessian axis and the circumcenter. Proc. Edinburgh Math. Soc.*, vol. 32, 132–135 (1913).
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 29.4.
- Taylor F.G. and Marr W.L. *The six trisectors of each of the angles of a triangle. Proc. Edinburgh Math. Soc.*, vol. 32, 119–131 (1913). http://journals.cambridge.org/article_S0013091500035100.
 ▷ 12 citations located at sections 29.1.1, 29.1.3, 29.3.1, 29.3.3, 29.3.4, 30.1.1, 30.1.2, 30.3.1, 30.3.1, 30.4.2, 30.4.6, and 30.5.2.

- Tecosky-Feldman J. *Morley's Theorem for Triangles* (1996). <http://www.haverford.edu/mathematics/morley.html>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 29.1.1.
- Thebault V. *Concerning pedal circles and spheres*. *The American Mathematical Monthly*, vol. 53, no. 6, 324–326 (1946). <http://www.jstor.org/stable/2305503>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 27.10.
- Tinkham M. *Group Theory and Quantum Mechanics* (McGraw-Hill), Dover, 2003 ed. (1964), 352 pp.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 30.4.4.
- Trkovska D. *Luigi Cremona and his Transformations*. In *WDS'08 Proceedings of Contributed Papers*, pp. I, 32–37 (2008). ISBN 978-80-7378-065-4. https://www.mff.cuni.cz/veda/konference/wds/proc/pdf08/WDS08_106_m8-Trkovska.pdf.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 17.3.
- Tuan B.Q. *Fourth intersection of circumconic and some points on circumcircle* (2006). <http://tech.groups.yahoo.com/group/Hyacinthos/message/14245>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 11.28.2.
- Van Rees T. *Mémoire sur les focales*. *Correspondance mathématique et physique de A. Quetelet, Brussels*, vol. 5, 361–378 (1829). <https://archive.org/details/correspondancem00unkngoog/page/n395>.
 ▷ 5 citations located at sections 27.11.1, 27.11.6, 27.11.9, 27.11.2, and 27.11.2.
- Viricel A. and Bouteloup J. *Le théorème de Morley* (Association Scientifique pour le Développement de la Culture, Amiens, France) (1993), 178 pp. <http://books.google.fr/books?id=eAXWHAAACAAJ>.
 ▷ 3 citations located at sections 29.1.1, 30.1.1, and 30.3.4.
- Volenec V. *alpha-beta-gamma-sigma technology in the triangle geometry*. *Mathematical Communications*, vol. 10, 159–167 (2005).
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 7.12.1.
- Voltaire. *Micromegas* (Londres) (1752), 1–40 pp. <http://books.google.com/books?id=tCw6AAAAcAAJ>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 13.2.8.
- Weisstein E. *Wolfram mathworld*. [accessed 2012-11-26] (1999-2009). <http://mathworld.wolfram.com/topics/PlaneGeometry>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 13.2.16.
- Werner T.R. *Rational families of circles and bicircular quartics*. PhD in Mathematics, Der Naturwissenschaftlichen Fakultät der Friedrich-Alexander-Universität Erlangen-Nürnberg (2012). <https://d-nb.info/1024608662/34>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 22.1.1.
- Wikipedia: Gene Ward Smith. *Morley's trisector theorem* (2004). http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Morley's_trisector_theorem.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 29.1.1.
- Wikipedia: WillowW et al. *Problem of Apollonius* (2006). http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Problem_of_Apollonius.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 13.11.
- Yiu P. *Introduction to the Geometry of the Triangle* (Florida Atlantic University) (2002), 146 pp. <http://www.math.fau.edu/yiu/GeometryNotes020402.ps>.
 ▷ 2 citations located at sections 15.4.4 and 15.4.
- Yiu P. *A Tour of Triangle Geometry via the Geometer's Sketchpad*. In *37th Annual Meeting of the Florida Section of MAA* (Department of Mathematics, Florida Atlantic University) (2004). <http://math.fau.edu/Yiu/TourOfTriangleGeometry/MAAFlorida37040428.pdf>.
 ▷ 1 citation located at section 9.2.2.

Index

Bold page numbers are supposed to be the most relevant ones

Symbols

=Table of Contents	25
=well-known	2
circles	186
conics	150
cubics	327
lines	44
matrices	100
surds	185
triangles	56

A

adjoint	138
affine	
affine combination	74
affine space	74
Leibniz functions	75
affix	227
complex	227
Morley	232
Al-Kashi	78, 94
alephdivision	249
Alt-Spieker circle	190
angle of two circles	209
angle of two lines	
cosinus	99
tangent	99, 99
angular coordinates	264
anti-pedal triangle	382
anticevian triangle	55
anticomplement	51, 247
anticomplementary conjugate	373
anticomplementary triangle	51, 56
antigonal conjugacy	265
antimedial triangle	51
antiorthic axis	44
apex	
barycentric	213
stereographic	288
Apoll	
construction	220
Apollonian A,B,C circles	176, 190, 218, 276, 278
Apollonius circle	190, 225
Apollonius configuration	220

Arbelos	197
area	95
complex affixes	229
Heron	95
matrix	95
areal center	387
auxiliary line (of an inconic)	146

B

backward substitutions	233
backward-2 matrix	237
backward-2 substitutions	237
barycentric division	42
barycentric multiplication	42
barycentrics	38, 41
barycentrics (standard)	83
barymul	
as a collineation	246
as a formal operator	372
construction	246
base points (pencil of circles)	211, 261
Bevan circle	189
Bevan line	44
Bezout theorem	227
bicentric points	47
Brisse Transform	149
Brocard	
1st and 2nd LFIT's	397
3-6 circle	193, 279, 366
angle	104
ellipse	162
line	44
pencil	219
points	103, 279
second circle	193

C

Cayley-Bacharach	323
center of a circle	184
center of a conic	140
center of a triangle	
rational	48
strong	47
weak	48
central line	47

- central point 47
- central triangle 49
- ceva conjugate 65
- cevadiv **64**, 247–248, 371
- cevamul **64**, 247, 371
- cevapoint 65
- cevier collineation 247
- cevier conic 151
- cevier conjugacies 248
- cevier lines 55
- cevier nest 62
- cevier triangle 55
- circles 183
 - =well-known circles **186**
 - angle of two 209
- circum-anticevier 129
- circum-hyperbola 166
- circumcevier 129
- circumcircle 150, 186
 - standard eqn 96
- circumconic 144
 - asymptote 166
 - circum-hyperbola 166
 - circumRH 167
 - gudulic point 152
 - parametrization 144
- circumpolar 135, 235
- circumRH 167
- cK(F,U) 342
- Clawson-Schmidt homography 58, 178, **231**,
434
- clinant 229
- cocevier triangle 55
- collinear 39
- collineation 243
- collineation algorithm 243
- Collings transform 374
- Comatrix 138
- combos 54
- complement 51, 247
- complementary conjugate 373
- completed line 206
- complex affix 227
- concurrent 39
- concyelic 270
- conic 135
 - auxiliary circle 172
 - by five points 139
 - center 140
 - cross-ratio 149
 - degenerate 168
 - dual of a conic 140
 - FF, the focal tangential pencil 156
 - LLLL, the Miquel pencil 178
 - metric elements 169
 - of tangents 141
 - orthoptic cycle 172
 - parametrization 139
 - perspector 140
 - pole and polar 139
 - PPPP, the four points pencil 155
 - proper 138
 - PTPT, the bitangent pencil 173
 - tangential conic 141
 - ten determinants formula 139
- conico-pivotal isocubic 342
- Conway symbols 50
- cosinus of projection 108
- cot versus Conway 104
- covariant derivative 318
- Cremona 255, 258, 259
 - exceptional curves 258
 - homography 256
 - indeterminacy points 258
- cross conjugacy 64
- cross-ratio 53
 - conic 149
 - Laguerre formula 231
 - of parameters 52
- crossdiff 372
- crossdifference 44
- crossdiv 63, 247, 371
- crossmul 63, 247, 371
- crosspoint 64
- crosssum 341
- crosstriangle 59
- cubic 323
 - =well-known cubics **327**
- Cayley-Bacharach 323
- cK(F,U) 342
- nK(P,U,k) 341
- nK0(P,U) 341
- Orion 337
- pK(P,U) 326
- pK: 22 points property 328
- PKA 331
- tangential 324
- tangential quadruple 331
- triangular 326
- van Rees 444
- cycle 206, 270
- cyclocevier conjugate 199
- cyclopedal conjugate 123
- D**
- dalethdivision 250
- Danneels perspector
 - first 66
 - second 67
- Darboux cubic 334
- DC point 131
- de Longchamps axis 44
- degenerate conic 168
- deltoid 436
 - tripolar circular cubics 360
- derivative, covariant 318
- Desargues

- theorem 60
- triangle 60
- trigone 60
- Descartes
 - folium 136
- directrix 164
- distance line-parallel 102
- distance point-line 101, 231
- distance point-point 95
- div formula 372
- doteq 38
- dual of a conic 140
- dual triangle 131
- duality 43
- E**
 - eigencenter 251
 - eigentransform 340
 - Electrical notation 111
 - embedded vector 93
 - equal 38
 - equicenter 387
 - equilateral
 - LFIT 413
 - third quat 236
 - euclidian 39, 93
 - Euler line 44
 - Evan's conic 141
 - excentral triangle 56
 - excentricity 169–170
 - exceptional curves (Cremona) 258
 - Exceter point 129
 - exsimilicenter 214
 - extouch triangle 56
 - extraversions 48
- F**
 - Fermat axis 44
 - Fermat points 198
 - Feuerbach point 188, 216
 - Feuerbach RH 167
 - focus
 - of an inconic 156
 - of an inscribed parabola 164
 - of LFIT parabolas 412
 - folium 136
 - forward substitutions 230, 232
 - forward-2 matrix 237
 - forward-2 substitutions 237
 - fourth harmonic 52, 53
 - Fuhrmann 4-8 circle 195
 - Fuhrmann triangle 56, 367
- G**
 - geogebra 40
 - Gergonne axis 44
 - Gibert-Simson transform 344
 - gimeldivision 249
 - Gram matrix 221
- Gt mapping 181
- gudulic point 152
- H**
 - Hamilton 288
 - harmonic division 53
 - helethdivision 250
 - Hexyl triangle 56
 - Hirst inverse 374
 - hirstpoint 374
 - homography 52
 - construct the middle 255
 - Cremona transform 256
 - multiplier 257
 - of parameters (thm) 256
 - on the complex line 255
 - homothety 108
 - homothety centers (circles) 214
 - horizon 206
 - hyperbola 166
 - circum-hyperbola 166
 - circumRH 167
 - in-hyperbola 167
 - inRH 168
 - hyperbolic
 - Klein conveyor 301
 - Klein metric 302
 - Poincaré conveyor 299
 - Poincaré metric 300
 - hyperbolic hyperboloid 117
- I**
 - in-hyperbola 167
 - incenter
 - exclusion curve 195
 - inexcenters 262
 - incentral triangle 56
 - incircle 150, 151, 187
 - incircle transform 188
 - inclusive coordinates 227
 - inconic 146
 - auxiliary line 146
 - center 146
 - in-hyperbola 167
 - in-parabola 164
 - inRH 168
 - parametrization 146
 - perspector 146
 - indeterminacy points (Cremona) 258
 - infinity line 44
 - inRH 168
 - Inscribed ordered quadrangle 450
 - insimilicenter (of circles) 214
 - intouch triangle 56
 - inversion in a circle
 - barycentric-formula 214
 - complex-formula 272
 - definition 213
 - pedoe-formula 281

- spherical-formula 285
- involutory collineation 244
- isoconjugacy
 - see sqrtdiv 261
- isodynamic points 106, 193, **278**, 366
 - Brocard pencil 219, 277
 - Lemoine pencil 277
- isogonal conjugacy 96, 122, **123**, 261
 - angular_coords 264
 - Morley condition 263
 - Morley formula 262
 - z-isocubics 326
- isopivot of a cubic 328
- isoptic cubic 445
- isoptic pencil 211
- isosceles triangles 196
- isotomic conjugacy 56
- isotomic pencil 211
- isotropic lines 98
- J**
- Jerabek RH 167
- joint-orthoptic circle 172
- K**
- K-ellipse 162
- K-matrix (Al-Kashi) 94
- K001 Neuberg 332
- K002 Thomson 333
- K003 McCay 332
- K004 Darboux 334
- K007 Lucas 334
- K010 Simson 343
- K060 cubic 340
- K155 EAC2 338
- K162 cubic 344
- K170 cubic 328
- K219 168
- Kiepert parabola 150, 164
- Kiepert RH **196**
- kitW 184
- Klein
 - hyperbolic conveyor 301
 - hyperbolic metric 302
 - quadrangle 48
 - symmetry 302
 - transforms 48
- kseg 40
- L**
- Laguerre formula 231
- Leibniz functions 75
- Lemoine
 - transform 237, 260
 - transforms 48
- Lemoine axis 44, 150, 279
- Lemoine first circle 191
- Lemoine inconic 150
- Lemoine pencil 218
- Lemoine second circle 192
- Lemoine's theorem 443
- LFIT 387, 388
 - adjunct circle 406
 - adjunct points 406
 - areal center 387, 390
 - circle of similarity 402
 - critical triangle 391, 410
 - equicenter 387
 - fixed point 406
 - fixed points 402
 - graphs
 - Catalan 397
 - hexagonal 393
 - temporal 396
 - hexagonal conic 393
 - incident motion 400
 - observer 420
 - parabolas 412
 - parametrization 392
 - pilar conic 395
 - pilar point 395
 - similarities 407
 - slowness center 387, 390
 - temporal conics 396
 - temporal embedding 399
 - temporal graphs 396
 - third cevian 414
 - Tucker associate 398
 - velocities 388
 - Vertex-Miquel circle 402
- Lie sphere
 - gearing 293
 - quadric 293
 - representative 293
- limit points (pencil of circles) 211, 261
- line 38
 - at infinity 39, 229
 - completed 206
 - list of well-known lines 44
- Linear Families of Inscribed Triangles .. 387
- locusconi 142
- Longchamps circle 189
- Lubin parametrization 232
- Lubin-2 parametrization 236
- Lucas cubic 334
- M**
- MacBeath circumconic 151
- MacBeath-inconic 151
- major center 48
- matrix
 - bartomor 229
 - cartomor 228
 - K 94
 - M 98, 230
 - N 439
 - OrtO 97, 230
 - Pyth 95, 230

- Q207
 Q^{-1} 207
 Q_p 280
 Q_s 284
 Q_z 271
 W94
 McCay cubic K003332
 medial triangle51, 56
 Menelaus theorem58
 mimosa transform249
 Miquel
 alignment58
 Miquel circle (quadrilateral)431
 Miquel point402
 mixtilinear circle199, 282
 Monge
 alignment215
 Morley affix232
 Morley Theorem457
 Action on pairs477
 Morley quintic458
 Morley-octic458
 Projective groups477
 QQQ-quintic458
 mul formula372
 multiplier of an homography257
- N**
- Nagel line44
 Napoleon points198
 Neuberg circles104
 Neuberg K001 cubic332
 Newton axis179, 430
 Newton line58
 nine-points circle151, 188
 NK transform341
 $nK(P, U, k)$ 341
 $nK_0(P, U)$ 341
 non pivotal isocubic326
- O**
- Orion cubic337
 Orion transform336
 orthic axis44, 124
 orthic triangle56
 orthoassociate127
 orthocentroidal 2-4 circle194
 orthocorrespondent127
 orthodir98, 230
 orthogonal
 cycle210, 272
 pencil212
 projector106, 244
 reflection106, 244
 orthologic (triangles)382
 orthology
 collineation382
 Morley382
 orthopedal circle443
- Orthopoint230
 orthopoint97
 orthopole438
 orthoptic cycle171, 172
 OrtO-matrix97
- P**
- parabola141, 164
 inscribed235
 parallelogic (triangles)381, 420
 parallelology
 collineation381
 Morley381
 paralogic444
 Pascal's theorem324
 pedal
 circle123, 156, 442
 triangle anti-pedal382
 triangle pedal121
 Pelle à Tarte196
 pencil210
 Complex plane269
 Orthogonality formula212
 Triangle plane203
 pencil of conics
 FF, the focal tangential pencil156
 LLLL, the Miquel pencil178
 PPPP, the four points pencil155
 PTPT, the bitangent pencil173
 perspectivity59
 perspectivity kit60
 perspector59
 perspector of a conic140
 perspectrix60
 pivot of a cubic327
 pivotal conic342
 pivotal umbilical pK332
 PK# transform328
 $pK(P, U)$ 326
 pK : 22 points property328
 PKA cubics331
 Plucker
 formulas137
 representation111
 Poincaré
 hyperbolic conveyor299
 hyperbolic metric300
 symmetry301
 point38
 polar circle172, 189
 polar wrt a conic139
 polar wrt a curve135
 polardiv373
 polarmul145
 polarmul of lines373
 polarmul of points373
 polars-of-points triangle250
 pole wrt a conic139
poles-of-lines triangle250

- Poncelet
 porism 148, 198
 porism
 Poncelet 148
 Poulbot, first point 242
 Poulbot, second point 242
 power 96
 barycentric formula 96, 183
 Veronese formula 209
 projector
 orthogonal 106
 psi-Kimberling 248
 Pyth-matrix 95
 Pythagoras theorem 95
- Q**
- quadrangle
 inscribed (ordered) 450
 ordered quadrangle 445
 quadrilateral 428
 diagonal triangle 432
 embedded triangles 428
 Miquel circle 431
 Miquel point 431
 Newton axis 429, 430
 Newton pencil 430
 orthopedal circle 443
 parabola inscribed 432
 parabolic coordinates 434
 paralogic 444
 pedal line 432
 polar circles 430
 reciprocal lines 429
 Steiner axis 429, 430
 Steiner pencil 430
 Wallace line 432
- R**
- radical center 210
 radical trace 185
 radius of a circle 184, 209
 rational center 48
 reciprocal conjugacy 262
 reciprocal of a line 57
 rectangular hyperbola 166
 reflection 51
 representative 206
 of a point-circle 206
 residual triangles 364
 of a cevian 364
 RH characterization 166
 Riemann sphere 52
 Rigby point 453
 rotation 245
 3D-formula 115
 RS 453
- S**
- S=area(ABC) 50
 S_a 50
 Saragossa points 131
 search key
 Kimberling 84
 Morley 90, 234
 patched 84
 shadow 289
 shortest cubic 333
 sideline triangle 60
 sideline trig one 60
 simdoteq 38
 simeq 38
 similarity 245
 circles, centers of 214
 clasim 246
 direct 245
 Morley plane 245
 skew 126, 245
 three similarities theorem 406
 Simson cubic 343
 Simson line 436
 Simson-Moses point 454
 sine-triple-angle circle 192
 slowness center 387, 390
 SM 454
 Soddy (but not so) circles 223
 Soddy circles 221
 Soddy conic 150, 154
 Soddy line 44, 154
 Soland's porism 307
 Sondat 377
 Sondat's theorem 444
 Spieker circle 189
 sqrtdiv
 construction 66, 260
 formal definition 260
 heuristic definition 42
 sqrtmul 42, 66
 SR 453
 star triangle 56, 368
 Steinbart transform 129
 Steiner
 angles 105
 antigon 265
 axis (quadrilateral) 430
 circumellipse 67, 150
 deltoid 436
 in-ellipse 150, 160
 line (triangle) 124
 triangle
 definition 121
 stereographic projection 150, 286
 apex 288
 strong center 47
 symbolic substitution 50
 symmetric (metric) functions 50
 symmetric functions 229, 232
 Newton theorem 232

- symmetry
 K-symmetry 302
 orthogonal 106
 P-symmetry 301
- T**
- tangent 99
 tangent of two lines 99, 231
 tangent to a curve 135
 tangential 324
 tangential conic 141
 tangential triangle 56
 Tarry point 104
 Taylor circle 196
 TCC-perspector 129
- tetrahedron
- altitudes 118
 - circumcenter 116
 - metric 115
 - Monge point 116
 - orthocentric 118
 - volume 116
- Tg mapping 181
 Thomson K002 cubic 333
 transcendental center 48
 translation 244
 transpose 43
 triangle 39
 - list of well-known triangles 56
 - may be degenerate 39
- triangle center 47
 trigone 39
 trilinear pole (deprecated) 44
 trilinears 41
 tripolar 44, 45
 tripolar centroid 59
 tripolar curve 347
 tripolar line 55
 tripole 44, 45
- Tucker associate 398
 turn 229
 type-crossing 41
 type-keeping 41
- U**
- umbilics 98, 204, 270
 unary cofactor triangle 251
- V**
- van Rees cubic 444
 - intrinsic conjugacy 446
 - isogonal conjugacy 447
- vandermonde 229, 232
 Veronese map
 - barycentric 206
 - Morley space 270
 - Pedoe version 280
 - Spherical version 283
- vertex associate 132
 vertex triangle 59
 vertex trigone 59
 virtual circle 212
 visible point 228
- W**
- W-matrix 94
 Wallace line (quadrilateral) 432
 Walsmith points 275
 weak center 48
 wedge operator 43
- Y**
- Yff parabola 150
- Z**
- Z(U) cubic 327
 Z+cubic 342
 zosma 250
 —